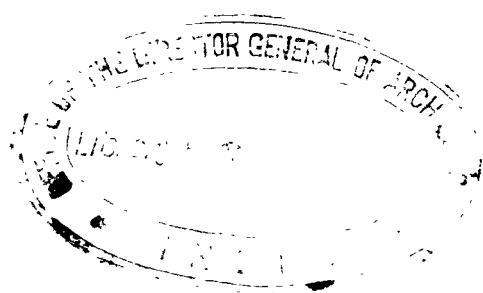


GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
ARCHÆOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA

CENTRAL
ARCHÆOLOGICAL
LIBRARY

ACCESSION NO. 23732

CALL No. 391.2082 / Mui



~~22815~~
51

ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXTS.

(32)

258407



ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXTS

ON THE

ORIGIN AND HISTORY

OF

THE PEOPLE OF INDIA.

THEIR RELIGION AND INSTITUTIONS.

COLLECTED, TRANSLATED, AND ILLUSTRATED.

BY

J. MUIR, D.C.L., LL.D.

2533
VOLUME FIRST.

MYTHICAL AND LEGENDARY ACCOUNTS OF THE ORIGIN OF CASTE, WITH AN
ENQUIRY INTO ITS EXISTENCE IN THE VEDIC AGE.

SECOND EDITION,

REWRITTEN AND GREATLY ENLARGED.



132-743

891-2082

Mui

LONDON:

TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

1868.

(All rights reserved.)

Na viśesho'sti varṇānām sarvaṁ brāhmaṇaṁ idaṁ jagat |
Brahmaṇā prūṣa-sṛiṣṭāṁ hi karmabhir varṇatām gatam |
 Mahābhārata.

“There is no distinction of castes. This world, which, as created by Brāhmā, was at first entirely Brahmanic, has become divided into classes in consequence of men's works.”—See pages 138 and 140.

AL. A. 0. 1. 1.
 23732
 13 6 56
 No. 891 2082/ Mux.....

*to be added
in the end
of the book*

PREFACE.

THE main object which I have proposed to myself in this volume is to collect, translate, and illustrate the principal passages in the different Indian books of the greatest antiquity, as well as in others of comparatively modern composition, which describe the creation of mankind and the origin of classes, or which tend to throw light upon the manner in which the caste system may have arisen.

I have not, however, hesitated to admit, when they fell in my way, such passages explanatory of the cosmogonic or mythological conceptions of the Indians as possess a general interest, although not immediately connected with the chief subject of the book.

Since the first edition appeared my materials have so much increased that the volume has now swelled to more than twice its original bulk. The second and third chapters are almost entirely new.¹ The fourteenth and fifteenth sections of the fourth chapter are entirely so. Even those parts of the book of which the sub-

¹ The contents of these chapters are not, however, absolutely new, but drawn from articles which I have contributed to the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society since the first edition of the volume appeared.

stance remains the same have been so generally expanded that comparatively little continues without some alteration of greater or less importance.

In order that the reader may learn at once what he may expect to find in the following pages, I shall supply here a fuller and more connected summary of their contents than is furnished by the table which follows this preface.

The Introduction (pp. 1–6) contains a very rapid survey of the sources from which our information on the subject of caste is to be derived, viz. the Vedic hymns, the Brāhmaṇas, the Epic poems, and the Purāṇas, in which the chronological order and the general characteristics of these works are stated.

The first chapter (pp. 1–160) comprehends the mythical accounts of the creation of man and of the origin of castes which are to be found in the Vedic hymns, in the Brāhmaṇas and their appendages, in the Rāmāyaṇa, the Mahābhārata, and the Purāṇas. The first section (pp. 7–15) contains a translation of the celebrated hymn called Purusha Sūkta, which appears to be the oldest extant authority for attributing a separate origin to the four castes, and a discussion of the question whether the creation there described was intended by its author to convey a literal or an allegorical sense. The second, third, and fourth sections (pp. 15–34) adduce a series of passages from the works standing next in chronological order to the hymns of the Rig-veda, which differ more or less widely from the account of the creation given in the Purusha Sūkta, and therefore justify the conclusion

40/13

PREFACE.

vii

that in the Vedic age no uniform orthodox and authoritative doctrine existed in regard to the origin of castes.

- In the fifth section (pp. 35–42) the different passages in Manu's Institutes which bear upon the subject are quoted, and shewn to be not altogether in harmony with each other. The sixth section (pp. 43–49) describes the system of great mundane periods called Yugas, Manvantaras, and Kalpas, as explained in the Purāṇas, and shews that no traces of these periods are to be found in the hymns of the Rig-veda, and but few in the Brāhmaṇas (compare p. 215 f.). Sections seventh and eighth (pp. 49–107) contain the accounts of the different creations, including that of the castes, and of the primeval state of mankind, which are given in the Vishṇu, Vāyu, and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas, together with references (see pp. 52 ff., 68 ff.) to passages in the Brāhmaṇas, which appear to have furnished some of the germs of the various Puranic representations, and a comparison of the details of the latter with each other which proves that in some respects they are mutually irreconcilable (see pp. 65 ff., 102 ff.). The ninth section (pp. 107–114) adduces the accounts of Brahmā's passion for his daughter, which are given in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa and the Matsya Purāṇa. In the tenth section (pp. 114–122) are embraced such notices connected with the subject of this volume as I have observed in the Rāmāyaṇa. In one of the passages men of all the four castes are said to be the offspring of Manu, a female, the daughter of Daksha, and wife of Kaśyapa. The eleventh section contains a collection of texts from the Mahābhārata and its appendage the Hari-

vaṁśa, in which various and discrepant explanations are given of the existing diversity of castes, one of them representing all the four classes as descendants of Manu • Vaivasvata (p. 126), others attributing the distinction of classes to an original and separate creation of each, which, however, is not always described as occurring in the same manner (pp. 128 ff. and 153); whilst others, again, more reasonably, declare the distinction to have arisen out of differences of character and action. This section, as well as the one which precedes it, also embraces accounts of the perfection which prevailed in the first yugas, and of the gradually increasing degeneracy which ensued in those that followed. The twelfth section (pp. 155–158) contains extracts from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, which coincide for the most part with those drawn from the other authorities. One text, however, describes mankind as the offspring of Aryaman and Mātrikā; and another distinctly declares that there was originally but one caste. The thirteenth section (pp. 159 f.) sums up the results of the entire chapter, and asserts the conclusion that the sacred books of the Hindus contain no uniform or consistent theory of the origin of caste; but, on the contrary, offer a great variety of explanations, mythical, mystical, and rationalistic, to account for this social phenomenon.

The second chapter (pp. 160–238) treats of the tradition of the descent of the Indian nation from Manu. The first section (pp. 162–181) contains a series of texts from the Rig-veda, which speak of Manu as the progenitor of the race to which the authors of the hymns

belonged, and as the first institutor of religious rites ; and adverts to certain terms employed in the hymns, either to denote mankind in general or to signify certain tribal divisions. The second section (pp. 181–196) adduces a number of legends and notices regarding Manu from the Brāhmaṇas and other works next in order of antiquity to the hymns of the Rig-veda. The most interesting and important of these legends is that of the deluge, as given in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, which is afterwards (pp. 216 ff.) compared with the later versions of the same story found in the Mahābhārata and the Matsya, Bhāgavata and Agni Purāṇas, which are extracted in the third section (pp. 196–220). Some remarks of M. Burnouf and Professor Weber, on the question whether the legend of a deluge was indigenous in India, or derived from a Semitic source, are noticed in pp. 215 f. The fourth section adduces the legendary accounts of the rise of castes among the descendants of Manu and Atri, which are found in the Purāṇas ; and quotes a story given in the Mahābhārata about king Vitāhavya, a Kshatriya, being transformed into a Brāhman by the mere word of the sage Bhṛigu.

In the third chapter (pp. 239–295) I have endeavoured to shew what light is thrown by a study of the hymns of the Rig- and Atharva-vedas upon the mutual relations of the different classes of Indian society at the time when those hymns were composed. In the first section (pp. 240–265) the various texts of the Rig-veda in which the words brāhmān and brāhmaṇa occur are cited, and an attempt is made to determine the senses in which those

words are there employed. The result of this examination is that in none of the hymns of the Rig-veda, except the Purusha Sūkta, is there any distinct reference to a recognized system of four castes, although the occasional use of the word Brāhmaṇa, which is apparently equivalent to Brāhmā-putra, or “the son of a priest,” and other indications seem to justify the conclusion that the priesthood had already become a profession, although it did not yet form an exclusive caste (see pp. 258 f., 263 ff.). The second section (pp. 265–280) is made up of quotations from the hymns of the Rig-veda and various other later works, adduced to shew that persons who according to ancient Indian tradition were not of priestly families were in many instances reputed to be authors of Vedic hymns, and in two cases, at least, are even said to have exercised priestly functions. These two cases are those (1) of Devāpi (pp. 269ff.), and (2) of Viśvāmitra, which is afterwards treated at great length in the fourth chapter. This section concludes with a passage from the Matsya Purāṇa, which not only speaks of the Kshattriyas Manu, Iḍa, and Purūravas, as “utterers of Vedic hymns” (*mantra-vādinah*); but also names three Vaiśyas, Bhālanda, Vandya, and Sankīrtti, as “composers of hymns” (*mantra-kṛitah*). The third section (pp. 280–289) shews by quotations from the Atharva-veda that at the period when those portions of that collection which are later than the greater part of the Rig-veda were composed, the pretensions of the Brāhmans had been considerably developed. The fourth section (pp. 289–295) gives an account of the opinions expressed by Professor

R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug regarding the origin of castes.

The fourth chapter (pp. 296-479) contains a series of legendary illustrations derived from the Rāmāyaṇa, the Mahābhārata, and the Purāṇas, of the struggle which appears to have occurred in the early ages of Indian history between the Brāhmanas and the Kshattriyas, after the former had begun to constitute an exclusive sacerdotal class, but before their rights had become accurately defined by long prescription, and when the members of the ruling caste were still indisposed to admit their pretensions. I need not here state in detail the contents of the first five sections (pp. 296-317) which record various legends descriptive of the ruin which is said to have overtaken different princes by whom the Brāhmanas were slighted and their claims resisted. The sixth and following sections down to the thirteenth (pp. 317-426) contain, first, such references to the two renowned rivals, Vasiṣṭha and Viśvāmitra as are found in the hymns of the Rig-veda, and which represent them both as Vedic rishis; secondly, such notices of them as occur in the Brāhmaṇas, and shew that Viśvāmitra, as well as Vasiṣṭha, had officiated as a priest; and, thirdly, a series of legends from the Rāmāyaṇa and Mahābhārata which describe the repeated struggles for superiority in which they were engaged, and attempt, by a variety of fictions, involving miraculous elements, to explain the manner in which Viśvāmitra became a Brāhman, and to account for the fact which was so distinctly certified by tradition (see pp. 361 ff.), but appeared so un-

accountable in later ages (see pp. 265 f., 364 ff.), that that famous personage, although notoriously a Kshattriya by birth, had nevertheless exercised sacerdotal functions.² The fourteenth section (pp. 426–430) contains a story from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa about king Janaka, a Rājanya, renowned for his stoical temperament and religious knowledge, who communicated theological instruction to

² As I have omitted in the body of the work to say anything of the views of Signor Angelo de Gubernatis about the purport of the Vedic texts relating to Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra, I may state here that this young Italian Sanskritist, in his Essay, entitled "Fonti Vediche dell' Epopea" (see the Rivista Orientale, vol. i. pp. 409 ff., 478 ff.), combats the opinion of Professor Roth that these passages refer to two historical personages, and to real events in which they played a part; and objects that Roth "took no account of the possibility that a legend of the heavens may have been based upon a human foundation" (p. 409). Signor de Gubernatis further observes that the 33rd and 53rd hymns of the third Maṇḍala of the Rig-veda "may perhaps have been recited at a later period in connection with some battle which really occurred, but that the fact which they celebrate seems to be much more ancient, and to be lost in a very remote myth" (p. 410). Viśvāmitra, he considers, is one of the appellations of the sun, and as both the person who bears this name, and Indra are the sons of Kuśika, they must be brothers (p. 412. See, however, the remarks in p. 347 f. of this volume on the epithet Kauśika as applied to Indra). Sudās, according to Signor de Gubernatis (p. 413), denotes the horse of the sun, or the sun himself, while Vasishṭha is the greatest of the Vasus, and denotes Agni, the solar fire, and means, like Viśvāmitra, the sun (p. 483). Signor de Gubernatis is further of opinion (pp. 414, 478, 479, and 483) that both the 33rd and 53rd hymns of the third, and the 18th hymn of the seventh Maṇḍala are comparatively modern; that the names of Kuśikas and Viśvāmitras claimed by the authors of the two former, are fraudulently assumed; while the last (the 18th hymn of the seventh Maṇḍala) was composed by a sacerdotal family who claimed Vasishṭha as its founder. I will only remark that the theory of Signor de Gubernatis appears to me to be an improbable one. But the only point of much importance for my own special purpose is that ancient Indian tradition represents both Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra as real personages, the one of either directly divine, or of sacerdotal descent, and the other of royal lineage. They may, however, have been nothing more than legendary creations, the fictitious eponymi of the families which bore the same name.

some eminent Brāhmans, and became a member of their class. In the fifteenth section (pp. 431–436) two other instances are adduced from the same Brāhmaṇa and from two of the Upanishads, of Kshattriyas who were in possession of truths unknown to the Brāhmans, and who, contrary to the usual rule, became the teachers of the latter. The sixteenth section (pp. 436–440) contains an extract from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa regarding king Viśvantara who, after at first attempting to prevent the Syāparṇa Brāhmans from officiating at his sacrifice, became at length convinced by one of their number of their superior knowledge, and accepted their services. In the seventeenth section (pp. 440–442) a story is told of Matanga, the spurious offspring of a Brāhman woman by a man of inferior caste, who failed, in spite of his severe and protracted austerities, to elevate himself (as Viśvāmitra had done) to the rank of a Brāhman. The eighteenth section (pp. 442–479) contains a series of legends, chiefly from the Mahābhārata, regarding the repeated exterminations of the Kshattriyas by the warlike Brāhman Paraśurāma of the race of Bhṛigu, and the ultimate restoration of the warrior tribe, and a variety of extravagant illustrations of the supernatural power of the Brāhmans, related by the god Vāyu to king Arjuna, who began by denying the superiority of the priests, but was at length compelled to succumb to the overwhelming evidence adduced by his aerial monitor.

In the fifth chapter (pp. 480–488) I have given some account of the opinions entertained by Manu, and the

authors of the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas, regarding the origin of the tribes dwelling within, or adjacent to, the boundaries of Hindustan, but not comprehended in, the Indian caste-system.

The sixth and concluding chapter (pp. 489-504) contains the Puranic accounts of the parts of the earth exterior to Bhāratavarsha, or India, embracing first, the other eight Varshas or divisions of Jambudvīpa, the central continent; secondly, the circular seas and continents (dvīpas) by which Jambudvīpa is surrounded; and, thirdly, the remoter portions of the mundane system.

The Appendix (pp. 505-515) contains some supplementary notes.

As in the previous edition, I have been careful to acknowledge in the text and notes of this volume the assistance which I have derived from the writings of the different Sanskrit Scholars who have treated of the same subjects. It will, however, be well to specify here the various publications to which I have been indebted for materials. In 1858, I wrote thus: "It will be seen at once that my greatest obligations are due to Professor H. H. Wilson, whose translation of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, with abundant and valuable notes, derived chiefly from the other Purāṇas, was almost indispensable to the successful completion of such an attempt as the present." In this second edition also I have had constant occasion to recur to Wilson's important work, now improved and enriched by the additional notes of the editor Dr. Fitzedward Hall. It is to his edition, so far as it has yet ap-

peared, that my references have been made. I acknowledged at the same time the aid which I had received from M. Langlois' French translation of the *Harivaṃśa*, and from M. Burnouf's French translation of the first nine books of the *Bhāgavata Purāṇa*, which opened up an easy access to the contents of the original works. A large amount of materials has also been supplied to me, either formerly or for the preparation of the present edition, by Mr. Colebrooke's *Miscellaneous Essays*; by Professor C. Lassen's *Indian Antiquities*; Professor Rudolph Roth's *Dissertations on the Literature and History of the Vedas*, and contributions to the *Journal of the German Oriental Society*, and to *Weber's Indische Studien*, etc.; Professor Weber's numerous articles in the same *Journals*, and his *History of Indian Literature*; Professor Max Müller's *History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, *Chips from a German Workshop*, article on the Funeral rites of the *Brāhmins*, etc.; Professor Benfey's *Glossary of the Sāma Veda*, and translations of *Vedic hymns*; Dr. Haug's text and translation of the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*: while much valuable aid has been derived from the written communications with which I have been favoured by Professor Aufrecht, as well as from his *Catalogue of the Bodleian Sanskrit MSS.* I am also indebted to Professor Müller for pointing out two texts which will be found in the Appendix, and to Professor Goldstücker for copying for me two passages of *Kumārila Bhaṭṭa's Mīmāṃsā-vārttika*, which are printed in the same place, and for making some corrections in my translations of them.

I formerly observed that at the same time my own researches had “enabled me to collect a good many texts which I had not found elsewhere adduced ;” and the same remark applies to a considerable portion of the new matter which has been adduced in the present edition.

CONTENTS.

PAGES.

v.—xvi. PREFACE.

1—6. INTRODUCTION, CONTAINING A PRELIMINARY SURVEY OF
THE SOURCES OF INFORMATION.

7—160. CHAPTER I.—MYTHICAL ACCOUNTS OF THE CREATION OF
MAN, AND OF THE ORIGIN OF THE FOUR CASTES.

7— 15. SECT. I. Ninetieth hymn of the tenth Book of the Rig-
veda Sanhitā, called Purusha-Sūkta, or the hymn to
Purusha.

15— 16. SECT. II. Quotation from the Taittiriya Sanhitā, vii. 1,
1, 4 ff.

17— 22. SECT. III. Citations from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, the
Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa, the Vāyasaneī Sanhitā, and the
Atharva-veda.

22— 34. SECT. IV. Further quotations from the Taittiriya Brāh-
maṇa, Sanhitā, and Āraṇyaka, and from the Śatapatha
Brāhmaṇa.

35— 42. SECT. V. Manu's account of the origin of castes.

43— 49. SECT. VI. Account of the system of yugas, manvantaras,
and kalpas, according to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa and other
authorities.

49— 73. SECT. VII. Account of the different creations, including
that of the castes, according to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, with
some passages from the Brāhmaṇas, containing the germs
of the Puranic statements.

74—107. SECT. VIII. Account of the different creations, including
that of the castes, according to the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya
Purāṇas.

- PAGES.
- 107—114. SECT. IX. Legend of Brahmā and his daughter, according to the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and of Satarūpā, according to the Matsya Purāṇa.
- ✓ 114—122. SECT. X. Quotations from the Rāmāyaṇa on the creation, and on the origin of castes.
- 122—155. SECT. XI. Quotations from the Mahābhārata and Harivaṁśa on the same subjects, and on the four yugas.
- 155—158. SECT. XII. Citations from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa on the creation and on the origin of castes.
- 159—160. SECT. XIII. Results of this chapter.
- 161—238. CHAPTER II. — TRADITION OF THE DESCENT OF THE INDIAN RACE FROM MANU.
- 162—181. SECT. I. On Manu as the progenitor of the Āryan Indians and the institutor of religious rites, according to the hymns of the Rig-veda.
- 181—196. SECT. II. Legend of Manu and the deluge from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, and other notices regarding Manu from the Satapatha, Aitareya, and Taittirīya Brāhmaṇas, the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, and the Chāndogya Upanishad.
- 196—220. SECT. III. Extracts from the Mahābhārata and the Matsya, Bhāgavata, and Agni Purāṇas regarding Manu, and the deluge; and comparison of the versions of this legend adduced in this and the preceding section.
- 220—238. SECT. IV. Legendary accounts of the origin of castes among the descendants of Manu and Atri, according to the Purāṇas.
- 239—295. CHAPTER III. — ON THE MUTUAL RELATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF INDIAN SOCIETY, ACCORDING TO THE HYMNS OF THE RIG- AND ATHARVA-VEDAS.
- 240—265. SECT. I. On the signification of the words brāhmān and brāhmaṇa, etc., in the Rig-veda.
- 265—280. SECT. II. Quotations from the Rig-veda, the Nirukta, the Mahābhārata and other works, to show that according to ancient Indian tradition persons not of priestly families were authors of Vedic hymns, and exercised priestly functions.
- 280—289. SECT. III. Texts from the Atharva-veda, illustrating the progress of Brahmanical pretensions.
- 289—295. SECT. IV. Opinions of Professor R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug regarding the origin of caste among the Hindus.

- PAGES.
- 296—400. CHAPTER IV.—EARLY CONTESTS BETWEEN THE BRĀHMANAS AND THE KSHATTRIYAS.
- 296—298. SECT. I. Manu's summary of refractory and submissive monarchs.
- 298—306. SECT. II. Legend of Veṇa.
- 306—307. SECT. III. Legend of Purūravas.
- 307—315. SECT. IV. Story of Nahusha.
- 316—317. SECT. V. Story of Nimi.
- 317—337. SECT. VI. Vasishṭha, according to the Rig-veda and later works.
- 337—371. SECT. VII. Viśvāmitra, according to the Rig-veda, Aitareya Brāhmaṇa and later authorities; earlier and later relations of priestly families and the other classes.
- 371—375. SECT. VIIa. Do the details in the last two sections enable us to decide in what relation Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra stood to each other as priests of Sudās?
- 375—378. SECT. VIII. Story of Triśanku.
- 379—388. SECT. IX. Legend of Hariśchandra.
- 388—397. SECT. X. Contest of Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra, and entrance of the latter into the Brāhman caste, according to the Mahābhārata.
- 397—411. SECT. XI. The same legend, and those of Triśanku, and Ambarīsha, according to the Rāmāyaṇa, with a further story about Viśvāmitra from the Mahābhārata.
- 411—414. SECT. XII. Other accounts from the Mahābhārata of the way in which Viśvāmitra became a Brāhman.
- 414—426. SECT. XIII. Legend of Saudāsa, and further story of the rivalry of Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra, according to the Mahābhārata, with an extract from the Rāja Taranginī.
- 426—430. SECT. XIV. Story from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa about king Janaka becoming a Brāhman, with extracts from the Mahābhārata about the same prince.
- 431—436. SECT. XV. Other instances in which Brāhmanas are said to have been instructed in divine knowledge by Kshatriyas.
- 436—440. SECT. XVI. Story of king Viśvantara and the Śyāparṇa Brāhmanas.
- 440—442. SECT. XVII. Story of Matanga, who tried in vain to raise himself to the position of a Brāhman.

	PAGES.
442—479. SECT. XVIII. Legend of the Brāhman Paraśurāma, the exterminator of the Kshattriyas, according to the Mahābhārata and the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, with a series of narratives from the former work illustrating the superhuman power of the Brāhmins.	
480—488. CHAPTER V. RELATION OF THE BRAHMANICAL INDIANS TO THE NEIGHBOURING TRIBES, ACCORDING TO MANU, THE MAHĀBHĀRATA, AND THE PURĀNAS.	
489—504. CHAPTER VI. PURANIC ACCOUNTS OF THE PARTS OF THE EARTH EXTERIOR TO BHĀRATAVARSHA, OR INDIA.	
505—516. APPENDIX, CONTAINING SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES.	
517—532. INDEX.	

ERRATA ET CORRIGENDA.

Page 23, line 19, for "beingy ellow" read "being yellow."
" 38, " 17 ft., for "59-64" read "58-63."
" 42, " 4 from foot, for "p. 36" read "p. 37."
" 46, " 26, for "p. 42" read "p. 43."
" 47, " 8, for "12,826" read "iii. 826."
" 51, " 17, for "Purushottasna" read "Purushottama."
" 123, " 19, for "to" read "tu."
" 127, " 18 f., for "the two by which these three are followed," read "two of those which follow, viz. in pp. 134 and 139."
" 136, " 18, for "116" read "11 and 12."
" 169, " 26, for "Vivaswat" read "Vivasvat."
" 170, " 28 and 33, for "Mātariśwan" read "Mātariśvan."
" 171, " 26, for "Aswins" read "Asvins."
" 180, " 28, before "Prajūpatir" insert "ii. 33."
" 194, " 5, for "mū bhaja" read "mū ābhaja."
" 221, " 20, before "Prishadhras" insert "iv. 1, 12."
" 222, " 7, for "ix. 2" read "ix. 2, 16."
" — " 13, before "Nābhūgo" insert "iv. 1, 14."
" 235, " 19, for "iv." read "ix."
" 251, " 27, for "3" read "2."
" 258, " 3 from the foot, for "viii." read "vii."
" 274, " 8, for "Dilipūt" read "Dulipāt."
" 280, " 14, for "was" read "were."
" 307, " 10, for "virūt" read "virūṇ."
" 308, " 24, before "Nakusho" insert "12460."
" 318, " 4, for "139 f." read "161 f."
" 371, " 12, for "vii." read "viii."
" 399, " 18, for "58, 18" read "56, 18."
" 487, " 2, for "thei rdesertion" read "their desertion."

ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXTS.

PART FIRST.

INTRODUCTION

CONTAINING A PRELIMINARY SURVEY OF THE SOURCES OF INFORMATION.

I PROPOSE in the present volume to give some account of the traditions, legends, and mythical narratives which the different classes of ancient Indian writings contain regarding the origin of mankind, and the classes or castes into which the Hindus have long been distributed. In order to ascertain whether the opinions which have prevailed in India on these subjects have continued fixed and uniform from the earliest period, or whether they have varied from age to age, and if so, what modifications they have undergone, it is necessary that we should first of all determine the chronological order of the various works from which our information is to be drawn. This task of classification can, as far as regards its great outlines, be easily accomplished. Although we cannot discover sufficient grounds for fixing with any precision the dates of these different books, we are perfectly able to settle the order in which the most important of those which are to form the basis of this investigation were composed. From a comparison of these several literary records, it will be found that the Hindus, like all other civilized nations, have passed through various stages of development,—social, moral, religious, and intellectual. The ideas and beliefs which are exhibited in their oldest documents, are not the same as those which we encounter in their later writings.

The principal books to which we must look for information on the subjects of our enquiry are the Vedas, including the Brāhmaṇas and Upanishads, the Sūtras, the Institutes of Manu, and the Itihāsas and Purāṇas. Of these different classes of works, the Vedas are allowed by all competent enquirers to be by far the most ancient.

There are, as every student of Indian literature is aware, four Vedas,—the Rig-veda, the Sāma-veda, the Yajur-veda, and the Atharva-veda. Each of the collections of works known as a Veda consists of two parts, which are called its *mantra* and its *brāhmaṇa*.¹ The Mantras are either metrical hymns, or prose forms of prayer. The Rig-veda and the Sāmaveda consist only of mantras of the former description. The Brāhmaṇas contain regulations regarding the employment of the mantras, and the celebration of the various rites of sacrifice, and also embrace certain treatises called Āraṇyakas, and others called Upanishads or Vedāntas (so called from their being the concluding portions of each Veda), which expound the mystical sense of some of the ceremonies, and discuss the nature of the godhead, and the means of acquiring religious knowledge with a view to final liberation.

The part of each Veda which contains the mantras, or hymns, is called its Sanhitā.² Thus the Rig-veda Sanhitā means the collection of hymns belonging to the Rig-veda. Of the four collections of hymns, that belonging to the last-mentioned Veda, which contains no less than 1,017 of these compositions, is by far the most important for historical purposes. Next in value must be reckoned those hymns of the Atharva-veda, which are peculiar to that collection, another portion of which, however, is borrowed, in most cases, verbatim, from the Rig-veda.³

¹ Sāyana says in his commentary on the Rigveda (vol. p. i. p. 4). *Mantra-brāhmaṇātmanakam tīrad aduṣṭam lakṣaṇam | ata eva Āpastambo yajña-paribhāṣāyām evāha 'mantra-brāhmaṇayor veda-nūmadheyam' |* "The definition (of the Veda) as a book composed of *mantra* and *brāhmaṇa*, is unobjectionable. Hence Āpastamba says in the Yajñaparibhāṣā, 'Mantra and Brāhmaṇa have the name of Veda.'"

² This definition applies to all the Sanhitās, except that of the Taittirīya, or Black Yajur, Veda, in which Mantra and Brāhmaṇa are combined. But even this Sanhitā had a separate Brāhmaṇa connected with it. See Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 350, and Weber's *Indische Literaturgeschichte*, p. 83. The general character of the Vājasaneyi and Atharva Sanhitās is not affected by the fact that the last section of the former is an Upanishad, and that the fifteenth book of the latter has something of the nature of a Brāhmaṇa.

³ For further information on the Vedas, reference may be made to Professor Max Müller's *Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, *passim*, and also to vols. ii. iii. and iv. of the present work.

From this succinct account of the contents of the Vedas, it is clear that the Mantras must constitute their most ancient portions, since the Brāhmanas, which regulate the employment of the hymns, of necessity pre-suppose the earlier existence of the latter. On this subject the commentator on the Taittirīya, or Black Yajur-veda, Sanhitā thus expresses himself (p. 9 of the Calcutta edition):—

Yadyapi mantrabrāhmaṇātmaḥ vedas tathāpi brāhmaṇasya mantravyākṛhāna-rūpatvād mantrā evādan samūmnātāḥ | “Although the Veda is formed both of Mantra and Brāhmaṇa, yet as the Brāhmaṇa consists of an explanation of the Mantras, it is the latter which were at first recorded.”⁴

The priority of the hymns to the Brāhmaṇas is accordingly attested by the constant quotations from the former which are found in the latter.⁵ Another proof that the hymns are far older than any other portion of Indian literature is to be found in the character of their language. They are composed in an ancient dialect of the Sanskrit, containing many words of which the sense was no longer known with certainty in the age of Yāska, the author of the Nirukta,⁶ and many grammatical forms which had become obsolete in the time of the great grammarian Pāṇini, who refers to them as peculiar to the hymns (*chhandas*).⁷ A third argument in favour of the greater antiquity of the mantras is supplied by the fact that the gods whom they represent as the most prominent objects of adoration, such as Indra and Varuṇa, occupy but a subordinate position in the Itihāsas and Purāṇas, whilst others, viz., Viṣṇu and Rudra, though by no means the most important deities of the hymns, are exalted to the first rank, and assume a different character, in the Puranic pantheon.⁸

⁴ See also the passage quoted from the Nirukta in p. 174 of the 2nd vol. of this work, and that cited from Sāyana in p. 195 of the same vol. Compare the following passage of the Mūṇḍaka Upaniṣad, i. 2. 1 *Tad etat satyam mantrēṣu karmāṇi karāya yāny apaśyams tāni tretāyām bahudhā santatāni* | “This is true the rites which the rishis saw (i.e. discovered by revelation) in the hymns—these rites were in great variety celebrated in the Tretā (age).”

⁵ See vol. ii. of this work, p. 195, and the article on the “Interpretation of the Veda” in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. ii. new series, pp. 316 ff.

⁶ See vol. ii. of this work, pp. 178 ff. and my article on the “Interpretation of the Veda” in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. ii. new series, pp. 323 ff.

⁷ See vol. ii. of this work, pp. 216 ff.

⁸ See vol. ii. of this work, 212 ff. and vol. iv. 1, 2, and *passim*.

On all these grounds it may be confidently concluded that the mantras, or hymns, of the Rig-veda are by far the most ancient remains of Indian literature. The hymns themselves are of different periods, some being older, and some more recent. This is shown not only by the nature of the case,—as it is not to be supposed that the whole of the contents of such a large national collection as the Rig-veda Sanhitā should have been composed by the men of one, or even two, generations,—but also by the frequent references which occur in the mantras themselves to older rishis, or poets, and to older hymns.⁹ It is, therefore, quite possible that a period of several centuries may have intervened between the composition of the oldest and that of the most recent of these poems. But if so, it is also quite conceivable that in this interval considerable changes may have taken place in the religious ideas and ceremonies, and in the social and ecclesiastical institutions of the people among whom these hymns were produced, and that some traces of these changes may be visible on comparing the different hymns with each other.

No sufficient data exist for determining with exactness the period at which the hymns were composed. Professor Müller divides them into two classes, the Mantras or more recent hymns, which he supposes may have been produced between 1000 and 800 years,—and the older hymns, to which he applies the name of Chhandas, and which he conceives may have been composed between 1200 and 1000 years,—before the Christian era. Other scholars are of opinion that they may be even older (see Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.*, p. 572, and the Preface to the 4th Vol. of the same author's edition of the Rig-veda, pp. iv.-xiii). This view is shared by Dr. Haug, who thus writes in his introduction to the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*, p. 47: "We do not hesitate, therefore, to assign the composition of the bulk of the Brāhmaṇas to the years 1400-1200 B.C.; for the Saṁhitā we require a period of *at least* 500-600 years, with an interval of about two hundred years between the end of the proper Brāhmaṇa period. Thus we obtain for the bulk of Saṁhitā the space from 1400-2000; the oldest hymns and sacrificial formulas may be a few hundred years more ancient still, so that we would fix the very commencement of Vedic literature between 2000-2400 B.C."

⁹ See vol. ii. of this work, pp. 203 ff., and vol. iii. pp. 116 ff., 121 ff.

Next in order of time to the most recent of the hymns come, of course, the Brāhmaṇas. Of these (1) the Aitareya and Sāṅkhāyana are connected with the Rig-veda; (2) the Tāṇḍya, the Panchaviṁśa and the Chhāndogya with the Sāma-veda; (3) the Taittirīya with the Taittirīya or Black Yajur-veda; (4) the Śatapatha with the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā or White Yajur-veda; and (5) the Gopatha with the Atharva-veda.¹⁰ These works, written in prose, prescribe, as I have already intimated, the manner in which the Mantras are to be used and the various rites of sacrifice to be celebrated. They also expound the mystical signification of some of the ceremonies, and adduce a variety of legends to illustrate the origin and efficacy of some of the ritual prescriptions. That in order of age the Brāhmaṇas stand next to the Mantras is proved by their simple, antiquated, and tautological style, as well as by the character of their language, which, though approaching more nearly than that of the hymns, to classical or Pāṇinian Sanskrit, is yet distinguished by certain archaisms both of vocabulary and of grammatical form which are unknown to the Itihāsas and Purāṇas.¹¹ The most recent portions of the Brāhmaṇas are the Aranyakas and Upanishads, of which the character and contents have been already summarily indicated. The remaining works which form the basis of our investigations come under the designation of Smṛiti, as distinguished from that of Śruti, which is applied to the Mantras, Brāhmaṇas, Aranyakas, and Upanishads.

The term Smṛiti includes (1) the Vedāṅgas, such as the Nirukta of Yāska, (2) the Sūtras or aphorisms, *śrauta* and *grihya*, or sacrificial and domestic, etc., (3) the Institutes of Manu, (4) the Itihāsas and Purāṇas. To the class of Itihāsas belong (1) the Rāmāyaṇa (said to be the work of Valmiki), which contains an account in great part, at least, fabulous, of the adventures of Rāma, and the Mahābhārata, which describes the wars and adventures of the Kurus and Pāndus, and embraces also a great variety of episodes and numerous mythological narratives, as well as religious, philosophical, and political discussions, which are interwoven with, or interpolated in, the framework of the poem. This

¹⁰ For further details on these Brāhmaṇas, the reader may consult Professor Max Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 315 ff.; Professor Weber's *Indische Literaturgeschichte*, and *Indische Studien*; and Dr. Haug's *Aitareya Brahmana*.

¹¹ See, for example, the *S. P. Br.* xi. 5, 1, 15; and the *Taitt. Saṁhita*, ii. 2, 10, 2, and ii. 6, 7, 1.

work is said to be the production of Vyāsa, but its great bulk, its almost encyclopædic character, and the discrepancies in doctrine which are observable between its different parts, lead inevitably to the conclusion that it is not the composition of a single author, but has received large additions from a succession of writers, who wished to obtain currency and authority for their several opinions by introducing them into this great and venerated repository of national tradition.¹²

The Purāṇas are commonly said to be eighteen in number, in addition to certain inferior works of the same description called Upapurāṇas. For an account of these books and a summary of their contents, I must refer to the late Professor H. H. Wilson's introduction to his translation of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.¹³

In treating the several topics which are to be handled in this volume, I propose in each case to adduce, first, any texts bearing upon it which may be found in the hymns of the Rig-veda; next, those in the Brāhmaṇas and their appendages; and, lastly, those occurring in any of the different classes of works coming under the designation of Smṛiti. By this means we shall learn what conceptions or opinions were entertained on each subject by the oldest Indian authors, and what were the various modifications to which these ideas were subjected by their successors.

¹² On the Rāmāyaṇa and Mahābhārata, see Professor Monier Williams's "Indian Epic Poetry," which contains a careful analysis of the leading narrative of each of the poems.

¹³ See also the same author's analyses of the contents of the Vishṇu, Vāyu, Agni, and Brāhma-vaivarta Purāṇas in the "Gleanings of Science," published in Calcutta, and those of the Brāhma and Pādma Purāṇas in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, No. ix (1838) and No. x. (1839).

CHAPTER I.

MYTHICAL ACCOUNTS OF THE CREATION OF MAN, AND OF THE ORIGIN OF THE FOUR CASTES.

It will be seen from the different texts to be adduced in this chapter, that from a very early period the Indian writers have propounded a great variety of speculations regarding the origin of mankind, and of the classes or castes into which they found their own community divided. The most commonly received of these explanations is the fable which represents the Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, to have been separately created from the head, the breast or arms, the thighs, and the feet of the Creator. Of this mythical account no trace is to be found in any of the hymns of the Rig-veda, except one, the Purusha Sūkta.

Although for reasons which will be presently stated, I esteem it probable that this hymn belongs to the most recent portion of the Rig-veda, it will be convenient to adduce and to discuss it first, along with certain other texts from the Brāhmaṇas, Itihāsas, and Purāṇas, which professedly treat of the origin of mankind and of caste, before we proceed to examine the older parts of the hymn-collection, with the view of ascertaining what opinion the authors of them appear to have entertained in regard to the earliest history of their race, and to the grounds of those relations which they found subsisting between the different classes of society contemporary with themselves.

SECT. I.—90th Hymn of the 10th Book of the Rig-veda Sanhitā, called
Purusha Sūkta, or the hymn to Purusha.

This celebrated hymn contains, as far as we know, the oldest extant passage which makes mention of the fourfold origin of the Hindu race.

In order to appreciate the character of this passage, we must consider it in connection with its context. I therefore quote the whole of the hymn :¹⁴

R. V. x. 90. 1. *Sahasra-śīrṣhā Puruṣaḥ sahasrākṣaḥ sahasra-pāt | sa bhūmim viśvato rṛitā atyotishṭhad daśāṅgūlam |* 2. *Puruṣaḥ credaṁ sarraṁ yad bhūtaṁ yachcha bhāryam | utāmrītatvasyeśūno yad annenātirohati |* 3. *Etācān asya mahimā ato jyāyāṁścha Pūruṣaḥ | pādo 'sya viśvā bhūtāni tripād asyāmṛitaṁ divi |* 4. *Tripād ūrdhva ud ait Pūruṣaḥ pādo 'syehābhavat punaḥ | tato vishvaṁ vyakrāmat sāsānānaśane abhi |* 5. *tasmād Virāḷ ajāyata Virājo adhi Pūruṣaḥ | sa jāto aty arichyata paśchād bhūmim atho puraḥ |* 6. *Yat Puruṣeṇa harishā devāḥ yajnam atanvata | vāsanto asyāsīd ājyam grīṣhmaḥ idhmaḥ śarad harṣḥ |* 7. *Taṁ yajnam barhishi praukshan Puruṣam jātam agrataḥ | tena devāḥ ayajanta sādhyāḥ ṛishayaś cha ye |* 8. *Tasmād yajñāt sarvakutaḥ sambhṛitam prīṣadājyam | paśūn tāṁś chakre vāyaryān āraṇyān grāmāś cha ye |* 9. *Tasmād yajñāt sarvakutaḥ ṛichāḥ sāmāni jājñire | chhandāṁsi jājñire tasmād yajus tasmād ajāyata |* 10. *Tasmād āśvā ajāyanta ye ke cha ubhayādātaḥ | gāvo ha jājñire tasmāt tasmāj jātāḥ ajāvayāḥ |* 11. *Yat Puruṣam vi adadhuh katidhā vi akalpayan | mukham kim asya kau bāhū kā ūrū pādū nhyete |* 12. *Brāhmaṇo 'sya mukham āsīd bāhū rājanyaḥ kṛitāḥ | ūrū tad asya yad vaiśyaḥ padbhyāṁ śūdro ajāyata |* 13. *chandramāḥ manaso jātaś chakṣoḥ sūryo ajāyata | mukhād Indrāś cha Agnīś cha prāṇād Vāyur ajāyata |* 14. *Nābhyāḥ āsīd antarikṣham śīrṣhṇo dyauḥ samavarttata | padbhyām bhūmīr dīśaḥ śrotrāt tathā lokān akalpayan |* 15. *Saptāsyāsan paridhayaś triḥ sapta samidhaḥ kṛitāḥ | devāḥ yad yajnam tanvānāḥ abadhnan Puruṣam paśūm |* 16. *Yajñena yajnam ayajanta devāś tāni dharmāni prathu-*

¹⁴ The Puruṣa Sūkta is also found in the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā of the White Yajur-veda (31. 1-16) and in the Atharva-veda (19. 6. 1 ff.) See Colebrooke's Miscellaneous Essays, i. 167 f., and note in p. 309 (or pp. 104, and 197, of Messrs. Williams and Norgate's edition). Burnouf's Bhāgavata Purāṇa, vol. i. Preface, pp. exxiii. ff., Wilson's Preface to his translation of the Rīgveda, vol. i. p. xlv.; Professor Roth's remarks in the Journal of the German Oriental Society, i. pp. 78 f.; Muller in Bunsen's Philosophy of Univ. History, vol. i. p. 344, Müller's Anc. Sank. Lit., pp. 570 f., Professor Weber's translation in Indische Studien ix. p. 5; and my own translation, notes and remarks in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 353 ff., and for 1866, pp. 282 f.

māni āsan | te ha nākam mahimānaḥ sachanta yatra pūrve sādhyāḥ santi devāḥ |

“1. Purusha has a thousand heads,¹⁵ a thousand eyes, a thousand feet. On every side enveloping¹⁶ the earth, he overpassed¹⁷ (it) by a space of ten fingers. 2. Purusha himself is this whole (universe), whatever has been and whatever shall be. He is also the lord of immortality, since (or, when) by food he expands.¹⁸ 3. Such is his greatness, and Purusha is superior to this. All existences are a quarter of him ; and three-fourths of him are that which is immortal in the sky.¹⁹ 4. With three quarters Purusha mounted upwards. A quarter of him was again produced here. He was then diffused everywhere over things which eat and things which do not eat. 5. From him was born Virāj, and from Virāj, Purusha.²⁰ When born, he extended beyond the earth, both behind and before. 6. When the gods performed a sacrifice with Purusha as the oblation, the spring was its butter, the summer its fuel, and the autumn its (accompanying) offering. 7. This victim, Purusha, born in the beginning, they immolated on

¹⁵ The Atharva-veda (xix. 6, 1) reads *sahasra-bāhuḥ*, “having a thousand arms,” the transcriber, perhaps, taking the verse literally, and considering that a being in human form, if he had a thousand eyes and a thousand feet, ought only to have five hundred heads, and not a thousand as in the text of the Rig-veda.

¹⁶ For *ṛitēvā* in the R. V. the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā, 31. 1, reads *spṛitrā*, which seems to mean nearly the same.

¹⁷ The word is *atyatishṭhat*. Compare the S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiii. 6. 1, 1, and *atishṭhāvānaḥ* in S'. P. B. iv. 5, 4, 1, 2. Professor Weber renders *atyatishṭhat* “occupies” (Indische Studien, ix. 5).

¹⁸ The sense of this is obscure. Instead of *yad amenātirohati*, the A. V. reads *yad anyenābharat saha*, (“that which,” or, “since he) was with another.”

¹⁹ Compare A. V. x. 8, 7 : *ardhena viśvam bhuvanam jayāna yad asya ardham kva tad babhūva* : “with the half he produced the whole world ; what became of the (other) half of him ?” See also *ibid.* v. 13.

²⁰ This sentence is illustrated by R. V. x. 72, 5, where it is said, *Aditer Dakṣho ajāyata Dakṣād u Aditih pari* | “Aditi was born from Daksha and Daksha from Aditi”—a text on which Yāska remarks (Nirukta, xi. 23) : *tat katham upādāyeta | sanāna-janmānau syātām iti | api vā deva-dharmena itaretara-janmānau syātām itaretutara-prakṛitī* | “how can this be possible ? They may have had a common birth, or, conformably with their nature as deities, they may have been produced from one another, and possess the properties of one another.” Compare A. V. 13. 4. 29 ff., where Indra is said to have been produced from a great many other gods, or entities, and they reciprocally from him. In regard to Virāj, compare the notes on the verse before us in my article on the “Progress of the Vedic religion,” etc., in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, p. 354.

the sacrificial grass. With him the gods, the Sādhyas,²¹ and the rishis sacrificed. 8. From that universal sacrifice were provided curds and butter. It formed those aerial²² (creatures) and animals both wild and tame. 9. From that universal sacrifice sprang the rich and sāmān verses, the metres, and the yajush. 10. From it sprang horses, and all animals with two rows of teeth; kine sprang from it; from it goats and sheep. 11. When (the gods) divided Purusha, into how many parts did they cut him up? what was his mouth? what arms (had he)? what (two objects) are said (to have been) his thighs and feet? 12. The Brāhman was his mouth;²³ the Rājanya was made his arms; the being (called) the Vaiśya, he was his thighs;²⁴ the Sūdra sprang from his feet. 13. The moon sprang from his soul (*manas*), the sun from his eye, Indra and Agni from his mouth, and Vāyu from his breath.²⁵ 14. From his navel arose the air, from his head the sky, from his feet the earth, from his ear the (four) quarters: in this manner (the gods) formed the worlds. 15. When the gods, performing sacrifice, bound Purusha as a victim, there were seven sticks (stuck up) for it

²¹ See on the Sādhyas, Professor Weber's note, Ind. St. ix. 6 f., and the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, p. 395, note.

²² See, however, Vāj. Sanh. xiv. 30, to be quoted below.

²³ Compare the Kaushītaki Brāhmaṇa Upanishad, ii. 9. *atha paurṇamāsyām purastāch chandramasam dṛiśyamānam upatishṭheta etayā eva āvṛitā "somo rājāsi vichakshaṇo pancha mukho'si prayāpatih | brāhmaṇas te ekam mukham | tena mukhena rājno'tsi | tena mukhena mām annādam kuru | rājā te ekam mukham | tena mukhena viśo'tsi | tena mukhena mām annādam kuru | śyenas te ekam mukham "ityādi |* which is thus translated by Mr. Cowell: "Next on the day of the full moon let him in this same way adore the moon when it is seen in front of him (saying), 'thou art Soma, the brilliant, the wise, the five-mouthed, the lord of creatures. The Brāhman is one mouth of thine, with that mouth thou eatest kings, with that mouth make me to eat food. The king is one mouth of thine, with that mouth thou eatest common men, with that mouth make me to eat food. The hawk is one mouth of thine,' etc. The fourth mouth is fire, and the fifth is in the moon itself. I should prefer to render the words *somo rājā'si*, "thou art king Soma,"—"king" being a frequent designation of this god in the Brāhmaṇas. See also M. Bh. iii. 12,962, where Viṣṇu is introduced as saying in the same mystical way. *Brahma vaktram bhugau kshattram ūru me samsthitāḥ viśaḥ | pādau sūdrāḥ bhuvantīme vikramena kramena cha |* "The Brahman is my mouth; the Kshattria is my arms; the Viśas are my thighs; these Sūdras with their vigour and rapidity are my feet."

²⁴ Instead of *ū ū*, "thighs," the Atharva-veda, xix. 6, 6, reads *madhyam*, "middle."

²⁵ The Vāj. S. xxxi. 13, has a different and singular reading of the last half verse. *rotād vāyus'cha prāṇas'cha mukhād agnir ajāyatu |* "From his ear came Vāyu and Prāṇa (breath) and from his mouth Agni."

(around the fire), and thrice seven pieces of fuel were made. 16. With sacrifice the gods performed the sacrifice. These were the earliest rites. These great powers have sought the sky, where are the former Sādhyas, gods."²⁶

I have above (p. 7) intimated an opinion that this hymn does not belong to the most ancient portion of the Rig-veda. This view is, however, controverted by Dr. Haug, who, in his tract on "the origin of Brāhmanism" (published at Poona in 1863), p. 5, writes as follows : "The few scholars who have been engaged in the study of the Vedas unanimously regard this hymn as a very late production of Vedic poetry; but there is no sufficient evidence to prove that. On the contrary, reasons might be adduced to shew that it is even old. The mystical character of the hymn is no proof at all of its late origin. Such allegorical hymns are to be met with in every book of the collection of the mantras, which goes by the name of Rig-veda samhitā. The Rishis, who were the authors of these hymns, delighted in such speculations. They chiefly were suggested to them by the sacrificial rites, which they daily were performing. According to the position which is assigned to it in the Yajur-veda (where it is found among the formulas referring to the human sacrifice), the hymn appears to have been used at the human sacrifices. That, at the earliest period of the Vedic time, human sacrifices were quite common with the Brahmans, can be proved beyond any doubt. But the more eminent and distinguished among their leaders soon abandoned the practice as revolting to human feelings. The form of the sacrifice, however, seems to have been kept for a long time; for the ritual required at that occasion is actually in the Yajur-veda; but they only tied men of different castes and classes to the sacrificial posts, and released them afterwards, sacrificing animals instead of them."

If it could be satisfactorily shewn that this hymn, in the same form as we now possess it, existed contemporaneously with the barbarous practice of human sacrifices which Dr. Haug believes to have at one time prevailed in India, we should, no doubt, have in this circumstance a strong proof of its antiquity. But if it was merely adopted as a part of the ceremonial at a later period, when the immolation of human

²⁶ This verse occurs also in R. V. i. 164. 50, and is quoted in Nirukta, xii. 14. See the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, p. 395, note, already referred to.

beings had ceased to be otherwise than formal and nominal, and animals were substituted as the actual victims, the evidence of its remote antiquity is greatly weakened.

If we now compare the Purusha Sūkta with the two hymns (162 and 163) of the first Mandala of the Rig-veda, it will, I think, be apparent that the first is not adapted to be used at a literal human sacrifice in the same manner as the last two are to be employed at the immolation of a horse. There are, no doubt, some mystical passages in the second of these two hymns, as in verse 3, where the horse is identified with Yama, Āditya, and Trita; and “in the last section of the Taittiriya Yajurveda the various parts of the horse’s body are described as divisions of time and portions of the universe: ‘morning is his head; the sun his eye; the air his breath; the moon his ear,’” etc. (Colebrooke’s Essays, i. 62).²⁷ But the persons who officiate at the sacrifice, as referred to in these hymns, are ordinary priests of the ancient Indian ritual,—the hotṛi, adhvaryu, āvayaj, etc. (i. 162, 5); and details are given of the actual slaughter of the animal (i. 162, 11). The Purusha Sūkta, however does not contain the same indications of the literal immolation of a human victim. In it the sacrifice is not offered to the gods, but by the gods (verses 6, 7, 15, 16); no human priests are mentioned; the division of the victim (v. 11) must be regarded, like its slaughter (v. 7), as the work of the deities only. And the Purusha mentioned in the hymn could not well have been regarded as an ordinary man, as he is identified with the universe (v. 2), and he himself, or his immolation, is represented as the source of the creation (vv. 8, 10, 13, 14), and of the Vedas (v. 9).

As compared with by far the largest part of the hymns of the Rig-veda, the Purusha Sūkta has every character of modernness both in its diction and ideas. I have already observed that the hymns which we find in this collection are of very different periods. This, I believe, is not disputed.²⁸ The authors themselves, as we have seen, speak of newer and older hymns. So many as a thousand compositions of this description could scarcely have been produced within a very short space of time, and there is no reason to suppose that the literary activity of the ancient Hindus

²⁷ Compare the commencement of the Bṛihadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad.

²⁸ See Dr. Haug’s own remarks (quoted above, p. 4) on the period when the hymns were composed.

was confined to the period immediately preceding the collection of the hymns. But if we are to recognize any difference of age, what hymns can we more reasonably suppose to be the oldest than those which are at once archaic in language and style, and naive and simple in the character of their conceptions? and, on the other hand, what compositions can more properly be set down as the most recent than those which manifest an advance in speculative ideas, while their language approaches to the modern Sanskrit? These latter conditions seem to be fulfilled in the Purusha Sūkta, as well as in hymns x. 71 and 72, x. 81 and 82, x. 121, and x. 129.

On this subject Mr. Colebrooke states his opinion as follows (Miscellaneous Essays i. 309, note): "That remarkable hymn (the Purusha Sūkta) is in language, metre, and style, very different from the rest of the prayers with which it is associated. It has a decidedly more modern tone; and must have been composed after the Sanscrit language had been refined, and its grammar and rhythm perfected. The internal evidence which it furnishes serves to demonstrate the important fact that the compilation of the Vedas, in their present arrangement, took place after the Sanscrit tongue had advanced from the rustic and irregular dialect in which the multitude of hymns and prayers of the Veda was composed, to the polished and sonorous language in which the mythological poems, sacred and prophane (*purāṇas* and *cāryas*), have been written."

Professor Max Müller expresses himself in a similar sense (Anc. Sansk. Lit., p. 570 f.): "There can be little doubt, for instance, that the 90th hymn of the 10th book . . . is modern both in its character and in its diction. It is full of allusions to the sacrificial ceremonials, it uses technical philosophical terms, it mentions the three seasons in the order of Vasanta, spring; Grīshma, summer; and Ś'arad, autumn; it contains the only passage in the Rig-veda where the four castes are enumerated. The evidence of language for the modern date of this composition is equally strong. Grīshma, for instance, the name for the hot season, does not occur in any other hymn of the Rig-veda; and Vasanta also, the name of spring, does not belong to the earliest vocabulary of the Vedic poets. It occurs but once more in the Rig-veda (x. 161. 4), in a passage where the three seasons are mentioned in the order of Ś'arad, autumn; Hemanta, winter; and Vasanta, spring.'

Professor Weber (*Indische Studien*, ix. 3) concurs in this view. He observes: "That the Purusha Sūkta, considered as a hymn of the Rig-veda, is among the latest portions of that collection, is clearly perceptible from its contents. The fact that the Sāma-sanhitā has not adopted any verse from it, is not without importance (compare what I have remarked in my *Academical Prelections*, p. 63). The Naigeya school, indeed, appears (although it is not quite certain),²⁹ to have extracted the first five verses in the seventh prapāṭhaka of the first Archika, which is peculiar to it."

We shall see in the following chapter that the word *brāhmaṇa* occurs but rarely in the Rig-veda Sanhitā, while *brāhmaṇ*, "a priest," from which the former is derived, is of constant occurrence. From this circumstance also, it may be reasonably concluded that the hymns in which the derivative occurs are among the latest. The same remark may be made of the word *vaiśya*, as compared with *viś*.³⁰

Mr. Colebrooke's opinion of the character of the Purusha Sūkta is given in the following passage of his "Miscellaneous Essays" (vol. i. p. 161, note; or p. 105 of Williams & Norgate's ed. of 1858); "I think it unnecessary to quote from the commentary the explanation of this curious passage of the Vedas as it is there given, because it does not really elucidate the sense; the allegory is for the most part sufficiently obvious.

In his tract on "on the origin of Brahmanism," p. 4, Dr. Haug thus remarks on verses 11 and 12: "Now, according to this passage, which is the most ancient and authoritative we have on the origin of Brahmanism, and caste in general, the Brahman has not come from the mouth of this primary being, the Purusha, but the mouth of the latter became the Brahmanical caste, that is to say, was transformed into it. The passage has, no doubt, an allegorical sense. Mouth is the seat of speech. The allegory thus points out that the Brahmins are teachers and instructors of mankind. The arms are the seat of strength. If the two

²⁹ See on this subject Weber's foot-note, p. 3.

³⁰ Professor Aufrecht informs me that the word *vaiśya* does not occur in any other hymn of the Rig-veda but the Purusha Sūkta; only once in the Atharva-veda, v. 17, 9. and not at all in the Vāj. Sanh., except in the Purusha Sūkta. The same scholar remarks, as another proof of the comparatively late date of the Purusha Sūkta, that it is the only hymn which refers to the four different kinds of Vedic compositions—*rich*, *samān*, *chandas*, and *yajush*.

arms of the Purusha are said to have been made a Kshattriya (warrior), that means, then, that the Kshattriyas have to carry arms to defend the empire. That the thighs of the Purusha were transformed into the Vaiśya means that, as the lower parts of the body are the principal repository of food taken, the Vaiśya caste is destined to provide food for the others. The creation of the Shudra from the feet of the Purusha, indicates that he is destined to be a servant to the others, just as the foot serves the other parts of the body as a firm support."

But whether the writer of the hymn intended it to be understood allegorically or not, it conveys no distinct idea of the manner in which he supposed the four castes to have originated. It is, indeed, said that the Sūdra sprang from Purusha's feet; but as regards the three superior castes and the members with which they are respectively connected, it is not quite clear which (*i.e.*, the castes or the members) are to be taken as the subjects and which as the predicates, and consequently, whether we are to suppose verse 12 to declare that the three castes were the three members, or, conversely, that the three members were, or became, the three castes.

But whatever may be the sense of the passage, it is impossible to receive it as enunciating any fixed doctrine of the writers of what is called the Vedic age in regard to the origin of the four castes; since we find, if not in the mantras or hymns, at least in the Brāhmaṇas (which, as we have seen in page 2, are esteemed by orthodox Indian writers as being equally with the hymns a part of the Veda), not only (1) texts which agree with the Purusha Sūkta, but also (2) various other and discrepant accounts of the manner in which these classes were separately formed, as well as (3) third a class of narratives of the creation, in which the production of the human race is described without allusion to any primordial distinction of castes.

To the first of these classes (*viz.*, that of texts which coincide more or less exactly with the Purusha Sūkta) belongs the following passage from the Taittirīya Saṁhitā.

SECT. II.—*Quotation from the Taittirīya Saṁhitā*, vii. 1. 1. 4 ff.

*Prajāpatir akūmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa mukhatas trivṛtān nī-
amimīta | tam Agnir devatū 'nrasūyata gāyatrī cchandro rathantaram*

*sāma brāhmaṇo manushyāṇām ajāḥ paśūnām | tasmāt te mukhyāḥ mukhato hy asṛijyantu | uraso bāhubyām panchadaśam nīramimīta | tam Indro devatā 'vasṛijyata trisṭubh chhando bṛihat sāma rājanyo manushyāṇām ariḥ paśūnām | tasmāt te vīryāvanto vīryād hy asṛijyantu | madhy-
 ataḥ saptadaśam nīramimīta | tam Viśvedevāḥ devatāḥ anvasṛijyantu jagatī chhando vairūpam sāma vaiśyo manushyāṇām gūvaḥ paśūnām | tasmāt te ādyā annadhānād hy asṛijyantu | tasmād bhūyāṁso 'nyebhyaḥ | bhūyishṭhāḥ hi devatāḥ anvasṛijyantu | pattāḥ ekaviṁśam nīramimīta | tam anusṭubh chhando 'vasṛijyata vairājam sāma śūdro manushyāṇām āśvaḥ paśūnām | tasmāt tau bhūta-saṅkrāmināv āśvaś cha śūdraś cha | tasmāt śūdro yajne 'navakṛipto na hi devatāḥ anvasṛijyantu | tasmāt pādāv upajīvataḥ | patto hy asṛijyetām |*

“Prajāpati desired, ‘may I propagate.’ He formed the Trivṛit (*stoma*) from his mouth. After it were produced the deity Agni, the metre Gāyatrī, the Sāman (called) Rathantara, of men the Brāhmaṇ, of beasts the goats. Hence they are the chief (*mukhyāḥ*), because they were created from the mouth (*mukhataḥ*). From (his) breast, from (his) arms, he formed the Panchadaśa (*stoma*). After it were created the god Indra, the Trisṭubh metre, the Sāman (called) Bṛihat, of men the Rājanya, of beasts the sheep. Hence they are vigorous, because they were created from vigour. From (his) middle he formed the Saptadaśa (*stoma*). After it were created the gods (called) the Viśvedevas, the Jagatī metre, the Sāman called the Vairūpa, of men the Vaiśya, of beasts kine. Hence they are to be eaten, because they were created from the receptacle of food. Wherefore they are more numerous than others, for the most numerous deities were created after (the Saptadaśa). From his foot he formed the Ekaviṁśa (*stoma*). After it were created the Anusṭubh metre, the Sāman called Vairāja, of men the Śūdra, of beasts the horse. Hence these two, both the horse and the Śūdra, are transporters of (other) creatures. Hence (too) the Śūdra is incapacitated for sacrifice, because no deities were created after (the Ekaviṁśa). Hence (too) these two subsist by their feet, for they were created from the foot ”

SECT. III.—*Citations from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā, and the Atharva-veda.*

The following texts belong to the second class—i.e., that of those which recognize a distinct origination of the castes, but describe their creation differently from the Puruṣa Sūkta :

S. P. Br. ii. 1, 4, 11 ff.—“*Bhūr*” *iti vai Prajāpatiḥ imāṃ ajanayata “bhuvāḥ” ity antarikṣham “svar” iti divam | etāvad vai idam sarvaṃ yāvad ime lokāḥ | sarveṇa eva ādhīyate | “bhūr” iti vai Prajāpatiḥ brahma ajanayata “bhuvāḥ” iti kṣhatraṃ “svar” iti viśam | etāvad vai idam sarvaṃ yāvad brahma kṣhatraṃ viṣṭam | sarveṇa eva ādhīyate | “bhūr” iti vai Prajāpatiḥ ātmānam ajanayata “bhuvāḥ” iti prajāṃ “svar” iti paśūn | etāvad vai idam sarvaṃ yāvad ātmā prajāḥ paśavaḥ | sarveṇa eva ādhīyate |*

“(Uttering) ‘bhūh,’ Prajāpati generated this earth. (Uttering) ‘bhuvāḥ,’ he generated the air, and (uttering) ‘svaḥ,’ he generated the sky. This universe is co-extensive with these worlds. (The fire) is placed with the whole. Saying ‘bhūh,’ Prajāpati generated the Brahman; (saying) ‘bhuvāḥ,’ he generated the Kṣhatra; (and saying) ‘svaḥ,’ he generated the Viś. All this world is so much as the Brahman, Kṣhatra, and Viś. The fire is placed with the whole. (Saying) ‘bhūh,’ Prajāpati generated himself; (saying) ‘bhuvāḥ’ he generated offspring; (saying) ‘svaḥ,’ he generated animals. This world is so much as self, offspring, and animals. (The fire) is placed with the whole.”

Taitt. Br. iii. 12. 9, 2 —*Sarvaṃ hedam brahmaṇā haiva śṛiṣṭam | ṛigbhyo jātam vaiśyam varṇam āhuḥ | yajurvedam kṣattriyasyāhur yonim | sāmavedo brāhmaṇānām prasūtiḥ | pūrve pūrvebhyo vacha etad āhuḥ |*

“This entire (universe) has been created by Brahman. Men say that the Vaiśya class was produced from ṛich-verses. They say that the Yajur-veda is the womb from which the Kṣattriya was born. The Sāma-veda is the source from which the Brāhmins sprang. This word the ancients declared to the ancients.”

To complete his account of the derivation of the castes from the

Vedas, the author had only to add that the Sūdras had sprung from the Atharvāṅgirasas (the Atharva-veda); but he perhaps considered that to assign such an origin to the servile order would have been to do it too great an honour.

Vājasaneyā Sanhitā, xiv. 28 ff. (= Taittirīya Sanhitā, iv. 3, 10, 1).—*ekayā astuvata prajāḥ adhīyantu Prajāpatir adhipatir āsit | tisribhir astuvata brahma asṛijyata Brahmanaspatir adhipatir āsit | pañcabhir astuvata bhūtāny asṛijyanta Bhūtānāmpatir adhipatir āsit | saptabhir astuvata sapta ṛishayo 'sṛijyanta Dhātū adhipatir āsit | navabhir astuvata pitaro 'sṛijyanta Aditir adhipatir āsit | ekādaśabhir astuvata ṛitaro 'sṛijyantu ārtavāḥ adhipatayaḥ āsan | trayodaśabhir astuvata māsā asṛijyanta samvatsaro 'dhipatir āsit | pañchadaśabhir astuvata kshattram asṛijyanta Indro 'adhipatir āsit | saptadaśabhir astuvata paśavo 'sṛijyanta Bṛihaspatir adhipatir āsit | navadaśabhir astuvata śūdrāryāv asṛijyetām ahorātre adhipatir āstām | ekaviṃśatyā astuvata ekaśaphāḥ paśavo 'sṛijyanta Varuṇo 'dhipatir āsit | trayoviṃśatyā astuvata kshudrāḥ paśavo 'sṛijyanta Pūshā adhipatir āsit | panchaviṃśatyā astuvata aranyāḥ paśavo 'sṛijyanta Vāyur adhipatir āsit | sapnaviṃśatyā astuvata dyāuḥ prithivī vyaitām | Vasavo Rudrā Adityāḥ anuyāyan | te eva adhipatayaḥ āsan | navaviṃśatyā astuvata vanaspatayo 'sṛijyantu Somo 'dhipatir āsit | ekatriṃśatā astuvata prajā asṛijyantu yavās cha ayavās cha adhipatayaḥ āsan | trayastriṃśatā astuvata bhūtāny asāmyan Prajāpatiḥ Parameshthī adhipatir āsit |*

“He lauded with one. Living beings were formed: Prajāpati was the ruler. He lauded with three: the Brahman (Brāhman) was created: Brahmanaspati was the ruler. He lauded with five: existing things were created: Bhūtānāmpati was the ruler. He lauded with seven: the seven rishis were created: Dhātṛi was the ruler. He lauded with nine: the Fathers were created: Aditi was the ruler. He lauded with eleven: the seasons were created: the Ārtavas were the rulers. He lauded with thirteen: the months were created: the year was the ruler. He lauded with fifteen: the Kshattrā (the Kshattriya) was created: Indra was the ruler. He lauded with seventeen: animals were created: Bṛihaspati was the ruler. He lauded with nineteen: the Sūdra and the Arya (Vaiśya) were created: day and night were the rulers. He lauded with twenty-one: animals with undivided hoofs were created: Varuṇa was the ruler. He lauded with twenty-three:

small animals were created: Pūshan was the ruler. He lauded with twenty-five: wild animals were created: Vāyu was the ruler (compare R.V. x. 90, 8). He lauded with twenty-seven: heaven and earth separated: Vasus, Rudras, and Ādityas separated after them: they were the rulers. He lauded with twenty-nine: trees were created: Soma was the ruler. He lauded with thirty-one: living beings were created: The first and second halves of the month³¹ were the rulers. He lauded with thirty-one: existing things were tranquillized: Prajāpati Parameshthīn was the ruler." This passage is explained in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa viii. 4, 3, 1 ff.

The following text is of a somewhat mystical description; but appears to intimate a distinction in nature between the different castes corresponding to that of the gods with whom they are associated:

S. P. Br. xiv. 4, 2, 23 (= Brīhadāranyaka Upanishad, i. 4, 11 ff. (p. 235).—*Brahma vai idam agre āsīd ekam eva? | tad ekaṁ san na vyabharat | | tat śreyo rūpam aty asṛijata kshattriṇāṁ yāny etāni devatrā kshattriṇi Indro Varuṇaḥ Somo Rudraḥ Parjanya Yamo Mṛityur Īśanaḥ iti | tasmāt kshattrāt param nāsti | tasmād brāhmaṇaḥ kshattriyād adhastād upāste rājasūye kshattre eva tad yaśo dadhāti | sū eṣhū kshattrasya yonir yad brahma | tasmād yadyapi rājā paramatām gachhati brahma eva antataḥ upaniśrayati svām yonim | yaḥ u ha enaṁ hinasti svām sa yonim ricchhati | sa pāpīyān bhavati yathā śreyāṁsum hiṁsitvā | 24. Sa na eva vyabharat | sa viśam asṛijata yāny etāni deva-jātāni gaṇasāḥ ākhyāyante vasavo rudrāḥ ādityāḥ viśvedevāḥ marutaḥ iti | 25. Sa na eva vyabharat | sa śaudram varṇam asṛijata pūṣaṇam | iyaṁ vai pūṣhū iyaṁ hi idam sarvaṁ pushyati yad idaṁ kincha | 26. Sa na eva vyabharat | tat śreyo rūpam aty asṛijata dharmam | tad etat kshattrasya kshattriṇāṁ yad dharmāḥ | tasmād dharmāt param nāsti | atho abaliyān baliyāṁsam āsaṁśate dharmena yathā rājñā evam | yo vai sa dharmāḥ satyaṁ vai tat | tasmāt satyaṁ vadantam āhur "dharmam vadati" iti | dharmāṁ vā*

³¹ The Taittiriya Saṁhitā reads *yāvāḥ* and *ayāvāḥ* (instead of *yāvāḥ* and *ayāvāḥ* as in the Vājasaneyī Saṁhitā) and in another passage, v. 3, 4, 5 (as I learn from Prof. Aufrecht), explains these terms to mean respectively months and half months (*māsā vai yāvāḥ aśdhamāsāḥ ayāvāḥ*), whilst the commentator on the V. S. understands them to mean the first and second halves of the month, in accordance with the S. P. B. viii. 4, 3, 18, and viii. 4, 2, 11 (*pūrcapakṣhū vai yāvāḥ aparapakṣha ayāvāḥ | te hi idaṁ sarvaṁ yuvate chāyuvate cha*) | Prof. Aufrecht also points out that *yāva* is explained in Kātyāyana's Śrauta Sūtras, iv. 11, 8, as equivalent to *yavamayoṃ apūpam*, "a cake of barley."

radantam "satyam vadati" iti | etad hy eva etad ubhayam bhavati |
 27. *Tad etad brahma kshattram viṣ sūdrah | tad Agnīnā eva deveshu*
brahmābhavad brāhmaṇo manushyeshu kshattriyena kshattriyo vaiśyena
vaiśyah śūdreṇa sūdrah | tasmād Agnāv eva deveshu lokam ichhante
brāhmaṇe manushyeshu | etābhyām hi rūpabhyām brahma abhavat |

23. "Brahma (here, according to the commentator, existing in the form of Agni, and representing the Brāhman caste³²) was formerly this (universe), one only. Being one, it did not develope. It energetically created an excellent form, the Kshattrā, viz., those among the gods who are powers (*kshattrāṇi*), Indra, Varuṇa, Soma, Rudra, Parjanya, Yama, Mṛityu, Īśāna. Hence nothing is superior to the Kshattrā. Therefore the Brāhman sits below the Kshattriya at the rājasūya-sacrifice; he confers that glory on the Kshattrā (the royal power).³³ This, the Brahma, is the source of the Kshattrā. Hence, although the king attains supremacy, he at the end resorts to the Brahma as his source. Whoever destroys him (the Brāhman) destroys his own source. He becomes most miserable, as one who has injured a superior. 24. He did not develope. He created the Viś—viz., those classes of gods who are designated by troops, Vasus, Rudras, Ādityas, Viśvedevas, Maruts. 25. He did not develope. He created the Sūdra class, Pūshan. This earth is Pūshan: for she nourishes all that exists. 26. He did not develope. He energetically created an excellent form, Justice (*Dharma*). This is the ruler (*kshattrā*) of the ruler (*kshattrā*), namely, Justice. Hence nothing is superior to justice. Therefore the weaker seeks (to overcome) the stronger by justice, as by a king. This justice is truth. In consequence they say of a man who speaks truth, 'he speaks

³² *Atra yad ūtma-sabdenoktaṁ sraśṭṛi Brahma tad Agnīṁ sṛiṣṭvā agre Agni-rūpāpannam Brāhmaṇa-jāty-abhimūnavad asmin vākye Brahma-sabdenūbhīḥyate |*

³³ This rendering of the last few words is suggested by Professor Aufrecht. The commentators understand them to mean that the Brāhmins give the king their own glory (that of being a Brahman) and they refer to a formula by which at the rājasūya-sacrifice the king, after addressing the priest as Brāhman, is addressed in return with the word "Thou, king, art a Brāhmān" (*tvam rājan brahmāsi*), etc. See the Taittirīya Sanhitā i. 8, 16, 1, where the commentator remarks. "As in common life domestic priests and others, sitting below a king seated on his throne after his return from conquering a foreign territory, address him with many benedictions and eulogies, so here too service is presented. By this benedictory service the power of cursing and showing kindness existing in the Brāhmins is transferred to the king." Reference is then made to the passage before us, as noticing this custom.

justice;’ or of a man who is uttering justice, ‘he speaks truth.’ For this is both of these. 27. This is the Brahma, Kshattria, Viś, and Sūdra. Through Agni it became Brahma among the gods, the Brāhman among men, through the (divine) Kshattriya a (human) Kshattriya, through the (divine) Vaiśya a (human) Vaiśya, through the (divine) Sūdra a (human) Sūdra. Wherefore it is in Agni among the gods and in a Brāhman among men, that they seek after an abode.”

Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, i. 2, 6, 7.—*Daivyo vai varṇo brāhmaṇaḥ | asuryo śūdraḥ*. “The Brāhman caste is sprung from the gods; the Sūdra from the Asuras.”

Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 2, 3, 9.—*Kūmam eva dāru-pātreṇa duhyāt | śūdraḥ eva na duhyāt | asato vai eṣa sambhūto yat śūdraḥ | ahavir eva tad ity āhur yat śūdro dogdhi iti | agnihotraṁ eva na duhyāt śūdraḥ | tad hi na utpunanti | yadā khalu vai pavitram atyeti atha tad havir iti* | “Let him at his will milk out with a wooden dish. But let not a Sūdra milk it out. For this Sūdra has sprung from non-existence. They say that that which a Sūdra milks out is no oblation. Let not a Sūdra milk out the Agnihotra. For they do not purify that. When that passes beyond the filter, then it is an oblation.”

Atharva-veda, iv. 6, 1.—*Brāhmaṇo jajne prathamo daśaśirṣho dasāsyaḥ | sa somam prathamam papau sa chakārārasmā visham* | “The Brāhman was born the first, with ten heads and ten faces. He first drank the soma; he made poison powerless.”

As the description (which is, perhaps, a fragment of a longer account), stops short here, we are left in the dark as to the author’s ideas about the creation of the other castes. It would have interested us to know how many heads and faces he would have assigned to the other three castes. The student of Indian poetry is aware that the giant Rāvana is represented in the Rāmāyaṇa both as a Brāhman and as having ten heads.

As implying a separate origination of the Rājanya caste, the following text also may find a place here :

Taittirīya Sanhitā, ii. 4, 13, 1.—*Devā vai rājanyāj jāyamānād abibhauḥ | tam antar eva santāṁ dāmnā ’paumbhan | sa vai esho ’pobdho jāyate yad rājanyo | yad vai esho ’napobdho jāyeta vṛittrān ghaṁś charet | yaṁ kāmāyeta rājanyam “anapobdho jāyeta vṛittrān ghaṁś chared” iti tasmai etam aindrā-bārhaspatyaṁ charuṁ nirvapet | aindro vai rājanyo*

brahma Brihaspatiḥ | brahmaṇā eva enaṁ dāṁno 'pombhanād muñchati | hiraṇmayāṁ dāma dakṣiṇā sūkṣhād eva enaṁ dāṁno 'pombhanād muñchati | "The gods were afraid of the Rājanya when he was in the womb. They bound him with bonds when he was in the womb. Consequently this Rājanya is born bound. If he were born unbound he would go on slaying his enemies. In regard to whatever Rājanya any one desires that he should be born unbound, and should go on slaying his enemies, let him offer for him this Aindra-Bārhaspatya oblation. A Rājanya has the character of Indra, and a Brahman is Bṛhaspati. It is through the Brahman that anyone releases the Rājanya from his bond. The golden bond, a gift, manifestly releases from the bond that fetters him."

In the following text of the Atharva-veda, xv. 8, 1, a new account is given of the origin of the Rājanyas :

So 'rajyata tato rājanyo 'jāyata |

"He (the Vrātya) became filled with passion : thence sprang the Rājanya."

And in the following paragraph (A. V. xv. 9, 1 ff) we have the same origin ascribed to the Brāhman also :

Tad yasya evaṁ vidvān vrātyo rājno 'tithir grihān āgachhet śreyāṁsan enaṁ ātmano mānayet | tathā kshattrāya nāvṛiśchate tathā rāshṭrāya nāvṛiśchate | ato vai brahma cha kshattrāṁ cha udatiśṭhatām | te abṛūtām "kam praviśāva" iti |

"Let the king to whose house the Vrātya who knows this, comes as a guest, cause him to be respected as superior to himself. So doing he does no injury to his royal rank, or to his realm. From him arose the Brahman (Brāhman) and the Kshattrā (Kshattriya). They said, 'Into whom shall we enter,' etc."

SECT. IV.—*Further Quotations from the Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa, Saṁhitā, and Āraṇyaka, and from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa.*

The following passages belong to the third of the classes above adverted to, as in the descriptions they give of the creation, while they refer to the formation of men, they are silent on the subject of any separate origination of castes :

Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa, ii. 3, 8, 1.—*Prajāpatir akūmayata “prajāyeya” iti | sa tapo ’tapyata | so ’ntarvān abhavat | sa haritaḥ śyāvo ’bhavat | tasmāt strī antarvatnī harinī satī śyāvā bhavati | sa vijāyamāno garbhena ’atāmyat | sa tāntaḥ kṛishṇa-śyāvo ’bhavat | tasmāt tāntaḥ kṛishṇaḥ śyāvo bhavati | tasya asur eva ajīvat | 2. Tena asunā asurān asṛijata | tad asurānam asuratvaṁ | ya evam asurānām asuratvaṁ veda asumān eva bhavati | na enam asur jahāti | so ’surān sṛishṭvā pitā iva amanyata | tad anu pitṛin asṛijata | tat pitṛinām pitṛitvam | ya evam pitṛinām pitṛitvam veda pitā iva eva svānām bhavati (3) yanty asya pitaro havam | sa pitṛin sṛishṭvā ’manasyat | tad anu manushyān asṛijata | tad manushyānām manushyatvam | yaḥ evam manushyānām manushyatvaṁ veda manasvī eva bhavati na enam manur jahāti | tasmai manushyān sasṛijānāya divā devatrā abhavat | tad anu devān asṛijata | tad devānām devatvam | ya evam devānām devatvaṁ veda divā ha eva asya devatrā bhavati | tāni vai etāni chutvāri ambhāmsi devāḥ manushyāḥ pitaro ’surāḥ | teshu sarveshu ambho nabhaḥ iva bhavati |*

“Prajapati desired, ‘may I propagate.’ He practised austerity. He became pregnant. He became yellow-brown.³⁴ Hence a woman when pregnant, being yellow, becomes brown. Being pregnant with a foetus, he became exhausted. Being exhausted, he became blackish-brown. Hence an exhausted person becomes blackish-brown. His breath became alive. 2. With that breath (*asu*) he created Asuras. Therein consists the Asura-nature of Asuras. He who thus knows this Asura-nature of Asuras becomes a man possessing breath. Breath does not forsake him. Having created the Asuras, he regarded himself as a father. After that he created the Fathers (Pitris). That constitutes the fatherhood of the Fathers. He who thus knows the fatherhood of the Fathers, becomes as a father of his own: (3) the Fathers resort to his oblation. Having created the Fathers, he reflected. After that he created men. That constitutes the manhood of men. He who knows the manhood of men, becomes intelligent. Mind³⁵ does not forsake him. To him, when he was creating men, day appeared in the heavens. After that he created the gods. This constitutes the godhead of the gods. To him who thus knows the godhead of the gods, day appears in

³⁴ *Ñīla-śveta-misra-varṇaḥ*, “of a mixed blue and white colour,” says the Commentator.

³⁵ *Manuḥ* = *manana-śaktiḥ*, “the power of thinking.” Comm.

the heavens. These are the four streams,³⁶ viz., gods, men, Fathers, and Asuras. In all of these water is like the air."

Satapatha Brahmana, vii. 5, 2, 6.—*Prajāpatiṛ vai idam agre āsīd ekaḥ eva | so 'kāmayata "annam sṛjeya prajāyeya" iti | sa prāṇebhyaḥ eva adhi paśūn niramimīta manasaḥ puruṣam cakshuṣo 'śvam prāṇād gām śrotrādarim vācho 'jam | tad yad enān prāṇebhyo 'dhi niramimīta tasmād āhuḥ "prāṇāḥ paśavaḥ" iti | mano vai prāṇānām prathamam | tad yad manasaḥ puruṣam niramimīta tasmād āhuḥ "puruṣaḥ prathamāḥ paśūnām vīryavattamaḥ" iti | mano vai sarve prāṇāḥ | manasi hi sarve prāṇāḥ pratishṭhitāḥ | tad yad manasaḥ puruṣam niramimīta tasmād āhuḥ "puruṣaḥ sarve paśavaḥ" iti | puruṣasya hy ete sarve bhavanti |*

"Prajāpati was formerly this (universe), one only. He desired, 'let me create food, and be propagated.' He formed animals from his breaths, a MAN from his soul, a horse from his eye, a bull from his breath, a sheep from his ear, a goat from his voice. Since he formed animals from his breaths, therefore men say, 'the breaths are animals.' The soul is the first of the breaths. Since he formed a man from his soul, therefore they say, 'man is the first of the animals, and the strongest.' The soul is all the breaths; for all the breaths depend upon the soul. Since he formed man from his soul, therefore they say, 'man is all the animals;' for all these are man's."

S. P. Br. xiv. 4, 2, 1 (= Brihadāranyaka Upanishad, p. 125).—*Ātmā eva idam agre āsīt puruṣa-vidhaḥ | so 'nuvīkshya na anyad ātmano 'paśyat | "so 'ham asmi" ity agre vyāharat | tato 'ham-nāmā abhavat | tasmād apy etarhy āmantrito "'ham ayam" ity eva agre ukṭvā atha anyad nāma prabrūte yad asya bhavati | 2. Sa yat pūrvo 'smāt sarvasmāt sarvān pāpmanaḥ aushat tasmāt puruṣaḥ | oshati ha vai sa taṁ yo 'smāt pūrcam bubhūshati yaḥ evaṁ veda | 3. So 'bibhet | tasmād ekāki bibheti |*

³⁶ The Commentary not very satisfactorily explains this as meaning, "All these four abodes of the gods, etc., are like waters—*i.e.*, suited to yield enjoyment, as ponds, rivers, etc., are fit for bathing, drinking," etc. The phrase is repeated in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 5 (vol. i., p. 79, of Dr. Hall's edition); and in his note Professor Wilson says *ambhūmsi* "is also a peculiar and probably a mystic term." It is explained in the Vāyu Purāṇa, as will be seen further on. The last words of the quotation from the Brāhmaṇa are obscure. In another passage of the same work (iii. 8, 18, 1, 2) the terms *ambhas*, *nabhas*, and *mahas*, are declared to denote respectively "earth," "air," and "sky" (. . . *ayam vai loko 'mbhāmsi . . . antarīkṣam vai nabhāmsi . . . asau vai loko mahāmsi*).

*sa ha ayam ikshānchakre yad "mad anyad nāsti kasmād nu bibhemi" iti | tataḥ eva asya bhayaṁ vīyāya | kasmād hy abheshyat | dvitīyād vai bhayam bharati | 4. Sa vai naiva reme | tasmād ekākī na ramate | sa dvitīyam aichhat | sa ha etāvān āsa yathā strī-pumāmśau samparishvaktau | 5. Sa imam eva ātmānam dvedhā 'pātayat | tataḥ patih patnī cha abharatām | tasmād "idam ardhavṛigalam iva svah" iti ha sma āha Yājñavalkyaḥ | tasmād ākāśaḥ striyā pūryate eva | tām samabharat | tato manushyāḥ ajāyanta | 6. Sā u ha iyam ikshānchakre "kathāṁ nu mā ātmanaḥ eva janayitrā sambhavati hanta tiro 'sāni" iti | 7. Sā gaur abharat vṛishabhaḥ itaras tām sam eva abharat | tato gāvaḥ ajāyanta | 8. Vāḍavā itarā abharat āśvavṛishabhaḥ itaraḥ gardabhī itarā gardabhāḥ itaras tām sam eva abharat | tataḥ ekaśapham ajāyata | 9. Ajā itarā abharat vastāḥ itaraḥ avir itarā meshāḥ itaraḥ | tām sam eva abharat tato 'jāvayo 'jāyanta | evam eva yad idaṁ kiñcha mithunam ā pippilikābhyas tat sarvam asṛijata |*³⁷

"This universe was formerly soul only, in the form of Purusha. Looking closely, he saw nothing but himself (or soul). He first said, 'This is I.' Then he became one having the name of I. Hence even now a man, when called, first says, 'this is I,' and then declares the other name which he has. 2. Inasmuch as he, before (*pūrrah*) all this, burnt up (*aushat*) all sins, he (is called) *purusha*. The man who knows this burns up the person who wishes to be before him. 3. He was afraid. Hence a man when alone is afraid. This (being) considered that 'there is no other thing but myself: of what am I afraid?' Then his fear departed. For why should he have feared? It is of a second person that people are afraid. 4. He did not enjoy happiness. Hence a person when alone does not enjoy happiness. He desired a second. He was so much as a man and a woman when locked in embrace. 5. He caused this same self to fall asunder into two parts. Thence arose a husband and a wife.³⁸ Hence Yājñvanalkya has said that 'this one's self is like the half³⁹ of a split pea.' Hence the void is filled up by

³⁷ This passage has been already translated by Mr. Colebrooke, Essays i. 64, as well as by Dr. Roer, in the Bibliotheca Indica.

³⁸ Manu and S'atarūpā, according to the Commentator.

³⁹ Compare Taitt. Br. iii. 3, 3, 5. *Atho urddho vai eśha ātmano yat patnī* | "Now a wife is the half of one's self," and ibid. iii. 3, 3, 1. *Ayajno vai eśha yo 'patnīkaḥ | na prayāṇi prayāyeraṇ* | "The man who has no wife is unfit to sacrifice. No children will be born to him." We must not, however, suppose from these passages that the

woman.⁴⁰ He cohabited with her. From them MEN were born. 6. She reflected, 'how does he, after having produced me from himself, cohabit with me? Ah! let me disappear.' 7. She became a cow, and the other a bull; and he cohabited with her. From them kine were produced. 8. The one became a mare, the other a stallion, the one a she-ass, the other a male-ass. He cohabited with her. From them the class of animals with undivided hoofs was produced. The one became a she-goat, the other a he-goat, the one a ewe, the other a ram. He cohabited with her. From them goats and sheep were produced. In this manner pairs of all creatures whatsoever, down to ants, were created."

The next passage describes men as descendants of Vivasvat, or the Sun, without specifying any distinction of classes:

Taittirīya Sanhitā vi. 5, 6, 1 f.—*Aditiḥ putrakāmā sādhyebhyo devebhyo brahmaudanam apachat | tasyai uchchheshanāṁ adaduḥ | tat prāśnāt sā reto 'dhatta | tasyai chatvāraḥ Adityāḥ ajāyanta | sā dr̥tīyam apachat | sā 'manyata "uchchheshanād me ime 'jāta | yad agre prāśishyāmi ito me vaśīyāṁso janishyante" iti | sā 'gre prāśnāt sā reto 'dhatta tasyai vyṛiddham āṇḍam ajāyata | sā Adityebhyaḥ eva tr̥tīyam apachat "bhogāya me idam śrāntam astv" iti | te 'bruvan "caraṁ vṛṇāmahai yo 'to jāyātai asmākaṁ sa eko 'sat | yo 'sya prajāyām ṛdhyātai asmākam bhogāya bhavād" iti | tato Vivasvān Adityo 'jāyata | tasya vai iyaṁ prajā yad manushyāḥ | tūsv ekaḥ eva ṛddho yo yajate sa devānāṁ bhogāya bhavati |*

"Aditi, desirous of sons, cooked a Brahmaudana oblation for the gods the Sādhyas. They gave her the remnant of it. This she ate. She conceived seed. Four Adityas were born to her. She cooked a second (oblation). She reflected, 'from the remains of the oblation these sons have been born to me. If I shall eat (the oblation) first, more brilliant

estimation in which women were held by the authors of the Brāhmaṇas was very high, as there are other texts in which they are spoken of disparagingly; such as the following: Taitt. Sanh. vi. 5, 8, 2—*Sa somo nūtiśhata strībhyo gr̥hyamāṇaḥ | tam ghṛitaṁ vajraṁ kṛtvā 'ghnan tam nīrindriyam bhūtam agṛiṇnan | tasmāt striya nīrindriyā adūyādīr api p̥p̥āt p̥m̥sa upostitaram vadanti |* "Soma did not abide, when being poured out to women. Making that butter a thunderbolt they smote it. They poured it out when it had become powerless. Hence women, powerless, and portionless, speak more humbly than even a poor man." (Compare the quotation in the Commentary on the Taitt. Sanhitā, Vol. i. p. 996.) Taitt. Sanh. vi. 5, 10, 3. *Tasmāt striyaṁ jātīm parāsyanti ut p̥m̥m̥sam karanti |* "Hence they reject a female (child) when born, and take up a male." (Compare Nirukta, iii. 1.)

⁴⁰ Compare Taitt. Br. iii. 3, 10, 4. *Prajāyā hi manushyaḥ pūṇah.* "For by offspring a man is completed."

(sons) will be born to me. She ate it first; she conceived seed; an imperfect egg was produced from her. She cooked a third (oblation) for the Ādityas, (repeating the formula) 'may this religious toil have been undergone for my enjoyment.' The Ādityas said, 'Let us choose a boon: let any one who is produced from this be ours only; let anyone of his progeny who is prosperous be for us a source of enjoyment.' In consequence the Āditya Vivasvat was born. This is his progeny, namely MEN.⁴¹ Among them he alone who sacrifices is prosperous, and becomes a cause of enjoyment to the gods."⁴²

The passages next following do not specify separately the creation of men (who must, however, be understood as included along with other beings under the designation *prajāh*, "offspring," or "creatures,") and therefore afford less distinct evidence that their authors did not hold the fourfold origin of mankind.

The first of these extracts is especially interesting, both on account of its own tenor, and because (along with Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 8, 1 ff. quoted in p. 23) it contains the germ of one of the Puranic accounts of the creation which will be adduced in a subsequent section.

Taitt. Br. ii. 2, 9, 1 ff.—*Idam vai agre naiva kinchana āsīt | na dyaur āsīd na prithivī na antariksham | tad asad eva sad mano 'kuruta "syām" iti | tad atapyata | tasmāt tapanād dhūmo 'jāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata tasmāt tapanād Agnir ajāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | 2. Tasmāt tapanāj jyotir ajāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tasmāt tapanād archir ajāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tasmāt tapanād marīchayo 'jāyanta | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tasmāt tapanād udārāḥ ajāyanta | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tad abhram iva*

⁴¹ Compare Taitt. Br. i. 8, 8, 1. *Ādityāḥ vai prayāḥ*, "Creatures are descended from Aditi."

⁴² This story is told also, but with more detail of names and somewhat differently, in Taitt. Br. i. 1, 9, 10 ff. *Aditiḥ putrakūmā sādhyebhyo derebhyo brahmaudanam apachat | tasyai uchchheshanam adaduh | tat prāśnāt | sū reto 'dhatta | tasyai Dhātū cha Aryamā cha ajāyetām | sū dritīyam apachat tasyai uchchheshanam adaduh | tat prāśnāt | sū reto 'dhatta | tasyai Mitrāḥ cha Varuṇas cha ajāyetām | sū tritīyam apachat | tasyai uchchheshanam adaduh | tat prāśnāt | sū reto 'dhatta | tasyai Aṁśaicha Bhagāḥ cha ajāyetām | sū chaturtham apachat | tasyai uchchheshanam adaduh | tat prāśnāt | sū reto 'dhatta tasyai Indrāḥ cha Vivasvāns cha ajāyetām |* "Aditi, desirous of sons, cooked a Brahmaudana oblation to the gods the Sādhyas. They gave her the remnant of it. She ate it. She conceived seed. Dhātri and Aryaman were born to her." She does the same thing a second time, when she bears Mitra and Varuṇa,—a third time, when she bears Aṁsa and Bhaga,—and a fourth time, when she bears Indra and Vivasvat.

*samahanyata | tad vastim abhinat | 3. Sa samudro 'bharat | tasmāt samu-
drasya na pibanti | prajananam iva hi manyante | tasmāt paśor jāyamānād
āpah purastād yanti | tad daśahotā anvasṛijyata | Prajāpatir vai daśa-
hotā | yaḥ evaṁ tapaso vīryyam vidvāms tapyate bhavaty eva | tad vai
idam āpah salilam āsīt | so 'rodīt Prajāpatiḥ (4) "sa kasmai ajñi yady
asyāpratishṭhāyāḥ" iti | yad apsv avāpadyata sā pṛithivy abharat |
yad ryamṛishṭa tad antariksham abharat | yad ūrdhvam udamṛishṭa sā
dyaur abharat | yad arodīt tad anayoḥ rodastvam | 5. Yaḥ evaṁ veda na asya
grihe rudanti | etad vai eshām lokānām janma | ya evam eshām lokānām
janma veda na eshu lokesho ārttim ārchhati | sa imām pratishṭhām avin-
data | sa imām pratishṭhām vittrā akāmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa tapo
'tapyata | so 'ntarvān abharat | sa jaghanād asurān asṛijata | 6. Tebhyo
mṛiṇmaye pātre 'nnam aduhat | yā asya sā tanūr āsīt tām apāhata | sā
tamisrā 'bharat | so 'kāmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | so
'ntarvān abharat | sa prajananād eva prajāḥ asṛijata | tasmād imāḥ
bhūyishṭhāḥ | prajananād hy enāḥ asṛijata | 7. Tābhyo dārumaye pātre
payo 'duhat | yā asya sā tanūr āsīt tām apāhata | sa jyotsnā 'bharat |
so 'kāmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa tapo 'tapyata so 'ntarvān abharat | sa
upapakshābhyām eva ṛitūn asṛijata | tebhyo rajate pātre ghṛitam aduhat |
yā asya sā tanūr āsīt (8) tām apāhata | so 'ho-rātrayoḥ sandhir abharat |
so 'kāmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | so 'ntarvān abharat |
sa mukhād devān asṛijata | tebhyo harite pātre somam aduhat | yā asya sā
tanūr āsīt tām apāhata | tad ahar abharat | 9. Ete vai Prajāpater dohāḥ |
ya evaṁ veda duhe eva prajāḥ | "divā vai no 'bhūd" iti tad devānām
devatraṁ | ya evaṁ devānām devatraṁ veda devavān eva bhavati | etad vai
aho-rātrānām janma | ya evam aho-rātrānām janma veda na aho-rātreshu
ārttim ārchhati | 10. Asato 'dhi mano 'sṛijyata | manāḥ Prajāpatim asṛi-
jata | Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asṛijata | tad vai idam manasy eva paramam
pratishṭhitam yadidaṁ kiñcha | tad etat śvovasyasaṁ nāma Brahma |
vyuchhanti vyuchhanti asmai vasyasī vasyasī vyuchhanti prajāyate prajāyā
paśubhiḥ pra parameshṭhino mātṛām āpnoti ya evaṁ veda |*

"At first this (universe) was not anything. There was neither sky, nor earth, nor air. Being non-existent, it resolved 'let me be.' It became fervent.⁴³ From that fervour smoke was produced. It again

⁴³ The word thus rendered is *atapyata*, which has the sense of "being heated" as well as "practising austere abstraction." I have purposely given an equivocal rendering, which may bear either sense.

became fervent. From that fervour fire was produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour light was produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour flame was produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour rays were produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour blazes⁴⁴ were produced. It again became fervent. It became condensed like a cloud. It clove its bladder. That became the sea. Hence men do not drink of the sea. For they regard it as like the place of generation. Hence water issues forth before an animal when it is being born. After that the Daśahotṛi (a particular formula) was created. Prajāpati is the Daśahotṛi. That man succeeds, who thus knowing the power of austere abstraction (or fervour), practises it. This was then water, fluid. Prajāpati wept, (exclaiming), (4) 'For what purpose have I been born, if (I have been born) from this which forms no support?'⁴⁵ That which fell⁴⁶ into the waters became the earth. That which he wiped away, became the air. That which he wiped away, upwards, became the sky. From the circumstance that he wept (*arodīt*), these two regions have the name of *rodasī*, (worlds). 5. They do not weep in the house of the man who knows this. This was the birth of these worlds. He who thus knows the birth of these worlds, incurs no suffering in these worlds. He obtained this (earth as a) basis. Having obtained (this earth as a) basis, he desired, 'May I be propagated.' He practised austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created Asuras from his abdomen. 6. To them he milked out food in an earthen dish. He cast off that body of his. It became darkness.⁴⁷ He desired, 'May I be propagated.' He practised

⁴⁴ Such is the sense the commentator gives to the word *udārāḥ*, which he makes = *ulvāṇa-jvālāḥ*. Professor Roth (s. v.) explains the word as meaning "fogs."

⁴⁵ This is the mode of rendering suggested to me by Professor Aufrecht. After "if" the Commentator supplies the words—"from this non-existing earth I can create no living creature."

⁴⁶ "Prajāpati's tears," etc., according to the commentator.

⁴⁷ Compare S'. P. Br. xi. 1, 6, 8: *Atho yo 'yam avāṇ prāṇas tena asurān asrijata | te mām eva prithurīm abhipadya asrijyanta | tasmai sasrijūnāya tamaḥ iva āsa |* 9. So 'vet "*pāpmānām vai asrikṣhi yasmai me sasrijūnāya tamaḥ iva abhūd*" *iti | tāms tataḥ eva pāpmanū 'rudhyat | tataḥ eva te parūbhavann ityādi |* "Then he created the Asuras from this lower breath of his. It was only after reaching this earth that they were created. On him, as he continued to create, darkness fell. 9. He understood, 'I have created misery, since darkness has fallen upon me as I was creating.' Then he pierced them with misery, and they in consequence succumbed," etc. The word rendered in the text by "cast off" is applied in Taitt. Sanh. i. 5, 4, 1, to serpents

austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created living beings (*prajāḥ*) from his organ of generation. Hence they are the most numerous because he created them from his generative organ. 8. To them he milked out milk in a wooden dish. He cast off that body of his. It became moon-light. He desired, 'May I be propagated. He practised austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created the seasons from his armpits. To them he milked out butter in a silver dish. He cast off that body of his. It became the period which connects day and night. He desired, 'May I be propagated.' He practised austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created the gods from his mouth.⁴⁸ To them he milked out Soma in a golden dish. He cast off that body of his. It became day. 9. These are Prajāpati's milkings. He who thus knows milks out offspring. 'Day (*divā*) has come to us:' this (exclamation expresses) the godhead of the gods. He who thus knows the godhead of the gods, obtains the gods. This is the birth of days and nights. He who thus knows the birth of days and nights, incurs no suffering in the days and nights. 10. Mind (or soul, *manas*), was created from the non-existent. Mind created Prajāpati. Prajāpati created offspring. All this, whatever exists, rests absolutely on mind. This is that Brahma called *S'vovasyasa*.⁴⁹ For the man who thus knows, (*Ushas*), dawning, dawning, dawns more and more bright; he becomes prolific in offspring, and (rich) in cattle; he obtains the rank of *Parameshthin*."

S. P. Br. vi. 1, 2, 11.—*Attho āhuh | "Prajāpatir eva imān lokān sṛishṭvā prithivyām pratyatishṭhat | tasmai imāḥ oshadhayo 'nam apachyantu | tad āśnāt | sa garbhā abharat | sa ūrdhvebhyah eva prāṇebhyo devān asṛijata | ye 'vāñchaḥ prāṇās tebhyo martyāḥ prajāḥ" iti | yata-mathā 'sṛijata tathā 'sṛijata | Prajāpatis tv eva idaṁ sarvam asṛijata yad idaṁ kiñcha |*

"Wherefore they say, 'Prajāpati, having created these worlds, was shedding their old skins (*sarpāḥ vai jīryanto 'manyanta . . . tato vai te jīrṇās tanū apāghnata*).

⁴⁸ Compare S. P. Br. xi. 1, 6, 7, quoted in the 4th Vol. of this work, p. 22 f.

⁴⁹ The Commentator explains this word to mean "that which each succeeding day becomes transcendently excellent (*uttarottara-dine vaśīyo 'tśayena śreṣṭham*). Here, he says, the highest and absolute Brahma is not meant, but mind, which has the form of Brahma, and, by means of the series of its volitions, is every successive moment more and more world-creating" (*saukalpo-paramparayāṁ pratikṣhaṇam uttarottarāṁ dhika-jagat-sṛaṣṭritrāḍ ūdyig-Brahma-ūpatiḥ nanaḥ prakāṣtam*).

supported upon the earth. For him these herbs were cooked as food. That (food) he ate. He became pregnant. He created the gods from his upper vital airs, and mortal offspring from his lower vital airs. In whatever way he created, so he created. But Prajāpati created all this, whatever exists.”

S. P. Br. x. 1, 3, 1.—*Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asṛijata | sa ūrdhvebhyaḥ eva prāṇebhyo devān asṛijata | ye 'vāñchaḥ prāṇās tebhyo martyāḥ prajāḥ | atha ūrdhvam eva mṛityum prajābhyo 'ttāram asṛijata |*

“Prajāpati created living beings. From his upper vital airs he created the gods; from his lower vital airs mortal creatures. Afterwards he created death a devourer of creatures.”

Taitt. Ar. i. 23, 1.—*Āpo vai idam āsan salilam eva | sa Prajāpatir ekaḥ puṣkara-parṇe samabhavat | tasya antar manasi kāmāḥ samavart-tata “idam sṛijeyam” iti | tasmād yad puruṣho manasā 'bhigachhati tad vūchā vadati tat karmaṇā karoti | tad eshā 'bhyanūktā “kāmas tad agre samavarttatādhi | manaso retāḥ prathamam yad āsīt | 2. Sato bandhum asati niravindan hṛidi pratishyā karayo manishā” iti | upa evam tad upanam-ati yat-kāmo bhavati yaḥ evam veda | sa tapo 'tapyata | sa tapas taptvā śarīram adhūnuta | tasya yad māṁsam āsīt tato 'ruṇāḥ Ketavo Vātara-śanāḥ ṛishayaḥ udatishṭhan | 3. Ye nakhās te Vāikkhānasāḥ | ye bālās te Bālakhilyāḥ | yo rasah so 'pām antarataḥ kūrman bhūtam sarpaṇtam tam abravīt “mama vai traṇ-māṁsā samabhūt” | 4. “na” ity abravīt “pūrvam eva aham iha āsam” iti | tat puruṣasya puruṣatvam iti | sa “sahasra-śīrshā puruṣaḥ sehasrākshaḥ sahasra-pād” bhūtvā udatishṭhat | tam abravīt “tram ve (sic. me or vai?) pūrvam samabhūt tram idam pūrvam kurushva” iti | sa itaḥ ādāya apo (5) 'ñjalīnā purastād upādadhāt “evā hy eva” iti | tataḥ Ādityaḥ udatishṭhat | sū prācī dik | atha Aruṇaḥ Ketur dakṣhiṇataḥ upādadhāt “evā hy Agne” iti | tato vai Agnir udatishṭhat | sū dakṣiṇā dik | atha Aruṇaḥ Ketuḥ pāścād upā-dadhāt “evā hi Vāyo” iti | 6. Tato Vāyur udatishṭhat | sū pratīcī dik | atha Aruṇaḥ Ketur uttaraṭaḥ upādadhāt “evā hi Indra” iti | tato vai Indrah udatishṭhat | sū udīcī dik | atha Aruṇaḥ Ketur madhye upā-dadhāt “evā hi Pūṣhann” iti | tato vai Pūṣhā udatishṭhat | sū iyaṁ dik | 7. Atha Aruṇaḥ Ketur upariṣṭād upādadhāt “evā hi devāḥ” iti | tato deva-manuṣhyāḥ pitaro gandharvāpsarasāś cha udatishṭhan | sū ūr-dhvā dik | yāḥ vipruṣho vi parāpatan tābhyo 'surāḥ rakṣhāṁsi pisachāś-cha udatishṭhan | tasmāt te parābhavan viprudbhyo 'hi samabhavan | tau*

eshā bhyanūktā (8) “*āpo ha yad bṛihatīr garbham āyan dakṣham dadhānāḥ janayantīḥ svayambhūm | tataḥ ime ’dhyasṛijyanta sargāḥ | adbhyo vai idam samabhūt | tasmād idam sarvaṁ Brahma svayambhuḥ*” *iti | tasmād idam sarvaṁ sīthilam iva adhrvām iva abhavat | Prajāpatir vāra tat | ātmanā ātmānaṁ vidhāya tad eva anuprāviśat | tad eśhā ’bhyanūktā* (9) “*vidhāya lokān cidhāya bhūtāni vidhāya sarvāḥ pradiśo dīśāscha | Prajāpatīḥ prathamajāḥ ṛitasya ātmanā ’tmānam abhisāṁviveśa*” *iti |*

“This was water, fluid. Prajāpati alone was produced on a lotus-leaf. Within, in his mind, desire arose, ‘Let me create this.’ Hence whatever a man aims at in his mind, he declares by speech, and performs by act.⁵⁰ Hence this verse has been uttered, ‘Desire formerly arose in it, which was the primal germ of mind, (2) (and which) sages, searching with their intellect, have discovered in the heart as the bond between the existent and the non-existent’ (R. V. x. 129, 4). That of which he is desirous comes to the man who thus knows. He practised austere fervour. Having practised austere fervour, he shook his body. From its flesh the rishis (called) Aruṇas, Ketus, and Vātaraśanas⁵¹ arose. 3. His nails became the Vaikhānasas, his hairs the Bālakhilyas. The fluid (of his body became) a tortoise moving amid the waters.⁵² He said to him, ‘Thou hast sprung from my skin and flesh.’⁵³ 4. ‘No,’ replied the tortoise, ‘I was here before.’ In that (in his having been ‘before’ *pūrvam*) consists the manhood of a man (*puruṣa*). Becoming ‘a man (*puruṣa*) with a thousand heads, a thousand eyes, a thousand feet’

⁵⁰ Compare Taitt. S. vi. 3, 10, 4, (quoted by Roth. s. v. *abhiḡam*) *yad vai hridayena abhiḡachhati taj jīhvaḡā vadati |*

⁵¹ They are mentioned again in Taitt. Ar. i. 24, 4. See Bohtlingk and Roth's Lexicon s.v. Ketu (where the Aruṇa Ketus are stated to be a sort of superior beings or demons); Artharva-veda, xi. 10, 2; Weber's Indische Studien, ii. 177; and the verse of the M. Bh. xii. 774. *Aruṇāḥ Ketavāś chaiva vṛddhigēna divam gatāḥ |* “By sacred study the Aruṇa and Ketus have ascended to heaven.”

⁵² The Sanskrit scholar will observe that the text here is rather obscure. It is either corrupt, elliptical, or grammatically irregular.

⁵³ Here the Sanskrit, if it be not corrupt, must be irregular and incorrect. On the style of the Āraṇyakas, see Mr. E. B. Cowell's Preface to the Kaushītaki Upanishad, p. viii., where it is remarked: “The Āraṇyakas appear to belong to a class of Sanskrit writings, whose history has not yet been thoroughly investigated. Their style, if we may judge from that of the Taittirīya and Kaushītaki, is full of strange solecisms which sometimes half remind us of the gāthās of the Lalita Vistara. The present Upanishad has many peculiar forms, some of which are common to both recensions, while others appear only in one. Such are *nishincha*, in p. 10, *prati* for *praganti*, in p. 51; *saṁvisham*, in p. 56, *ret* for *ryet*, in p. 78, *adūḡham*, in p. 80, etc.”

(R.V. x. 90, 1), he arose. Prajāpati said to him, 'Thou wert produced before me: do thou first make this.' He took water from this (5) in the cavity of his two hands, and placed it on the east, repeating the text, 'so be it, o Sun.'⁵⁴ From thence the sun arose. That was the eastern quarter. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) to the south, saying, 'so be it, o Agni.' Thence Agni arose. That was the southern quarter. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) to the west, saying 'so be it, o Vāyu.' 6. Thence arose Vāyu. That was the western quarter. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) to the north, saying 'so be it, o Indra.' Thence arose Indra. That is the northern quarter. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) in the centre, saying 'so be it, o Pūshan.' Thence arose Pūshan. That is this quarter. 7. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) above, saying 'so be it, o gods.' Thence arose gods, MEN, fathers, Gandharvas and Apsarases. That is the upper quarter. From the drops which fell apart arose the Asuras, Rakshases, and Piśāchas. Therefore they perished, because they were produced from drops. Hence this text has been uttered; (8) 'when the great waters became pregnant, containing wisdom, and generating Svayambhū, from them were created these creations. All this was produced from the waters. Therefore all this is Brahma Svayambhu.' Hence all this was as it were loose, as it were unsteady. Prajāpati was that. Having made himself through himself, he entered into that. Wherefore this verse has been uttered; (9) 'Having formed the world, having formed existing things and all intermediate quarters and quarters, Prajāpati, the firstborn of the ceremonial, entered into himself with himself.' "

From an examination of the legends contained in the Brāhmaṇas, of which some specimens have just been given, it appears (1) that they are generally, if not always, adduced, or invented, with the view of showing the origin, or illustrating the efficacy, of some particular ceremony which the writer wished to explain or recommend; (2) that the accounts which they supply of Prajāpati's creative operations are

⁵⁴ The formula is in the original *añ hy eva*. The Commentator says that the first word means "objects of desire to be obtained," and that the second *eva* signifies "the moving (Sun);" the sense of the entire formula being, "Thou, o Sun, art thyself all objects of desire." The six formulas here introduced had previously occurred at the close of a preceding section, i. 20, 1

various and even inconsistent; and (3) that they are the sources of many of the details which are found in a modified form in the cosmogonies of the Purāṇas.

When we discover in the most ancient Indian writings such different and even discrepant accounts of the origin of man, all put forth with equal positiveness, it is impossible to imagine that any uniform explanation of the diversity of castes could have been received at the period when they were composed, or to regard any of the texts which have been cited as more orthodox and authoritative than the rest. Even, therefore, if we should suppose that the author of the Purusha Sūkta meant to represent the four castes as having literally sprung from separate parts of Purusha's body, it is evident that the same idea was not always or even generally adopted by those who followed him, as a revealed truth in which they were bound to acquiesce. In fact, nothing is clearer than that in all these cosmogonies, the writers, while generally assuming certain prevalent ideas as the basis of their descriptions, gave the freest scope to their individual fancy in the invention of details. In such circumstances, perfect coincidence cannot be expected in the narratives.

We shall hereafter see that the Puranic writers reproduce some of these discrepancies in the traditions which descended to them from earlier generations, and add many new inconsistencies of their own, which they themselves, or their commentators, endeavour to explain away by the assumption that the accounts so differing relate to the occurrences of different Kalpas or Manvantaras (great mundane periods). But of a belief in any such Kalpas or Manvantaras no trace is to be found in the hymns or Brāhmaṇas: and, as we shall hereafter see, they must be held to be the inventions of a later age. The real explanation of these differences in the Brāhmaṇas is that the writers did not consider themselves (as their successors held them) to be infallibly inspired, and consequently were not at all studious to avoid in their narratives the appearance of inconsistency with the accounts of their predecessors

SECT. V.—*Manu's Account of the Origin of Castes.*

I shall first quote a few verses from the beginning of Manu's account of the creation :

i. 8. *So 'bhidyāya śarīrāt svāt śisrikshur vividhāḥ prajāḥ | apa eva sasarjādau tāsu vijam arāṣrijat |* 9. *Tad andam obhavad haumaṁ sahas-rāmśu-sama-prabham | tasmīn jāgne svayam Brahmā sarva-loka-pitā-mahaḥ |* 10. *Āpo nārā iti proktāḥ āpo vai naraśūnarah | tāḥ yad asyāyanam pūrvam tena Nārāyaṇaḥ smṛitah |* 11. *Yat tat kāraṇam avyaktaṁ nityaṁ sad-asadātmakam | tad-viśṛiṣṭaḥ sa puruṣo lok-Brahmeti kīrttyate |* 12. *Tasmīn ande sa bhagavān ushivā parivat-saram | svayam evātmano dhyānāt tad andam akarod dvīdhā |*⁵⁵

"8. He (the self-existent) having felt desire,⁵⁶ and willing to create various living beings from his own body, first created the waters, and threw into them a seed. 9. That seed became a golden egg, of lustre equal to the sun; in it he himself was born as Brahmā, the parent of all the worlds. 10. The waters are called *nārāḥ*, for they are sprung from *Nara*; and as they were his first sphere of motion (*ayana*=path), he is therefore called *Nārāyaṇa*.⁵⁷ 11. Produced from the imperceptible, eternal, existent and non-existent, cause, that male (*puruṣa*) is celebrated in the world as Brahmā. 12. After dwelling for a year in the egg, the glorious being, himself, by his own contemplation, split it in twain."

After a description of various other preparatory creative acts (vv. 13-30) the author proceeds in vv. 31 ff. to inform us how the four castes were produced :

i. 31. *Lokānāṁ tu vivṛiddhyartham mukhabāhūru-pādātah | brāhma-nāṁ kṣhattriyaṁ vaiśyaṁ śūdraṁ cha niravarttayat |* 32. *Dvīdhā kṛit-vātmano deham ardhena puruṣo 'bhavat | ardhena nārī tasyāṁ sa Vīrā-jam aṣrijat prabhuḥ |* 33. *Tapas taptvā 'ṣrijad yaṁ tu sa svayam puruṣo*

⁵⁵ The ideas in this passage are derived (with modifications expressive of the theories current in the author's own age) from the *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa*, xi. 1, 6, 1 ff. (see vol. iv. of this work, p. 21 f.); or from some other similar account in another *Brāhmaṇa*.

⁵⁶ See *S. P. Br* i. 7, 4, 1 *Prajāpatiḥ ha vai svām duhitaram abhūdadhyan.*

⁵⁷ In the *M. Bh.* iii. 12952, *Kṛishṇa* says *apām nārāḥ iti purā souptā-karma kṛitam mayā | tena Nārāyaṇo py ukto mama tat ti ayanaṁ satī |* "The name of *nārāḥ* was formerly assigned by me to the waters: hence, I am also called *Nārāyaṇa*, for there has always been my sphere of motion."

Virāṭ | taṁ māṁ vittāsyā sarvasyā sraśṭāraṁ dviḥ-sattamāḥ | 34. Aham prajāḥ sīṣṛikṣus tu tapas taptvā suduścharam | patin prajānām asṛijam maharshin ādito dāśa | 35. Marīchīm Atryangirasau Pulastya, Pulahaṁ Kratum | Prachetasam Vasishṭhaṁ cha Bhṛiguṁ Nāradaṁ eva cha | 36. Ete Manūṁs tu saptānyān asṛijan bhūritejasah | devān devanikāyāṁś cha maharshīmś chāmitaujasah | 37. Yaksha-rakshaḥ-piśā-chāṁś cha gandharvāpsarasas 'surān | nāgān sarpān suparnāṁś cha pitṛināṁś cha prithaggaṇān | 38. Vidyuto 'śani-meghāṁś cha rohitendra-dhanuṁsi cha | ulkā nirghāta-ketūṁś cha jyotīmshy uchchāvachāni cha | 39. Kinnarān vānarān matsyān vivīdhāṁś cha vihangamān | paśūn mṛigān manushyāṁś cha vyālāṁś chobhayatodatuḥ | 40. Kṛimikīṭa-patangāṁś cha yūkā-makshika-matkunam | sarvāṁś cha dāṁśa-maśakam sthāvaram cha prithagvidham | 41. Eram etair idam sarvam man-niyogād mahātma-bhiḥ | yathākarma tapo-yogāt sṛiṣṭam sthāvaram-jangamam |

31. "That the worlds might be peopled, he caused the Brāhman, the Kshattriya, the Vaiśya, and the Sūdra to issue from his mouth, his arms, his thighs, and his feet.⁵⁸ 32. Having divided his own body into two parts, the lord (Brahmā) became, with the half a male (purusha), and with the half, a female; and in her he created Virāj.⁵⁹ 33. Know, O most excellent twice-born men, that I, whom that male, (purusha)⁶⁰ Virāj, himself created, am the creator of all this world. 34. Desiring to produce living creatures, I performed very arduous devotion, and first created ten Maharshis (great rishis), lords of living beings, (35) viz., Marīchi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Prachetas, Vasishṭha, Bhṛigu, and Nārada.⁶¹ 36. They, endowed with

⁵⁸ On this Kullūka the Commentator remarks. *Daivya cha śaktyā mukhādibhyo brāhmaṇādi-nirmāṇam Brahmano na visankarīyaṁ śruti-siddhatīti* | "It is not to be doubted that, by his divine power, Brahmā formed the Brāhman and the other castes from his mouth and other members, since it is proved by the Veda. He then quotes the 12th verse of the Purusha Sūkta.

⁵⁹ See the Purusha Sūkta, verse 5.

⁶⁰ It will be observed that Manu applies this term *purusha* to three beings, *first* to Brahmā (v. 11), *second* to the male formed by Brahmā from the half of his own body (v. 32), and *third* to Virāj, the offspring of the male and female halves of Brahmā's body (v. 33). It will be noticed that this story of Brahmā dividing his body is borrowed from the passage of the S. P. Br. xiv. 4, 2, 1, quoted above.

⁶¹ In the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, 2 ff., a different account is given of the origin of the world, in which no reference is made to Manu Svāyambhuva. The order of the creation there described is as follows. First everything was water. Then Brahmā Svāyambhū, with the deities, came into existence—Brahmā being said to have sprung

great energy, created⁶² other seven Manus, gods, and abodes of gods, and Maharshis of boundless might; (37) Yakshas, Rakshases, Piśāchas, Gandharvas, Apsarases, Asuras, Nāgas, Serpents, great Birds, and the • different classes of Pitris; (38) lightnings, thunderbolts, clouds, Indra's bows unbent and bent, meteors, portentous atmospheric sounds, comets, and various luminaries; (39) Kinnaras, apes, fishes, different sorts of birds, cattle, deer, MEN, beasts with two rows of teeth; (40) small and large reptiles, moths, lice, flies, fleas, all gadflies and gnats, and motionless things of different sorts. 41. Thus by my appointment, and by the force of devotion, was ALL THIS WORLD BOTH MOTIONLESS AND MOVING, created by those great beings, according to the (previous) actions of each creature."

The different portions of the preceding narrative of the creation of the human species are not easily reconcileable with each other. For it is first stated in verse 31, that men of the four castes proceeded separately from different parts of Brahmā's body,—prior (as it would appear) (1) to the division of that body into two parts and to the successive production (2) of Virāj, (3) Manu, and (4) the Maharshis, who formed all existing creatures. And yet we are told in verse 39, that MEN were among the beings called into existence by those Maharshis, and in verse 41, that the entire MOVING as well as motionless WORLD was their work. It is not said that the men created by the Maharshis were distinct from those composing the four castes, and we must, therefore, assume that the latter also are included under the general appellation of men. But if men of the four castes had been already produced before the formation of all living creatures by the Maharshis, what necessity existed for the men of these castes being a second time called into being as a part of that later creation? It is possible that this

from the æther (*ākāśa*). Brahmā, with his sons, created the world. From Brahmā sprang Marīchi; from Marīchi, Kaś'ya; from Kaś'ya, Vivasvat; and from Vivasvat, Manu Vaivasvata. The original of this passage is quoted in the 4th vol. of this work, p. 29 ff.

⁶² These great rishis seem to be the beings denoted by the word *viśvasṛjāḥ*, "creators of the universe," in the verse of Manu (xii. 50), which will be quoted below. Reference to rishis, or to seven rishis, as "formers of existing things" (*bhūta-kṛitāḥ*), is also found in the Atharvaveda, vi. 108, 4; vi. 133, 4, 5, xi. 1, 1, 3, 24; xii. 1, 39; and the word *bhūtakṛitāḥ*, without the addition of rishis, is found in the same work iii. 28, 1. iv. 35, 2, and xix. 16, 2.

allegation of the separate creation of castes may have been engrafted as an after-thought on the other account.⁶³

After other details, regarding the propagation, nature, etc, of created things (vv. 42-50), the re-absorption of Brahmā into the Supreme Spirit, and his alternations of sleep and repose, etc. (vv. 50-57), Manu proceeds :

58. *Idaṁ śāstraṁ tu kṛtvā 'sau mām eva svayam āditaḥ | vidhivad grāhayāmāsa Marīchyādīnāṁ te aham munīn |* 59. *Etad ro 'yam Bhṛiguḥ śāstraṁ śrūvayishyaty aśeshataḥ | etad hi matto 'dhijage sarvam esho 'khalam munīḥ |* 60. *Tatas tathā sa tenokto maharshir Manunā Bhṛiguḥ | tāt abravīd rīṣin sarvān prītātmā "śrūyatām" iti |* 61. *Svāyambhuvasyāsya Manuḥ śaḍ-vaṁśyā Manavo 'pare | śṛiṣṭavantaḥ prajāḥ svāḥ svāḥ mahātmāno mahaujasaḥ |* 62. *Svārochishaḥ chaṭṭamiś cha Tāmaso Raivatas tathā | Chākshushaḥ cha mahātejā Vivasvat-suta eva cha |* 63. *Svāyambhuvādyāḥ saptaite Manavo bhūritejasaḥ | sre sre 'ntare sarvam idam utpādyāpus charācharam |*

59. "Having formed this Scripture, he (Brahmā) himself in the beginning caused me to comprehend it according to rule; as I did to Marīchi and the other munis. 60. This Bhṛigu will give you to hear this scripture in its entirety; for this muni learned the whole from me. 61. Then that Maharshi (great rishi), Bhṛigu being so addressed by Manu, with pleasure addressed all those rishis, saying, 'Let it be heard.' 62. 'From this Manu Svāyambhuva sprang other Manus in six successive generations, great and glorious, who respectively created living beings of their own,—(63) viz., Svārochisha, Auttami, Tāmasa, Raivata, Chākshusha, and the mighty son of Vivasvat. 64. These seven⁶⁴ Manus of great power, of whom Svāyambhuva was the first, have each in his own period (*antara*) produced and possessed the world.' "

⁶³ In the same way it may be observed that in v. 22 Brahmā is said to have formed the subtle class of living gods whose essence is to act, and of the S'ādhyas (*karmātmanām cha devānām so 'sṛjāt prāṇīnām prabhūḥ | sādhyānām cha gaṇān sūkṣmān*), and in v. 25, to have "called into existence this creation, desiring to form these living beings" (*śṛiṣṭuṁ sasarja chaivānām śṛaṣṭum icchann imāḥ prajāḥ*). But if the gods and all other creatures already existed, any such further account of their production by the Maharshis, as is given in verse 36, seems to be not only superfluous but contradictory.

⁶⁴ It will be observed that here Svāyambhuva is included in the seven Manus, although in verse 36 (see above) it is said that the ten Maharshis, who had themselves been created by Svāyambhuva (vv. 34 f.), produced seven other Manus.

After some preliminary explanations regarding the divisions of time as reckoned by men and gods, etc. (vv. 64-78), the author proceeds to tell us how long each of these Manus reigns :

• 79. *Yat prāk dvādaśa-sāhasram uditam daivikam yugam | tad ekasaptati-guṇam manvantaram ihochyate |* 80. *Manvantarāṇy asankhyāni sargaḥ saṁhāra eva cha | krīḍann ivaitat kurute Parameshṭhi punaḥ punaḥ |*

“The age (*yuga*) of the gods mentioned before, consisting of twelve thousand (years), when multiplied by seventy-one, is here called a manvantara. 80. There are innumerable manvantaras, creations and destructions. The Supreme Being performs this again and again, as if in sport.”

A more detailed account of these great mundane periods will be given in the next section, when I come to take up the Vishṇu Purana. Meanwhile it may be remarked that the present manvantara is that of the last of the Manus above enumerated, or Manu Vaivasvata, who, according to verse 63, must have created the existing world. But if such be the case, it does not appear why the creation of Manu Svāyambhuva, with which the present race of mortals can have little to do, should have been by preference related to the rishis in vv. 33 ff. It must, however, be observed that in v. 33 Manu Svāyambhuva described himself as the former of “this” (*i.e.*, the existing) universe, and there is no doubt that the whole code of laws prescribed in the sequel of the work is intended by the author to be observed by the existing race of Indians (see verses 102 ff. of the first book). We must, therefore, suppose that the creations of the later Manus are substantially identical with that of the first; or that there is some confusion or inconsistency in the accounts which I have cited. Perhaps both suppositions may be correct.

In vv. 81-86, the four Yugas (or great ages of the world) the Kṛita, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali, their gradual deterioration, and the special duties peculiar to each, are described.⁶⁵

⁶⁵ In v. 86 these predominant duties are said to be austere fervour in the Kṛita age, knowledge in the Tretā, sacrifice in the Dvāpara, and liberality alone in the Kali (*tapah paraṁ Kṛita-yuge tretāyām jñānam uchyate | dvāpare yajñam evāhuḥ dānam ekam kalau yuge*). This, as remarked in Weber's Indische Studien, 282 f., note, is not quite in conformity with the view of the Muṇḍaka Upanishad, i. 2, 1, which states

At verse 87, Bhṛigu recurs to the four castes :

87. *Sarvasyāsya tu sargasya gupty-artham sa mahādyutiḥ | mukha-
bāhūru-paj-jānām prīthak karmāny akalpayat |*

“For the preservation of this whole creation, that glorious being (Brahmā) ordained separate functions for those who sprang from his mouth, his arms, his thighs, and his feet.”

These functions are then detailed (vv. 88-92). In verse 93, the grounds of the Brāhman's pre-eminence are stated :

93. *Uttamāṅgobhavāj jyaishṭhyād brahmaṇas chaiva dhārānāt | sar-
vasyaivāsya sargasya dharmato brāhmaṇaḥ prabhuh |* 94. *Tam hi sva-
yambhūḥ svād āsyāt tapas taptvā 'dīto 'srijat |*

Since the Brahman sprang from the most excellent organ, since he is the first-born and possesses the Veda, he is by nature the lord of this whole creation. Him, the self-existent (Brahmā) after exercising fervid abstraction, formed at the first from his own mouth.”

But as there are grades of excellence among created things, and among men themselves (96), so are there also among Brāhman's :

97. *Brāhmaneshu cha vidvāṃso vidvatsu kṛita-buddhayaḥ | kṛita-
buddhishu karttāraḥ karttṛishu brahma-vedinaḥ |*

“Among Brāhman's the learned are the most excellent, among the learned the resolute, among the resolute those who act, and among them who act they who possess divine knowledge.”

In a subsequent part of the work (xii. 40 ff.) we find men in general, the castes, and indeed all existing things, from Brahmā downwards, classified according to their participation in different degrees in the three *guṇas*, or qualities (*sattva*, “goodness,” *rajas*, “passion,” and *tamas*, “darkness”).

39. *Yena yūṃs tu guṇenaishōm saṃsārūn pratipadyate | tām samāsena
rakshyāmi sarvasyāsya yathākramam |* 40. *Devatraṃ sāttvikā yānti
manushyatvaṃ cha rājasāḥ | tiryaktvaṃ tāmasā nityam ity eshā tri-*

*tat etat satyam mantreshu karmāni karayo yūny apu'yaṃs tūni tretāyām bahuvān
santatūn |* “This is true the rites which sages beheld in the hymns, are in great variety celebrated in the Tretā.” In the same way the M. Bh. iii. v. 11,248, says that sacrifices and rites prevail in the Tretā (*tato yajnāḥ pravarttante dharmās cha
rū idhāḥ kṛyāḥ | tretāyām ityādi*). See also M. Bh. xii. 13,090. The word *kṛita*, as the name of the first yuga is thus explained in a previous verse of the former of these two passages (11,235) *kṛitam eva na karttavyaṃ tasmin kāle yugottame |* “In the time of that most excellent Yuga (everything) has been done, (and does) not (remain) to be done.”

vidhā gatiḥ | . . . 43. *Hastinās cha turangās cha śūdrā mlechhās cha garhitāḥ* | *śimhā vyāghrā varāhās cha madhyamā tāmasī gatiḥ* | . . . 46. *Rājānaḥ kshattriyās chaiva rājnās chaiva purohitāḥ* | *vāda-
buddha-pradhānās cha madhyamā rājasi gatiḥ* | . . . 48. *Tāpasā ya-
tayo viprā ye cha vaimānikā gaṇāḥ* | *nakshatrāṇi cha daityās cha
prathamā sāttvikī gatiḥ* | 49. *Yajcāna ṛishayo devā vedā jyotiṃshi
vatsarāḥ* | *pitarās chaiva sādhyās cha dvitīyā sāttvikī gatiḥ* | 50. *Brah-
mā viśvasrijo dharmo mahān aryaktam eva cha* | *uttamām sāttvikīm etām
gatim āhur maṇishinah* |

“39. I shall now declare succinctly in order the states which the soul reaches by means of each of these qualities. 40. Souls endowed with the *sattva* quality attain to godhead; those having the *rajas* quality become men; whilst those characterized by *tamas* always become beasts—such is the threefold destination . . . 43. Elephants, horses, Śūdras and contemptible Mlechhas, lions, tigers, and boars form the middle dark condition . . . 46. Kings, Kshattriyas, a king’s priests (*purohitāḥ*), and men whose chief occupation is the war of words, compose the middle condition of passion . . . 48. Devotees, ascetics, Brāhmanas, the deities borne on aerial cars, constellations, and Daityas, constitute the lowest condition of goodness. 49. Sacrificing priests, rishis, gods, the vedas, the celestial luminaries, years, the fathers, the Sādhyas, form the second condition of goodness. 50. Brah-
mā, the creators,⁶⁶ righteousness, the Great One (*mahat*), the Unap-
parent One (*aryakta*), compose the highest condition of goodness.”

⁶⁶ These “creators” (*viśvasrijaḥ*) are thus mentioned in Taitt. Br. iii. 12, 9, 2. *Ādarśam Agniṃ chinvānāḥ pūrve viśvasrijo mṛitāḥ* | *śatām varsha-sahasrāṇi dikshi-
tāḥ satram āsata* | 3. *tapāḥ āśīd grihapatir Brahma brahmā bhavat svayam* | *satyaṃ
ha hotaishām āśīd yad viśvasrijo āsata* | *amṛitam ebhya udagāyat sahasram parivat-
sarān* | *bhūtām ha prastotaishām āśīd bhaviṣhyat prati chūharat* | *prūṇo adhvaryur
abhavat* | *idaṃ sarvaṃ sishāsataṃ* | . . . 7. *Viśvasrijaḥ prathamāḥ satram āsata* |
. . . . | *tuto ha jajne bhuvanasya gopāḥ hiraṇmayāḥ śakunir Brahma nāma* | *yeṇa
sūryas tapati tejaseddhaḥ* | . . . 8. *Etena vai viśvasrijaḥ idaṃ viśvam asrijanta* |
yad viśvam asrijanta tasmād viśvasrijaḥ | *viśvam enān anu prajāyate* | “2. The
ancient and immortal creators of the universe, keeping fire kindled till they saw the
new moon, and consecrated, were engaged in a sacrifice for 100,000 years. 3. Austere
fervour was the householder; Prayer itself (*brahma*) was the brahmā priest; Truth
was their hotṛi, when the creators were so occupied. Immortality was their udgātṛi
for a thousand years. The Past was their prastotṛi, the Future their prathartṛi;
Breath was the adhvaryu, whilst they were seeking to obtain all this.” After
a good deal more of this allegory, the author proceeds in para. 7. “These first

It will be observed that the different parts of this account of the mode in which the three qualities are distributed, are not quite in harmony. From v. 40 it would appear that all souls having the quality of passion become men; and yet we find from vv. 43, 48, and 49, that Sūdras belong to the *tāmasa* class, and Brāhmans, of different descriptions, to two of the *Sāttvika* grades. According to the rule enunciated in v. 40, the latter ought to have been born as gods.

It is, further, remarkable that in this enumeration Sūdras are found in the same category with Mlechhas (v. 43), that the Vaiśyas are not accommodated with a position in any of the classes, that Kshattriyas and kings' domestic priests, who are of course Brāhmans, and others (who must be Brāhmans) fond of disputation on learned questions⁶⁷ (though not stated to be heretical) are ranked together as "passionate" (v. 46), while other Brāhmans of different characters are placed in two of the higher grades, Brāhmans simply so called (*viprāḥ*) being regarded as "good" in the lowest degree (v. 48), and sacrificing priests (*yajrāṇaḥ*) sharing with rishis, gods, the vedas, etc., the honour of the middle condition of goodness. It is not clear whether the devotees, and ascetics, mentioned in v. 48, belong to the same caste as the Brāhmans with whom they are associated, or may also be men of the inferior classes. Nor is it evident for what reason the sacrificing priests (*yajrāṇaḥ*), specified in v. 49, are so much more highly estimated than the king's priests (*rājñāḥ purohitāḥ*) in v. 46, since the latter also officiate at sacrifices. The honourable position assigned to Daityas in the lowest class of "good" beings (v. 48) is also deserving of notice. We shall see in the following chapter that the Purāṇas variously describe mankind as belonging entirely to the "passionate" class (see v. 40, above) and as characterized by the three other "qualities," according to their caste.

creators were engaged in sacrifice . . . Thence was born the preserver of the world, the golden bird called Brahma, by whom the sun glows, kindled with light. . . . 8. . . . Through this the creators created this universe. As they created the universe, they are called viśvasṛjāḥ. . . Everything is created after them." See above the reference made to *riṣayo bhūta-kṛitāḥ* in p. 36. The allegory in this extract from the Taitt. Br. resembles in its character that in the sixth verse of the Puruṣa Sūkta.

⁶⁷ *S'ārstārthakalaha- prajñāś cha* | Comm.

SECT. VI.—*Account of the System of Yugas, Manvantaras, and Kalpas, according to the Vishnu Purāṇa, and other authorities.*

•I shall in the next section adduce the description given in the Vishnu Purāṇa of the creation of living creatures, and the origin of the four castes, after first supplying in the present some explanation of the great mundane periods, the *Yugas*, *Manvantaras*, *Kalpas*, etc.

The computations of these great periods are stated in the third chapter of the first book, and in the first chapter of the sixth book, and are clearly explained by Professor Wilson in his notes to page 50 of his translation.

One year of mortals is equal to one day of the gods.⁶⁸

12,000 divine years are equal to a period of four Yugas, which is thus made up, viz. :

Kṛita Yuga with its mornings and evenings.....	4,800	divine years
Tretā Yuga " " " " 	3,600	" "
Dvāpara Yuga " " " " 	2,400	" "
Kali Yuga " " " " 	1,200	" "

making... 12,000 divine years.⁶⁹

As a day of the gods is = to one year of mortals, the 12,000 divine years must be multiplied by 360, the assumed number of days in a year, to give the number of the years of mortals in this great period of four yugas, thus: 12,000 divine years \times 360 = 4,320,000 years of mortals. 1000 of these periods of 12,000 divine, or 4,320,000 human, years—*i.e.*, 4,320,000,000 human years are = 1 day of Brahmā,⁷⁰ and his night is of the same duration. Within that period of a day of Brahmā, 14 Manus reign,⁷¹ and a Manvantara, or period of Manu,

⁶⁸ Vishnu P. vi. 1, 4 *ahorātram pūrṇāṁ tu māso 'bdas tridivaukasam* | See also Manu i. 66 and 67. The Taitt. Br. iii. 9, 22, 1, too, states: *ekaṁ vai etad devānām ahar yat samvatsarah* | "This period of a year is one day of the gods."

⁶⁹ i. 3, 10. *Divyaṁ varsha-sahasraṁ kṛita-tretādi-sanjñitam | chaturyugaṁ drūdaśabhis tad-ribhūgaṁ nibodha me* | 11. *chatvāri trīṇi die chaikam kṛtūdiśhyathākramam* | *divyābdānām sahasraṇi yugeshv ahar purāridah* | 12. *Tat-pramāṇaḥ s'ataḥ sandhyā pūrvā tatrabdhidhīyate* | *sandhyāmsakaś cha tat-tulyo yugasyānantaro hi saḥ* | 13. *Sandhyā-sandhyāmsayor antar yah kīlo muni-sattama* | *yugākhyah sa tu rājneyah kṛita-tretādi-sanjñitah* |

⁷⁰ V. P. i. 3, 14. *Kṛitāṁ tretā dvāparaś cha kalīś chaur chaturyugam | prochyate tat-sahasraṁ cha Brahmaṇo dvāsam mune* | See also Manu i. 72.

⁷¹ V. P. i. 3, 15. *Brahmaṇo dvāsa brahmaṇo Manus cha chaturdasa* | *ahavanti* |

is consequently = the 14th part of a day of Brahmā. In the present Kalpa (= a day of Brahmā) six Manus, of whom Svāyambhuva was the first, have already passed away, the present Manu being Vaivasvata.⁷² In each Manvantara seven rishis, certain deities, an Indra, a Manu, and the kings, his sons, are created and perish.⁷³ A thousand of the systems of 4 Yugas, as has been before explained, occur coincidentally with these 14 Manvantaras; and consequently about 71 systems of 4 Yugas elapse during each Manvantara, and measure the lives of the Manu and the deities of the period.⁷⁴ At the close of this day of Brahmā a collapse (*pratisancharaḥ*) of the universe takes place, which lasts through a night of Brahmā, equal in duration to his day, during which period the three worlds are converted into one great ocean, when the lotus-born god,⁷⁵ expanded by his deglutition of the universe, and contemplated by the yogis and gods in Janaloka, sleeps on the serpent Śeṣha. At the end of that night he awakes and creates anew.⁷⁶

A year of Brahmā is composed of the proper number of such days and nights; and 100 such years constitute his whole life. The period of his life is called *Para*, and the half of it *Parārdha*, or the half of a *Para*. One *Parārdha*, or half of Brahmā's existence, has now expired, terminating with the great Kalpa, called the Pādma Kalpa. The now existing Kalpa, or day of Brahmā, called Vārāha (or that of the boar), is the first of the second *Parārdha* of Brahmā's existence.⁷⁷ The

⁷² This is stated by Manu i. 62 ff. (see above), as well as in the third book of the V. P. i. 3, which gives the names in the same order. *Svāyambhuvo Manuḥ pūrv- Manuḥ Svārochishas tathā | Auttamis Tīmasas chaiva Rāvatās Chākshushas tathā | shaḍ ete Manava 'tītāḥ sāmpratañ tu Raveḥ sutāḥ | Vaivasvato 'yañ yasyaitat sapta- māñ varttate 'ntaram |*

⁷³ V. P. i. 3, 16. *Saptarshayaḥ surāḥ Śakra Manus tat-sūnavo nṛpāḥ | ekakūle hi sṛjyante sañhriyante cha pūrvavat |*

⁷⁴ Ibid ver. 17. *Chaturyugūnāñ sankhyūtā sūdhikū hy eka saptatīḥ | manvantoram Mañḥ kūlāḥ surodīnāñ cha sattama |* See also Manu i. 79.

⁷⁵ The birth of Prajāpati on a lotus-leaf is mentioned in the Taitt. Ārany. i. 23, 1, quoted above, p. 32.

⁷⁶ Ibid 20. *Chaturdaśa-guṇo hy eṣa kūlo brāhmaṇa ahaḥ smṛitam | brāhma naimit- tiko nūma tasyānte pratisancharaḥ | . . . 22. Ekānare tu trailokyē Brahmā Nārā- yaṇātmaḥ | bhogī-sayyagataḥ Sete trailokya-grāsa-vrinhitāḥ | 23. Janasthair yog- bhir devaiḥ chintyaṇīno 'hja-sambhavaḥ | tat-pramūñāñ hi tūñ rātriñ tadante sṛjate punaḥ |* See also V. P. i. 2, 59-62, as translated by Wilson, vol. i. p. 41.

⁷⁷ Ibid ver. 24. *Ecām tu Brahmaṇo varṣam eva⁷¹ varṣa-śatañ cha tat | satam hi tasya varṣāññam param āyur mahātmanaḥ | 25. Ekam asya vyatītam tu parārdham Brahmaṇo 'nagha | tasyānte 'bhūd mahākālpaḥ Pādmaḥ ity abhivṛtatoḥ | devīyasya*

dissolution, which occurs at the end of each Kalpa, or day of Brahmā, is called *naimittika*, incidental, occasional, or contingent. (See Wilson's Vishṇu Purana, vol. i. of Dr. Hall's edition, p. 52, with the editor's note; and vol. ii. p. 269. For an account of the other dissolutions of the universe I refer to the same work, vol. i. p. 113, and to pp. 630–633 of the original 4to. edition.)

Of this elaborate system of Yugas, Manvantaras, and Kalpas, of enormous duration, no traces are found in the hymns of the Rig-veda. Their authors were, indeed, familiar with the word *Yuga*,⁷⁸ which frequently occurs in the sense of age, generation, or tribe. Thus in i. 139, 8; iii. 26, 3; vi. 8, 5; vi. 15, 8; vi. 36, 5; x. 94, 12, the phrase *yuge yuge*⁷⁹ means "in every age." In iii. 33, 8; x. 10, 10, we have *uttarā yugāni*, "future ages," and in x. 72, 1, *uttare yuge*, "in a later age;" in vii. 70, 4, *pūrvāni yugāni*, "former ages,"⁸⁰ and in i. 184, 3, *yuga jūrṇā*, "past ages." In i. 92, 11; i. 103, 4; i. 115, 2; i. 124, 2; i. 144, 4;⁸¹ ii. 2, 2; v. 52, 4; vi. 16, 23; vii. 9, 4; viii. 46, 12; viii. 51, 9; ix. 12, 7;⁸² x. 27, 19; x. 140, 6⁸³ (in all of which places, except i. 115, 2, the word is combined with *manushyā*, *mānushā*, *manushaḥ*, or *janānām*), *yuga* seems to denote "generations" of men, or *parārdhasya varttamanasya vai dvija | Varāhaḥ iti kalpo 'yam prathamah parikalpitaḥ |*

⁷⁸ In Professor Willson's Dictionary three senses are assigned to *yuga* (neuter) (1) a pair; (2) an age as the Kṛita, Tretā, etc.; (3) a lustre, or period of five years. When used as masculine the word means, according to the same authority, (1) a yoke, (2) a measure of four cubits, etc.; (3) a particular drug.

⁷⁹ Sāyana, on iii. 36, 3, explains it by *pratidinam*, "every day;" on vi. 8, 5, vi. 15, 8; vi. 36, 5, by *kāle kāle*, "at every time."

⁸⁰ Sāyana takes the phrase for former "couples of husbands and wives," *mithunāni jñāpatirūpāni*.

⁸¹ In i. 92, 11 and i. 124, 2, Ushas (the Dawn) is spoken of as, *praminatī manushyū yugūni*, "wearing away human terms of existence, or generations." In commenting on the former text Sāyana explains *yugūni* as equivalent to *kṛita-tretādīni*, "the Kṛita, Tretā, and other ages," whilst in explaining the second, he takes the same word as signifying *yugopalakshitān nimeshādī-kūṭarayavān*, "the seconds and other component parts of time indicated by the word," or as equivalent to *yugmūni*, "the conjunctions of men,"—since the dawn scatters abroad to their several occupations men who had been previously congregated together!" In his note on i. 144, 4, he gives an option of two different senses: *manoh sambhandhīni yugūni jñāpati-rupāni hotradharyurūpāni vā |* "couples consisting of husband and wife, or of the hotṛi and adhvaryu priests."

⁸² This verse, ix. 12, 7, is also found in Sāma V. ii. 552, where, however, *yujā* is substituted for *yugā*.

⁸³ This verse occurs also in Sāma V. ii. 1171, and Vāj. S. xii 111.

rather, in some places, "tribes" of men. In v. 73, 3, the phrase *nāhushā yugā* must have a similar meaning. In i. 158, 6, it is said that the rishi Dīrghatamas became worn out in the tenth *yuga*; on which Professor Wilson remarks (R. V. vol. ii. 104, note): "The scholiast understands *yuga* in its ordinary interpretation; but the *yuga* of five years is perhaps intended, a lustrum, which would be nothing marvellous." Professor Aufrecht proposes to render, "in the tenth stage of life." The first passage of the Rīg-veda, in which there is any indication of a considerable mundane period being denoted, is x. 72, 2 f., where "a first," or, "an earlier age (*yuga*) of the gods" is mentioned (*devānām pūrvye yuge; devānām prathamē yuge*) when "the existent sprang from the non-existent" (*asataḥ sad ajāyata*); but no allusion is made to its length. In the same indefinite way reference is made in x. 97, 1, to certain "plants which were produced before the gods,—three ages (*yugas*) earlier" (*yāḥ oshadhīḥ pūrvāḥ jātāḥ devebhyas tri-yugam purā*). In one verse of the Atharva-veda, however, the word *yuga* is so employed as to lead to the supposition that a period of very long duration is intended. It is there said, viii. 2, 21: *śatām te ayutaīm hāyanān dre yuge trīṇi chatvāri kṛimāḥ* | "we allot to thee a hundred, ten thousand, years, two, three, four ages (*yugas*)."⁵⁴ As we may with probability assume that the periods here mentioned proceed in the ascending scale of duration, two *yugas*, and perhaps even one *yuga*, must be supposed to exceed 10,000 years.

The earliest comparison between divine and human periods of duration of which I am aware is found in the text of the Taitt. Br. quoted above in a note to p. 42: "A year is one day of the gods."⁵⁵ But so far as that passage itself shows, there is no reason to imagine that the statement it contains was anything more than an isolated idea, or that the conception had, at the time when the Brāhmaṇas were compiled, been developed, and a system of immense mundane periods, whether

⁵⁴ For the context of this line see Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, page 42.

⁵⁵ An analogous idea is found in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa xiv. 7. 1, 33 ff. (= Bṛihadāraṇyaka Upanishad pp. 817 ff. of Cal. ed.) *atha ye śatām manushyāṇām ānandāḥ sa ekah pitṛiṇām jitalokānām ānandah* | "now a hundred pleasures of men are one pleasure of the Pitṛis who have conquered the worlds." And so on in the same way; a hundred pleasures of the Pitṛis equalling one pleasure of the Karmadevas (or gods who have become so by works), a hundred pleasures of the latter equalling one pleasure of the gods who were born such, etc.

human or divine, had been elaborated. That, however, the authors of the Brāhmanas were becoming familiar with the idea of extravagantly large numbers is clear from the passage in the Taitt. Br. iii. 12, 9, 2, quoted above, p. 41, in the note on Manu xii. 50, where it is said that the creators were engaged in a sacrifice for 100,000 years.

Professor Roth is of opinion (see his remarks under the word *Kṛita* in his Lexicon) that according to the earlier conception stated in Manu i. 69, and the Mahābhārata (12,826 ff.), the four Yugas—*Kṛita*, *Tretā*, *Dvāpara*, and *Kali*, with their mornings and evenings, consisted respectively of no more than 4,800; 3,600; 2,400; and 1,200 ordinary years of mortals; and that it was the commentators on Manu, and the compilers of the Purāṇas, who first converted the years of which they were made up into divine years. The verse of Manu to which Professor Roth refers (i. 69), and the one which follows, are certainly quite silent about the years composing the *Kṛita* age being divine years:

*Chatvāry āhuḥ sahasrāṇi varshāṇāṃ tu kṛitāṃ yugam | tasya tāvach-
chhati sandhyā sandhyāṃśchaścha tathāvidhaḥ | 70. Itareshu sasandhyeshu
sasandhāṃśeshu cha trishu | ekāpāyena varttante sahasrāṇi śatāni cha |*
“They say that four thousand years compose the *kṛita* yuga, with as many hundred years for its morning and the same for its evening. 70. In the other three yugas, with their mornings and evenings, the thousands and hundreds are diminished successively by one.”

Verse 71 is as follows: *Yad etat parisankhyātam ādār era chatu-
yugam | etad dvādaśa-sahasraṃ devānāṃ yugam uchyate |* which, as explained by Medhātithi, may be thus rendered: “Twelve thousand of these periods of four yugas, as above reckoned, are called a Yuga of the gods.” Medhātithi’s words, as quoted by Kullūka, are these: *Chaturyugair era dvādaśa-sahasra-sankhyair divyam yugam |* “A divine Yuga is formed by four yugas to the number of twelve thousand.” Kullūka, however, says that his predecessor’s explanation is mistaken, and must not be adopted (*Medhātithiher bhramo nādarttaryaḥ*). His own opinion is that the system of yugas mentioned in vv. 69 and 71 are identical, both being made up of divine years. According to this view, we must translate v. 71 as follows: “The period of four yugas, consisting of twelve thousand years, which has been reckoned above, is called a Yuga of the gods.” This certainly appears to be the

preferable translation, and it is confirmed by the tenor of verse 79. Verse 71, however, may represent a later stage of opinion, as it is not found in the following passage of the Mahābhārata, where the previous verse (69) is repeated, and verse 70 is expanded into three verses, though without any alteration of the sense :

M. Bh. iii. 12826 ff. — *Ādīto manuṣya-ryāghra kṛtsnasya jagataḥ kshaye | chatvāry āhuḥ sahasrāṇi varshāṇām tat kṛtām yugam | tasya tārachchhatī sandhyā sandhyāṁścha tathāvidhaḥ |*

“In the beginning, after the destruction of the entire universe, they say that there are four thousand years : that is the Kṛita Yuga, which has a morning of as many hundred years, and an evening of the same duration.” And then, after enumerating in like manner the other three Yugas with their respective thousands and hundreds successively diminished by one, the speaker (the sage Mārkaṇḍeya) proceeds in verse 12831 : *Eśhā dvādaśahasrī yugākhyā parikṛtītā | etat sahasraparyantam aho brāhmaṇam udāhṛitam |* “This period of twelve thousand years is known by the appellation of the Yugas. A period extending to a thousand of these is called a day of Brahmā.”

Nowhere, certainly, in this passage is any mention made of the years being divine years.

The earliest known text in which the names of the four Yugas are found is a verse occurring in the story of Sunaḥśepha in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa vii. 15 : *Kaliḥ śayāno bhavati sanjīhānas tu drāparaḥ | uttiṣṭhāṁś tretā bhavati kṛtām sampadyate charan |* “A man while lying is the Kali; moving himself, he is the Dvāpara; rising, he is the Tretā; walking, he becomes the Kṛita.”⁸⁶ But this brief allusion leaves us

⁸⁶ This verse has been already translated no less than six times; twice into German by Weber and Roth (Ind. Stud. i. 286 and 460), once into Latin by Streiter (see Ind. Stud. ix. 315), and thrice into English, by Wilson (Journ. R. A. S. for 1851, p. 99), Muller (Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 412), and Haug (Ait. Br. ii. 464). All these authors, except the last, concur in considering the verse as referring to the four Yugas. Dr. Haug, however, has the following note. “Sāyana does not give any explanation of this important passage, where the names of the Yugas are mentioned for the first time. These four names are, as is well known from other sources, . . . names of dice, used at gambling. The meaning of this Gāthā is, There is every success to be hoped; for the unluckiest die, the Kali is lying, two others are slowly moving and half fallen, but the luckiest, the Kṛita, is in full motion. The position of dice here given is indicative of a fair chance of winning the game.” Both Dr. Haug’s translation and note are criticised by Professor Weber (Ind. Stud. ix. 319). Of the following verses, which occur in Manu ix. 301 f., the second is a paraphrase of that in the Aitareya Brāh-

quite in the dark as to the duration which was assigned to these *yugas* in the age when the *Brāhmaṇa* was compiled.

SECT. VII.—*Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Vishnu Purāṇa.*

I commence with the following general account of the cosmogony of the *Vishnu Purāṇa*, extracted from Professor Wilson's Preface to his translation of that work, vol. i. p. xciii. :

“The first book of the six, into which the work is divided, is occupied chiefly with the details of creation, primary (*sarga*), and secondary (*pratisarga*); the first explains how the universe proceeds from *Prakṛiti*, or eternal crude matter;⁸⁷ the second, in what manner the forms of things are developed from the elementary substances previously evolved, or how they re-appear after their temporary destruction.⁸⁸ Both these creations are periodical; but the termination of the first occurs only at the end of the life of *Brahmā*, when not only all the gods and all other forms are annihilated, but the elements are again merged into primary substance, besides which only one spiritual being exists. The latter takes place at the end of every *Kalpa* or day of *Brahmā*, and affects only the forms of inferior creatures and lower worlds, leaving the substances of the universe entire, and sages and gods unharmed.”⁸⁹

mana : *Kṛitam tretā-yugaṁ chaiva dvāparam kālir eva cha | rūjño vṛittāni sarvāṇi rūjū hi yugam uchyate |* 302. *Kālīḥ prasupto bhavati sa jāgrat dvāparam yugam | karmasv abhyudyatas tretā vicharaṁs tu kṛitām yugam |* “301. The *Kṛita*, *Tretā*, *Dvāpara*, and *Kali* yugas are all modes of a king's action; for a king is called a *yuga*. 302. While asleep he is the *Kali*; waking he is the *Dvāpara* age; intent upon action he is the *Tretā*, moving about he is the *Kṛita*.” The former of these two verses of *Manu* is reproduced nearly verbatim in the *M. Bh.* xii. 3408; and the same idea is expanded in the same book of the same poem, vv. 2674 ff., 2682, 2684, 2686, 2693 ff. The words *kṛita*, *tretā*, *dvāpara*, and *kālī*, are found in the *Vāj.-Sanhitā*, xxx. 18, and in the *Taitt. Brāhmaṇa*, iii. 4, 1, 16; but in both places they denote dice, as does also the word *kṛita* in the *Chhāndogya Upan.* iv. 1, 4 (where see the commentary). On the *Yugas* the reader of German may also consult *Weber's Indische Studien*, i. pp. 39, 87 f., 282 ff.

⁸⁷ [See Book i. chapter ii.]

⁸⁸ [See the fourth and following chapters of Book i.]

⁸⁹ See Book i. at the close of chapter vii. p. 113 of vol. i. of Professor Wilson's translation, 2nd edition, and also p. 621 and 630 of the original 4to. edition. As regards,

I proceed with the details of the creation which took place in the Vārāha Kalpa, as described in book i. chapter 4, vv. 2, ff. :

Atita-kalpāvasāne nīśa-suptotthitah prabhuh | sattvrodrikas tato Brahmā śūnyaṁ lokam avaikshata | 3. Nārāyaṇaḥ paro 'chintyāḥ pareshām api sa prabhuh | Brahma-svarūpi bhavagān anādiḥ sarva-sambhavaḥ | . . . 6. Toyāntaḥ sa mahīm jñātvā jagaty ekārṇave prabhuh | anumānād tad-uddhāraṁ karttu-kāmaḥ prajāpatiḥ | 7. Akarot sa tanūm anyāṁ kalpādīshu yathā purā | matsya-kūrmādikāṁ tadvad vārāhaṁ vapur āsthitah | 8. Veda-yajnamayaṁ rūpam śśeṣha-jagataḥ sthitau | sthitah sthīratmā sarvātmā paramātmā prajāpatiḥ | 9. Jana-loka-gataiḥ siddhair Sanakādyair abhishkṛtāḥ | praviveśa tadū toyam ātmādhāro dharā-dharaḥ | . . . 45. Evaṁ śāntstūyamānastu paramātmā mahādharaḥ | ūjahāra mahīm kshipraṁ nyastavāṁś cha mahāmbhasi | 46. Tasyopari jalaughasya mahatī naur iva sthitā | vītatatatrūt tu dehasya na mahī yāti samplavam | tataḥ kṣitīṁ samāṁ kṛitrā prithivyāṁ so 'chinod girīm | yathā-vibhūgam bhagavān anādiḥ purushottamaḥ | 47. Prāk-sarga-dagdhan akhilān parratān prithivītale | amoghena prabhāvena sasarjāmogha-vāṁchhitah | 48. Bhūrī bhagāṁ tataḥ kṛitrā sapta-dīpān yathātathā | bhūr-ādyāṁś chaturō lokān pūrvavat samakalpayat | 49. Brahma-rūpadharo devas tato 'sau rajasā 'rṛitah | chakāra spīṣṭīm bhagavāṁś chatur-vaktra-dharo Hariḥ | 50. nīmitta-mātram evāsau sṛjyānāṁ sarga-karmaṇām | pradhāna-kāraṇābhūtū yato vai sṛjya-śaktayaḥ | 51. Nīmitta-mātram muktvaikam nānyat kinchid aprakshyate | nīyate tapatām śreshṭha sva-śaktyā vastu vastutām |

“2. At the end of the past (or Pādma) Kalpa, arising from his night slumber, Brahmā, the lord, endowed predominantly with the quality of goodness, beheld the universe void. 3. He (was) the supreme lord Nārāyaṇa, who cannot even be conceived by other beings, the deity without beginning, the source of all things, existing in the form of Brahmā.” [The verse given in Manu i. 10, regarding the derivation of the word Nārāyaṇa (see above p. 35) is here quoted]. “6. This lord of creatures, discovering by inference,—when the world had become one ocean,—that the earth lay within the waters, and being desirous to raise it up, (7) assumed another body. As formerly, at the beginnings of the Kalpas, he had taken the form of a fish,

however, the statement with which the paragraph concludes, compare vol. i. p. 50, as well as vol. ii. p. 269, of the same work.

a tortoise, and so forth,⁹⁰ (so now) entering the body of a boar (8),—a form composed of the vedas and of sacrifice,—the lord of creatures, who, throughout the entire continuance of the world, remains fixed, the universal soul, the supreme soul, self-sustained, the supporter of the earth (9),—being hymned by Sanaka and the other saints, who had (at the dissolution of the lower worlds) proceeded to Janaloka,—entered the water.” [He is then addressed by the goddess Earth in a hymn of praise, as Vishṇu, and as the supreme Brahmā, vv. 10-24. The boar then rises from the lower regions, tossing up the earth with his tusk, and is again lauded by Sanandana and other saints in a second hymn, in the course of which he himself is identified with sacrifice, and his various members with its different instruments and accompaniments, vv. 25-44]. “45. Being thus lauded, the supreme soul, the upholder of the earth, lifted her up quickly and placed her upon the great waters. 46. Resting upon this mass of water, like a vast ship, she does not sink, owing to her expansion. Then, having levelled the earth, the divine eternal Purushottasna heaped together mountains according to their divisions. 47. He whose will cannot be frustrated, by his unfailing power, created on the surface of the earth all those mountains which had been burnt up in the former creation. 48. Having then divided the earth, just as it had been, into seven dvīpas, he formed the four worlds Bhūrloka and others as before. 49. Becoming next pervaded with the quality of passion, that divine being Hari, assuming the form of Brahmā, with four faces, effected the creation. 50. But he is merely the instrumental cause of the things to be created and of the creative operations, since the properties of the things to be created arise from Pradhāna as their (material) cause. 51. Excepting an instrumental cause alone, nothing else is required. Every substance (*vastu*) is brought into the state of substance (*vastutā*) by its own inherent power.”⁹¹

⁹⁰ No mention is made in the Brāhmaṇas (as I have already observed) of any such periods as the Kalpas. But here an attempt is made to systematize the different stories scattered through those older works which variously describe the manner in which the creation was effected—with the view, perhaps, of reconciling the discrepancies in those free and artless speculations which offended the critical sense of a later age.

⁹¹ See Professor Wilson's translation of these verses, and the new version proposed by the editor of the second edition, Dr. Hall, p. 66, note. I do not think the phrase

[Before proceeding further with the narrative of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, I wish to quote or refer to some passages from the Taittirīya Saṁhitā and Brāhmaṇa and from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, which appear to furnish the original germs of the legends of the boar, fish, tortoise, and dwarf incarnations.

The first of these texts is from the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, vii. 1, 5, 1 ff :

Āpo vai idam agre salīlam āsīt | tasmin Prajāpatiṛ vāyur bhūtvā acharat | sa imām apaśyat | taṁ varāho bhūtvā āharat | tām Viśvakarmā bhūtvā vyamārt | sā aprathata | sā prithivī abhavat | tat prithivīyai prithivītram | tasyām āśrāmyat Prajāpatiḥ | sa devān asṛijata Vasūn Rudrān Ādityān | te devāḥ Prajāpatim abruvan "prajāyāmahai" iti | so 'bravīd "yathā aham yushmāms tapasā asṛikṣhi evaṁ tapasi prajānanam icchēhādīvam" iti | tebhyo 'gnīm āyatanam prāyachhad "etena āyatanena śrāmyata" iti | te 'gninā āyatanena āśrāmyan | te sām̐vatsare ekām gām asṛijanta |

"This universe was formerly waters, fluid. On it Prajāpati, becoming wind, moved.⁹² He saw this (earth). Becoming a boar, he took her up. Becoming Viśvakarman, he wiped (the moisture from) her. She extended. She became the extended one (*prithivī*). From this the earth derives her designation as the extended one. In her Prajāpati performed arduous devotion. He created gods, Vasus, Rudras, and Adityas. The gods said to Prajāpati, 'let us be propagated.' He answered, 'As I have created you through austere fervour, so do ye seek after propagation in austere fervour.' He gave them Agni as a resting-place (saying), 'With this as a resting-place perform your devotion.' They (accordingly) performed devotion with Agni as a resting-place. In a year they created one cow, etc."⁹³

sva-saktyā can be properly rendered, as Dr. Hall does, "by its potency." The reading of the MSS. in v. 50, *pradhāna-kāraṇabhūtāḥ* seems to me doubtful, as it would most naturally mean "have become the Pradhāna-cause." I conjecture *pradhāna-kāraṇādbhūtāḥ*, which gives the sense which seems to be required.

⁹² It is possible that the idea assigned to the word *Nārāyaṇa* (see Manu i. 10, above), "he whose place of movement is the waters," may be connected with this passage. See also Genesis i. 2, "And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters."

⁹³ After having noticed this passage in the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, I became aware that it had been previously translated by Mr. Colebrooke (Essays i. 75, or p. 44 of Williams & Norgate's edition). Mr. Colebrooke prefaces his version by remarking, "The pre-

The second passage is from the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, i. 1, 3, 5 ff. *Āpo vai idam agre salilam āsīt | tena Prajāpatiḥ āsrāmyat* “*katham idaṁ syād*” *iti | so 'paśyat pushkara-parṇaṁ tiṣṭhat | so 'manyata* “*asti vai tād yasmin idam adhitishṭhati*” *iti | sa varāho rūpaṁ kṛtvā upanyamajāt | sa prithivīm adhaḥ ārchhat | tasyā upahatya udamajāt | tat pushkara-parṇe 'prathayat | yad* “*aprathata*” *tat prithivyai prithivīvam |* “*abhūt vai idam*” *iti tad bhūmyai bhūmitram | tāṁ diśo 'nu vātaḥ samavahat | tāṁ śarkarābhir adṛśñhut |*

“This (universe) was formerly water, fluid.⁹⁴ With that (water) Prajāpati practised arduous devotion (saying), ‘how shall this (universe be (developed)?’ He beheld a lotus-leaf standing.⁹⁵ He thought, ‘there is somewhat on which this (lotus-leaf) rests.’ He as a boar—having assumed that form—plunged beneath towards it. He found the earth down below. Breaking off (a portion of) her, he rose to the surface. He then extended it on the lotus-leaf. Inasmuch as he extended it, that is the extension of the extended one (the earth). This became (*abhūt*). From this the earth derives its name of *bhūmī*. The wind carried her, to the four quarters. He strengthened her with gravel, etc., etc.

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiv. 1, 2, 11, has the following reference to the same idea, although here Prajāpati himself is not the boar:

Iyatī ha vai iyaṁ agre prithivy āsa prādeśa-mātrī | tāṁ Emūśaḥ iti varāhaḥ nṛjaghāna | so 'syāḥ patiḥ Prajāpatiḥ tena eva enam etan-mithunena priyeṇa dhāmnā samardhayati kṛtsnaṁ karoti |

“Formerly this earth was only so large, of the size of a span. A boar called Emūsha raised her up. Her lord Prajāpati, therefore, prospers him with (the gift of) this pair, the object of his desire, and makes him complete.”

Another of the incarnations referred to in the preceding passage of

sent extract was recommended for selection by its allusion to a mythological notion, which apparently gave origin to the story of the *Varāha-avatāra*, and from which an astronomical period, entitled *Calpa*, has perhaps been taken.”

⁹⁴ The Commentator gives an alternative explanation, viz., that the word *salila* is the same as *sarira*, according to the text of the Veda, “these worlds are *sarira*” (“*ime vai lokāḥ sariram*” *iti śrūtiḥ*).

⁹⁵ “Supported upon the end of a long stalk” (*dṛghanūlūgre 'rasthitam*), according to the Commentator. In a passage from the Taitt. Āraṇyaka, already quoted (p. 32. above), it is said that Prajāpati himself was born on a lotus-leaf.

the Vishṇu Purāṇa is foreshadowed in the following text from the Śa-
tatapatha Brāhmaṇa, vii. 5, 1, 5 :

*Sa yat kūrmo nāma | etad vai rūpaṁ kṛtvā Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asṛi-
jata | yad asṛijatu akarot tat | yad akarot tasmāt kūrmaḥ | kaśyapo 'vai
kūrmaḥ | tasmād āhuḥ "sarvāḥ prajāḥ kāśyapyāḥ" iti | sa yaḥ sa kūrmo
sau sa Ādityaḥ |*

"As to its being called *kūrma* (a tortoise); Prajāpati having taken
this form, created offspring. That which he created, he made (*akarot*);
since he made, he is (called) *kūrmaḥ*. The word *kaśyapa* means tortoise;
hence men say all creatures are descendants of Kaśyapa. This tortoise
is the same as Āditya."⁹⁶

The oldest version of the story of the fish incarnation, which is to be
found in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 8, 1, 1 ff., will be quoted in the
next chapter.

For the passages which appear to supply the germ of the dwarf in-
carnation, the reader may consult the fourth volume of this work,
pp. 54-58 and 107 f.

It will have been noticed that in the passage above adduced from the
Vishṇu Purāṇa, the word Nārāyaṇa is applied to Vishṇu, and that it
is the last named deity who (though in the form of Brahmā) is said to
have taken the form of a boar. In the verses formerly cited from
Manu (i. 9, 10), however, Nārāyaṇa is an epithet, not of Vishṇu, but
of Brahmā; and in the following text, from the Rāmāyaṇa, xi. 110, 3,
it is Brahmā who is said to have become a boar :

*Sarvaṁ salīlam evāsīt prithivī tatra nirmītā | tataḥ samabhavad Brah-
mā svayambhūr daivataiḥ saha*⁹⁷ | *sa varāhas tato bhūtvā projjahāra va-
sundharām ityādi |*

"All was water only, and in it the earth was fashioned. Then arose

⁹⁶ With this compare the mention made of a tortoise in the passage cited above,
p. 32, from the Taitt. Āraṇyaka.

⁹⁷ Such is the reading of Schlegel's edition, and of that which was recently printed
at Bombay, both of which, no doubt, present the most ancient text of the Rāmāyaṇa.
The Gauda recension, however, which deviates widely from the other, and appears to
have modified it in conformity with more modern taste and ideas, has here also intro-
duced a various reading in the second of the lines quoted in the text, and identifies
Brahmā with Vishṇu in the following manner : *tataḥ samabhavad Brahmā svayan-
bhūr Viṣṇur avyayaḥ* | "Then arose Brahmā the self-existent and imperishable
Viṣṇu."

Brahmā, the self existent, with the deities. He then, becoming a boar, raised up the earth," etc.

I now return to the narrative of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.]

• The further process of cosmogony is thus described in chapter v. :

Maitreya uvācha | 1. *Yathā sasarjja devo'sau devarshi-pitṛi-dānavān* | *manushya-tiryag-vṛikshādīn bhū-vyoma-salilaukasah* | 2. *Yad-guṇaṃ yat-svabhāvaṃ cha yad-rūpaṃ cha jagad dīja* | *sargādau śṛiṣṭavān Brahmā tad mamāchakshva vistarāt* | *Parāśara uvācha* | 3. *Maitreya kathayāmy esha śṛiṇushva susamāhitaḥ* | *yathā sasarjja devo'sau devādīn akhilān vibhuḥ* | *śṛiṣṭīm chintayatas tasya kalpādishu yathā purā* | *abuddhi-pūrvakah sargah prādurbhūtas tamomayah* | 4. *Tamo moho mahāmohas tāmisro hy andha-saṃjñitaḥ* | *avidyā pancha-parvaiṣhū prādurbhūtā mahātmanaḥ* | 5. *Punchadhā 'rasthitaḥ sargo dhyāyato 'prati-bodhavān* | *vahir-anto-'prakāśas cha saṃvṛittātmā nagātmakah* | 6. *Mukhyā nagā yataś choktā mukhya-sargas tatas tv ayam* | 7. *Taṃ dṛishṭvā 'sādhakaṃ sargam amanyad aparam punaḥ* | *tasyābhidyāyataḥ sargas tiryak-srotā*⁹⁸ | *'bhavarattata* | 8. *Yasmāt tiryak pravṛittah sa tiryak-srotas tataḥ smṛitaḥ* | 9. *Pāścādayas te vikhyātās tamaḥ-prayāḥ hy ave-dinaḥ* | *utpatha-grāhinaś chaiva te 'jñāne jñāna-māninaḥ* | 10. *Ahaṃkrītā ahammānā ashtāvimsad-radhānṛitāḥ* | *antaḥ-prakāśas te sarve āvṛitās chu parasparam* | 11. *Tam apy asādhakam matvā dhyāyato 'nyas tato 'bhavat* | *ūrdhvasrotas tritīyas tu sāttvikorddhvam avarttata*⁹⁹ | 12. *Te sukha-pritibahulā bahir antas cha nāvṛitāḥ*¹⁰⁰ | *prakāśā bahir antas cha ūrdhvasroto-bhavāḥ smṛitāḥ* | 13. *Tushty-ātmakas tritīyas tu deva-sargas tu yah smṛitaḥ* | *tasmīn sarge 'bhavat prītir nishpanne Brahmanas tadā* | 14. *Tato 'nyaṃ sa tadā dadhyau sādhaakam sargam uttamam* | *asādhakāṃs tu tān jñātvā mukhya-sargādi-sambhavān* | 15. *Tathā 'bhidyāyatas tasya satyābhidyāyinas tataḥ* | *prādurbhūtas tadā 'vyaktād arvāk-srotas tu sādhaakah* | 16. *Yasmād arvāg vyavarttanta tato 'rvāk-srotasas tu te* | *te chu prakāśa-bahulā tamodriktā*¹⁰¹ | *rajo'dhikāḥ* | *tasmāt te duḥkha-bahulā bhūyo bhūyas chu kārīṇaḥ* | *prakāśā bahir antas cha manushyā sādhaakās tu te* | . . . 23. *Ity ete tu samākhyātā nava sargāḥ Prajā-*

⁹⁸ *iti sandhir ūrshaḥ*.—Comm.

⁹⁹ The reading of the Vāyu P. in the parallel passage, is *tasyābhidyāyato nityaṃ sāttvikah samavarttata* | *ūrdhvasrotas tritīyas tu sa chāivorddhvam vyavasthitaḥ* | The combination *sāttvikorddhvam* in the text of the Vishṇu P. must be *ārsha*.

¹⁰⁰ For *nāvṛitāḥ* the Vāyu P. reads *saṃvṛitāḥ*.

¹⁰¹ *Iti sandhir ūrshaḥ* | Comm. But there is a form *tama*. The Vāyu P. has *tamaḥ-saktūḥ*.

*pateḥ | prākṛitā vaikṛitās chaiva jagato mūla-hetavaḥ | sṛjato jagadīśa-
 sya kim anyach chhrotum ichhasi | Maitreya uvācha | 24. Saṁkshepāt
 kathitāḥ sargo devādīnām trayā mune | vistarāch chhrotum ichhāmi
 tratto munivarottama | Parāśara uvācha | karmabhir bhāvitāḥ pūrvaiḥ
 kuśalākuśalais tu tāḥ | khyātyā tayā hy anirmuktāḥ saṁhāre hy upa-
 saṁhṛitāḥ | 25. Sthāvarāntāḥ surādyaścha prajā brahmaṁś chaturvi-
 dhāḥ | Brahmanāḥ kurvataḥ śṛiṣṭīm jajnire mānasīs tu tāḥ | 26. Tato
 devāsurapitṛiṇ mānushāṁś cha chatuṣṭayam | sisṛikshur ambhāṁsy
 etāni svam ātmānam ayūyujat | 27. Yuktātmanas tamomātrā udriktā
 'bhūt Prajāpateḥ | sisṛikshor jaghanāt pūrvam asurāḥ jajnire tataḥ |
 28. Utsasarja tatas tām tu tamo-mātrātmikām tanum | sā tu tyaktā
 tanus tena Maitreyābhūd vibhāvarī | 29. Sisṛikshur anya-deha-sthoḥ
 prītim āpa tataḥ surāḥ | sattvodriktāḥ samudbhūtāḥ mukhato Brah-
 maṇo dvija | 30. Tyaktā sā 'pi tanus tena sattva-prāyam abhūd dinam |
 tato hi balino rātrāv asurā devatā divā | 31. Sattvamātrātmikām eva
 tato 'nyām jagrihe tanum | pitṛivad manyamānasya pitaras tasya
 jajnire | 32. Utsasarja pitṛiṇ śṛiṣṭvā tatas tām api sa prabhuḥ | sā
 chotsṛiṣṭvā 'bhavat sandhyā dina-naktāntara-sthitiḥ | 33. Rajo-mātrātm-
 mikām anyām jagrihe sa tanuṁ tataḥ | rajo-mātroktaḥ jātā manushyā
 dvija-sattama | tām apy āśu sa tatyāja tanum ādyaḥ Prajāpatiḥ |
 jyotsnā samabhavat sā 'pi prāk-sandhyā yā 'bhīdhiyate | 34. Jyotsno-
 dgame tu balino manushyāḥ pitaras tathā | Maitreya sandhyā-samaye
 tasmād ete bhavanti vai | 35. Jyotsnā-rātry-ahanī sandhyā chatvāry
 etāni vai vibhoḥ | Brahmanas tu śarīrāṇi triguṇāpāśrayāṇi cha |
 36. Rajo-mātrātmikām eva tato 'nyām jagrihe tanum | tataḥ kshud
 Brahmaṇo jātā jajne kopas tayā tataḥ | 37. Kshut-khāmān andhakāre
 'tha so 'sṛijad bhagavāṁś tataḥ | Firūpāḥ śmaśrulā jātās te 'bhyadhā-
 vaṁś tataḥ prabhuḥ | 38. "Mairam bho rakshyatām esha" yair uktaṁ
 rākshasās tu te | ūchuḥ "khādāma" ity anye ye te yakshās tu yakshaṇāt |*

"Maitreya said: 1. Tell me in detail how at the beginning of the creation that deity Brahmā formed the gods, rishis, fathers, dānavas, men, beasts, trees, etc., dwelling respectively on the earth, in the sky, and in the water; 2. and with what qualities, with what nature, and of what form he made the world. Parāśara replied: 3. I declare to thee, Maitreya, how that deity created the gods and all other beings; listen with attention. While he was meditating on creation, as at the beginnings of the (previous) Kalpas, there appeared an insentient crea-

tion, composed of gloom (*tamas*). 4. Gloom, illusion, great illusion, darkness, and what is called utter darkness—such was the five-fold ignorance, which was manifested from that great Being, 5. as he was meditating—an insensible creation,¹⁰² under five conditions, devoid of feeling either without or within,¹⁰³ closed up, motionless. 6. And since motionless objects are called the primary objects, this is called the primary (*mukhya*) creation.¹⁰⁴ 7. Beholding this creation to be ineffective, he again contemplated another. As he was desiring it the brute (*tiryaksrotas*) creation came forth. 8. Since (in its natural functions) it acts horizontally it is called Tiryaksrotas. 9. The (creatures composing it) are known as cattle, etc., distinguished mainly by darkness (*tamas*) ignorant, following irregular courses,¹⁰⁵ while in a state of ignorance having a conceit of knowledge, (10) self-regarding, self-esteeming, affected by the twenty-eight kinds of defects, endowed with inward feeling, and mutually closed. 11. As Brahmā, regarding this creation also as ineffective, was again meditating, another creation, the third, or *ūrdhvasrotas*, which was good, rose upward. 12. They (the creatures belonging to this creation) abounding in happiness and satisfaction, being unclosed both without and within, and possessed both of external and internal feeling, are called the offspring of the *Ūrdhvasrotas* creation. 13. This third creation, known as that of the gods, was one full of enjoyment. When it was completed, Brahmā was pleased. 14. He then contemplated another creation, effective and most excellent, since he regarded as ineffective the beings sprung from the primary and other creations. 15. While he, whose will is efficacious, was so desiring, the *Arvāksrotas*, an effective creation, was manifested.¹⁰⁶ 16. They

¹⁰² The Vāyu P. here inserts an additional line, *sarvatas tamasū chaiva dīpaḥ kumbha-vad āvṛtitaḥ* | “and covered on all sides with darkness, as a lamp by a jar.”

¹⁰³ *Iahir-anto'prakāśascha* appears to be the true reading, as the Commentator renders the last word by *prakṛiṣṭa-jñāna-sūnyaḥ*, “devoid of knowledge.” But if this be the correct reading, it is ungrammatical, as *antaḥ* and *aprakāśa* would properly make *antar-aprakāśa*, not *anto'prakāśa*. But the Purāṇas have many forms which are irregular (*īrsha*, “peculiar to the rishis,” “vedic,” or “antiquated” as the Commentators style them). The Taylor MS. of the Vāyu Purāṇa reads in the parallel passage *bahir-antaḥ-prakāśascha*.

¹⁰⁴ See Dr. Hall's note p. 70 on Professor Wilson's translation; and also the passage quoted above p. 16 from the Taitt. Saṃh. vii. 1, 1, 4, where the word *mukhya* is otherwise applied and explained.

¹⁰⁵ *Bhākṣhyādi-vīrekak-hīnāḥ* | “Making no distinction in food, etc., etc.” Comm.

¹⁰⁶ Compare M. Bh. xiv. 1038.

(the creatures belonging to it) are called Arvāksrotas, because (in their natural functions) they acted downwardly. And they abound in sensation (*prakāśa*) and are full of darkness (*tamas*) with a preponderance of passion (*rajas*). Hence they endure much suffering, and are constantly active, with both outward and inward feeling. These beings were men, and effective."¹⁰⁷

In the next following verses, 17–22, the names of the different creations, described in the first part of this section, and in the second chapter of the first book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, are recapitulated, and two others, the Anugraha and the Kaumāra, are noticed, but not explained.¹⁰⁸

The speaker Parāśara then adds: "23. Thus have the nine creations of Prajāpati, both Prakṛita and Vaikṛita, the radical causes of the world, been recounted. What else dost thou desire to hear regarding the creative lord of the world? Maitreya replies: 24. By thee, most excellent Muni, the creation of the gods and other beings has been summarily narrated: I desire to hear it from thee in detail. Parāśara rejoins: Called into (renewed) existence in consequence of former actions, good or bad, and unliberated from that destination when they were absorbed at the (former) dissolution of the world, (25) the four descriptions of creatures, beginning with things immovable and ending with gods, were produced, o Brāhman, from Brahmā when he was creating, and they sprang from his mind. 26. Being then desirous to create these streams (*ambhāmśi*)¹⁰⁹—the four classes of Gods, Asuras, Fathers, and Men, he concentrated himself. 27. Prajāpati, thus concentrated, received a body, which was formed of the quality of gloom (*tamas*); and as he desired to create, Asuras were first produced from his groin. 28. He then abandoned that body formed entirely of gloom; which when abandoned by him became night. 29. Desiring to create, when he had occupied another body, Brahmā experienced pleasure; and then gods, full of the quality of goodness, sprang from his mouth. 30. That body

¹⁰⁷ The Vāyu P. adds here: *Lakṣhaṇaiś tūrakadyaiścha aṣṭadhū cha vyavasthitūḥ | siddhātmanō manushyās te gandharva-saha-dharmīṇaḥ | ity eṣha tajjasaḥ sargo hy arvāksrotūḥ prakīrtitah* | "Constituted with preservative(?) characteristics, and in an eightfold manner. These were men perfect in their essence, and in nature equal to Gandharvas. This was the lustrous creation known as Arvāksrotas."

¹⁰⁸ See Dr. Hall's edition of Wilson's V. P. pp. 32 ff.; and pp. 74 ff.

¹⁰⁹ This word is borrowed from the passage of the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, ii. 3, 8, 3, quoted above, p. 23. Most of the particulars in the rest of the narrative are imitated from another passage of the same Brāhmaṇa, ii. 2, 9, 5 ff., also quoted above, p. 28.

also, being abandoned by him, became day, which is almost entirely good. Hence the Asuras are powerful by night¹¹⁰ and the gods by day. 31. He then assumed another body formed of pure goodness; and the Fathers were born from him, when he was regarding himself as a father.¹¹¹ 32. The Lord, after creating the Fathers, abandoned that body also; which, when so abandoned, became twilight, existing between day and night. 33. He next took another body entirely formed of passion; and men, in whom passion is violent, were produced. The primeval Prajāpati speedily discarded this body also, which became faint light (*jyotsnā*), which is called early twilight. 34. Hence, at the appearance of this faint light, men are strong, while the fathers are strong at evening-twilight. 35. Morning-twilight, night, day, and evening-twilight, these are the four bodies of Brahmā, and the receptacles of the three qualities. 36. Brahmā next took another body entirely formed of passion, from which sprang hunger, and through it anger was produced. 37. The Divine Being then in darkness created beings emaciated with hunger, which, hideous of aspect, and with long beards, rushed against the lord. 38. Those who said, 'Let him not be preserved' (*rakshyatām*) were called Rākshasas, whilst those others who cried, 'Let us eat (him)' were called Yakshas from 'eating' (*yakshanāt*).¹¹²

It is not necessary for my purpose that I should quote at length the conclusion of the section. It may suffice to say that verses 39 to 51 describe the creation of serpents from Brahmā's hair; of Bhūtas; of Gandharvas; of birds (*vayāṁsi*) from the creator's life (*vayas*), of sheep from his breast, of goats from his mouth, of kine from his belly and sides, and of horses,¹¹³ elephants, and other animals from his feet; of plants from his hairs; of the different metres and vedas from his eastern, southern, western, and northern mouths. Verses 52 ff. contain a recapitulation of the creative operations, with some statement of the

¹¹⁰ In the Rāmāyaṇa, Sundara Kāṇḍa 82, 13 f. (Gorresio's edit.) we read: *Rakshasāṁ rajanī-kālāḥ saṁyugeshu praśasyate* | 14. *Tasmād rājan nīlā-yuddhe jayo 'smākaṁ na saṁśayaḥ* | "Night is the approved time for the Rakshases to fight. We should therefore undoubtedly conquer in a nocturnal conflict."

¹¹¹ This idea also is borrowed from Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 8, 2.

¹¹² See Wilson's V. P. vol. i. p. 83, and Dr. Hall's note.

¹¹³ See the passage from the Taitt. Saṁh. vii. 1, 1, 4 ff. quoted above, p. 16, where the same origin is ascribed to horses.

principles according to which they were conducted. Of these verses I quote only the following: 55. *Teshām ye yāni karmāni prāk-sṛiṣṭhyān pratipedire | tāny eva pratipadyante sṛijyamānāḥ punaḥ punaḥ | . . .* 60. *Yathārtāv ṛitu-lingāni nānārūpāni paryaye | dṛiṣyante tāni tānyevā tathā bhārā yugādishu |* 61. *Karoty evaṁvidhām sṛiṣṭim kalpādaḥ sa punaḥ punaḥ | sisṛikshāsakti-yukto 'sau sṛijya-śakti-prachoditaḥ |* "These creatures, as they are reproduced time after time, discharge the same functions as they had fulfilled in the previous creation . . . 60. Just as, in each season of the year, all the various characteristics of that season are perceived, on its recurrence, to be the very same as they had been before; so too are the beings produced at the beginnings of the ages.¹¹⁴ 61. Possessing both the will and the ability to create, and impelled by the powers inherent in the things to be created, the deity produces again and again a creation of the very same description at the beginning of every Kalpa."

The sixth section of the same book of the V. P., of which I shall cite the larger portion, professes to give a more detailed account of the creation of mankind.

V. P. i. 6, 1. *Maitreya uvācha | Arvāksrotas tu kathito bhavatā yas tu mānushaḥ | brahman vistarato brūhi Brahmā tam asṛijad yathā |* 2. *Yathā cha varṇān asṛijad yad-guṇāṁś cha mahāmune | yachcha teshām smṛitaṁ karma viprādīnaṁ tad uchyatām | Parūśara uvācha |* 3. *Satyābhidhyāyinas tasya sisṛikshor Brahmano jagat | ajāyanta dṛijāsreshṭha sattrodriktā mukhāt prajāḥ |* 4. *Vakshaso rajasodriktās tathā 'nyā Brahmano 'bhavan | rajasā tamasā chaiva samudriktās tathorutaḥ |* 5. *Padbhyām anyāḥ prajā Brahman saṁsarjja dṛija-sattama | tamaḥ-pradhānās tāḥ sarvāś chāturvarṇyam idaṁ tataḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyāḥ śūdrāścha dṛija-sattama | pādoru-vakshaḥ-sthalato mukhatoś cha samudgatāḥ |* 6. *Yajna-nishpattaye sarvam etad Brahmā chakāra vai | chāturvarṇyam mahābhūga yajna-sādhanam uttamam |* 7. *Yajnair āpyāyitā devā vṛiṣṭy-utsargeṇa vai prajāḥ | āpyāyayante dharmajna yājñāḥ kalyāṇa-hetavaḥ |* 8. *Nishpadyante naraiḥ tais tu sa-karmā-bhirataiḥ sadā | viruddhācharanūpetuiḥ sadbhiḥ sanmarga-gāmibhiḥ |* 9. *Śvargāpavargau mānushyāt prāpuvanti narā mune | yach chābhiruchitaṁ sthānaṁ tad yānti manujā dṛija |* 10. *Prajās tāḥ Brahmanā sṛiṣṭāś chāturvarṇya-vyavasthitau | samyak śraddhā-samāchāra-pra-*

¹¹⁴ Verses similar to this occur in Manu i. 30; and in the Mahābhārata xii. 8550 f.

vaṇā muni-sattama | 11. *Yathechhā-vāsa-niratāḥ sarvābādha-vivarjitāḥ* |
śuddhāntaḥ-karaṇāḥ śuddhāḥ sarvānushṭhāna-nirmalāḥ | 14.¹¹⁵ *Sud-*
gḥe cha tāsām manasi śuddhe 'ntaḥ-saṁsthite Harau | *śuddha-jñānam*
prapaśyanti Fiṣṭv-ākhyam yena tatpadam | 15. *Tataḥ kālātmako yo*
'sau sa chāṁsaḥ kathito Hareḥ | *sa pūṭayaty agho ghoram alpam alpālpa-*
sūravat | 16. *Adharma-vīja-bhūtaṁ tu tamo-lobha-samudbhavam* | *pra-*
jāsu tāsū Maitreya rāgādikam asādhakam | 17. *Tataḥ sū sahaajā siddhis*
tāsām nātira jāyate | *rasollāsādayaś chānyāḥ siddhayo 'shṭau bhavanti*
yāḥ | 18. *Tāsu kṣhīṇāsv aśeshāsu varddhamāne cha pātuke* | *dvandvādi-*
bhava-duḥkḥarttās tā bhavanti tataḥ prajāḥ | 19. *Tato durgāṇi tās chu-*
krur vārṅkshyam pūrvatatam audakam | *kṛitimaṁ cha tathā durgam pura-*
karṇatākādi yat | 20. *Gṛihāṇi cha yathānyāyāṁ teshu chakruḥ purā-*
dishu | *śītātapaḍi-bādhānām praśamāya mahāmate* | 21. *Pratikāram*
imaṁ kṛitvā śītādes tāḥ prajāḥ punaḥ | *vṛttopāyāṁ tataś chakrur*
hasta-siddhaṁ cha karma-jam | . . . 26. *Grāmyāranyāḥ smṛitā hy etā*
oshadhyāś cha chaturdaśa | *yajna-nishpattaye yajnas tathā 'sām hetur*
uttamaḥ | 27. *Etās cha saha yajnena prajānām karāṇam param* |
parāpara-vidāḥ prājñās tato yajnān vitanvate | 28. *Ahany ahany*
anushṭhānam yajnānām munisattama | *upakāra-karam puṁsām kriya-*
mānāḥ cha śānti-dam | 29. *Teshām tu kālu-sṛishṭo 'sau pāpa-vindur*
mahāmate | *chetassu varṇidhe chakrus te na yajneshu mānasam* | 30.
Veda-vādāṁs tathā devān yajnakarmādikaṁ cha yat | *tat sarvaṁ nīn-*
damānās te yajna-ryāsedha-kāriṇāḥ | 31. *Pravṛitti-mārga-ryuchchitti-*
kāriṇo veda-nindakāḥ | *durātmāno durāchārā babhūvuh kuṭilāsuyāḥ* |
 32. *Saṁsiddhāyāṁ tu vṛttāyām prajāḥ sṛishṭvā Prajāpatiḥ* | *maryā-*
dām sthāpayāmāsa yathā-sthānam yathā-guṇam | 34. *Varnāṇām āśra-*
mānām cha dharmān dharmā-bhṛitām rara | *lokāṁs sarva-varṇānām*
samyag dharmānupālīnām | 35. *Prājāpatyam brāhmaṇānām smṛitam*
sthānam kriyāvātām | *sthānam aindraṁ kṣhattriyaṇām sangrāmeshe*
anivarttinām | 36. *Vaiśyaṇām mārutam sthānam sva-dharmam anu-*
varttinām | *gāndharvām śūdra-jātīnām paricharyāsu varttinām* |

“Maitreya says: 1. You have described to me the Arvaksrotas, or human, creation: declare to me, o Brahman, in detail the manner in which Brahmā formed it. 2. Tell me how, and with what qualities, he created the castes, and what are traditionally reputed to be the

¹¹⁵ There are no verses numbered 12 and 13, the MSS. passing from the 11th to the 14th.

functions of the Brāhman and others. Parāśara replies: 3. When, true to his design, Brahmā became desirous to create the world, creatures in whom goodness (*sattva*) prevailed sprang from his mouth; (4) others in whom passion (*rajas*) predominated came from his breast; others in whom both passion and darkness (*tamas*) were strong, proceeded from his thighs; (5) others he created from his feet, whose chief characteristic was darkness. Of these was composed the system of four castes, Brāhman, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, who had respectively issued from his mouth, breast, thighs, and feet. 6. Brahmā formed this¹¹⁶ entire fourfold institution of classes for the performance of sacrifice, of which it is an excellent instrument. 7. Nourished by sacrifices, the gods nourish mankind by discharging rain. Sacrifices, the causes of prosperity, (8) are constantly celebrated by virtuous men, devoted to their duties, who avoid wrong observances, and walk in the right path. 9. Men, in consequence of their humanity, obtain heaven and final liberation; and they proceed to the world which they desire. 10. These creatures formed by Brahmā in the condition of the four castes, (were) perfectly inclined to conduct springing from religious faith, (11) loving to dwell wherever they pleased, free from all sufferings, pure in heart, pure, spotless in all observances. 14. And in their pure minds,—the pure Hari dwelling within them,—(there existed) pure knowledge whereby they beheld his highest station, called (that of) Vishṇu.¹¹⁷ 15. Afterwards that which is described as the portion of Hari consisting of Time¹¹⁸ infused into those beings direful sin, in the form of desire and the like, ineffective (of man's end), small in amount, but gradually increasing in force, (16) the seed of unrighteousness, and sprung from darkness and cupidity. 17. Thenceforward their innate perfectness was but slightly evolved: and as all the other eight perfections called *rasollāsa* and the rest (18) declined, and sin increased, these creatures (mankind) were afflicted with suffering arising

¹¹⁶ How does this agree with the statements made in the Taitt. Sanh. vii. 1, 1, 4 ff. as quoted above, p. 16, and in the Taitt. Br. iii. 2, 3, 9, p. 21, that the Sūdra is incapacitated for sacrifice, and that anything he milks out is no oblation?

¹¹⁷ This alludes to an expression in the Rig-veda, i. 22, 20. See the 4th vol. of this work, p. 54.

¹¹⁸ In regard to *Kāla*, "Time," see Wilson's V. P. vol. i. p. 18 f., and the passages from the Atharva-veda, extracted in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 380 ff.

out of the pairs (of susceptibilities to pleasure and pain, etc., etc.) 19. They then constructed fastnesses among trees, on hills, or amid waters, as well as artificial fortresses, towns, villages, etc. 20. And in these towns, etc., they built houses on the proper plan, in order to counteract cold, heat, and other discomforts. 21. Having thus provided against cold, etc., they devised methods of livelihood depending upon labour, and executed by their hands." The kinds of grain which they cultivated are next described in the following verses 22 to 25. The text then proceeds, verse 26: "These are declared to be the fourteen kinds of grain, cultivated and wild, fitted for sacrifice; and sacrifice is an eminent cause of their existence. 27. These, too, along with sacrifice, are the most efficacious sources of progeny. Hence those who understand cause and effect celebrate sacrifices. 28. Their daily performance is beneficial to men, and delivers from sins committed. 29. But that drop of sin which had been created by time increased in men's hearts, and they disregarded sacrifice. 30. Reviling the Vedas, and the prescriptions of the Vedas, the gods, and all sacrificial rites, etc., obstructing oblations, (31) and cutting off the path of activity,¹¹⁹ they became malignant, vicious, and perverse in their designs. 32. The means of subsistence being provided, Prajāpati, having created living beings, established a distinction according to their position and qualities (see verses 3 to 5 above), (and fixed) the duties of the castes and orders, and the worlds (to be attained after death) by all the castes which perfectly fulfilled their duties. 33. The world of Prajāpati is declared to be the (future) abode of those Brāhmanas who are assiduous in religious rites; the realm of Indra the abode of those Kshattriyas who turn not back in battle; (34) that of the Maruts the abode of those Vaiśyas who fulfil their duties; and that of the Gandharvas the abode of the men of Śūdra race who abide in their vocation of service." In the remaining verses of the chapter (35 to 39) the realms of blessedness destined for the reception of more eminent saints are briefly noticed, as well as the infernal regions, to which the wicked are doomed.

¹¹⁹ *Praripitti-mārga-ryuchchhitti-kārinah*. The Commentator ascribes this to the human race being no longer sufficiently propagated, for he adds the explanation: *yajñamānushthāne devair ararshanād annābhāvena prajā-ryudhler asiddheh* | "because population did not increase from the want of food caused by the gods ceasing to send rain in consequence of the non-celebration of sacrifice."

At the beginning of the seventh section, without any further enquiry on the part of Maitreya, Parāśara proceeds as follows :

V. P. i. 7, 1. *Tato 'bhidhyāyatas tasya jajñire mānasīḥ prajāḥ | tach-chharīra-samutponnaiḥ kāryais taiḥ kārānaiḥ saha |* 2. *Kshettrajñāḥ samavarttanta gātrebhyas tasya dhimataḥ | te sarve samavarttanta ye mayā prāḡ udāhṛitāḥ |* 3. *Devādyāḥ sthāvarāntās cha traigunya-vishaye sthitāḥ | evam bhūtāni sṛiṣṭāni charāni sthāvarāni cha |* 4. *Yadā 'sya tāḥ prajāḥ sarvā va vyavarddhantu dhimataḥ | athānyān mānasān putrān sadṛiṣān ātmano 'srijat |* 5. *Bhṛigum Pulastyam Pulahaṁ Kratum Angirasaṁ tathā | Marīchiṁ Dakṣhaṁ Atriṁ cha Vasishṭhaṁ chaiva mānasān | nava brahmāna ity ete purāṇe niśchayaṁ gatāḥ |* 6. *Sanandanādayo ye cha purvāṁ sṛiṣṭās tu Vedhasā | na te lokeshv asajjanta nirapekshāḥ prajāsu te | sarve te chāgata-jñānā vīta-rāgā vimatsarāḥ |* 7. *Teshv evaṁ nirapeksheshu loka-sṛiṣṭau mahātmanah | Brahmano 'bhūd mahākrodhas trailokya-dahana-kshamaḥ |* 8. *Tasya krodhāt samudbhūta-jvālā-mālā-vidīpitam | Brahmano 'bhūt tadā sarvaṁ trailokyam akhilam mune |* 9. *Bhrūkuṭi-kuṭilāt tasya lalāṭāt krodha-dīpitāt | samutpannas tadā Rudro madhyāhnārka-sama-prabhaḥ | ardha-nārī-nara-vapuḥ prachando 'tisarīravān | vibhajātmānam ity ukṛā tam Brahmā 'ntardadhe punaḥ |* 10. *Tathokto 'sau dvīdhā strītvam puruṣatvaṁ tathā 'karot | bibheda puruṣtvaṁ cha daśadhā chaikadhā cha saḥ |* 11. *Saumyāsaumyais tathā śāntūśāntaiḥ strītvam cha sa prabhuḥ | bibheda bahudhā devaḥ srarūpair asitaiḥ sitaiḥ |* 12. *Tato Brahmā 'tma-sambhūtam pūrvaṁ svāyambhuvam prabhum | ātmānam eva kṛitarān prajāpālam Manuṁ dvija |* 13. *Sūtarūpāṁ cha tāṁ nārīm tapo-nīrdhūta-kalmashām | svāyambhuvo Manur devaḥ patnyartham jagrihe vibhuḥ |* 14. *Tasmāch cha puruṣhād devī Sūtarūpā vyajāyata | Priyavratottānapādu Prasūtyākūti-sanjñitam | kanyā-dāyaṁ cha dharma-jña rūpau-dārya-guṇānvitam |* 15. *Dadau Prasūtiṁ Dukṣhāyāthākūtiṁ Ruchaye purā ityādi |*

“1. Then from him, as he was desiring, there were born mental sons with effects and causes¹²⁰ derived from his body. 2. Embodied spirits sprang from the limbs of that wise Being. All those creatures sprang forth which have been already described by me, (3) beginning

¹²⁰ The Commentator explains these words *kāryais taiḥ kārānaiḥ saha* to mean “bodies and senses.”

with gods and ending with motionless objects, and existing in the condition of the three qualities. Thus were created beings moving and stationary. 4. When none of these creatures of the Wise Being multiplied, he next formed other, mental, sons like to himself, (5) Bhṛigu, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Angiras, Marīchi, Daksha, Atri, and Vasishṭha, all born from his mind. These are the nine Brahmās who have been determined in the Purāṇas. 6. But Sanandana and the others who had been previously created by Vedhas (Brahmā) had no regard for the worlds, and were indifferent to offspring. They had all attained to knowledge, were freed from desire, and devoid of envy. 7. As they were thus indifferent about the creation of the world, great wrath, sufficient to burn up the three worlds, arose in the mighty Brahmā. 8. The three worlds became entirely illuminated by the wreath of flame which sprang from his anger. 9. Then from his forehead, wrinkled by frowns and inflamed by fury, arose Rudra, luminous as the midday sun, with a body half male and half female, fiery, and huge in bulk. After saying to him, 'Divide thyself,' Brahmā vanished. 10. Being so addressed, Rudra severed himself into two, into a male and a female form. The god next divided his male body into eleven parts, (11) beautiful and hideous, gentle and ungente; and his female figure into numerous portions with appearances black and white. 12. Brahmā then made the lord Svāyambhuva, who had formerly sprung from himself, and was none other than himself, to be Manu the protector of creatures. 13. The god Manu Svāyambhuva took for his wife the female Satarūpā, who by austere fervour had become freed from all defilement. 14. To that Male the goddess Satarūpā bore Priyavrata and Uttānapāda, and two daughters called Prasūti and Ākūti, distinguished by the qualities of beauty and magnanimity. 15. He of old gave Prasūti in marriage to Daksha, and Ākūti to Ruci.

From a comparison of the preceding narratives of the creation of mankind, extracted from the fifth and sixth chapters of the First Book of the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, it will be seen that the details given in the different accounts are not consistent with each other. It is first of all stated in the fifth chapter (verse 16) that the arvāksrotas, or human creation was characterized by the qualities of darkness and passion. In the second account (verse 33) we are told that Brahmā assumed a body composed of passion, from which men, in whom that quality is power-

ful, were produced.¹²¹ In neither of these narratives is the slightest allusion made to there having been any primeval and congenital distinction of classes. In the third statement given in the sixth chapter (verses 3 to 5) the human race is said to have been the result of a four-fold creation; and the four castes, produced from different parts of the creator's body, are declared to have been each especially characterized by different qualities (*gunas*), viz., those who issued from his mouth by goodness (*sattva*), those who proceeded from his breast by passion (*rajas*), those who were produced from his thighs by both passion and darkness (*tamas*), and those who sprang from his feet by darkness. In the sequel of this account, however, no mention is made of any differences of conduct arising from innate diversities of disposition having been manifested in the earliest age by the members of the different classes. On the contrary, they are described (verses 10 ff.) in language applicable to a state of perfection which was universal and uniform, as full of faith, pure-hearted and devout. In like manner the declension in purity and goodness which ensued is not represented as peculiar to any of the classes, but as common to all. So far, therefore, the different castes seem, according to this account, to have been undistinguished by any variety of mental or moral constitution. And it is not until after the deterioration of the entire race has been related, that we are told (in verses 32 f.) that the separate duties of the several castes were fixed in accordance with their position and qualities. This sketch of the moral and religious history of mankind, in the earliest period, is thus deficient in failing to explain how beings, who were originally formed with very different ethical characters, should have been all equally excellent during their period of perfection, and have also experienced an uniform process of decline.

In regard to the variation between the two narratives of the creation found in the fifth chapter of the Vishnu Purāṇa, Professor Wilson remarks as follows in a note to vol. i. p. 80: "These reiterated, and not always congruous, accounts of the creation are explained by the Purāṇa as referring to different Kalpas or renovations of the world, and therefore involving no incompatibility. A better reason for their appearance

¹²¹ Compare the passage given above at the close of Sect. V pp. 41 ff., from Manu xii. 39 ff. and the remarks thereon.

is the probability that they have been borrowed from different original authorities."¹²²

As regards the first of these explanations of the discrepancies in question, it must be observed that it is inapplicable to the case before us, as the text of the Vishṇu Purāṇa itself says nothing of the different accounts of the creation having reference to different Kalpas : and in absence of any intimation to the contrary we must naturally assume that the various portions of the consecutive narration in the fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh chapters, which are connected with each other by a series of questions and answers, must all have reference to the creation which took place at the commencement of the existing or Vārāha Kalpa, as stated in the opening verse of the fourth chapter. Professor Wilson's supposition that the various and discrepant accounts "have been borrowed from different original authorities" appears to have probability in its favour. I am unable to point out the source from which the first description of the creation, in the early part of the fifth chapter, verses 1 to 23, has been derived. But the second account, given in verses 26 to 35, has evidently drawn many of its details from the passages of the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa ii. 2, 9, 5-9, and ii. 3, 8, 2 f., and Satapatha Brāhmaṇa xi. 1, 6, 6 ff. which I have quoted above. And it is possible that the references which are found in the former of these descriptions in the Vishṇu Purāṇa to different portions of the creation

¹²² The discrepancies between current legends on different subjects are occasionally noticed in the text of the Vishṇu Purāṇa. Thus in the eighth chapter of the first book, v. 12, Maitreya, who had been told by Parāśara that S'rī was the daughter of Bhṛigu and Khyāti, enquires : *Kṣhīrābhdhau S'rīḥ puṇyotpannā śrūyate'mṛita-manthane | Bhṛigogoḥ Khyātyāṁ samutpannety etad āha katham bhavān* | "It is reported that S'rī was produced in the ocean of milk when ambrosia was churned. How do you say that she was born to Bhṛigu by Khyāti?" He receives for answer : 13. *Nityaiva sū jagan-mātā Viṣṇoḥ S'rīr anapāyīnī* (another MS. reads *anuyāyīnī*) *yathā sarvagato Viṣṇus tathāivayaṁ drīyottama* | "S'rī, the mother of the world, and wife of Viṣṇu, is eternal and undecaying" (or, according to the other reading, "is the eternal follower of Viṣṇu"). "As he is omnipresent, so is she," and so on. The case of Dakṣha will be noticed further on in the text. On the method resorted to by the Commentators in cases of this description Professor Wilson observes in a note to p. 203 (4to. edition), "other calculations occur, the incompatibility of which is said, by the Commentators on our text and on that of the Bhāgavata, to arise from reference being made to different Kalpas : and they quote the same stanza to this effect *Kṛachit kṛachit purāṇeshu virodho yadi lakṣyate | kalpa-bhedaḍibhis tatra virodhaḥ sadbhis iṣyate* | 'Whenever any contradictions in different Purāṇas are observed, they are ascribed by the pious to differences of Kalpas and the like.'"

being ineffective may have been suggested by some of the other details in the Brāhmanas, which I shall now proceed to cite. At all events some of the latter appear to have given rise to the statement in the fourth verse of the seventh chapter of the Vishṇu P. that the creatures formed by Brahmā did not multiply, as well as to various particulars in the narratives which will be quoted below from the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas. The Brāhmanas describe the creative operations of Prajāpati as having been attended with intense effort, and often followed by great exhaustion; and not only so, but they represent many of these attempts to bring living creatures of various kinds into existence, to sustain them after they were produced, and to ensure their propagation, as having been either altogether abortive, or only partially successful. The following quotations will afford illustrations of these different points:

Taitt. Br. i. 1, 10, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asṛijata | sa ririchāno 'manyata | sa tapo 'tapyata | sa ātman vīryam apaśyat tad avaraddhata |*

“Prajāpati created living beings. He felt himself emptied. He performed austere abstraction. He perceived vigour in himself. It increased, etc.”

Taitt. Br. i. 2, 6, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ sṛishṭvā vṛitto¹²³ 'śayat | taṁ devāḥ bhūtānāṁ rasaṁ tejaḥ sambhṛitya tena enam abhishajyan “mahān aravartti” iti |*

“Prajāpati after creating living beings lay exhausted. The gods, collecting the essence and vigour of existing things, cured him therewith, saying he has become great, etc.”

Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 6, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ sṛishṭvā vyasraṁsata | sa hṛidayam bhūto 'śayat |*

“Prajāpati, after creating living beings, was paralysed. Becoming a heart, he slept.”

S. P. Br. iii. 9, 1, 1. *Prajāpatir vai prajāḥ sasṛijāno ririchānaḥ na amanyata | tasmāt parāchyah prajāḥ āsuh | na asya prajāḥ śriye 'nnādyāya jajñire | 2. Sa aikshata “arikshy aham asmai (? yasmai) u kāmāya asṛikshi na me sa kāmāḥ samūrdhi parāchyo mat-prajāḥ abhūvan na me prajāḥ śriye 'nnādyāya asthishata” iti | 3. Sa aikshata Prajāpatiḥ “kathāṁ nu punar ātmānam āpyāyeyya upa mā prajāḥ samāvartteraṁs tishṭheran me prajāḥ śriye annādyāya” iti | so 'rchhan śrāmyamś chu-*

chāra prajā-kāmaḥ | sa etām ekādaśinim apaśyat | sa ekādaśinyā ishṭvā Prajāpatiḥ punar ātmānam āpyāyayata upa enam prajāḥ samāvarttanta atishṭhanta asya prajāḥ śriye 'mnādyāya sa vasīyān eva ishṭvā 'bhavat |

* “Prajāpati when creating living beings felt himself as it were emptied. The living creatures went away from him. They were not produced so as to prosper and to eat food. 2. He considered: ‘I have become emptied: the object for which I created them has not been fulfilled: they have gone away, and have not gained prosperity and food.’ 3. He considered: ‘how can I again replenish myself; and how shall my creatures return to me, and acquire prosperity and food?’ Desirous of progeny, he went on worshipping and performing religious rites. He beheld this Ekādaśinī (Eleven); and sacrificing with it, he again replenished himself; his creatures returned to him, and gained prosperity and food. Having sacrificed, he became more brilliant.”

S. P. Br. x. 4, 2, 2. *So 'yaṁ saṁvatsaraḥ Prajāpatiḥ sarvāṇi bhūtāni sasrije yach cha prāṇi yach cha aprāṇam ubhayān deva-manushyān | sa sarvāṇi bhūtāni sṛishṭvā ririchāna iva mene | sa mṛityor bibhiyānchakāra |* 2. *Sa ha īkshānchakre “katham nṛ aham imāni sarvāṇi bhūtāni punar ātmānam āvapeya punar ātman dadhīya katham nṛ aham eva eshām sarveshām bhūtānām punar ātmā syām” iti |*

“This Year, (who is) Prajāpati, created all beings, both those which breathe and those that are without breath, both gods and men. Having created all beings he felt himself as it were emptied. He was afraid of death. 2. He reflected, ‘How can I again unite all these beings with myself, again place them in myself? How can I alone be again the soul of all these beings?’ ”

S. P. Br. x. 4, 4, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ vai prajāḥ sṛijamānam pāpmā mṛityur abhiparijaghāna | sa tapo 'tapyata sahasraṁ saṁvatsarān pāpmānam vijihāsan |*

“Misery, death, smote Prajāpati, as he was creating living beings. He performed austere abstraction for a thousand years, with the view of shaking off misery.”

S. P. Br. ii. 5, 1, 1. *Prajāpatir ha vai idam agre ekaḥ eva āsa | sa aikshata “katham nu prajāyeya” iti | so 'śrāmyat sa tapo 'tapyata | sa prajāḥ asrijata | tāḥ asya prajāḥ sṛishṭāḥ parābabhūvuh | tāni imāni veyāṁsi | puruṣo vai Prajāpater nedishṭham | dvīpād vai ayam puruṣaḥ | tasmād dvīpādo veyāṁsi |* 2. *Sa aikshata Prajāpatiḥ | “yathā*

nr eva purā eko 'bhūvam evam u nv eva apy etarhy eka eva asmi'' iti | sa dvitīyāḥ sasrīje | tāḥ asya parā eva babhūvuh | tad idam kshudraṁ sarī-srīpam yad anyat sarpebhyah | tritīyāḥ sasrīje ity āhus tāḥ asya parā eva babhūvuh | te ime sarpāḥ . . . | 3 So 'rchhan śrāmyan Prajāpatir īkshānchakre "katham nu me prajāḥ sṛishṭāḥ parābhavanti" iti | sa ha etad eva dadarśa "anaśanatayā vai me prajāḥ parābhavanti" iti | sa ātmanah eva agre stanayoh paya āpyāyayānchakre | sa prajāḥ asṛijata | tāḥ asya prajāḥ sṛishṭāḥ stanāv eva abhipadya tās 'tataḥ sambabhūvuh | tāḥ imāḥ aparābhūtāḥ |

'1. Prajāpati alone was formerly this universe. He reflected, 'How can I be propagated?' He toiled in religious rites, and practised austere fervour. He created living beings. After being created by him they perished. They were these birds. Man is the thing nearest to Prajāpati. This being, man, is two-footed. Hence birds are two-footed creatures. Prajāpati reflected, 'As I was formerly but one, so am I now also only one.' He created a second set of living beings. They also perished. This was the class of small reptiles other than serpents. They say he created a third set of beings, which also perished. They were these serpents . . . 3. Worshipping and toiling in religious rites, Prajāpati reflected, 'How is it that my creatures perish after they have been formed?' He perceived this, 'they perish from want of food.' In his own presence he caused milk to be supplied to breasts. He created living beings, which resorting to the breasts were then preserved. These are the creatures which did not perish."

Taitt. Br. i. 6, 2, 1. *Vaiśvadevena vai Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asṛijata | tāḥ sṛishṭāḥ na prajāyanta | so 'gnir akūmayata "aham imāḥ prajānayejam" iti | sa Prajāpataye śucham adadhāt | so 'śochat prajāṁ ichhamānaḥ | tasmād yaṁ cha prajā bhunakti yaṁ cha na tāv ubhau śochataḥ prajāṁ ichhamānau | tāsv Agnim apy asṛijāt | tā Agnir adhyait (2) Somo reto 'dadhāt Savitā prajānayat | Sarasvatī vācham adadhāt | Pūshā 'poshayat | te vai ete triḥ saṁvatsarasya prayujyante ye devāḥ pushṭi-patayaḥ | saṁvatsaro vai Prajāpatiḥ | saṁvatsareṇa eva asmai prajāḥ prajānayat | tāḥ prajāḥ jātāḥ Maruto 'ghnan "asmān api na prāyukshata" iti | 3. Sa etam Prajāpatir mārutaṁ saptakapālam apaśyat | tam niravapat | tato vai prajābhyo 'kalpata | . . . sa Prajāpatir aśochat "yāḥ pūrvāḥ prajāḥ asṛikshi Marutas tāḥ avadhikshuh katham aparāḥ*

*srījeya" iti | tasya śushma āṇḍam bhūtañ niravarttata | tad vyudaharat |
tad aposhayat | tat prājyaya |*

"Prajāpati formed living creatures by the vaiśvadeva (offering to the Viśvedevas). Being created they did not propagate. Agni desired 'let me beget these creatures.' He imparted grief to Prajāpati. He grieved, desiring offspring. Hence he whom offspring blesses, and he whom it does not bless, both of them grieve, desiring progeny. Among them he created Agni also. Agni desired (?) them. Soma infused seed. Savitṛi begot them. Sarasvatī infused into them speech. Pūshan nourished them. These (gods) who are lords of nourishment are employed thrice in the year. Prajāpati is the Year. It was through the year that he generated offspring for him. The Maruts killed those creatures when they had been born, saying 'they have not employed us also. 3. Prajāpati saw this Māruta oblation in seven platters. He offered it. In consequence of it he became capable of producing offspring . . . Prajāpati lamented, (saying) 'the Maruts have slain the former living beings whom I created. How can I create others?' His vigour sprang forth in the shape of an egg. He took it up. He cherished it. It became productive."

Taitt. Br. iii. 10, 9, 1. *Prajāpatir devān asrijata | te pāpmanā sanditāḥ ajāyanta | tñ vyadyat |*

"Prajāpati created gods. They were born bound by misery. He released them."

Taitt. Br. ii. 7, 9, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asrijata | tāḥ asmāt sṛiṣṭāḥ parāchīr āyan | sa etam Prajāpatir odanam apaśyat | so 'nnam bhūto 'tiṣṭhat | tāḥ anyatra annādyam avitvā Prajāpatim prajāḥ upāvartanta |*

"Prajāpati created living beings. They went away from him. He beheld this odana. He was turned into food. Having found food nowhere else, they returned to him."

Taitt. Br. i. 6, 4, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ Savitā bhūtvā prajāḥ asrijata | tā enam atyamanyanta | ta asmād apākrāman | tā Varuṇo bhūtvā prajāḥ Varuṇena agrāhayat | tāḥ prajāḥ Varuṇa-grīhitāḥ Prajāpatim punar upādāvan nātham ichhamānāḥ |*

"Prajāpati, becoming Savitṛi, created living beings. They disregarded him, and went away from him. Becoming Varuṇa he caused Varuṇa to seize them. Being seized by Varuṇa, they again ran to Prajāpati, desiring help."

Taitt. Br. ii. 2, 1, 1. *Tato vai sa (Prajāpatiḥ) prajāḥ asṛijata | tāḥ asmat sṛiṣṭā apākrāman |*

“Prajāpati then created living beings. They went away from him.”

I have perhaps quoted too many of these stories, which are all similar in character. But I was desirous to afford some idea of their number as well as of their tenor.

As regards the legend of Satarūpā, referred to in the seventh chapter of the first book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, I shall make some further remarks in a future section, quoting a more detailed account given in the Matsya Purāṇa.

Of the two sons of Manu Svāyambhuva and Satarūpā, the name of the second, Uttānapāda, seems to have been suggested by the appearance of the word Uttānapad in Rīg-veda x. 72, 3, 4, as the designation (nowhere else traceable, I believe) of one of the intermediate agents in the creation.¹²⁴ A Priyavrata is mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa vii. 34, and also in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa x. 3, 5, 14, (where he has the patronymic of Rauhināyana) but in both these texts he appears rather in the light of a religious teacher, who had lived not very long before the age of the author, than as a personage belonging to a very remote antiquity. Dakṣa also, who appears in this seventh chapter as one of the mindborn sons of Brahmā, is named in R. V. ii. 27, 1, as one of the Ādityas, and in the other hymn of the R. V. just alluded to, x. 72, vv. 4 and 5, he is noticed as being both the son and the father of the goddess Aditi. In the S. P. ii. 4, 4, he is identified with Prajāpati.¹²⁵ In regard to his origin various legends are discoverable in the Purāṇas. Besides the passage before us, there are others in the V. P. in which he is mentioned. In iv. 1, 5, it is said that he sprang from the right thumb of Brahmā, and that Aditi was his daughter (*Brahmaṇascha dakṣiṇāṅguṣṭha-janmā Dakṣaḥ | Prajāpater Dakṣasyāpy Aditiḥ*). In another place, V. P. i. 15, 52, it is said that Dakṣa, although formerly the son of Brahmā, was born to the ten Prachetases by Mārīśū (*Dāśabhyas tu Prachetobhyo Mārīśūyām Prajāpatiḥ | jajne Dakṣo mahābhūgo yaḥ pūrvam Brahmanō bhavat |*). This double pa-

¹²⁴ See the 4th vol. of this work, pp. 10 f.

¹²⁵ See the 4th vol. of this work, pp. 10 ff. 24, 101, Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, for 1865, pp. 72 ff.; Roth in the Journal of the German Oriental Society, vi. 75.

rentage of Daksha appears to Maitreya, one of the interlocutors in the Purāṇa, to require explanation, and he accordingly enquires of his informant, vv. 60 ff.: *Anguṣṭhād dakṣiṇād Dakṣaḥ pūrvaṁ jātaḥ śrutam mayā | katham Prāchetaso bhūyaḥ sa sambhūto mahāmune | eṣha me saṁśayo brahman sumahān hṛidi varttate | yad dauhitraś cha somasya punaḥ śvaśuratām gataḥ | Parāśara uvācha | utpattiś cha nirodhaś cha nityau bhūteshu vai mune | rishayo 'tra na muhyanti ye chānye divya-chakshuṣaḥ |* 61. *Yuge yuge bhavanty ete Dakṣādyā muni-sattama | punaś chaiva nirudhyante vidvāṁs tatra na muhyati |* 62. *Kāniskṭhyam jyaishkṭhyam apy eṣhām pūrvaṁ nābhūd dvijottama | tapa eva gariyo 'bhūt prabhāvaś chaiva kāraṇam |*

“60. I have heard that Daksha was formerly born from the right thumb of Brahmā. How was he again produced as the son of the Prachetases? This great doubt arises in my mind; and also (the question) how he, who was the daughter's son of Soma,¹²⁶ afterwards became his father-in-law. Parāśara answered: Both birth and destruction are perpetual among all creatures. Rishis, and others who have celestial insight, are not bewildered by this. In every age Daksha and the rest are born and are again destroyed: a wise man is not bewildered by this. Formerly, too, there was neither juniority nor seniority: austere fervour was the chief thing, and power was the cause (of distinction).”

The reader who desires further information regarding the part played by Daksha, whether as a progenitor of allegorical beings, or as a creator, may compare the accounts given in the sequel of the seventh and in the eleventh chapters of Book I. of the V. P. (pp. 108 ff. and 152 ff.) with that to be found in the fifteenth chapter (vol. ii. pp. 10 ff.).

I will merely add, in reference to Akūti, the second daughter of Manu Svāyambhuva and Satarūpā, that the word is found in the Rig-veda with the signification of “will” or “design;” but appears to be personified in a passage of the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 12, 9, 5 (the context of which has been cited above, p. 41), where it is said: *Irā patnī vīśvasṛijām ākūtir apinaḍ haviḥ |* “Irā (Idā) was the wife of the creators. Akūti kneaded the oblation.”

¹²⁶ See Wilson's V. P. vol. ii. p. 2, at the top.

SECT. VIII.—*Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas.*

I now proceed to extract from the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas the accounts which they supply of the creation, and which are to the same effect as those which have been quoted from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, although with many varieties of detail.

I shall first adduce a passage from the fifth chapter of the Vāyu (which to some extent runs parallel with the second chapter of the Viṣṇu Purāṇa¹²⁷), on account of its containing a different account from that generally given of the triad of gods who correspond to the triad of qualities (*guṇas*).

Vāyu Purāṇa, chapter v. verse 11. *Ahar-mukhe pravṛitte cha paraḥ prakṛiti-sambhavaḥ | kshobhayāmāsa yogena pareṇa parameśvaraḥ | 12. Pradhānam puruṣam chaiva praviśyāṇḍam Maheśvaraḥ | 13. Pradhānāt kshobhyamānāt tu rajo vai samavarttata | rajaḥ pravarttakāṁ tatra vijeshv api yathā jalam | 14. Guṇa-vaishamyam āsādy prasūyante hy adhishṭhitaḥ | guṇebhyaḥ kshobhyamānebhyaḥ trayo devā vijajnire | 15. Āsṛitāḥ¹²⁸ paramā guhyāḥ sarvātmānaḥ śarīriṇaḥ | rajo Brahmā tamo hy Agniḥ sattvam Viṣṇur ajāyata | 16. Rajaḥ-prakāśako Brahmā sraṣṭṛitena vyavasthitaḥ | tamaḥ-prakāśako 'gnis tu kālātvena vyavasthitaḥ | 17. Sattva-prakāśako Viṣṇur audāsīnye vyavasthitaḥ | ete eva trayo lokā ete eva trayo guṇāḥ | 18. Ete eva trayo vedā ete eva trayo 'gnayaḥ | parasparāśṛitāḥ hy ete parasparam anuvratāḥ | 19. Paraspareṇa varttante dhārayanti parasparam | anyonya-mithunā hy ete hy anyonyam upajivinaḥ | 20. Kṣaṇaṁ viyogo na hy eṣāṁ na tyajanti parasparam | Īśvaro hi paro devo Viṣṇus tu mahataḥ paraḥ | 21. Brahmā tu rajosa-driktāḥ sargāyeha pravarttate | paraścha puruṣo jñeyaḥ prakṛitiścha parā smṛitā |*

“11, 12. At the beginning of the day, the supreme Lord Maheśvara, sprung from Prakṛiti, entering the egg, agitated with extreme intentness both Pradhāna (= Prakṛiti) and Puruṣa. 13. From

¹²⁷ See pp. 27 and 41 f. of Wilson's V. P. vol. i.

¹²⁸ The Gaikowar MS. of the India office, No. 2102, reads *āsthitāḥ*, instead of *āsṛitāḥ*, the reading of the Taylor MS.

Pradhāna, when agitated, the quality of passion (*rajas*) arose, which was there a stimulating cause, as water is in seeds. 14. When an inequality in the Guṇas arises, then (the deities) who preside over them are generated. From the Guṇas thus agitated there sprang three gods (15), indwelling, supreme, mysterious, animating all things, embodied. The rajas quality was born as Brahmā, the tamas as Agni,¹²⁹ the sattva as Viṣṇu. 16. Brahmā, the manifestor of rajas, acts in the character of creator; Agni, the manifestor of tamas, acts in the capacity of time; 17. Viṣṇu, the manifestor of sattva, abides in a condition of indifference. These deities are the three worlds, the three qualities, (18) the three Vedas, the three fires; they are mutually dependent, mutually devoted. 19. They exist through each other, and uphold each other; they are twin-parts of one another, they subsist through one another. 20. They are not for a moment separated; they never abandon one another. Īśvara (Mahādeva) is the supreme god; and Viṣṇu is superior to Mahat (the principle of intelligence); while Brahmā, filled with rajas, engages in creation. Purusha is to be regarded as supreme, as Prakṛiti is also declared to be."

The sixth section of the Vāyu P., from which the next quotation will be made, corresponds to the fourth of the Viṣṇu P. quoted above.

1. *Āpo hy agre samabhavan nashṭe 'gnau pṛithivī-tale | sūntarālaika-
līne 'smin nashṭe sthāvara-jangame |* 2. *Ekārṇave tadā tasmin na prāñjā-
yata kinchana | tadā sa bhagavān Brahmā sahasrākshaḥ sahasra-pāt |*
3. *Sahasra-śīrṣhā Puruṣo rukma-varṇo hy atīndriyaḥ | Brahmā Nārā-
yaṇākhyāḥ sa sushrāpa salile tadā |* 4. *Sattvotrekat prabuddhas tu śūn-
yam lokam udikshya saḥ | imam chodāharanty atra ślokaṁ Nārāyaṇam
prati |* 5. *Āpo nūrā vai tanavaḥ¹³⁰ ity apām nāma śūsruma | apsu śete
cha yat tasmāt tena Nārāyaṇaḥ smṛitah |* 6. *Tulyaṁ yuga-sahasrasya
naisam kalam upāsya saḥ | śarvāry-ante prakurute brahmatvam sarga-
kāraṇāt |* 7. *Brahmā tu salile tasmin vāyur bhūtvā tadā 'charat | nīśāyām
iva khadyotiḥ prāvṛṇī-kāle tatas tataḥ |* 8. *Tatas tu salile tasmin vijnā-
yāntargatām mahīm | anumānūl asammūḍho bhūmer uddharaṇam prati |*

¹²⁹ The Märk. P. chap. 46, verse 18, has the same line, but substitutes Rudra for Agni, thus: *Rajo Brahmā tamo Rudro Viṣṇuḥ sattvaṁ jagat-patiḥ |* The two are often identified. See Vol. IV. of this work, 282 ff.

¹³⁰ See Wilson's Viṣṇu Purāṇa, p. 57, with the translator's and editor's notes. Verses 1 to 6 are repeated towards the close of the 7th section of the Vāyu P. with variations.

9. *Akarot sa tanuṁ hy anyām kalpādishu yathā purā | tato mahātmā manasā divyaṁ rūpam achintayat |* 10. *Salilenāplutām bhūmim dṛishṭvā sa tu samantataḥ | “kim nu rūpam mahat kṛtvā uddhareyam aham mahīm” |* 11. *Jala-kṛidā-suruchiram vārāhaṁ rūpam asmarat | adhṛishyaṁ sarva-bhūtānām vāṇmayam dharma-sanjñitam |*

“1. When fire had perished from the earth, and this entire world motionless and moving, together with all intermediate things, had been dissolved into one mass, and had been destroyed—waters first were produced. As the world formed at that time but one ocean, nothing could be distinguished. Then the divine Brahmā, Purusha, with a thousand eyes, a thousand feet, (3) a thousand heads, of golden hue, beyond the reach of the senses—Brahmā, called Nārāyaṇa, slept on the water. 4. But awaking in consequence of the predominance (in him) of the sattva quality, and beholding the world a void—: Here they quote a verse regarding Nārāyaṇa: 5. ‘The waters are the bodies of Nara: such is the name we have heard given to them; and because he sleeps upon them, he is called Nārāyaṇa.’ 6. Having so continued for a nocturnal period equal to a thousand Yugas, at the end of the night he takes the character of Brahmā in order to create. 7. Brahmā then becoming Vāyu (wind) moved upon that water,¹³¹ hither and thither, like a firefly at night in the rainy season. 8. Discovering then by inference that the earth lay within the waters, but unbewildered, (9) he took, for the purpose of raising it up, another body, as he had done at the beginnings of the (previous) Kalpas. Then that Great Being devised a celestial form. 10. Perceiving the earth to be entirely covered with water, (and asking himself) ‘what great shape shall I assume in order that I may raise it up?’—he thought upon the form of a boar, brilliant from aquatic play, invincible by all creatures, formed of speech, and bearing the name of righteousness.”

The body of the boar is then described in detail, and afterwards the elevation of the earth from beneath the waters, and the restoration of its former shape, divisions, etc.¹³²—the substance of the account being

¹³¹ This statement, which is not in the corresponding passage of the Vishṇu P., is evidently borrowed, along with other particulars, from the text of the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, vii. 1, 5, 1, quoted above p. 52.

¹³² Following the passage of the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, quoted above, the writer in one verse ascribes to Brahmā as Visvakarman the arrangement of the earth, *tatas teshu bhūḥ bṛhaspatiḥ lokodadhi-girishv atha | Visvakarmā vibhajata kalpādishu punaḥ punaḥ |*

much the same, but the particulars different from those of the parallel passage in the Vishṇu Purāṇa.

Then follows a description of the creation coinciding in all essential points¹³³ with that quoted above, p. 55, from the beginning of the fifth chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.

The further account of the creation, however, corresponding to that which I have quoted from the next part of the same chapter of that Purāṇa, is not found in the same position in the Vāyu Purāṇa,¹³⁴ but is placed at the beginning of the ninth chapter, two others, entitled *Pratisandhi-kīrttana* and *Chaturāśrama-vibhāga*, being interposed as the seventh and eighth. With the view, however, of facilitating comparison between the various cosmogonies described in the two works, I shall preserve the order of the accounts as found in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, and place the details given in the ninth chapter of the Vāyu Purāṇa before those supplied in the eighth.

The ninth chapter of the Vāyu Purāṇa, which is fuller in its details than the parallel passage in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, begins thus, without any specific reference to the contents of the preceding chapter :

Sūta uvācha | 1. *Tato 'bhidhyāyatas tasya jajnire mānasīḥ prajāḥ | tach-chharīra-samutpannaiḥ karyais taiḥ kāraṇaiḥ saha* | 2. *Kshetrajñāḥ samavarttanta gātrebhyas tasya dhūmataḥ | tato devāsura-pitrīn mānavāṃ cha chatuṣṭayam* | 3. *Sisṛikshur ambhāṃsy etāni svātmanā samayūyujat | yuktātmanas tatas tasya tamomātrā svayambhuvaḥ* | 4. *Tam abhidhyāyataḥ sargam prayatno 'bhūt Prajūpateḥ | tato 'sya jaghanāt pūrvam asurā jajnire sutaḥ* | 5. *Asuḥ prāṇaḥ smṛito viprais taj-janmānas tato 'surāḥ | yayā sṛiṣṭāsuras tanvā tām tanuṃ sa vyapohata*¹³⁵ | 6. *Sū 'pariddhā tanus tena sadyo rātrir ajāyata | sū tamo-bahulā yasmāt tato rātris triyāmikā* | 7. *Āvritās tamasā rātrau prajāḥ tasmāt scapanty uta | dṛiṣṭvā 'surāṃs tu deveśas tanum anyām apadyata* | 8. *Aryaktām sattva-bahulām tatas tām so 'bhyayūyujat | tatas tām yunjatas tasya priyam āsīt prabhoḥ kila* | 9. *Tato mukhe samutpannā dīvyatas tasya devatāḥ | yato 'sya dīvyato jātās tena devāḥ*

¹³³ This is also the case with the details given in the Märk. P. xlvii. 15-27 and ff.

¹³⁴ The Märk. P. however observes the same order as the Vishṇu P.

¹³⁵ The reading in the passage of the Taitt. Br. ii. 2, 9, 6, from which this narrative is borrowed (see above, p. 23), is *apāhata*,—which, however, does not prove that that verb with *vi* prefixed should necessarily be the true reading here; as the Taylor and Gaikowar MSS. have *vyapohata* throughout, and in one place *vyapohat*.

prakīrttitāḥ | 10. *Dhātur divīti yaḥ proktaḥ kṛdāyām sa vibhāvyaḥ* | *tasmāt* (? *yasmāt*) *tanvām tu divyāyām jānīre tena devatāḥ* | 11. *Devān śṛiṣṭvā 'tha deveśas tanum anyām apadyata* | *sattva-mātrātmikām devas tato 'nyām so 'bhyapadyata*¹³⁶ | 12. *Pitṛivād manyamānas tām putrān prādhyāyata prabhuh* | *pitaro hy upapakṣābhyām*¹³⁷ *rātry-ahnor antarā 'sṛijāt* | 13. *Tasmāt te pitaro devāḥ putratvaṁ tena teshu tat* | *yayā śṛiṣṭās tu pitaras tām tanuṁ sa vyapohata* | 14. *Sā 'paviddhā tanus tena sadyah sandhyā prajāyata* | *tasmād ahas tu devānām rātrir yā sā 'suri smṛitā* | 15. *Tayor madhye tu vai pitṛi yā tanuḥ sā garī-yasī* | *tasmād devāsuraḥ sarve ṛishayo manavas tathā* | 16. *Te yuktās tām upāsante rātry-ahnor*¹³⁸ *madhyamām tanum* | *tato 'nyām sa punar Brahmā tanuṁ vai pratyapadyata* | 17. *Rajo-mātrātmikām yām tu manasā so 'sṛijāt prabhuh* | *rajaḥ-prāyān tataḥ so 'tha mānasān asṛijāt sūtān* | 18. *Manasas tu tatas tasya mānasā jānīre prajāḥ* | *dṛiṣṭvā punaḥ prajāś chāpi svām tanuṁ tām apohata* | 19. *Sā 'paviddhā tanus tena jyotsnā sadyas tv ajāyata* | *tasmād bhavanti saṁhṛiṣṭā jyotsnāyām udbhave prajāḥ* | 20. *Ity etās tanavas tena vyapaviddhā mahatmanā* | *sadyo rātry-ahanī chaiva sandhyā jyotsnā cha jānīre* | 21. *Jyotsnā sandhyā tathā 'hascha sattva-mātrātmikām svayam* | *tamo-mātrātmikā rātriḥ sā vai tasmāt triyāmikā* | 22. *Tasmād devā divya-tanvā*¹³⁹ *dṛiṣṭāḥ śṛiṣṭā mukhāt tu vai* | *yasmāt teshām divā janma balinas tena te divā* | 23. *Tanvā yad asurān rātrau jaghanād asṛijāt punaḥ* | *prāṇebhyo rātri-janmāno hy asahyā niśi tena te* | 24. *Etāny eram bhavishyānām devānām asuraiḥ saha* | *pitṛīnām mānavānām cha atītānāgateshu vai* | 25. *Manvantareshu sarveshu nimittāni bhavanti hi* | *jyotsnā rātry-ahanī sandhyā chatvāry ambhāṁsi tāni vai* | 26. *Bhānti yasmāt tato 'mbhāṁsi bhā-sabdo 'yam manīṣibhiḥ* | *vyūpti-dīptyām nigadīto pumāmśi chāha Prajāpatiḥ* | 27. *So 'mbhāṁsy etāni dṛiṣṭvā tu deva-dānava-mānavān* | *pitṛīnśi chaivāsṛijāt so 'nyān ātmano rividhān punaḥ* | 28. *Tām utsṛijya tanuṁ kṛtsnām tato 'nyām asṛijāt prabhuh* | *mūrttiṁ rajas-tama-prāyām punar erābhyayūyujāt* | 29. *Andhakāre kṣudhāviṣṭas tato 'nyām sṛijate punaḥ* | *tena śṛiṣṭūḥ kṣudhātmanas te 'mbhāṁsy ādātum udyatāḥ* | 30. “*Ambhāṁsy etāni rakṣāma*” *uktavantaścha teshu ye* | *rākṣasās te smṛitāḥ loke krodhātmanāo niśācharāḥ* |

¹³⁶ This line is omitted in the Gaikowar MS.

¹³⁷ The Gaikowar MS. seems to read *upapūrīvābhyām*.

¹³⁸ The Gaikowar MS. reads *Brahmano madhyamām tanum*.

¹³⁹ The Gaikowar MS reads *divā tanvā*.

“Sūta says: 1. Then, as he was desiring, there sprang from him mind-born sons, with those effects and causes derived from his body. 2. Embodied spirits were produced from the bodies of that wise Being. 3. Then willing to create these four streams (*ambhāmsi*) gods, Asuras, Fathers, and men, he fixed his spirit in abstraction. As Svayambhū was thus fixed in abstraction, a body consisting of nothing but darkness (invested him). 4. While desiring this creation, Prajāpati put forth an effort. Then Asuras were first produced as sons from his groin. 5. *Asu* is declared by Brahmans to mean breath. From it these beings were produced; hence they are *Asuras*.¹⁴⁰ He cast aside the body with which the Asuras were created. 6. Being cast away by him, that body immediately became night. Inasmuch as darkness predominated in it, night consists of three watches. 7. Hence, being enveloped in darkness, all creatures sleep at night. Beholding the Asuras, however, the Lord of gods took another body, (8) imperceptible, and having a predominance of goodness, which he then fixed in abstraction. While he continued thus to fix it, he experienced pleasure. 9. Then as he was sporting, gods were produced in his mouth. As they were born from him, while he was sporting (*divyatah*), they are known as *Devas* (gods). 10. The root *div* is understood in the sense of sporting. As they were born in a sportive (*divya*)¹⁴¹ body, they are called *Devatās*. 11. Having created the deities, the Lord of gods then took another body, consisting entirely of goodness (*sattva*). 12. Regarding himself as a father, he thought upon these sons: he created Fathers (*Pitris*) from his armpits in the interval between night and day. 13. Hence these Fathers are gods: therefore that sonship belongs to them. He cast aside the body with which the Fathers were created. 14. Being cast away by him, it straightway became twilight. Hence day belongs to the gods, and night is said to belong to the Asuras. 15. The body intermediate between them, which is that of the Fathers, is the most important. Hence gods, Asuras, Fathers, and men (16) worship intently this intermediate body of Brahmā. He then took again another body. But from that body, composed altogether of passion (*rajas*),

¹⁴⁰ This statement, which is not found in the parallel passage of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, is borrowed from Taitt Br. ii. 3, 8, 2, quoted above.

¹⁴¹ *Divya* properly means “celestial.” But from the play of words in the passage, the writer may intend it to have here the sense of “sportive.”

which he created by his mind, he formed mind-born¹⁴² sons who had almost entirely a passionate character. 18. Then from his mind sprang mind-born sons. Beholding again his creatures, he cast away that body of his. 19. Being thrown off by him it straightway became morning twilight. Hence living beings are gladdened by the rise of early twilight. 20. Such were the bodies which, when cast aside by the Great Being, became immediately night and day, twilight and early twilight. 21. Early twilight, twilight, and day have all the character of pure goodness. Night has entirely the character of darkness (*tamas*); and hence it consists of three watches. 22. Hence the gods are beheld with a celestial body, and they were created from the mouth. As they were created during the day, they are strong during that period. 23. Inasmuch as he created the Asuras from his groin at night, they, having been born from his breath, during the night, are unconquerable during that season. 24, 25. Thus these four streams, early twilight, night, day, and twilight, are the causes of gods, Asuras, Fathers, and men, in all the Manvantaras that are past, as well as in those that are to come. 26. As these (streams) shine, they are called *ambhām̐si*. This root *bhā* is used by the intelligent in the senses of pervading and shining, and the Male, Prajāpati, declares (the fact). 27. Having beheld these streams (*ambhām̐si*), gods, Dānavas, men, and fathers, he again created various others from himself. 28. Abandoning that entire body, the lord created another, a form consisting almost entirely of passion and darkness, and again fixed it in abstraction. 29. Being possessed with hunger in the darkness, he then created another. The hungry beings formed by him were bent on seizing the streams (*ambhām̐si*). 30. Those of them, who said 'let us preserve (*rakshāma*) these streams,' are known in the world as Rākshasas, wrathful, and prowling about at night."

This description is followed by an account of the further creation corresponding with that given in the same sequence in the Vishṇu Purāṇa; and the rest of the chapter is occupied with other details which it is not necessary that I should notice. I therefore proceed to make some quotations from the eighth chapter, entitled *Chaturāśramavibhāga*, or "the distribution into four orders," which corresponds, in

¹⁴² *Mānasān*. We might expect here however, *mānavān* or *mānushān*, "human," in conformity with the parallel passages both in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (see above, p. 56), and the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, xlviii. 11.

its general contents, with the sixth chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, book i., but is of far greater length, and, in fact, extremely prolix, as well as confused, full of repetitions, and not always very intelligible.

The chapter immediately preceding (*i.e.* the seventh), entitled *Pratibandhi-kīrttanam*, ends with the words: "I shall now declare to you the present Kalpa; understand." Sūta accordingly proceeds at the opening of the eighth chapter to repeat some verses, which have been already quoted from the beginning of the sixth chapter, descriptive of Brahmā's sleep during the night after the universe had been dissolved, and to recapitulate briefly the elevation of the earth from beneath the waters, its reconstruction, and the institution of Yugas. At verse 22 the narrative proceeds:

Kalpasyādaṁ kṛtayuge prathame so 'srijat prajāḥ | 23. Prāg uktā yā mayā tubhyam pūrva-kāle prajāś tu tāḥ | tasmīn samvarttamāne tu kalpa dagdhās tadā 'gninā | 24. Aprāptā yās tapo-lokaṁ jana-lokaṁ samāśritāḥ | pravarttati punaḥ sarge vījarthaṁ tū bhavanti hi | 25. Vījarthena sthītās tatra punaḥ sargasya kāraṇāt | tatas tāḥ sṛjyamānās tu santānārtham bhavanti hi | 26. Dharmārtha-kāma-mokṣhāṇāṁ iha tāḥ sādḥikāḥ smṛitāḥ | devās cha pitarāśchaiva ṛṣayo manavaś tathā | 27. Tatas te tapasā yuktāḥ sthānāny āpūrayanti hi | Brahmano mānasās te vai siddhātmanō bhavanti hi | 28. Ye saṅgādvesha-yuktena karmaṇā te divaṁ gatāḥ | āvarttamānā iha te sambhuvanti yuge yuge | 29. Sa-karma-phala-śeṣheṇa khyātyā chaiva tathātṁikā (? tathātṁakāḥ) | sambhavanti janāḥ lokāt karma-saṁśaya-bandhanāt | 30. Āśayaḥ kāraṇaṁ tatra boddhavyaṁ karmaṇā tu saḥ | taiḥ karmabhis tu jāyante janāḥ lokāt śubhāśubhaiḥ | 31. Gṛhṇanti te śarīrāṇi nānā-rūpāṇi yonishu | devādyāḥ sthāvarāntās cha utpadyante parasparam (? paramparam) | 32. Teshāṁ ye yāni karmāṇi prāk-sṛiṣṭāṇi pratipediti | tāny eva pratipadyante sṛjyamānāḥ punaḥ punaḥ | 33. Hīṁsrāhīṁsre mṛidu-krūre dharma-dharme ṛitāṇṛite | tadbhāvitāḥ prapadyante tasmāt tat tasya rochate | 34. Kalpeshr āsan vyatīteshu rūpa-nāmāni yāni cha | tāny evānāgate kāle prāyaśaḥ pratipediti | 35. Tasmāt tu nāma-rūpāṇi tāny eva pratipediti | punaḥ punaś te kalpeshu jāyante nāma-rūpataḥ | 36. Tatas sarge hy avasthādhe sisṛikṣhor Brahmanas tu vai | 37.¹⁴³ Prajās tā dhyāyatas

¹⁴³ The narrative in the 49th chapter of the Mārkaṇdeya Purāṇa (verses 3-13) begins at this verse, the 37th of the Vāyu Purāṇa, and coincides, though with verbal differences, with what follows down to verse 47. After that there is more variation.

tasya satyābhidhyāyinas tadā | mithunānām sahasram tu so 'srijad vai mukhāt tadā | 38. Janās te hy upapadyante sattvodriktāḥ suchetasah¹⁴⁴ | sahasram anyad vakshasto mithunānām sasarja ha | 39. Te sarve rajaso-driktāḥ sushmīṇās chāpy aśushmīṇāḥ¹⁴⁵ | śrīṣṭvā sahasram anyat tu dvandvānām ūrutah punah | 40. Rajas-tamobhyām udriktā ihāsīlās tu te smṛitāḥ | padbhyām sahasram anyat tu mithunānām sasarja ha | 41. Udriktās tamasā sarve niḥśrīkā hy alpa-tejasah | tato vai harshamānās te dvandvotpannās tu prāṇināḥ | 42. Anyonya-hṛichhayāvishṭā maithunāyopachakramuḥ | tataḥprabhṛiti kalpe 'smīn maithunotpattir uchyaate | 43. Māsi māsy ārttaraṁ yat tu na tadā 'sīt tu yoshitām¹⁴⁶ | tasmāt tadā na sushruvḥ sevitaṛ api maithunaiḥ | 44. Āyusho 'nte prasūyante mithunāny eva tāḥ sakṛit | kunṭhakāḥ kunṭhikāś chāiva utpadyante mumūshatām¹⁴⁷ | 45. Tataḥ prabhṛiti kalpe 'smīn mithunānām hi sambhavaḥ | dhyāne tu manasā tāsām prajānām jāyate sakṛit | 46. Śabdādi-vishayaḥ śuddhaḥ pratyekam pancha-lakṣaṇaḥ | ity evam mānāsī¹⁴⁸ pūrvam prāk-śrīṣṭir yā Prajāpateḥ | 47. Tasyānvavāye sambhūtā yair idam pūritaṁ jagat | sarit-saraḥ-samudrāmś cha sevante porvatān api | 48. Tadā nātyantu-śītoshnā yuge tasmin charanti vai | prithivī-rasodbhavaṁ nāma āharaṁ hy āharanti vai¹⁴⁹ | 49. Tāḥ prajāḥ kāma-chārīṇyo mānasīm siddhim āsthitāḥ | dharmādharmau na tāsv āstām nirviśeshāḥ prajāś tu tāḥ | 50. Tulyam āyuh sukhaṁ rūpaṁ tāsām tasmin kṛite yuge | dharmādharmau na tāsv āstām kalpādau tu kṛite yuge | 51. Scena svenādhi-kāreṇa jājnire te kṛite yuge | chatvāri tu sahasrāṇi varshānām dirya-sankhyayā | 52. Ādyam kṛita-yugam prāhuḥ sandhyānām tu chatuḥ-śatam | tataḥ sahasraśas tāsā prajāsu prathitāsv api | 53.¹⁵⁰ Nā tāsām pratighñito 'sti na dvandvaṁ nāpi cha klamaḥ | parvatodadhi-sevīṇyo hy aniketāśrayās tu tāḥ | 54. Viśokāḥ sattva-bahulāḥ hy ekānta-sukhitāḥ prajāḥ | tāḥ vai nishkāma-chārīṇyo nityam mudita-mānasāḥ | 55. Paśu-

¹⁴⁴ For *suchetasah* the Mārķ. P. reads *sutejasah*.

¹⁴⁵ For *aśushmīṇāḥ* the Mārķ. P. reads *amarśhīṇāḥ*, "irascible."

¹⁴⁶ I have corrected this line from the Mārķandeya Purāṇa, 49, 9 b. The reading of the MSS. of the Vāyu Purāṇa cannot be correct. It appears to be: *māse māse 'rttaraṁ yad yat tat tadāsiḥ hi yoshitām* | The negative particle seems to be indispensable here.

¹⁴⁷ This half verse is not found in the Mārķ. P.

¹⁴⁸ The Mārķ. P. has *mānushāḥ*, "human," instead of *mānasāḥ*, "mental."

¹⁴⁹ This verse is not in the Mārķ. P.; and after this point the verses which are common to both Purāṇas do not occur in the same places.

¹⁵⁰ Verses 53-56 coincide generally with verses 11-18 of the Mārķ. P.

rah pakshināś chaiva na tadāsan sarīṣipāḥ | nodbhijjā nārakaś¹⁵¹ chaiva
te hy adharmā-prasūtayaḥ | 56. Na mūla-phala-pushpaṁ cha nārttavam
ṛitavo na cha | sarva-kāma-sukhaḥ kālo nātyarthaṁ hy uṣṇa-śītata¹⁵² |
57. Manobhilashitāḥ kāmās tāsām sarvatra sarvadā | uttiṣṭhanti pṛithiv-
yām vai tābhīr dhyātā rasolvanāḥ | 58. Balavarṇa-karī tāsām siddhiḥ
sā roga-nāśinī | asaṁskāryyaiḥ śarīraiś cha prajāś tāḥ sthirayauvanāḥ |
59. Tāsām viśuddhāt sankalpāj jāyante mithunāḥ prajāḥ | samam janma
cha rūpaṁ cha mriyante chaiva tāḥ samam | 60. Tadā satyam alobhāś
cha kṣamā tuṣṭiḥ sukhaṁ damaḥ | nirviśeṣhās tu tāḥ sarvā rūpāyuk-
śīla-cheshṭitaiḥ | 61. Abuddhipūrvakam vṛttam prajānām jāyate svayam |
apravṛtṭiḥ kṛta-yuge karmanoh śubhapāpayoh | 62. Varṇāśrama-rya-
vasthāś cha na tadā "san na sankarah | anichhādvesha-yuktās te varṭta-
yanti parasparam | 63. Tulya-rūpāyushaḥ sarvāḥ adhamottama-varj-
itāḥ¹⁵³ | sukha-prāyā hy aśokāś cha uḍpadyante kṛite yuge | 64. Nitya-
prahrishṭa-manaso mahāsatvā mahābalāḥ | lābhālābhau na tāsṃ āstām
mitrāmित्रे priyāpriye | 65. Manasā vishayas tāsām nirhāṇām pravart-
tate | na lipsanti hi tā'nyoyaṁ nānuḡriḥṇanti chaiva hi | 66. Dhyānam
paraṁ kṛta-yuge tretāyām jñānam uchyate | pravṛtṭiṁ dvāpare yajñāṁ
dānam kali-yuge varam | 67. Sattvaṁ kṛtāṁ rajas tretā dvāparaṁ tu
rajas-tamaḥ | kalau tamas tu vijneyam yuga-vṛtta-vaśena tu | 68. Kālāḥ
kṛite yuge tr eṣha tasya sankhyām nibodhata | chatvāri tu sahasrāṇi var-
śkūṇām tat kṛtām yugam | 69. Sandhyāmśau tasya divyāni śatāny
ashṭau cha sankhyayā | tadā tāsām babhūvāyur na cha kleśa-vipat-
tayaḥ¹⁵⁴ | 70. Tataḥ kṛtayuge tasmin sandhyāmśe hi gate tu vai | pādū-
vaśiṣṭho bharati yuga-dharmas tu sarvaśaḥ | 71. Sandhyāyām apy atītā-
yām anta-kāle yugasya vai | pādūśas chāvaśiṣṭe tu sandhyā-dharme
yugasya tu | 72. Eraṁ kṛite tu niḥśeṣe siddhis tr antardadhe tadā |
tasyām cha siddhau bhrashṭāyām mānasyām abhavat tataḥ | 73. Siddhar

¹⁵¹ The Märk. P. has *nakrūḥ*, "crocodiles," in its enumeration.

¹⁵² The Märk. P. here inserts some other lines, 186-21a, instead of 57 and 58a of the Vāyu P.

¹⁵³ The Märk. P. inserts here the following verses: 24. *Chatvāri tu sahasrāṇi varśkūṇām mānuṣhūni tu | āyuh-pramāṇām jīvanti na cha klesād vipattayaḥ | 25. Kṛachit kṛachit punaḥ sū bhūt kṣitir bhūgyena sarvaśaḥ | kālena gachhatū nāsam upayanti yathā prajāḥ | 26. Tathā tāḥ kramaśaḥ nāsam jagmuh sarvatra siddhayaḥ | tisu sarvāsu nāstāsu nabhasaḥ prachyutā narāḥ (tatūḥ in one MS.) | prāyaśaḥ kalpa-riḥkṣhīs te sambhūtā grīha-samsthitāḥ |*

¹⁵⁴ Instead of *babhūvāyuh*, etc., the Gaikowar MS. has *prayuktāni na cha kleśa babhūva ha |*

*anyā yuge tasmīms tretāyām antare kṛitā | sargādau yā mayā 'śhṭau tu mānasyo vai prakīrtitāḥ | 74. Aśhṭau tāḥ krama-yogena siddhayo yānti sankshayam | kalpādau mānasī hy ekā siddhir bhavati sā kṛite | 75. Manvantareshu sarveshu chatur-yuga-vibhāgaśaḥ | varṇāśramāchāra-kṛitāḥ karma-siddhodbhavaḥ (karma-siddhyudbhavaḥ?) smṛitāḥ | 76. Sandhyā kṛitasya pādena sandhyā pādena chāmśataḥ | kṛita-sandhyāmśakā hy ete trīms trīn pādān parasparam | 77. Hrasanti yuga-dharmais te tapaś-śruta-balāyushkaiḥ | tataḥ kṛitāmśe kshīne tu babhūva tad-anantaram | 78. Tretā-yugam amanyanta kṛitāmśam ṛishi-sattamāḥ | tasmīn kshīne kṛitāmśe tu tach-*chhishtāsu* prajāsv iha | 79. Kalpādau sampravṛittāyās tretāyāḥ pramukhe tadā | praṇāśyati tadā siddhiḥ kāla-yogena nānyathā | 80. Tasyām siddhau praṇaśtāyām anyā siddhir avarttata | apām saukshmye pratigata tadā meghātmanā tu vai | 81. Meghebhyah stanayitnubhyah pravṛittān ṛishṭi-sarjjanam | sakṛid eva tayā ṛishṭyā saṁyukte pṛithivī-tale | 82. Prādūrōsaṁs tadā tāsām ṛikshās tu griha-saṁsthitāḥ¹⁵⁵ | sarva-pratyupabhogas tu tāsām tebhyaḥ prajāyate | 83. Varttayanti hi tebhyaḥ tās tretā-yuga-mukhe prajāḥ | tataḥ kālena mahatā tāsām eva viparyāyat | 84. Rāgalobhātmake bhāvas tadā hy ākasmiko 'bhavat | yat tad bhavati nārīnām jīvitānte tad ārtavam | 85. Tadā tad vai na bhavati punar yuga-balena tu | tāsām punaḥ pravṛitte tu māse māse tad ārtavam (-re?) | 86. Tatas tenaiva yogena varttatām maithune tadā | tāsām tāt-kāla-bhāvitṛād māsi māsy upayachhatām | 87. Akāle hy ārttarot-pattir garbhotpattir ajāyata | viparyayena tāsām tu tena kālena bhāvinā | 88. Praṇāśyanti tataḥ sarve ṛikshās te grihasaṁsthitāḥ | tatas tesku praṇaśteshu vibhṛāntā vyākulendriyāḥ | 89. Abhidhyāyanti tām siddhiṁ satyābhidhyāyinas tadā | prādurbabhūvus tāsām tu ṛikshās te grihasaṁsthitāḥ | 90.¹⁵⁶ Vāstrāṇi cha prasūyante phaleshr ābharaṇāni cha | teshr eva jāyate tāsām gandha-varṇa-rasānvritam | 91. Amākshikam mahāvīryam putake putake madhu | tena tā varttayanti sma mukhe tretā-yugosya vai | 92. Hṛishṭa-tuśhṭās tayā siddhyā prajā vai rigata-jarāḥ | punaḥ kālāntareṇaiva punar lobhāṛitās tu tāḥ | 93. Ṛikshōṁs tān paryagṛihṇanta madhu chāmākshikam balāt | tāsām tenāpachhureṇa punar lobha-kṛitena vai | 94. Praṇaśtā madhunā sārḍham kalpa-ṛikshāḥ kra-*

¹⁵⁵ Verses 27-35 of the Mār. P. correspond more or less to this and the following verses down to 98.

¹⁵⁶ This and the following verses correspond more or less closely to the Mār. P. 30 ff.

chit kvachit | tasyām evālpa-śiṣṭāyām sandhyā-kāla-vaśāt tadā | 95. varttatām tu tadā tāsām dvandvāny abhyutthitāni tu | śītarātātapaś tīvraś tatas tāḥ dukkhitā bhṛīśam | 96. Dvandvāś tāḥ pīdyamānās tu chakrur āvaranāni cha | kṛtvā drandva-pratikūram niketāni hi bhejire | 97. Pūrvaṁ nikāma-chārās te aniketāśrayā bhṛīśam | yathā-yogyaṁ yathā-prīti niketeshv avasan punaḥ | 98. Maru-dhanvasu nimneshu parvateshu darīṣhu cha¹⁵⁷ | saṁśrayanti cha durgāni dhanvānam śāśvatodakam | 99. Yathā-yogaṁ yathā-kāmaṁ sameshu vishameshu cha | ārabdhās te niketā vai karttuṁ śītoshṇa-pāraṇam | 100. Tatas tā māpayāmāsuḥ khetāni cha purāni cha | grāmāś chaiva yathā-bhūgaṁ tathāivāntaḥ-purāni cha | . . . 123.¹⁵⁸ Kṛiteshu teshu sthāneshu punaś chakrur grihāni cha | yathā cha pūrram āsan vai vṛikshās tu griha-saṁsthitāḥ | 124. Tathā karttuṁ samārabdhās chintayitvā punaḥ punaḥ | vṛidhās chaiva gatāḥ śākhā natās chaivāparā gatāḥ | 125. Ata ūrdhvam gatās chānyā enam tiryaggatāḥ parāḥ | buddhyā 'nvishya tathā 'nyā yā vṛiksha-śākhā yathā gatāḥ | 126. Tathā kṛitās tu taiḥ śākhās tasmāch chhālās tu tāḥ smṛitāḥ | evam prasiddhāḥ śākhābhyāḥ śālās chaiva grihāni cha | 127. Tasmāt tā vai smṛitāḥ śālāḥ śālātvaṁ chaiva tāsu tat | prasīdati manas tāsu manaḥ prāsādayamās cha tāḥ | 128. Tasmād grihāni śālās cha prāsādās chaiva sanjñitāḥ | kṛtvā drandvopaghātāś tān vārttopāyam achintayan | 129.¹⁵⁹ Naśtreshu madhunā sūrdhām kalpa-vṛiksheshu vai tadā | vishāda-ryākulās tā vai prajāś trīṣṇā-kshudhānvitāḥ | 130. Tataḥ prādurbabhau tāsām siddhis tretā-yuge punaḥ | vārttārtha-sādhikā hy anyā vṛiṣṭis tāsām hi kāmataḥ | 131. Tāsām vṛiṣṭy-udakānīha yāni nimnair gatāni tu | vṛiṣṭyā nimnā(?) nirabhavan srotāḥ-khātāni nimnagāḥ | 132. Evaṁ nadyāḥ pravṛittās tu dvitīye vṛiṣṭi-sarjane | ye purastād apām stokā āpannāḥ pṛithivītale | 133. Apām bhūmes cha saṁyogād ośadhyaś tāsu chābhavan | pushpa-mūlaphalīnyas tv ośadhyaś tāḥ prajājnire | 134. Aphāla-kṛiṣṭās chānuptā grāmyāranyaś chaturdaśa | ritu-pushpa-phalāśchaiva vṛikshāḥ gulmās cha jajnire | 135. Prādurbhavaś cha tretāyām ādya 'yam aushadhasya tu | tenaushadhena varttante prajāś tretāyuge tadā | 136. Tataḥ punar abhūt tāsām rūgo lobhās cha sarvaśaḥ | avāśyam-

¹⁵⁷ I have corrected this line from Märk. P. xlix. 35.

¹⁵⁸ Verses 52-54 of the Märk. P. correspond in substance to verses 123-128 of the Vāyu P.

¹⁵⁹ Verses 55-62 of the Märk. P. correspond to verses 129-137 of the Vāyu P.

bhāvinā 'rthena tretā-yuga-vaśena tu | 137. *Tatas tāḥ paryagrihnanta nadīḥ kshetrāṇi parvatān* | *vṛikshān gulmaushadhīś chaiva prasahya tu yathā-balam* | 138. *Siddhātmanas tu ye pūrvam vyākhyātāḥ prakṛite mayā* | *Brahmaṇo mānasās te vai utpannā ye janād iha* | 139. *Sāntāś cha śushmīnāś chaiva karminō duḥkḥinas tadā* | *tataḥ pravarttamānās te tretāyām jajñire punaḥ* | 140. *Brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyāḥ śūdrā drohijanās tathā* | *bhāvitāḥ pūrva-jātishu karmabhis cha śubhāśubhaiḥ* | 141. *Itas tebhyo 'balā ye tu śatyāśilā hy ahiṃsakāḥ* | *vīta-lobhā jītāt-māno nicasanti sma tesku vai* | 142. *Pratigrihnanti kurvanti tebhyaś chānye 'lpa-tejasah* | *evam vipratipanneshu prapanneshu parasparam* | 143. *Tena dosheṇa teshām tā oshadhyo mishatām tadā*¹⁶⁰ | *pranashṭā kriyamānū vai mushṭibhyām sikatā yathā* | 144.¹⁶¹ *Agrasad bhūr yuga-balād grāmyāranyās chaturdaśa* | *phalam grihnanti pushpaiścha phalaiḥ patraiḥ punaḥ punaḥ* | 145.¹⁶² *Tatas tāsū pranashṭāsū vibhrāntās tāḥ prajāś tadā* | *Svayambhuvam prabhuṃ jagmuḥ kshudhāvishṭāḥ prajāpatim* | 146. *vṛitty-artham abhilipsantāḥ ādau tretā-yugasya tu* | *Brahmā Svayambhūr bhagavān jñātvā tāsām manīshitam* | 147. *Yuktam pratyaksha-dṛishṭena darśanena vichāryya cha* | *grastāḥ pṛithivīyā oshadhyo jñātvā pratyaduhat punaḥ* | 148. *Kṛitvā ratsam sumerum tu dudoha pṛithivīm imām* | *dugdheyām gaus tadā tena vījāni pṛithivī-tale* | 149. *Jajñire tāni vījāni grāmyāranyās tu tāḥ punaḥ* | *oshadhyāḥ phala-pākāntāḥ śaṇa-saptadaśās tu tāḥ* | . . . 155. *Utpannāḥ prathamam hy etā ādau tretā-yugasya tu* | 156. *Aphālā-kṛishṭā oshadhyo grāmyāranyās tu sarvaśah* | *vṛikshā gulmalatā-vallyo vīrudhas trīṇa-jātayaḥ* | 157. *Mūlaiḥ phalaiś cha rohiṇyo 'grihṇan pushpaiś cha yāḥ phalam* | *pṛithvī dugdhā tu vījāni yāni pūrvaṃ Svayambhuvā* | 158. *Ṛitu-pushpa-phalās tā vai oshadhyo jajñire tv iha* |¹⁶³ *yadā prasṛishṭā oshadyo na prarohanti tāḥ punaḥ* | 159. *Tataḥ sa tāsām vṛitty-artham vārṭtopāyām chakāra ha* | *Brahmā Svayambhūr bhagavān hasta-siddham tu karma-jam* | 160. *Tataḥ-prabhṛity athauśhadhyāḥ kṛishṭa-pachyās tā jajñire* | *saṃsiddhāyām tu vārṭtāyām tatas tāsām Svayambhuvāḥ* | 161. *Maryādāḥ sthāpayāmāsa yathārabdhaḥ parasparam* |¹⁶⁴ *ye vai parigrihītāras tāsām āsan badhātmakāḥ* | 162. *Itareshām kṛita-trāṇān sthāpayāmāsu kshattriyān* | *upatishṭhanti ye tām*

¹⁶⁰ Mārķ P. verse 63a.

¹⁶¹ Mārķ, P. verse 68b.

¹⁶² Verses 64-67 of the Mārķ. P. correspond to verses 145-149 of the Vāyu P.

¹⁶³ Verses 73-75 of the Mārķ. P. correspond to verses 158b-160a of the Vāyu P.

¹⁶⁴ This with all what follows down to verse 171 is omitted in the Mārķ. P.

vai yāvanto nirbhayās tathā | 163. *Satyam brahma yathā bhūtam bruvanto brāhmaṇās tu te* | *ye chānye 'py abalās teshām vaiśasaṁ karma saṁsthītāḥ* | 164. *Kināsā nāśayanti sma prithivyām prāg atandritāḥ* : *vaiśyān eva tu tān āhuḥ kināsān vṛtti-sādhakān* | 165. *Sochantāś cha dravantaś cha paricharyyāsu ye ratāḥ* | *nistejaso 'lpa-vīryyās cha śūdrān tān abravīt tu saḥ* | 166. *Teshām karmāṇi dharmāmś cha Brahmā 'nuvyadadhāt prabhuh* | *saṁsthītau prakṛitāyām tu chāturvarṇyasya sarvasaḥ* | 167. *Funāḥ prajāś tu tā mohāt tān dharmān nānvapālayan* | *varṇa-dharmair ajīvantyo vyarudhyanta parasparam* | 168. *Brahmā tam artham buddhvā tu yāthātathyena vai prabhuh* | *kshattriyāṇām balam dandam yuddham ājivam ādiśat* | 169. *Yājñādhyayanam chaiva tṛtīyāṁ cha parigraham* | *brāhmaṇānām vibhus teshām karmāṇy etāny athādiśat* | 170. *Pāsupālyāṁ vāṇijyāṁ cha kṛṣhīm chaiva viśāṁ dadau* | *śilpājivam bhṛitīm chaiva śūdrāṇām vyadadhāt prabhuh* | 171. *Sāmānyāni tu karmāṇi brahma-kshattri-viśāṁ punaḥ* | *yājñādhyayanam dānam sāmānyāni tu tesku vai* | 172. *Karmājivam tato datvā tebhyaś chaiva parasparam* | *lokāntareshu sthānāni teshām siddhyāy*¹⁶⁵ *adāt prabhuh* | 173.¹⁶⁶ *Prājāpatyāṁ brāhmaṇānām smṛitām sthānām kṛiyāvatām* | *sthānaṁ aindraṁ kshattriyāṇām sangrāmeshe apalāyinām* | 174. *Vaiśyānām mārutaṁ sthānaṁ sva-dharmam upajivinām* | *gāndharvaṁ śūdra-jātīnām pratichāreṇa (parichāreṇa?) tishṭhatām* | 175. *Sthānāny etāni varṇānām vyasyāchāravatām svayam* | *tataḥ sthiteshu varṇeshu sthāpayāmāsa chāśramān* | 176. *Grihastham brahmachāritram vanaprastham sabbhikshukam* : *āśramāmś chaturō hy etān pūrvam asthāpayat prabhuh* | 177. *Varṇa-karmāṇi ye kechit teshām iha na kurvate* | *kṛita-karmakṣitiḥ(?) prāhur āśrama-sthāna-vāsināḥ* | 178. *Brahmā tān sthāpayāmāsa āśramān nāma nāmataḥ* | *nirdeśārtham tatas teshām Brahmā dharmān prābhāshata* | 179. *Prasthānāni cha teshām vai yamāmścha niyamāmś cha ha* | *chāturvarṇyāt-makāḥ pūrvam grihasthas te āśramāḥ smṛitāḥ* | 180. *Trāyāṇām āśramāṇām cha pratishṭhā yonir eva cha* | *yathākramam pravakshyāmi yamais cha niyamais cha taiḥ* | 190. *Vedāḥ sāngās cha yajñās cha vratāni niyamās cha ye* | 191. *Na siddhyanti prādushtasya bhūvadoshe upāgate* | *bahiḥ-karmāṇi sarvāni prasiddhyanti (na siddhyanti?) kadāchana* |

¹⁶⁵ I conjecture *siddhyāy adāt* to be the proper reading. The MSS. have *siddhyā-dadāt*, or *siddhyādadāt*, etc.

¹⁶⁶ Verses 173 f. are found in the Mārk. P. verses 77 f.; but all that follows down to verse 193 is omitted there.

192. *Antar-bhāva-pradushtasya kurvato 'hi parākrāmāt | sarvascam api yo dadyāt kaluṣeṇāntarātmanā |* 193. *Na tena dharma-bhāk sa syād bhāva eva hi kūraṇam | . . .* 199. *Evaṁ varṇāśramānāṁ vai prati-bhūge kṛite tadā |* 200. *Yadā 'sya na vyavardhanta prajā varṇāśramat-mikāḥ | tato 'nyā mānasīḥ so 'tha tretā-madhye 'sṛijāt prajāḥ |* 201. *Ātmanas tāḥ śarīrāchecha tulyās chaivātmanā tu vai | tasmin tretā-yuge prāpte madhyam prāpte kramena tu |* 202. *Tato 'nyā manasīs tatra prajāḥ sraśṭum prachakrame | tataḥ satra-rajodriktāḥ prajāḥ so 'thāsṛijāt prabhuḥ |* 203. *Dharmārtha-kāma-mokṣhānāṁ vārttāyās chaiva sādhi-kāḥ | devās cha pitaraś chaiva ṛishayo manavas tathā |* 204. *Yugānu-rūpā dharmena yair imā vichitāḥ prajāḥ | upasthite tadā tasmin prajā-dharme (-sarge ?) Sṛayambhuvāḥ |* 205. *Abhidadhyau prajāḥ sarvā nānā-rūpās tu mānasīḥ | pūrvoktā yā mayā tubhyaṁ jana-lokaṁ samāśritāḥ |* 206. *Kalpe 'tite tu tā hy āsan devādyaś tu prajā iha | dhyāyatas tasya tāḥ sarvāḥ sambhūty-artham upasthitāḥ |* 207. *Manvantara-krameneha ka-nishṭhe prathame matāḥ | khyātyā 'nubandhais tais tais tu sarvārthair iha bhāvitāḥ |* 208. *Kuśalākuśala-prāyairiḥ karmabhis taiḥ sadā prajāḥ | tat-karma-phula-śeṣheṇa upaśṭabdhāḥ prajājnire |* 209. *Devāsura-pitṛi-trais tu paśu-pakṣi-sarīṣipaiḥ | ṛikṣha-nāraka-kīṭatvais tais tair bhā-vair upasthitāḥ | ādhinārtham prajānāṁ cha ātmanā vai vinirmame |*

“22. At the beginning of the Kalpa, in the first Kṛita age, he created those living beings (23) which I have formerly described to thee; but in the olden time, at the close of the Kalpa, those creatures were burnt up by fire. 24. Those of them who did not reach the Tapoloka took refuge in the Janaloka; and when the creation again commences, they form its seed. 25. Existing there as a seed for the sake of another creation, they then, as they are created, are produced with a view to progeny. 26. These are declared to accomplish, in the present state (the four ends of human life, viz.), duty, the acquisition of wealth, the gratification of love, and the attainment of final liberation, — both gods, Fathers, Rishis, and Manus. 27. They, then, filled with austere fervour, replenish (all) places. These are the mental sons of Brahmā, perfect in their nature. 28. Those who ascended to the sky by works characterized by devotion to external objects, but not by hatred, return to this world and are born in every age. 29. As the result of their works, and of their destination, (returning) from the Janaloka, they are born of the same character (as

before), in consequence of the (previous) deeds by which they are bound.¹⁶⁷ 30. It is to be understood that the cause of this is their tendency (or fate), which itself is the result of works. In consequence of these works, good or bad, they return from Janaloka and are born, (31) and receive various bodies in (different) wombs. They are produced again and again in all states, from that of gods to that of motionless substances. 32. These creatures, as they are born time after time, receive the same functions as they had obtained in each previous creation. 33. Destructiveness and undestructiveness, mildness and cruelty, righteousness and unrighteousness, truth and falsehood—actuated by such dispositions as these, they obtain (their several conditions); and hence particular actions are agreeable to particular creatures. 34. And in succeeding periods they for the most part obtain the forms and the names which they had in the past Kalpas. 35. Hence they obtain the same names and forms. In the different Kalpas they are born with the same name and form. 36. Afterwards, when the creation had been suspended, as Brahmā was desirous to create, (37) and, fixed in his design, was meditating upon offspring,—he created from his mouth a thousand couples of living beings, (38) who were born with an abundance of goodness (*sattva*) and full of intelligence.¹⁶⁸ He then created another thousand couples from his breast: (39) they all abounded in passion (*rajas*) and were both vigorous and destitute of vigour.¹⁶⁹ After creating from his thighs another thousand pairs, (40) in whom both passion and darkness (*tamas*) prevailed, and who are described as active,—he formed from his feet yet another thousand couples (41) who were all full of darkness, inglorious, and of little vigour. Then the creatures sprung from the couples (or thus produced in couples) rejoicing, (42) and filled with mutual love, began to cohabit. From that period sexual intercourse is said to have arisen in this Kalpa. 43. But at that time women had no monthly discharge: and they consequently bore no children, although cohabit-

¹⁶⁷ *Karma-saṁśaya-bandhanāt*. I am unable to state the sense of *saṁśaya* in this compound.

¹⁶⁸ *Suchetasah*. The reading of the Märk. P. *sutejasah*, "full of vigour," is recommended, as an epithet of the Brāhmins, by its being in opposition to *alpa-tejasah*, "of little vigour," which is applied to the Sūdras a few lines below.

¹⁶⁹ The reading of the Märk. P. *amarśhinah*, "irascible," gives a better sense than *asushminah*, "devoid of vigour," which the Vāyu P. has.

ation was practised. 44. At the end of their lives they once bore twins. Weak-minded boys and girls were produced when (their parents) were on the point of death. 45. From that period commenced, in this Kalpa, the birth of twins; and such offspring was once only born to these creatures by a mental effort, in meditation (46),—(offspring which was) receptive (?) of sound and the other objects of sense, pure, and in every case distinguished by five marks. Such was formerly the early mental creation of Prajapāti. 47. Those creatures by whom the world was replenished, born as the descendants of this stock, frequented rivers, lakes, seas, and mountains. 48. In that age (*yuga*) they lived unaffected by excessive cold or heat, and appropriated the food which was produced from the essences of the earth. 49. They acted according to their pleasure, existing in a state of mental perfection. They were characterized neither by righteousness nor unrighteousness; were marked by no distinctions. 50. In that *Kṛita yuga*, in the beginning of the Kalpa, their age, happiness, and form were alike: they were neither righteous nor unrighteous. 51. In the *Kṛita* age they were produced each with authority over himself. Four thousand years, according to the calculation of the gods, (52) and four hundred years for each of the morning and evening twilights, are said to form the first, or *Kṛita*, age.¹⁷⁰ Then, although these creatures were multiplied by thousands, (53) they suffered no impediment, no susceptibility to the pairs of opposites (pleasure and pain, cold and heat, etc.) and no fatigue. They frequented mountains and seas, and did not dwell in houses. 54. They never sorrowed, were full of goodness (*sattva*), and supremely happy; acted from no impulse of desire,¹⁷¹ and lived in continual delight. 55. There were at that time no beasts, birds, reptiles, or plants,¹⁷² (for these things are produced by unrighteousness),¹⁷³ (56) no roots, fruits,

¹⁷⁰ The first of the verses, which will be quoted below, in a note on verse 63, from the *Mārka. P.*, seems to be more in place than the description of the *Kṛita* age given here, of which the substance is repeated in verses 68 and 69.

¹⁷¹ Perhaps we should read here *nikāma-chārin* instead of *nishkāma*: if so, the sense will be, "they moved about at will."

¹⁷² The text adds here *narakāḥ* or *narakāḥ*, which may mean "hellish creatures."

¹⁷³ This, although agreeing with what is said further on in verses 82, 133, and 155, does not seem in consonance with what is stated in the *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, verse 45, where it is declared: *oshadhyah phala-mūlīnyo romabhyas tasya jajñire | tretā-yuga-mukhe Brahmā kalpasyāḍau dvijottama | śriṣtvā pasv-oshadhiḥ samyag yuyoja satadā 'dhvare |* "Plants bearing roots and fruits sprang from his hairs. At the com-

flowers, productions of the seasons, nor seasons. The time brought with it every object of desire and every enjoyment. There was no excess of heat or cold. 57. The things which these people desired sprang up from the earth everywhere and always, when thought of, and had a powerful relish. 58. That perfection of theirs both produced strength and beauty, and annihilated disease. With bodies, which needed no decoration, they enjoyed perpetual youth. 59. From their pure will alone twin children were produced. Their form was the same. They were born and died together. 60. Then truth, contentment, patience, satisfaction, happiness, and self-command prevailed. They were all without distinction in respect of form, term of life, disposition and actions. 61. The means of subsistence were produced spontaneously without forethought on their parts. In the Kṛita age they engaged in no works which were either virtuous or sinful. 62. And there were then no distinctions of castes or orders, and no mixture of castes. Men acted towards each other without any feeling of love or hatred. 63. In the Kṛita age they were born alike in form and duration of life, without any distinction of lower and higher,¹⁷⁴ with abundant happiness, free from grief, (64) with hearts continually exulting, great in dignity

commencement of the Tretā age Brahmā—having at the beginning of the Kalpa created animals and plants—employed them in sacrifice.” Although the order of the words renders the sense in some degree uncertain, it appears to be that which Prof. Wilson assigns in his translation (i. 84), “Brahmā, having created, in the commencement of the Kalpa, various [animals and] plants, employed them in sacrifices in the beginning of the Tretā age.” This interpretation is supported by the Commentator, who remarks. *Tad evaṁ kalpasāyānāṁ eva paśūn ośadhīś cha śṛiṣṭvā 'nantaraṁ tretā-yuga-mukhe prāpte sati samyag grāmyūranya-ryasthāyā tadā 'dhvare sūnatayā (samyaktayā ?) yuyuja kṛita-yuge yajnasāyāpravaritih* | “Having then thus at the very beginning of the Kalpa created animals and plants, he afterwards, when the commencement of the Tretā age arrived, employed them properly, according to the distinction of domestic and wild, in sacrifice,—since sacrifice did not prevail in the Kṛita age.” This agrees with the course of the preceding narrative which makes no allusion to plants and animals having been produced in a different Yuga from the other beings whose creation had been previously described. (See Wilson i. 82-84.) The parallel passage in the Vāyu P. x. 44-46, is confused.

¹⁷⁴ The Mār. P. xlix. 24 inserts here the following lines: “They lived for four thousand years of mortals, as the measure of their existence, and suffered no calamities from distress. 25. In some places the earth again enjoyed prosperity in every respect. As through lapse of time the creatures were destroyed, so too those perfections everywhere gradually perished. 26. When they had all been destroyed, creeping-plants fell from the sky, which had nearly the character of Kalpa-trees (i.e. trees which yield all that is desired), and resembled houses.”

and in force. There existed among them no such things as gain or loss, friendship or enmity, liking or dislike. 65. It was through the mind (alone, *i.e.* without passion?) that these disinterested beings acted towards each other. They neither desired anything from one another; nor shewed any kindness to each other.¹⁷⁵ Contemplation is declared to be supreme in the Kṛita age, knowledge in the Tretā; sacrifice began in the Dvāpara; liberality is the highest merit in the Kali. 67. The Kṛita age is goodness (*sattva*), the Tretā is passion (*rajas*), the Dvāpara is passion and darkness (*tamas*), in the Kali it is to be understood that darkness (prevails), according to the necessary course of these ages. 68. The following is the time in the Kṛita age: understand its amount. Four thousand years constitute the Kṛita; (69) and its twilights endure for eight hundred divine years. Then their life was (so long?)¹⁷⁶ and no distresses or calamities befel them. 70. Afterwards, when the twilight in the Kṛita was gone, the righteousness peculiar to that age was in all respects reduced to a quarter (of its original sum). 71. When further the twilight had passed, at the close of the Yuga, and the righteousness peculiar to the twilight had been reduced to a quarter, (72) and when the Kṛita had thus come altogether to an end,—then perfection vanished. When this mental perfection had been destroyed, there arose (73) another perfection formed in the period of the Tretā age. The eight mental perfections, which I declared (to have existed) at the creation, (74) were gradually extinguished. At the beginning of the Kalpa mental perfection alone (existed), viz., that which existed in the Kṛita age. 75. In all the Manvantaras there is declared to arise a perfection proceeding from works, produced by the discharge of the duties belonging to castes and orders, according to the fourfold division of Yugas. 76. The (morning) twilight (deteriorates) by a quarter of the (entire) Kṛita,—and the evening twilight by (another) quarter;—(thus) the Kṛita, the morning twilight, and the evening

¹⁷⁵ This representation of the condition of mankind during the Kṛita age, the period of ideal goodness, was no doubt sketched in conformity with the opinions which prevailed at the period when the Purāṇa was compiled; when dispassion was regarded as the highest state of perfection.

¹⁷⁶ It would seem as if the writer here meant to state that the period of life was that which in the verse of the Mār. P. (xlix. 24), quoted in the note on verse 63, it is declared to have been. But the expression here is, from some cause or other, imperfect.

twilight (together) deteriorate successively to the extent of three quarters, in the duties peculiar to the Yuga, and in austere fervour, sacred knowledge, strength, and length of life.¹⁷⁷ Then after the evening of the Kṛita had died out, (78) the Tretā age succeeded,—(which) the most excellent rishis regarded as the evening of the Kṛita. But when the evening of the Kṛita had died out, (79) from the influence of time, and for no other reason, perfection disappeared from among the creatures who survived at the commencement of the Tretā age which ensued at the beginning of the Kalpa. 80. When that perfection had perished, another perfection arose. The subtile form of water having returned in the form of cloud (to the sky),¹⁷⁸ (81) rain began to be discharged from the thundering clouds. The earth having once received that rain, (82) trees resembling houses¹⁷⁹ were provided for these creatures. From them all means of enjoyment were produced. 83. Men derived their subsistence from them at the beginning of the Tretā. Subsequently, after a great length of time, owing to their ill fortune, (84) the passions of desire and covetousness arose in their hearts uncaused. The monthly discharge, which occurred at the end of women's lives, (85) did not then take place: but as it commenced again, owing to the force of the age (*yuga*), (86) and as the couples, in consequence of it, began to cohabit, and approached each other monthly, from necessity occasioned by the time,—(87) an unseasonable^{179a} production of the monthly discharge, and of pregnancy ensued. Then through their misfortune, and owing to that fated time, (88) all those house-like trees perished. When these had been destroyed, men disturbed and agitated, (89) but genuine in their desire, longed after that perfection (which they had lost). Then those house-like trees appeared to them; (90) and among their fruits yielded clothes and jewels. On these trees too, in the hollow of every leaf, there was produced, (91) without the aid of bees, honey of great potency, having scent, colour, and flavour. By this means they subsisted at the beginning of the Tretā, (92) delighted with this per-

¹⁷⁷ Such is the only sense I can extract from these rather obscure lines.

¹⁷⁸ Such is the only sense of the words here rendered which occurs to me.

¹⁷⁹ *Gr̥ha-saṁsthitaḥ*. Professor Wilson, in his Dictionary, gives "like, resembling," among the meanings of *saṁsthita*.

^{179a} Instead of *ākāle*, "out of season," Professor Aufrecht suggests *ākāle*, "in season," as the proper reading.

fection and free from trouble. Again, through the lapse of time, becoming greedy, (93) they seized by force those trees, and that honey produced without bees. And then, owing to that misconduct of theirs, occasioned by cupidity, (94) the Kalpa trees, together with their honey, were in some places destroyed. As but little of it¹⁸⁰ remained, owing to the effects of the period of twilight, (95) the pairs (of opposites, as pleasure and pain, etc.) arose in men when existing (in this state); and they became greatly distressed by sharp cold winds, and heats. 96. Being thus afflicted by these opposites, they adopted means of shelter: and to counteract the opposites they resorted to houses. 97. Formerly they had moved about at their will, and had not dwelt at all in houses: but subsequently they abode in dwellings, as they found suitable and pleasant, (98) in barren deserts, in valleys, on mountains, in caves; and took refuge in fortresses,—(in a) desert with perpetual water¹⁸¹ 99. As a protection against cold and heat they began to construct houses on even and uneven places, according to opportunity and at their pleasure. 100. They then measured out towns, cities, villages, and private apartments, according to the distribution of each.” [The following verses 101–107 give an account of the different measures of length and breadth, which is followed, in verses 108–122, by a description of the various kinds of fortresses, towns, and villages, their shapes and sizes, and of roads. The author then proceeds in verse 123:] “These places having been made, they next constructed houses; and as formerly trees existed, formed like houses,¹⁸² (124) so did they (now) begin to erect them, after repeated consideration. (Some) boughs are spread out, others are bent down, (125) others rise upwards, while others again stretch horizontally. After examining thus by reflection how the different boughs of trees branch out, (126) they constructed in like manner the apartments (*śākhāḥ*) (of their houses): hence they

¹⁸⁰ “Perfection” seems to be here intended. If so, it would seem as if this line had been separated from its proper context.

¹⁸¹ *Dhanvānam sūratodakam*. Perhaps we should read here with the Märk. P. xlix. 35, *vārksyam pūratam audakam* “(fortresses) protected by trees, built on mountains, or surrounded by water.”

¹⁸² Whatever may be thought of this rendering of the phrase, *ṛikshūḥ grihasāṁ-śhitāḥ*, the Märk. P. (xlix. 52), at least, is quite clear: *grihākūṇā yathā pūrvāṁ teshām āsan mahāruḥiḥ | tathā saṁsmṛitya tat sarvāṁ chakrur vasmāni tāḥ prajāḥ |* “As they had formerly had trees with the shape of houses, so recalling all that to mind, these people built their dwellings.”

are called rooms (*śālāḥ*).¹⁸³ In this way rooms and houses derive their appellation from branches. 127. Hence rooms are called *śālā*, and in that their character as rooms (*śālātram*) consists. And inasmuch as the mind takes pleasure in them, and as they have gladdened (*prāsādayan*), the mind, (128) houses, rooms, and palaces are termed respectively *griha*, *śālā*, and *prāsāda*. Having adopted these means of defence against the 'opposites,' they devised methods of subsistence. 129. The kalpa-trees having been destroyed along with their honey, those creatures, afflicted with thirst and hunger, became disquieted by dejection. 130. Then again another perfection arose for them in the Tretā age,—which fulfilled the purpose of subsistence,—viz., rain at their pleasure. 131. The rain-water, which flowed into the hollows, burst out in the form of springs, water-courses, and rivers,¹⁸⁴ through the rain. 132. Thus at the second fall of rain rivers began to flow. When the drops of water first reached the ground, then (133) from the conjunction of the waters and the earth plants sprang up among them, which bore both flowers, roots, and fruits. 134. Fourteen kinds of plants, cultivated and wild, were produced without ploughing or sowing, as well as trees and shrubs which bore flowers and fruit at the proper season. 135. This was the first appearance of plants in the Tretā age, and by them men subsisted at that period. 136. Then there again arose among them, universally, desire and cupidity, through a necessary process, and as a result of the Tretā age. 137. They then appropriated to themselves, by force and violence, rivers, fields, hills, trees, shrubs, and plants. 138. Those perfect beings, who were described by me as existing formerly in the Kṛita, — the mind-born children of Brahmā, who had been produced in this world when they came from the Janaloka,—(139) who were (some) tranquil, (some) fiery, (some) active, and (others) distressed,—were again born in the Tretā, (140) as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, Sūdras, and injurious men, governed by the good and bad actions (performed) in former births. 141. Then those who were weaker than they, being truthful and innocent, dwelt among them, free from cupidity, and self-restrained; (142) whilst

¹⁸³ The reasoning here does not seem very cogent, as the two words *śākhā* and *śālā* do not appear to have any close connection. But such unsuccessful attempts at etymology are frequent in Sanskrit works.

¹⁸⁴ The text here does not seem to be in a satisfactory state. The Calc. edition of the Mārka. P. reads *vrishṭyāvaruddhair abhavat*, etc.

others, less glorious than they, took and did.¹⁸⁵ When they had thus become opposed to each other,—(143) through their misconduct, while they struggled together, the plants were destroyed, being seized with their fists like gravel. 144. Then the earth swallowed up the fourteen kinds of cultivated and wild plants, in consequence of the influence exerted by the Yuga: for men had seized again and again the fruit, together with the flowers and leaves. 145. After the plants had perished, the famished people, becoming bewildered, repaired to Svayambhū the lord of creatures, (146) in the beginning of the Tretā age, seeking the means of subsistence.¹⁸⁶ Learning what they desired, (147) and determining by intuition what was proper to be done, the Lord Brahmā Svayambhū, knowing that the plants had been swallowed up by the earth, milked them back. 148. Taking Sumeru as a calf, he milked this earth. When this earth (or cow)¹⁸⁷ was milked by him, roots were

¹⁸⁵ It is difficult to extract any satisfactory sense out of this line.

¹⁸⁶ The S. P. Br. ii. 4, 2, 1, also speaks of different classes of creatures applying to the creator for food—*Prajāpatiṁ vai bhūtāny upāsīdan | prajāṁ vai bhūtāni |* “*ri no dhehi yathā jīveṣṣā*” *iti | tato devā yajñoparītino bhūtā dakṣiṇāṁ jñr āchya upāsīdan | tūn abravīt “yajno vo ’mam amṛitavāṁ va ūrg vaḥ sūryo vo jyotir” iti |* 2. *Atha enam pitarāḥ prāchīnūrītiṇaḥ savyāṁ jñr āchya upāsīdan | tūn abravīt “māsi māsi vo ’śanām sradhā vo manajaro vaḥ chandramā vo jyotir” iti |* 3. *Atha enam manushyāḥ prūrītiḥ upasthāṁ lṛitvā upāsīdan | tūn abravīt “sāyam prūtar vo ’śanām prajāḥ vo mṛityur vo ’gnir vo jyotir” iti |* 4. *Atha enam paśavaḥ upāsīdan | tebhyaḥ svaisham eva chakīra “yadū eva yūyam kaṭūcha lobhādān yadi kūle yady anūkūle atha eva aśnūtha” iti | tasmād ete yadū kaṭūcha lobhante yadi kūle yady anūkūle atha eva aśnūti |* 5. *Atha ha enam śaśrad apy asurāḥ upasēdur ity āhuh | tebhyaḥ tamaś cha māyām cha pradadāu | asty aha eva asura-māyā iti eva | parābhūta ha te eva tūh prajāḥ | tāḥ anūh prajāḥ tathāiva upajīvanti yathāiva ābhyaḥ Prajā-patir adadāt |* “All beings resorted to Prajāpati,—(creatures are beings),—(saying) ‘provide for us that we may live.’ Then the gods, wearing the sacrificial cord, and bending the right knee, approached him. To them he said, ‘let sacrifice be your food, your immortality your strength, the sun your light.’ 2. Then the Fathers, wearing the sacrificial cord on their right shoulders, and bending the left knee, approached him. To them he said, ‘you shall eat monthly, your oblation (*sradhā*) shall be your rapidity of thought, the moon your light.’ 3. Then men, clothed, and inclining their bodies, approached him. To them he said, ‘ye shall eat morning and evening, your offspring shall be your death, Agni your light.’ 4. Then cattle repaired to him. To them he accorded their desire, (saying), ‘Whensoever ye find anything, whether at the proper season or not, they eat it.’ Hence when ever they find anything, whether at the proper season or not, they eat it. 5. Then they say that the Asuras again and again resorted to him. To them he gave darkness (*tamas*) and illusion. There is, indeed, such a thing as the illusion, as it were, of the Asuras. But those creatures succumbed. These creatures subsist in the very manner which Prajāpati allotted to them.”

¹⁸⁷ *Gauh* means both.

produced again in the ground,—(149) those plants, whereof hemp is the seventeenth, which end with the ripening of fruits.” [The plants fit for domestic use, and for sacrifice are then enumerated in verses 150–155.] “155. All these plants, domestic and wild, were for the first time¹⁸⁸ produced at the beginning of the Tretā age, (156) without cultivation, trees, shrubs, and the various sorts of creepers and grasses, both those which produce roots as their fruits, and those which bear fruit after flowering. The seeds for which the earth was formerly milked by Svayambhū (158) now became plants bearing flowers and fruits in their season. When these plants, though created, did not afterwards grow, (159) the divine Brahmā Svayambhū devised for the people means of subsistence depending on labour effected by their hands. 160. From that time forward the plants were produced and ripened through cultivation. The means of subsistence having been provided, Svayambhū (161) established divisions among them according to their tendencies.¹⁸⁹ Those of them who were rapacious, and destructive, (162) he ordained to be Kshattriyas, protectors of the others.¹⁹⁰ As many men as attended on these, fearless, (163) speaking truth and propounding sacred knowledge (*brahma*) with exactness, (were made) Brāhmans. Those others of them who had previously been feeble, engaged in the work of slaughter,¹⁹¹ who, as cultivators (*kīnāsāḥ*), had been destructive, and were active in connection with the ground, were called Vaiśyas, husbandmen (*kīnāsān*), providers of subsistence. 165. And he designated as Sūdras those who grieved (*śochantaḥ*), and ran (*dravantaḥ*),¹⁹² who were addicted to menial tasks, inglorious and feeble.

¹⁸⁸ See the note on verse 55, above.

¹⁸⁹ *Yathūravarabhūh*. The Mārk. P. has *yathā-nyāyaṁ yathā-guṇam*, “according to fitness and their qualities.”

¹⁹⁰ *Itareshūṁ kṛita-trāṇān*. The M. Bh. xii. 2247, thus explains the word Kshattriya. *brāhmaṇānūṁ kshata-trāṇāt tataḥ kshattriya uchyate* | “(a king) is called Kshattriya because he protects Brāhmans from injuries.”

¹⁹¹ *Vaiśasāṁ karma*. The former word has the senses of (1) “hindrance, impediment,” and (2) “slaughter,” assigned to it in Wilson’s Dictionary.

¹⁹² The reader who is familiar with the etymologies given in Yāska’s Nirukta, or in Professor Wilson’s Dictionary on Indian authority, will not be surprised at the absurdity of the attempts made here by the Purāṇa-writer to explain the origin of the words Kshattriya, Vaiśya and Sūdra. To account for the last of these names he combines the roots *śuch*, “to grieve,” and *du*, “to run,” dropping, however, of necessity the last letter (*ch*) of the former. The word *kshattriya* is really derived from *kshattra*, “royal power;” and *vaiśya* comes from *vis*, “people,” and means “a man of the people.”

166. Brahmā determined the respective functions and duties of all these persons. But after the system of the four castes had been in all respects established, (167) those men from infatuation did not fulfil their several duties. Not living conformably to those class-duties, they came into mutual conflict. 168. Having become aware of this fact, precisely as it stood, the Lord Brahmā prescribed force, criminal justice, and war, as the profession of the Kshattriyas. 169. He then appointed these, viz., the duty of officiating at sacrifices, sacred study, and the receipt of presents, to be the functions of Brāhmans. 170 The care of cattle, traffic, and agriculture, he allotted as the work of the Vaiśyas; and the practice of the mechanical arts, and service, he assigned as that of the Sūdras. 171. The duties common to Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas were the offering of sacrifice, study, and liberality. 172. Having distributed to the classes their respective functions and occupations, the Lord then allotted to them abodes in other worlds for their perfection. 173. The world of Prajāpati is declared to be the (destined) abode of Brāhmans practising rites; Indra's world that of Kshattriyas who do not flee in battle; (174) the world of the Maruts that of Vaiśyas who fulfil their proper duty; the world of the Gandharvas that of men of Sūdra birth who abide in the work of service. 175. Having allotted these as the future abodes of (the men of the different) classes, who should be correct in their conduct, he ordained orders (*āśramas*) in the classes which had been established. 176. The Lord formerly instituted the four orders of householder, religious student, dweller in the woods, and mendicant. 177. To those of them who do not in this world perform the duties of their castes, the men who dwell in hermitages apply the appellation of 'destroyer of works.' 178. Brahmā established these orders by name, and in explanation of them he declared their duties, (179) their methods of procedure, and their various rites. First of all there is the order of householder, which belongs to all the four classes, (180) and is the foundation and source of the other three orders. I shall declare them in order with their several observances." [The following verses 181-189, which detail these duties, need not be cited here. I shall, however, quote verses 190 ff. for their excellent moral tone.] "190. The Vedas, with their appendages, sacrifices, fasts, and ceremonies, (191) avail not to a depraved man, when his disposition has become corrupted. All external rites are

fruitless (192) to one who is inwardly debased, however energetically he may perform them. A man who bestows even the whole of his substance with a defiled heart will thereby acquire no merit—of which a good disposition is the only cause.” [After giving some further particulars about the celestial abodes of the righteous, verses 194–198, the writer proceeds:] “199. When—after the division into castes and orders had thus been made—(200) the people living under that system did not multiply, Brahmā formed other mind-born creatures in the middle of the Tretā (201) from his own body and resembling himself. When the Tretā age had arrived, and had gradually reached its middle, (202) the Lord then began to form other mind-born creatures. He next formed creatures in whom goodness (*sattva*) and passion (*rajas*) predominated, (203) and who were capable of attaining (the four objects of human pursuit) righteousness, wealth, love, and final liberation, together with the means of subsistence. Gods, too, and Fathers, and Rishis, and Manus (were formed), (204) by whom these creatures were classified (?) according to their natures in conformity with the Yuga. When this character(?) of his offspring had been attained, Brahmā (205) longed after mental offspring of all kinds and of various forms. Those creatures, whom I described to you as having taken refuge in Janaloka, (206) at the end of the Kalpa, all these arrived here, when he thought upon them, in order to be reproduced in the form of gods and other beings. 207. According to the course of the Manvantaras the least were esteemed the first (?), being swayed by destiny, and by connections and circumstances of every description. 208. These creatures were always born, under the controuling influence of, and as a recompence for their good or bad deeds. 209. He by himself formed those creatures which arrived in their several characters of gods, asuras, fathers, cattle, birds, reptiles, trees, and insects, in order that they might be subjected (anew) to the condition of creatures.”¹⁹³

The substance of the curious speculations on the origin and primeval condition of mankind contained in the preceding passage may be stated as follows: In verses 22–34 we are told that the creatures, who at the close of the preceding Kalpa had been driven by the mundane conflagration to Janaloka, now formed the seed of the new creation, which took place in the Kṛita Yuga, at the commencement of the present

¹⁹³ I confess that I have had great difficulty in attaching any sense to the last words.

Kalpa. These were mind-born sons of Brahmā, perfect in nature, and they peopled the world. As a rule, we are informed, those beings who have formerly been elevated from the earth to higher regions, return again and again to this world, and, as a result of their previous works, are born in every age, in every possible variety of condition, exhibiting the same dispositions and fulfilling the same functions as in their former states of existence. It is next stated, verses 35-40, that when creation had, in some way not explained, come to a stand-still, four classes of human beings, consisting each of a thousand pairs of males and females, characterized respectively by different qualities, physical and moral, were produced from different members of the Creator's body.¹⁹⁴ These creatures sought to propagate the race, but abortively, for the reason specified (43). Children however were produced by mental effort (45 and 59), and in considerable numbers (52). The state of physical happiness, absolute and universal equality, moral perfection, and complete dispassion, in which mankind then existed, is depicted (48-65). The means of subsistence and enjoyment, which they are said to have drawn from the earth (48 and 57), were not of the ordinary kind, as we are informed (55 f.) that neither animals nor plants, which are the products of unrighteousness, existed at that period. No division into castes or orders prevailed during that age of perfection (62). A gradual declension, however, had been going on, and at the end of the Kṛita Yuga, the perfection peculiar to it had altogether disappeared (70-79). Another kind of perfection, peculiar to the Tretā, however, subsequently arose (73 and 80), and in the different Yugas there has existed a perfection springing from the performance of the duties belonging to each caste and order (75). The perfection described as prevailing in the Tretā was of a physical kind, consisting in the production of rain and the growth of trees, shaped like houses, which at the same time yielded the materials of all sorts of enjoyments (80-82). Passion, however, in its various forms began to take the place of the previous dispassion (84). The constitution of women, which had formerly incapacitated them for effective impregnation, became ultimately so modified as to ensure the successful propagation of the species, which

¹⁹⁴ This statement agrees with that in the Mārķ. P. xlix 3 ff. but differs from that already given from the Viṣṇu P. in so far as the latter does not specify the numbers created, or say anything about pairs being formed.

accordingly proceeded (84-87).¹⁹⁵ We have then the destruction, and subsequent reproduction of the trees, formed like houses, described (88-91). These trees now produced clothes and jewels, as well as honey without bees, and enabled mankind to live in happiness and enjoyment. Again, however, the trees disappeared in consequence of the cupidity which led to their misuse (92-94). The absence of perfection occasioned suffering of various kinds, from moral as well as physical causes, and men were now driven to construct houses, which they had hitherto found unnecessary (96-99 and 123), and to congregate in towns and cities (100). Their houses were built after the model furnished by trees (123-128). The hunger and thirst which men endured from the loss of the trees which had formerly yielded all the means of subsistence and enjoyment, were relieved by means of a new perfection which appeared in the shape of rain, and the streams thereby generated, and by the growth of plants, which now sprang up for the first time as a result of the conjunction of water and earth (130-135 and 155). Desire and cupidity, however, now again arose and led to acts of violent appropriation (136 f.). At this juncture the perfect mind-born sons of Brahmā, of different dispositions, who had formerly existed in the Kṛita age, were reproduced in the Tretā as Brāhmans, Kshatriyas, Vaiśyas, Sūdras, and destructive men, as a result of their actions in their former existence (138-140). But in consequence of their dissensions and rapacity, the earth swallowed up all the existing plants (142-144). Under the pressure of the distress thus occasioned the inhabitants of the earth resorted to Brahmā, who milked the earth, through the medium of mount Sumeru acting as a calf, and recovered the plants which had disappeared (145-149). As, however, these plants did not propagate themselves spontaneously, Brahmā introduced agriculture (158-160). Having thus provided the means of subsistence, he divided the people into classes according to their characteristics (160-165). But as these classes did not perform their several duties, and came into mutual conflict, Brahmā prescribed their respective functions with greater precision (166-171); and assigned the future celestial abodes which the members of each class might attain by their fulfilment (172-174). He then ordained the four orders of householder, religious

¹⁹⁵ It is not quite clear, however, what is intended by the word *akāle*, "out of season," in verse 87. See the emendation proposed above in the note on that verse.

student, etc. (175-190). After a few verses in praise of moral purity (190-193), the abodes and destinies of the eminently righteous are set forth (194-199). Just when we had arrived at a point in the narrative, from which we might have imagined that it had only to be carried on further to afford us a sufficient explanation of the state of things existing up to the present age, we are suddenly arrested (199-202) by being informed that the people distributed according to the system of castes and orders did not multiply, and are introduced to a new mind-born creation, which took place in the Tretā age, to remedy this failure. We are next told (203) of what appears to be another creation of beings endowed with goodness and passion. And, finally, a yet further re-incorporation of previously existing souls is described as having taken place (205-209). It would thus seem that after all we are left without any account of the origin of the system of castes which prevailed when the Purāṇa was compiled. The only suppositions on which this conclusion can be avoided are either (1) that the cessation in the increase of the generation alluded to in verse 200, which led to the new creation, was not universal, that the race then existing did not entirely die out, but that the old blood was re-invigorated by that of the newly created beings; or (2) that the other set of creatures, mentioned in verse 203, as characterized by goodness and passion, were the progenitors of the present race of men. On these points, however, the text throws no light.

The preceding account of the creation of mankind and of the vicissitudes and deterioration of society, is in some places obscure and confused, and its several parts do not appear to be consistent with each other. At the outset the writer describes the creation of four thousand pairs of human beings, of whom each separate set of one thousand is distinguished by widely different innate characters, the first class having the quality of goodness, the second that of passion, the third those of passion and darkness, and the fourth that of darkness. Nevertheless (as in the parallel passage of the Vishṇu Purāṇa) we cannot find in the narrative the least trace of those inherent differences of character having for a long time manifested themselves by producing dissimilarity either of moral conduct or of physical condition; for the perfection, which is described as existing in the Kṛitā age, is spoken of as if it was universal; and not only is no distinction alluded to as prevailing at this period between

the component parts of society, but we are expressly told that no castes or orders then existed. The deterioration also, which ensued towards the end of the Kṛita age, is described as general, and not peculiar to any class. How is this complete uniformity, first of perfection, and afterwards of declension, which, for anything that appears to the contrary, is predicated of the descendants of the whole of the four thousand pairs, to be reconciled with the assertion that each thousand of those pairs was characterized by different innate qualities? The difficulty is not removed by saying that the writer supposed that these inherent varieties of character existed in a latent or dormant state in the different classes, and were afterwards developed in their descendants; for he distinctly declares (verse 54) in general terms that mankind were at that period *sattva-bahulāḥ*, i.e. "possessed the quality of goodness in abundance;" and in the earlier part of the subsequent narrative no allusion is made to the different qualities at first ascribed to the four sets of a thousand pairs being separately developed in the members of the four classes respectively. In verse 74, indeed, it appears to be assumed that the division into castes had existed from the creation; for we there find an assertion that in "all the Manvantaras, according to the division of the four yugas," (including apparently the Kṛita) "there is declared to have existed a perfection effected by the observances of the castes and orders, and arising from the fulfilment of works;" but how is this to be reconciled with the express statement of verses 60 and 61, that "in the Kṛita age no works were performed which were either virtuous or sinful," and that "there then existed neither distinctions of caste or order, nor any mixture of castes?" In the Tretā age the state of deterioration continued, but no reference is made of any separation of classes till we come to verse 138, where it is said that the beings who in the Kṛita age had existed as the perfect mind-born sons of Brahmā, were now, as a consequence of their former actions, recalled into human existence, and in conformity with their previous characters as calm, fiery, laborious, or depressed, became Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, Sūdras, and men of violence. These creatures, after they had been furnished with the means of subsistence, were eventually divided into classes, according to their varieties of disposition, character, and occupation; and as at first they did not fulfil their proper duties, but encroached upon each others'

provinces, their functions were afterwards more stringently defined and the means of enforcing obedience were provided. Here it is intimated that different sets of beings were born as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, on account of the different qualities which they had manifested in a previous existence, and that in conformity with those same characteristics they were afterwards formally distributed into castes. This description is therefore so far consistent with itself. The difference of caste is made to depend upon the dispositions of the soul. But how are we to reconcile this postulation of different characters formerly exhibited with the description given in the previous part of the narrative, where we are informed that, in the earlier parts, at least, of the Krita age, all men were alike perfect, and that no actions were performed which were either virtuous or vicious? If such was the case at that period, how could the beings who then existed have manifested those differences of disposition and character which are asserted to have been the causes of their being subsequently reborn as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Sūdras, and Vaiśyas? It may be admitted that the differences of character, which are attributed in the Purāṇa to the four primeval sets of a thousand pairs of human beings, correspond to those qualities which are described as having subsequently given rise to the division into castes; but the assertion of such a state of uniform and universal perfection, as is said to have intervened between the creation of mankind and the realization of caste, seems incompatible with the existence of any such original distinctions of a moral character.

As regards this entire account when compared with the other two descriptions of the creation given in the previous part of this section, the same remarks are applicable as have been made in the last section, p. 65 f., on the corresponding passages from the Vishṇu Purāṇa.

The chapter which I have just translated and examined, is followed immediately by the one of which I have already in a preceding page quoted the commencement, descriptive of the creation of Asuras, Gods, Fathers, etc., from the different bodies assumed and cast off successively by Brahmā.

I shall now give an extract from the following, or tenth chapter, in which the legend of Sātārūpā is related.

Sūta uvācha | 1. *Evambhūteshu lokeshu Brahmanā loka-karttrīṇā*¹⁹⁶ |

¹⁹⁶ This form *kaṭṭrīṇā* (one which, as is well known, may be optionally employed in

*yadā tāḥ na pravarttante prajāḥ kenāpi hetunā | 2. Tamo-mātrāvṛito
Brahmā tudā-prabhṛiti duḥkṛitāḥ | tataḥ sa vidudhe buddhim artha-
niścaya-gāminīm | 3. Athātmani samasrākṣit tamo-mātrām nijāt-
mikām | rajāḥ-sattvam parājitya varttamānaḥ sa dharmataḥ | 4.
Tapyate tena duḥkṛhena śokaḥ chakre jagat-patiḥ | tomas tu ryanuḍat
tasmād rajas tach cha samāvṛinot | 5. Tat tanuḥ pratinuttaḥ vai mi-
thunaḥ samryajāyata | adharmas charaṇāj jāgne hīṁsā śokād ajāyata |
6. Tatas tasmin samudbhūte mithune charaṇātmani | tataś cha bhagavān
āsīt prītiśchainam aśīśriyat | 7. Svām tanuḥ sa tato Brahmā tām
apohat abhāsvaram | dvīdhā 'karot sa tam deham ardhena puruṣho
'bhavat | 8. Ardhena nārī sā tasya Satarūpā ryajāyata | prākṛitām
bhūta-dhātṛīm tām kāmād vai śṛiṣṭavān vibhūḥ | 9. Sā divam prīthi-
vīm chaiva mahimnā ryāpya dhīṣṭhitā | Brahmanāḥ sā tanuḥ pūrvā
divam āvṛitya tiṣṭhati | 10. Yā tv ardhāt śṛijate nārī Satarūpā ryajā-
yata | sā devī niyataḥ taptrā tapaḥ parama-duścaram | bharttāram
dīptayaśasam Puruṣam pratyapadyata | 11. Sa vai Svāyambhuvaḥ
pūrvam Puruṣo Manur uchyate | tasyaikasaptati-yugam Manvanta-
ram ihochyate | 12. Labdhvā tu puruṣaḥ patnīm Sutarūpām ayonijām |
tayā sa ramate sārddham tasmāt sā Ratir uchyate | 13. Prathamāḥ
samprayogaḥ sa kalpādau samavarttata | Vīrjām asṛjād Brahmā so
'bhavat Puruṣo Vīrjāt | 14. Sa samrāt māsarūpāt tu vairājas tu Manuḥ
smṛitāḥ | sa vairājaḥ prajā-sargaḥ sa sarge puruṣo Manuḥ | 15. Vai-
rājāt puruṣād vīrāch chhatarūpā ryajāyata | Priyavratottānapādau
putrau putratātām varau |*

“1. When the worlds had thus been formed by Brahmā their creator, but the creatures, for some reason did not engage in action,¹⁹⁷ (2) Brahmā, enveloped in gloom, and thenceforward dejected, formed a resolution tending to ascertain the fact. 3. He then created in himself (a body) of his own, formed of pure gloom (*tamas*), having overpowered the passion (*rajas*) and goodness (*sattva*) which existed (in him) naturally. 4. The Lord of the world was afflicted with that suffering, and la-

the neuter, but not in the masculine) is here used for metrical reasons. Such irregularities are, as we have seen, designated by the Commentators as *ūṛsha*. It is unlikely that Brahman should be here used in a neuter sense.

¹⁹⁷ The true reading here may be *pravarddhante*, in which case the sense will be “did not multiply.” Compare the parallel passage in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, i. 7. 4, p. 64.

mented.¹⁹⁸ He then dispelled the gloom, and covered over the passion. 5. The gloom, when scattered, was formed into a pair.¹⁹⁹ Unrighteousness arose from activity (?), and mischief sprang from sorrow. 6. That active (?) pair having been produced, he became glorious (?) and pleasure took possession of him. 7. Brahmā after that cast off that body of his, which was devoid of lustre, and divided his person into two parts; with the half he became a male (*purusha*) (8) and with the half a female: it was Satarūpā who was so produced to him. Under the impulse of lust he created her a material supporter of beings. 9. By her magnitude she pervaded both heaven and earth. That former body of Brahmā invests the sky. 10. This divine female Satarūpā, who was born to him from his half, as he was creating, by incessantly practising austere fervour of a highly arduous description, acquired for herself as a husband a Male (*purusha*) of glorious renown. He is called of old the Male, Manu Svāyambhuva; and his period (*manvantara*) is declared to extend to seventy-one Yugas. 12. This Male, having obtained for his wife, Satarūpā, not sprung from any womb, lived in dalliance with her (*ramate*); and from this she is called Ratī (the female personification of sexual love). 13. This was the first cohabitation practised in the beginning of the Kalpa. Brahmā created Virāj; he was the Male, Virāj. 14. He is the sovereign (*samrāj*), from his having the form of a month; and Manu is known as the son of Virāj.²⁰⁰ This creation of living beings is called that of Virāj. In this creation Manu is the male. 15. Satarūpā bore to the heroic Purusha, son of Virāj, two sons, Priyavrata and Uttānapāda, the most eminent of these who have sons." This is followed by a further genealogy, into which I will not enter.

By comparing this account with the one extracted above, p. 64 f., from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 7, 1 ff., it will be seen that while it makes no allusion to the production of Rudra, as related in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (which, as well as the birth of the mental sons of Brahmā, the Vāyu Purāṇa had described in the preceding chapter, verses 67–83), it is somewhat fuller in regard to the legend of Satarūpā; and although it

¹⁹⁸ With this account of Brahmā's dejection and grief the accounts quoted above pp. 68 ff. from the Brāhmaṇas may be compared.

¹⁹⁹ Compare the narrative of the Vishṇu Purāṇu i. 7, 9 ff. quoted in p. 64 f.

²⁰⁰ Compare the account given in Manu's Institutes, above, p. 36.

does not allow that Brahmā cohabited with his daughter, and assigns to her another husband, Manu Svāyambhūva, it describes the creator as having been actuated by carnal desire in generating her. I shall give further illustrations of this story in the next section.

SECT. IX.—*Legend of Brahmā and his daughter, according to the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and of Satarūpā, according to the Matsya Purāṇa.*

The story which forms the subject of the present section is noticed at some length in the fourth volume of this work, pp. 38–46, where one of the oldest passages in which it is related, is quoted from the Sūtapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 7, 4, 1 ff., together with one of a comparatively late age from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, iii. 12, 28 ff. As however the legend, though repulsive in its character, is not without interest as illustrating the opinions which Indian mythologists have entertained regarding their deities, I shall quote two other texts in which it is narrated.

The first, from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 33, has, no doubt (along with the passage of the Sūtapatha Brāhmaṇa just referred to, and another from the same work, xiv. 4, 2, 1 ff., quoted above, in p. 24 ff.), furnished the ideas which are expanded in the later versions of the story. It is as follows:

Prajāpatir vai svām duhitaram abhyadhyāyat | Divam ity anye āhur Ushasam ity anye | tām rīṣyo bhūtvā rohitām bhūtām abhyait | tam devā apaśyan | “akṛitaṁ vai Prajāpatiḥ karoti” iti | te tam aichhan yaḥ enam ārishyati | etam anyonyasmin na arindan | teshām yā eva ghoratamaś tanvaḥ āsaṁs tāḥ ekadhā samabharan | tāḥ sambhṛitāḥ esha devo ’bhavat | tad asya etad bhūtaran-nāma | bhavati vai sa yo ’sya etad evaṁ nāma veda | taṁ devā abruvann “ayaṁ vai Prajāpatir akṛitam akar imam vidhya” iti | sa “tathā” ity abravīt | “sa vai ro varam vrinai” iti | “vrinīshva” iti | sa etam eva varam avṛinīta paśūnām ādhipatyam | tad asya etat paśuman-nāma | paśumān bhavati yo ’sya etad evaṁ nāma veda | tam abhyāyatya avidhyat | sa viddhaḥ ūrddhve udapṛapatad ityādi²⁰¹ |

²⁰¹ See the translation of this passage given by Dr. Haug in his Aitareya Brāhmaṇa

“Prajāpati lusted after his own daughter. Some call her the Sky, others Ushas. Becoming a buck, he approached her after she had become a doe. The gods saw him; (and said) Prajāpati does a deed which was never done (before).²⁰² They sought some one who should take vengeance on him. Such a person they did not find among themselves. They then gathered together their most dreadful bodies. These when combined formed this god (Rudra). Hence (arises) his name connected with Bhūta (*Bhūtapati*). That man flourishes²⁰³ who thus knows this name of his. The gods said to him, ‘This Prajāpati has done a deed which was never done before: pierce him.’ He replied, ‘so be it,’ (adding), ‘let me ask a boon of you.’ They rejoined, ‘ask.’ He asked for this boon, viz., lordship over cattle. Hence arises his name connected with Paśu (*Paśupati*). He who thus knows his name, becomes the owner of cattle. He then attacked (Prajāpati) and pierced him. He, when pierced, soared upwards,” etc. etc.

The second passage I proposed to cite is from the Matsya Purāṇa, chapter iii. verses 32 ff.: *Etad tattvātmakeṇ kṛtvā jagad dvedhā ajījanat* | 33. *Sāvitrīm loka-siddhyartham hṛidi kṛtvā samāsthitaḥ* | *tataḥ sanjapatas tasya bhūtvā deham akalmasham* | 34. *strī-rūpam arddham akaroḍ arddham puruṣa-rūparat* | *S'atarūpā cha sū khyātā Sāvitrī cha nigadyate* | 35. *Sarasvaty atha Gāyatrī Brahmānī cha parantapa* | *tataḥ sa Brahmadevās tām ātmajām ity akalpayat* | 36. *Dṛiṣṭvā tām vyathitas tīvāt kāma-vāṇārdito vibhuḥ* | “*aho rūpam aho rūpam*” *ity urācha tadā 'vyayaḥ* | 37. *Tato Vasishṭha-pramukhā "bhaginīm" iti chukruśuḥ* | *Brahmā na kinchid dadṛṣe tan-mukhālokanād ṛite* | 38. “*Aho rūpam aho rūpam*” *iti āha punaḥ punaḥ* | *tataḥ praṇāma-namrām tām punas tām abhyalokayat* | 39. *Atha pradakṣiṇām chakre sū pitur varararṇinī* | *putreḥkhyo lajjitasyāsya tad-rūpāloka-nechhoyā* | 40. *Āvirbhūtaṁ tato vaktram dakṣiṇam paṇḍu-gaṇḍavat* |

vol. ii. pp. 218 ff.; and the remarks on this translation by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, ix. 217 ff.; and also Professor Roth's explanation of the word *bhūtat* in his *Lexicon*.

²⁰² This seems to be imitated in the line of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa iii. 12, 30, quoted in vol. iv. of this work, p. 40: *naitat pūrvaiḥ kṛtām tad ye na karishyanti chāpare* | “This was never done by those before thee, nor will those after thee do it.”

²⁰³ *Bharati*. In the Brāhmaṇas this verb has frequently the sense of prospering, as opposed to *parābharati*, “he perishes.” See Böthlingk and Roth's *Lexicon*, s. v., and the passages there referred to.

vismaya-sphurad-oshṭhaṁ cha pāśchātyam udagāt tataḥ | 41. Chatur-
 tham abharat paśchād vāmaṁ kāma-śarāturam | tato 'nyad abharat
 tasya kāmāturatayā tathā | 42. Utpatantyās tadā "kāśe ālokena kutū-
 halūt | śrīṣṭy-arthaṁ yat kṛitam tena tapah paramadūrunam | 43. Tat
 sarvam nāśam agamat sva-sutopagamechhayā | tenāśu²⁰⁴ raktram abharat
 panchamaṁ tasya dhīmataḥ | 44. Āvīrbhavarj jātābhīsha tad vaktranchā-
 vṛiṇot prabhūḥ | tatas tūn obravīd Brahmā putrān ātma-samudbhavān |
 45. "Prajāḥ sṛijadhvam abhītaḥ sa-devāsura-mānushāḥ" | evam uktās
 tataḥ sarve sasṛijur rivīdhāḥ prajāḥ | 46. Gateshu teshu sṛīṣṭyartham
 pranāmāvanatām imām | upayeme sa vīśvātmā S'tatarūpām anindītām |
 47. Sambubhūva tayā sārddham atikāmāturo vibhūḥ | salajjāṁ chukame
 devaḥ kamalodara-mandire | 48. Yāvad abda-śataṁ dūyaṁ yathā 'nyaḥ
 prākṛito janaḥ | tataḥ kālena mahatā tasyāḥ putro 'bhavad Manuḥ | 49.
 Svāyambhuva iti khyātaḥ sa Fīrād iti naḥ śrutam | tud-rūpa-guṇa-sāmā-
 nyād adhipūruṣa uchyaṭe | 50. Fairājā yatra te jātāḥ bahavaḥ saṁśīta-
 vṛatāḥ | Svāyambhuvā mahābhāgāḥ sapta sapta tathā 'pare | 51. Svā-
 rochishādyāḥ sarve te Brahma-tulya-svarūpīṇaḥ | Auttami-pramukhās
 tadvad yeshāṁ tvam saptamo 'dhunā | (Adhyāya. 4.) Manur uvācha |
 1. Aho kushṭataraṁ choṭitad angajāgamaṇaṁ vibhoḥ | Kathaṁ na dosham
 agamat karmaṇā tena Padmajāḥ | 2. Parasparāṇcha sambandhaḥ sago-
 trāṇām abhūt katham | vaivāhikas tat-sutānām chhīndi me saṁśayaṁ
 vibho | Matsya uvācha | 3. Dirgeyam ādi-sṛīṣṭis tu rajo-guṇa-samud-
 bhavā | atīndriyendriyā tadvad atīndriya-śārīrikā | 4. Divya-tjojayī
 bhūpa divya-jnāna-samudbhavā | na chānyair abhītaḥ śakyā jñātūṁ vai
 māmśa-chakshushā | 5. Yathā bhujangāḥ sarpāṇām ākāśe sarva-pakshi-
 ṇām | vidanti mūrgām divyānām divyā eva na mānarāḥ | 6. Kāryā-
 kāryeṇa devāścha śubhāśubha-phala-pradāḥ | yasmāt tasmād na rājendra
 tad-ricchāro nṛiṇām śubhaḥ | 7. Anyachcha sarva-devānām adhīṣṭhātā
 chaturmukhaḥ | gāyatrī Brahmanas tadvad anga-bhūtā nigudyate | 8.
 Amūrtta-mūrttimad vāpi mīthunāṇcha prachakshate | Fīranchir yatra
 bhagavāns tatra devī Sarasvatī | 9 Bhārati yatra yatraiva tatra tatra
 Prajāpatiḥ | yathātāpena rahitā chhāyā vai (? na) dṛīṣyate krachit |
 10. Gāyatrī Brahmanāḥ pāścam tathaiva na vimunchati | reda-rāśīḥ
 smṛito Brahmā Sāvitrī tud-adhīṣṭhītā | 11. Tasmād na kāśchid doshaḥ
 syāt Sāvitrī-gamane vibhoḥ | tathāpi lajjāranataḥ Prajāpatir abhūt purā |
 12. Sva-sutopagamād Brāhmā śasūpa Kusumāyudham | yasmād mamāpi

²⁰⁴ Instead of *tenāśu* the Gaikowar MS. reads *tenordhva*.

bharatā manaḥ saṁkshobhitaṁ śaraiḥ | 13. *Tasmāt tvad-deham achirād Rudro bhasmīkarishyati* | *tataḥ prasādayāmāsa Kāmadevas Chaturmukham* | 14. “*Na mām akāraṇaṁ śaptuṁ tram ihārhasi mām ava* | *aham evaṁ-vidhaḥ sriṣṭas trayaiḥ chaturānana* | 15. *Indriya-kshobha-janakaḥ sarveśhām eva dehinām* | *strī-puṁsor avichāreṇa mayā sarvatra sarvadā* | 16. *Kshobhyam manaḥ prayatnena trayairoktam purā vibho* | *tasmād anaparādhena trayā śaptas tathā vibho* | 17. *Kuru prasādam bhagavan sva-śarīrāptaye punaḥ* | *Brahmā uvācha* | 18. *Vaivasvate 'ntare prāpte Yādavānraya-sambhavaḥ* | *Rāmo nūma yadā martyo mat-sattva-balam āśritaḥ* | 19. *Aratīryyāsura-dhvaṁsī Drārakām adhvatsyati* | *tad-dhātus tat-samoścha*²⁰⁵ *tvāṁ tadā putratram eshyasi ityādi* |

“32. Having thus formed the universe, consisting of the principles, he generated a twofold creation, (33) having, with a view to the completion of the world, placed and kept Sāvitrī in his heart. Then as he was muttering prayers, he divided his spotless body (34) and gave to the half the form of a woman, and to the half that of a male. (This female) is called Satarūpā, Sāvitrī, (35) Sarasvatī, Gāyatrī, and Brahmānī. Brahmā then took her for his daughter. 36. Beholding her, the imperishable deity, distressed, tortured with the arrows of love, exclaimed, ‘o what beauty! o what beauty!’ 37. Then (his sons) headed by Vasishṭha, cried aloud, ‘(our) sister.’ Brahmā saw nothing else, looking only at her face; (38) and exclaimed again and again, ‘o what beauty! o what beauty!’ He then again gazed upon her, as she bend forward in obeisance. 39. The fair woman then made a circuit round her father. As on account of his sons he felt ashamed; from his desire of gazing on her beauty (40) there appeared (on his head) a southern face with pale cheeks; and there was afterwards manifested a western face with lips quivering with astonishment. 41. A fourth was subsequently formed, beautiful, disquieted by the arrows of love. Then another was produced from the disturbing influence of the same passion, (42) and from eagerness in gazing after her as she rose upwards in the sky. That austere fervour, extremely dreadful, which Brahmā had practised with a view to creation, (43) was entirely lost through his desire to approach his daughter (carnally). Through this was produced speedily the fifth face (or, according to one MS., the upper,

²⁰⁵ Such appears to be the reading of the Gaikowar MS. The original reading of the Taylor MS. has been erased, and another substituted, *tatas tat-samaye tram cha*.

the fifth face) of the wise deity, (44) which appeared with matted hair, and which he covered up. Brahmā then said to the sons who had sprung from him, (45) 'create living beings everywhere, gods, asuras, and men.' They, being thus addressed, created beings of various kinds. 46. When they had gone away for the purpose of creating, he, who is the universe, took for his wife the unblamed Satarūpā. 47. Sickened with love, he cohabited with her: like any ordinary being, he loved her,—though she was full of shame—embowered in the hollow of a lotus, (48) for a hundred years of the gods. A long time after, a son was born to her, Manu (49) called Svāyambhuva, who, as we have heard, is Virāj. From their community of form and qualities he is called Adhipūrusha.²⁰⁶ 50. From him were sprung those numerous Vairājas, steadfast in religious observances, those seven glorious sons of Svāyambhū, and those other seven Manus, (51) beginning with Svārochisha and Auttami, in form equal to Brahmā, of whom thou²⁰⁷ art now the seventh. (4th chapter) 1. Manu says: 'Ah! this is most afflicting, this entrance of love into the god. How was it that the lotus-born did not incur guilt by that act? 2. And how did a matrimonial connection take place between persons of the same family who were sprung from him? Solve this doubt of mine, o Lord. The Fish replied: 3. This primeval creation was celestial, produced from the quality of passion (*rajas*); it had senses removed beyond the cognizance of sense, and bodies of the same description, (4) was possessed of celestial energy, derived from celestial knowledge, and cannot be perfectly perceived by others with the eye of flesh. 5. Just as serpents know the path of serpents, and (beings living) in the sky know the path of all sorts of birds, so too the celestials alone, and not men, know the way of celestials. 6. And since it is the gods who award the recompence, favourable or unfavourable, according as good or bad deeds have been done,—it is not good for men to examine this (question). 7. Furthermore, the four-faced (Brahmā) is the ruler of all the gods, and in like manner the Gāyatrī is declared to be a member of Brahmā. 8. And, as

²⁰⁶ Compare the Purusha Sukta, above p. 8, in the fifth verse of which the words *Virājo adhi pūrushah* occur. If the last two words are combined they give the name in the text.

²⁰⁷ This account is given by the deity represented as incarnate in a Fish, to Manu Vaivasvata.

they say, there is a pair consisting of the formless, and of that which has form. Wherever the divine Viranchi (Brahmā) is, there is also the goddess Sarasvatī. 9. Wherever Bhārati (a name of Sarasvatī) is, there is also Prajāpati. Just as shadow is nowhere seen without sunshine, (10) so Gāyatrī never forsakes the side of Brahmā. He is called the collected Veda, and Sāvitrī rests upon him; (11) there can therefore be no fault in his approaching her. Nevertheless, Brahmā, the lord of creatures, was bowed down with shame, (12) because he had approached his own daughter, and cursed Kusumāyudha²⁰⁸ (Kāma), (in these words) 'As even my mind has been agitated by thy arrows, Rudra shall speedily reduce thy body to ashes.' Kāmadeva then propitiated the four-faced deity, saying, (14) 'Thou oughtest not to curse me without cause: preserve me. It is by thee thyself that I have been created with such a character, (15) an agitator of the organs of sense of all embodied creatures. The minds both of men and women must always and everywhere (16) be energetically stirred up by me without hesitation: this thou thyself hast formerly declared. It is therefore without any fault of mine that I have been thus cursed by thee. 17. Be gracious, lord, that I may recover my body.' Brahmā answered: 18. 'When the Vaivasvata Manvantara shall have arrived, a mortal, named Rāma, sprung from the Yādava race, deriving force from my essence, (19) and, becoming incarnate as a destroyer of Asuras, shall inhabit Dvārakā. Thou shalt then become a son of his substance and like to him," etc.

The narrator of this legend does not hesitate to depict in the strongest colours (though without the least approach to grossness) the helpless subjection of Brahmā to the influence of sexual desire. This illicit indulgence was regarded by the authors of the *Satapatha* and *Aitareya Brāhmaṇas* as in the highest degree scandalous, and they do not attempt to palliate its enormity by any mystical explanation, such as that which we find in the *Matsya Purāṇa*. Whether this apology proceeded from the original narrator, or from a later writer of a more sensitive disposition, who perceived its inconsistency with any elevated idea of the superior powers, is difficult to say. It is quite possible that the same writer who gave his fancy scope in describing the unbecoming scene, of which the substance had been handed down in works regarded

²⁰⁸ The word means "He whose weapons are flowers."

as authoritative, may also have thought it necessary to discover some device for counteracting the scandal. On the other hand, the original writer seems to cut himself off from the privilege of resorting to any mystical refinements to explain away the offence, by having in the first instance represented Brahmā's indulgence as on a level with that of ordinary beings. And even after the apology has been concluded, we are still told that Brahmā could not help feeling ashamed of what he had done. The writer of the explanation ought to have perceived that if his defence was of any value, the deity for whom he was apologizing had no ground for humiliation. But he did not venture to expunge the popular features of the story. The grounds on which the apology proceeds are partly of the same character as those which the writer of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa assumes in the passage (x. 33, 27 ff.) which is given in the fourth volume of this work, pp. 42 f., viz., that the gods are not to be judged on the same principles as men,—that “the celestials have laws of their own” (*sunt superis sua jura*). The Bhāgavata Purāṇa has, however, different measures for Brahmā and for Kṛishṇa; for whilst the adultery of the latter is defended in the verses just referred to, no desire is shown to vindicate the former in the other passage, iii. 12, 28 ff., adduced in the same volume, page 40.

As regards the details of the story according to the different Purāṇas, I may observe that while the Viṣṇu, the Vāyu (see above, pp. 65, and 106), and the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas, xl. 13 f., represent Satarūpā as the wife of Manu Svāyambhuva, the Matsya Purāṇa, as we have just seen, declares her to have been the spouse of Brahmā himself, and the mother of Manu Svāyambhuva.²⁰⁹ This is repeated in the twenty-sixth verse of the fourth chapter:

*Yā sā dehārdhha-sambhūtā Gāyatrī brahma-rādinī | jananī yā Manor devī Satarūpā S'atendriyā | 27. Itarī Manas Tapo Buddhir mahad-ādī-samudbhavā*²¹⁰ | *tataḥ sa Satarūpāyām saptāpatyāny ajījanat | 28. Ye Marīchyādayaḥ putrāḥ mānasās tasya dhimataḥ | teshām ayam abhūt lokāḥ sarva-jñānātmakāḥ purā | 29. Tato 'sṛjād Vāmadevam triśūla-vara-dhārinam | Sanatkumārañcha vibhum pūrveshām api pūrvajam | 30.*

²⁰⁹ Compare the account given in Manu's Institutes (above, p. 36), which does not coincide in all particulars with any of the Purāṇas here quoted.

²¹⁰ In this line the original readings are in several places erased in the Taylor MS. I have endeavoured to restore it with the help of the Gaikowar MS.

*Vāmadevaś tu bhagavān asṛjād mukhato dvijān | rājanyān asṛjād bāhvor
Viṭ-śūdrāv ūru-pādayoḥ | . . . 35. Svāyambhuro Manur dhīmāns
tapas taptvā suduścharam | patnīm avāpa rūpādhyām Anantām nāma
nāmataḥ | Priyavratottānapādau Manus tasyām ajījanat |*

“She who was produced from the half of his body, Gāyatrī the declarer of sacred science, she who was the mother of Manu, the goddess Satarūpā (*i.e.* having a hundred forms), Satendriyā (*i.e.* having a hundred senses), (27) (was also) Rati, Mind, Austere Fervour, Intellect, sprung from Mahat and the other principles. He then begot upon Satarūpā seven sons. 28. This world, composed of all knowledge, sprang from Marīchi, and the others who were the mind-born sons of that wise Being. He next created Vāmadeva (Mahādeva), the wielder of the excellent trident, and the lord Sanatkumāra, born before the earliest. 30. Then the divine Vāmadeva created Brāhmins from his mouth, Rājanyas from his breast, the Viś and the Śūdra from his thighs and feet.” [After describing in the following verses some other creations of Vāmadeva, the writer proceeds in verse 35:] “The wise Manu Svāyambhuva, having practised austere fervour of the most arduous kind, obtained a beautiful wife named Anantā. On her he begot Priyavrata and Uttānapāda.”

Having made Manu the son of Satarūpā, the writer was obliged to give him another female for a wife, as we see he has here done.

It will be observed that in this passage Vāmadeva—and not Brahmā, as in the other Purāṇas—is described as the creator of the four castes.

SECT. X.—*Quotations from the Rāmāyaṇa on the Creation, and on the Origin of Castes.*

The substance of the first of the following passages has already been stated above in a note on page 36. Part of it is also quoted in p. 54, and it is more fully cited in the fourth volume of this work, p. 29, but for facility of reference I repeat it here.

Rāmāyaṇa (Bombay edition) ii. 110, 1. *Kruddham ājñāya Rāmaṁ tu
Vasishṭhaḥ pratyurācha ha | Jābālir api jānāte lokasyāsya gatāgatim |*
2. *Nivarttayitu-kāmas tu tvām etad vākyam abravīt | imām loka-samut-*

pattiṁ loka-nūtha nibodha me | 3. *Sarvaṁ salilam evāsīt prithivī tatra nirmītā* | *tataḥ samabhavat Brahmā Svayambhūr daivataiḥ saha* | 4. *Sa varāhas tato bhūtvā projjahāra rasundharām* | *aṣṭijach cha jagat sarvaṁ saha putraiḥ kṛitātmabhiḥ* | 5. *Ākāśaprabhavo Brahmā śāśvato nitya avyayaḥ* | *tasmād Marīchiḥ sanjajne Marīcheḥ Kaśyapaḥ sutaḥ* | 6. *Vivas-rān Kaśyapāj jajne Manur Vairascataḥ svayam* | *sa tu prajāpatiḥ pūr-vam Ikshvākuḥ tu Manuḥ sutaḥ* | 7. *Yasyeyam prathamam dattā samṛid-dhā Manunā mahī* | *taṁ Ikshvākuṁ Ayodhyāyām rājānam viddhi pūr-vakam* |

“1. Perceiving Rāma to be incensed²¹¹ Vasishṭha replied: ‘Jābālī also knows the destruction and renovation of this world. 2. But he spoke as he did from a desire to induce you to return. Learn from me, lord of the earth, this (account of) the origin of the world. 3. The universe was nothing but water. In it the earth was fashioned. Then Brahmā Svayambhū came into existence, with the deities. He next, becoming a boar, raised up the earth, and created the entire world, with the saints his sons. 5. Brahmā, the eternal, unchanging, and undecaying, was produced from the æther (*ākāśa*). From him sprang Marīchi, of whom Kaśyapa was the son. 6. From Kaśyapa sprang Vivasvat: and from him was descended Manu, who was formerly the lord of creatures (*prajāpati*). Ikshvāku²¹² was the son of Manu (7) and to him this prosperous earth was formerly given by his father. Know that this Ikshvāku was the former king in Ayodhyā.”

The account which I next quote does not agree with the last in its details, as, besides representing the Prajāpatis or sons of Brahmā to be seventeen in number, it places Marīchi, Kaśyapa, and Vivasvat in the same rank as contemporaries, while the former narrative declares them to have been respectively father, son, and grandson.

Rāmāyaṇa iii. 14, 5. *Rāmasya vachanam śrutvā kulam ātmānam eva cha* | *āchachakṣhe dvījas tasmai sarva-bhūta-samudbhavam* | 6. *Pūrva-kāle mahābāho ye prajāpatayo 'bhavan* | *tān me nigadataḥ sarvān āditāḥ śṛiṇu Rāghava* | 7. *Kardamaḥ prathamāś teśhām Vikṛitas tad-anan-taram* | *Śeśhaś cha Saṁśrayaś chaiva Bahuputraś cha vīryavān* | 8.

²¹¹ On account of a materialistic and immoral argument which had been addressed to him by Jābālī to induce him to disregard his deceased father's arrangements regarding the succession to the throne. See Journ. Roy. As. Soc. vol. xix. pp. 303 ff.

²¹² The name Ikshvāku occurs in R. V. x. 60, 4. See Professor Max Mullet's article in Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, pp. 451 and 462.

Sthānur Marīchir Atriś cha Kratuś chaiva mahābalaḥ | Pulastyaś chāṅ-girāś chaiva Prachetāḥ Pulahas tathā | 9. Dakṣo Vivasvān aparo 'rish-ṭanemiś cha Rāghava | Kāśyapaś cha mahatējās teshām āśich cha paśchi-mah | 10. Prajāpates tu Dakṣasya babhūcur iti viśrutāḥ | shashṭir duhitaro Rāma yaśasvinyo mahāyasāḥ | 11. Kāśyapaḥ pratijagrāhu tāsām aṣṭau sumadhyamāḥ | Aditiṁ cha Ditiṁ chaiva Danūm api cha Kālakām | 12. Tāmrām Krodhavaśām chaiva Manuṁ²¹³ chāpy Analām api | tās tu kanyās tataḥ prītāḥ Kāśyapaḥ punar abravīt | 13. Putrāṁs trailokya-bhartrīn vai janayishyatha mat-samān | Aditiś tan-mānāḥ Rāma Ditiścha Danūr eva cha | 14. Kālakā cha mahābāho śeshās tr amanaso²¹⁴ 'bharan | Adityām jajnire devās trayastriṁśad arindama | 15. Ādityā Vasaro Rudrā Aśvinau cha parantapa | . . . 29. Manur manushyān janayot Kāśyapasya mahātmanah | brāhmaṇān kṣattriyān vaiśyān śūdrāṁś cha manujarshabha | 30. Mukhato brāhmaṇā jātāḥ ura-saḥ kṣattriyās tathā | ūrubhyām jajnire vaiśyāḥ padbhyām śūdrā iti śrutih | 31. Sarvān puṇya-phalān vṛikṣhān Analā 'pi vyajāyata |

“ 5. Having heard the words of Rāma, the bird (*Jaṭāyus*) made known to him his own race, and himself, and the origin of all beings. 6. ‘Listen while I declare to you from the commencement all the Prajāpatis (lords of creatures) who came into existence in the earliest time. 7. Kardama was the first, then Vikṛita, Sesha, Saṁśraya, the energetic Bahuputra, (8) Sthānu, Marīchi, Atri, the strong Kratu, Pulastya, Angiras, Prachetas, Pulaha, (9) Daksha, then Vivasvat, Arisṭhanemi, and the glorious Kāśyapa, who was the last. 10. The Prajāpati Daksha is famed to have had sixty daughters. 11. Of these Kāśyapa took in marriage eight elegant maidens, Aditi, Diti, Danū, Kālakā, (12) Tāmrā, Krodhavaśā, Manu,²¹⁵ and Analā. Kāśyapa, pleased, then said

²¹³ *Balūm Atibalūm api.*—Gorr.

²¹⁴ *Manoratha-hīnūh.*—Comm.

²¹⁵ I should have doubted whether Manu could have been the right reading here, but that it occurs again in verse 29, where it is in like manner followed in verse 31 by Analā, so that it would certainly seem that the name Manu is intended to stand for a female, the daughter of Daksha. The Gauda recension, followed by Signor Goresio (ii. 20, 12), adopts an entirely different reading at the end of the line, viz. *Balām Atibalām api*, “Balā and Atibalā,” instead of Manu and Analā. I see that Professor Roth s. v. adduces the authority of the Amara Kośa and of the Commentator on Pāṇini for stating that the word sometimes means “the wife of Manu.” In the following text of the Mahābhārata i. 2553, also, Manu appears to be the name of a female *Anavadyām Manuṁ Vauśām Asurām Māṅganapriyām | Anūpām Subhagām Bhāśām iti Prādhā vyajāyata |* “Prādhā (daughter of Daksha) bore Anavadyā, Manu, Vauśā, Asurā, Māṅganapriyā, Anūpā, Subhagā, and Bhāśī.

to these maids, (13) 'ye shall bring forth sons like to me, preservers of the three worlds.' Aditi, Diti, Danū, (14) and Kālakā assented; but the others did not agree. Thirty-three gods were borne by Aditi, the Ādityas, Vasus, Rudras, and the two Aśvins." [The following verses 15-28 detail the offspring of Diti, Danū, Kālakā, Tāmra, Krodhavaśā, as well as of Kraunchī, Bhāsī, Śyenī, Dhṛitarāshṭri, and Sūkī the daughters of Kālakā, and of the daughters of Krodhavaśā. (Compare the Mahābharata, i. 2620-2635; and Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. ii. pp. 72 f.) After this we come upon Manu and the creation of mankind.] "29. Manu, (wife) of Kaśyapa,²¹⁶ produced men, Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras. 30. 'Brāhmins were born from the mouth, Kshattriyas from the breast, Vaiśyas from the thighs, and Sūdras from the feet,' so says the Veda. 31. Anālā gave birth to all trees with pure fruits."

It is singular to observe that in this passage, after having represented men of all castes as sprung from Manu, the writer next adds a verse to state, on the authority of the Veda, that the different castes were produced from the different parts of the body out of which they issued. Unless Manu's body be here meant, there is a contradiction between the two statements. If Manu's body is meant, the assertion conflicts with the common account. And if the Manu here mentioned is, as appears from the context, a woman, we should naturally conclude that her offspring was born in the ordinary way; especially as she is said to have been one of the wives of Kaśyapa.

The next passage from the Uttara Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, 74, 8 f., describes the condition of men in the Kṛita age, and the subsequent introduction of the caste system in the Tretā. The description purports to have been occasioned by an incident which had occurred just before. A Brāhman had come to the door of Rāma's palace in Ayodhyā, carrying the body of his dead son,²¹⁷ and bewailing his loss, the blame

²¹⁶ The text reads Kaśyapa, "a descendant of Kaśyapa," who, according to Rām. ii. 110, 6, ought to be Vivasvat. But as it is stated in the preceding part of this passage iii. 14, 11 f. that Manu was one of Kaśyapa's eight wives, we must here read Kaśyapa. The Gauda recension reads (iii. 20, 30) *Manur manushyānāṃ cha tathā janayāmāsa Rūghava*, instead of the corresponding line in the Bombay edition.

²¹⁷ The boy is said, in 73, 5, to have been *apṛāpta-yauvanam bālam pancha-varṣa-sahasrakam* | "a boy of five thousand years who had not attained to puberty." The Commentator says that *varṣa* here means not a year, but a day (*varṣa-lakṣo 'tra*

of which (as he was himself unconscious of any fault) he attributed to some misconduct on the part of the king. Rāma in consequence convoked his councillors, when the divine sage Nārada spoke as follows :

8. *Sṛiṇu rājan yathā 'kāle prāpto bālasya sankshayaḥ | śrutvā kartaryatām rājan kurushva Raghunandana |* 9. *purā kṛita-yuge rājan brāhmaṇā vai tapasvinaḥ |* 10. *Abrāhmaṇas tadā rājan na tapasvī ka-thanchana | tasmin yuge prajvalite brahmabhūte tv anāṛṛite |* 11. *Amṛti-yaras tadā sarve jajnire dīrgha-darśinaḥ | tatas tretā-yugaṁ nāma mānavānāṁ vapushmatām |* 12. *Kshattriyā yatra jāyante pūrveṇa tapasā 'nvitāḥ | vīryyeṇa tapasā chaiva te 'dhikāḥ pūrva-janmani | mānavā ye mahātmānas tatra tretā-yuge yuge |* 13. *Brahma kshattriāṁ cha tat sarvaṁ yat pūrvam avaram cha yat | yugayor ubhayor asit sama-vīryya-samanvitam |* 14. *Apasāntas tu te sarve viśesham adhiḥkām tataḥ | sthūpanaṁ chakrire tatra chāturvārṇyasya sammatam |* 15. *Tasmin yuge prajvalite dharmabhūte hy anāṛṛite | adharmāḥ pādām ekaṁ tu pātayat prithivītale |* 19. *Pātite tv anṛite tasminn adharmena mahitale | śubhāny evācharaḥ lokāḥ satya-dharma-parāyaṇaḥ |* 20. *Tretā-yuge cha varttante brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ cha ye | tapo 'tapyanta te sarve śūsrūshām apare janāḥ |* 21. *Sea-dharmaḥ paramas teshāṁ vaiśya-śūdraṁ tadā "gamat | pūjāṁ cha sarva-varṇānāṁ śūdrāḥ chakrur viśeshataḥ |* 23. *Tataḥ pādām adharmasya dvitīyam arātārayat | tato dvāpara-sankhyā sā yugasya samajāyata |* 24. *Tasmin dvāparā-sankhye tu varttamāne yuga-kshaye | adharmāḥ chānritaṁ chaiva varṛidhe puru-sharshabha |* 25. *Asmin dvāpara-sankhyāte tapo vaiśyān samāviśat | tribhyo yugebhyas trīn varṇān kramād vai tapa āviśat |* 26. *Tribhyo yugebhyas trīn varṇān dharmāścha parinishthitāḥ | na śūdro labhate dharmāṁ yugatas tu naraśhabha |* 27. *Hiṇa-varṇo nṛipa-śreshṭha tapyate sumahat tapaḥ | bhaviṣhyachehḥudrayonyām hi tapas-charyā kalau yuge |* 28. *adharmāḥ paramo rājan dvāpure śūdra-janmanaḥ | sa vai viśaya-paryante tava rājan mahātapaḥ |* 29. *Adya tapyati durbuddhis tena bālu-budho hy ayam |*

Nārada speaks: 8. "Hear, o king, how the boy's untimely death occurred: and having heard the truth regarding what ought to be

dvāparaḥ),—just as it does in the ritual prescription that a man should perform a sacrifice lasting a thousand years ("sahasra-saṁvatsaram satram upāsita" *iti vat*),—and that thus some interpreters made out the boy's age to be sixteen, and others under fourteen. But this would be a most unusual mode of reckoning age.

done, do it. 9. Formerly, in the Kṛita age, Brāhmins alone practised austere fervour (*tapas*). 10. None who was not a Brāhman did so in that enlightened age, instinct with divine knowledge (or, with Brahma), unclouded (by darkness). 11. At that period all were born immortal, and far-sighted. Then (came) the Tretā age, the era of embodied men, (12) in which the Kshattriyas were born, distinguished still by their former austere fervour; although those men who were great in the Tretā age had been greater, both in energy and austere fervour, in the former birth. 13. All the Brāhmins and Kshattriyas, both the former and the later, were of equal energy in both Yugas.²¹⁸ 14. But not perceiving any more distinction (between the then existing men) they all²¹⁹ next established the approved system of the four castes. 15. Yet in that enlightened age, instinct with righteousness, unclouded (by darkness), unrighteousness planted one foot upon the earth.” [After some other remarks (verses 16–18), which are in parts obscure, the writer proceeds:] 19. “But, although this falsehood had been planted upon the earth by unrighteousness, the people, devoted to true righteousness, practised salutary observances. 20. Those Brāhmins and Kshattriyas who lived in the Tretā practised austere fervour, and the rest of mankind obedience. 21. (The principle that) their own duty was the chief thing pervaded the Vaiśyas and Sūdras among them: and the Sūdras especially paid honour to all the (other) classes. . . . 23. Next the second foot of unrighteousness was planted on the earth, and the number of the Dvāpara (the third yuga) was produced. 24. When this deterioration of the age numbered as the Dvāpara, had come into existence,

²¹⁸ The Commentator says, this means that in the Kṛita age the Brāhmins were superior, and the Kshattriyas inferior (as the latter had not then the prerogative of practising *tapas*), but that in the Tretā both classes were equal (*ubhayaṃ yugayor madhye kṛita-yuge brahma pūrvam tapo-vīryābhyām utkṛiṣṭam kshattriān chāvaraṇā cha tābhyām tapo-vīryābhyām nyūnam āsīt | tat sarvam brahma-kshattri-rūpam ubhayam tretāyām sama-vīrya-samanvitam āsīt | kṛite kshattriyūnam tapasy anadhikārāt tadyugībhehyo brāhmaṇebhyas teshām nyūnatā | tretāyām tu ubhayaṃ rāpi tapo-dhikārād ubhāv api tapo-vīryābhyām samau* | But in the previous verse (12) it is said that the Kshattriyas were born in the Tretā distinguished by their former *tapas*. But perhaps they were formerly Brahmins, according to verses 9, 10, and 12.

²¹⁹ Manu and other legislators of that age, according to the Commentator (*Manu-ādyaḥ sarve tātkālikāḥ dharma-pravarttanādhikṛitāḥ*). He adds that in the Kṛita age all the castes were spontaneously devoted to their several duties, although no fixed system had been prescribed (*kṛite tu vinaiṣa sthāpanam svayam eva sarve varṇāḥ svasva-dharma-ratāḥ*).

unrighteousness and falsehood increased. 25. In this age, numbered as the Dvāpara, austere fervour entered into the Vaiśyas. Thus in the course of three ages it entered into three castes; (26) and in the three ages righteousness (*dharma*) was established in three castes. But the Sūdra does not attain to righteousness through the (lapse of these three) ages. 27. A man of low caste performs a great act of austere fervour. Such observance will belong to the future race of Sūdras in the Kali age, (28) but is unrighteous in the extreme if practised by that caste in the Dvāpara. On the outskirts of thy territory such a foolish person, of intense fervour, is practising austerity. Hence this slaughter of the boy.”

Here then was a clue to the mystery of the young Brāhman's death. A presumptuous Sūdra, paying no regard to the fact that in the age ²²⁰ in which he lived the prerogative of practising self-mortification had not yet descended to the humble class to which he belonged, had been guilty of seeking to secure a store of religious merit by its exercise. Rāma mounts his car Pushpaka, makes search in different regions, and at length comes upon a person who was engaged in the manner alleged. The Sūdra, on being questioned, avows his caste, and his desire to conquer for himself the rank of a god by the self-mortification he was undergoing. Rāma instantly cuts off the offender's head. The gods applaud the deed, and a shower of flowers descends from the sky upon the vindicator of righteousness. Having been invited to solicit a boon from the gods, he asks that the Brāhman boy may be resuscitated, and is informed that he was restored to life at the same moment when the Sūdra was slain. (Sections 75 and 76.)²²¹

The following curious account of the creation of mankind, among whom it states that no distinction of class (or colour) originally existed, is given in the Uttara Kānda, xxx. 19 ff., where Brahmā says to Indra :

Amarendra mayā buddhyā prajāḥ sṛiṣṭās tathā prabho | eka-varṇāḥ sama-bhāṣhā eka-rūpās cha sarvaśaḥ | 20. *Tāsām nāsti viśesho hi darśane lakṣaṇe 'pi vā | tato 'ham ekāgamanās tāḥ prajāḥ samachintayam |* 21. *So 'ham tāsām viśeshārtham striyam ekām vinirmame | yad yat prajānām pratyangam viśiṣṭāṁ tat tad uddhṛitam |* 22. *Tato mayā*

²²⁰ The Tretā, according to the Commentator.

²²¹ See the Rev. Professor Banerjea's Dialogues on the Hindu philosophy, pp. 41 ff., where attention had previously been drawn to the story.

*rūpa-guṇair ahalyā strī vinirmītā | halam nāmeha vairūpyaṁ halyaṁ
tat-prabhuram bharet | 23. Yasyā na vidyate halyam tenāhalyeti viśrutā |
Ahalyety eva cha mayā tasyā nāma prakīrtitam | 24. Nirmītāyāṁ cha
devendra tasyām nāryām surarshabha | bhaviṣyatiti kasyaiśhā mama
chintā tato 'bharat | 25. Tvaṁ tu Śakra tadā nārīm jānīṣhe manasā
prabho | sthānādhikatayā patnī mamaiṣheti purandara | 26. Sa mayā
nyāsa-bhūtā tu Gautamasya mahātmanah | nyastā bahūni varṣhāni tena
niryātītā cha ha | 27. Tatas tasya pariṇyāya mahāsthairyam mahāmū-
neh | jñātvā tapasi siddhiṁ cha patny-arthaṁ sparśitā tadā | 28. Sa
tayā saha dharmātmā ramate sma mahāmuniḥ | āsan nīrāsā devās tu
Gautame dattayā tayā | 29. Tvaṁ kruddhas tv iha kāmātmā gatvā
tasyāśramam muneḥ | dṛṣṭavāṁś cha tadā tām strīm dīptām agni-
śikhām iva | 30. Sā trayā dharshitā Śakra kāmārttena samanyunā ,
dṛṣṭas tvaṁ cha tadā tena āśrame paramarṣhiṇā | 31. Tataḥ krudhena
tenāsi śaptaḥ paramatejasā | gato 'si yena devendra daśā-bhāga-vi-
par-
gayaṁ |*

“19. O chief of the immortals (Indra) all creatures were formed by my will of one class (or colour), with the same speech, and uniform in every respect. 20. There was no distinction between them in appearance, or in characteristic marks. I then intently reflected on these creatures. 21. To distinguish between them I fashioned one woman. Whatever was most excellent in the several members of different creatures was taken from them, (22) and with this (aggregate) I formed a female, faultless in beauty and in all her qualities. *Ula* means ‘ugliness,’ and *halya*, ‘what is produced from ugliness.’ 23. The woman in whom there is no *halya*, is called *Ahalyā*. And this was her name to which I gave currency. 24. When this female had been fashioned, I anxiously considered to whom she should belong. 25. Thou, Indra, didst, from the eminence of thy rank, determine in thy mind, ‘She must be my spouse.’ 26. I, however, gave her in trust to the great Gautama; and after having retained her in charge for many years, he restored her. 27. Knowing then the great steadfastness of that distinguished Muni, and the perfection of his austere fervour, I, in due form, gave her to him for his wife. 28. The holy sage lived with her in the enjoyment of connubial love. But the gods were filled with despair when she had been given away to Gautama. 29. And thou, Indra, angry, as well as inflamed with lust, wentest to the Muni’s hermitage,

and didst behold that female brilliant as the flame of fire. 30. She was then corrupted by thee who wert tormented by lust, as well as heated by anger.²²² But thou wert then seen by the eminent rishi in the hermitage, (31) and cursed by that glorious being in his indignation. Thou didst in consequence fall into a reverse of condition and fortune," etc., etc.

SECT. XI.—*Extracts from the Mahābhārata on the same subjects.*

The first passage which I shall adduce is from the Ādi Parvan, or first book, verses 2517 ff. :

Vaiśampāyana uvācha | hanta te kathayishyāmi namaskṛitya Svayambhūre | surādīnām ahaṁ samyak lokānām prabhavāpyayam | Brahmano mānasāḥ putrāḥ viditāḥ shaṅ-maharshayaḥ | Marīchir Atry-angirasau Pulastyaḥ Pulahaḥ Kratuḥ | Marīcheḥ Kaśyapaḥ putraḥ Kaśyapāt tu prajā imāḥ | prajājnire mahābhūgā Dakṣa-kanyās trayodaśa | 2520. Aditir Ditir Danuḥ Kālā Danūyuh Sindhikā tathā | Krodhā Pradhā cha Viśvā cha Vinatā Kapilā Munih | Kūdrūs cha manuḥjaryāghra Dakṣa-kanyaiva Bhārata | etāsāṁ rīrya-sampannam putra-pautram anantakam |

"Vaiśampāyana said: I shall, after making obeisance to Svayambhū, relate to thee exactly the production and destruction of the gods and other beings. Six²²³ great rishis are known as the mind-born sons

²²² In regard to this story of Indra and Ahalyā, as well as to that of Brahmā and his daughter, above referred to, see the explanation given by Kumārila Bhatta, as quoted by Professor Max Müller in his Hist. of Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 529 f. The name of Ahalyā is there allegorically interpreted of the night, to which this name is said to have been given because it is absorbed in the day (*ahani ūyamānatayā*). Indra is the sun.

²²³ Another passage (S'ānti-p. 7569 ff.) raises the number of Brahmā's sons to seven by adding Vasishṭha: *Ekah Svayambhū bhagavān ūdyo Brahmā sanātanaḥ | Brahmanah sapta vai putrā mahātmanah Svayambhūrah | Marīchir Atry-Angirasau Pulastyaḥ Pulahaḥ Kratuḥ | Vasishṭhascha mahābhūgah sadriso vai Svayambhū | sapta Brahmāny ity ete purāṇe niśchayaṁ gatāḥ |* "There is one primeval eternal lord, Brahmā Svayambhū; who had seven great sons, Marīchi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasishṭha, who was like Svayambhū. These are the seven Brahmās who have been ascertained in the Puranic records." In another part of the same S'āntiparvan, verses 12685 ff., however, the Prajāpatis are increased to twenty-one: *Brahmā Sthānu Manu Dakṣo Bhṛiguḥ Dharmas tathā Yamah | Marīchir Angirā 'trischa Pulastyaḥ Pulahaḥ Kratuḥ | Vasishṭhaḥ Paramashṭhiḥ cha Vasavān Soma eva cha | Kardamaḥ chāpi yah proktaḥ Krodho Vikṛita eva cha | churīmsutir utpannās te prajāpatayaḥ smṛitāḥ |* "There are reputed to have been twenty-one Prajāpatis produced, viz. Brahmā, Sthānu, Manu, Dakṣa, Bhṛigu, Dharma, Yama, Marīchi,

of Brahmā, viz., Marīchi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, and Kratu. Kaśyapa was the son of Marīchi; and from Kaśyapa sprang these creatures. There were born to Daksha thirteen daughters of eminent rank, (2520) Aditi, Diti, Danu, Kālā, Danāyu, Simhikā, Krodhā, Pradhā, Viśvā, Vinatā, Kapilā, and Muni.²²⁴ Kadrū also was of the number. These daughters had valorous sons and grandsons innumerable."

Daksha, however, had other daughters, as we learn further on in verses 2574 ff., where the manner of his own birth also is related :

*Dakshas tv ajāyatāngushthād dakshinād bhagavān ṛishih | Brahmanah
prithivipāla śāntātmā sumahātāpāh | vāmād ajāyatāngushthād bhāryā
tasya mahātmanah | tasyām panchāsātam kanyāḥ sa evājanayad muniḥ |
. . . . 2577. Dadau cha dāsu Dharmāya saptaviṁsatim Induce | divyena
vidhina rājan Kaśyapāya trayodaśa | 2581. Paitāmahah Manur
devas tāsya putrah prajāpatiḥ | tasyūshṭau Vasavah putrās teshām vak-
shyāmi vistaram | 2595. Stanaṁ tu dakshinam bhūtā Brah-
maṇo nara-vigrahaḥ | nissrito bhagavān Dharmah sarva-loka-sukhāvahah |
trayas tasya varāḥ putrāḥ sarva-bhūta-manoharāḥ | S'amah Kāmas cha
Harshaś cha tejasā loka-dhārīṇah | 2610. Ārushī to Manoh
kanyā tasya patnī manīshīṇah | 2614. Drau putrau Brahmanas
tv anyau yayos tishṭhati lukshanam | loka Dhātā Vidhātā cha yau sthitau
Manunā sahu | taylor eva svasā devī Lakshmi padma-grīhā śubhā | tasyās
tu mānasāḥ putrās turagāḥ vyoma-chārīṇah | 2617. Prajānām
annakāmānām anyonya-paribhakshanāt | Adharmas tatra sanjātaḥ sarva-
bhūta-vināśakāḥ | tasyāpi Nirṛitir bhāryā nairṛitā yena Rākshasāḥ |
ghorās tasyās trayah putrāḥ pāpa-karma-ratāḥ sadā | Bhayo Mahā-
bhayas chaiva Mrityur bhūtāntakas tathā | na tasya bhāryā putro vā
kaśchid asty antako hi sah |*

Angiras, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Vasishṭha, Parameshṭhin, Vivasvat, Soma, the person called Kardama, Krodha, and Vikṛita." (Here, however, only twenty names are specified including Brahmā himself.) Compare this list with those quoted above, p. 116, from the Rāmāyaṇa, iii. 14, 7 ff., from Manu in p. 36, and from the Vishṇu P. in p. 65.

²²⁴ That Muni is a name, and not an epithet, is shown (1) by the fact that we have otherwise only twelve names; and (2) by her descendants, both gods and gandharvas, being afterwards enumerated in verses 2550 ff. (*ity ete deva-gandharvā Mauneyūḥ parikṛtītāḥ*). Kapilā, another of the thirteen daughters of Daksha is said to have been the mother of Ambrosia, Brāhman, kine, Gandharvas and Apsarasas (*amṛitam brāhmaṇā gāvo gandharvāpsarasas tathā | apatyam kapilāyās tu purāṇe parikṛtītām |*).

“2574. Daksha, the glorious rishi, tranquil in spirit, and great in austere fervour, sprang from the right thumb of Brahmā.²²⁵ From the left thumb sprang that great Muni's wife, on whom he begot fifty²²⁶ daughters. Of these he gave ten to Dharma, twenty-seven to Indu (Soma),²²⁷ and according to the celestial system, thirteen to Kaśyapa.” I proceed with some other details given in the verses I have extracted: 2581. “Pitāmaha's descendant, Manu, the god and the lord of creatures, was his (it does not clearly appear whose) son. The eight Vasus, whom I shall detail, were his sons. 2595. Dividing the right breast of Brahmā, the glorious Dharma (Righteousness), issued in a human form, bringing happiness to all people. He had three eminent sons, Sama, Kāma, and Harsha (Tranquillity, Love, and Joy), who are the delight of all creatures, and by their might support the world. 2610. Arushī, the daughter of Manu, was the wife of that sage (Chyavana, son of Bhrigu). 2614. There are two other sons of Brahmā, whose mark remains in the world, Dhātṛi,²²⁸ and Vidhātṛi, who remained with Manu. Their sister was the beautiful goddess Lakshmī,²²⁹ whose home is in the lotus. Her mind-born sons are the steeds who move in the sky. 2617. When the creatures who were desirous of food, had devoured one another, Adharma (Unrighteousness) was produced, the destroyer of all beings. His wife was Nirṛiti, and hence the Rākshasas are called Nairritas, or the offspring of Nirṛiti. She had three dreadful sons, continually addicted to evil deeds, Bhaya Mahābhaya (Fear and Terror) and Mṛityu (Death) the ender of beings. He has neither wife, nor any son, for he is the ender.”²³⁰

The next passage gives a different account of the origin of Daksha; and describes the descent of mankind from Manu:

Adip. 3128. *Tejobhir veditāḥ sarve maharshi-sama-tejasaḥ | daśa Pra-*

²²⁵ See above, p. 72 f. The Matsya P. also states that Daksha sprang from Brahmā's right thumb, Dharma from his nipple, Kāma from his heart, etc.

²²⁶ The passage of the Rāmāyaṇa, quoted above, p. 116, affirms that they were sixty in number. Compare Wilson's Vishṇu P. vol. i. pp. 109 ff., and vol. ii. pp. 19 ff.

²²⁷ The Taitt. Saṁhitā, ii. 3, 5, 1, says Prajāpati had thirty-three daughters, whom he gave to King Soma (*Prajāpates trayastrīṁśad duhitara āsan | tāḥ Somāya rājne dadāt*).

²²⁸ Dhātṛi had been previously mentioned, in verse 2523, as one of the sons of Aditi. See also Wilson's Vishṇu P. ii. 152.

²²⁹ See Wilson's Vishṇu P. i. pp. 109, 118 ff., 114 ff. and 152.

²³⁰ The Vishṇu P. (Wilson, i. 112) says he had five children.

*chetasaḥ putrāḥ santah punya-janūḥ smṛitāḥ | mukhajeṇāgninā yais te
pūrvam dagdhā mahaujasaḥ | tebhyaḥ Prāchetaso jajne Daksho Dakshād
imāḥ prajāḥ | sambhūtāḥ puruṣa-ryāghra sa hi loka-pitāmahaḥ |
Vīriṇyā saha sangamya Dakṣaḥ Prāchetaso munīḥ | ātma-tulyān aja-
nayat sahasraṁ śaṁśita-vratān | sahasra-saṅkhyān sambhūtān Dakṣa-
putrāṁś cha Nāradaḥ | mokṣam adhyāpayāmāsa saṅkhyā-jñānam anut-
tamam | tutaḥ panchāśataṁ kanyūḥ putrikāḥ abhisandadhe | Prajāpatiḥ
prajāḥ Dakṣaḥ sisṛikṣhur Janamejaya | dadau cha daśa Dharmāya
Kāśyapāya trayodaśa | kālasya nayane yuktāḥ saptaviṁśatim Indave |
3135. Trayodaśānām patnīnām yā tu Dākṣhūyaṇī varā | Mārīchaḥ
Kāśyapas tasyām Ādityān samajījanat | Indrādīn rīryya-sampannān
Vīrasantam athāpi cha | Vīrasvataḥ suto jajne Yamo Vairasvataḥ pra-
bhuh | Mārtaṇḍasya Manur dhīmān ajāyatu sutaḥ prabhuh | Yamaś
chāpi suto jajne khyātas tasyānujāḥ prabhuh | dharmātmā sa Manur
dhīmūn yatra vaṁśaḥ pratishṭhitāḥ | Manor vaṁśo mānavānām tato 'yam
prathito 'bhavat | brahma-kṣatrādayas tasmād Manor jātus tu mānavāḥ |
tato 'bhavad mahārāja brahma kṣattreṇa sangatam | 3140. Brāhmaṇā
mānavās teshām sāṅgam vedam adhārayan | Venam Dhṛishṇuṁ Narish-
yantam Nābhūgeksvākum eva cha | Kārūṣham atha Sāryatiṁ tathā
chairskṣtamīm Ilām | Prishadhraṁ navamam prāhuḥ kṣattrā-dharma-
parāyaṇam | Nābhūgūrīṣṭa-daśamān Manoh putrān prachakṣate | pan-
chāśat tu Manoh putrās tathairānye 'bhavan kṣhitau | anyonya-bhedāt te
sarve vīreśur iti naḥ śrutam | Purūravas tato vidvān Ilāyaṁ samapad-
yata | sū vai tasyābhavad mātā pitā chaiveti naḥ śrutam |*

“3128. Born all with splendour, like that of great rishis, the ten sons of Prachetas are reputed to have been virtuous and holy; and by them the glorious beings³³¹ were formerly burnt up by fire springing from their mouths. From them was born Daksha Prāchetasa;³³² and from Daksha, the Parent of the world (were produced), these creatures. Cohabiting with Vīriṇī, the Muni Daksha begot a thousand sons like himself, famous

³³¹ “Trees and plants,” according to the Commentator (*mahūprabhāvū vṛkṣhau-
shadhayāḥ*). Compare Wilson's *Viṣṇu* P. ii. p. 1.

³³² The same account of Daksha's birth is given in the S'āntip. 7573. *Dasānām
tanayas tv eko Daksho nāma prajāpatiḥ | tasya dve nāmanī loka Dakṣaḥ Ka iti cho-
chyate* | “These ten Prachetas had one son called Daksha, the lord of creatures. He
is commonly called by two names, Daksha and Ka.” (Compare vol. iv. of this work,
p. 13, note 30, and p. 24; and the S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, vii. 4, 1, 19, and ii. 4, 4, 1,
there quoted.) The following verse 7574 tells us that Kasyapa also had two names,
the other being Arisṭanemi. See Rām. iii. 14, 9, quoted above.

for their religious observances, to whom Nārada taught the doctrine of final liberation, the unequalled knowledge of the Sāṅkhya. Desirous of creating offspring, the Prajāpati Daksha next formed fifty daughters, of whom he gave ten to Dharma, thirteen to Kaśyapa, and twenty-seven, devoted to the regulation of time,²³³ to Indu (Soma). . . . 3135. On Dākshāyaṇī,²³⁴ the most excellent of his thirteen wives, Kaśyapa, the son of Marīchi, begot the Ādityas, headed by Indra and distinguished by their energy, and also Vivasvat.²³⁵ To Vivasvat was born a son, the mighty Yama Vaivasvata. To Mārtanḍa (*i.e.* Vivasvat, the Sun) was born the wise and mighty Manu, and also the renowned Yama, his (Manu's) younger brother. Righteous was this wise Manu, on whom a race was founded. Hence this (family) of men became known as the race of Manu. Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, and other men sprang from this Manu. From him, o king, came the Brāhman conjoined with the Kshattriya. 3140. Among them the Brāhmanas, children of Manu, held the Veda with the Vedāṅgas. The children of Manu are said to have been Vena, Dhṛishṇu, Narishyanta, Nābhāga, Ikshvāku, Kārusha, Sāryāti, Ilā the eight, Prishadra the ninth, who was addicted to the duties of a Kshattriya, and Nābhāgarishṭa the tenth. Manu had also fifty other sons; but they all, as we have heard, perished in consequence of mutual dissensions. Subsequently the wise Purūravas was born of Ilā, who, we heard, was both his mother and his father."

The tradition, followed in this passage, which assigns to all the castes one common ancestor, removed by several stages from the creator, is, of course, in conflict with the account which assigns to them a fourfold descent from the body of Brahmā himself.

The Sāntiparvan, verses 2749 ff., contains an account of the origin of castes which has evidently proceeded from an extreme assertor of the dignity of the Brahmanical order. The description given of the prerogatives of the priestly class is precisely in the style, and partly in almost the identical words, of the most extravagant declarations of

²³³ This phrase *kūlasya nayane yuktāḥ* had previously occurred in verse 2580, where it is followed by the words *sarvā nakshatra-yoginyo loka-yūtrā-vidhānataḥ* | "all identified with the lunar asterisms, and appointed to regulate the life of men." See also Vishṇu P. i. 15, 56, and Professor Wilson's translation ii. p. 10, note 1, and p. 28, note 1.

²³⁴ *i.e.* Aditi. See verses 2520, 2522, and 2600 of this same book.

²³⁵ The account in the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, 5 ff., agrees with this in making Kaśyapa son of Marīchi, and father of Vivasvat.

Manu (i. 99 f.) on the same subject. In other places, however, the Mahābhārata contains explanations of a very different character regarding the origin of the distinctions, social and professional, which prevailed at the period of its composition. A comparison of these various passages will afford an illustration of the fact already intimated in p. 6,²³⁶ that this gigantic poem is made up of heterogeneous elements, the products of different ages, and representing widely different dogmatical tendencies, the later portions having been introduced by successive editors of the work to support their own particular views, without any regard to their inconsistency with its earlier contents. In fact, a work so vast, the unaided compilation of which would have taxed all the powers of a Didymus Chalkenterus, could scarcely have been created in any other way than that of gradual accretion. And some supposition of this kind is certainly necessary in order to explain such discrepancies as will be found between the passages I have to quote, of which the three first are the productions of believers (real or pretended) in the existence of a natural distinction between their own Brahmanical order and the other classes of the community, while the two by which these three are followed have emanated from fair and moderate writers who had rational views of the essential unity of mankind, and of the superiority of moral and religious character to any factitious divisions of a social description.

In the first passage, Bhīshma, the great uncle of the Pāndus, when describing to Yudhishtira the duties of kings, introduces one of those ancient stories which are so frequently appealed to in the Mahābhārata. Without a minute study of the poem it would be difficult to say whether these are ever based on old traditions, or are anything more than mere vehicles invented to convey the individual views of the writers who narrate them. Bhīshma says, Sāntiparvan, 2749 :

*Ya eva tu sato rakshed asatās cha nivarttayet | sa eva rājñā karttavyo
rājan rāja-purohitaḥ | 2750. Atrāpy udāharantimam itihāsam purā-
tanam | Purānarasa Ailasya saṁrūdham Mātariśvanah | Purāravā urācha |
Kutah svid brāhmaṇo jāta varṇās chāpi kutas trayah | kasmāchcha bhavati
śreshṭhas tan me vyākhyātum arhasi | Mātariśvovācha | Brahmaṇo mu-
khataḥ sṛishto brāhmaṇo rāja-sattama | bāhubhyām kshattriyah sṛishta
ūrubhyām vaiśya eva cha | varṇānām parichāryyārtham trayāṇām Bha-*

²³⁶ See also the fourth volume of this work, pp. 141 ff. and 152.

ratarshabha | varṇas̄ chaturthaḥ sambhūtaḥ padbhyām śūdro vinirmitaḥ |
*brāhmaṇo jāyamāno hi prithivyām anujāyate*²³⁷ | *īśvaraḥ sarva-bhūtānām*
dharma-koshasya guptaye | 2755. Atāḥ prithivyā yantāram kshattriyāṁ
danda-dhārane | dvitīyam Daṇḍam akarot prajānām anutriptaye | vaiśyas
tu dhana-dhānyena trīṇ varṇān bibhṛiyād imān | śūdro hy etān pari-
chared iti Brāhmānuśāsanam | Āiḷa uvācha | dvijasya kshattrabandhor
vā kasyeyam prithivī bhavet | dharmutaḥ saha vittena samyag Vāyo pra-
chakshva me | Vāyur uvācha | viprasya sarvam evaitad yat kinchij jagatī-
gatam | jyeshṭhenābhijaneneho tad dharma-kuśulā viduḥ | svam eva brāh-
maṇo bhunkte svam vaste svam dadāti cha | gurur hi sarva-varṇānām
jyeshṭhaḥ śreshṭhaḥ cha vai dvijaḥ | 2760. Poty-abhūce yathaiva strī
devaram kurute patim | esha te prathamāḥ kalpaḥ āpady anyo bhaved
atāḥ |

“2749. The king should appoint to be his royal priest²³⁸ a man who will protect the good, and restrain the wicked. 2750. On this subject they relate this following ancient story of a conversation between Purūravas the son of Ilā, and Mātariśvan (Vāyu, the Wind-god). Purūravas said: You must explain to me whence the Brāhman, and whence the (other) three castes were produced, and whence the superiority (of the first) arises. Mātariśvan answered: The Brāhman was created from Brahmā's mouth, the Kshattriya from his arms, the Vaiśya from his thighs, while for the purpose of serving these three

²³⁷ Manu, i. 99, has *adhi jāyate*.

²³⁸ *Rāja-purohitaḥ*. The king's priest (*rāja-purohitaḥ*) is here represented as one who should be a confidential and virtuous minister of state. Such is not, however, the character always assigned to this class of persons. In Manu xii. 46, quoted above (p. 41f.), the purohita is placed in a lower class than other Brāhmins. And in the following verse (4527) of the Anuśāsanaparvan, taken from a story in which the Rishis utter maledictions against anyone who should have stolen certain lotus roots, part of the curse spoken by Viśvāmitra is as follows *varshācharo'stu bhṛitako rājnas̄ chāstu puro-*
hitaḥ | ayāgyasya bhavatu ritvīḥ viśa-stānyam karoti yaḥ | “Let the man who steals lotus roots be a hireling trafficker in rain incantations (?) and the domestic priest of a king, and the priest of one for whom no Brāhman should officiate.” Again, in verse 4579, the same person says *karotu bhṛitako'va shām rājnas̄ chāstu purohitaḥ | ritvī-*
astu hy ayāgyasya yas te harati pashkaram | “Let him who steals thy lotus perform as a hireling incantations to cause drought, and be a king's domestic priest, and the priest of one for whom no Brāhman should officiate.” I have had partly to guess at the sense of the words *varshācharoḥ* and *avarshām*. The Commentator does not explain the former; and interprets the latter (for which the Edinburgh MS. reads *avarshāḥ*) by *vrishṭi-nibandham*, “causing drought.” He adds, *papishṭhāḥ eva avarshāḥ*, “those who cause drought are most wicked.”

castes was produced the fourth class, the Sūdra, fashioned from his feet. The Brāhman, as soon as born, becomes the lord of all beings upon the earth, for the purpose of protecting the treasure of righteousness. 2755. Then (the creator) constituted the Kshattriya the controulor of the earth, a second Yama to bear the rod, for the satisfaction of the people. And it was Brahmā's ordinance that the Vaiśya should sustain these three classes with money and grain, and that the Sūdra should serve them. The son of Ilā then enquired: Tell me, Vāyu, to whom the earth, with its wealth, rightfully belongs, to the Brāhman or the Kshattriya? Vāyu replied: All this, whatever exists in the world, is the Brāhman's property²³⁹ by right of primogeniture: this is known to those who are skilled in the laws of duty. It is his own which the Brāhman eats, puts on, and bestows. He is the chief of all the castes, the first-born and the most excellent. Just as a woman when she has lost her (first) husband, takes her brother in law for a second; so the Brāhman is thy first resource in calamity; afterwards another may arise."

A great deal is shortly afterwards added about the advantages of concord between Brāhmans and Kshattriyas. Such verses as the following (2802): "From the dissensions of Brāhmans and Kshattriyas the people incur intolerable suffering" (*mitho bhedād brāhmaṇa-kshattriyāṇāṃ prajā duḥkhaṃ dussahaṃ chāviśanti*) afford tolerably clear evidence that the interests of these two classes must frequently have clashed.

In the same strain as the preceding passage is the following:

Vanaparvan, 13136. *Nādhyāpanād yājanād vā anyasmād vā prati-grahāt | dosho bhavati viprāṇām jvalitāgni-samā dvijāḥ | durvedā vā su-vedā vā prākṛitāḥ saṃskṛitās tathā | brāhmaṇā nūvamantaryā bhasma-channā ivāgnayaḥ | yathā śmaśāne dīptaṇyāḥ pūrako naira dushyati | evaṃ vidvāṇ avidvāṇ vā brāhmaṇo daivatam mahat | prākāraiś cha pura-dārairiḥ prāsūdaś cha prithag-vidvairiḥ | nagarāṇi na śobhante hīnāṇi brāhmaṇottamairiḥ | vedādhyā ṛitta-sampannā jñānavantas tapasīnairiḥ | yatra tiṣṭhanti vai viprās tan-nāma nagaraṃ nṛipa | vrjje vā py athavā*

²³⁹ Kullūka, the Commentator on Manu (i. 100), is obliged to admit that this is only spoken in a panegyric or hyperbolic way, and that property is here used in a figurative sense, since theft is afterwards predicated by Manu of Brāhmans as well as others ("sram" *iti stutiyā uchyate | svam iva svam na tu svam eva | brāhmaṇasyūpi Manunā steṇasya rakṣyamāṇatvāt*).

'*range yatra santi bahu-śrutāḥ | tat tad nagaram ity ākuḥ pārtha tīr-
thaṁ cha tad bhavet |*

"No blame accrues to Brāhmins from teaching or sacrificing, or from receiving money in any other way : Brāhmins are like flaming fire. Whether ill or well versed in the Veda, whether untrained or accomplished, Brāhmins must never be despised, like fires covered by ashes. Just as fire does not lose its purity by blazing even in a cemetery, so too, whether learned or unlearned, a Brāhman is a great deity. Cities are not rendered magnificent by ramparts, gates, or palaces of various kinds, if they are destitute of excellent Brāhmins. 13440. The place where Brāhmins, rich in the Veda, perfect in their conduct, and austere, fervid, reside, is (really) a city (*nagara*). Wherever there are men abounding in Vedic lore, whether it be a cattle-pen, or a forest, that is called a city, and that will be a sacred locality."

The following verses from the Anuśāsanap. 2160 ff. are even more extreme in their character, and are, in fact, perfectly sublime in their insolence :

*Brāhmaṇānām paribhavād asurāḥ salile śayāḥ | brāhmaṇānām prasā-
dāch cha devāḥ svarga-nivāsinaḥ | āśakyāṁ sraśṭum ākāśam achālyo
himavān giriḥ | adhāryā setunā Gangā durjayā brāhmaṇā bhuvī | na
brāhmaṇa-virodhena sakyā śāstun vasundharā | brāhmaṇā hi mahātmanō
devānām api devatāḥ | tām pūjayasva satatāṁ dānena paricharyyā |
yadīchasi mahīm bhoktum imām sāgara-mekhalām |*

"Through the prowess of the Brāhmins the Asuras were prostrated on the waters ; by the favour of the Brāhmins the gods inhabit heaven. The ether cannot be created ; the mountain Himavat cannot be shaken ; the Gangā cannot be stemmed by a dam ; the Brāhmins cannot be conquered by any one upon earth. The world cannot be ruled in opposition to the Brāhmins ; for the mighty Brāhmins are the deities even of the gods. If thou desire to possess the sea-girt earth, honour them continually with gifts and with service."

The next passage seems to be self-contradictory, as it appears to set out with the supposition that the distinction of castes arose after the creation ; while it goes on to assert the separate origin of the four classes :

Sāntiparvan, 10861. *Janaka urācha | varṇo viśeṣa-varṇānām ma-
harshe kena jāyate | etad icchāmy ahaṁ jñātum tad brūhi vadatāṁ vara |
yad etaj jāyate 'patyaṁ sa evāyam iti śrutih | katham brāhmaṇato jāto*

*viśeṣhe grahaṇaṁ gataḥ | Parāśara uvācha | Eṣam etad mahārāja yena
 jātaḥ sa eva saḥ | tapasas tv apakarṣheṇa jātigrahaṇatōṁ gataḥ | sukshe-
 trāchecha survijāḥ cha puṇyo bhavati sambhavaḥ | ato 'nyatarato hīnād
 araro nāma jāyate | 10865. Vaktrād bhujaḥbhyāṁ ūrubhyāṁ padbhyāṁ
 chaivātha jaynīre | srijataḥ Prajāpater lokān iti dharmavido viduḥ | mu-
 khajā brāhmaṇās tāta bāhujāḥ kṣhattriyaḥ smṛitāḥ | ūrujāḥ dhanīno
 rājan pādajāḥ parichārakāḥ | chaturṇām eva varṇānām āgamāḥ puru-
 sharshaḥ | ato 'nye vyatiriktā ye te vai sankarajāḥ smṛitāḥ |
 10870. Janaka uvācha | Brahmaṇaikeṇa jātānām nānātraṁ gotrataḥ
 katham | bahūnīha hi loka vai gotrāṇi muni sattama | yatra tatra kathāḥ
 jātāḥ srayonim (? suyonim) munayo gatāḥ | śuddha-yonau samutpannā
 viyonau cha tathā 'pare | Parāśara uvācha | rājan naitad bhaved grāhyam
 apakṛiṣṭeṇa janmanā | matātmanāṁ samutpattis tapasā bhāvitātmanāṁ |
 utpādyā putrān munayo nripate yatra tatra ha | svenaiva tapasā teshāṁ
 rishitvam pradadhuḥ punaḥ | 10876. Ete svām prakṛitīm prāptū
 Vaideha tapasośrayāt | pratishṭhitā veda-vido dumena tapasaiva hi |*

“Janaka asks: 10861. How, o great rishi, does the caste of the separate classes arise? Tell me, as I desire to know. According to the Veda, the offspring which is born (to any one) is the very man himself. How does offspring born of a Brāhman fall into distinct classes? Parāśara replied: It is just as you say, o great king. A son is the very same as he by whom he was begotten; but from decline of austere fervour, (men) have become included under different classes. And from good soil and good seed a pure production arises, whilst from those which are different and faulty springs an inferior production. Those acquainted with duty know that men were born from the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet of Prajāpati when he was creating the worlds. The Brāhman sprang from his mouth, the Kshattriyas from his arms, the merchants from his thighs, and the servants from his feet. The scriptural tradition speaks only of four classes. The men not included in these are declared to have sprung from a mixture (of the four). . . . 10870. Janaka asked: How is there a difference in race between men sprung from one and the same Brahmā? for there are now many races in the world. How have Munis born anywhere (indiscriminately) entered into a good family: some of them having sprung from a pure source and others from an inferior stock? Parāśara replied: It would not be credible that noble-minded men, whose souls

had been perfected by austere fervour, should have been the offspring of a degraded birth. Munis who had begotten sons in an indiscriminate way conferred on them the position of rishis by their own austere fervour." The speaker then names a number of sages (10876) "famed for their acquaintance with the Veda, and for their self-command and austere fervour," as "having all attained to their respective conditions by practising the latter observance."

In the latter verses the speaker appears to admit, at the very moment that he denies, the degraded origin of some of the renowned saints of Indian antiquity. What else is the meaning of the verse, "Munis who had begotten sons in an indiscriminate way conferred on them the position of rishis by their own austere fervour?" No doubt it is intended to represent those as exceptional times: but while we refuse to admit this assumption, we may find some reason to suppose that the irregularities, as they were afterwards considered to be, which this assumption was intended to explain away, were really samples of the state of things which commonly prevailed in earlier ages.

The next extract declares that there is a natural distinction between the Brāhmanas and the other castes; and appears to intimate that the barrier so constituted can only be overpassed when the soul re-appears in another body in another birth:

Anuśāsana-parva, 6570. *Deva uvācha | Brāhmanyāṁ devī dushprāpyāṁ nisargād brāhmaṇaḥ śubhe | kshattriyo vaiśyaśūdrau vā nisargād iti me matiḥ | karmaṇā dushkriteneha sthānād bhraśyati vai dvijaḥ | jyeshṭham varṇam anuprāpya tasmād raksheta vai dvijaḥ | sthito brāhmaṇa-dharmena brāhmanyam upajīvati | kshattriyo vā 'tha vaiśyo vā brahmabhūyam sa gachhati | yas tu brahmatvam utśriṣya kshātraṁ dharmāṁ nishervate | brāhmanyāt sa paribhrasṭaḥ kshātra-yonau prajāyate | vaiśya-karma cha yo vipro lobha-moha-vyapāśrayaḥ | brāhmanyāṁ durlobham prāpya karoty alpa-matiḥ sadā | sa dvijo vaiśyatām eti vaiśyo vā śūdratām iyat | sva-dharmāt prachyuto vipras tataḥ śūdratvam āpnute | 6590. Ebhis tu karmabhir devī śubhair ācharitais tathā | śūdro brāhmaṇatām yāti vaiśyaḥ kshattriyatām rrajet | śūdra-karmāṇi sarvāṇi yathānyāyam yathāvidhi | śuśrūṣhām paricharyyām cha jyeshṭhe varṇe prayatnataḥ | kuryād ityādi |*

Mahādeva says: 6570. "Brāhmanhood, o fair goddess, is difficult to

be attained. A man, whether he be a Brāhman, Kshattriya, Vaiśya, or Sūdra, is such by nature; this is my opinion. By evil deeds a twice-born man falls from his position. Then let a twice-born man who has attained to the highest caste, keep it. The Kshattriya, or Vaiśya, who lives in the condition of a Brāhman, by practising the duties of one, attains to Brāhmanhood. But he who abandons the state of a Brāhman and practises the duty of a Kshattriya, falls from Brāhmanhood and is born in a Kshattriya womb. And the foolish Brāhman, who, having attained that Brāhmanhood which is so hard to get, follows the profession of a Vaiśya, under the influence of cupidity and delusion, falls into the condition of a Vaiśya. (In like manner) a Vaiśya may sink into the state of a Sūdra. A Brāhman who falls away from his own duty becomes afterwards a Sūdra. . . . 6590. But by practising the following good works, o goddess, a Sūdra becomes a Brāhman, and a Vaiśya becomes a Kshattriya: Let him actively perform all the functions of a Sūdra according to propriety and rule, *i.e.* obedience and service to the highest caste," etc.

The next passage is the first of those which I have already noted, as in spirit and tenor very different from the preceding. The conversation which it records arose as follows: Yudhishtira found his brother Bhīmasena caught in the coils of a serpent, which, it turned out, was no other than the famous king Nahusha, who by his sacrifices, austerities, etc., had formerly raised himself to the sovereignty of the three worlds; but had been reduced to the condition in which he was now seen, as a punishment for his pride and contempt of the Brāhman. He promises to let Bhīmaseva go, if Yudhishtira will answer certain questions. Yudhishtira agrees, and remarks that the serpent was acquainted with whatever a Brāhman ought to know. Whereupon the Serpent proceeds:

Vana-parva, verses 12469 ff : *Sarpa uvācha | brāhmaṇaḥ ko bhaved rājan vedyāṁ kiṁ cha Yudhishtira |* 12470. *Bravīhy atīmatīm tvāṁ hi vākyaair anumimīmahe | Yudhishtira uvācha | satyaṁ dānam kshamā ślam ānṛisaṁsyaṁ tapo ghr̥ṇū | dṛīśyante yatra nāgendra sa brāhmaṇaḥ iti smṛitih | vedyāṁ sarpa param Brahma nīrduḥkham asukham cha yat | yatra gatvā na śochanti bhavataḥ kiṁ vicakṣhitam | Sarpa uvācha | chāturtvarṇyam pramāṇaṁ cha satyaṁ cha brahma chaiva hi | Sūdreshr api cha satyaṁ cha dānam akrodha eva cha | ānṛisaṁsyaṁ ahimsā cha ghr̥ṇū chaiva Yudhishtira | vedyāṁ yach chāttra nīrduḥkham asukham cha na-*

rādhipa | tābhyāṁ hīnam padaṁ chānyad na tad astīti lakshaye | Yudhishtira uvācha | 12475. Sūdre tu yad bhavet lakshma dvije tuch cha na vidyate | na vai śūdro bharech chhūdro brāhmaṇo na cha brāhmaṇaḥ | yatra itul lakshyate sarpa vṛttam sa brāhmaṇaḥ smṛitaḥ | yatra itad na bhavet sarpa tam śūdrām iti nirddiśet | yat punar bhavatā proktam na vedyāṁ vidyatīti chu | tābhyāṁ hīnam ato 'nyatra padaṁ nāstīti ched api | evam etad matam sarpa tābhyāṁ hīnaṁ na vidyate | yathā śītoshṇayor madhye bhaved noshṇaṁ na śītātā | evam vai sukha-duḥkhabhyāṁ hīnaṁ nāsti padaṁ kiachit | eṣā mama matiḥ sarpa yathā vā manyate bhacān | Sarpa uvācha | 12480. Yadi te vṛttato rājan brāhmaṇaḥ prasanīkshitaḥ | vṛthā jātis tadā 'yushman kṛtīr yāvad na vidyate | Yudhishtira uvācha | jātīr atra mahāsarpa manushyatce mahāmata | sankarāt sarva-varṇānāṁ duṣparīkshyeti me matiḥ | sarve sarvāṁ apatyāni janayanti sadā narāḥ | vān maithunam atho janma maraṇaṁ cha samam nṛṇāṁ | idam ārsham pramāṇaṁ cha "ye ya-jūmahe" ity api | tasmāch chhīlom pradhāneshtaṁ vidur ye tattva-darśinaḥ | "prāṇ nābhi-rarddhanāt puṁso jāta-karma vidhīyate" | "tadā 'sya mātā sāvitṛī pitā tv āchāryya uchyate" | 12485. "Tāvach chhūdra-samo hy eṣa yārad vede na jāyate" | tasmīn evam mati-dvaidhe Manuḥ Svāyambhuvo 'bravīt | kṛta-kṛtyāḥ punar varṇā yadi vṛttam na vidyate | sankaras tatra nāgendra balavān prasamīkshitaḥ | yatredānīm mahāsarpa samskrītaṁ vṛttam ishīyate | tam brāhmaṇam aham pūrvam uktvān bhujagottama |

"12469. The Serpent said: Who may be a Brāhmaṇ, and what is the thing to be known, o Yudhishtira;—tell me, since by thy words I infer thee to be a person of extreme intelligence. Yudhishtira replied: 12470. The Smṛiti declares, o chief of Serpents, that he is a Brāhmaṇ, in whom truth, liberality, patience, virtue, innocence, austere fervour, and compassion are seen. And the thing to be known is the supreme Brahma, free from pain, as well as from pleasure,—to whom, when men have attained, they no longer sorrow. What is your opinion? The Serpent replied: The Veda (*brahma*) is beneficial to all the four castes and is authoritative and true.²⁴⁰ And so we find in

²⁴⁰ Such is the sense assigned by the Commentator to this line, the drift of which is not very clear. The comment runs thus: *Sarpas tu brāhmaṇa-padena jāti-mūtram evakshitrā sūdre tal lakṣaṇāṁ vyabhicārayati "chāturvāryam" iti sārddhena | chāturvāryam varṇānāṁ hitam | satyam pramāṇam cha dharmā-nyapasthāpakam brahma vedah | śūdrūchāra-smṛiteḥ api veda-mūlakatvāt sarvo 'py āchārādih śruti-mūlakah*

Sūdras also truth, liberality, calmness, innocence, harmlessness, and compassion. And as for the thing to be known, which is free from pain and pleasure, I perceive that there is no other thing free from these two influences. Yudhishtira rejoined: 12475. The qualities characteristic of a Sūdra do not exist in a Brāhman (nor *vice versâ*). (Were it otherwise) the Sūdra would not be a Sūdra, nor the Brāhman a Brāhman.²⁴¹ The person in whom this regulated practice is perceived is declared to be a Brāhman; and the man, in whom it is absent, should be designated as a Sūdra. And as to what you say further, that there is nothing other than this (Brahma) to be known, which is free from the susceptibilities in question; this is also (my own) opinion, that there is nothing free from them. Just as between cold and heat there can be neither heat nor cold, so there is nothing free from the feeling of pleasure and pain. Such is my view; or how do you consider? The Serpent remarked: 12480. If a man is regarded by you as being a Brāhman only in consequence of his conduct, then birth is vain until action is shown. Yudhishtira replied: O most sapient Serpent, birth is difficult to be discriminated in the present condition

ity arthaḥ | evaṁ cha satyādikāṁ yadi sūdre 'py asti tarhi so 'pi brāhmaṇa eva syād vi āha "sūdreṣv api" iti | "The serpent, however, understanding by the term Brāhman mere birth, shows in a sloka and a half that Yudhishtira's definition fails by being applicable also to a Sūdra. *Chāturvārya* means 'beneficial to the four castes.' (Such is the Veda), which is also 'true' and 'authoritative,' as establishing what is duty. Inasmuch as the Smṛiti which prescribes a Sūdra's conduct is itself founded on the Veda; all conduct, etc., is based on the Veda. And so if (the characters of) truth, etc., are found also in a Sūdra, he too must be a Brāhman—such is his argument in the words 'In Sūdras also.'" According to this explanation the connection between the first line and the second and third may be as follows: The Veda is beneficial to all the castes, and therefore Sūdras also, having the advantage of its guidance, although at second hand, may practise all the virtues you enumerate; but would you therefore call them Brāhman?

²⁴¹ This verse is not very lucid; but the sense may be that which I have assigned. The Commentator says: *Itaraḥ tu brāhmaṇa-puṇa brahma-vidāṁ vivakṣitvā sūdrāder api brāhmaṇatvam abhyupaganya pariharati "Sūdre tv" iti | Sūdra-lakṣhya-kāmādikāṁ na brāhmaṇe 'sti na brāhmaṇa-lakṣhya-sāmādikāṁ sūdre 'sti ity arthaḥ | sūdro 'pi sāmādy-upeto brāhmaṇaḥ | brāhmaṇo 'pi kāmādy-upetaḥ sūdra eva ity arthaḥ |* "The other (Yudhishtira), however, understanding by the word Brāhmaṇa one who knows the Veda (or, Brahma), and conceding the fact of a Sūdra's Brāhmaṇhood, obviates by the words 'but in a Sūdra,' etc. (the objection thence drawn). The qualities, lust, etc., distinctive of a Sūdra, do not exist in a Brāhman, nor do the qualities tranquillity, etc., characteristic of a Brāhman exist in a Sūdra. A Sūdra distinguished by the latter is a Brāhman; while a Brāhman characterized by lust, etc., is a Sūdra."

of humanity, on account of the confusion of all castes.²¹² All (sorts of)

²¹² In the tenth vol. of his *Indische Studien*, p. 83, Professor Weber adduces some curious evidence of the little confidence entertained in ancient times by the Indians in the chastity of their women. He refers to the following passages: (1) *Nidāna Sūtra*, iii. 8. *Uchchāvacha-charaṇāḥ striyo bhavanti | saha deva-sōkshye cha manushya-sōkshye cha yeshām putro vōkshye teshām putro bhavishyāmi | yāmscha putrān rakshye te me putrāḥ bhavishyanti* | “Women are irregular in their conduct. Of whatsoever men, I, taking gods and men to witness, shall declare myself to be the son, I shall be their son; and they whom I shall name as my sons shall be so.” (2) *S’atapatha Brāhmaṇa*, iii. 2, 1, 40. *Atha yad “brāhmaṇaḥ” ityāha | anaddhū iva vai asya atah purā jānam bhavati | idam hy āhuḥ “rakshāmsi yoshitam anusachante tad uta rakshāmsy eva reta dūdhati iti* | *atha atra addhū jāyate yo brāhmaṇo yo yajñāj jāyate | tasmād api rājanyaṁ vā vaiśyaṁ vā “brāhmaṇaḥ” ity eva brūyāt | brāhmaṇo hi jāyate yo yajñāj jāyate | tasmād āhuḥ “na savana-kṛitāḥ hanyād enasvī ha eva savana-kṛitū” iti* | “Now as regards what he says ‘(this) Brāhman (has been consecrated).’ before this his birth is uncertain. For they say this that ‘Rakshases follow after women, and therefore that it is Rakshases who inject seed into them.’” (Compare what it said of the Gandharvas in *Atharva V.* iv. 37, 116, and *Journ. Roy. As. Soc.* for 1865, p. 301.) So then he is certainly born who is born from sacred science (*brahma*) and from sacrifice. Wherefore also let him address a Rājanya or a Vaiśya as ‘Brāhman,’ for he is born from sacred science (*brāhma*), and consequently a Brāhman who is born from sacrifice. Hence they say ‘let no one slay an offerer of a libation, for he incurs (the) sin (of Brahmanicide :) by so doing’” (3) On the next passage of the *S’ P. Br.* ii. 5, 2, 20, Professor Weber remarks that it is assumed that the wife of the person offering the Varuṇa praghāsa must have one or more paramours: *Atha pratipras’hūtā pratiparauri | sa patnīm udāneshyan prichhati ‘kena (jāreṇa Comm.) charasi’ iti* | *Varuṇyām vai etat strī karoti yad anyasya saty anyena charati | otho “na id me utah-salpū juhuvad” iti tasmāt prichhati | niruktaṁ vai enaḥ kanīyo bhavati | satyaṁ hi bhavati | tasmād vā iva prichhati | sā yad na pratijānīta jñātibhyo ha asyai tad othitāḥ syāt* | “The pratiprasthātri (one of the priests) returns. Being about to bring forward the wife, he asks her, ‘with what (paramour) dost thou keep company?’ For it is an offence incurring punishment from Varuṇa that being the wife of one man she keeps company with another. He enquires ‘in order that she may not sacrifice with me while she feels an inward pang.’ For a sin when declared becomes less: for it is not attended with falsehood. Therefore he enquires. If she does not confess, it will be ill for her relations.” (This passage is explained in *Kātyāyana’s Śrauta Sūtras*, v. 5, 6-11.) (4) *S’ P. Br.* i. 3, 2, 21. *Tad u ha uvācha Yājñavalkyo “yathādishtam patnyūḥ astu | kas tad ūdiyeta yat parapūṁs vā patnī syāt”* | “Yājñavalkya said this (in opposition to the doctrine of some other teachers). ‘let the prescribed rule be followed regarding a wife. Who would mind his wife consorting with other men?’” The last clause has reference to the consequence which the other teachers said would follow from adopting the course they disapproved, viz., that the wife of the man who did so would become an adulteress. (5) *Taitt. S.* v. 6, 8, 3. *Na agnīm chitrā rāmām upeyāt “ayonau reto dhusyāmi” iti | na deutīyām chitrā űgasya striyam upeyāt | na tritīyām chitrā kāñchana upeyāt | reto vai etad nūhatte yad agnīm chinute | yad upryāt retasā vṛidhṇeta* | “Let not a man, after preparing the altar for the sacred fire, approach a woman (a Sūdra-woman, according to the Commentator), (considering) that in doing so, he would be discharging seed into an improper place. Let no man, after a second time preparing the fire-

men are continually begetting children on all (sorts of) women. The speech, the mode of propagation, the birth, the death of all mankind are alike. The text which follows is Vedic and authoritative: 'We who (are called upon) we recite the text.'²⁴³ Hence those men who have an insight into truth know that virtuous character is the thing chiefly to be desired. 'The natal rites of a male are enjoined to be performed before the section of the umbilical cord (Manu, ii. 29). Then Sāvitrī (the Gāyatrī, Manu ii. 77) becomes his mother and his

altar, approach another man's wife. Let no man, after a third time preparing the fire-altar, approach any woman. for in preparing the fire-altar he is discharging seed. Should he approach (a woman in these forbidden cases) he will miscarry with his seed." This prohibition of adultery in a certain case, seems to prove that it was no uncommon occurrence, and is calculated, as Professor Weber remarks, to throw great doubt on the purity of blood in the old Indian families.

²⁴³ To explain the last elliptical expression I will quote part of the Commentator's remarks on the beginning of Yudhishtira's reply: *Vāgūdīnām iva maithunasyāpi sādharanyaj jātir durjneyā | tathā chā śrutiḥ* "na chaitad vidmo brāhmaṇāḥ sma vayam abrahmaṇā vā" *iti brāhmaṇya-samśayaṁ upanyasyati | nanu jāty-anīśchaye katham* "brāhmaṇo 'ham" *ityādy abhināna-purassaram yāg-duu pravartteta ity āśankyōha* "idam ārsham" *iti | atra* "ye yajāmahe" *ity anena cha ye vayam sma brāhmaṇāḥ anye vā te vayam yajāmahe iti brāhmaṇye 'navadhāraṇam darśitam | mantra-lingam api* "ya evāsmi sa san yaje" *iti | . . . Tasmād āchūra eva brāhmaṇya-nīśchayahetur veda-prāmāṇyād ity upasāṁharati* | "As the mode of propagation is common to all the castes, just as speech, etc. are, birth is difficult to be determined. And accordingly, by the words: 'We know not this, whether we are Brāhmans or no Brāhmans,' the Veda signifies a doubt as to Brāhmanhood. Then, having raised the difficulty 'how, if birth is undetermined, can a man engage in sacrifice, etc., with the previous consciousness that he is a Brāhman, etc.?' the author answers in the words 'this text is Vedic. etc.' It is both shewn by the words 'we who . . . recite,' (which mean) 'we, whoever we are,—Brāhmans or others,—we recite,' that the fact of Brāhmanhood is unascertained; and this is also a characteristic of the formula, 'whosoever I am, being he who I am, I recite.'" The comment concludes: "Hence he briefly infers from the authoritative character of the Veda, that conduct is the cause of certainty in regard to Brāhmanhood." Prof. Aufrecht has pointed out to me that the words *ye yajāmahe* occur in S. P. Br. i. 5, 2, 16, and in Taitt. S. i. 16, 11, 1. The Commentator on the last-named passage refers in explanation of them to Asvalāyana's S'ruta Sūtras, i. 5, 4 f., where it is said that these two words constitute the formula called *āguḥ*, which comes in at the beginning of all the *yājyās* which are unaccompanied by any *anuyāya*. The Commentator interprets the two words thus: *surve* "ye" *vayam hotāro 'dhvanyamā* "yaja" *iti pre-shūtās te vayam* "yajāmahe" *yājyām paṭhāmaḥ* | "All we hotri priests who are called upon by the adhvaryu by the word 'recite,' we recite, i.e. repeat the *yājyā*." (See Haug's Ait. Br. ii. p. 133, and note 11) Prof. Aufrecht thinks the words in the Commentator's note *ya evāsmi sa san yaje* may be a free adaptation of Atharva V. vi. 123, 3, 4. It does not appear from what source the words *na chaitad vidmaḥ* etc. are derived.

religious teacher his father (Manu, ii. 170, 225). 12485. Until he is born in the Veda, he is on a level with a Sūdra' (Manu, ii. 172);—so, in this diversity of opinions did Manu Svāyambhuva declare. The castes (though they have done nothing) will have done all they need do,²⁴⁴ if no fixed rules of conduct are observed. In such a case there is considered to be a gross confusion of castes. I have already declared that he is a Brāhman in whom purity of conduct is recognized."

The next passage from the Sāntiparvan, verses 6930 ff., is even more explicit than the last in denying any natural distinction between the people of the different castes:

Bhṛigur urācha | Asṛijad brāhmaṇān evam pūrvam Brahmā prajāpatin | ātma-tejo'bhiniṣṛittān bhāskarāgni-sama-prabhān | tataḥ satyaṁ cha dharmam cha tapo brahma cha śāśvatam | āchāram chaiva śaucaṁ cha svargāya vidadhe prabhuh | deva-dānava-gandharvāṇāṁ daityāsura-mahoragāḥ | yaksha-rākshasa-nāgāś cha piśāchā manujās tathā | brāhmaṇāḥ kṣhattriya vaiśyāḥ śūdrāś cha dvija-sattama | ye chānye bhūta-saṅghānām varṇās tāms chāpi nirmame | brāhmaṇānām siṭo varṇaḥ kṣhattriyaṇām cha lohitaḥ | vaiśyānām pītako varṇaḥ śūdrāṇām asitas tatha | 6935. Bharadvāja urācha | Chāturvarnyasya varṇena yadi varṇo vibhidhyate | sarveshām khalu varṇānām dṛśyate varṇa-saukaraḥ | kāmāḥ krodho bhayaṁ lobhaḥ śokaś chintā kṣudhā śramaḥ | sarveshām naḥ²⁴⁵ prabhavati kasmād varṇo vibhidhyate | sveda-mūtra-purīṣhāṇi śleshmā pittaṁ sa-sonitam | tanuḥ ksharati sarveshām kasmād varṇo vibhajyate | jāṅgamānām asaṁkhyeyāḥ sthāvarānām cha jūṭayāḥ | teshām rividha-varṇānām kuto varṇa-viniśchayaḥ | Bhṛigur urācha | Na viśeṣho 'sti varṇānām sarvam brāhmaṇam idaṁ jagat | Brahmaṇā pūrva spṛiṣṭam hi karmabhir varṇatām gatam | 6940. Kāma-bhoga-priyās tīkṣṇāḥ krodhanāḥ priya-sāhasāḥ |

²⁴⁴ The Commentator thus explains the word *kṛita-kṛitya*: *Kṛita-kṛityāḥ Sūdra-tulyāḥ | tathā cha smṛitih "na sūdre pītakam kinchid na cha saṁskāram arhati" iti t. shām saṁskāra-narhatra-nishpṛīpatvābhidānat kṛita-kṛityatvam darśayati | tadrat trivarnikāḥ api syur ity arthoḥ | "Kṛita kṛityāḥ (lit. having done what was to be done) means, like Sūdras; so the Smṛiti (when it says), 'No sin exists in a Sūdra, nor is he fit for purificatory rites,' shews, by declaring the unfitness of this class for such rites, and its freedom from sin, that it has the character of *kṛita-kṛityatratva*, i.e. of having done all it had to do. And such (in the event supposed) would be the case with men of the three (upper) classes also."*

²⁴⁵ The Calcutta edition reads *na*, "not," which cannot be right. The MS. in the Library of the Edinburgh University has *naḥ*, "of us."

tyakta-svadharmā raktāṅgās te dvijāḥ kshattratām gatāḥ | gobhyo vṛittim samāsthāya pītāḥ kṛishy-upajīvināḥ | sva-dharmān nānutishṭhanti te dvijā vaiśyatām gatāḥ | hīmsānṛita-priyā lubdhāḥ sarva-karmopajīvināḥ | kṛishṇāḥ śaucha-paribhṛshṭās te dvijāḥ śūdratām gatāḥ | ity etaiḥ karmabhir vyastā dvijā varṇāntaram gatāḥ | dharmo yajna-kriyā teshām nityam na pratishidhyate | ity ete chaturō varṇā yeshām brāhmī sarasvati | vīhitā Brahmanā pūrvaṁ lobhāt tv ajnānaitām gatāḥ | 6945. Brāhmaṇā brahma-tantra-sthās²⁴⁶ tapas teshām na naśyati | brahma dhūrayatām nityam vratāni niyamāms tathā | brahma chaiva param śṛishṭām ye na jānanti te 'dvijāḥ | teshām bahucidhās tv anyās tatra tatra hī jātayaḥ | piśāchā rākshasāḥ pretā riviḍhā mlechha-jātayaḥ | pranashṭa-jnāna-vijnānāḥ svachhandāchāra-cheshṭitāḥ | prajā brāhmaṇa-saṁskārāḥ sva-karma-kṛita-nischayāḥ | ṛishibhiḥ svena tapasā śṛijyante chāpare paraiḥ | ādi-deva-samudbhūtā brahma-mūlā 'kshayā 'vyayā | sū śṛishṭir mānasī nāma dharma-tantra-parāyanā | 6950. Bharadvāja uvācha | Brāhmaṇaḥ kena bhacati kshattriyo vā dvijottama | vaiśyaḥ śūdras cha viprarshe tad brāhi vadatām vara | Bhṛiguṛ uvācha | Jata-karmādibhir yas tu saṁskārāiḥ saṁskṛitāḥ śūchiḥ | vedādhyayana-sampannaḥ shatsū karmasv avasthitaḥ | śaucha-chāra-sthitaḥ samyag vighasāsī guru-priyaḥ | nitya-vratī satyaparaḥ sa vai brāhmaṇa uchyate | satyam dānam athādroha ānṛisāmsyam trapā ghrīṇā | tapas cha drīśyate yatra sa brāhmaṇa iti smṛitaḥ | kshattrajam sevate karma vedādhyayana-sangataḥ | dānā-dāna-ratir yas tu sa vai kshattriya uchyate | 6955. Vīśaty āsū paśubhyas cha kṛishy-ādāna-ratiḥ śūchiḥ | vedādhyayana-sampannaḥ sa vaiśyaḥ iti sanjñitāḥ | sarva-bhākshya-ratir nityam sarva-karma-karo 'śūchiḥ | tyakta-vedas tv anāchāraḥ sa vai śūdraḥ iti smṛitaḥ | śūdre chaitad bhavel lakshyam dvije tach cha na vidyate | sa vai śūdro bharech chhūdro brāhmaṇo brāhmaṇo na cha |

“Bhṛigu replied: 6930. ‘Brahmā thus formerly created the Prajāpatis, Brahmanic,²⁴⁷ penetrated by his own energy, and in splendour equalling the sun and fire. The lord then formed truth, righteousness, austere fervour, and the eternal veda (or sacred science), virtuous practice, and purity for (the attainment of) heaven. He also formed the gods, Dānavas, Gandharvas, Daityas, Asuras, Mahoragas, Yakshas,

²⁴⁶ *Brahma tantram* = *vedoktūnushṭhānam* | Comm.

²⁴⁷ *Brāhmaṇān*, “Brāhmans,” is the word employed. It may mean here “sons of Brahmā.”

Rākshasas, Nāgas, Pisāchas, and men, Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, as well as all other classes (*varṇāḥ*) of beings. The colour (*varṇa*) of the Brāhmins was white; that of the Kshattriyas red; that of the Vaiśyas yellow, and that of the Sūdras black.²⁴⁸ 6935. Bharaḍvāja here rejoins: ‘If the caste (*varṇa*) of the four classes is distinguished by their colour (*varṇa*), then a confusion of all the castes is observable. Desire, anger, fear, cupidity, grief, apprehension, hunger, fatigue, prevail over us all: by what, then, is caste discriminated? Sweat, urine, excrement, phlegm, bile, and blood (are common to all); the bodies of all decay: by what then is caste discriminated? There are innumerable kinds of things moving and stationary: how is the class (*varṇa*) of these various objects to be determined?’ Bhṛigu replies: ‘There is no difference of castes:²⁴⁹ this world, having been at first created by Brahmā entirely Brahmanic,²⁵⁰

²⁴⁸ It is somewhat strange, as Professor Weber remarks in a note to p. 215 of his German translation of the Vajra Sūchī, that in the passage of the Kāthaka Brāhmaṇa xi. 6, which he there quotes, a white colour is ascribed to the Vaiśya and a dark hue to the Rājanya. The words are these *Yach chhuklānām (brīhṇām) ādityebhyo nīrapati tasmāch chhukla iva vaiśyo jāyate | yat kṛṣṇānām vīruṇām tasmād dhūma iva vājanyoḥ* | “Since the Vaiśya offers an oblation of white (rice) to the Ādityas, he is born as it were white; and as the Vāruṇa oblation is of black (rice) the Rājanya is as it were dusky.”

²⁴⁹ Compare with this the words attributed in S’antiparvan, verses 2819 ff., to King Muchukunda, who had been reproached by the god Kuvera with trusting for victory to the aid of his domestic priest instead of to his own prowess: *Muchukundas tatoḥ kruddhaḥ pratyuvācha Dhanis̄caram | nyūya-pūtram asaṁrabdham asambhrāntam idaṁ vachāḥ | brahma kshattram idaṁ śṛṣṭam eka-yoni svayambhuvā | prithag-balavīdhānāṁ tanna lokam paripālayet | tapo-mantra-balam nityam brāhmaṇeshu pratishṭhitam | astra-bāhu-balam nityaṁ kshattriyeshu pratishṭhitam | tābhyaṁ sambhūya karttavyam praṇūṇam paripālanaṁ* | “Muchukunda then, incensed, addressed to the Lord of riches these reasonable words, which did not partake of his anger or excitement. ‘Brāhmins and Kshattriyas were created by Brahmā from the same womb (or source) with different forces appointed to them: this cannot (neither of these separate forces can?) protect the world. The force of austere fervour and of sacred texts abides constantly in the Brāhmins; and that of weapons and their own arms in the Kshattriyas. By these two forces combined the people must be protected.”

²⁵⁰ *Brāhman* is the word employed. That it is to be understood in the sense of “Brāhmanical” appears from the following lines in which the word *dvijāḥ* must be taken in the special signification of Brāhmins and not of “twice-born men” (who may be either Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, or Vaiśyas) in general. The Brāhman is considered to have been formed of the essence of Brahmā, and to represent the original type of perfect humanity as it existed at the creation. The Commentator takes the word *brāhman* as = *brāhmaṇa-jātimat*, “having the caste of Brāhmins;” and he explains the different colours mentioned in the next verses as follows—red (*rakta*)

became (afterwards) separated into castes in consequence of works. 6940. Those Brāhmans (*lit.* twice-born men), who were fond of sensual pleasure, fiery, irascible, prone to violence, who had forsaken their duty, and were red-limbed, fell into the condition of Kshattriyas. Those Brāhmans, who derived their livelihood from kine, who were yellow, who subsisted by agriculture, and who neglected to practise their duties, entered into the state of Vaiśyas. Those Brāhmans, who were addicted to mischief and falsehood, who were covetous, who lived by all kinds of work, who were black and had fallen from purity, sank into the condition of Sūdras. Being separated from each other by these works, the Brāhmans became divided into different castes. Duty and the rites of sacrifice have not been always forbidden to (any of) them. Such are the four classes for whom the Brahmanic²⁵¹ Sarasvatī was at first designed by Brahmā, but who through their cupidity fell into ignorance. 6945. Brāhmans live agreeably to the prescriptions of the Veda; while they continually hold fast the Veda, and observances, and ceremonies, their austere fervour (*tapas*) does not perish. And sacred science was created the highest thing: they who are ignorant of it are no twice-born men. Of these there are various other classes in different places, Piśāchas, Rākshasas, Pretas, various tribes of Mlechhas, who have lost all knowledge sacred and profane, and practise whatever observances they please. And different sorts of creatures with the purificatory rites of Brāhmans, and discerning their own duties, are created by different rishis through their own austere fervour. This creation, sprung from the primal god, having its root in Brahma, undecaying, imperishable, is called the mind-born creation, and is devoted to the prescriptions of duty.' 6950. Bharadvāya again enquires: 'What is that in virtue of which a man is a Brāhman, a Kshattriya,

means "formed of the quality of passion" (*rajo-guṇa-maya*); yellow (*pīta*) "formed of the qualities of passion and darkness" (*rajas-tamo-maya*), and black (*kṛishṇa* or *asita*) "formed of darkness only" (*kevala-tamomaya*).

²⁵¹ *Brāhmā*. This word is thus interpreted by the Commentator: *vedamayī | chatur-nām api varṇānām Brahmaṇī pūrvam vhitā | lobha-doshena tu apñatām tamo-bhāvaṁ gatāḥ sūdrāḥ anadhikārīno vede jātāḥ* | "Sarasvatī, consisting of the Veda, was formerly designed by Brahmā for all the four castes, but the Sūdras having through cupidity fallen into 'ignorance,' i.e. a condition of darkness, lost their right to the Veda." See *Indische Studien*, ii. 194, note, where Professor Weber understands this passage to import that in ancient times the Sūdras spoke the language of the Āryas.

a Vaiśya, or a Sūdra; tell me, o most eloquent Brahman rishi.' Bhṛigu replies: 'He who is pure, consecrated by the natal and other ceremonies, who has completely studied the Veda, lives in the practice of the six ceremonies, performs perfectly the rites of purification, who eats the remains of oblations, is attached to his religious teacher, is constant in religious observances, and devoted to truth,—is called a Brāhman. 6953. He in whom are seen truth, liberality, inoffensiveness, harmlessness, modesty, compassion, and austere fervour,—is declared to be a Brāhman. He who practises the duty arising out of the kingly office, who is addicted to the study of the Veda, and who delights in giving and receiving,²⁵²—is called a Kshattriya. 6955. He who readily occupies himself with cattle,²⁵³ who is devoted to agriculture and acquisition, who is pure, and is perfect in the study of the Veda,—is denominated a Vaiśya. 6956. He who is habitually addicted to all kinds of food, performs all kinds of work, who is unclean, who has abandoned the Veda, and does not practise pure observances,—is traditionally called a Sūdra. And this (which I have stated) is the mark of a Sūdra, and it is not found in a Brāhman: (such) a Sūdra will remain a Sūdra, while the Brāhman (who so acts) will be no Brāhman.'²⁵⁴

The passage next to be quoted recognizes, indeed, the existence of castes in the Kṛita age, but represents the members of them all as having been perfect in their character and condition, and as not differing from one another in any essential respects.

It is related in the Vanaparvan that Bhīmasena, one of the Pāndus,

²⁵² *Dānam viprebhyaḥ | ādānam prajabhyah*, "Giving to Brāhmanas, receiving from his subjects."—Comm.

²⁵³ *Paśūn vāṇijyā upayoginah upalabdhvā vīsati pratishṭhām labhate* | "Who perceiving cattle to be useful for trade, 'enters,' obtains a basis (for his operations)." —Comm. As we have seen above p. 97, these etymologies are frequently far-fetched and absurd.

²⁵⁴ On this verse the Commentator annotates as follows: *etat satyūdi-saptakam dṛiḥe trairvarṇike | dharmā eva varṇa-vibhāge kārṇaṁ na jātir ity arthah* | "These seven virtues, beginning with truth (mentioned in verse 6953), exist in the twice-born man of the first three classes. The sense is that righteousness, and not birth, is the cause of the division into classes." This explanation is not very lucid. But the sense seems to be that the seven good qualities referred to are the proper characteristics of the three upper castes, while the defects specified in verse 6956 are the proper distinctive marks of the Sūdras. Thus the Sūdra who has the four defects will remain a Sūdra, but a Brāhman who has them will be no Brāhman.

in the course of a conversation with his brother²⁵⁵ Hanūmat the monkey chief, had requested information on the subject of the Yugas and their characteristics. Hanūmat's reply is given in verses 11234 ff. :

Kṛitaṁ nāma yugam tāta yutra dharmah sanātanaḥ | kṛitaṁ eva na karttavyaṁ tasmin kāle yugottame | na tatra dharmāḥ sīdanti kshīyante na cha vai prajāḥ | tataḥ kṛita-yugam nāma kālena guṇatām gatam | deva-dānava-gandharva-yaksha-rākshasa-pannagāḥ | nāsan kṛita-yuge tāta tadā na kraya-vikrayaḥ²⁵⁶ | na sāma-ṛig-yajur-varṇāḥ²⁵⁷ kriyā nāsich cha mānavi | abhidhyāya phalaṁ tatra dharmah samnyāsa eva cha | na tasmin yuga-saṁsarge vyādhyo nendriya-kshayaḥ | nāsūyā nāpi ruditam na darpo nāpi vaikṛitaṁ²⁵⁸ | na vighrahaḥ²⁵⁹ kutas tundri na dvesho na cha paiśunam | 11240. Na bhayaṁ nāpi santāpo na chershyā na cha matsarah | tataḥ paramakam Brahma sū gatiṛ yoginām parā | ātmā cha sarva-bhūtānām śuklo Nārāyaṇas tadā | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ śūdrāścha kṛita-lakṣhaṇāḥ | kṛite yuge samabhavan sva-karma-nivataḥ prajāḥ | samāśrayaṁ samāchāraṁ sama-jñānaṁ cha kevalam | tadā hi sāmākarmāṇo varṇā dharmān avāpnuvan | eka-deca-sadā-yuktūḥ eka-mantra-vidhi-kriyāḥ | prithagdharmās tv eka-redā dharmam ekam anurataḥ | chāturaśramya-yuktena karmanā kāla-yoginā | 11245. Akūma-phala-saṁyogāt prāpnuranti parām gatiṁ | ātma-yoga-samāyukto dharmo 'yaṁ kṛita-lakṣhaṇaḥ | kṛite yuge chaturśpādās chāturvarnyasya śūśvatoḥ | etat kṛita-yugam nāma traigunya-parivarjītam | tretām api nibodha traṁ tasmin sattram pravarttate | pādāna hrasate dharmo raktatām yāti chāchyutaḥ | satya-pravṛittis cha narāḥ kriyā-dharma-parāyaṇāḥ | tato yajñāḥ pravarttante dharmāścha virūdhāḥ kriyāḥ | tretāyām bhāva-sankalpāḥ kriyā-dāna-phalopagāḥ | prachalanti na vai dharmāt tapo-dāna-parāyaṇāḥ | 11250. Sca-dharma-sthāḥ kriyāvanto narās tretā-yuge 'bhavan | dvāpare tu yuge dharmo drībhūgonah pravarttate | Viśhṇur vai pītātām yāti chaturdhā redā eva cha | tato 'nye cha chatur-redās tri-redās cha tathā pare | dvi-redās chaika-redās chāpy anṛichaś cha tathā pare | evaṁ śāstreshu bhīnneshu bahudhā nīyate kriyā | tapo-dāna-pravṛittā cha rājasi bhavati prajā | eka-redasya chājñānād redās te bahavaḥ

²⁵⁵ Both were sons of Vāyu. See verses 11134, 11169 f. and 11176 f. of this same book. The Rāmāyaṇa is mentioned in verse 11177.

²⁵⁶ The MS. in the Edinburgh University Library reads as the last pāda: *dānadhayava-viśramāḥ*.

²⁵⁷ The Edinburgh MS. reads *redāḥ* instead *varṇāḥ*.

²⁵⁸ *Kapaṭam*—Comm.

²⁵⁹ *Fairam*—Comm.

*kṛitāḥ | sattvasya cheha vibhramśāt satye*²⁶⁰ *kuśchid avasthitāḥ | sattvāt prachyavamānānām ryādhyo baharo 'bhavan | 11255. Kāmās chopadra-rāśchaiva tadā vai daiva-kāritāḥ | yair ardyamānāḥ subhṛīśam tapas tapyanti mānavāḥ | kāmā-kāmāḥ svarga-kāmā yajnāms tanvanti chūpare | evaṁ dvūparam āsādya prajāḥ kshīyanty adharmataḥ | pādenaik-na Kaunteya dharmāḥ kali-yuge sthitāḥ | tāmasaṁ yugam āsādya kṛishṇo bhavati Keśavaḥ | vedāchārāḥ prasāmyanti dharma-yajna-kriyās tathā | itayo ryādhyas trandrī doshāḥ krodhādayās tathā | upadravās cha varttante ādhayah kshud bhayam tathā | yugeshr āvarttamāneshu dharmo vyāvarttite punaḥ | dharme vyāvarttamāne tu loko vyāvarttate punaḥ | loka kshīṇe kshayaṁ yānti bhāvū loka-pravarttakāḥ | yuga-kshaya-kṛitū dharmāḥ prārthanāni vikurvate | etat kaliyugam nāma achirād yat pravarttate | yugānuvarttanaṁ tv etat kurvanti chirajīvināḥ |*

“11234. The Kṛita is that age in which righteousness is eternal. In the time of that most excellent of Yugas (everything) had been done (*kṛita*), and nothing (remained) to be done. Duties did not then languish, nor did the people decline. Afterwards, through (the influence of) time, this yuga fell into a state of inferiority.²⁶¹ In that age there were neither Gods,²⁶² Dānavas, Gandharvas, Yakshas, Rākshasas, nor Pannagas; no buying or selling went on; the Vedas were not classed²⁶³ as Sāman, Rich, and Yajush; no efforts were made by men :²⁶⁴ the fruit (of the earth was obtained) by their mere wish : righteousness and abandonment of the world (prevailed).

²⁶⁰ The Edinburgh MS. reads *sattve* instead of *satye*.

²⁶¹ In thus rendering, I follow the Commentator, whose gloss is this *Mukhyam apy amukhyatām gotam* | “although the chief, it fell into inferiority.” In Bohtlingk and Roth's Lexicon this line is quoted under the word *gunātū*, to which the sense of “superiority, excellence,” is assigned.

²⁶² Compare with this the verses of the Vāyu Purāṇa quoted in p. 90, which state that in the Kṛita age there were neither plants nor animals; which are the products of unrighteousness.

²⁶³ I do not venture to translate “there was then no [division of the Veda into] Sāman, Rich, and Yajush, nor any castes,” (1) because the Edinburgh MS. reads *vedāḥ* instead of *varṇāḥ*, and the Commentator does not allude to the word *varṇāḥ*, and (2) castes (*varṇāḥ*) are referred to below (verses 11242 f) as existing, though without much distinction of character. The Commentator explains : *trayi-dharmasya chitta-suddhy-arthatēṭ tasyaś cha tadānām svabhāvatrēṭ na sūmāṇīy āsan* | “As the object of the triple veda is purity of heart, and as that existed naturally at that period, there were no (divisions of) Sāman, etc.”

²⁶⁴ I follow the Commentator whose gloss is “*Mānavī kriyā*” *kṛishy-ādy-ārambha-bhūta* | *kintu* “*abhidhyāya phalam*,” *sankalpād eva sarvam sampadyate* |

No disease or decline of the organs of sense arose through the influence of the age; there was no malice, weeping, pride, or deceit; no contention, and how could there be any lassitude? no hatred, cruelty, (11240) fear, affliction, jealousy, or envy. Hence the supreme Brahma was the transcendent resort of those Yogins. Then Nārāyaṇa, the soul of all beings, was white.²⁶⁵ Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras possessed the characteristics of the Kṛita.²⁶⁶ In that age were born creatures devoted to their duties. They were alike in the object of their trust, in observances and in their knowledge. At that period the castes, alike in their functions, fulfilled their duties, were unceasingly devoted to one deity, and used one formula (*mantra*), one rule, and one rite. Though they had separate duties, they had but one Veda, and practised one duty.²⁶⁷ By works connected with the four orders, and dependent on conjunctures of time,²⁶⁸ (11245) but unaffected by desire, or (hope of) reward, they attained to supreme felicity. This complete and eternal righteousness of the four castes during the Kṛita was marked by the character of that age and sought after union with the supreme soul. The Kṛita age was free from the three qualities.²⁶⁹ Understand now the Tretā, in which sacrifice commenced,²⁷⁰ righteousness decreased by a fourth, Vishnu became red;

²⁶⁵ In verse 12981 of this same Vanaparvan the god says of himself *śvetaḥ kṛita-yuge varṇaḥ pītaḥ tretāyuge mama | rakto dvāparam āsādyā kṛishṇaḥ kali-yuge tathā |* "My colour in the Kṛita age is white, in the Tretā yellow, when I reach the Dvāpara it is red, and in the Kali black."

²⁶⁶ The Commentator's gloss is: *kṛitāni svataḥ siddhāni lakṣaṇāni sāma damaś tapa ity-ādāni yeshāṃ te |* "They were men whose characteristics, tranquillity, etc., were effected, spontaneously accomplished." On verse 11245 he explains the same term *kṛita-lakṣaṇaḥ* by *kṛita-yuga-sūchakaḥ*, "indicative of the Kṛita age."

²⁶⁷ The different clauses of this line can only be reconciled on the supposition that the general principle of duty, and the details of the duties are distinguished. *Dharma* is the word used in both parts of the verse for "duty."

²⁶⁸ *Kāla-yoginā*. The Commentator explains *kālo darśadīḥ | tad-yuktena |* "connected with time, i. e. the appearance of the new moon, etc."

²⁶⁹ And yet we are told in the Vāyu P. that the creation itself proceeded from the influence of the quality of passion (see above, p. 75), and that the four castes when originally produced were characterized in different ways by the three qualities, pp. 62 and 89.

²⁷⁰ Compare S'ānti-parva, 13088 *Idam kṛita-yugaṃ nāma kālāḥ śreṣṭhāḥ pravartitāḥ | ahīṃsyā yajna-paśavo yuge'smin na tad anyathā | chaturhpāt sakalo dharmo bhaviṣhyaty atra vai surāḥ | tatas tretā-yugaṃ nāma trayī yatra bhaviṣhyati | prokṣhitā yatra paśavo budham prāpsyanti vai makhe |* "This Kṛita age is the most excellent of periods: then victims are not allowed to be slaughtered; complete and

and men adhered to truth, and were devoted to a righteousness dependent on ceremonies. Then sacrifices prevailed, with holy acts and a variety of rites. In the Tretā men acted with an object in view, seeking after reward for their rites and their gifts, and no longer disposed to austerities and to liberality from (a simple feeling of) duty. 11250. In this age, however, they were devoted to their own duties, and to religious ceremonies. In the Dvāpara age righteousness was diminished by two quarters, Vishṇu became yellow, and the Veda fourfold. Some studied four Vedas, others three, others two, others one, and some none at all.²⁷¹ The scriptures being thus divided, ceremonies were celebrated in a great variety of ways; and the people being occupied with austerity and the bestowal of gifts, became full of passion (*rājasī*). Owing to ignorance of the one Veda, Vedas were multiplied. And now from the decline of goodness (*sattva*) few only adhered to truth. When men had fallen away from goodness, many diseases, (11255) desires and calamities, caused by destiny, assailed them, by which they were severely afflicted, and driven to practice austerities. Others desiring enjoyments and heavenly bliss, offered sacrifices. Thus, when they had reached the Dvāpara, men declined through unrighteousness. In the Kali righteousness remained to the extent of one-fourth only. Arrived in that age of darkness, Vishṇu became black: practices enjoined by the Vedas, works of righteousness, and rites of sacrifice, ceased. Calamities, diseases, fatigue, faults, such as anger, etc., distresses, anxiety, hunger, fear, prevailed. As the ages revolve, righteousness again declines. When this takes place, the people also decline. When they decay, the impulses which actuate them also decay. The practices generated by this declension of the Yugas frustrate men's aims. Such is the Kali Yuga which has existed for a short time. Those who are long-lived act in conformity with the character of the age."

The next passage from the same book (the Vana-parvan) does not make any allusion to the Yugas, but depicts the primeval perfection of mankind with some traits peculiar to itself, and then goes on to describe their decline. Mārkaṇdeya is the speaker.

perfect righteousness will prevail. Next is the Tretā in which the triple veda will come into existence; and animals will be slain in sacrifice." See note 65, page 39, above.

²⁷¹ The Commentator explains *anrichas* ("without the Rig-veda") by *kṛita-kṛityāḥ*. On the sense of the latter word see above.

12619. *Nirmalāni śarīrāṇi viśuddhāni śarīrīṇām | sasarja dharmatantrāṇi pūrvotpannaḥ Prajāpatiḥ | amogha-phala-sankalpāḥ surratāḥ satyavādīnaḥ | brahma-bhūtā narāḥ puṇyāḥ purāṇāḥ kuru-sattama | sarve devaiḥ samāḥ yānti svachhandena nabhas-talam | tataś cha punar āyānti sarve svachhanda-chārīnaḥ | svachhanda-maraṇās chāsan narāḥ svachhanda-chārīnaḥ | alpa-bādhā nirātankāḥ siddhārthā nirupadravāḥ | drash-tāro deva-sanghānām rishīṇām cha mahātmanām | pratyakṣāḥ sarva-dharmāṇām dāntā vigata-matsarāḥ | āsan varsha-sahasrīyās tathā putra-sahasrīnaḥ |* 12625. *Tataḥ kālāntare 'nyasmin prithivī-tala-chārīnaḥ | kāma-krodhādhibhūtās te māyā-ryājopajīvināḥ | lobha-mohābhibhūtās te saktā dehaiḥ tato narāḥ | aśubhaiḥ karmabhiḥ pāpās tiryāṇ-niraya-gūṇīnaḥ |*

“The first-born Prajāpati formed the bodies of corporeal creatures pure, spotless, and obedient to duty. The holy men of old were not frustrated in the results at which they aimed; they were religious, truth-speaking, and partook of Brahma’s nature. Being all like gods they ascended to the sky and returned at will. They died too when they desired, suffered few annoyances, were free from disease, accomplished all their objects, and endured no oppression. Self-subdued and free from envy, they beheld the gods²⁷² and the mighty rishis, and had an intuitive perception of all duties.²⁷³ They lived for a thousand years, and had each a thousand sons. Then at a later period of time, the in-

²⁷² See the passage from S’ankara’s Commentary on the Brahma Sūtras i. 3. 32, in the 3rd vol. of this work, pp. 49 f., and note 49 in p. 95; and S’atapatha Brāhmaṇa, ii. 3, 4, 4, *ubhaye ha vai idm agre saha āsur devās cha manushyās cha | tad yad ha sma manushyāṇāṁ na bhavati tad ha devān yāchante “idaṁ vai no nīsti vāṁ no 'str” iti | te tasyai eva yāchanyāyai dvesheṇa devās tirobhūtā “na id himasūni na id dvesho 'sāni” iti |* “Gods and men, together, were both originally (component parts of) this world. Whatever men had not they asked from the gods, saying, ‘We have not this; let us have it.’ From dislike of this solicitation the gods disappeared, (saying each of them) ‘let me not hurt (them), let me not be hateful.’” Compare also the passage of the S. P. Br. iii. 6, 2, 26, referred to by Professor Weber in Indische Studien, x. 158 *Te ha sma ete ubhaye deva-manushyāḥ pitarah sampibante | sū eṣhā sampī | te ha sma drīḡyamānā eva purā sampibante va etarhy adīḡyamānāḥ |* “Both gods, men, and fathers drink together. This is their symposium. Formerly they drank together visibly now they do so unseen.” Compare also Plato, Philebus, 18. *Kaί οἱ μὲν παλαιοί, κρείττονες ἡμῶν καὶ ἐγγυτέρω θεῶν οἰκοῦντες, ταυτην φημὴν παρέδοσαν,* “And the ancients who were better than ourselves, and dwelt nearer to the gods, have handed down this tradition.”

²⁷³ Compare the passage of the Nukta, i. 20, beginning, *sāksāt-kṛita-dharmāṇa rishayo babhūvuh*, quoted in the 2nd vol. of this work, p. 174.

habitants of the earth became subject to desire and anger, and subsisted by deceit and fraud. Governed by cupidity and delusion, devoted to carnal pursuits, sinful men by their evil deeds walked in crooked paths leading to hell," etc., etc.

At the end of the chapter of the Bṛishmaparvan, entitled *Jambū-khaṇḍa-nirmāṇa*, there is a paragraph in which Sanjaya gives an account of the four yugas in Bhāratavarsha (Hindustan), and of the condition of mankind during each of those periods. After stating the names and order of the yugas, the speaker proceeds :

389. *Chatvāri tu sahasrāṇi varshāṇāṃ Kuru-sattama | āyuh-sankhyā
kṛita-yuge sankhyātā rāja-sattama | tathā trīṇi sahasrāṇi tretāyām ma-
nujādhipa | dve sohasre drāpare cha bhūri tishṭhanti sāmpratam | na
pramāṇa-sthitir hy asti tishye 'smin Bharatarshabha | garbha-sthās cha
mriyante cha tathā jātā mriyanti cha | mahābalā mahāsattvāḥ prajā-
guṇa-samanvitāḥ | prajāyante cha jātās cha śataśo 'tha sahasraśaḥ | jātāḥ
kṛita-yuge rājan dhaninaḥ priya-darśinaḥ | prajāyante cha jātās cha mu-
nayo vai tapodhanāḥ | mahotsāhāḥ mahātmāno dhārmikāḥ satya-vādinaḥ |
priyadarśanā vapusmānto mahāvīryā dhanurdharāḥ | varārhā yudhi jā-
yante kshattriyāḥ śūru-sattamāḥ | tretāyām kshattriyā rājan surve vai
chakravarttinaḥ | āyushmanto mahāvīrā dhanurdhara-varā yudhi | jāyante
kshattriyā vīrās tretāyām vāsa-varttinaḥ | surve varṇā mahārāja jāyante
drāpare sati | mahotsāhā vīryavantaḥ paraspāra-jayaishinaḥ | tejasū
'lpena saṃyuktāḥ krodhanāḥ puruṣā nṛipa | lubdhā anṛitakūś chaiva
tishye jāyanti Bhārata | īrṣhā mānas tathā krodho māyā 'sūyā tathaiva
cha | tishye bhārati bhūtānāṃ rāgo lobhas cha Bhārata | sankshēpo vart-
rājan dvāpare 'smin narādhipa |*

"389. Four thousand years are specified as the duration of life in the Kṛita age,²⁷¹ three thousand in the Tretā, and two thousand form the period at present established on earth in the Dvāpara. There is no fixed measure in the Tishya (Kali): embryos die in the womb, as well as children after their birth. Men of great strength, goodness, wisdom, and virtue were born, and born too in hundreds and thousands. In the Kṛita age men were produced opulent and beautiful, as well as munis rich in austere fervour. Energetic, mighty, righteous, voracious, beautiful, well-formed, valorous, bow-carrying, (395) heroic Kshattriyas,

²⁷¹ See above, p. 91, note 171

distinguished in battle, were born.²⁷⁵ In the Tretā all sovereigns were Kshatriyas. Heroic Kshatriyas were born in the Tretā, long-lived, great warriors, carrying bows in the fight, and living subject to authority. During the Dvāpara all castes are produced, energetic, valorous, striving for victory over one another. In the Tishya age are born men of little vigour, irascible, covetous, and mendacious. During that period, envy, pride, anger, delusion, ill-will, desire, and cupidity prevail among all beings. During this Dvāpara age there is some restriction.”

As it is here stated that men of all castes were born in the Dvāpara, while Brāhman and Kshatriyas only are spoken of as previously existing, it is to be presumed that the writer intends to intimate that no Vaiśyas or Sūdras existed during the Kṛita and Tretā ages. This accords with the account given in the passage quoted above from the Uttara Kānda of the Rāmāyaṇa, chapter 74, as well as with other texts which will be quoted below.

The following verses might be taken for a rationalistic explanation of the traditions regarding the yugas; but may be intended as nothing more than a hyperbolical expression of the good or bad effects of a king's more or less active discharge of his duties:

Sānti-parva, 2674. *Kālo vā kāraṇam rājñ rājā vā kāla-kāraṇam | iti te saṁśayo mā bhūd rājā kālasya kāraṇam | daṇḍa-nītyām yadā rājā samyak kārtsnyena varttate | tadā kṛita-yugam nāma kāla-sṛiṣṭham pravarttate | 2682. Daṇḍa-nītyām yadā rājā trīṇ aṁśān anuvarttate | chaturtham aṁśam utsṛījya tadā tretā pravarttate | 2684. Ardhaṁ tyaktvā yadā rājā nīty-artham anuvarttate | tatas tu dvāparaṁ nāma sa kālaḥ sampravarttate | 2686. Daṇḍa-nītim parityajya yadā kārtsnyena bhūmipah | prajāḥ kliśnāty ayogena pravartteta tadā kaliḥ | 2693. Rājā kṛita-yuga-sraśṭhā tretāyā drāparaśya cha | yugasya cha chaturthasya rājā bhavati kāraṇam |*

“2674. The time is either the cause of the king, or the king is the cause of the time. Do not doubt (which of these alternatives is true): the king is the cause of the time. When a king occupies himself fully in criminal justice, then the Kṛita age, brought into existence by time,

²⁷⁵ It does not appear clearly whether we are to suppose them to have been produced in the Kṛita, or in the Tretā, as in the passage of the Rāmāyaṇa, quoted in page 119.

prevails." [Then follows a description of the results of such good government: righteousness alone is practised; prosperity reigns; the seasons are pleasant and salubrious; longevity is universal; no widows are seen; and the earth yields her increase without cultivation.] "2682. When the king practises criminal justice only to the extent of three parts, abandoning the fourth, then the Tretā prevails." [Then evil is introduced to the extent of a fourth, and the earth has to be tilled.] "2684. When the king administers justice with the omission of a half, then the period called the Dvāpara prevails." [Then evil is increased to a half, and the earth even when tilled yields only half her produce.] "2686. When, relinquishing criminal law altogether, the king actively oppresses his subjects, then the Kali age prevails." [Then the state of things, which existed in the Kṛita age, is nearly reversed.] "2693. The king is the creator of the Kṛita, Tretā, and Dvāpara ages, and the cause also of the fourth yuga."

The next extract is on the same subject of the duties of a king, and on the yugas as forms of his action (see Manu, ix. 301, quoted above, p. 49):

Sānti-parvan, 3406. *Karma śūdre kṛishir vaiśye dandā-nītiś cha rājani | brahmacharyyaṁ tapo mantrāḥ satyaṁ chūpi dijātishu | teshāṁ yaḥ kshattriyo veda vastrāṇāṁ iva śodhanam*²⁷⁶ | *śīla-doshān vinirharttum sa pītā sa prajāpatiḥ | kṛitaṁ tretā dvāparaṁ cha kaliś Bharatarshabha | rāja-rīttāni sarvāni rājaiḥ yugam uchyate | chāturvārṇyaṁ tathā vedāś chāturāśramyaṁ eva cha | sarvaṁ pramuhyate hy etad yadā rājā pramādyati |*

"3406. Labour (should be found) in a Sūdra, agriculture in a Vaiśya, criminal justice in a King, continence, austere fervour, and the use of sacred texts in a Brāhman. The Kshattriya, who knows how to separate their good and bad qualities, (as (a washerman) understands the cleansing of clothes), is a father and lord of his subjects. The Kṛita, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali, are all modes of a King's action. It is a King who is called by the name of Yuga. The four castes, the Vedas, and the four orders, are all thrown into disorder when the king is regardless."

²⁷⁶ This comparison is more fully expressed in a preceding verse (3404). *Yo na jayāti nirhartuṁ vastrāṇāṁ rajako malam | raktānāṁ vā śodhayituṁ yathā nāsti to'haiva śāḥ |*

In two of the preceding passages different colours are represented as characteristic either of particular castes (Śānti-p. verses 6934 ff.), or of particular yugas (Vana-p. verses 11241 ff.). Colours (though not ranked in the same order of goodness) are similarly connected with moral and physical conditions in verses 10058 ff. of the Śāntiparvan, of which I shall offer a few specimens :

Shad jīva-varṇāḥ paramam pramāṇam kṛiṣṇo dhūmro nīlam athāsya madhyam | raktam punaḥ sohyataram sukham tu hāridra-varṇam susu-kham cha śuklam | parantu śuklam vimalam viśokam gata-klamam sid-dhyati dānavendra | gatvā tu yoni-prabhavāni daitya sahasraśaḥ siddhim upaiti jīvaḥ | 10060. *Gatiḥ punar varṇa-kṛitā prajānām varṇas tathā kāla-kṛito 'surendra |* 10062. *Kṛiṣṇasya varṇasya gatiḥ nikṛiṣṭā sa sajate narake pachyamānaḥ |*

“ 10058. Six colours of living creatures are of principal importance, black, dusky, and blue which lies between them; then red is more tolerable, yellow is happiness, and white is extreme happiness. White is perfect, being exempted from stain, sorrow, and exhaustion; (pos-sessed of it) a being going through (various) births, arrives at perfection in a thousand forms. 10060. Thus destination is caused by colour, and colour is caused by time. 10062. The destination of the black colour is bad. When it has produced its results, it clings to hell.”

The next passage, from the Harivaṇśa, assigns to each of the four castes a separate origin, but at the same time gives an explanation of their diversity which differs from any that we have yet encountered : unless, indeed, any one is prepared to maintain that the four principles, out of which the castes are here represented to have arisen, are respec-tively identical with the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet of Brahmā ! This passage, however, corresponds with one of those already quoted in associating different colours with the several castes. The question with which the passage opens refers to an account which had been given in the preceding section (verses 11799 ff.) of the creation of Bhṛigu and Angiras, to both of whom the epithet “ progenitor of Brāh-mans ” (*brahma-varṇa-kara*) is applied. No mention is made there of Kshattriyas or any other castes. M. Langlois, the French translator of the Harivaṇśa, remarks that the distinction between the age of the Brāhmanas and that of the Kshattriyas is an unusual one, and receives

no explanation in the context. But in two of the passages which have been quoted above (1) from the Uttara Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, chapter 74 (p. 119), and (2) from the Bhīṣma-parva of the Mahābhārata, verses 393 ff. (p. 149), I think we find indications that the Kṛita Yuga was regarded as an age in which Brāhman alone existed, and that Kshattriyas only began to be born in the Tretā.

Harivaṁśa, 11808. *Janameya uvācha | Śrutam brahma-yugam brahman yugānām prathamam yugam | kshattrasyāpi yugam brahman śrotum ichhāmi tattvataḥ | asaṁskṣhepaṁ savistarāṁ nīyamaiḥ bahubhīḥ chitam | upāya-jnaiḥ cha kathitaṁ kratubhīḥ chopasobhitam | Vaiśampāyana uvācha |* 11810. *Etat te kathayishyāmi yajna-karmabhir architam | dāna-dharmais cha rividhaiḥ prajābhir upasobhitam | te 'ngushṭha-mātrā munayaḥ ādattāḥ sūrya-raśmibhiḥ | moksha-prāptena vidhinā nirābādhenā karmaṇā | pravṛtte chāpravṛtte cha nityam Brahma-parāyanāḥ | parāyanasya saṅgamyā Brahmanas tu mahīpate | śrī-vṛttāḥ pāvanās chaiva brāhmanās cha mahīpate | chārīta-brahmacharyyās cha brahmanānena bodhitāḥ | pūrṇe yuga-sahasrānte prabhāve pralayāṁ gatāḥ | brāhmanā vṛtṭa-sampannā jñāna-siddhāḥ samāhitāḥ |* 11815. *Vyatiriktendriyo Viṣṇur yogōtmā brahma-sambhavaḥ | Dakṣaḥ prajāpatir bhūtvā srijate vipulāḥ prajāḥ | akṣarād brāhmanāḥ saumyāḥ kṣharāt kshattriya-bāndhavaḥ | vaiśyā vikārataḥ chaiva śūdrāḥ dhūma-vikārataḥ | śveta-lohitakair varnaiḥ pitair nīlaiḥ cha brāhmanāḥ | abhinirvartitāḥ varṇāmś chintayānena Viṣṇunā | tato varṇatvam āpannāḥ prajā loka chaturvidhāḥ | brāhmanāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyāḥ śūdrās chaiva mahīpate | eka-lingāḥ prithag-dhormā dvipādāḥ paramādbhutāḥ | yūtanayā 'bhisampannā gati-jnāḥ sarva-karmasu | trayāṇām varṇa-jātānām veda-proktāḥ kriyāḥ smṛitāḥ | tena brāhmaṇa-yogena vaiṣṇavena mahīpate | prajṇayā tejasū yogāt tasmāt Prācetasah prabhuh | Viṣṇur eva mahāyogī karmaṇām antaraṁ gataḥ | tato nirtāṇa-sambhūtāḥ śūdrāḥ karma-vivarjitāḥ | tasmād nārḥanti saṁskāram na hy atra brahma vidyate | yathā 'gnau dhūma-saṅghāto hy aranyā mathyamānayā | prādurbhūto visarpan vai nopayujyati karmaṇi | evaṁ śūdrā visarpanto bhūvi kūrṣṇyena janmanā | na saṁskṛitena²⁷⁷ dharmena veda-proktena karmaṇā |*

“Janamejaya says: 11808. I have heard, o Brāhman, the (description of the) Brahma Yuga, the first of the ages. I desire also to be accurately informed, both summarily and in detail, about the age of the

²⁷⁷ The printed text reads *nūsaṁskṛitena*; but *na saṁskṛitena* seems necessary.

Kshattriyas, with its numerous observances, illustrated as it was by sacrifices, and described as it has been by men skilled in the art of narration. Vaisampāyana replied: 11810. I shall describe to you that age revered for its sacrifices and distinguished for its various works of liberality, as well as for its people. Those Munis of the size of a thumb had been absorbed by the sun's rays. Following a rule of life leading to final emancipation, practising unobstructed ceremonies, both in action and in abstinence from action constantly intent upon Brahma, united to Brahma as the highest object,—Brāhmans glorious and sanctified in their conduct, leading a life of continence, disciplined by the knowledge of Brahma,—Brāhmans complete in their observances, perfect in knowledge, and contemplative,—when at the end of a thousand yugas, their majesty was full, these Munis became involved in the dissolution of the world. 11815. Then Vishṇu sprung from Brahma, removed beyond the sphere of sense, absorbed in contemplation, became the Prajāpati Daksha, and formed numerous creatures. The Brāhmans, beautiful (or, dear to Soma),²⁷⁸ were formed from an imperishable (*akshara*), the Kshattriyas from a perishable (*kshara*), element, the Vaiśyas from alteration, the Sūdras from a modification of smoke. While Vishṇu was thinking upon the castes (*varṇān*), Brāhmans were formed with white, red, yellow, and blue colours (*varṇaiḥ*).²⁷⁹ Hence in the world men have become divided into castes, being of four descriptions, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, one in form, distinct in their duties, two-footed, very wonderful, full of energy(?), skilled in expedients in all their occupations. 11820. Rites are declared to be prescribed by the Vedas for the three (highest) castes. By that contemplation practised by the being sprung from Brahma (see v. 11815)—by that practised in his character as Vishṇu,—the Lord Prāchetasa (Daksha), *i.e.* Vishṇu the great contemplator (*yogin*), passed through his wisdom and energy from that state of meditation into the sphere of works.²⁸⁰ Next the Sūdras, produced from extinction, are destitute

²⁷⁸ In verse 11802, we read *abhishichya tu Somañ cha yauvarājye Pitāmahaḥ | brāhmaṇānām cha rājānañ sūsvatañ rajonī-charam* | “Brahmā also inaugurated Soma as the heir to the kingdom, as the king of the Brāhmans who walks eternally through the night.”

²⁷⁹ This play upon the two senses of the word *varṇa* will be noticed.

²⁸⁰ I do not profess to be certain that I have succeeded in discovering the proper meaning of this last sentence.

of rites. Hence they are not entitled to be admitted to the purificatory ceremonies, nor does sacred science belong to them. Just as the cloud of smoke which rises from the fire on the friction of the fuel, and is dissipated, is of no service in the sacrificial rite, so too the Sūdras wandering over the earth, are altogether (useless for purposes of sacrifice) owing to their birth, their mode of life devoid of purity and their want of the observances prescribed in the Veda."

The next extract gives an account at variance with all that precedes, as it does not assign to all the Brāhmans themselves the same origin, but describes the various kinds of officiating priests as having been formed from different members of Vishṇu's body :

Harivaṁśa, 11355. *Evam ekārṇave bhūte śete loke mahādyutiḥ | prachhādyā saliloṁ sarvāṁ Harir Nārāyaṇaḥ prabhuh | mahatto rajaso madhye mahārṇava-samasya vai | virajasko mahābāhor aksharam brāhmaṇā viduḥ | ātma-rūpa-prakāśena topasā saṁvṛitaḥ prabhuh | trikam āchhādyā kālāṁ tu tataḥ sushvāpa sas tadā | puruṣho yajña ity evaṁ yat param parikīrtitaṁ | yach chānyat puruṣākhyāṁ tu tat sarvaṁ puruṣottamaḥ | ye cha yajnaparā viprā ṛitvijā iti saṁjñitāḥ | ātma-dehāt purā bhūtā yajnebhyaḥ śrūyatām tadā |* 11360. *Brahmāṇam paramaṁ vaktrād udgātāraṁ cha sāma-gāṁ | hotāraṁ aṭha chādhravyūṁ bāhubhyām asṛijāt prabhuh | brāhmāṇo brāhmaṇatvāch cha prastotāraṁ cha sarvaśaḥ | tam maitravaruṇam spīṣṭvā pratīṣṭhātāraṁ eva cha | udarāt pratiharttāraṁ potāraṁ chaiva Bhārata | achhāvākam atherubhyām neshtāraṁ chaiva Bhārata | pāṇibhyām athachāgnīdhram brahmaṇyaṁ chaiva yajñiyam | grārāṇam aṭha bāhubhyām unnetāraṁ cha yājñikam | evam evaisha bhagavān shodaśaitān jagatpatih | pravaktrīn sarva-yajñānām ṛitvijo 'sṛijāt uttamān | tad esha vai yajñamayāḥ puruṣo veda-saṁjñitāḥ | vedās cha tanmayāḥ sarve sāṅgopanishada-kriyāḥ |*

Vaisampāyana said : 1135. "Thus the glorious Lord Hari Nārāyaṇa, covering the entire waters, slept on (the world) which had become one sea, in the midst of the vast expanse of fluid²⁵¹ (*rajas*), resembling a mighty ocean, himself free from passion (*virajaskaḥ*), with mighty arms:—Brāhmans know him as the undecaying. Invested through austere fervour with the light of his own form, and clothed with triple time (past, present, and future), the Lord then slept. Purushottama

²⁵¹ *Rajas* is said in two places of the Nirukta, iv. 19, and v. 44, to have the sense of "water."

(Vishnu) is whatever is declared to be the highest, Purusha the sacrifice, and everything else which is known by the name of Purusha. Hear how the Brāhmanas devoted to sacrifice, and called *ritvijes*, were formerly produced by him from his own body for offering sacrifices. 11360. The Lord created from his mouth the brāhman, who is the chief, and the udgātri, who chaunts the Sāman; from his arms the hotri and the adhvaryu. He then . . . ²⁸² created the prastotri, the maitrāvaruṇa, and the pratishthātri; from his belly the pratiharttri and the potri, from his thighs the achhāvāka and the neshttri, from his hands the agnīdhra and the sacrificial brahmanya, from his arms the grāvan and the sacrificial unnetri. Thus did the divine Lord of the world create these sixteen excellent ritvijes, the utterers of all sacrifices. Therefore this Purusha is formed of sacrifice and is called the Veda; and all the Vedas with the Vedāngas, Upanishads, and ceremonies, are formed of his essence."

SECT. XII.—*Extracts from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa on the same subject.*

I will conclude my quotations from the Purāṇas on the subject of the origin of mankind and of castes with a few passages from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa. The first extract reproduces some of the ideas of the Purusha Sūkta²⁸³ more closely than any of the Puranic accounts yet given.

ii. 5, 34. *Varsha-pūga-sahasrānte tad aṇḍam udake śayam | kālākarma-svabhāva-stho jīvo 'jīvam ajīrayat |* 35. *Sa eva Purushas tasmād aṇḍam nirbhedyā nirgataḥ | sahasrorv-anghri-bāhr-akṣaḥ sahasrānana-śīrshavān |* 36. *Yasyachāyavair lokān kalpayanti manūṣiṇaḥ | katy-*

²⁸² I am unable to make a proper sense out of the words *brahmano brāhmaṇatāch cha*, which, however, as I learn from Dr. FitzEdward Hall, are found (with only a difference of long and short vowels) in the best MSS. to which he has access, as well as in the Bombay edition. One of the sixteen priests, the Brāhmaṇāchhaṇsin, is not found in the enumeration, and his name may therefore have stood at the beginning of the line. Instead of the inept reading *sarvaśaḥ*, at the end, the author may perhaps have written *vakṣaśaḥ*, "from his chest," as, indeed, one MS. reads in the next line. The Bombay edition reads *prishthāt*, "from the back," instead of *śrīṣṭvā*.

²⁸³ M. Burnouf remarks in the Preface to the first vol. of his edition of the Bhāgavata, pp. cxxii. ff., on the manner in which its author has gone back to Vedic sources for his materials. The same thing is noticed by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, i. 286, note.

ādibhir adhaḥ sapta saptordhvaṁ jaghanādibhiḥ | 37. *Purushasya mukham brahma kshatram etasya bāhavaḥ* | *ūrur vaiśyo bhagavataḥ padbhyāṁ śūdro vyaḥyāyuta* | 38. *Bhūlokaḥ kalpitah padbhyām bhuvarloko 'sya nābhitaḥ* | *hṛidā svarloka urasā maharloko mahātmanah* |

“34. At the end of many thousand years the living soul which resides in time, action, and natural quality gave life to that lifeless egg floating on the water. 35. Purusha then having burst the egg, issued from it with a thousand thighs, feet, arms, eyes, faces, and heads. 36. With his members the sages fashion the worlds, the seven lower worlds with his loins, etc., and the seven upper worlds with his groin, etc. 37. The Brāhman (was) the mouth of Purusha, the Kshattriya his arms, the Vaiśya was born from the thighs, the Sūdra from the feet of the divine being. The earth was formed from his feet, the air from his navel; the heaven by the heart, and the maharloka by the breast of the mighty one.”

In the following verse the figurative character of the representation is manifest :

ii. 1, 37. *Brahmānanaṁ kshattra-bhūjo mahātmā vid-ūrur anghri-śrita-kṛishṇa-varṇah* |

“The Brāhman is his mouth; he is Kshattriya-armed, that great One, Vaiśya-thighed, and has the black caste abiding in his feet.”

The next passage is more in accord with the ordinary representation, though here, too, the mystical view is introduced at the close :

iii. 22, 2. *Brahmā 'srījat sa-mukhato yushmān ātma-parīpsayā* | *chhandomayas tapo-vidyā-yoga-yuktān alampātān* | 3. *Tat-trāṇyā-srījach chāsmān doḥ-sahasrāt sahasra-pāt* | *hṛidayāṁ tasya hi brahma kshattram angam prachakshate* |

“Brahmā, who is formed of the Veda (*chhandas*), with a view to the recognition of himself, created you (the Brāhmans) who are characterized by austere fervour, science, devotion and chastity, from his mouth. For their protection he, the thousand-footed, created us (the Kshattriyas) from his thousand arms: for they declare the Brāhman to be his heart, and the Kshattriya his body.”

iii. 6, 29 ff. contains another reference to the production of the castes :

29. *Mukhato 'varttata brahma Purushasya Kurūdvaha* | *yastūn-mukhatvād varṇānām mukhyo 'bhūd brāhmaṇo guruḥ* | 30. *Bāhubhyo 'varttata kshattram kshattriyas tad-anuvrataḥ* | *yo jātos trāyate varṇān*

paurushaḥ kaṇṭaka-kshatāt | 31. Viśo 'varttanta tasyorvor loka-vṛtti-karīr vibhoḥ | vaiśyas tad-udbhavo vārttām nṛiṇām yaḥ samavarttayāt | 32. Padbhyām bhagavato jajñe śuśrūṣhā dharmā-siddhaye | tasyām jātāḥ purā śūdro yad-vṛittyā tushyate Hariḥ | 33. Ete varṇāḥ sva-dharmena yajanti sva-guruṁ Hariṁ | śraddhayā 'tma-viśuddhyartham yaj jātāḥ saha vṛittibhiḥ |

"29. From the mouth of Purusha, o descendant of Kuru, issued divine knowledge (*brahma*), and the Brāhman, who through his production from the mouth became the chief of the castes and the preceptor. 30. From his arms issued kingly power (*kshattrā*), and the Kshattriya devoted to that function, who, springing from Purusha, as soon as born defends the castes from the injury of enemies. 31. From the thighs of the Lord issued the arts,²⁵⁴ affording subsistence to the world; and from them was produced the Vaiśya who provided the maintenance of mankind. 32. From the feet of the divine Being sprang service for the fulfilment of duty. In it the Sūdra was formerly born, with whose function Hari is well satisfied. By fulfilling their own duties, with faith, for the purification of their souls, these castes worship Hari their parent, from whom they have sprung together with their functions."

In viii. 5, 41, we find the following:

Vipro mukhād brahma cha yasya guhyaṁ rājanya āsīd bhujayor balaṁ cha | ūrvor viḍ ojo 'nghrir aveda-śūdrau prasīdatām naḥ sa mahā-vibhūtiḥ |

"May that Being of great glory be gracious to us, from whose mouth sprang the Brāhman and the mysterious Veda, from whose arms came the Rājanya and force, from whose thighs issued the Viś and energy, and whose foot is no-veda (*aveda*) and the Sūdra."

The same work gives the following very brief account of the *Arvāk-srotas* creation, which is described with somewhat more detail in the passages extracted above from the Vishṇu and Vāyu Purāṇas:

iii. 20, 25. *Arvāk-srotas tu navamaḥ kshattr eka-viḍho nṛiṇām | rajo 'dhikāḥ karma-parāḥ duḥkhe cha sukha-māninaḥ |*

²⁵⁴ The word so rendered is *viśaḥ*, which in the hymns of the Rīg-veda has always the sense of "people." Here, however, it seems to have the sense assigned in the text, if one may judge from the analogy of the following verse, in which the Sūdra is said to be produced from his special function, *śuśrūṣhā*, "service." The Commentator explains *viśaḥ* = *krishy-ādi-vyava-āyāḥ*, "the professions of agriculture," etc.

"The Arvaksrotas creation was of one description,²⁸⁵ viz., of men, in whom the quality of passion abounded, who were addicted to works, and imagined that in pain they experienced pleasure."

In vi. 6, 40, a new account is given of the origin of mankind. We are there told :

Aryamaṇo Mātṛikā patnī tayoś Charshaṇayah sutāḥ | yatra vai mānushī jātir Brahmanā chopakalpītā |

"The wife of Aryaman (the son of Aditi) was Mātṛikā. The Charshaṇis were the sons of this pair, and among them the race of men was formed by Brahmā." The word *charshaṇi* signifies "men," or "people" in the Veda.

In the following verse (which forms part of the legend of Purūravas, quoted in the 3rd vol. of this work, pp. 27 ff.) it is declared that in the Kṛita age there was only one caste :

ix. 14, 48. *Eka eva purā vedaḥ praṇavaḥ sarva-vāñmayah | devo Nārāyaṇo nānya eko 'gnir varṇa eva cha | Purūravasa evāsīt trayī tretā-mukhe nṛipa |*

"There was formerly but one Veda, the *praṇava* (the monosyllable *Om*), the essence of all speech ; only one god, Nārāyaṇa, one Agni, and (one) caste. From Purūravas came the triple Veda, in the beginning of the Tretā."

Some of the Commentator's remarks on this text will be found in vol. iii. p. 29. He says the one caste was called "Hansa" (*varṇas cha eka eva haṁso nāma*), and concludes his note by remarking : "The meaning is this: In the Kṛita age when the quality of goodness predominated in men, they were almost all absorbed in meditation ; but in the Tretā, when passion prevailed, the method of works was manifested by the division of the Vedas, etc."

²⁸⁵ The Sāṅkhya Kārikā, 53, says *ashṭa-vikalpo daivas tairyaḡyonyas cha pañchadhā bhavati mānushyas chaika-vidhaḥ samāśato bhautikaḥ sargah* ; which is thus translated by Mr. Colebrooke (in Wilson's Sāṅkhya Kārikā, p. 164) : "The divine kind is of eight sorts ; the grovelling is five-fold ; mankind is single in its class. This, briefly, is the world of living beings." The Commentator Gaudapāda shortly explains the words *mānushyas chaika-vidhaḥ* by *mānushayonir ekavā*, "the source of production of mankind is one only." Vijnāna Bhikshu, the Commentator on the Sāṅkhya Pravachana, iii 46, paraphrases the same words thus, *mānushya-sargas chaika-pakārah*, "the human creation is of one sort."

SECT. XIII.—*Results of this Chapter.*

The details which I have supplied in the course of this chapter must have rendered it abundantly evident that the sacred books of the Hindus contain no uniform or consistent account of the origin of castes ; but, on the contrary, present the greatest varieties of speculation on this subject. Explanations mystical, mythical, and rationalistic, are all offered in turn ; and the freest scope is given by the individual writers to fanciful and arbitrary conjecture.

First : we have the set of accounts in which the four castes are said to have sprung from progenitors who were separately created ; but in regard to the manner of their creation we find the greatest diversity of statement. The most common story is that the castes issued from the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet of Purusha, or Brahmā. The oldest extant passage in which this idea occurs, and from which all the later myths of a similar tenor have no doubt been borrowed, is, as we have seen, to be found in the Purusha Sūkta ; but it is doubtful whether, in the form in which it is there presented, this representation is anything more than an allegory. In some of the texts which I have quoted from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, traces of the same allegorical character may be perceived ; but in Manu and the Puranas the mystical import of the Vedic text disappears, and the figurative narration is hardened into a literal statement of fact. In other passages, where a separate origin is assigned to the castes, they are variously said to have sprung from the words Bhūh, Bhuvah, Svah ; from different Vedas ; from different sets of prayers ; from the gods, and the asuras ; from nonentity (pp. 17–21), and from the imperishable, the perishable, and other principles (Harivamśa, 11816). In the chapters of the Viṣṇu, Vāyu, and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas, where castes are described as coeval with the creation, and as having been naturally distinguished by different guṇas, or qualities, involving varieties of moral character, we are nevertheless allowed to infer that those qualities exerted no influence on the classes in whom they were inherent, as the condition of the whole race during the Kṛita age is described as one of uniform perfection and happiness ; while the actual separation into castes did

not take place, according to the Vāyu Purāṇa, until men had become deteriorated in the Tretā age.

Second: in various passages from the Brāhmanas, Epic poems, and Puranas, the creation of mankind is, as we have seen, described without the least allusion to any separate production of the progenitors of the four castes (pp. 23-27, and elsewhere). And whilst in the chapters where they relate the distinct formation of the castes, the Puranas, as has been observed, assign different natural dispositions to each class, they elsewhere represent all mankind as being at the creation uniformly distinguished by the quality of passion. In one of the texts I have quoted (p. 26 f.) men are said to be the offspring of Vivasvat; in another his son Manu is said to be their progenitor; whilst in a third they are said to be descended from a female of the same name. The passage which declares Manu to have been the father of the human race explicitly affirms that men of all the four castes were descended from him. In another remarkable text the Mahābhārata categorically asserts that originally there was no distinction of classes, the existing distribution having arisen out of differences of character and occupation. Similarly, the Bhāgavata Purāṇa in one place informs us that in the Kṛita age there was but one caste; and this view appears also to be taken in some passages which I have adduced from the Epic poems.

In these circumstances we may fairly conclude that the separate origination of the four castes was far from being an article of belief universally received by Indian antiquity.

I shall now proceed to enquire what opinion the writers of the older Vedic hymns appear to have entertained in regard to the origin of the race to which they themselves belonged.

CHAPTER II.

TRADITION OF THE DESCENT OF THE INDIAN RACE FROM MANU.¹

It appears from the considerations urged in the preceding chapter that in all probability the Purusha Sūkta belongs to the most recent portion of the Rig-veda Sanhitā, and that it is at least doubtful whether the verse in which it connects the four castes with the different members of the creator's body is not allegorical. And we have seen that even if that representation is to be taken as a literal account of the creation of the different classes, it cannot, in the face of many other statements of a different tenor, and of great antiquity, be regarded as expressing the fixed belief of the writers of the period immediately succeeding the collection of the hymns in regard to the origin of the social divisions which prevailed in their own time. But the notions entertained of the origin of caste at the date of the Purusha Sūkta, whatever they may have been, will afford no criterion of the state of opinion on the same subject in an earlier age; and it therefore remains to enquire whether those hymns of the Rig-veda, which appear to be the most ancient, contain either (1) any tradition regarding the origin of mankind, or of the Indian tribes; or (2) any allusion to the existence, in the community contemporary with their composition, of separate classes corresponding to those afterwards known as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras; and if they embrace any reference of the latter kind, whether they afford any explanation of the manner in which these orders of men came to occupy their respective positions

¹ On the subjects treated in this chapter compare my article in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, vol. xx. for 1863, pp. 406 ff., where a reference is made to the other writers who had previously treated of them, such as M. Nève, Mythe des Ribhavas, etc.

in society. We shall find on examination that the hymns supply some information on both these branches of enquiry.

Numerous references are undoubtedly to be found in all parts of the hymn-collection to a variety of ranks, classes, and professions; of which an account will be given in the next chapter; but no hint is anywhere discoverable, except in the single text of the Purusha Sūkta, of those classes being distinguished from each other by any original difference of race. If, however, the early Vedic Indians had all along believed in the quadruple production of their nation from the different members of Purusha, one might naturally have expected to find allusions to such a variety of birth running through the hymns. But nothing, I repeat, of this kind is to be traced. On the contrary it appears from a considerable number of passages that at least the superior ranks of the community were regarded as being of one stock, the Aryan, and as having one common ancestor. This chapter will therefore embrace, First, the texts which are found in the hymns regarding the origin of the Indian tribes, and the history of their progenitor, and Secondly those passages which occur in the Brāhmaṇas, and other later works in which the statements of the early Vedic poets on these subjects are re-echoed or developed.

SECT. I.—*Manu as the progenitor of the Āryan Indians and the institutor of religious rites according to the Hymns of the Rig-veda.*

In this section I shall first quote the texts which allude to Manu as father (which must of course be understood to designate him as the actual human progenitor of the authors of the hymns, and of the bulk of the people to whom they addressed themselves); and then adduce those which speak of him as the institutor of religious rites, or as the object of divine protection.

(1) The following texts are of the first class :

i. 80, 16. *Yām Atharvā Manush pitā Dadhyañ dhiyam atnata | tasmin brahmāṇi pūrvathā Indre ukthā samagmata |*

“Prayers and hymns were formerly congregated in that Indra, in the ceremony which Atharvan, father Manu, and Dadhyanch celebrated.”²

² This verse is quoted in the Nirukta, xii. 34, where the words *Manush pitā*,

i. 114, 2. *Yat śaṁ cha yoś cha Manur āyeje pitā tad aśyāma tava Rudra praṇitishu* |

“Whatever prosperity or succour father Manu obtained by sacrifice, may we gain all that under thy guidance, O Rudra.”

ii. 33, 13. *Yā vo bhashajā Marutaḥ śukhīni yā śantamā vṛṣhaṇo yā mayobhū | yāni Manur avṛiṇṭa pitā naḥ tā śaṁ cha yoś cha Rudrasya raśmi* |

“Those pure remedies of yours, O Maruts, those which are most auspicious, ye vigorous gods, those which are beneficent, those which our³ father Manu chose, those, and the blessing and succour of Rudra, I desire.”

viii. 52, 1 (Sāma-veda, i. 355). *Sa pūrvo mahānām veno kratubhir ānaje | yasya dvārā Manuḥ pitā deveshu dhiyaḥ ānaje* |

“That ancient friend hath been equipped with the powers of the mighty (gods). Father Manu has prepared hymns to him, as portals of access to the gods.”⁴

“father Manu,” are explained as meaning *Manuścha pitā mānavānām*, “Manu the father of men.” Sāyana, the Commentator on the Rig-veda, interprets them as meaning *sarvāsām prajānām pitṛibhūto Manuścha*, “Manu the father of all creatures.” In R.V., x. 82, 3, the words “our father and generator” (*yo naḥ pitā janitā*), are applied to Viśvakarman, the creator of the universe. The word “father” in the R.V. is often applied to Dyaus, the Sky, and “mother” to the Earth, as in vi. 51 5. (Compare Journ. Roy. As. Soc for 1864, pp. 55 ff.) But in these passages it is not necessary to suppose that the words are employed in any other than a figurative sense; although in a hymn to the Earth in the Atharva-veda, xii. 1, we find the following verse (the 15th): *Traj-jātas tvayi charanti martyās tram bibharṣu dvipadas tram chatuspadah | tavame prithivi pancha-mānavāḥ yebhyo jyotir amṛitam martyebhyaḥ udyan sūryo raśmibhir ātanoti* | “Mortals born of thee live on thee thou supportest both bipeds and quadrupeds. Thine, o Earth, are these five races of men, these mortals on whom the sun rising, sheds undying light with his rays:”—where it might almost appear as if the poet meant to represent mankind as actually generated by the earth. Brihaspati (iv. 50, 6; vi. 73, 1) and the other gods, as Indra, are called “father,” or compared to fathers (vii. 52, 3); as are Rudra, vi. 49, 10, and the Rishi, R.V., x. 81, 1; x. 82, 1, 3, 4. S. P. Br., i. 5, 3, 2, has *Prajāpatau pitari*; and Taitt. Br. iii. 9, 22, 1, *Prajāpatim pitaram*. In both the last places Prajāpati is referred to as the father of the gods.

³ It is to be observed that while in the two preceding passages Manu is styled merely “father Manu,” he is here called “our father Manu” (*Manuḥ pitā naḥ*).

⁴ I am indebted to Professor Aufrecht for the above translation of this, to me, obscure verse. Sāyana explains it thus: *Sa pūrvo mukhyo mahānām piyānām yajanānām kratubhir karmahir nimittabhūtair venah kantas teshām harih kāmāyamānah ānaje āgachhati | yasyendrasya dvārā dvārāni prāptypāyāni dhiyaḥ karmani deveshu eteshu madhye pitā sarveshām pātako Manur ānaje prāpa | ānyāḥ prāpti-*

The sense of the next text is less clear, but it appears at least to allude to the common designation of Manu as a father :

x. 100, 5. *Yajno Manuḥ pramatir naḥ pitā hi kam* |

“Sacrifice is Manu, our protecting father.”

The following verse, according to the Commentator at least, speaks of the *paternal* or *ancestral* path of Manu. Professor Aufrecht thinks it need not mean more than the ancestral human path :

viii. 30. 3. *Te nas trādhvam te avata te u no adhi rochata* | *mā naḥ pathaḥ pitryād mānarād adhi dūram naiṣṭha parāvataḥ* |

“Do ye (gods) deliver, protect, and intercede for us ; do not lead us far away from the paternal path of Manu.”⁵

As in the preceding passages Manu is spoken of as the progenitor of the worshippers, so in the following the same persons may perhaps be spoken of as his descendants, although it is also true that the phrases employed may be merely equivalent to “children of men.”

i. 68, 4. *Hotā nishatto Manor apatyē sa chit nu āsām patiḥ rayinām* |

“He (Agni) who abides among the offspring of Manu as the invoker (of the gods), is even the lord of these riches.”⁶

karmā | “This chief one, in consequence of the rites of the venerable sacrificers, desiring their oblation, comes,—he (Indra) as means of attaining whom Manu the preserver of all has obtained rites among these gods.” Professor Benfey renders the verse, where it occurs in the Sāma-veda, thus. “He is the chief of the rich, through works the dear one enlightens him, whose doors father Manu has, and illuminates observances towards the gods.” From Prof. Benfey’s note to the passage (p. 230) it appears that the Commentator on the Sāma-veda explains *ānaje* by *vyaktīkaroti āt-mānam*, “makes himself distinct” (herein differing from Sāyana), Manu by *jñātā sarvasya* = *Indraḥ*, “the knower of all, Indra,” and *ānaje*, where it occurs the second time, by *āganayati*, “causes to come.” Such are the differences of opinion regarding the interpretation of some parts of the hymns.

⁵ On this verse Sāyana comments thus: *Sarvēṣhām Manuḥ pitā tataḥ āgatāt* | *parāvataḥ* | *pitā Manuḥ dūram mūrgam chakre* | *tasmāt patho mūrgāt no asmān mā naiṣṭha nū nayata* | *apanayanam mā kuruta ity arthaḥ* | *sarvadā brahmacharyyūgnī-hotrādī-karmāṇi yena mūrgena bhavanti tam eva asmān nayata* | *kintu dūram ya etad-ityatirīkto viprakriṣṭo mūrgo’sti tasmād adhi adhikam ity arthaḥ asmān apanoyata* | “‘Of Manu’ means, come from Manu who is the father of all. ‘Distant.’ Father Manu journeyed along a distant path. Do not lead us away from that path. Lead us along that path in which continence, the agnihotra sacrifice, and other duties have always been practised. But lead us away from the distant path which is different from that.”

⁶ The Commentator here explains “the off-spring of Manu” as off-spring or creatures in the form of worshippers (*yajamāna-svarūpīṇām prajīṇām*); and adds that according to a Brūhmaṇa “creatures are sprung from Manu” (“*Mūnayo hi prajāḥ*,”

iii. 3, 6. *Agnir devebhir manushaścha jantubhis tanvāno yajnam puru-
peśasam dhiyā* |

“Agni, together with the gods, and the children (*jantubhih*) of Manush, celebrating a multiform sacrifice with hymns,” etc.

In the following texts reference is made to the *people* of Manu, the word for “people” being *viś*, from which *vaiśya*, “a man of the people,” is derived :

iv. 37, 1. *Upa no Vājāḥ adhvaram Ribhukshāḥ devāḥ yāta pathibhir
devayānaih* | *yathā yajnam manusho vikshu āsu dadhidve ranvāḥ sudine-
shu ahnām* |

“Ye gods, Vājas, and Ribhukshans, come to our sacrifice by the path travelled by the gods, that ye, pleasing deities, may institute a sacrifice among these people of Manush (*Manusho vikshu*) on auspicious days.”

vi. 14, 2. *Agnim hotāram īlate yajneshu manusho viśaḥ* |

“The people of Manush praise in the sacrifices Agni the invoker.”

viii. 23, 13. *Yad vai ū viśpatih śitah supṛito manusho viśi* | *viśvā id
Agniḥ prati rakshāṃsi sedhati* |

“Whenever Agni, lord of the people,⁷ kindled, abides gratified among the people of Manush, he repels all Rakshases.”

(2.) From the preceding texts it appears that the authors of the hymns regarded Manu as the progenitor of their race. But (as is clear from many other passages) they also looked upon him as the first person by whom the sacrificial fire had been kindled, and as the institutor of the ceremonial of worship; though the tradition is not always consistent on this subject. In one of the verses already quoted (i. 80, 16) Manu is mentioned in this way, along with Atharvan and

iti hi brāhmanam). Yāska (Nir. iii. 7) gives the following derivations of the word *manushya*, “man :” *Manushyāḥ kasmāt* | *matvā karmāṇi sṛvyanti* | *manasyamānena sṛishṭāḥ* . . . | *Manor apatyam Manusho vā* | “From what are men (named)? Because after reflection they sew together works; (or) because they were created by one who reflected (or, according to Durga, “rejoiced”) . . . (or) because they are the offspring of Manu, or Manush.”

⁷ *Viśpati*. Compare vi. 48, 8, where it is said: *viśvāsām grihapatir viśām as-
tvam Agne mānushīnam* | “Agni, thou art the master of the house of all human
people (or, people sprung from Manush);” and x. 80, 6, *Agnim viśaḥ īlate mānush-
yāḥ Agnim Manusho Nahusho vi jātāḥ* | “Human people (or, people descended from
Manush) praise Agni: (people) sprung from Manush, from Nahush, (praise) Agni.”
Or if *manushaḥ* be the nom. plur. the last clause will run thus. “men sprung from
Nahush (praise) Agni.”

Dadhyanah, as having celebrated religious rites in ancient times. The following further passages refer to him as a kindler of fire, and offerer of oblations :

i. 36, 19. *Ni tvām Agne Manur dadhe jyotir janāya śaśvate* |

“Manu has placed (or ordained) thee, Agni, a light to all the people.”

i. 76, 5. *Yathā viprasya Manusho havirbhir devān ayajah kavibhiḥ kavir san | eva hotaḥ satyatara tvam adya Agne mandrayā juhvā yajasva* |

“As thou, thyself a sage, didst, with the sages, worship the gods with the oblations of the wise Manush, so to-day, Agni, most true invoker, worship them with a cheerful flame.”

v. 45, 6. *Ā ita dhiyam kṛṇavāma sakhāyah yayā Manur Viśi-śipram jigāya*

“Come, friends, let us perform the prayer whereby Manu conquered Viśiśipra

viii. 10. 2. *Yad vā yajnam Manave sammimikshathur eva it Kāṇvasya bodhatam* |

“Or if ye (Aśvins) sprinkled the sacrifice for Manu, think in like manner of the descendant of Kanva.”

ix. 96, 11. *Trayā hi naḥ pitarah Soma pūrve karmāni chakruh pavamāna dhīrāḥ* | 12. *Yathā apavathāḥ Manave rayodhāḥ amitrahā varivoid harishmān | eva pavaśva*

“For through thee, O pure Soma, our early fathers, who were wise, performed their rites 12. As thou didst flow clear for Manu, thou upholder of life, destroyer of foes, possessor of wealth, rich in oblations, so (now) flow clear.”

x. 63, 7. *Yebhyo hotrām prathamām āyeje Manuḥ samiddhāgnir manasā sapta hotribhiḥ | tū Ādityā abhayam śarma yachhata*

“O ye Ādityas, to whom Manu, when he had kindled fire, presented along with seven hotṛi priests the first oblation with a prayer, bestow on us secure protection.”

x. 69, 3. “*Yat te Manur yad anīkam Sumitrah samīdhe Agne tad idam narīyah*” * |

* The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa (i. 4, 2, 5) thus explains the words *drveddho Manvid-dhah* — *Manviddhah iti | Manur hy etam agre aniddha | tasmād ūha* “*Manviddhah*” *iti* | “The gods formerly kindled it (fire) hence it is called ‘god-kindled.’ Manu formerly kindled it and hence it is called ‘kindled by Manu.’” The Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (ii. 34), however, explains the word *Manv-iddhah* from the fact that “men kindle it” (*imam hi manushyā indhate*).

“That lustre of thine which Manu, which Sumitra, kindled is this same which is now renewed.”

In conformity with the preceding texts, the following may be understood as declaring that the sacrificial fire had been first kindled by Manu :

i. 13, 4 (= S.V. ii. 700). *Agne sukhatame rathe devān īlitaḥ ā vaha | asi hotā Manurhitaḥ |*

“O Agni, lauded, bring the gods hither in a most pleasant chariot. Thou art the invoker (of the gods) placed by Manush.”⁹

i. 14, 11. *Tvam hotā Manurhito 'gne yajneshu sīdasi | saḥ imam no adhvaram yaja |*

“Thou, Agni, the invoker placed by Manush, art present at the sacrifices: do thou present this our oblation.” (See also R.V. iii. 2, 15.)

vi. 16, 9. *Tvam hotā Manurhitaḥ*

“Thou art the invoker placed by Manush”

viii. 19, 21. *Īḷe girā Manurhitam yam devā dātam aratim nī erire | yajishtham havya-vāhanam |*

“With a hymn I laud that adorable bearer of oblations placed by Manush,¹⁰ whom the gods have sent as a ministering messenger.”

⁹ The compound word which I have here rendered “placed by Manush” is in the original *Manur-hita*. Professor Aufrecht would render it “given to man,” and quotes i. 36, 10, in support of this view. The sense I have given is supported by i. 36, 19, where the same root, *dhā*, from which *hita* (originally *dhita*) comes, is used, joined with the particle *nī*. The same participle *hita* is used in vi. 16, 1, where it is said *Tvam Agne yajnūnām hotā sarveshūm hitaḥ | devbhīr mānusha jāne |* “Thou, Agni, hast been placed, or ordained, among the race of Manush by the gods as the invoker at all sacrifices.” The fact that Agni is here said to have been placed by the gods among the race of Manush does not forbid us to suppose that there are other passages in which, either inconsistently, or from a different point of view, Agni may have been said to be placed by Manu. The compound *manur-hita* occurs also in the following texts, where, however, it has probably the sense of “good for man,” viz. i. 106, 5. *Brihaspate sadam id naḥ sugaṁ kridhi sūm yor yat te manur-hitam tad īmahe |* “Brihaspati, do us always good we desire that blessing and protection of thine which is *good for man*.” (Sāyana says that here *manur-hitam* means either “placed in thee by Manu, i.e., Brahmā,” or, “favourable to man.” Benfey, in loco, renders “destined for man.”) vi. 70, 2. *Rājantī asya bhuvanasya rodasi asme retah sinchataṁ yad manur-hitam |* “Heaven and earth, ruling over this world, drop on us that seed which is *good for man*.” x 26, 5. *Rishih sa yo manur-hitaḥ |* “He (Pūshan) who is a rishi *kind to man*,” etc. Professor Roth s.v. gives only the latter sense.

¹⁰ Though the word *manur-hita* is here interpreted by Sāyana as meaning “placed by Manu Prajāpati who sacrificed,” it might also signify “friendly to men,” as Agni is also said to have been sent by the gods.

viii. 34, 8. *Ā tvā hotā Manurhito devatrā rakshad īḍyaḥ* |

"May the adorable invoker placed by Manu bring thee (Indra) hither among the gods," etc.

There is also a class of passages in which the example of Manush may be referred to by the phrase *manush-vat*, "like Manush," or, "as in the case of Manush."¹¹ Thus in i. 44, 11, it is said :

Ni tvā yajnasya sādhanam Agne hotūram ṛitvijam manushvad deva dhīmahi . . . |

"Divine Agni, we, like Manush, place thee, the accomplisher of the sacrifice, the invoker, the priest," etc.

v. 21, 1. *Manushvat tvā ni dhīmahi Manushvat sam idhīmahi* | *Agne Manushvad Angiro devān devayate yaja* |

"Agni, we place thee like Manush, we kindle thee like Manush. Agni, Angiras, worship the gods like Manush, for him who adores them."

vii. 2, 3. *Manushvad Agnim Manunā samiddham sam adhvarāya sadam in mahema* |

"Let us, like Manush, continually invoke to the sacrifice Agni who was kindled by Manu."

viii. 27, 7. *Suta-somāso Varuṇa havāmahe Manushvad iddhāgnayaḥ* |

"We invoke thee, Varuṇa, having poured out soma, and having kindled fire, like Manush."

viii. 43, 13. *Ūta tvā Bhrigurat śuche Manushvad Agne āhuta* | *Angirasvad havāmahe* | . . . 27. *Yam tvā janāsa indhate Manushvad Angirastama* | *Agne sa bodhi me vachāḥ* |

"Like Bhrigu, like Manush, like Angiras, we invoke thee, bright Agni, who hast been invoked. . . . 27. Agni, most like to Angiras, whom men kindle like Manush, attend to my words."

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 5, 1, 7, explains thus the word *Manush-vat* :¹²—*Manur ha vai agre yajnena ije* | *tad anukṛitya imāḥ prajāḥ ya-*

¹¹ I should observe that Prof. Aufrecht thinks the phrase—except perhaps with the single exception of viii. 43, 13—means "amongst men." Prof. Roth gives only the sense "like men," "as among, or for, men."

¹² The same work in the same passage thus explains the phrase *Bharata-vat*. "He bears (*bharati*) the oblation to the gods ; wherefore men say, Bharata (or 'the bearer') is Agni. Or, he is called Bharata (the 'sustainer') because, being breath, he sustains these creatures." This phrase may, however, refer to the example of King Bharata. See Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiii. 5, 4, 14.

jante | *tasmād āha* “*Manush-vad*” *iti* | “*Manor yajnaḥ*” *iti u vai ākuḥ* | *tasmād vā iva āhur* “*Manushvad*” *iti* | “Manu formerly sacrificed with a sacrifice. Imitating this, these creatures sacrifice. He therefore says, *Manushvat*, ‘like Manu.’ Or, they say ‘like Manu,’ because men speak of the sacrifice as being Manu’s.”

It must, however, be admitted that Manu is not always spoken of in the hymns of the first, or only, kindler of fire or celebrator of religious rites. In i. 80, 16, already quoted, Atharvan and Dadhyanch are specified along with him as having offered sacrifice in early times.

In the following verses Atharvan is mentioned as having generated fire :

vi. 16, 13. *Imam tu tyam Atharva-rad Agnim mathanti vedhasaḥ* |
“The wise draw forth this Agni, as Atharvan did.”

vi. 16, 13 (= S. V. i. 9; Vāj. Sanh. xi. 32). *Tvām Agne pushkarād adhy Atharvā nir amanthata . . .* | 14. *Tam u tvā Dadhyaññ ṛishiḥ putraḥ idhe Atharvanāḥ* |

“Agni, Atharvan drew thee forth from the lotus leaf,” etc. 14. “Thee the rishi Dadhyanch, son of Atharvan, kindled,” etc.

[In the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā, the first of these verses is immediately preceded by the following words (xi. 32): *Atharvā tvā prathamō nir amanthad Agne* | “Atharvan was the first who drew thee forth, Agni.”]

Again it is said in the Rig-veda, x. 21, 5. *Agñir jāto Atharvanā vidad viśvāni kāryā* | *bhuvad dūto Vivasvataḥ* | “Agni, produced by Atharvan, knows all wisdom, and has become the messenger of Vivasvat.”

In i. 83, 5, Atharvan is mentioned as the earliest institutor of sacrifice : *Yajnair Atharvā prathamāḥ pathas tate tataḥ sūryo vratapāḥ venaḥ ājani* | “Atharvan was the first who by sacrifices opened up paths; then the friendly Sun, the upholder of ordinances, was produced,” etc.: so too in x. 92, 10. *Yajnair Atharvā prathamō vi dhārayad devā dakshair Bhṛigavaḥ sam chikitrīre* | “Atharvan, the first, established (all things) with sacrifices. The divine Bhṛigus co-operated with their powers.”¹³

¹³ These two texts might, though not very probably, be understood to mean not that Atharvan was the first to employ sacrifice, but to use it for the purpose referred to in the context.

The next texts speak of the Bhr̥igus as the institutors of sacrifice by fire :

i. 58, 6. *Dadhur trā Bhr̥igavo mānusheshv ā rayim na chārum suhavam janebhyah | hotāram Agne |*

“The Bhr̥igus have placed thee, o Agni, among men, as an invoker, like a beautiful treasure, and easily invoked for men,” etc.

ii. 4, 2. *Imam vidhanto apām sadasthe dvitā adadhur Bhr̥igavo vikshu Āyoh |*

“Worshipping him (Agni) in the receptacle of waters, the Bhr̥igus placed him among the people of Āyu.”

x. 46, 2. *Imam vidhanto apām sadasthe paśum na nasktam padair anu gman | guhā chatantam usījo namobhir ichhanto dhīrā Bhr̥igavo arindan |*

“Worshipping him in the receptacle of waters, and desiring him with prostrations, the wise and longing Bhr̥igus followed him with their steps, like a beast who had been lost, and found him lurking in concealment” ¹⁴ (i. 65, 1).

In other places, the gods, as well as different sages, are mentioned as introducing or practising worship by fire, or as bringing down the sacred flame from heaven :

i. 36, 10. *Yam trā devāso manave dadhur iha yajishtham haryarāhana | yam Kanva Medhyātithir dhanaspritam yam Vṛishā yam Upastutaḥ |*

“Thou, o bearer of oblations, whom the gods placed here as an object of adoration to man (or Manu); whom Kanva, whom Medhyātithi, whom Vṛishan, whom Upastuta (have placed) a bringer of wealth,” etc. Compare vi. 16, 1, quoted above, p. 167, note 9.

iii. 5, 10. *Yadī Bhr̥igubhyah pari Mātariśvā guhā santam haryarāham samīdhe |*

“When Mātariśwan kindled for the Bhr̥igus Agni, the bearer of oblations, who was in concealment.”

x. 46, 9. *Dyāvā yam Agnim prithivī janishthām āpas Trashṭā Bhr̥igavo yam sahoḥbhīḥ | ilenyan prathamam Mātariśvā devās tataksur manave yajatram |*

“Mātariśwan and the gods have made, as the first adorable object of worship to man (or Manu), that Agni whom heaven and earth, whom

¹⁴ In the following passages also the Bhr̥igus are mentioned as connected with the worship of Agni. i. 71, 4; i. 127, 7; i. 143, 4; iii. 2, 4; iv. 7, 1; vi. 15, 2; viii. 43, 13; viii. 91, 4; x. 122, 5.

the waters, whom Tvashtṛi, whom the Bhṛigus, have generated by their powers.”

In the 8th verse the Āyus, and in the 10th the gods, as well as men, are said to have placed Agni.

In i. 60, 1 ; i. 93, 6 ; i. 148, 1 ; iii. 2, 13 ; iii. 5, 10 ; iii. 9, 5 ; vi. 8, 4, Mātariśvan is again spoken of as the bringer or generator of fire. (Compare note 1, in p. 416, of my article “On Manu the progenitor of the Āryan Indians,” in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. xx. for 1863.)

But to return to Manu. Although the distinction of having been the first to kindle fire is thus, in various passages, ascribed to Atharvan or the Bhṛigus, this does not disprove the fact that in other places, it is, somewhat inconsistently, assigned to Manu ; and none of these other personages is ever brought forward as disputing with Manu the honour of having been the progenitor of the Aryan race. In this respect the Vedic tradition exhibits no variation, except that Yama also seems in some places to be represented as the first man. (See my article in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, for 1865, pp. 287 ff., and especially the words of the Atharva-veda, xviii. 3, 14. *Yo mamāra prathamō marttyānām* | “Who (Yama) died first of men.”)

(III.) The following passages describe Manu as being the object of special favour or intervention on the part of some of the gods :

i. 112, 16. *Yābhir narā Sayave yābhir Atraye yābhiḥ purā Manave gātum ishathuḥ* | *yābhiḥ śārīr ājatam S'yūmaraśmaye tābhir u shu ūtibhir Aśvinā gatam* | 18. . . . *Yabhir Manum śūram ishā samāvatam* |

“Come, Aświns, with those succours, whereby, o heroes, ye effected deliverance for Sayu, for Atri, and formerly for Manu, whereby ye shot arrows for S'yūmaraśmi. 18. . . . whereby ye preserved the hero Manu with food.”¹⁵

viii. 15, 5. *Yena jyotīmshi Āyave Manave cha riveditha* | *mandāno asya barhisho vi rājasi* |

“Exulting in this (exhilaration), wherewith thou didst make known the luminaries to Āyu, and to Manu, thou art lord of the sacrificial grass.”

¹⁵ This passage, as far as it concerns Manu, is thus explained by Sāyana : “And with those succours, whereby ye made a path, a road which was the cause of escape from poverty, by sowing barley and other kinds of grain, etc., for Manu, the royal rishi of that name ; according to another text” (i. 117, 21).

When compared with the preceding verse it seems not improbable that the following text may refer to the same tradition, and that instead of *Vāyave* we should read *Āyave* :

vii. 91, 1. *Kuvid anga namasā ye vṛidhāsah purā devā anavadyāsah āsan | te Vāyave (Āyave ?) Manave bādhitāya avāsayan Ushasam Sūryena |*

“Certainly those gods who were magnified by worship were of old faultless. They displayed the dawn with the sun to Vāyu (Āyu ?), to Manu when distressed.

There is also a reference to the sky being displayed to Manu in the following verse, unless the word (*manu*) is to be there taken as an epithet of Purūravas, which does not seem a probable supposition :

i. 31, 4. *Tvam Agne Manave dyām avāsayaḥ Purūravase sukrīte sukṛittaraḥ |*

“Thou, Agni, didst display the sky to Manu, to the beneficent Purūravas, (thyself) more beneficent.”

If Manu be taken for a proper name in vii. 91, 1, it may reasonably be understood in the same way in vi. 49, 13, where the person referred is similarly spoken of as distressed :

vi. 49, 13. *Yo rajāmśi viname pārthivāni tris chid Vishṇur Manave bādhitāya |*

“Vishṇu who thrice measured the terrestrial regions for Manu when distressed.”

And in that case the word Manu may perhaps also be taken to denote a person in vii. 100, 4, *Vichakrame prithivīm esha etām kshetrāya Vishṇur Manave daśasyan |* “This Vishṇu strode over this earth, bestowing it on Manu for an abode.” Although here the general sense of “man” would make an equally good sense.

I may introduce here another text in which, from its conjunction with other proper names, it must be held that the word Manu denotes a person.

i. 139, 9. *Dadhyañ ha me janusham pūrvo Angirāḥ Priyamedhaḥ Kaṇvo Atrir Manur vidus te me pūrve Manur viduḥ |*

“Dadhyanh, the ancient Angiras, Priyamedha, Kaṇva, Atri, Manu, know my (Paruchhepa’s?) birth ; they, my predecessors, Manu, know it.”

There are, as we have seen, some passages in the hymns in which it is doubtful whether the words *manu* and *manush* denote an

individual, or stand for man in general; and there are also texts in which the latter sense is clearly the only one that can be assigned. Such are the following :

(1.) *Manu* in the singular :

i. 130, 5. . . . *Dhenur iva manave viśvadohaso janāya viśvadohasaḥ* |

“All-productive as a cow to *man*, all-productive to a person.”

v. 2, 12. *Barhishmate manave śarma yaṁsad havishmate manave śarma yaṁsat* |

“That he may bestow protection on the *man* who sacrifices, on the *man* who offers oblations.”

viii. 47, 4. *Manor viśvasya gha id ime Ādityāḥ rāya īśate* |

“These Ādityas are lords of every *man*’s riches”

(2.) *Manu* in the plural :

viii. 18, 22. *Ye chid hi mṛityubandhavaḥ Ādityāḥ manavaḥ smasi* !
pra su naḥ āyur jīvase tiretana |

“O ye Ādityas, prolong the days of us who are *men* who are of kin to death, that we may live.”

x. 91, 9. *Yad devayanto dadhati prayāṁsi te havishmanto manavo vrikta-barhishah* |

“When these pious *men* sacrificing, and spreading the sacrificial grass, offer thee oblations.”

(3.) *Manush* in the singular :

i. 167, 7. *Guhā charanti manusho na yoshā* |

“Like the wife of a *man* moving secretly.”

vii. 70, 2. . . . *atāpi gharmo manusho durone* |

“Fire has been kindled in the *man*’s abode.”

The same phrase *manusho durone* occurs also in viii. 76, 2; x. 40, 13; x. 104, 4; x. 110, 1. In x. 99, 7, we find the words *druhrane manushe*, “against the injurious *man*.”

(4.) *Manush* in the plural :

iv. 6, 11. *Hotāram Agnim manusho nishedur namasyanta uśijah śaṁsam āyoh* |

“*Men* offering worship, and eager, attend upon Agni the invoker, the object of *man*’s (or *Āyu*’s) praises.”

In the following passages, if the word *Manu* is not to be understood as denoting a person, the progenitor of men, it seems, at all events, to designate his descendants, the favoured race to which the authors of

the hymns believed themselves to belong, and appears to be in some cases at least nearly synonymous with *Ārya*, the name by which they called men of their own stock and religion, in contradistinction to the *Dasyus*, a term by which we are either to understand hostile demons, or the rude aboriginal tribes :

i. 130, 8. *Indraḥ samatsu yajamānām āryam prāvad viśreshu śatamūtir ājishu . . . | manave śāsad avratān tracham kṛishṇām arandhayat* | ¹⁶

“Indra who bestows a hundred succours in all conflicts . . . has preserved the *Ārya* in the fights. Chastising the lawless, he has subjected the black skin to the man (*manave*).”

Compare i. 117, 21, where instead of *manu*, or *manush*, the word *manusha* is employed :

Yaram vṛikena Aśvinā vapantā iṣham duhantā manushāya dasrā | abhi dasyum bakureṇa dhamantā uru jyotiś chakrathur āryāya |

“Sowing barley with the wolf, ye, o potent *Aśvins*, milking out food for *man* (*manusha*), blowing away the *Dasyu* with the thunder-bolt(?), have made a broad light for the *Ārya*.” ¹⁷

i. 175, 3. *Tram hi śūraḥ sanitā chodayo manusho ratham | sahāvān dasyum avratam oshaḥ pātram na śochishā |*

“Thou, a hero, a benefactor, hast impelled the chariot of *man* : victorious, thou hast burnt up the rite-less *Dasyu*, as a vessel is consumed by a blaze.”

ii. 20, 6. *Sa ha śruta Indro nāma deva ūrddhvo bhuvad manushe dasmatamaḥ | ava priyam arśasūnasya sahrūn śiro bharad dāsasya svadhūvān |* 7. *Sa vṛittrahā Indraḥ kṛishṇayonīḥ purandaro dāsīr airayad vi | ajanayad manave kshām apaścha satrā sāmsam yajamānasya tūtāt |*

“The god renowned as *Indra* hath arisen most mighty for the sake of *man*. Violent, self-reliant, he has smitten down the dear head of the destructive *Dāsa*. 7. *Indra*, the slayer of *Vṛittra*, the destroyer of cities, has scattered the *Dasyu* (hosts) sprung from a black womb. He

¹⁶ A similar opposition between the word *ārya*, “man,” and *dasyu* is to be noted in the following passage, vi. 14, 3. *nūnā hi Agne avase spardhante rūyo aryah | tūrvanto dasyum āyavo vṛataiḥ śikshanto avratam |* “In various ways, o *Agni*, the riches of the enemy emulously hasten to the help (of thy worshippers). The men destroy the *Dasyu*, and seek by rites to overcome the riteless.”

¹⁷ See Prof. Roth's explanation of this passage as given in a note to the article on *Manu* the progenitor of the Aryan Indians, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, vol. xx. p. 418.

has produced for *man* the earth¹⁸ and the waters; he has perfectly fulfilled the aspiration of his worshipper."

vi. 21, 11. *Nu me ā vācham upa yāhi vidvān viśvebhīḥ sūno sahaso yajatraiḥ | ye agnijiḥvāḥ ṛitasāpāḥ āsur ye manum chakrur uparam dasāya |*

"Do thou, o wise god, son of strength, approach my hymn with all the adorable (deities), who were fire-tongued, rite-frequenting, and made *man* superior to the Dāsa."

viii. 87, 5. *Abhi hi satya somapāḥ ubhe babhūtha rodasī | Indrāsi sunvato ṛidhaḥ patir divaḥ |* 6. *Tvam hi śaśvatīnām Indra darta purām asi | hantā dasyor manor ṛidhaḥ patir divaḥ |*

"5. For thou, o true soma-drinker, hast overcome both worlds. Indra, thou art the prosperer of him who makes libations, the lord of the sky. 6. Thou, Indra, art the destroyer of all the cities, the slayer of the Dasyu, the prosperer of *man*, the lord of the sky."

ix. 92, 5. *Tan nu satyam paramānasya astu yatra viśve kāravaḥ saṁnasanta | jyotir yad ahne akrinod u lokam prāvad manum dasyave karabhikam |*

"Let this be the true (abode) of the pure god (Soma) where all the sages have assembled; since he has made light and space for the day, has protected man, and repelled the Dasyu."

x. 49, 7. *Yad mā sāvo manushaḥ āha nirñije ṛidhak kṛishe dāsāṁ kṛitryam hathaiḥ |*

"When the libation of *man* calls me to splendour, I tear in pieces (?) with blows the vigorous Dāsa."

x. 73, 7. *Tvam jaghantha Namuchim makhasyum dāsam kṛinṛānaḥ rishaye vimāyam | tvam chakartha manave syonān patho devatrā anjasā iva yānān |*

"Thou hast slain the lusty Namuchi, making the Dāsa bereft of magic against the rishi: thou made for man beautiful paths leading as it were straightway to the gods."

It is to be observed that in none of these passages is the Brahmanical, or any other, caste singled out as having been the special object of divine protection. Men, or Āryas, are the favourites of the gods. And

¹⁸ In iv. 26, 7, Indra says. "*Aham bhūmim adadām āryūya aham vṛiṣṭim dāśushe martiāya*" | "I gave the earth to the Ārya; I gave rain to the sacrificing mortal."

even in such hymns as R.V. i. 112 ; i. 116 ; i. 117 ; i. 119, etc., where the Ásvins are celebrated as having interposed for the deliverance of many of their worshippers, whose names are there specified, we are nowhere informed that any of these were Brāhmanas, although reference is often made to their being rishis.¹⁹

There is one other text of considerable interest and importance, R.V. iii. 34, 9, which, although it is unconnected with Manu, may be here cited, as it connects the word *ārya* with the term *varṇa*, "colour," which in later times came to signify "caste," as applied to the Brāhmanas and other classes. It is this :

*Sasānātyān uta sūryaṁ sasāna Indrāḥ sasāna purubhojasaṁ gām |
hiraṇyayam uta bhogaṁ sasāna hatvī dasyūn pra āryaṁ varṇam āvat |*

"Indra bestowed horses, he bestowed the sun, he bestowed the many-nourishing cow, he bestowed golden wealth: having slain the Dasyu, he protected the Āryan colour."

It is to be observed that here the word *varṇa* is used in the singular. Thus all the persons coming under the designation of Ārya, are included under one class or colour, not several.²⁰

We shall see in the next chapter that, irrespective of the verse of the Purusha Sūkta, there are in the Rig-veda Sanhitā a few texts in which the Brāhmanas are mentioned alone of all the four castes, without any distinct reference being found anywhere to the second class as Rājanyas, or Kshattriyas, or to the third and fourth as Vaiśyas and Sūdras.

In the mean time I shall advert to some other phrases which are employed in the hymns, either to denote mankind in general, or to signify certain national or tribal divisions. The most important of these is that of the "five tribes," who are frequently referred to under the appellations of *pancha-kṛishṭayāḥ*, *pancha-kshitayāḥ*, *pancha-kshitayo mānushyāḥ* (vii. 97, 1), *pancha-charshanayāḥ*, *pancha-janāḥ*, *pāṇchajanyā viś* (viii. 52, 7), *pancha bhūma* (vii. 69, 2), *pancha jātā* (vi. 61, 12).²¹

¹⁹ See Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, pp. 7 ff.

²⁰ Sāyana, indeed, interprets the word *āryam varṇam* by *uttamam varṇaṁ traivarnikam* | "the most excellent class, consisting of the three upper castes," but he of course explains according to the ideas of his own age. In the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, Kāṇva S'ākhā (Adhvaya Kāṇḍa, i. 6) it is stated that the upper three castes only were Āryas and fit to offer sacrifice (*ārya eva brāhmaṇo vā kshattriyo vā vaiśyo vā te hi yajñiyāḥ*) see Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, p. 281.

²¹ In iii. 49, 1, mention is made not of the five tribes, but of *all* the tribes : *S'āṁsa*

Some of these terms are occasionally used of the gods, as in x. 53, 4 : *ūrjāda uta yajñiyāsah panchajanā mama hotraṁ jushadhvam* | “Ye five tribes who eat (sacrificial) food, and are worthy of adoration, receive my oblation with favour.”²²

On this verse Yāska remarks, Nirukta, iii. 8 : “*Gandharvāḥ pitaro devā asurā rakṣhāṁsi*” *ity eke* | “*chatvāro varṇā nishādaḥ panchamaḥ*” *ity Aupamanyavaḥ* | “Some say the word denotes the Gandharvas, fathers, gods, asuras, and rakshases. Aupamanyava says it denotes the four castes and the Nishādas.”²³

If Aupamanyava was right, the Nishādas also were admissible to the worship of the gods in the Vedic age, as the “five classes” are represented in various texts as votaries of Agni. Such are the following :

vi. 11, 4. *Āyūṁ na yaṁ namasā rātaḥavyāḥ anjanti suprayasam pancha janāḥ* |

“Agni, whom, abounding in oblations, the five tribes, bringing offerings, honour with prostrations, as if he were a man.”

Sāyaṇa here defines the five tribes as “priests and offerers of sacrifices” (*ritrig-yajamāna-lakṣanāḥ*).

ix. 65, 22. *Ye somāsah . . sunvire . .* | 23. *Ye vā janeshu panchasu* |

mahām Indraṁ yasmin viśvū ā krishṭayah somapāḥ kāmam aryan | “Praise the great Indra, in whom all the tribes drinking soma have obtained their desire.”

²² Compare x. 60, 4. “In whose worship Ikshvāku prospers, wealthy and foe-destroying, like the five tribes in the sky (*divīva pancha krishṭayah*). Sāyaṇa, however, renders “His five tribes (the four castes and the Nishādas) are as (happy as) if in heaven.” Prof. Muller, Journ. As. Soc. for 1866, p. 462, renders, “as the five tribes in heaven.”

²³ In his note on this passage in his “Illustrations of the Nirukta,” p 28, Prof. Roth remarks : “The conception of the five races which originally comprehended all mankind . . . is here transferred to the totality of the divine beings. Hence also arises the diversity of understanding, when the number has to be indicated.” Prof. Roth then quotes part of Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 31, which I give a little more fully from Dr. Haug’s edition. *Panchajanyam vai etad uktham yad vaiśvadevam* | *sarveshām vai etad panchajanānām uktham deva-manushyānām gandharvāpsarasām sarpāṇām cha pitṛīnām cha* | *eteshām vai etad panchajanānām uktham* | *sarve enam panchajanā vīduḥ* | *ā enam panchīnyai janātāyai havino gachhanti ya evaṁ vedu* | “This Vaisvadeva uktha belongs to the five classes of beings. It belongs to all the five classes of gods, men, gandharvas and apsaras, serpents, and fathers. To these five classes belongs this uktha. All these five classes know him (who uses it). Those of this five-fold set of beings who are skilled in invocation come to the man who knows this.” See Dr. Haug’s Ait. Br. ii. 214, where it is said that Gandharvas and Apsaras are counted as one class.

“Or those soma-libations which have been poured out . . . (23) among the five tribes.”

x. 45, 6. *Vīluṁ chid adrim abhinat parāyan janāḥ yad agnim aya-janta pancha* |

“He (Agni), travelling afar, clove even the strong mountain, when the five tribes worshipped Agni.”

vii. 15, 2. *Yāḥ pancha charshaṇīr abhi nishasāda dame dame* | *kavir grihapatir yuvā* |

“The wise and youthful master of the house (Agni) who has taken up his abode among the five tribes in every house.”

In vi. 61, 12, Sarasvatī is spoken of as “augmenting or prospering the five tribes” (*pancha jātū vardhayanti*).

In viii. 52, 7, it is said: *Yat pāñchajanyayā viśū Indre ghoshāḥ asṛikshata* | “When shouts were uttered to Indra by the people of the five tribes,” etc.

In R.V. i. 117, 3, Atri is styled *ṛishim pāñchajanyam*, “a rishi belonging to the five tribes.” In v. 32, 11, the epithet *satpatih pāñchajanyah*, “the good lord of the five tribes,” is applied to Indra. And in ix. 66, 20, Agni is called the purified rishi, the priest of the five tribes (*pāñchajayah purohitah*).²⁴

In other passages, however, it is far from clear that the “five races” are intended to be identified with the Aryas, or people of honourable race, to whom the authors of the hymns belonged. Such, perhaps, is the case in the following verse: ii. 2, 10. *Asmākaṁ dyumnā adhi pancha kṛishṭishu uchchā svar na śusūchita dushṭaram* | “May our glory shine aloft among the five tribes, like the heaven unsurpassable.” See also vi. 46, 7, to be quoted below.

On the same subject, Professor Roth remarks as follows in his Lexicon under the word *kṛishṭi*: “The phrase *five races* is a designation of all nations, not merely of the Aryyan tribes. It is an ancient enumeration, of the origin of which we find no express explanation in the Vedic texts. We may compare the fact that the cosmical spaces or points of the compass are frequently enumerated as *five*, especially in

²⁴ See Mahābhārata, iii. 14160, as referred to by Roth under *pana*, where the birth of a being of five colours, apparently a form of Agni, is described, who was generated by five rishi, and who was known as the god of the five tribes (*pāñchajanya*) and the producer of five races.

the following text of the A.V. iii. 24, 2: *imā yāḥ pancha pradīśo mānaviḥ pancha kṛishṭayāḥ* | ‘these five regions; the five tribes sprung from Manu’; among which (regions) we should have here to reckon as the fifth the one lying in the middle (*dhruvā dik*, A.V. iv. 14, 8: xviii. 3, 34), that is, to regard the Aryyas as the central point, and round about them the nations of the four regions of the world. . . . According to the Vedic usage, five cannot be considered as designating an indefinite number.”

We cannot therefore regard the use of the term “five races” as affording any evidence of the existence of a rigidly defined caste-system at the period when it was in frequent use. The frequent reference to such a division, which fell into disuse in later times, rather proves the contrary. The caste-system was always a quadruple, not a quintuple, one; and although the Nishādas are added by Aupamanyava as a fifth division of the population, this class was esteemed too degraded to allow us to suppose that they could ever have formed part of a universally recognized five-fold division, of which all the parts appear to be regarded as standing on an equal, or nearly equal, footing.

It is supposed by Dr. Kuhn²⁵ that the “five tribes” are to be identified with the clans whose names are mentioned in the following verse:

i. 108, 8. *Yad Indrāgnī Yādushu Turvaśeshu yad Druhyushu Anushu Pūrushu sthah | atah pari vrishanāv ā hi yātām athā somasya pibatām sutasya* |

“If, o Indra and Agni, ye are abiding among the Yadus, Turvaśas, Druhyus, Anus, Pūrus,—come hither, vigorous heroes, from all quarters, and drink the Soma which has been poured out.”

Although, however, these tribes are often mentioned separately in the Rig-veda, this is either the only, or almost the only, text in which they are all connected with one another. Their identity with the “five classes” is therefore doubtful.

There is another word employed in the Rig-veda to designate a race well known to the authors of the hymns, viz., *nahush*. We have already met with this term in a verse (x. 80, 6) I have quoted above, where it appears clearly to denote a tribe distinct from the descendants of Manush; and the adjective derived from it occurs in vi. 46, 7 (=

²⁵ See Weber's *Indische Studien*, i. 202, where Dr. Kuhn's paper in the *Hall. Allg. Lit. Z.* for 1846, p. 1086, is referred to.

S.V. i. 262), where also the tribes of Nahush appear to be discriminated from the five tribes, whoever these may be supposed to be. The words are these: *Yad Indra nāhushīshv ā ojo nṛimnaṁ cha kṛishṭishu | yad vā pancha kshitinām dyumnam ā bhara satrā viśrāṇi pauṁsyā |* “Indra, whatever force or vigour exists in the tribes of Nahush, or whatever glory belongs to the five races, bring it (for us); yea all manly energies together.”

Professor Roth (see his *Lexicon*, s. v.) regards the people designated by the word *nahush* as denoting men generally, but with the special sense of stranger, or neighbour, in opposition to members of the speaker's own community; and he explains the words of x. 80, 6, twice referred to above, as signifying “the sons of our own people, and of those who surround us.”

These descendants of Nahush, whoever they may have been, are, however, distinctly spoken of in x. 80, 6 (the passage just adverted to), as worshippers of Agni, and can scarcely, therefore, have been regarded by the Aryas as altogether aliens from their race and worship.

Setting aside, as before, the *Purusha Sūkta*, there are few distinct references in the hymns of the *Rig-veda* to the creation of men, and none at all to the separate creation of castes. The following text ascribes the generation of mankind to Agni, R.V. i. 96, 2: *Sa pūrvayā nividā karyatā āyor imāḥ prajāḥ ajanayad manūnām | vīrascatā chakshasā dyām apaś cha devā Agniṁ dhārayan dravinodām |* “By the first nivid, by the wisdom of Āyu, he (Agni) created these children of men; by his gleaming light the earth and the waters: the gods sustained Agni the giver of riches.”²⁶

The *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa* introduces this verse by the following passage: *Prajāpatir vai idam eka eva agre āsa | so 'kāmayata “prajāyeya bhūyān syām” iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | sa vācham ayachhat | sa samvat-sarasya parastād vyāharad dvādaśa kṛitrah | dvādaśapadā vai eshā nivit | etām vāra tām nividaṁ vyāharat | tām sarvāṇi bhūtāny anvas-rijjanta | tad etad ṛishih paśyann abhyanūracha “sa pūrvayā” ityādinā |* “Prajāpati alone was formerly this universe. He desired ‘may I be propagated, and multiplied.’ He practised austere fervour. He suppressed his voice. After a year he spoke twelve times. This nivid

²⁶ See Dr. Haug's translation in his *Ait. Br. ii. 143*; and Benfey's German version in his *Orient und Occident*, ii. 512.

consists of twelve words. This nivid he uttered. After it all beings were created. Beholding this the rishi uttered this verse, 'by the first nivid,' etc.

The generation of "creatures" (*prajāḥ*) is ascribed in various texts to different gods, in iii. 55, 19²⁷ to Tvashtri Savitri; in ix. 86, 28 to Soma; in viii. 85, 6 (*ya imā jajāna viśvā jātāni*) to Indra. In x. 54, 3 Indra is said to have "generated the father and mother (heaven and earth) from his own body" (*yan mūtaram cha pitaram cha sākam ajanayathās tanvaḥ svāyāḥ*); while Viśvakarman, who in x. 81, 2, 3 is said to have generated heaven and earth, is also in x. 82, 3 called "our father and generator" (*yo naḥ pitā janitā*). All these passages are, however, too vague to afford us any insight into the ideas of their authors regarding the creation of the human race.

SECT. II.—*Legends and Notices regarding Manu from the Śatapatha, Aitareya, and Taittirīya Brāhmaṇas, the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, and the Chhāndogya Upanishad.*

The first passage which I adduce contains the very important legend of the deluge, which has already been quoted in the 2nd vol. of this work, pp. 324 ff., and which has also been rendered into English by Professor Max Müller (Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 425 ff.) and by Professor M. Williams (Ind. Epic Poetry, p. 34), as well as into German by its earliest translator, Professor Weber, in the year 1849 (Ind. Studien, i. 163 f.).

Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 8, 1, 1. *Manave ha vai prātar araneḡyam adakam ājhrur yathā idam pāṇibhyām aranejanāya āharanti | evaṁ tasya aranenijānasya matsyaḥ pāṇi āpede | 2. Sa ha asmaī vācham uvāda "bībhṛi mā pārayiṣhyāmi tvā" iti | "kasmād mā pārayiṣhyasi" iti | "aughaḥ māḥ sarvāḥ prajāḥ nirvodhā tatas tvā pārayitāsmi" iti | "Katham te bhṛitir" iti | 3. Sa ha uvācha "yāvad vai kṣhullakāḥ bhavāmo bahvī vai nas tāvad nāṣṭrā bhavaty uta matsya eva matsyam gilati | kumbhyām mā agre bībharāsi | sa yadā tām ativaradhā atha karṣhūm khātrā tasyām mā bībharāsi | sa yadā tām ativaradhā atha mā samudram abhyavarāsi | tarhi vai atināṣṭro bhavitāsmi" iti | 4. Saśvad²⁸ ha*

²⁷ Perhaps, however, we are to understand Tvashtri's function of aiding in procreation to be here referred to.

²⁸ *Saśvat-sabdō 'tra sāmāthyāt kṣhipra-vachanaḥ.*—Comm.

*jhasha*²⁹ *āsa sa hi jyeshtham*³⁰ *vardhate* | “*atha itithīm samām tad aughah āgantū tad mā nāvam upakalpya upāsāsai | sa aughe utthite nāvam āpadyāsai tatas tvā pārayitāsmi*” *iti* | 5. *Tam evam bhṛitrā samudram abhyavajahāra | sa yatithīm tat samām paridideśa tatithīm samām nāvam upakalpya upāsānchakre | sa aughe utthite nāvam āpede | tam sa matsyah upanyāpupluve | tasya śṛinge nāvaḥ pāsām pratimumocha | tena etam ut-turam girim*³¹ *atidudrāra*³² | 6. *Sa ha uvācha “apīparam vai tvā vṛikshe nāvam pratibadhnīshra | tām tu tvā mā girau santam udokam antaśchhait-sīd yāvad yāvad udokam samaiyāt tāvat tāvad anvarasarpāsi” iti | Sa ha tātāt tāvad eva anvarasasarpa | tad api etad uttarasya girer “Manor avasarpānam” iti | aughā ha tāḥ sarvāḥ prajāḥ nirucāha atha iha Manur eva ekaḥ pariśīśhe* | 7. *Saḥ archan śrāmyaṁś chachāra prajākāmāḥ | tatru api pāka-yajñena ije | sa ghṛitam dadhi mastv āmikshām ity apsu juhmnānchakāra | tataḥ samratsare yoshit sambabhūva | sā ha pīdamānā*³³ *iva vṛegūya | tasyai ha sma ghṛitaṁ pade santishṭhate | tayā Mitrā-Va-runau sanjagmāte* | 8. *Tām ha ūchatuḥ “kā asi” iti | “Manor dukhitā” iti | “ācayor brūshā” iti | “na” iti ha uvācha “yāḥ eva mām ajījanata tasya eva aham asmi” iti | tasyām apitram*³⁴ *īshāte | tad vā jajnou tad vā na jajnūr*³⁵ *ati tu eva iṇyāya | sā Monum ājagāma* | 9. *Tām ha Manur uvācha “kā asi” iti | “taro dukhitā” iti | “katham bhagavati mama dukhitā” iti | “yāḥ amūr apsu āhutir ahaushir ghṛitaṁ dadhi mastv āmikshām tato mām ajījanathāḥ | sā ōśir asmi tām mā yajne avakalpayā | yajne ched vai mū avakalpayiṣhyasi bahunḥ prajāyā paśubhir bhavishyasi yām u mayā kāncha āśisham āśāsishyase sū te sarvā samardhi-shyate” iti | tām etad madhye yajnasya avākalpayat | madhyam hi etad yajnasya yad antorā prayājānnyājān* | 10. *Tayā archan śrāmyaṁś chachāra prajākāmāḥ | tayā imām prajātim prajājne yā iyam Manuḥ prajātiḥ | yām u enayā kāncha āśisham āśāsta sū asmai sarvā samār-dhyata | sā eskā nidānena yad Idā | sa yo ha eram vidrān Idayā cha-rati etām ha eva prajātim prajāyate yām Manuḥ prajāyatu | yām u enayā kāncha āśisham āśāste sū asmai sarvā sampridhyate* |

“1. In the morning they brought to Manu water for washing, as

²⁹ *Jhasho mahā-matsyah.*—Comm.

³⁰ *Jyeshtham vridhatamam*—Comm.

³¹ *Uttaram girim Himavantam.*—Comm.

³² Some MSS. read *adhidudrāva*.

³³ *Pīdamānā . . . ghṛita-prabharatvāt ghṛitam sravanti susnighdhā udakād ut-thitā.*—Comm.

³⁴ *Apitvam bhūgaḥ | tam prārthitavantau.*—Comm.

³⁵ *Pratijnātavatī cha na cha pratijnātavatī.*—Comm.

men are in the habit of bringing it to wash with the hands. As he was thus washing, a fish³⁶ came into his hands, (2) (which spake to him) 'preserve me; I shall save thee.' (Manu enquired) 'From what wilt thou save me?' (The fish replied) 'A flood shall sweep away all these creatures;³⁷ from it I will rescue thee.' (Manu asked) 'How (shall) thy preservation (be effected)?' 3. The fish said: 'So long as we are small, we are in great peril, for fish devours fish; thou shalt preserve me first in a jar. When I grow too large for the jar, then thou shalt dig a trench, and preserve me in that. When I grow too large for the trench, then thou shalt carry me away to the ocean. I shall then be beyond the reach of danger.' 4. Straightway he became a large fish; for he waxes to the utmost. (He said) 'Now in such and such a year, then the flood will come; thou shalt, therefore, construct a ship, and resort to me; thou shalt embark in the ship when the flood rises, and I shall deliver thee from it.' 5. Having thus preserved the fish, Manu carried him away to the sea. Then in the same year which the fish had enjoined, he constructed a ship and resorted to him. When the flood rose, Manu embarked in the ship. The fish swam towards him. He fastened the cable of the ship to the fish's horn. By this means he passed over³⁸ this northern mountain.³⁹ 6. The fish said, 'I have delivered thee; fasten the ship to a tree. But lest the water should cut thee off whilst thou art on the mountain, as much as the water subsides, so much shalt thou descend after it.' He accordingly descended after it as much (as it subsided). Wherefore also this, viz., 'Manu's descent' is (the name) of the northern mountain. Now the flood had swept away all these creatures; so Manu alone was left here. 7. Desirous of offspring, he lived worshipping and toiling in arduous religious rites. Among these he also sacrificed with the *pāka* offering. He cast clarified butter, thickened milk, whey and curds, as an oblation into the waters. Thence in a year a woman was produced. She rose

³⁶ *Bhāṛino'rthasya siddhyartham devatā eva matsya-rūpeṇa ājagāma* | "To accomplish what was to follow, it was a deity which came in the form of a fish."—Comm.

³⁷ *Augḥaḥ udaka-saṅghātaḥ | sa imāḥ Bharatavarsha-nivāsīṇi prajāḥ niḥśeṣaṁ vodhā | deśāntaram prāpayitā* | "The flood will entirely carry these creatures abiding in Bharatavarsha;—will convey them to another country."—Comm.—I do not see why the verb *nirrodhā* should have the sense here assigned to it at all events we are afterwards told that Manu alone was left after the flood.

³⁸ Or, if *adhidūrva* be the true reading, "he hastened to."

³⁹ The Himavat or Himālaya, according to the Commentator.

up as it were unctuous.⁴⁰ Clarified butter adheres to her steps. Mitra and Varuṇa met her. They said to her, 'Who art thou?' 'Manu's daughter,' (she replied). 'Say (thou art) ours,' (they rejoined). 'No,' she said, 'I am his who begot me.' They desired a share in her. She promised that, or she did not promise that; but passed onward. She came to Manu. 9. Manu said to her, 'Who art thou?' 'Thy daughter,' she replied. 'How, glorious one,' asked Manu, '(art thou) my daughter?' 'Thou hast generated me,' she said, 'from those oblations, butter, thick milk, whey and curds, which thou didst cast into the waters. I am a benediction. Apply me in the sacrifice. If thou wilt employ me in the sacrifice, thou shalt abound in offspring and cattle. Whatever benediction thou wilt ask through me, shall accrue to thee.' He (accordingly) introduced her (as) that (which comes in) the middle of the sacrifice; for that is the middle of the sacrifice which (comes) between the introductory and concluding forms. 10. With her he lived worshipping and toiling in arduous religious rites, desirous of offspring. With her he begot⁴¹ this offspring which is this offspring of Manu.⁴² Whatever benediction he asked with her, was all vouchsafed to him. This is essentially that which is Idā. Whosoever, knowing this, lives with Idā, begets this offspring which Manu begot. Whatever benediction he asks with her, is all vouchsafed to him."

⁴⁰ Such is the rendering of *pibdamūnū* given by the Commentator, who is followed by Professors Weber and Muller. Professor Roth in his *Lexicon*, s. v., explains it by "firm," i.e. "the woman arose solid out of the fluid mass."

⁴¹ I should observe that the same verb (*prajāne*) by which the generative act of Manu is here described, is in other passages of the same Brāhmaṇa (ii. 2, 4, 1; ii. 5, 1, 1; vi. 1, 1, 8; vi. 1, 3, 1; vii. 5, 2, 6, xi. 5, 8, 1) applied in another tense to the god Prajāpati, of whom it is said that he considered how he should *beget* progeny (*sa aikṣhata 'katham nu prajājeyā*). (Compare xi. 1, 6, 1.) In other parts of the same work, however, it is said that Prajāpati *created* (*asrijata*) the waters (vi. 1, 1, 9), or creatures (*prajāḥ asrijata*, vii. 4, 3, 5; x. 2, 2, 1); and the fact of the word "beget" being applied to Prajāpati, either in a figurative, or anthropomorphic sense, does not authorize us to suppose that the author of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, in the passage before us (the legend of the deluge), intended to represent Manu as the creator of the human race, and not as their progenitor in the natural sense. (In R.V. ii. 33, 1; vi. 70, 3, we find the phrase *prajāyemahi prajābhikḥ | ma prajābhikḥ jāyate* | "let us beget children," "he begets children.")

⁴² Compare Taitt. Sanhitā. v. 1, 5, 6. "*S'ivo bhava prajābhīyām*" *ity āha prajābhīya eva enam śamayati* | "*mānushābhīyus trām angirah*" *ity āha mānaryo hi prajāḥ* | "He says, 'be auspicious to the twain off-spring,' for he pacifies him from (injuring) the offspring. He says, '(We pacify) thee from (injuring) the human offspring, o Angiras.' For creatures are descended from Manu."

From this interesting legend we learn that, according to its author's belief, Manu was not the creator of mankind, as some later accounts considered him to have been, but himself belonged to an earlier race of living beings, which was entirely destroyed by the deluge which is described. The legend regards him as a representative of his generation, who, for some reason, perhaps his superior wisdom, or sanctity, or position, was selected out of the crowd of ordinary mortals to be rescued from the impending destruction. That he was regarded as a mere man, and not as a being of a superior order, is shown by the fact of his requiring the aid of a higher power to preserve him. A supernatural fish, apparently some divine person, conceived as taking the form of a creature which would be perfectly secure and at home in the midst of the raging waters, undertook to deliver him, and guided the ship on which he was directed to embark, through all dangers to its destined haven. No one but Manu took refuge in the ship, for he alone, the story expressly records, was preserved, while all the other living beings were overwhelmed. Finding himself the sole survivor when the waters subsided, he became desirous of progeny; and with intense devotion performed certain religious rites in the hope of realizing his wish through their efficacy. As a result of his oblations, a woman arose from the waters into which they had been cast. A male and a female now existed, the destined parents of a new race of men who sprang from their union, — a union the fruitfulness of which was assured by their assiduous practice of sacred ceremonies. From Manu and Idā, we are expressly told, the race known as that of Manu, *i.e.* the race of men, was produced. The legend says nothing whatever of this race being originally characterized by any distinction of castes, or about four sons, the ancestors of Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras being born to Manu and Idā. We must therefore suppose that the author of the legend intends to represent the early race of mankind, or at least the first inhabitants of Bharata-varsha, as descended from one common progenitor without any original varieties of caste, however different the professions and social position of their descendants afterwards became. We are consequently entitled to regard this legend of the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa as at variance with the common fable regarding the separate origin of the Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras.

The following are some other passages in which Manu and Idā are both referred to:

Taitt. S. ii. 6, 7, 1. *Manuḥ prithivyāḥ yajniyam aicchat | sa ghṛitaṁ nishiktam avindat | so 'bravīt "ko 'sya īśvaro yajne 'pi karttor" iti | tār abrūtām Mitrā-Varuṇau "gor eva ādām īśvarau karttoḥ svaḥ" iti | tau tato gāṁ samairayatām | sū yatra yatra nyakrāmat tato ghṛitam apīḍyata | tasmād ghṛitapadī vchyate | tad asyai janna | . . . 3. Idām upahvayate | paśaro cai Idā | paśūn eia upahvayate | chatur upahvayate | chaturshpādo hi paśavaḥ | "Mānavī" ity āha | Manur hy etām agre 'puśyat | "ghṛitapadī" ity āha | yad eva asyai padād ghṛitam apīḍyata tasmād evam āha | "Maitrācaruṇī" ity āha | Mitrāvaruṇau hy enām samairayatām |*

"Manu sought whatever upon earth was fit for sacrifice. He found butter poured out. He said, 'Who has power to employ this in sacrifice also?' Mitra and Varuṇa replied, 'We two have power to employ the cow.' They then sent forth the cow. Wherever she went forth, butter was pressed out. Hence she is called the 'butter-footed.' This is her birth . . . 3. He calls upon Idā. Animals are Idā. He calls upon animals. He calls upon them four times. For animals are four-footed. He says 'Mānavī.' For Manu first saw her. He says 'Butter-footed.' He says so, because butter was pressed from her foot. He says 'Maitrāvaruṇī.' For Mitra and Varuṇa sent her forth." (Comp. Taitt. Br. iii. 7, 5, 6.)

Taitt. Br. i. 1, 4, 4. *Idā vai Mānavī yajñānukāśiny⁴³ āsit | sū 'śrinod "Asurā agnīm adadhate" iti . . . | 6. Sū 'bravīt Idā Manuḥ "tathā vai aham tava agnīm ādhāsyāmi yathā pra prajayā paśubhir mithunair janishyase praty asmin loke sthāsyasi abhi suvargaṁ lokaṁ jeshyasi" iti | gārhapatyam agre ādadhāt | . . . gārhapatyena eva asmai prajām paśūn prājanayat |*

"Idā, the daughter of Manu, was a revealer of sacrifice. She heard, 'the Asuras are placing fire.' . . . 6. Idā said to Manu, 'I shall so place thy fire that thou shalt increase in offspring, cattle, and twins; thou shalt be firmly established in this world, and shalt conquer the heavenly world.'⁴⁴ She first placed the gārhapatya fire. It was

⁴³ *Yajna-tattva-prakāśana-samarthū*.—Comm.

⁴⁴ Compare the Kāthaka Br. viii. 4, quoted in Weber's Indische Studien, iii. 463, where Idā is said to have promised to Manu. *tathā te Agnīm ādhāsyāmi yathā ma-*

through the gārhapatya that she produced for him offspring and cattle."

Taitt. S. i. 7. 1, 3. *Sarveṇa vai yajñena devāḥ svargaṁ lokam āyan | pākayajñena Manur asrūmyat | sū Idā Manum upāvarttata | tām devāsurāḥ vyahvayanta pratichīm devāḥ parāchīm Asurāḥ | sū devān upāvarttata |*

"The gods arrived at the heavenly world by the whole sacrifice. Manu worshipped with the *pākayajña*. That *Idā* came to Manu. The gods and asuras called her away in different directions, the gods in front, the asuras behind. She came to the gods."

The following texts refer to Manu alone, as a celebrator of religious ceremonies :

Taitt. S. ii. 5, 9, 1. "*Agne mahān asi*" ity āha | mahān hy esha yad Agniḥ | "*brāhmaṇa*" ity āha | brāhmaṇo hy esha | "*bhārata*" ity āha | esha hi devebhyo haryam bharati | "*devēdha*" ity āha | devāḥ hy etam aindhuta | "*Manviddha*" ity āha | Manur hy etam uttaro devebhyah aindha |

"He says, 'Agni, thou art great.' For this Agni is great. He says, 'o Brāhmaṇ.' For he is a Brāhmam. He says, 'o Bhārata.' For he bears the oblation to the gods. He says, 'kindled by the gods.' For the gods kindled him. He says, 'kindled by Manu.' For Manu kindled him after the gods."

Taitt. S. vi. 2, 5, 2 f. *Trivratō vai Manur asīd dvivratā asurā ekavratā devāḥ | prātar madhyandine sāyaṁ tad Manor vratam āsit pākayajñasya rūpam puṣṭyai | prātaścha sāyāṁcha asurāṇām nirmadhyam kṣūdhorūpam | tatas te parābhavan | madhyandine madhyarātre devāṇām tatas te bhavan svargaṁ lokam āyan |*

"Manu performed three rites; the asuras two; the gods one. Manu's rite was in the morning, at noon, and in the evening, the form of a *pākayajña* for nourishment. That of the asuras was in the morning and evening, without any midday rite, a form of hunger. Hence they perished. That of the gods was at midday and midnight. Hence they prospered, and arrived at the heavenly world."

Taitt. S. vii. 5, 15, 3. *Etayā* (i.e. *abhijityā*) *vai Indram devāḥ ayājayan | tasmād "Indrasavaḥ" | etayā Manum manushyāḥ | tasmād "Manu-savaḥ" |*

nushyā devān upaprajanishyante | "I will so place Agni for thee, than men shall be born among the gods."

*yathā Indro devānām yathā Manur manushyānām eva bhavati yaḥ evaṁ
vidvān etayā ishtyā yajate |*

“With this (*abhijīti*) the gods sacrificed for Indra. Hence it is called ‘Indra-sava.’ Men sacrificed with it for Manu. Hence it is called ‘Manu-sava.’ As Indra is among gods, and Manu among men, so he becomes who thus knowing sacrifices with this oblation.”

In Taitt. S. ii. 2, 10, 2, we find nearly the words which Kullūka quotes on Manu’s Institutes, i. 1: *Yad vai kincha Manur avadat tad bhashajam |* “Whatever Manu said was a remedy.”

In Śatapatha Br. vi. 6, 1, 19, Manu is called a *Prajāpati*: “*Prajāpataye Manave svāhā*” *iti | Prajāpatir vai Manuḥ | sa hi idam sarvaṁ amanuta | Prajāpatir vai etad agre karma akarot |* “*Svāhā* to Manu the lord of creatures. Manu is a lord of creatures (*prajā-pati*) for he thought (*amanuta*) all this. The lord of creatures (*prajā-pati*) formerly did all this work.”

The following story in its different versions also connects Manu with religious observances and represents him as very devout:

S. P. Br. i. 1, 4, 14 ff. *Manor ha vai ṛishabhah āsa | tasminn asura-ghnī sapatna-ghnī vāk pravīṣṭā āsa | tasya ha sma śvasathād ravathād asura-rākshasāni mṛidyamānāni yanti | te ha asurāḥ samūdire “pāpaṁ vata no ’yam ṛishabhaḥ sachote katham nṛ imaṁ dabhnuyāma” iti | “Kilātākuli” iti ha asura-brahmāc āsatuh | tau ha ūchatuh | “śraddhā-devo vai Manuḥ | ācām nu vedāra” iti | tau ha āgatya ūchatur “Mano yājayāva tvā” iti | “kena” iti | “anena ṛishabhena” iti | “tathā” iti | tasya ālabdhasya sā vāg apachukrāma | sā Manor eva jāyām Mānāvīm praviveśa | tasyai ha sma yatra radantyai śṛiṇvanti tato ha sma eva asura-rākshasāni mṛidyamānāni yanti | te ha asurāḥ samūdire “ito vai naḥ pūpiyaḥ sachote bhūyo hi mānushī vāg vadati” iti | Kilātākuli ha eva ūchatuh | “śraddhā-devo cai Manur ācām nṛ eva vedāra” iti | tau ha āgatya ūchatur “Mano yājayāva tvā” iti | “kena” iti | “enayā eva jāyayā” iti | “tathā” iti | tasyai ālabdhūyai sā vāg apachukrāma sā yajnam eva yajna-pātrāṇi praviveśa | tato ha enām na śekatur nirhan-tum | sā eṣhā asura-ghnī vāg uddadati | sa yasya ha evaṁ vīduṣaḥ etām atra vācam pratyudrādayanti pāpīyāṁso ha eva asya sapatnāḥ bharanti |*

“Manu had a bull. Into it an Asura-slaying, enemy-slaying voice had entered. In consequence of this (bull’s) snorting and bellowing, Asuras and Rakshasas were continually destroyed. Then the Asuras

said : 'This bull, alas, does us mischief; how shall we overcome him?' Now there were two priests of the Asuras called Kilāta and Akuli. They said: 'Manu is a devout believer: let us make trial of him.' They went and said to him, 'let us sacrifice for thee.' 'With what (victim)?' he asked. 'With this bull,' they replied. 'Be it so,' he answered. When it had been slaughtered, the voice departed out of it, and entered into Manu's wife Manāvī. Wherever they hear her speaking, the Asuras and Rākshasas continue to be destroyed in consequence of her voice. The Asuras said: 'She does us yet more mischief; for the human voice speaks more.' Kilāta and Akuli said, 'Manu is a devout believer: let us make trial of him.' They came and said to him, 'Manu, let us sacrifice for thee.' 'With what (victim)?' he asked. 'With this (thy) wife,' they replied. 'Be it so,' he answered. When she had been slaughtered the voice departed out of her and entered into the sacrifice and the sacrificial vessels. Thence they were unable to expel it. This is the Asura-slaying voice which speaks out (when the two stones are struck with the *śamyā*, as a part of the ceremonial). Wretched become the enemies of that man for whom, when he knows this, they cause this voice here to reverberate."

Taitt. Br. iii. 2, 5, 9. *Manoḥ śraddhā-devasya yajamānasya asura-ghnī vāg yajñayudhesku pravishṭā āsit | te 'surāḥ yāvanto yajñayudhānām udvadatām upāśṛṇvans te parābhavan |*

"An asura-slaying voice had entered into the sacrificial implements of the devout believer and sacrificer Manu. The Asuras, as many as heard the sacrificial implements sounding, were overcome."

Kāthaka Br. ii. 30, 1.⁴⁵ *Manor vai kapālāny āsan | tair yāvato yāvato 'surān abhyupādadhāt te parābhavan | atha turhi Trishṭhā-varūtrī* ⁴⁶ *āstām asura-brahmau | tā asurāḥ abruvann "imāni śat kapālāni yāche-thām" iti | tau prataritrānā abhiprāpadyetām "Tāyave Agne Tāyave Indra" iti | "kīṁkāmau sthaḥ" ity abravīt | "imāni nau kapālāni dehi" iti | tāny ābhyām adaāt | tāny aranyām parāhṛitya samapiṁśtām | tad Manor gāvo 'bhivṛyatishṭhanta | tāni ṛishabhaḥ samaleḥ | tasya rucato yāvanto 'surāḥ upāśṛṇvāns te parābhavan |*

⁴⁵ Extracted from Weber's Indische Studien, iii. 461 f. A translation of this, as well as of the next passage, is given by Prof. Weber in the Journal of the German Oriental Society, vol. xviii. 284 ff.

⁴⁶ Roth in his Lexicon s. v. reads *Trishṇūvarūtrī*.

tau prātaritvānā abhiprāpadyetām “Vāyave Agne Vāyave Indra” iti | “kīmkāmau sthaḥ” ity abravīt | “anena tvā ṛishabheṇa yājayāva” iti | tat patnīm yajur vadantīm pratyapadyata | tasyāḥ dyām vāg ātishṭhat | tasyāḥ vadantīyāḥ yāvanto ’surāḥ upāśrinvaṁś te parābhavan | tasmād naktān strī chandrataram vadati | tau prātaritvānā abhiprāpadyetām “Vāyave Agne Vāyave Indra” iti | “kīmkāmau sthaḥ” ity abravīt | “anayā tvā patnyā yājayava” iti | sā paryagnikṛitā āsit | atha Indro ’chāyad “Manvam śraddhāderam Trishṭhāvarūtrī asura-brahmau jāyayā vyardhayotam” iti | sa āgachhat | so ’bravīd “ābhyām tvā yājayāni” iti | “na” ity abravīd “na vai aham anayor īse” iti | atithipatir vāva atithir īse” ity abravīt | tā asmai prāyaśchhat | sa prativeso vediṁ kurvaṁ āsta | tā aprīśchhatām “ko’si” iti | “brāhmaṇaḥ” iti | “katamo brāhmaṇaḥ” iti | “kim brāhmaṇasya pītarām kim u pri-chhasi mātaram | śrutaṁ ched asmin vedyam sa pītā sa pītāmahaḥ” iti | tā avittām “Indro vai” iti | tau prāpotatām | tayoṛ yāḥ prokshanīr āpaḥ āsāṁś tābhīr anurīṣṛijya śīrśhe āśchhinat | tau vṛishas cha yarāśhas cha abhavatām | tasmāt tau varsheshu śushyataḥ | adbhīr hi hatan | tām paryagnikṛitām udāsrījat | tayā ’rdhnat | tāḥ imāḥ Mānavyāḥ prajāḥ | yat paryagni-kṛitam pātnīvatam utsrījoti yām eva Manur ṛiddhim ārdhnat tām ṛiddhnoti |

“Manu had platters. All the Asuras, against whom he laid out the sacrifice with these were destroyed. Now Trishṭha and Varūtri were at that time the priests of the Asuras. The Asuras said to them, ‘ask for these six platters.’ These two arrived as morning guests, repeating the formula, ‘To Vāyu, o Agni, to Vāyu, o Indra.’ ‘What do you desire?’ asked Manu. ‘Give us these platters,’ they replied. He gave them to them. Taking them they smashed them in the forest. Then Manu’s cattle were standing round. The bull licked the platters. As many Asuras as heard him bellowing were destroyed. The two Asura priests came as morning guests, repeating the formula, ‘To Vāyu, o Agni, to Vāyu, o Indra.’ ‘What do you desire?’ enquired Manu. ‘Let us sacrifice for thee with this bull,’ they answered. He then came to his wife who was uttering a yajush. Her voice reached to the sky. As many Asuras as heard her speaking were destroyed. Hence a woman speaks more pleasantly by night. The two Asura priests arrived as morning guests, repeating the formula, ‘To Vāyu, o Agni, to Vāyu, o Indra.’ ‘What do you desire?’ asked Manu. ‘Let us sacrifice for thee with

this thy wife (as the victim),’ they replied. The fire was carried round her. Then Indra perceived, ‘Trishṭha and Varūtri, the two Asura priests are depriving the devout believer Manu of his wife.’ He came and said (to Manu), ‘Let me sacrifice for thee with these two Asura priests (for victims).’ ‘No,’ answered Manu, ‘I am not their master.’ ‘The host is master of the guest,’ rejoined Indra. Manu then gave them to him. (Standing) near them he was making an altar. They asked ‘Who art thou?’ ‘A Brāhman,’ he replied. ‘What (class of) Brāhman,’ they enquired. He rejoined (with a verse), ‘Why askest thou the father or the mother of a Brāhman? If Vedic tradition is to be discovered in him, that is his father, that his grandfather.’ They knew, ‘this is Indra.’ They fled. He threw after them the water which was there for consecration, and therewith cut off their heads. They became, (the one) a *vrisha*, (the other) a *yavasha* plant. Hence these (two plants) wither in the rains, because they were killed with water. He released her (Manu’s wife) after the fire had been carried round her. By her he prospered. These are the creatures sprung from Manu. Whenever a man releases the victim offered to Agni Pātnīvata, after fire has been carried round it, he prospers with the same prosperity with which Manu prospered.”

Compare with this a passage of the Taitt. Sanh. vi. 6, 6, 1. *Indrah patniyā Manum ayājayāt | tām paryagnikritām udasrijāt | tayā Manur ārdhnot | yat paryagnikritam pātnīvataṃ utsrijati yām eva Manur řid-dhim ārdhnot tām eva yajamāna řidhnoti |*

“Indra was sacrificing for Manu with his wife (as the victim). He released her after the fire had been carried round her. By her Manu prospered. Whenever the worshipper releases the victim offered to Agni Pātnīvata after fire has been carried round it, he prospers with the same prosperity with which Manu prospered.”

I quote the following passages also from the interest which they possess as relating to a personage so ancient and venerable as Manu is reputed to be :

Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, v. 14. *Nābhānedishṭhaṃ vai Mānavam brahma-charyam vasantam bhrātoro nirabhajan | so ’bravīt etya “kim mahyam abhākta” iti | “etam eva nishṭhāvam avavādītāram” ity obruvan | tas-mād ha apy etarhi pītaram putrāḥ “nishṭhāro ’vavādītā” ity eva ācha-kshate | sa pītaram etya abravīt “tvām ha vāva mahyam tata abhākskur”*

iti | tam pitā 'bravīd "mā putraka tad ādrithāḥ | Angiraso vai ime svargāya lokāya satram āsate | te shashṭham shashṭham eva ahar āgatya muhyanti | tūn ete sūkte shashṭhe 'hani śaṁsaya | teshāṁ yat sahasraṁ satra-pariveshaṇaṁ tat te svar yanto dāsyanti" iti | "tathā" iti | tūn upait "pratigribhṇīta Mānavam sumedhasaḥ" iti | tam abruvan "kiṁ-kāmo vadasi" iti | "idam eva vaḥ shashṭham ahaḥ prajñāpayāni" ity abravīd "atha yad vai etat sahasraṁ satra-pariveshaṇam tad me svar yanto datā" iti | "tathā" iti | tūn ete sūkte shashṭhe 'hany āśaṁsayat | tato vai te pra yajnam ājānan pra śargaṁ lokam | tad yad ete sūkte shashṭhe 'hani śaṁsati yajnasya prajñātyai svargasya lokasya anukhyāt-yai | taṁ svar yanto 'bruvann "etat te brāhmaṇa sahasram" iti | tad enaṁ samākurvāṇam puruṣaḥ kṛishṇaśa-rāsy uttarataḥ upotthāya abravīd "mama vai idam mama vai vāstuham" iti | so 'bravīd "mahyaṁ vai idam adur" iti | tam abravīt "tad vai nau tara eva pītari praśnaḥ" iti | sa pītaram ait | tam pitā 'bravīd "nanu te putraka adur" iti | "adur eva me" ity abravīt "tat tu me puruṣaḥ kṛishṇaśa-rāsy uttarataḥ upo-datishṭhat 'mama vai idaṁ mama vai vāstuham' iti ādita" iti | tam pitā 'bravīt "tasya eva putraka | tat tubhyaṁ sa dāsyati" iti | sa punar etya abravīt "tara ha vāra kilu bhagavaḥ idam iti me pitā āha" iti | so 'bravīt "tad aham tubhyam eva dadāmi yaḥ eva satyam avādīr" iti | tasmād evaṁ vidushā satyam eva caditayam | sa esha sahasra-sanir man-tro yad nābhānedishṭham | upa enaṁ sahasraṁ namati pra shashṭhena ahnā svargaṁ lokam jñāti yaḥ evaṁ veda |⁴⁷

"The brothers of Nābhānedishṭha disinherited him whilst he was living in the state of a Brahmachārin. Coming (to them) he said: 'What share have you given to me?' They replied, '(we have given thee) this judge and divider (as thy share).' In consequence sons even now speak of their father as the 'judge and divider.' He came to his father and said, 'Father, they have given thee to me as my share.' His father answered, 'Do not, my son, care about that. These Angirases are performing a sacrifice in order to (secure) the heavenly world; but as often as they come to the sixth day (of the ceremony) they become perplexed. Make them recite these two hymns (R.V. x. 61 and 62) on the sixth day; and when they are going to heaven, they will give

⁴⁷ This passage has been already translated into German by Prof. R. Roth, Journal of the German Oriental Society, vi. 244, and into English by Prof. Max Müller in his Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 423 f., and by Dr. M. Haug in his Ait. Br. vol. ii. p. 341 f.

thee that provision of a thousand⁴⁸ which has been made for the sacrifice.' He said, 'So be it.' He approached them, saying, 'Receive me, the son of Manu, ye sages.' They replied, 'With what object dost thou speak?' He said, 'Let me make known to you this sixth day; and then you shall give me this sacrificial provision of a thousand, when ye are going to heaven.' 'Let it be so,' they answered. He made them repeat these two hymns on the sixth day. They then knew the sacrifice, and the heavenly world. Hence when any one repeats these two hymns on the sixth day, it is with a view to a knowledge of the sacrifice, and to the revelation of the heavenly world. When they were going to the heavenly world, they said to him, 'This thousand, o Brāhman,⁴⁹ is thine.' As he was collecting (the thousand) a man in dark clothing rose up before him from the north, and said, 'This is mine; what remains on the spot is mine.' Nābhānedishṭha replied: 'But they have given it to me.' (The man) rejoined: 'It belongs to (one of) us; let thy father be asked.' He went to his father, who enquired: 'Have they not given thee (the thousand), my son?' 'They did give it to me,' he replied, 'but a man in dark clothes rose up before me from the north, and took it from me, saying, 'This is mine; what remains on the spot is mine.'" His father said: 'It is his; but he will give it to thee.' He returned, and said (to the man): 'This is thine, reverend sir, so my father says.' (The man) replied: 'I will give it to thee, who hast spoken the truth.' Wherefore one who has this knowledge should speak only truth. That is a hymn which bestows a thousand, that Nābhānedishṭha hymn. A thousand falls to his lot, he knows the heavenly world on the sixth day—the man who knows this."

Taittirīya Sanhitā, iii. 1, 9, 4. *Manuḥ putrebhyo dāyaṁ vyabhajat | sa Nābhānedishṭham brahmacharryaṁ vasantaṁ nirabhajat | sa āgachhat | so 'bravīt "kathā mā nirabhūg" iti | "na tvā nirabhāksham" ity abravīt "Angirasaḥ ime satram āsate te suvargam lokam na prajānanti | tebhyāḥ idam brāhmaṇam brūhi | te suvargam lokam yanto ye eṣhām paśavas tāṁs te dāsyanti" iti | tad ebhyo 'bravīt | te suvargam*

⁴⁸ See R.V. x. 62, 7.

⁴⁹ The application of this title to Nābhānedishṭha is to be remarked, as his father Manu is recorded in the Puranic legends as ancestor of the solar race of kings. See the passage from the M. Bh. i. 3135 ff., quoted above, p. 126.

*lokam yanto ye eshām paśavaḥ ūsaṁs tām asmai adaduḥ | tam paśubhiś
charaṇtam yajna-vāstau Rudraḥ āgachhat | so'bravīt "mama vai ime
paśavaḥ" iti | "adur vai mahyam imān" ity abravīt | "na vai tasya te
īśate" ity abravīt | "yad yajnavāstau hiyate mama vai tad" iti | tas-
mād yājnavāstu na abhyavetyam | so'bravīt | "yajne mā bhaja atha t'
paśūn na abhimaṁsyē" iti | tasmai etam manthinaḥ saṁsrāvaṁ ajukot |
tato vai tasya Rudro paśūn na abhyamanyata | yatra etam eva vidvān
manthinaḥ saṁsrāvaṁ juhōti na tatra Rudraḥ paśūn abhimanīyate |*

"Manu divided his property among his sons. He disinherited his son Nābhānedishṭha who was living as a Brahmachārin. He came and said, 'How hast thou disinherited me?' 'I have not disinherited thee,' replied (his father); 'these Angirases are celebrating a sacrifice; they do not know the heavenly world; declare to them this Brāhmaṇa; and when they are going to heaven, they will give thee the cattle they have.' He declared the Brāhmaṇa to them, and when they were going to heaven they gave him the cattle they had. Rudra came to him as he was on the place of sacrifice employed with the cattle and said: 'These are my cattle.' 'But,' replied Nābhānedishṭha, 'they have given them to me.' 'They have not power to do so; that which is left on the place of sacrifice is mine,' answered Rudra. Hence the place of sacrifice must not be approached. (Rudra further) said: 'Give me a share in the sacrifice, and I shall not injure thy cattle.' He offered him this libation of soma and flour. Then Rudra did not injure his cattle. Whenever any one knows this libation of soma and flour and offers it up, Rudra does not injure his cattle."⁵⁰

A passage, quoted above, p. 26 f., from the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, vi. 5,

⁵⁰ The reader who knows German, and wishes to see an able discussion of the question, whether the legend of Nābhānedishṭha, as given in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, has any real connection with the two hymns of the Rīg-veda (x. 61 and 62) which are referred to in it, and whether it contains any reminiscence, or symbolical representation, of ancient historical events, may consult Prof. Roth's paper on the subject, in the 6th vol. of the Journal of the German Oriental Society, pp. 243 ff. The learned writer settles both questions in the negative, maintaining that the legend is manufactured out of certain mis-interpreted allusions in the hymns, with the view of asserting the superiority of priestly knowledge to earthly power and worldly wealth, and that there never existed either a Nābhānedishṭha or a Manu. The object which I have in view in the collection of these texts does not require that I should express any opinion on these points. I only seek to ascertain what were the traditions received by the most ancient Indian writers themselves regarding the origin of their race, and not what was the historical value of those traditions.

6, 1 ff., may perhaps also be considered as affirming the descent of men from Manu when it declares them to be the offspring of Vivasvat: since the latter is regarded as the father of Manu.

In the Chhândogya Upanishad, iii. 11, 4 (p. 178 of Bibliotheca Indica, vol. iii.) the following reference to Manu occurs:

Tad ha etad Brahmā Prajāpataye Prajāpatir Manave Manuḥ prajābhyaḥ | tad ha etad Uddālakāya Ārunaye putrāya jyeshthāya pitā brahma provācha |

“This (doctrine) Brahmā declared to Prajāpati, Prajāpati to Manu, Manu to (his) offspring. This sacred truth was declared to his eldest son Uddālaka Aruṇi by his father.”

The first half of this passage is repeated in viii. 15, 1, of the same work (p. 625).

In his commentary on the former of the two passages, Sankara Āchāryya gives this explanation:

Brahmā Hiranyagarbho Virāje Prajāpataye uvācha | so 'pi Manave | Manur Ikshvāke-ādibhyaḥ prajābhyaḥ provācha |

“Brahmā Hiranyagarbha declared it to the Prajāpati Virāj; he to Manu; and Manu declared it to his descendants Ikshvāku and the rest.”

In his note on the second passage, viii. 15, 1, he varies somewhat in his explanation of the personages by whom the doctrine was transmitted:

Brahmā Hiranyagarbhaḥ Paramēśvaro vā tad-dvāreṇa Prajāpataye Kaśyapāya uvācha | asūr api Manave sva-putrāya | Manuḥ prajābhyaḥ |

“Brahmā Hiranyagarbha, or the supreme Lord (Paramēśvara) through his instrumentality, declared it to the Prajāpati Kaśyapa; he to his son Manu; Manu to his descendants.”

In these two passages of the Chhândogya Upanishad Brahmā is distinguished from Prajāpati, and Prajāpati from Manu, who again is said to have handed down the doctrine, not to any one person in particular, but “to the offspring,” or “descendants” (*prajābhyaḥ*), apparently his own descendants. This Upanishad therefore seems to coincide in the doctrine of the hymns, and of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, that Manu was the progenitor of mankind. The Commentator, it will have been noticed, in one place declares that Prajāpati is identifiable with Virāj, and again that Kaśyapa is to be understood under that appellation. Virāj and Kaśyapa are not, however, generally regarded as the same.

Nor is Kaśyapa commonly considered to be Manu's father. In the passages from the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, and Mahābhārata, quoted above, pp. 115 and 126, Kaśyapa is said to be the father of Vivasvat, and he again of Manu.

However this may be, as Manu is said to have handed down the sacred tradition to his descendants, we must suppose that those descendants included the whole of the progenitors of the Aryan Indians who were worthy of being made the depositaries of such a tradition; and must therefore conclude that the Chhāndogya Upanishad agrees with the passage quoted above, p. 126, from the Mahābhārata, in recognizing Manu as the progenitor of the Brāhmins, as well as the other castes.

SECT. III.—*Extracts from the Mahābhārata regarding Manu.*

I have already adduced in the preceding chapter, page 126, an important passage of the Mahābhārata, Ādiparvan verses 3128 ff., in which Manu Vaivasvata is expressly declared to have been the progenitor of mankind including the four castes. A legend of the deluge, corresponding to the one which has been adduced from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, in the last section, is also to be found in the Vana-parvan of the Mahābhārata, and although it does not represent Manu as the parent from whom the human race was reproduced, but as the creator by whom the world was renewed, after the flood, I shall extract the entire text. Its style of narration is tedious, when compared with the quaint brevity of the Brāhmaṇa; but I shall condense it as much as possible in the translation. It begins thus, verse 12747 :

*Mārkaṇḍeya uvācha | Vivasvataḥ suto rājan maharshiḥ supratāparān |
bābhūva nara-śārdūla Prajāpati-sama-dyutiḥ | ojasū tejasū lakshmyā
tapasū cha viśeshataḥ | atichakrāma pitaram Manuḥ svām cha pitāmahaṁ |
ūrdhva-bāhur viśālāyām Badaryām sa narādhipaḥ | eka-pāda-sthitas
tīram chachāra sumahat tapaḥ | 12750. Avāk-śrās tathā chāpi netrair
animishair dridham | so 'tapyata tapo ghoraṁ varshāṇām ayutaṁ tadā |
taṁ kadūchit tapasyantam ādrachīraṁ jatā-dharam | Chīrīṇī-tīram
ūgamyā matsyo vachanam abravīt | “bhagavan kshudra-matsyo 'smi bala-
vadbhyo bhayam mama | matsyebhyo hi tato mām tram trātum arhasi su-
vrata | durbalam balavanto hi matsyam matsyā viśeshataḥ | āsvadanti sadā
vrīttir vikitā naḥ sanātānī | tasmād bhayaughād mahato majjantam mām
viśeshataḥ | trātum arhasi karttāsmi kṛite pratikṛitām tava” | 12755.*

Sa matsya-vachanaṁ śrutvā kṛipayā 'bhipariplutaḥ | Manur Vairasvato
'grihnāt tam matsyaṁ pāṇinā svayam | udakāntam upāniya matsyaṁ
Vairasvato Manuḥ | alinjire prākshipat tam chandrāmśu - sadṛiṣa-
prabhe | sa tatra varṛidhe rājan matsyaḥ parama - satkṛitaḥ | pu-
travat svīkarot tasmai Manur bhāvam viśeshataḥ | atha kālena mahatā
sa matsyaḥ sumahān abhūt | alinjire yathā chaiva nāsau samabhavat
kila | atha matsyo Manuṁ dṛishṭvā punar erābhyabhāshata | “bha-
gavan sādhu me 'dyānyat sthānaṁ sampratipādaya” | 12760. Uddhṛi-
tyālinjirāt tasmāt tataḥ sa bhugavān Manuḥ | tam matsyam anayaḍ
vāpīm mahatīm sa Manus tadā | tatra tam prākshipack chāpi Manuḥ
para-puranjaya | athāvarddhata matsyaḥ sa punar varsha-gaṇān ba-
hūn | dvī-yojanāyatā vāpī vistrītā chāpi yojanam | tasyāṁ nāsau sama-
bharat matsyo rājīva-lochanah | richeshṭitūṁ cha Kaunteya matsyo vā-
pyāṁ viśāmpate | Manuṁ matsyas tato dṛishṭvā punar erābhyabhāshata |
“naya mām bhagavan sādho samudra-mahishīm priyām | Gangāṁ tatra
nivatsyāmi yathā vā tāta mānyase | 12765. Nideśe hi mayā tubhyaṁ
sthātavyam anasūyatā | vṛiddhir hi paramā prāptā tvat-kṛite hi mayā
'nagha” | eram ukto Manur matsyam anayaḍ bhagarān vaśi | nadiṁ
Gangāṁ tatra chainam svayam prākshipad achyutaḥ | sa tatra varṛidhe
matsyaḥ kanchit kālam arindama | tataḥ punar Manuṁ dṛishṭvā mat-
syo vachanam abravīt | “Gangūyāṁ na hi śaknōmi bṛihatvāch cheshṭitum
prabho | samudraṁ naya mām āśu prasīda bhagarann” iti | uddhṛitya
Gangā-salilāt tato matsyam Manuḥ svayam | samudram anayaḍ pārtha
tatra chainam avāśrijat | 12770. Sumahān api matsyas tu sa Manor
nayatas tadā | āsīt yatheshṭa-hāryyaścha sparśa-gandha-sukhaścha vai |
yadā samudre prakshipat sa matsyo Manuṁ tadā | tata enam idaṁ
vākyaṁ smayamāna ivābravīt | “bhagavan hi kṛitā rakṣhā trayā sarvā
viśeshataḥ | prāpta-kālāṁ tu yat kāryyaṁ trayā tach chhṛūyatūṁ
mama | achirād bhagavan bhaumam idaṁ sthāvara-jangamam | sarvam
eva mahābhāga pralayaṁ vai gamishyati | samprakṣhālana-kālo 'yaṁ
lokānāṁ samupasthitaḥ | tasmāt tvām bodhayāmy adya yat te hitam
anuttamam | trasānāṁ sthāvarānāṁ cha yach chengam yach cha nen-
goti | tasya sarvasya samprāptaḥ kālāḥ parama-dūruṇāḥ | nauś cha
kārayitavyā te dṛiḍhā yukta-vaṭārakā | tatra saptarshibhiḥ sārddham
āruhetḥā mahāmune | vījāni chaiva sarvāṇi yathoktāni dvijaiḥ purā |
tasyām ārohayer nāvi susanguptāni bhūgaśah | nau-sthaś cha mām
pratiksṭhās tato muni-jana-priya | āgamishyāmy ahaṁ śṛiṅgī vijne-

yas tena tãpasa | evam etat trayã kãryam ãprishtho 'si vrayãmy aham |
tã na śakyã mahatyo vai ãpas tarttum mayã rinã | 12780. Nãbhi-
śankyam idaĩ chãpi vachanam me trayã vibho" | "evãĩ karishye"
iti taĩ sa matsyam pratyabhũshata | jagmatũs cha yathakãmam anu-
jñãpya parasparam | tato Manur mahãrãja yathoktam matsyakena ha |
vijãny ãdãya sarvãĩĩ sãgaram puplucẽ tadã | naukayã śubhayã vira
mahormĩnam arindama | chintayãmãsa cha Manus tam matsyam pri-
thirĩpate | sa cha tach-chintitaĩ jñãtvã matsyag̃ parapuranjaya | śringĩ
tatrãjagãmãsũ tadã Bharata-sattama | taĩ drishṭvã manuja-vyũghra
Manur matsyam̃ jalãrñave | 12785. Śringĩnam̃ taĩ yathoktena rūpenã-
drim ivochhritam | vaṭãrakamayam pãśam atha matsyasya mũrdhani |
Manur manuja-śãrdũla tasmiñ śringe nyaveśayat | saĩnyatas tena pãśena
matsyag̃ para-puranjaya | vegena mahatã nãvam prãkarshal lavaĩam-
bhasi | sa cha taĩĩs tãrayan nãvã samudram manujẽśvara | nrĩtyamãnam
ivormĩbhir garjamãnam ivãmbhasã | kshobhyamãñũ mahãvãtaiḥ sã naus
tasmiñ mahodadhau | ghũrnate chapaleva strĩ mattã para-puranjaya |
naiva bhũmir na cha diśag̃ pradiśo vã chakãśire | 12790. Sarvam ãm-
bhasam evãsit kham̃ dyauś cha narapungava | evambhũte tadã loke sankule
Bharatarshabha | adṛĩsyanta saptarshyag̃ Manur matsyas tathãiva cha |
evam bahũn varsha-gaĩũn taĩ nãvam so 'tha matsyakag̃ | chakarshãtandrito
rãjañ tasmiñ salila-sanchaye | tato Himavataḥ śringam̃ yat param Bharatar-
shabha | tatrãkarshat tato nãvam̃ sa matsyag̃ Kurunandana | athãbravĩt
tadã matsyas tãn rishĩn prahasanaĩĩ | "asmiñ Himavataḥ śringe nãvam̃
badhnũta mãchiram" | sã buddhã tatra tãĩs tũrnam̃ rishibhir Bharatarsha-
bha | 12795. Naur matsyasya vachag̃ śrutvã śringe Himavatas tadã | tach
cha Naubandhanaĩ nãmu śringam̃ Himavataḥ param | khyãtam adyãpi
Kaunteya tud viddhi Bharatarshabha | athãbrauĩd anismishas tãn rishĩn
sa hitas tadã | "aham̃ Prajãpatir Brahmã yat-param̃ nũdhigamyate |
matsya-rũpenã yũyaĩ cha mayã 'smũd mokshitã bhayãt | Manunã cha
prajãḥ sarvãḥ sa-devãsura-mãnushãḥ | srasṭtaryũḥ sarva-lokãś cha yach
chengũm̃ yach cha nengati | tapasã chãpi tĩcreña pratibhã 'sya bhavish-
yati | mat-prasãdũt prajã-sarge na cha moham̃ gamishyati" | 12800. Ity
uktvã vachanam̃ matsyag̃ kshanẽnãdarśanaĩĩ gataḥ | srasṭu-kũmah̃ prajãś
chãpi Manur Vaivasvataḥ svayam̃ | pramũdho 'bhũt prajã-sarge tapas tepe
mahat tataḥ | tapasã mahatã yuktã so 'tha srasṭum̃ prachakrame | sar-
vãḥ prajã Manuḥ sãkshãd yathãvad Bharatarshabha | ity etad mãtsyakam̃
nãma purãnam̃ parikĩrttitam̃ |

“12747. Mārkaṇḍeya said: There was a great rishi Manu, son of Vivasvat, majestic, in lustre equal to Prajāpati. In energy, fiery vigour, prosperity, and austere fervour he surpassed both his father and his grandfather. Standing with uplifted arm, on one foot, on the spacious Badari, he practised intense austere fervour. 12750. This direful exercise he performed, with his head downwards,⁵¹ and with unwinking eyes, for 10,000 years. Once, when, clad in dripping rags, with matted hair, he was so engaged, a fish came to him on the banks of the Chīriṇī, and spake: ‘Lord, I am a small fish; I dread the stronger ones, and from them you must save me. For the stronger fish devour the weaker; this has been immemorially ordained as our means of subsistence. Deliver me from this flood of apprehension in which I am sinking, and I will requite the deed.’ 12755. Hearing this, Manu, filled with compassion, took the fish in his hand, and bringing him to the water threw him into a jar bright as a moon-beam. In it the fish, being excellently tended, grew; for Manu treated him like a son. After a long time he became very large, and could not be contained in the jar. Then, seeing Manu, he said again: ‘In order that I may thrive, remove me elsewhere.’ 12760. Manu then took him out of the jar, brought him to a large pond, and threw him in. There he continued to grow for very many years. Although the pond was two *yojanas* long, and one *yojana* broad, the lotus-eyed fish found in it no room to move; and again said to Manu: ‘Take me to Gangā, the dear queen of the ocean-monarch; in her I shall dwell; or do as thou thinkest best, (12765) for I must contentedly submit to thy authority, as through thee I have exceedingly increased.’ Manu accordingly took the fish and threw him into the river Gangā. There he waxed for some time, when he again said to Manu: ‘From my great bulk I cannot move in the Gangā; be gracious and remove me quickly to the ocean.’ Manu took him out of the Gangā; and cast him into the sea. 12770. Although so huge, the fish was easily borne, and pleasant to touch and smell, as Manu carried him. When he had been thrown into the ocean he said to Manu: ‘Great lord, thou hast in every way preserved me: now hear from me what thou must do when the

⁵¹ He could not have stood on one foot and with his head downwards (if this means standing on his head) at one and the same time. The text may mean that these attitudes were successively adopted.

time arrives. Soon shall all these terrestrial objects, both fixed and moving, be dissolved. The time for the purification of the worlds has now arrived. I therefore inform thee what is for thy greatest good. 12775. The period dreadful for the universe, moving and fixed, has come. Make for thyself a strong ship, with a cable attached; embark in it with the seven rishis, and stow in it, carefully preserved and assorted, all the seeds which have been described of old by Brāhmans.⁵² When embarked in the ship, look out for me: I shall come recognizable by my horn. So shalt thou do; I greet thee and depart. These great waters cannot be crossed over without me. 12780. Distrust not my word.' Manu replied, 'I shall do as thou hast said.' After taking mutual leave they departed each on his own way. Manu then, as enjoined, taking with him the seeds, floated on the billowy ocean in the beautiful ship. He then thought on the fish, which, knowing his desire, arrived with all speed, distinguished by a horn. When Manu saw the horned leviathan, lofty as a mountain, he fastened the ship's cable to the horn. Being thus attached, the fish dragged the ship with great rapidity, transporting it across the briny ocean which seemed to dance with its waves and thunder with its waters. Tossed by the tempests, the ship whirled like a reeling and intoxicated woman. Neither the earth, nor the quarters of the world appeared; (12790) there was nothing but water, air, and sky. In the world thus confounded, the seven rishis, Manu, and the fish were beheld. So, for very many years, the fish, unwearied, drew the ship over the waters; and brought it at length to the highest peak of Himavat. He then, smiling gently, said to the rishis, 'Bind the ship without delay to this peak.' They did so accordingly. 12795. And that highest peak of Himavat is still known by the name of Naubandhana ('the Binding of the Ship'). The friendly fish (or god, *anīmisha*) then said to the rishis, 'I am the Prajāpati Brāhmā, than whom nothing higher can be reached. In the form of a fish I have delivered you from this great danger. Manu shall create all living beings, gods, asuras, MEN, with all worlds, and all things moving and fixed. By my favour and through severe austere fervour, he shall attain perfect insight into his creative work, and shall not be-

⁵² The S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa is silent as to these seeds, as well as to the seven rishis; but it is possible that the reference here made to them may have been borrowed from some other ancient source.

come bewildered.' 12800. Having thus spoken, the fish in an instant disappeared. Manu, desirous to call creatures into existence and bewildered in his work, performed a great act of austere fervour; and then began visibly to create all living beings. This which I have narrated is known as the Mātsyaka Purāṇa (or 'Legend of the Fish').'

It will be observed that towards the close of this narrative it is stated that Manu (not Brahmā himself) was the creator of Men, as well of gods and asuras; and that no reference is made to the formation of separate castes.

The commentators seem disinclined to take this legend in its literal sense. We shall see below what reason the scholiast on the Bhāgavata Purāṇa assigns for this procedure. The following are some of the remarks of the Commentator Nīlakanṭha on the above passage of the Mahābhārata :

"*Manoḥ*" *manute ity abhīmānātmake 'hankāro Manuḥ | viśeṣeṇa* *vaste āchhādayati chit-prakāśam iti viveka-jñānam tad-vān vīrasvān mā-* *yāvī īśvaraḥ "māyinaṁ tu mahēśvaram" iti śruteḥ | tasya Vīrasvatasya* *charitam sancharaṇam | "avidyā-nāśe saty āvidyako 'hankāraḥ katham* *sancharati | nahi tantu-dāhe paṭas tishṭhati" ity ākṣhepaḥ | . . . atra* *para-brahmaṇa eva rūpāntaram matsyākhyo jīvaḥ | so 'hankāreṇa Manunā* *uttarottara-śreṣṭhesku alinjirādi-rūpesku sthūla-dehesku tapo-balād ni-* *pātyate | sa cha samudrākhye vairāje dehe nīpātitaś cha kalpānte avidyā-* *nāśa-rūpe saty api dūdha-(dagdha?) -paṭa-nyāyena anuvarttamānam* *ahankāraṁ saptarshi-sanjnakaīḥ prāṇādibhiḥ vija-sanjnaiḥ prārabdha-* *karmabhiś cha sahitaṁ charama-deha-nāvy ārūḍham vāsana-varatrayā jīva-* *matsyena pralaya-kāle 'py ūhyamānam meru-śringa same 'chale bhavato* *(Himavad-?) rūpe sadvāsana-yā labdhāspadam vīlinam anulakṣhya jīva-* *matsyo 'darśanam prāptaḥ | ati-viline hy ahankāre jīvatvam naśyati |* *sa punar nirasta-jīva-bhāvo 'hankāro brahma-rūpatām āpanno yathā* *pūrvam vāsana-yā jagat srijati | naśṭe 'py avidyākhye kāraṇe saṁsāra-* *bhāna-lakṣhaṇaṁ kāryaṁ chakra-bhramam iva kanchit kālam anuvart-* *tate ity adhyāya-tātparyam | akṣharārthas te ityādi |*

"'Manu,' that which imagines, denotes the consciousness of self (*ahankāra*), consisting in the idea that objects refer to one's self (*abhi-māna*).⁵³ 'Vivasvat' is he who possesses the discriminating knowledge that (such and such a thing) obscures the light of the mind, i.e.

⁵³ See Colebrooke's Misc. Essays, vol. i. 212.

he is the Illuder, Īśvara, for the Veda⁵⁴ speaks of 'Maheśvara the Illuder.' It is the 'history,' the action, of this son of Vivasvat, that is related. It is objected, 'how can Ahankāra, which arises from ignorance, operate when ignorance is destroyed?' for when the threads are burnt the cloth no longer remains' . . . Here the embodied soul, called in this passage a 'Fish,' is only another form of the supreme Brahma. This 'Fish' is thrown by 'Manu,' who is Ahankāra, through the power of austere fervour, into gross bodies, here represented by 'a jar,' 'a pond,' etc., which gradually rise in excellence. Being at last cast into the body of Virāj, called 'the ocean,' although 'the close of the Kalpa' means the destruction of ignorance, still the embodied soul denoted by the 'Fish,' contemplating Ahankāra still remaining like the ashes of burnt cloth, then entering, along with the breath and other vital airs named 'the seven rishis,' and the works of a former birth designated as 'seeds,' into the ship which signifies its last body, and then borne along even in the period of dissolution by the embodied soul itself symbolized as a 'Fish,' by means of the 'rope' of the remaining consciousness of past perceptions (*vāsanā*), obtaining at length through a consciousness of former perceptions, which were pure (*sad-vāsanā*), a resting-place on a mountain like the peak of Meru, represented by the Himavat (ः), and finally dissolved;—the embodied soul under the figure of a 'Fish' having contemplated all this,—vanishes. For when Ahankāra has become entirely dissolved, the state of the embodied soul ceases. Then Ahankāra, after the state of the embodied soul has been dispelled, obtains the condition of Brahma; but by its consciousness of past perceptions creates the world as before. Even when the cause called ignorance has been destroyed, the effect in the shape of the semblance of the world continues for some time, like the revolution of a wheel. Such is signification of the section."

According to this allegorical interpretation "Vivasvat," father of Manu, represents Īśvara, the Illuder. "Manu" is Ahankāra, or self-consciousness. The "Fish" is the embodied soul, which fancies itself to be, but is not, distinct from the Supreme spirit. Ahankāra, denoted by 'Manu,' places the embodied soul, symbolized by the "Fish," in a variety of bodies gradually increasing in excellence, which are signified

⁵⁴ The words are taken from one of the Upanishads, to which, at the time of correcting this sheet, I am unable to give the necessary reference.

by the "jar," "pond," "Gangā," and "ocean." Although the end of the Kalpa means the removal of ignorance, still Ahankāra continues for a time; and along with the "seven rishis," who stand for the vital airs, and the "seeds," which are former works, embarks on the "ship," which is its last body, and is drawn over the ocean by the embodied soul by means of a "rope," which signifies the consciousness of former perceptions. Ahankāra at length finds a resting-place, denoted by Mount Himavat; and when it has been destroyed, the embodied soul vanishes. Ahankāra, however, passes into the form of Brahma, and, through the operation of the cause explained by the Commentator, creates the world anew.

It is scarcely necessary to remark that the narrator of the legend himself appears to have had no idea of making it the vehicle of any Vedantic allegory such as is here propounded.

The following is another version of the same legend from the Matsya Purāṇa :

i. 12.⁵⁵ *Purā rājā Manur nāma chīrnavān vipulaṁ tapaḥ | putre rāj-yaṁ samāropya kshamāvān Ravi-nandanah | 13. Malayasyaika-deśe tu sarvātmagūṇa-saṁyutaḥ | sama-duḥkha-sukho vīraḥ prōptavān yogam uttamam | 14. Vachanaṁ⁵⁶ varadaś chāsya varshāyuta-śate gate | "va-ruṁ vṛṇīṣhva" procācha prītātmā Kamalāsanaḥ | 15. Eram ukto 'bra-vid rājā prajāmya sa Pitāmaham | "ekam evāham icchāmi tratto varam anuttamam | 16. Bhūta-grāmasya sarvasya sthāvarasya charasya cha | bhareyaṁ rakṣaṇāyālam pralaye samupasthite" | 17. "Eram astr" iti viśvātmā tatiravāntaradhīyata | pushpa-vṛṣṭiś cha mahatī khāt papāta surārpitā | 18. Kadāchid āsrame tasya kurvataḥ pitṛi-tarpanam | pa-pāta pāṇyor upari śapharī jala-saṁyutā | 19. Drishṭvā tuch-chhapharī-rūpaṁ sa dayālur mahīpatiḥ | rakṣaṇāyākarod yatnaṁ sa tasmīn ka-rakodare | 20. Ahorātrena chaikena shodāśāṅgula-viśṭritāḥ | so 'bhavad matsya-rūpeṇa "pāhi pāhiti" chābravit | 21. Sa tam ādāya manike prā-kshipaj jala-chāriṇam | tatrāpi chaikarātrena hasta-trayam avarddhata | 22. Punaḥ prāhārttanādena Sahasrakiraṇātmajam | sa matsyaḥ "pāhi pāhiti" "tvām ahaṁ śaraṇaṁ gataḥ" | 23. Tataḥ sa kūpe tam mat-syam prāhīnoḍ Ravi-nandanah | yadā na māti tatrapi kūpe matsyaḥ*

⁵⁵ This passage is extracted in Professor Aufrecht's Catalogue of the Bodleian Sanskrit MSS. p. 347.

⁵⁶ The Taylor MS. reads *babhūva*, instead of *vachanam*.

sarovare | 24. *Kshiptaḥ sa prithutām āgāt punar yojana-sammitām | tatrāpy āha punar dīnaḥ* “*pāhi pāhi nṛipottama*” | 25. *Tataḥ sa Manuṇā kshipto Gangāyām apy avaraddhata | yadā tadā samudre tam prākshipad medinīpatih |* 26. *Yadā samudram akhilaṁ vyāpyāsau samavasthitaḥ | tadā prāha Manur bhītaḥ* “*lo 'pi tram asuretarah |* 27. *Athavā Vāsudevas tram anya idṛik katham bhavet | yojanāyuta-vimśatyā kasya tulyam bhavet rapuḥ |* 28. *Jnūtas tram matsya-rūpeṇa mām khedayasi Kēśava | Hṛishikeśa jagannātha jagad-dhāma namo 'stu te*” | 29. *Evam uktoḥ sa bhagavān matsya-rūpi Janārdanaḥ |* “*sādhu sādhu*” *ili chovācha* “*samyag jnātām trayā 'nagha |* 30. *Achireṇaiva kālena medinī medinīpate | bhaviṣhyati jale magnā sā-saila-vana-kānanā |* 31. *Nour iyaṁ sarva-devānām nikāyena vinimīta | mahā-jīva-nikāyasya rakṣaṇārtham mahīpate |* 32. *Svedāndajodbhijā jīvā ye cha jīvā jarāyujāḥ | asyaṁ nidhāya sarvāṁs tām anarthāt*⁵⁷ *pāhi svrata |* 33. *Yugānta-vātābhikātā yadā chalati naur nṛipa | śṛinge 'smīn mama rājendra tademām saṁyamishyasi |* 34. *Tato layānte sarvasya sthāvarasya charasya cha | prajāpatih tram bhavitā jagataḥ prithivī-pate |* 35. *Evam kṛite mahārāja*⁵⁸ *sarvajno dhṛitimān ṛishih | manvantarādhipoś chāpi dera-pūjyo bhaviṣhyasi |* 36. *Adhyāya ii. Sūta uvācha |* 1. *Evam ukto Manus tena paprachhāsura-sūdanam | varshair kiyaadbhir bhagavan bhaviṣhyaty antara-kshayaḥ |* 2. *Sattrāṇi cha katham nātha rakṣishye Madhu-sūdana | trayū saha punar yoguḥ katham vā bhavitā mama |* 3. *Śrī-matsya uvācha | adya-prabhṛity anāvṛiṣṭir bhaviṣhyati mahītale | yāvad varsha-śataṁ sāgraṁ durbhikṣhaṁ narakāraham |* 4. *Tato 'lpa-sattra-kshayaḍā raśmayuḥ sapta dāruṇāḥ | sapta-sapter bhaviṣhyanti protaptāṅgāra-varshinaḥ |* 5. *Aurrānalo 'pi vikṛitīm gamiṣhyati yuga-kshaye | riṣhūgnis chāpi pātālāt sankarshana-mukha-chyutaḥ |* 6. *Bhavasypāpi lolāṭotthas tṛitīya-nayanānalaḥ | jagad dagdhaṁ tathā kshobhaṁ gamiṣhyati mahā-mate |* 7. *Evam dagdhā mahi sarvā yadā syād bhasma-sannibhā*⁵⁹ *| ākāśam uṣhmaṇā taptam bhaviṣhyati parantapa |* 8. *Tataḥ sa-deva-nakshatraṁ jagad yāsyati sankshayan | saṁvartto bhīmanāduś cha droṇaś chandṛo*⁶⁰ *balāhakaḥ |* 9. *Vidyutpatākaḥ śoṇāmbuḥ saptaite laya-vāridāḥ | agni-prasveda-sambhūtāḥ plāvayishyanti medinīm |* 10. *Samudrāḥ kshobham āgatya*

⁵⁷ Instead of *anarthāt* the Taylor MS. reads *anāthān*.

⁵⁸ The Taylor MS. reads here *evam kṛita-yugasāyāda*.

⁵⁹ *Kūrma-sannibhā* | Taylor MS.

⁶⁰ The Taylor and Gaikowar MSS. have *chandro*.

*chaikatrena vyavasthitāḥ | etad ekārṇavam sarvam karishyanti jagat-tra-
yam | 11. Divyāṁ nāvam⁶¹ imāṁ grīhya sarva-vījāni sarvaśaḥ | āropya
rajjvā yogena mat-prayuktena suvrata | 12. Saṁyamya nāvam mach-
chhringe mat-prabhāvābhīrakshitāḥ | ekaḥ sthāsyasi deveshu dagdhesv api
parantapa | 13. Soma-sūryāv aham Brahmā chatur-loka-samanvitaḥ |
Narmadā cha nadī punyā Mārkaṇḍeyo mahān ṛishiḥ | 14. Bhavo vedāḥ
purāṇāṁ cha vidyābhīḥ sarvato vṛitam | trayā sārddham idaṁ sarvaṁ
sthāsyaty antara-sankshaye | 15. Evam ekārṇave jāte Chākshushāntara-
sankshaye | vedān pravarttayishyāmi trat-sargādau mahīpate | 16. Sūta
urūcha | Evam uktrā sa bhagavāns tatraivāntaradhīyata | Manur apy
āsthito yogam Vāsudeva-prasādam | 17. Athābhūch cha tathā-bhūtaḥ
samplavaḥ pūrva-sūchitaḥ | kālē yathokte sanjāte Vāsudeva-mukhodyate |
18. Śringī prādurbabhūvātha matsya-rūpī Janārdanaḥ | Ananto rajju-
rūpeṇa Manoh pārśvam upāgamat | 19. Bhūta-saṅgān samākṛishya yoge-
nāropya dharmavit | bhujanga-rajjvā matsyasya śrīnge nāvam ayojayat |
20. Uparyy upasthitas tasyāḥ pranīpatya Janārdanam | ābhūta-samplave
tasminn atīte yoga-śāyinā | 21. Prishṭena Manunā proktam purāṇam
matsyarūpiṇā | tad idānim pravakshyāmi śrīnūdhvam ṛishi-sattamāḥ |*

“12. Formerly a heroic king called Manu, the patient son of the Sun, endowed with all good qualities, indifferent to pain and pleasure, after investing his son with the royal authority, practised intense austere fervour, (13) in a certain region of Malaya (Malabar), and attained to transcendent union with the Deity (*yoga*). 14. When a million years had elapsed, Brahmā became pleased and disposed to bestow a boon, which he desired Manu to choose. 15. Bowing before the father of the world the monarch said, ‘I desire of thee this one incomparable boon, that when the dissolution of the universe arrives I may have power to preserve all existing things, whether moving or stationary.’ 17. ‘So be it,’ said the Soul of all things, and vanished on the spot; when a great shower of flowers, thrown down by the gods, fell from the sky. 18. Once as, in his hermitage, Manu offered the oblation to the Manes, there fell, upon his hands, along with some water, a Sūpharī fish (a carp), (19) which the kind-hearted king perceiving, strove to preserve in his water-jar. 20. In one day and night the fish grew to the size of sixteen fingers, and cried, ‘preserve me, preserve me.’ 21. Manu then took and threw him into a large pitcher, where in one night he

⁶¹ The Taylor MS. reads *veda-nāvam*, “the ship of the Vedas.”

increased three cubits, (22) and again cried, with the voice of one distressed, to the son of Vivasvat, 'preserve me, preserve me, I have sought refuge with thee.' 23. Manu next put him into a well, and when he could not be contained even in that, (24) he was thrown into a lake, where he attained to the size of a *yojana*; but still cried in humble tones, 'preserve me, preserve me.' 25. When, after being flung into the *Gangā* he increased there also, the king threw him into the ocean. 26. When he filled the entire ocean, Manu said, in terror, 'Thou art some god, (27) or thou art *Vāsudeva*; how can any one else be like this? Whose body could equal 200,000 *yojanas*? 28. Thou art recognised under this form of a fish, and thou tormentest me, *Keśava*; reverence be to thee, *Hrishikeśa*, lord of the world, abode of the universe!' 29. Thus addressed, the divine *Janārdana*, in the form of a fish, replied: 'Thou hast well spoken, and hast rightly known me. 30. In a short time the earth with its mountains, groves, and forests, shall be submerged in the waters. 31. This ship has been constructed by the company of all the gods⁶² for the preservation of the vast host of living creatures. 32. Embarking in it all living creatures, both those engendered from moisture and from eggs, as well as the viviparous, and plants, preserve them from calamity. 33. When driven by the blasts at the end of the *yuga*, the ship is swept along, thou shalt bind it to this horn of mine. 34. Then at the close of the dissolution thou shalt be the *Prajāpati* (lord of creatures) of this world, fixed and moving. 35. When this shall have been done,⁶³ thou, the omniscient, patient rishi, and lord of the *Manvantara*, shalt be an object of worship to the gods." 2nd *Adhyāya*: "1. *Sūta* said: Being thus addressed, Manu asked the slayer of the *Asura*, 'In how many years shall the (existing) *Manvantara* come to an end? 2. And how shall I preserve the living creatures? or how shall I meet again with thee?' The fish answered: 'From this day forward a drought shall visit the earth for a hundred years and more, with a tormenting famine. 4. Then the seven direful rays of the son, of little power, destructive, shall rain burning charcoal. 5. At the close of the *yuga* the submarine fire shall burst forth,

⁶² The reading of the Taylor MS. here is partially erased; but it may have been *sarva-vēdānām*, "of all the Vedas." Compare the various reading in verse 11 of the next *adhyāya*.

⁶³ According to the reading of the Taylor MS. we should have to substitute the words, "Thus at the beginning of the *Krita* age, thou" etc.

while the poisonous flame issuing from the mouth of Sankarshana (shall blaze) from Pātāla, and the fire from Mahādeva's third eye shall issue from his forehead. Thus kindled the world shall become confounded. 7. When, consumed in this manner, the earth shall become like ashes, the æther too shall be scorched with heat. 8. Then the world, together with the gods and planets, shall be destroyed. The seven clouds of the period of dissolution, called Saṁvartta, Bhīmanāda, Droṇa, Chāṇḍa, Balāhaka, (9) Vidyutpatāka, and Sṇāmbu, produced from the steam of the fire, shall inundate the earth. 10. The seas agitated, and joined together, shall reduce these entire three worlds to one ocean. 11. Taking this celestial ship, embarking on it all the seeds, and through contemplation fixed on me fastening it by a rope (12) to my horn, thou alone shalt remain, protected by my power, when even the gods are burnt up. 13. The sun and moon, I Brahmā with the four worlds, the holy river Narmadā,⁶⁴ the great rishi Mārkaṇḍeya, (14) Mahādeva, the Vedas, the Purāṇa with the sciences,—these shall remain with thee at the close of the Manvantara. 15. The world having thus become one ocean at the end of the Chākshusha manvantara, I shall give currency to the Vedas at the commencement of thy creation.' 16. Sūta continued: Having thus spoken, the divine Being vanished on the spot; while Manu fell into a state of contemplation (*yoga*) induced by the favour of Vāsudeva. 17. When the time announced by Vāsudeva had arrived, the predicted deluge took place in that very manner. Then Janārdana appeared in the form of a horned fish; (the serpent) Ananta came to Manu in the shape of a rope. 19. Then he who was skilled in duty (*i.e.* Manu) drew towards himself all creatures by contemplation (*yoga*) and stowed them in the ship, which he then attached to the fish's horn by the serpent-rope, (20) as he stood upon the ship, and after he had made obeisance to Janārdana. 21. I shall now declare the Purāṇa which, in answer to an enquiry from Manu, was uttered by the deity in the form of the fish, as he lay in a sleep of contemplation till the end of the universal inundation: Listen." The Matsya Purāṇa gives us no further information here about the progress and results of the deluge; and this narrative does not appear to be ever afterwards resumed.

⁶⁴ In the opinion of this writer, therefore, the Narmadā (Nerbudda) must have been a holier stream than the Gāṅgā: otherwise we should have expected him to select the latter as the river to be preserved at the dissolution.

The Bhāgavata P. viii. 24, 7, gives the same story with variations as follows :

Āsīd atīta-kalpānte brāhmo naimittiko layaḥ | samudropaplutās tatra lokā bhūr-ādayo nṛipa | 8. Kālenāgata-nidrasya Dhātuh śiṣayishor balī | mukhato niṣṣṛītān vedān Hayagrīvo 'ntike 'harat | 9. Jñātvā tad dāna-rendrasya Hayagrīvasya cheshṭitam | dadhāra śapharī-rūpam bhagavān Harir īśvaraḥ | 10. Tatra rāja-ṛishih kaśchid nāmnā Satyavrato mahān | Nārāyaṇa-paro 'tapyat tapaḥ sa salilāsanaḥ | 11. Yo 'sāv asmin mahākalpe tanayaḥ sa Vivasvataḥ | Śrāddhadava iti khyāto manutve Harinā 'rpiṭaḥ | 12. Ekadhā Kṛitamālyāṁ kurvato jala-tarpanam | tasyānjaly-udake kāchich chhaphary ekā 'bhyapadyata | 13. Satyavrato 'njali-gatām saha toyena Bhārata | utsasarja nadī-toye śapharīm Dravideśvaraḥ | tam āha sātikaruṇam mahākāruṇikāṁ nṛipam | yādobhyo jñāti-ghātibhyo dīnām mām dīnavatsala | kathaṁ viśṛijase rājan bhītām asmin sarīj-jale | 32. Saptame 'dyatanād ūrdhvakam ahany etad arindama | nimankshyaty apyayāmbhodhan trailohyam bhūr-bhuvādikam | 33. Trilokyāṁ liyamānāyāṁ samvarttāmbhasi vai tadā | upasthāsyati nauḥ kāchid viśālā tvām mayeritā | 34. Tām tavad oshadhīḥ sarvā vijāny uchchā-rachāni cha | saptarshibhiḥ parivṛitāḥ sarva-sattropavṛimhitāḥ | 45. Āruhya vṛihatīm nāvaṁ richarishyasy ariklavaḥ | ekūrṇave nīrāloke ṛishkīṇām eva varchasā | 36. Dodhāyamānām tām nāvaṁ samīreṇa bali-gasā | upasthītasya me śṛinge nībadhnūhi mahākīnā | 37. Ahaṁ tvām ṛishibhiḥ sākāṁ sahanāvam udanvati | rikarshan richarishyāmi yāvad Brāhmī niśū prabho | 41. Tataḥ samudrah udvelaḥ sarvataḥ plārayan mahīm | vordhamāno mahāmeghair varshadbhiḥ samadrīśyata | 42. Dhyāyan bhagavad-ūdeśāṁ dadṛiṣe nāvaṁ āgatām | tām āruroha riprendrair ūdāyaushadhi-vīrudhaḥ | 43. Tam ūchur munayaḥ prītā rājan dhyāyasa Keśavam | sa vai naḥ sankatād asmād avitā śaṁ vidhāsyati | 44. So 'nudhyātos tato rājā prādurāsīd mahōrnave | eka-śṛingadharo matsyo haimo niyuta-yojanaḥ | 45. Nībadhya nāvaṁ tach-chhṛinge yathokto Harinā purā | varatrenāhinā tushṭas tushṭāna Modhusūdanam | 54. Ity uktavantaṁ nripatīm bhagavān Ādipūruṣhaḥ | matsya-rūpī mahāmbhodhan iharāṁs tattvam abravīt | 55. Purāṇa-saṁhitām diryām Sāṅkhya-Yōga-kriyāvartīm | Satyavratasya rājarsher ātma-guhyam aśeshataḥ | 56. Āśraushid ṛishibhiḥ sākam ātma-tattvam asaṁśayam | nāvya āsīno bhagavatā proktam brahma saṁtānam | 57. Atīta-pralāyāpāye utthitāya sa Vedhase | hatvāsuraṁ Hayagrīvaṁ vedān prat-

*yāharad Hariḥ | 58. Sa tu Satyavrato rājā jñāna-vijnāna-saṃyutah |
Vishṇoḥ prasādāt kalpe 'smin āsīd Vaivasrato Manuḥ |*

"7. At the close of the past Kalpa there occurred an occasional⁶⁵ dissolution of the universe arising from Brahmā's nocturnal repose; in which the Bhūloka and other worlds were submerged in the ocean. 8. When the creator, desirous of rest, had under the influence of time been overcome by sleep, the strong Hayagrīva coming near, carried off the Vedas which had issued from his mouth. 9. Discovering this deed of the prince of the Dānavas, the divine Hari, the Lord, took the form of a Sapharī fish. 10. At that time a certain great royal rishi, called Satyavrata, who was devoted to Nārāyaṇa, practised austere fervour, subsisting on water. 11. He was the same who in the present great Kalpa is the son of Visvasvat, called Srāddhadeva,⁶⁶ and was appointed by Hari to the office of Manu. 12. Once, as in the river Kṛitamālā he was offering the oblation of water to the Pitris, a Sapharī fish came into the water in the hollow of his hands. 13. The lord of Draviḍa, Satyavrata, cast the fish in his hands with the water into the river. 14. The fish very piteously cried to the merciful king, 'Why dost thou abandon me poor and terrified to the monsters who destroy their kindred in this river?' [Satyavrata then took the fish from the river, placed it in his waterpot, and as it grew larger and larger, threw it successively into a larger vessel, a pond, various lakes, and at length into the sea. The fish objects to be left there on the plea that it would be devoured; but Manu replies that it can be no real fish, but Vishṇu himself; and with various expressions of devotion enquires why he had assumed this disguise, verses 15-31.] The god replies: 32. "On the seventh day after this the three worlds Bhūloka, etc., shall sink beneath the ocean of the dissolution. 33. When the universe is dissolved in that ocean, a large ship, sent by me, shall come to thee. 34. Taking with thee the plants and various seeds, surrounded by the seven rishis, and attended by all existences, (35) thou shalt embark on the great ship, and shalt without alarm move over the one dark ocean, by the sole light of the rishis. When the ship shall be vehemently shaken by

⁶⁵ *Naimittika*. See above p. 45.

⁶⁶ Manu is called Srāddhadeva in the Mahābhārata also, S'āntip. 4507. In the Brāhmaṇas, however, he receives the appellation, or epithet, not of *S'rāddhadeva*, but of *Sraddhadeva*. See above, p. 188 ff.

the tempestuous wind, fasten it by the great serpent to my horn—for I shall come near. 37. So long as the night of Brahmā lasts, I shall draw thee with the rishis and the ship over the ocean.” [The god then disappears after promising that Satyavrata shall practically know his greatness and experience his kindness, and Satyavrata awaits the predicted events, verses 38–40.] 41. “Then the sea, augmenting as the great clouds poured down their waters, was seen overflowing its shores and everywhere inundating the earth. 42. Meditating on the injunctions of the deity, Satyavrata beheld the arrival of the ship, on which he embarked with the Brāhmans, taking along with him the various kinds of plants. 43. Delighted, the Munis said to him, ‘meditate on Keśava; he will deliver us from this danger, and grant us prosperity.’ 44. Accordingly when the king had meditated on him, there appeared on the ocean a golden fish, with one horn, a million *yojanas* long. 45. Binding the ship to his horn with the serpent for a rope; as he had been before commanded by Hari, Satyavrata lauded Madhusūdana.” [Verses 46–53 contain the hymn.] 54. When the king had thus spoken, the divine primeval Male, in the form of a fish, moving on the vast ocean declared to him the truth; (55) the celestial collection of Puranas, with the Sāṅkhya, Yoga, the ceremonial, and the mystery of the soul. 56. Seated on the ship with the rishis, Satyavrata heard the true doctrine of the soul, of the eternal Brahmā, declared by the god. 57. When Brahmā arose at the end of the past dissolution, Hari restored to him the Vedas, after slaying Hayagrīva. 58. And King Satyavrata, master of all knowledge, sacred and profane, became, by the favour of Viṣṇu, the son of Vivasvat, the Manu in this Kalpa.”

Before adducing the remarks of the commentator Śrīdhara Svāmin on the passage last cited from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, I shall quote one more version of the same legend from the Agni Purāṇa.⁶⁷ It is not of any great consequence, as, though more condensed, it coincides in purport with that in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa: which of the two has bor-

⁶⁷ This has been copied by Professor Aufrecht from a MS. of the Agni Purāṇa, belonging to the Royal Asiatic Society of London. I am informed by Prof. Aufrecht that the East India Office Library has two MSS. of the Vahni Purāṇa, which (although Vahni is, in later Sanskrit, synonymous with Agni) differ entirely in their contents from the Agni Purāṇa.

rowed from the other, or whether both are derived from a common source, I am unable to say.

Vasishṭha uvācha | 1. *Matsyādi-rūpiṇaṁ Viṣṇuṁ brūhi sargādi-kāranam* | *purāṇam brahma chāgneyaṁ yathā Viṣṇoḥ purā śrutam* | *Agnir uvācha* | 2. *Matsyāvataṛaṁ vakshye 'haṁ Vasishṭha śṛiṇu vai Hareḥ* | *avatāra-kriyāṁ duṣṭa-nashṭyai sat-pālanāya hi* | 3. *Āśīd atīta-kalpānte brāhmo naimittiko layaḥ* | *sanudropaplutās tatra lokā bhūrādikā mune* | 4. *Manur Vaivasvatas tepe tapo vai bhukti-muktaye* | *ekadā Kṛitālmālyāṁ kurvato jala-tarpanam* | 5. *Tasyānjaly-udake matsyaḥ svalpa eko 'bhyapadyata* | *kṣheptu-kāmaṁ jale prāha "na mām kshipa narottama* | 6. *Grahādibhyo bhayam me 'tra* " tach chhṛutvā kalaśe 'kshipat | *Manuṁ vṛiddhaḥ punar matsyaḥ prāla taṁ "dehi me vṛihat* " | 7. *Tasya tad rachanaṁ śrutvā rājā 'tha vandane 'kshipat* | *tatra vṛiddho 'bravīd bhūpam "prīthu dehi padam mama* " | 8. *Sarovare punaḥ kshipto varvīdhe tat-pramāṇarān* | *ūche "dehi vṛihat sthānam* " prākshipach chāmbudhau tataḥ | 9. *Laksha-yojana-vistīrṇaḥ kṣhāṇa-mātrena so 'bhavat* | *matsyaṁ tam adbhutaṁ dṛiṣṭvā viśmitaḥ prābravīd Manuḥ* | 10. *"Ko bhavān nanu vai Viṣṇur Nārāyaṇa namo 'stu te* | *māyayā mohayasi mām kimarthaṁ cha Janārdana* " | 11. *Manur-ukto* ⁶⁸ *'bravīd matsyo Manuṁ vai pālāne ratam* | *avatīrṇo bhavāyāsya jagato duṣṭa-nashṭaye* | 12. *"Saptame divase tv abdhīḥ plāyayishyati vai jagat* | *upasthitāyāṁ nāvi traṁ vījadīni vidhāya cha* | 13. *Saptarshibhiḥ parivṛito nīṣāṁ brāhmīm charishyasi* | *upasthitasya me śṛinge nibadhnīhi mahāhina* " | 14. *Ity uktvā 'ntardadhe matsyo Manuḥ kālā-pratīkṣakaḥ* | *stītaḥ samudra udrele nāvam āruruhe tadā* | 15. *Eka-śṛiṅga-dhara matsyo haimo niyuta-yojanaḥ* | *nāvam babandha tach-chhṛiṅge matsyākhyāṁ cha purāṇakam* | 16. *Sūśrāva matsyāt pāpa-ghnaṁ sa-śrutam śrutibhiḥ śrutam (?)* | *brahma-veda-praharttāraṁ Hayagrīvaṁ cha dānavam* | 17. *Avadhīd veda-mantrādyān pālāyāmāsa Keśavaḥ* |

"Vasishṭha said: 1. Declare to me Viṣṇu, the cause of the creation, in the form of a Fish and his other incarnations; and the Puranic revelation of Agni, as it was originally heard from Viṣṇu. Agni replied: 2. Hear, o Vasishṭha, I shall relate to thee the Fish-incarnation of Viṣṇu, and his acts when so incarnate for the destruction of

⁶⁸ Professor Aufrecht's transcript has this reading *Manur-ukto*; which I have retained, although I was not aware that *Manus* was commonly used for *Monu*, except in the Vedic period.

the wicked, and protection of the good. 3. At the close of the past Kalpa there occurred an occasional dissolution of the universe caused by Brahmā's sleep, when the Bhūloka and other worlds were inundated by the ocean. 4. Manu, the son of Vivasvat, practised austere fervour for the sake of worldly enjoyment as well as final liberation. Once, when he was offering the libation of water to the Pitṛis in the river Kṛitamālā, (5) a small fish came into the water in the hollow of his hands, and said to him when he sought to cast it into the stream, 'Do not throw me in, (6) for I am afraid of alligators and other monsters which are here.' On hearing this Manu threw it into a jar. Again, when grown, the Fish said to him, 'Provide me a large place.' 7. Manu then cast it into a larger vessel (?). When it increased there, it said to the king, 'Give me a wide space.' 8. When, after being thrown into a pond, it became as large as its receptacle, and cried out for greater room, he flung it into the sea. 9. In a moment it became a hundred thousand yojanas in bulk. Beholding the wonderful Fish, Manu said in astonishment: (10) 'Who art thou? Art thou Viṣṇu? Adoration be paid to thee, o Nārāyaṇa. Why, o Janārdana, dost thou bewilder me by thy illusion?' 11. The Fish, which had become incarnate for the welfare of this world and the destruction of the wicked, when so addressed, replied to Manu, who had been intent upon its preservation: (12) 'Seven days after this the ocean shall inundate the world. A ship shall come to thee, in which thou shalt place the seeds, (13) and accompanied by the rishis shalt sail during the night of Brahmā. Bind it with the great serpent to my horn, when I arrive. 14. Having thus spoken the Fish vanished. Manu awaited the promised period, and embarked on the ship when the sea overflowed its shores. 15. (There appeared) a golden Fish, a million yojanas long, with one horn, to which Manu attached the ship, (16) and heard from the Fish the Matsya Purāṇa, which takes away sin, together with the Veda. Keśava then slew the Dānava Hayagrīva who had snatched away the Vedas, and preserved its mantras and other portions.'

The following is Śrīdhara's comment, before referred to, on the legend of the deluge, as told in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa. These remarks have been well translated and explained in the preface to the 3rd volume of his edition of this Purāṇa (pp. xxxviii ff.) by M. Burnouf, whose elaborate discussion of the legend extends from p. xxiii to p. liv.

Atra idaṁ chintyaṁ “kim ayam mahāpralayo dainandino vā” iti | tatra tāvad “brāhmo layaḥ” (v. 7) iti “yo ’sār asmin mahā-kalpe” (v. 11) iti cha ukter “mahāpralayaḥ” iti prāptaṁ “na” iti brūmaḥ | mahāpralaye prithivī-ādīnām avasēśhāsambharād “yāvad brāhmī nīśā” (v. 37) ity-ādy-ukti- virodhāch cha | ato “dainandana” iti yuktam | na cha etad api sangachhate | sām̐varttakair anāvṛishṭy-ādibhir vinā akasmād eva “saptame ’hani trailokyaṁ nimankshyati” (v. 32) iti matsyokter anupapatteḥ | yathoktam prathama-skandhe “rūpam” (i. 3, 15) ity ādi tad api tadā durghaṭam | na hi pralaya-dvaye ’pi “mahīmāyāṁ nāry” ārohaḥ sambharati na cha Chākshusha-manvantare pralayo ’sti | tathā cha sati saptamo Manur Vaivasvataḥ ity api durghaṭam syāt | “traṁ tāvad ośadhīḥ sarvāḥ” (viii. 24, 34) ity-ādi-nirdeśo ’pi na sangachhate | na hi tadā ośadhy-ādīnām sattvānām cha avasēśhaḥ sambharati | tasmād anyathā varṇyate | naivāyaṁ vāstavaḥ ko ’pi pralayaḥ | kintu Satyavratasya jñānopadeśaya āvīrbhūto bhagavān vairāgyārtham akasmāt pralayaṁ iva darśayāmāsa yathā ’sminn eva Vaivasvata-manvantare Mārkaṇḍeyāya darśitarvān | tad-apekshayā eva cha “mahā-kalpe ’sminn” iti viśeṣhaṇaṁ sangachhate | tathā cha “tataḥ samudraḥ udvelaḥ sarvataḥ samadriśyata” (v. 41) iti tasyaiva yathā darśanam uktam ity eṣhā dik |

“Here we have to consider whether this was a great dissolution of the universe, or one of those which occur at the close of each day of Brahmā. If it be supposed from the expressions ‘a dissolution proceeding from Brahmā’ (v. 7), and ‘he is the same who in this Mahākalpa’ (v. 11), that it was a great dissolution, we reply,—no; because in a great dissolution the earth and other worlds cannot possibly remain in existence, and because this would be opposed to the words ‘so long as the night of Brahmā lasts’ (v. 37). Hence it might appear that it must be one of the dissolutions which occur at the end of a day of Brahmā. But this also is impossible, because it would be at variance with the Fish’s words that ‘the three worlds should be submerged on the seventh day,’ (v. 32) suddenly, without the drought and other calamities which precede a dissolution. What is stated in the first book (iii. 15), ‘at the deluge, in the Chākshusha Manvantara, he took the form of a Fish, and preserved Manu Vaivasvata, whom he placed in a ship formed of the earth,’⁶⁹ would also in that case be inconceivable; for

⁶⁹ Bhāgavata Purāṇa, i. 3. 15. *Rupaṁ sa jagrihe mātṣyaṁ Chākshushodadhi-samplave | nāry āropya mahīmāyām apād Vaivasvatam Manum |* On this passage also

(1.) in neither of the two dissolutions could any one be placed 'in a ship in the form of the earth' (as the earth is submerged in the one case and altogether destroyed in the other); (2.) there is no dissolution of the world in the Chākshusha Manvantara; (3.) in the case supposed the existence of a seventh Manu, the son of Vivasvat would be impossible (for the fourteen Manus succeed each other in one Kalpa without the intervention of any dissolution). And in that case, the command to take 'all the plants into the ship' (viii. 24, 34), would be inconceivable, since no plants or other such substances are left at such a period. Such being the fact, the narrative must be otherwise explained. It was in fact no real dissolution which is here related. But the deity, who appeared to teach Satyavrata knowledge, shewed him suddenly the semblance of a dissolution to instil into him dispassion, just as in the Vaivasvata Manvantara he shewed to Mārkaṇḍeya. And if referred to this, the words 'in this Māhakaḷpa' will be conceivable. And consequently the words 'Then the sea was beheld overflowing its shores on every side' are spoken with reference to what Satyavrata saw (in the vision). Such is an indication of the purport of the Section."

S'rīdhara Svāmin here reasons only upon the data supplied by the particular version of the story which he found before him in the Bhāgavata, and does not seem to have extended his researches so far as to ascertain whether the legend might not exhibit some variations as narrated in other Puranas. If he had turned to the Matsya Purāṇa he would have found that one of his objections, viz., that drawn from the absence of any reference to the calamities supposed to precede a dissolution, did not apply to the account there given; since that narrative expressly asserts that these premonitory signs were manifested. Others of his objections apply no doubt to the other narratives as well as to that in the Bhāgavata. According to the ordinary Puranic theory (see above, pp. 43 ff.) fourteen Manus exist in each Kalpa, and one succeeds another without the intervention of any *pralaya* or dissolution. It is obviously inconsistent with this theory to represent such a dissolution S'rīdhara remarks *Yadyapi manvantarāvasāne pralayo nāsti tathāpi kenachit kautukena Satyavratāya māyā pradarśitū | yathā "akāṇḍe Mārkaṇḍeyāya" iti drashṭavyam |* "Although there is no dissolution at the end of a Manvantara, yet, through a certain sport an illusion was shown to Satyavrata, as in the other passage where it is said 'Suddenly to Mārkaṇḍeya,' etc."

as taking place either during the life of any of the Manus, or after his disappearance. It is even doubtful, or more than doubtful (Wilson's Vish. P. i. p. 50 f. and p. 44, above) whether one Manu can exist contemporaneously with another, and yet, according to the Matsya and Agni Purāṇas (see above, pp. 205 ff., 211 f.) Manu Vaivasvata is said to have lived during his predecessor's period, although the Bhāgavata avoids this difficulty by making Satyavrata the hero of the story and by representing him as being born again as Manu Vaivasvata at the beginning of the next Manvantara. (M. Burnouf's Preface above referred to may be consulted for further remarks on this subject.) The authors of the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas do not, however, appear to have been so sensitively alive to inconsistencies of this description as Śrīdhara. Perhaps the system of Kalpas and Manvantaras may not have been so clearly defined, or so generally current, when the older parts, at least of the Mahābhārata, were composed, as at a later period.⁷⁰ And even the Puranic writers may not have cared very much to preserve a strict congruity in all that they wrote. In fact they may have had no great faith in the authority of speculations so arbitrary and artificial as those relating to the great mundane periods to which I refer,—speculations which were derived from no higher source than previous writers of their own class. The case, however, was different with the Commentators, who lived at a later period, and who seem to have regarded the established doctrine regarding Kalpas and Manvantaras as an article of faith.

There is, however, no doubt that, for the reasons above assigned, this legend of a Flood, such as is described in the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas, does not fit into the system of Kalpas and Manvantaras. But what is the inference which we ought to draw from this circumstance? M. Burnouf believes (1.) that the theory of great mundane periods and periodical dissolutions of the universe was received in India from very early times (Bhāg. P. iii. Pref. p. xliii.) and (2) that it was older than the legend of a deluge, as, although the latter may have been derived from ancient tradition, the style in which it is related in the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas has nothing of the archaic colouring of the Itihāsas contained in the Brāhmaṇas, and it had not, so far as he knew,

⁷⁰ The Svāyambhuva Manvantara is mentioned in the S'āntip. verse 12658, but no details are given (*kr̥te yuge mahārāja pura Svāyambhuve 'ntare*).

been found in any work of the class last named (p. xxvii.), and was not, he anticipated, likely to be discovered there (lii.). The conclusion which he deduces from these premises, and from the absence of any tradition of any great local inundation (pp. xlviii. and li.), is that, although, as related in the *Mahābhārata* and the *Purāṇas*, the legend of the deluge has received in some respects an Indian character (xxxi. ff.; xlv. ff.), it is not in its origin Indian, (li.), but was most probably imported into Hindustan from a Semitic source, whether Hebrew or Assyrian (lii.-liv.). The first of M. Burnouf's premises, regarding the great antiquity of the system of *Kalpas*, *Manvantaras*, and mundane dissolutions, is not borne out by the Vedic hymns, or anything that has yet been found in the *Brāhmaṇas* (see above, pp. 45 ff.). And his anticipation that no reference to a deluge would be discovered in any of the older Indian records has proved incorrect, as is shewn by the legend of *Manu* quoted above (p. 181 ff.) from the *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa*.

Professor Weber, by whom attention was first drawn (in his *Indische Studien*, i. 160 ff.) to this passage, shows how materially it interferes with Burnouf's results. If there is no proof of the great antiquity of the cosmical theory which that great scholar supposes to be inconsistent with the early existence in India of any tradition of a deluge, whilst on the other hand there is distinct evidence that that tradition was actually current there at a much earlier period than he imagined, it is clear that his supposition of its having been introduced into that country from an exclusively Semitic source loses much of its probability.

The explanation by which *Srīdhara* endeavours to maintain the consistency of the Puranic narratives and theories seems to be altogether unfounded. There is no appearance of the authors either of the *Bhāgavata*, or *Matsya*, or *Agni Purāṇas* having intended to represent the deluge as a mere vision. They evidently meant this narrative to be taken literally, just as much as anything else that they describe.

I shall now compare the versions of the legend given in the *Mahābhārata* and *Purāṇas* with each other, and with that quoted above from the *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa*.

I. The following are the peculiarities of the narrative in the *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa* :

(1.) It makes no reference to any great mundane periods, such as *Kalpas* or *Manvantaras*.

(2.) It does not speak of a dissolution of the world (*pralaya*), but of a flood (*augha*) which swept away all living creatures except Manu.

(3.) It does not fix the number of days or years after which the flood should come.

(4.) It speaks of Manu simply, without assigning to him any patronymic, such as Vaivasvata.⁷¹

(5.) It contains no allusion to the locality in which he was when the fish came to him.

(6.) It makes no mention of the fish being thrown into any river.

(7.) It is silent as to Manu being accompanied by any rishis when he embarked on the ship, and as to his taking any seeds along with him.

(8.) It speaks of the ship as having rested on the "Northern mountain," and of a place called "Manu's Descent."

(9.) It does not say anything of any deity being incarnate in the fish.

(10.) It represents Idā as produced from Manu's oblation, and as the mother of his offspring, begotten apparently in the natural way.

It is manifest from this abstract, when compared with what follows, that the flood described in the Brāhmaṇa is distinguishable in various respects from the dissolution, or *pralaya*, of the later works.

II. The legend as told in the Mahābhārata agrees with that of the S. P. Br. in some, and differs from it in other particulars:

(1.) It does not specify any Kalpa or Manvantara.

(2.) It speaks of a dissolution of the universe (*pralaya*), and of the time of its purification by water (*samprakṣhālana-kālah*) having arrived.

(3.) It makes the fish declare that this event should take place speedily (*achirāt*), and alludes to no antecedent calamities.

⁷¹ Manu Vaivasvata is however mentioned in S. P. Br. xiii. 4, 3, 3. "*Manur Vaivasvato rājā*" ity āha | *tasya manushyā viśaḥ* | "He says 'Manu Vaivasvata king.' Men are his subjects." Further on, xiii. 4, 3, 6, Yama Vaivasvata is spoken of as King of the Pitris. Compare R.V. x. 14, 1; 17, 1. In the Vāṅkhyā hymns attached to the R.V. iv. 1, Indra is mentioned as drinking Soma in the house of Manu Vivasvat (not Vaivasvata). In the Atharva-veda, viii. 10, 24, Manu Vaivasvata is spoken of as the calf of the cow Virāj (*tasyā Manur Vaivasvato vatsaḥ*). Yama is similarly spoken of in the preceding verse. In Vāṅkhyā, iii. 1, Indra is said to have drunk Soma in Manu Sāmvarāṇi's house. The connection of the words *Sāvanya* and *Sāvarṇi* with the word *manu*, "man," in R.V. x. 68, 8 f. and 11, no doubt gave rise to the idea of a Manu Sāvārṇi. See Wilson's Vishṇu P. 4to. ed. pp. 266 ff., and Roth's remark in Journal Germ. Or. Soc. vi. 245 f., and R.V. x. 17, 2.

(4.) It assigns to Manu the patronymic of Vaivasvata, but mentions no other Manu.

(5.) It represents the fish as coming to him when on the banks of the Chirīṇī river.

(6.) It describes the fish as thrown into the Ganges before it was taken to the sea.

(7.) It speaks of Manu as embarking on the ship with the seven rishis, and as taking with him all the seeds described by the Brāhmins.

(8.) It declares that the ship rested on the highest peak of the Himālaya, which was thence called Naubandhana.

(9.) It makes the fish reveal himself as Brahmā Prajāpati.

(10.) It describes Manu not as begetting offspring but as creating all sorts of living beings including MEN.

III. The Matsya Purāṇa agrees in some points, and differs in others from the above details.

(1.) It states that Manu, whom it styles the son of the Sun (*Sahasrakīraṇātmaja*, and *Ravi-nandana*), i.e. Manu Vaivasvata, practised austerity after making over his kingdom to his son (v. 12). One might have supposed that he could only have done this in his own Manvantara; but it is said further on (v. 34 f.) that he was informed by the fish that when the dissolution should come to an end, he should become a Prajāpati and lord of the Manvantara; and he receives a promise that he should be preserved during the dissolution (ii. 12), which, as appears from v. 15, was to take place at the end of the Chākshusha Manvantara. After this he was to create the world anew. We must therefore suppose the writer to have regarded Manu Vaivasvata as existing during the period of his predecessor, but as then occupying the inferior position of a king. This difficulty is, as I have already remarked, avoided in the Bhāgavata, which makes King Satyavrata the hero of the story.

(2.) This Purāṇa speaks of a dissolution (*pralaya*) and yet (i. 15 ff.) represents Manu as asking and receiving from Brahmā as a boon that when that dissolution should arrive, he should be the preserver of all things stationary and moving.

(3.) It states that a hundred years and more would elapse before the dissolution, which was to be preceded by famine and various terrific phenomena.

(4.) It represents Manu as the son of the Sun. See under head (1.).

(5.) It mentions Malaya (Malabar) as the scene of Manu's austerity, and of the apparition of the fish.

(6.) It agrees with the Mahābhārata in describing the fish as thrown into the Ganges, though at so great a distance from Malabar.

(7.) It is silent as to the seven rishis embarking on the ship, but speaks of Manu taking with him all sorts of creatures (living apparently) as well as seeds (chap. ii. v. 11).

(8.) It does not bring the narrative to a conclusion (see above, p. 207), and thus has no opportunity of saying anything of the place where the ship rested.

(9.) It speaks of Janārdana (Vishṇu) as the god who was manifested in the Fish.

(10.) It refers to Manu as about to effect a creation (ii. 15), but also as preserving the existing animals and plants (ch. i. 15 ff., 31 f.; ii. 2, 19).

IV. According to the Bhāgavata Purāṇa:

(1.) The event described was an "occasional dissolution" (*naimittiko layah*, see above, p. 45) at the end of a Kalpa (viii. 24, 7); and yet in contradiction with this it had previously been alluded to (i. 3, 15) as occurring at the close of the Chākshusha Manvantara.

(2.) See head (1.).

(3.) The dissolution was to take place after seven days (viii. 24, 32); and no premonitory calamities are referred to.

(4.) The hero of the story is Satyavrata, king of Draviḍa, who was born again in the present *mahākalpa* as the son of Vivasvat (vv. 10, 11, 58).

(5.) The scene of the incidents, with which the narrative begins, was the river Kṛitamālā, in the country of Draviḍa.

(6.) The fish is not thrown into any river after it had been once taken out of the Kṛitamālā, and had grown large.

(7.) Satyavrata is commanded to take with him into the ship the seven rishis, as well as plants, seeds, and all beings (*sarva-sattvoparīṃhitāḥ*).

(8.) Nothing is said of the place where the ship rested.

(9.) Vishṇu is the deity who took the form of a fish with the view of recovering the Vedas carried away by the Dānava Hayagrīva (vv. 9, 57).

(10.) No mention is made in this chapter of any creation effected by Manu; but in ix. i. an account is given of his descendants.

V. The narrative in the Agni Purāṇa agrees with that in the Bhāgavata, except in its much greater conciseness, and in making Manu Vaivasvata, and not Satyavrata, the hero of the story.

SECT. IV.—*Legendary Accounts of the Origin of Castes among the Descendants of Manu and Atri, according to the Purāṇas.*

We have already seen that it is distinctly affirmed in a passage quoted above (p. 126) from the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 3138 ff., that men of all classes, Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras were descended from Manu, a statement which is clearly at variance with the notion of their having been separately created from different members of Brahmā. This tallies with the account of the origin of castes which is found in those parts of the Purāṇas which profess to record the history of the two royal races, the solar and the lunar, which are said to have sprung from Manu Vaivasvata and Atri.

The Vishṇu Purāṇa (which is here written in prose) makes the following statement regarding Manu's descendants :

iv. 1. 4. *Sakala-jagatām anādir ādibhūtaḥ riḡ-yajuh-sāmādimaya-bhagavad-Viṣṇumayasya Brahmano mūrttirūpam Hiranyagarbho brahmāṇḁato bhagavān Brahmā prāḡ babhūva | Brahmanas cha dakṣiṇāṅguṣṭhajanmā Dakṣaḥ prajāpatiḥ | Dakṣasyāpy Aditiḥ | Aditer Vivasvān | Vivasvato Manuḥ | Manor Ikṣvāku-Nṛiga-Dhṛiṣṭa-S'aryāti-Narishyanta-Prāṁsu-Nābhāḡonedishṭa-Kārūsha-Prishadhrākhyāḥ putrāḥ babhūvuh | 6. Ishṭīm cha Mitṛā-Varuṇayor Manuḥ putra-kōmas chakāra | 7. Tatrāpahute hotur apachārād Ilā nāma kanyā babhūva | 8. Saiva Mitṛa-Varuṇa-prasādāt Sudyumno nāma Manoh putro Maitreyāsīt | punas cha Īsvara-kopāt strī satī Soma-sūnor Budhasya ūsrama-samīpe babhrāma | 9. Sānurāḡas cha tasyām Budhaḥ Pururacasam ātmajam utpādayāmāsa | 10. Jāte cha tasminn amita-fejobhiḥ paramarshibhir isṭīmayaḥ riṇmayo yajurmayah sāmamayo 'tharvamayah sarramayō manomayō jñānamayō 'kinchinmayo bhagavān yajna-purusha-svarūpī Sudyumnasya puṁstram abhilaṣadbhir yathāvad ishṭaḥ | tatprasādād Ilā punar api Sudyumno 'bharat |*

“Before the mundane egg existed the divine Brahmā Hiranyagarbha, the eternal originator of all worlds, who was the form and essence of Brahmā, who consists of the divine Vishṇu, who again is identical with

the Rik, Yajush, Sāman and Atharva-Vedas. From Brahmā's right thumb⁷² was born the Prajāpati Daksha; Daksha had a daughter Aditi; from her was born Vivasvat; and from him sprang Manu. Manu had sons called Ikshvāku, Nṛiga, Dhṛishṭa, Sāryāti, Narishyanta, Prāṁśu, Nābhāgedishṭa, Karūsha, and Prishadhra.⁷³ Desirous of a son, Manu sacrificed to Mitra and Varuṇa; but in consequence of a wrong invocation through an irregularity of the hotṛi-priest, a daughter called Ilā was born. Then through the favour of Mitra and Varuṇa she became to Manu a son called Sudyumna. But being again changed into a female through the wrath of Īśvara (Mahādeva) she wandered near the hermitage of Budha the son of Soma (the Moon); who becoming enamoured of her had by her a son called Purūravas. After his birth, the god who is formed of sacrifice, of the Rik, Yajush, Sāman, and Atharva Vedas, of all things, of mind, of nothing,⁷⁴ he who is in the form of the sacrificial Male, was worshipped by the rishis of infinite splendour who desired that Sudyumna should recover his manhood. Through the favour of this god Ilā became again Sudyumna."

Regarding the different sons of Manu the Purāṇas supply the following particulars :

(1.) Prishadhra.—The Vishṇu Purāṇa says :

Prishadhras tu guru-go-badhāch chhūdratvam āgamat |

"Prishadhra became a Sūdra in consequence of his having killed his religious preceptor's cow."

On the same subject the Harivaṁśa tells us, verse 659 :

Prishadhro hiṁsayitvā tu guror gām Janamejaya | śāpāch chhūdratvam āpannah |

"Prishadhra having killed his Guru's cow, became a Sūdra in consequence of his curse."

This story is variously amplified in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, section cxii., and in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa ix. 2, 3-14. See Professor Wilson's note, Vishṇu Purāṇa, 4to. edit. p. 351, where the author remarks that

⁷² See above, p. 72 f.

⁷³ Compare with this the list of Manu's sons given in the passage from the M. Bh. Ādip. quoted above, p. 126. Nābhānedishṭa (not Nābhāgedishṭa) is mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and Taittirīya Saṁhitā (see above, p. 191), and Sāryāta in the S' P. Br. iv. 1, 5, 1. See Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, p. 11 ff. The Mārka. P. cx. 3 ff., and the Bhāg. P. ix. 1, 11 ff. treat also of Manu's sons and of the birth of Ilā. See Wilson's Vishṇu P. 4to. ed. pp. 348-58, and Burnouf's Bhāg. P. vol. iii. pref. lxx. ff.

⁷⁴ *Akinchinmayah*, "not consisting of anything."

“the obvious purport of this legend, and of some that follow, is to account for the origin of the different castes from one common ancestor.”

(2.) Karūsha.—The Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 1, 13 :

Karūshāt Kārūshā mahābalāḥ Kshattriyā babhūruḥ |

“From Kārūsha the Kārūshas, Kshattriyas of great power, were descended.”

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 2, says :

*Kārūshād Mānavād āsan Kārūshāḥ Kshattri-jātayaḥ | uttarāpatha-
goptāro brahmanyā dharma-vatsalāḥ |*

“From Karūsha, son of Manu, came the Kārūshas of the Kshattriya caste, protectors of the northern region, devout, and lovers of duty.”

(3.) Nābhāga.—The Vishṇu Purāṇa says :

Nābhāgo Nedishṭa-putras tu vaiśyatām agamat |

“Nābhāga, the son of Nedishṭa, became a Vaiśya.”

The Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa says he was the son of Dishṭa, and relates how he became a Vaiśya, by marrying the daughter of a man of that class (section cxiii. and Wilson, p. 352, note). The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 2, 23, says he became a Vaiśya in consequence of his works (*Nābhāgo Dishṭa-putro 'nyaḥ karmabhir vaiśyatām gataḥ*). And yet a long list of his descendants is given, and among them occurs Marutta who was a Chakravartin, or universal monarch (Vishṇu P. iv. 1. 15–17; Bhāg. P. ix. 2, 23–28; Mārka. P. cxxviii.–cxxxii.). He had a grandson called Dama, of whom the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa relates that at a Svayamvara he was chosen by the daughter of the King of Daśārṇa for her husband (cxxxiv. 8), and that when the bride had been seized by three of his rejected rivals (verse 16) she was rescued by him after he had slain one of them and vanquished another (verse 53); that subsequently that same vanquished rival in revenge killed Dama's father, who had retired into the wilderness as an ascetic (cxxxv. 18). The Purāṇa in one of its recensions ends with the following curious particulars :

*Tataś chakūra tātasya raktenaivodaka-kriyām | ānṛṇyam prāpya sa
pituh punaḥ prāyāt sva-mandiram | Vapushmatas cha mūṁsena piṇḍa-
dānaṁ chakūra ha | brāhmaṇān bhojāyāmāsa rakṣakā-kula-samudbhavān |
evamvidhā hi rājāno babhūruḥ sūrya-raṁśa-jāḥ | anye 'pi sudhiyāḥ sūrā
yajvānaḥ śāstra-kouidāḥ | vedāntam paṭhamānāms tān na sankhyātum
ihotsahe |*

“Dama then (after tearing out the heart of Vapushmat) performed

with blood the rites to the manes of his father; and having thus discharged his debt to his parent, he returned home. With the flesh of Vapushmat he formed the oblation which he offered, and fed the Brāhmanas who were of Rākshasa descent. Of such character were the kings of the Solar race. There were also others who were wise, brave, priests, and skilled in the scriptures. I am unable here to enumerate those of them who studied the Vedānta.”⁷⁵

The Harivaṁśa (section xi. verse 658) tells us that “two sons of Nābhāgarishṭa, who were Vaiśyas, became Brāhmanas” (*Nābhāgarishṭa-putrau dvau vaiśyau brāhmaṇatām gatau*).

(4.) Dhṛiṣṭa.—Of him the Viṣṇu Purāṇa relates, iv. 2, 2 :

Dhṛiṣṭasyāpi Dhārṣṭakam Kshattram samabhavat |

“From Dhṛiṣṭa sprang the Dhārṣṭaka Kshattriyas.”

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 2, 17 :

Dhṛiṣṭād Dhārṣṭam abhūt Kshattram brahma-bhūyam gatam kshitau |

“From Dhṛiṣṭa were descended the Dhārṣṭa Kshattriyas, who obtained Brāhmanhood⁷⁶ on earth.”

(5.) The last-named Purāṇa enumerates in verses 19 ff. of the same section the descendants of Narishyanta, among whom was Agniveśya, verse 21 :

Tato 'gniveśyo bhagavān Agniḥ svayam abhūt sutaḥ | Kānina iti vikhyāto Jātūkarnyo mahān ṛishiḥ | tato brahma-kulaṁ jātam Āgniveśyāyanaṁ nriṇa | Narishyantūnvayaḥ proktaḥ |

“From him (Devadatta) sprang a son Agniveśya, who was the lord Agni himself, and who was also called Kānina and Jātūkarnya the great rishi. From him was descended the Agniveśyāyana race of

⁷⁵ This quotation, which will be partly found in Prof. Wilson's note 22, p. 353, is taken from the section given separately by Prof. Banerjea at the end of his edition of this Purāṇa from a Maithila MS. which differs from that followed in his text (see his Preface, p. 30). In verses 6 ff. of section cxxxvi. however, of Prof. Banerjea's text, Dama threatens to do something of the same sort as in the other recension he is described to have actually done. 6. *Yad aham tasya raktena dehotthena Vapushmataḥ | na karomi guroḥ triptim tat pravakshye hutūsanam |* 7. *Tachchhotenodaka-karma tasya tātasya sankhye vinipātītya | mātṛsena samyag dya-bhajanam cha na chet pravakshyāmu hutūsanam tat |* “6. If I do not satiate my father with the blood from Vapushmat's body, then I shall enter the fire. 7. If I do not celebrate with his blood the obsequial rites of my father prostrated in the fray, and feed the Brāhmanas with (his) flesh, I shall enter the fire.”

⁷⁶ The Commentator explains *brahma-bhūyam* by *brāhmaṇatvam*, “the state of Brāhmanas.”

Brāhmans. The offspring of Narishyanta has been declared." That of Dishṭa is next taken up.

Some of the names of Manu's sons are repeated in the subsequent narrative. Thus we find a second Prāṇsu named among the descendants of Nābhāga (Wilson, 352). And in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 2, 2, a second Nābhāga is mentioned as follows :

Nābhāgasyātmaḥ Nābhāgas tasya Ambarīśaḥ | Ambarīśasyāpi Virūpo 'bhavat Virūpāt Prishadaśvo jajne tataś cha Rathītaraḥ | tatrāyāṁ ślokaḥ | "ete kshattri-prasūtā vai punaś chāṅgirasah smṛitāḥ | Rathītārāṇāṁ pravarāḥ kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ" |

"The son of Nābhāga was Nābhāga ; his son was Ambarīśa. From him sprang Virūpa ; from him Prishadaśva ; and from him Rathītara ; regarding whom this verse is current: 'These persons sprung from a Kshattriya, and afterwards called Angirases, were the chief of the Rathītaras, twice-born men (Brāhmans) of Kshattriya race.'"⁷⁷

The Bhāgavata thus explains the circumstance, ix. 6, 2 :

Rathītaraśyāprajasya bhāryāyāṁ tantare 'rthitāḥ | Angirā janayā-māsa brahmararchasinaḥ sūtān | ete kshetre prasūtā vai punaś tv Āṅgirasāḥ smṛitāḥ | Rathītārāṇāṁ pravarāḥ kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ |

"Angiras being solicited for progeny, begot sons possessing Brahmanical glory on the wife of Rathītara who was childless. These persons being born of a (Kshattriya's) wife, but afterwards called descendants of Angiras, were the chief of the Rathītaras, twice-born men (Brāhmans) of Kshattriya lineage."

It will be observed that in this last verse the Bhāgavata reads *kshettre prasūtāḥ* "born of the wife (of a Kshattriya)," instead of *kshattri-prasūtāḥ*, "sprung from a Kshattriya," and thus brings this verse into a closer conformity with the one preceding it. Professor Wilson (p. 359, note) considers that the form given to the legend in the Bhāgavata "is an afterthought, not warranted by the memorial verse cited in our text." It is difficult to determine whether or not this may be the case without knowing which of the two readings in that verse is the original one.

(6.) The Vishṇu Purāṇa next proceeds to enumerate the descendants of Ikshvāku son of Manu. The representative of his line in the twenty-first generation was Harita, of whom it is said, iv. 3, 5 :

⁷⁷ See Prof. Wilson's note in p. 359 on this passage.

Ambarishasya Māndhātus tanayasya Yuvanāśvaḥ putro 'bhūt | tasmād Harito yato 'ngiraso Hārītāḥ |

"The son of Ambarīsha⁷⁵ son of Māndhātṛi was Yuvanāśva. From him sprang Harita, from whom the Hārita Angirases were descended."

These words are thus paraphrased by the Commentator: "from him sprang the Hārita Angirases, Brāhmins, chief of the family of Harita" (*tasmād Hārītā Angiraso dvijāḥ Harita-gotra-pravarāḥ*).

The Linga Purāṇa, quoted by Prof. Wilson, states the same thing:

Harito Yuvanāśvasya Hārītā yata ātmajāḥ | ete hy Angirasah pakṣhe kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ |

"The son of Yuvanāśva was Harita, of whom the Hāritas were sons. They were on the side of Angiras, twice-born men (Brāhmins) of Kshattriya lineage."

And the Vāyu Purāṇa tells us with some variation:

Harito Yuvanāśvasya Hārītā bhūrayaḥ smṛitāḥ | ete hy Angirasah putrāḥ kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ |

"Harita was the son of Yuvanāśva: (after whom) many persons were called Hāritas. These were the sons of Angiras, twice-born men (Brāhmins) of Kshattriya race."

This may mean that they were begotten by Angiras, as is said by the Bhāgavata (see above) to have been the case with Rathītara's sons. In that case, however, as Nābhāga and Ikshvāku were brothers and Rathītara was only the fifth in descent from Nābhāga, whilst Harita was the twenty-first after Ikshvāku,—Angiras (if we suppose one and the same person be meant in both cases) must have lived for sixteen generations!

Such are the remarkable notices given in the Purāṇas of the rise of different castes among the descendants of some of the sons of Manu Vaivasvata the legendary head of the solar line of kings. I shall now add some similar particulars connected with the lunar dynasty.

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa (iv. 6, 2 ff.) Atri was the son of Brahmā, and the father of Soma (the moon), whom Brahmā installed as the sovereign of plants, Brāhmins and stars⁷⁹ (*aśeṣhaushadhi-dvijanākshtrāṇām ādhipatyē 'bhyusechayat*). After celebrating the rājasūya sacrifice, Soma became intoxicated with pride, and carried off Tārā

⁷⁵ We have already had a person of this name the son of Nābhāga. See above.

⁷⁹ See Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1865, p. 135 ff.

(Star), the wife of Bṛihaspati the preceptor of the gods, whom, although admonished and entreated by Brahmā, the gods, and rishis, he refused to restore. Soma's part was taken by Uśanas; and Rudra, who had studied under Angiras, aided Bṛihaspati (*Angirasaścha sakāśopalabdha-vidyo bhagarān Rudro Bṛihaspateḥ sāhāyyam akarot*).⁶⁰ A fierce conflict ensued between the two sides, supported respectively by the gods and the Daityas, etc. Brahmā interposed, and compelled Soma to restore Tāra to her husband. She had, however, in the mean time become pregnant, and bore a son Budha (the planet Mercury), of whom, when strongly urged, she acknowledged Soma to be the father. Purūravas, as has been already mentioned, was the son of this Budha by Ilā, the daughter of Manu. The loves of Purūravas and the Apsaras Urvaśī are related in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, xi. 5, 1, 1;⁶¹ in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, iv. 6, 19 ff.; in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 14;⁶² and in the Harivaṃśa, section 26. The Mahābhārata, Ādip. sect. 75, alludes to Purūravas as having been engaged in a contest with the Brāhmins. This passage will be quoted hereafter. According to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, iv. 7, 1, Purūravas had six sons, of whom the eldest was Āyus. Āyus had five sons: Nahusha, Kshattravṛddha, Rambha, Rāji, and Anenas. The narrative proceeds (iv. 8, 1):

*Kshattravṛddhāt Sunahotraḥ*⁶³ *putro 'bhavat | Kāśa-Leśa-Gṛitsama-*
dūs trayo 'syābhavan | Gṛitsamadasya Śaunakāś chāturvarṇya-prarartta-
yitū. 'bhūt | Kāśasya Kāśirājas tato Dīrghatamāḥ putro 'bhavat | Dhan-
vantis Dīrghatamaso 'bhūt |

"Kshattravṛddha had a son Sunahotra, who had three sons, Kāśa, Leśa, and Gṛitsamada. From the last sprang Śaunaka, who originated the system of four castes.⁶⁴ Kāśa had a son Kāśirāja, of whom again Dīrghatamas was the son, as Dhanvantari was of Dīrghatamas."

⁶⁰ This is the only mention I have ever happened to encounter of the great Mahādeva having been at school!

⁶¹ This passage is translated by Professor Müller in the Oxford Essays for 1856, pp. 62 f.; and the legend has been formed on the basis of the obscure hymn in the R.V. x. 95, in which the two names of Purūravas and Urvaśī occur as those of the interlocutors in a dialogue.

⁶² A short quotation has been already made from this narrative. See above, p. 158.

⁶³ Both my MSS. read *Sunahotra*. Professor Wilson has *Sahotra*.

⁶⁴ The Commentator explains the words *chāturvarṇya-prararttayitū* by saying that the four castes were produced among his descendants (*tad-vaṃśe chātvarō varṇā abhavan*). This explanation agrees with the statement of the Vāyu Purāṇa given in the text.

The Vayu Purāṇa, as quoted by Professor Wilson (V. P. 4to. ed. p. 406), expresses the matter differently, thus :

Putro Ḡṛitsamadasya cha Śunako yasya Saunakāḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshatriyās chaiva vaiśyāḥ śūdrās tathaiva cha | etasya vaṁśe samudbhūtā vichitraiḥ karmabhir dvijāḥ |

“The son of Ḡṛitsamada was Śunaka, from whom sprang Saunaka. In his family were born Brāhmans, Kshatṛtriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras, twice-born men with various functions.”⁸⁵

In like manner the Harivāmśa states in section 29, verse 1520 :

Putro Ḡṛitsamadasyāpi Sunako yasya Saunakāḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshatriyās chaiva vaiśyāḥ śūdrās tathaiva cha |

“The son of Ḡṛitsamada was Śunaka, from whom sprang the Saunakas, Brāhmans, Kshatṛtriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras.”

Something similar is said of Ḡṛitsamati (who was the son of a Suhotra, although not the grandson of Kshatṛtrayiddha) in a following section, the 32nd of the same work, verse 1732 :

Sa chāpi Vitathāḥ putrān janayāmāsa pancha vai | Suhotraṁ cha Suhotāram Gajāṁ Gargaṁ tathaiva cha | Kapilāṁ cha mahātmānam Suhotrasya suta-dvayam | Kāśakaś cha mahāsattvas tathā Ḡṛitsamatir nripaḥ | tathā Ḡṛitsamateḥ putrā brāhmaṇāḥ kshatṛtriyāḥ viśaḥ |

“Vitatha was the father of five sons, Suhotra, Suhotrī, Gaja, Garga, and the great Kapila. Suhotra had two sons, the exalted Kāśaka, and King Ḡṛitsamati. The sons of the latter were Brāhmans, Kshatṛtriyas, and Vaiśyas.”

The Bhagavata Purāṇa, ix. 17, 2 f., has the following notice of Kshatṛtrayiddha's descendants :

Kshatṛtrayiddha-sutasyāsan Suhotrasyāmajās trayāḥ | Kāśyāḥ Kuśo Ḡṛitsamadaḥ iti Ḡṛitsamadād abhūt | Śunako Śaunako yasya bahvrichaḥ pravaro munīḥ |

“Suhotra, son of Kshatṛtrayiddha, had three sons, Kāśya, Kuśa, and Ḡṛitsamada. From the last sprang Śunaka, and from him Śaunaka, the eminent Muni, versed in the Rig-veda.”

⁸⁵ On this Professor Wilson remarks, note, p. 406 “The existence of but one caste in the age of purity, however incompatible with the legend which ascribes the origin of the four tribes to Brahṁā, is everywhere admitted. Their separation is assigned to different individuals, whether accurately to any one may be doubted ; but the notion indicates that the distinction was of a social or political character.”

It is to be observed that this Gṛitsamada, who is here described as belonging to the regal lineage of Purūravas, is the reputed rishi of many hymns in the second Maṇḍala of the Rig-veda. Regarding him the Commentator Sāyana has the following remarks in his introduction to that Maṇḍala :

Maṇḍala-draśtā Gṛitsamadaḥ rishih | sa cha pūrvam Āngirasa-kule Sunahotrasya putrah san yajna-kāle 'surair grihitah Indrena mochitah | paśchāt tad-vachanenaiva Bhṛigu-kule Sunaka-putro Gṛitsamada-nāmā 'bhūt | tathā chānukramaṇikā "Yah Āngirasaḥ Saunahotro bhūtvā Bhārgavaḥ Saunako 'bhavat sa Gṛitsamado dṛitīyam maṇḍalam apaśyad" iti | tathā tasyaiva Saunakasya vachanam rishy-anukramaṇe "tvam Agne" iti | "Gṛitsamadaḥ Saunako Bhṛigutām gataḥ | Saunahotro prakṛityā tu yah Āngirasa uchyate" iti | tasmād maṇḍala-draśtā Saunako Gṛitsamadaḥ rishih |

“The seer (*i.e.* he who received the revelation) of this Maṇḍala was the rishi Gṛitsamada. He, being formerly the son of Sunahotra in the family of the Āngirases, was seized by the Asuras at the time of sacrifice and rescued by Indra. Afterwards, by the command of that god, he became the person named Gṛitsamada, son of Sunaka, in the family of Bhṛigu. Thus the Anukramaṇikā (Index to the Rig-veda) says of him : ‘That Gṛitsamada, who, having been an Āngirasa, and son of Sunahotra, became a Bhārgava and son of Sunaka, saw the second Maṇḍala.’ So, too, the same Saunaka says in his Rishi-anukramaṇa regarding the Maṇḍala beginning with ‘Thou, o Agni’ :—‘Gṛitsamada son of Sunaka who is declared to have been naturally an Āngirasa, and the son of Sunahotra, became a Bhṛigu.’ Hence the seer of the Maṇḍala is the rishi Gṛitsamada son of Sunaka.”

It will be noticed that (unless we are to suppose a different Gṛitsamada to be intended in each case) there is a discrepancy between the Purāṇas on the one hand, and Sāyana and the Anukramaṇikā on the other ; as the Purāṇas make Gṛitsamada the son of Sunahotra or Sunahotra, and the father of Sunaka ; whilst the Anukramaṇikā, followed by Sāyana, represents the same personage as having been, indeed, originally the son of Sunahotra of the race of Angiras, but as having afterwards become, by what process does not appear, the son of Sunaka of the race of Bhṛigu.

In his translation of the Rig-veda (ii. 207 f.) Professor Wilson refers

to a legend about King Vītahavya in the Anuśāsana-parvan of the Ma-hābhārata (verses 1944–2006) which gives a different account of Ṛit-samada's parentage. It begins: *Sṛiṇu rājān yathā rājā Vītahavyo mahāyaśāḥ | rājārshir durlabham prāpto brāhmaṇyaṁ loka-satkṛitam !* "Hear, o king, how the renowned Vītahavya, the royal rishi, attained the condition of Brāhmaṇhood venerated by mankind, and so difficult to be acquired." It happened that Divodāsa, King of Kāśī (Benares), was attacked by the sons of Vītahavya, and all his family slain by them in battle. The afflicted monarch thereupon resorted to the sage Bhāṛā-dvāja, who performed for him a sacrifice in consequence of which a son named Pratardana was born to him. Pratardana, becoming an accomplished warrior, was sent by his father to take vengeance on the Vīta-havyas. They rained upon him showers of arrows and other missiles, "as clouds pour down upon the Himālaya"⁵⁶ (*abhyavarshanta rājānam himarantam ivāmbudāḥ*); but he destroyed them all, and "they lay with their bodies besmeared with blood, like kinsuka-trees"⁵⁷ cut down (*apatān rudhīrārdraṅgā nilīritā iva kiṁśukāḥ*). Vītahavya himself had now to fly to another sage, Bhṛigu, who promised him protection. The avenger Pratardana, however, followed and demanded that the refugee should be delivered up:

Asyedānīm badhād adya bhariṣhyāmy anriṇaḥ pituḥ | tam urācha kṛi-pāviṣṭo Bhṛigur dharma-bhṛitāṁ varaḥ | "nehāsti kṣhattriyaḥ kaścit sarve kīme dvijātayaḥ" | etat tu rachanaṁ śrutiā Bhṛigos tathyam Pra-tardanaḥ | pādār upasprīṣya śunaiḥ prahṛiṣṭo rākyam abravīt | evaṁ apy asmi bhagavan kṛitakṛityo na saṁśayaḥ | tyājīto hi mayā jātim eṣu rājā Bhṛigūdvaḥa | tatas tenābhyanujñāto yayau rājā Pra-tardanaḥ | yathā-gatam mahārāja muktvā visham ivoragaḥ | Bhṛigor rachana-mātrena sa cha brahmarshitāṁ gataḥ | Vītahavyo mahārāja brah-mavādītram eva cha | tasya Ṛitsamadaḥ putro rūpenendra ivāparaḥ "Sakras tvam" iti yo daityair nigrihitāḥ kilābhavat | ṛigrede varttate chāgryā śrutir yasya mahātmanaḥ | yatra Ṛitsamado "brahman" brāh-manaiḥ sa mahīgate | sa brahmachārī viprarshiḥ śrīmān Ṛitsamado bhavat |

"Pratardana says: 'By the slaughter of this (Vītahavya) I shall

⁵⁶ This simile seems to indicate a familiarity with the manner in which the clouds collect, and discharge their contents on the outer range of the Himālaya.

⁵⁷ The Kinśuka is a tree bearing a red blossom (*Butea frondosa*).

now, to-day, be acquitted of my debt to my father.' Bhṛigu, the most eminent of religious men, filled with compassion, answered: 'There is no Kshattriya here: all these are Brāhmins.' Hearing this true assertion of Bhṛigu, Pratardana was glad, and gently touching the sage's feet, rejoined: 'Even thus, o glorious saint, I have gained my object . . . for I have compelled this King (*i.e.* Rājanya) to relinquish his caste.' King Pratardana then, after receiving the sage's salutations, departed, as he came, like a serpent which has discharged its poison: while Vītahavya by the mere word of Bhṛigu became a Brāhman-rishi, and an utterer of the Veda. Gṛitsamada, in form like a second Indra, was his son; he was seized by the Daityas, who said to him, 'Thou art Śakra' (Indra). In the Rig-veda the texts (*śruti*) of this great rishi stand first.⁶² There Gṛitsamada is honoured by the Brāhmins (with the title of) 'Brāhmān.' This illustrious personage was a Brahmacārin, and a Brāhman-rishi."

According to the enumeration of Gṛitsamada's family, which follows here, Śunaka was his descendant in the twelfth generation, and Śaunaka in the thirteenth. The story concludes with these words:

*Evaṁ vipratvam agamad Vītahavyo narādhipaḥ | Bhṛigoh prasādād
rājendra kshattriyaḥ kshāttriyarshabha |*

"Thus did King Vītahavya, a Kshattriya, enter into the condition of Brāhmanhood by the favour of Bhṛigu."

In the next chapter we shall again notice Vītahavya among the Kshattriyas who are declared by tradition to have been the authors of Vedic hymns.

King Divodāsa was the sixth in descent from Kāśa brother of Gṛitsamada. Of him the Harivaṁśa states, section 32, verse 789 f.:

*Divodāsasya dāyādo brahmarshir Mitrāyur nṛipaḥ | Maitrāyaṇas
tataḥ Soma Maitreyās tu tataḥ smṛitāḥ | ete vai saṁśritāḥ pakṣham
kshattropetās tu Bhārgavāḥ |*

"The son of Divodāsa was the King Mitrāyu a Brāhman-rishi. From him sprang Soma Maitrāyaṇa, from whom the Maitreyas received their name. They, being of Kshattriya lineage, adhered as Bhārgavas to the side (of the latter)."

⁶² If I have correctly interpreted this verse, and if by "first" we are to understand first in order, it does not accurately represent the state of the case. as the hymns of Gṛitsamada only appear in the second Maṇḍala.

The twentieth in descent from the same Kāsa, brother of Gṛtsamada, was Bhārgabhūmi, of whom the Vishnu Purāṇa says, iv. 8, 9 :

Bhārgosya Bhārgabhūmiḥ | tataś chāturvarnya-pravṛttiḥ | ity ete Kāsayo bhūpatayaḥ kathitāḥ |

“The son of Bhārga was Bhārgabhūmi, from whom the four castes originated. Thus have the kings called Kāsis been declared.”

In two passages of the Harivaṁśa, names identical, or nearly so, are found, but with a different progenitor in each case, in reference to which a similar statement is made. The first is in section 29, verse 1596 :

Veṇuhotra-sutaś chāpi Bhargo nāma prajāśvaraḥ | Vatsasya Vatsabhūmis tu Bhṛigubhūmis tu Bhārgavāt | ete hy Angirasaḥ putrā jātā vaṁśe 'tha Bhārgave | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyās trayāḥ putrāḥ⁸⁹ sahasraśaḥ |

“The son of Veṇuhotra was King Bharga. From Vatsa sprang Vatsabhūmi, and Bhṛigubhūmi from Bhārgava. These descendants of Angiras were then born in the family of Bhṛigu, Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas three (classes of) descendants in thousands.”

The second passage is in the 32nd section, verse 1752 :

Sukumārasya putras tu Satyaketur mahārathaḥ | suto 'bharad mahā-tejā rājā parama-dhārmikāḥ | Vatsasya Vatsabhūmis tu Bhārgabhūmis tu Bhārgavāt | ete hy Angirasaḥ putrā jātā vaṁśe 'tha Bhārgave | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyāḥ śūdrāś cha Bharatarshabha |

“The warrior Satyaketu was the son of Sukumāra, and a prince of great lustre and virtue. From Vatsa sprang Vatsabhūmi, and Bhārgabhūmi from Bhārgava. These descendants of Angiras were then born in the family of Bhṛigu, Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas and Śūdras.”

The parallel passage in the Vāyu Purāṇa, as quoted by Professor Wilson, p. 409, has names which are mostly different :

Veṇuhotra-sutaś chāpi Gārgyo vai nāma viśrutaḥ | Gārgyasya Gārgabhūmis tu Vatsa Vatsasya dhīmataḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāś cha trayāḥ putrāḥ sudhārmikāḥ |

“The son of Veṇuhotra was the renowned Gārgya. Gargabhūmi was the son of Gārgya; and Vatsa of the wise Vatsa. Brāhmins and Kshattriyas were the virtuous sons of these two.”⁹⁰

⁸⁹ Professor Wilson, p. 410, note, gives *tejoyuktāḥ*, “glorious,” instead of *trayāḥ putrāḥ*, as the reading either of the Brāhma Purāṇa, or of the Harivaṁśa, or both

⁹⁰ In regard to, these passages the reader may consult the remarks of Professor

Another son of Āyus (son of Purūravas) was Rambha, of whom the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 17, 10 :

Rambhasya Rabhasaḥ putro Gabhīraś chākriyas tataḥ | tasya kshettre brahma jajne śṛiṇu vaṁśam Anenasah |

“The son of Rambha was Rabhasa, from whom sprang Gabhīra and Akriya. From his wife Brāhmans were born : here now the race of Anenas” (another son of Āyus).

Of the same Rambha the Viṣṇu Purāṇa says (iv. 9, 8), *Rambhas te anapatayo bharat* | “Rambha was childless.”

Another son of Āyus, as we have seen, Viṣṇu Purāṇa, iv. 8, 1, was Nabu-ha. He had six sons (V. P. iv. 10, 1), of whom one was Yayāti. The sons of the latter were Yadu, Turvasu, Druhyu, Anu, and Pūru (Ibid. iv. 10, 2).⁹¹ One of these five, Anu, had, as we are told, in the twelfth generation a son called Bali, of whom the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, iv. 18, 1, relates :

Hemāt Sutapās tasmād Balir yasya kshettre Dīrghatamasā Anga-Banga-Kalinga-Suhma-Puṇḍrākhyam Bāleyaṁ kshatratram ajanyata |

“From Hema sprang Sutapas ; and from him Bali, on whose wife⁹² Bāleya Kshattriyas (i.e. Kshattriyas of the race of Bali), called Anga, Banga, Kalinga, Suhma, and Puṇḍra were begotten by Dīrghatamas.”

Professor Wilson (p. 445, note 12) quotes from the Vāyu Purāṇa a statement regarding the same person that he had “sons who founded the four castes” (*putrān chāturvorṇya-karān*) ; and refers to a passage in the Matsya Purāṇa, in which Bali is said to have obtained from

Wilson, p. 409, note 16, where a commentator (on the Brāhma Purāṇa, or the Hari-vaṁśa) is quoted, who says that in the passage from these works “another son of Vatsa the father of Alarka is specified, viz., Vatsabhūmi ; while Bhārgava is the brother of Vatsa ; and that (the persons referred to were) Angirasas because Gālava belonged to that family, and (were born in the family) of Bhrigu, because Visvāmitra belonged to it” (*Vatsasya Alarka-putuḥ putrāntaram āha “Vatsabhūmi” iti | “Bhārgavād” Vatsa-bhrātuh | “Angiraso” Gālavasya Angīrasatrāt | “Bhārgave” Visvāmitrasya Bhārgavatrāt*). The Viṣṇu Purāṇa, iv. 8, 6, says that Vatsa was one of the names of Pratardana, son of Divodāsa, a descendant of Kāśa, and a remote ancestor of Bhārgabhūmi. See however Professor Wilson’s note 13, p. 408. It is possible that the resemblance of the word Bhārga to Bhārgava may have occasioned the descendants of the former to be connected with the family of Bhrigu.

⁹¹ These five names occur together in the plural in a verse of the Rīg-veda, i 109, quoted above, p. 179.

⁹² *Kshettre bhārgyāyāṁ jātatrād Bāleyāḥ* | “They were called descendants of Bali because they were born of his wife.”

Brahmā the boon that he should “establish the four fixed castes” (*chaturō niyatān varṇāms tvaṁ sthāpayeti*).

The Harivaṁśa gives the following account of Bali, in the course of which the same thing is stated; section 31, verses 1682 ff.:

*Phenāt tu Sutapā jajñe sutaḥ Sutapaso Baliḥ | jāto mānuṣha-yonau tu
sa rājā kāñchaneshudhiḥ | mahāyogī su tu Balir babhūva nṛpatiḥ purā |
putrān utpādayāmāsa pancha vaṁśa-karān bhuvī | Angaḥ prathamato
jajñe Vangaḥ Suhmas tathaiva cha | Puṇḍraḥ Kalingaś cha tathā Bāle-
yaṁ kshatṭram uchyaṭe | Bāleyā brāhmaṇāś chaiva tasya vaṁśakarā
bhuvī | Bales tu Brahmaṇā datto varaḥ prītena Bhārata | mahāyogitvam
āyus cha kalpasya parimānataḥ | sangrāme chāpy ajeyatvaṁ dharme
chaiva pradhānatā | trilokya-darśanam chāpi prādhānyam prasave
tathā | bale chāprotimatvaṁ vai dharmo-tattvārtha-darśanam | chaturō
niyatān varṇāms tvaṁ cha sthāpayitēti cha | ity ukto vibhūnā rājā Baliḥ
śāntim parāṁ yayau | tasyaite tanayāḥ sarve kshettrajā muni-pungarāt |
sambhūtā Dirghatapasah Sudeshṇūyām mahaujausah |*

“From Phenā sprang Sutapas; and the son of Sutapas was Bali. He was born of a human mother, this prince with the golden quiver; but King Bali was of old a great yogin. He begot five sons, who were the heads of races upon the earth. Anga was first born, then Vanga, Suhma, Puṇḍra and Kalinga; such are the names of the Kshattṛiyas descended from Bali (*Bāleyāḥ*). There were also Bāleya Brāhmins, founders of his race upon the earth. By Brahmā, who was pleased, the boon was granted to Bali that he should be a great yogin, should live the entire length of a Kalpa, should be invincible in battle, should have pre-eminence in virtue, should have the power of beholding the whole three worlds, should have a superiority in begetting progeny, should be unequalled in strength, and should comprehend the essential principles of duty. And being thus addressed by the Lord in these words, ‘Thou shalt establish the four regulated castes,’ King Bali attained supreme tranquillity. All these sons, the off-spring of his wife, were begotten on Sudeshṇā by the glorious muni Dirghatapas.”⁹³

⁹³ M. Langlois must have found in his MS. a different reading of the last line, as he renders it otherwise. Professor Wilson remarks (V P. pp. 444, note 12) “The Matsya calls Bali the son of Virochana, and *āyu-kalpa-pramāṇīkaḥ*, ‘existing for a whole Kalpa;’ identifying him, therefore, only in a different period and form, with the Bali of the Vāmana Avatāra” (Dwarf-incarnation). (See Wilson’s Vishṇu P. p. 265, note, and the Bhāgavata P. ix. sects. 15–23, and other works quoted in the 4th vol. of this work, pp. 116 ff.)

Apratiratha is recorded as being a descendant of Pūru (another of Yayāti's sons), in the thirteenth generation (Wilson, p. 448). Of him it is related, Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 19, 2:

Ṛiteyoḥ Rantināraḥ putro 'bhūt | Taṁsum Apratirathaṁ Dhruvaṁ cha Rantināraḥ putrān avāpa | Apratirathāt Kaṇvaḥ | tasyāpi Medhātithiḥ | yataḥ Kaṇvāyanā dvijā babhūbhuh | Taṁsor Anilas tato Dushyantādyās chatrāraḥ putrā babhūruḥ | Dushyantāch chakravartti Bharato 'bharat |

“Ṛiteyu had a son Rantināra, who had Tansu, Apratiratha and Dhruva for his sons. From Apratiratha sprang Kaṇva. His son was Medhātithi; from whom the Kāṇvāyana Brāhmins were descended. From Tansu sprang Anila, who had four sons, Dushyanta, and others. From Dushyanta sprang the emperor Bharata.”

With some variations the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 20, 1:

Pūror vaṁśam pravakṣyāmi yatra jāto 'si Bhārata | yatra rājarshayo vaṁśyā brahma-vaṁśyās cha jajñire | . . . 6. Ṛiteyoḥ Rantibhāro 'bhūt trayas tasyātma-jā nripa | Sumatir Dhruvo 'pratirathaḥ Kaṇvo 'pratirathāmajaḥ | tasya Medhātithis tasmāt Praskaṇvādya dvijātayaḥ | putro 'bhūt Sumater Raibhyo Dushyantas tat-suto mataḥ |

“I shall declare the race of Pūru from which thou hast sprung, o Bhārata; and in which there have been born royal rishis, and men of Brahmanical family . . . 6. From Ṛiteyu sprang Rantibhāra; who had three sons, Sumati, Dhruva, and Apratiratha. Kaṇva was the son of the last; and the son of Kaṇva was Medhātithi, from whom the Praskaṇvas and other Brāhmins were descended.”

A little further on, in the chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa just quoted (iv. 19, 10), Kaṇva and Medhātithi are mentioned as having had a different parentage from that before assigned, viz., as being the son and grandson of Ajamīdha, who was a descendant in the ninth generation of Tansu, the brother of Apratiratha:

Ajamīdhāt Kaṇvaḥ | Kaṇvād Medhātithir yataḥ Kāṇvāyanā dvijāḥ | Ajamīdhasyānyah putro Bṛihadishuḥ |

“From Ajamīdha sprang Kaṇva: from Kaṇva Medhātithi, from whom were descended the Kāṇvāyana Brāhmins. Ajamīdha had another son Bṛihadishu.”⁹⁴

⁹⁴ On this the Commentator remarks *Ajamīdhasya Kaṇvādīr eko vaṁśo Bṛihadishv-ādīr aparo vaṁśo Nīlādīr aparāḥ Rikshādīs chūparāḥ* | “Ajamīdha had one set of descendants, consisting of Kaṇva, etc., a second consisting of Bṛihadishu, etc.,

On this last passage Professor Wilson observes, p. 452, note : “ The copies agree in this reading, yet it can scarcely be correct. Kaṇva has already been noticed as the son of Apratiratha.” But the compiler of the Purāṇa may here be merely repeating the discordant accounts which he found in the older authorities which he had before him.

Regarding Ajamīdha the Bhāgavata says, ix. 21, 21 :

Ajamīdhasya vaṁśyāḥ syuḥ Priyamedhūdayo dvijāḥ | Ajamīdhād Brīhadishuḥ |

“ Priyamedha and other Brāhmins were descendants of Ajamīdha. From Ajamīdha sprang Brīhadishu.”

The Viṣṇu Purāṇa (iv. 19, 16) gives the following account of Mudgala, a descendant of Ajamīdha in the seventh generation :

Mudgalūch cha Maudgalyāḥ kshattropetā dvijātayo babhūruḥ | Mudgalād Bahvaśvo Bahvaśvād Divodāso 'halyā cha mithunam abhūt | Śaradvato 'halyāyān Sātānando 'bhavat |

“ From Mudgala were descended the Maudgalya Brāhmins of Kshatriya stock. From Mudgala sprang Bahvaśva; from him again twins, Divodāsa and Ahalyā. Sātānanda was born to Śaradvat⁹⁵ by Ahalyā.”

Similarly the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, iv. 21, 33 f. :

Mudgalād brahma nirṛittān gotram Maudgalya-sanjñitam | mithunam Mudgalād Bhārmyād Divodāsaḥ pumān abhūt | Ahalyā kanyakā yasyān Sātānandas tu Gautamāt |

“ From Mudgala sprang Brāhmins, the family called Maudgalyas. To the same father, who was son of Bharmyaśva, were born twins, Divodāsa, a male, and Ahalyā, a female child, who bore Sātānanda to Gautama.”

The words of the Matsya Purāṇa on the same subject, as quoted by Professor Wilson, p. 454, note 50, are :

Mudgalasyāpi Maudgalyāḥ kshattropetā dvijātūyāḥ | ete hy Angirasah pakshe saṁsthitāḥ Kaṇva-Mudgalāḥ |

“ From Mudgala sprang the Maudgalyas, Brāhmins of Kshatriya stock. These Kaṇva and Mudgalas stood on the side of Angiras.”

a third consisting of Nīla, etc., and a fourth consisting of Riksha, etc.” The last two sons of Ajamīdha are mentioned further on, Nīla in v. 15, and Riksha in v. 18, of the same chapter of the V. P.

⁹⁵ The Commentator says this is a name of Gautama. Regarding Ahalyā and Gautama see the story extracted above, p. 121, from the Rāmāyaṇa.

The Harivaṁśa, section 32, verse 1781, thus notices the same family :

*Mudgalasya tu dāyādo Maudgalyaḥ sumahāyāsāḥ | ete sarve mahāt-
māno kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ | ete hy Angirasah pakṣhaṁ saṁśritāḥ
Kāṇva-Mudgalāḥ | Maudgalyasya suto jyeshṭho brahmarshiḥ suma-
hāyāsāḥ |*

“The renowned Maudgalya was the son of Mudgala. All these great personages were Brāhmins of Kshattriya descent. These Kāṇvas and Mudgalas adhered to the side of Angiras. Maudgalya's eldest son was a celebrated Brahman-rishi.”

Regarding Kshemaka, a future descendant of Ajamīḍha in the 31st generation, the Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 21, 4 :

*Tato Niramitras tasmāch cha Kshemakah | tatrāyaṁ slokah | “brah-
ma-kshattrasya yo yonir⁶⁶ vaṁśo rājarshi-satkṛitah | Kshema'am prāpya
rājānaṁ sa saṁsthāṁ prāpsyate kalau |*

“From him (Khaṇḍapāṇi) shall spring Niramitra; and from him Kshemaka; regarding whom this verse (is current): ‘The race, consecrated by royal rishis, which gave birth to Brāhmins and Kshattriyas, shall terminate in the Kali age, after reaching King Kshemaka.’”

The corresponding verse quoted by Professor Wilson (p. 462, note 24) from the Matsya and Vāyu Purāṇas substitutes *devarshi*, “divine rishis,” or “gods and rishis,” for the *rājarshi*, “royal rishis,” of the Vishṇu Purāṇa. The verse in question is there described as *anuvāṁśa-śloka'yaṁ gīto vīprairiḥ purātanaish*, “a genealogical verse sung by ancient Brāhmins.”

According to the details given from the Purāṇas in this section several persons, Gṛtsamada, Kāṇva, Medhātithi, and Priyamedha, to whom hymns of the Rig-veda are ascribed by Indian tradition as their rishis, were of Kshattriya descent.

In the line of the same Tansu, brother of Apratiratha, we find in the sixth generation a person named Garga, of whom the Vishṇu Purāṇa relates, iv. 19, 9 :

Gargāt S'iniḥ | tato Gārgyāḥ S'ainyāḥ kshattropetā dvijātayo babhūvuh |

“From Garga sprang S'ini; from them were descended the Gārgyas and Sainyas, Brāhmins of Kshattriya race.”⁶⁷

⁶⁶ On this words the Commentator has this note. *Brahmanah brāhmanasya Kshattrasya kshattriyasya cha yonih kīraṇam pūrvam yathoktatvāt |* “‘Brahma’ and ‘Kshattria’ stand for Brāhman and Kshattriya. This race is the ‘source,’ cause (of these), as has been declared above.”

⁶⁷ On this the Commentator only remarks *Tatas tādhyām Gārgyāḥ S'ainyās cha*

Similarly the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 21, 19, says:

Gargāt S'ini's tato Gārgyaḥ kshattrād brahma hy avarttata |

"From Garga sprang S'ini; from them Gārgya, who from a Kshatriya became a Brāhman."⁹⁸

The Vishṇu Purāṇa records a similar circumstance regarding the family of Mahāvīryya, the brother of Garga (iv. 19, 10):

Mahāvīryyād Urukshayo nāma putro 'bhūt | tasya Trayyaruna-Pushkarinau Kapiś cha putra-trayam abhūt | tach cha tritayam api paśchād vipratām upajagāma |

"Mahāvīryya had a son named Urukshaya; who again had three sons, Trayyaruna, Puskarin, and Kapi; and these three⁹⁹ afterwards entered into the state of Brāhmins (*i.e.* became such)."

The Bhāgavata states, ix. 21, 19 f.:

Duritakshayo Mahāvīryyāt tasya Trayyārūṇiḥ Kaviḥ | Pushkarārūṇirity atra ye brāhmaṇa-gatiṁ gatāḥ |

"From Mahāvīryya sprang Duritakshaya. From him were descended Trayyarūṇi, Kavi, and Pushkarārūṇi, who attained to the destination of Brāhmins."¹⁰⁰

According to the Matsya Purāṇa also, as quoted by Professor Wilson (451, note 22), "all these sons of Uruksha (*sic*) attained the state of Brāhmins" (*Urukshataḥ sūtā hy ete sarve brāhmaṇatām gatāḥ*); and in another verse of the same Purāṇa, cited in the same note, it is added: *Kāryānām tu varā hy ete trayāḥ proktā maharshayah | Gargāḥ Sankṛitayaḥ Kāryā kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ |* "These three classes of great rishis, viz. the Gargas, Sankṛitis, and Kāryas, Brāhmins of Kshatriya race, are declared to be the most eminent of the Kāryas, or descendants of Kavi." The original Garga was, as we have seen, the brother of Mahāvīryya, the father of Kavi, or Kapi; while, according to the

Garga-vaṁśyatṛt S'ini-vaṁśyatvāc cha samākhyātāḥ | kshattriyā eva kenachit lāraṇena brāhmaṇāś chu bubhūvuh | "They were called Gārgyas and S'ainyas because they were of the race of Gārga and S'ini. Being indeed Kshatriyas they became Brāhmins from some cause or other."

⁹⁸ The Commentator does not say how this happened.

⁹⁹ Unless Professor Wilson's MSS. had a different reading from mine, it must have been by an oversight that he has translated here, "The last of whom became a Brāhman."

¹⁰⁰ On this the Commentator annotates. *Ye atra kshattrā-vaṁśe brāhmaṇa-gatiṁ brāhmaṇa-rūpatām gatāś te |* "Who in this Kshatriya race attained the destination of Brāhmins,—the form of Brāhmins."

Vishṇu Purāṇa (iv. 19, 9), and Bhāgavata Purāṇa (ix. 21, 1), Sankṛiti was the son of Nara, another brother of Mahavīrya.

The series of passages just quoted is amply sufficient to prove that according to the traditions received by the compilers of the ancient legendary history of India (traditions so general and undisputed as to prevail over even their strong hierarchical prepossessions), Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and even Vaiśyas and Sūdras, were, at least in many cases, originally descended from one and the same stock. The European critic can have no difficulty in receiving these obscure accounts as true in their literal sense; though the absence of precise historical data may leave him without any other guide than speculation to assist him in determining the process by which a community originally composed for the most part of one uniform element, was broken up into different classes and professions, separated from each other by impassable barriers. On the other hand, the possibility of this common origin of the different castes, though firmly based on tradition, appeared in later times so incredible, or so unpalatable, to some of the compilers of the Purāṇas, that we find them occasionally attempting to explain away the facts which they record, by statements such as we have encountered in the case of the Kings Rathītara and Bāli, that their progeny was begotten upon their wives by the sages Angiras and Dīrghatamas, or Dīrghatapās; or by the introduction of a miraculous element into the story, as we have already seen in one of the legends regarding Gṛitsamada, and as we shall have occasion to notice in a future chapter in the account of Viśvāmitra.

CHAPTER III.

ON THE MUTUAL RELATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF
INDIAN SOCIETY ACCORDING TO THE HYMNS OF THE RIG-
AND ATHARVA-VEDAS.

In the last chapter I have attempted to shew that in general the authors of the hymns of the Rig-veda regarded the whole of the Aryan people, embracing not only the priests and chiefs, but the middle classes also of the population, as descended from one common father, or ancestor, whom they designate by the name of Manu. This reference to a common progenitor excludes, of course, the supposition that the writers by whom it is made could have had any belief in the myth which became afterwards current among their countrymen, that their nation consisted of four castes, differing naturally in dignity, and separately created by Brahmā.

In that chapter I proposed to leave for further consideration any specific notices which the Rig-veda might contain regarding the different classes of which the society contemporary with its composition was made up. On this consideration I now enter. As that great collection of hymns embodies numerous references, both to the authors themselves and to the other agents in the celebration of divine worship, it may be expected to supply, incidentally or indirectly, at least, some information respecting the opinion which these ministers of religion entertained of themselves, and of the ecclesiastical and civil relations in which they stood to the other sections of the community. I shall now endeavour to shew how far this expectation is justified by an examination of the Rig-veda.

It will be understood, from what I have already (pp. 7 and 11 ff.) written on the subject of that one hymn of the Rig-veda in which the

four castes are distinctly specified, *i.e.* the Purusha Sūkta, that in the enquiry, which I am now about to undertake, I confine myself in the first instance to those hymns which for any reason (see p. 4, above) appear to be the most ancient, leaving out of account until afterwards, all those compositions which, like the one just mentioned, are presumably of a later age.

It will, I think, be found on investigation that not only the older hymns, but the great bulk of the hymns, supply no distinct evidence of the existence of a well defined and developed caste-system at the time when they were composed.

SECT. I.—*On the signification of the words brāhmān, brāhmana, etc., in the Rig-veda.*

As the Rig-veda Sanhitā is made up almost entirely of hymns in praise of the gods, it was not to be anticipated that it should furnish any systematic or detailed explanations on the points which form the object of our enquiry. But as was natural in compositions of the early and simple age to which these hymns belong, they do not always confine themselves to matters strictly connected with their principal subject, but indulge in occasional references to the names, families, personal merits, qualifications, relations, circumstances, and fortunes of the poets by whom they were produced, or of their patrons or other contemporaries, or of their predecessors.

I have, in another volume of this work,¹ enquired into the views which the authors of the hymns appear to have held on the subject of their own authorship. The conclusion at which I arrived was, that they did not in general look upon their compositions as divinely inspired, since they frequently speak of them as the productions of their own minds (vol. iii. pp. 128–140). But although this is most commonly the case (and especially, as we may conjecture, in regard to the older hymns), there is no doubt that they also attached a high value to these productions, which they describe as being acceptable to the gods (R.V. v. 45, 4; v. 85, 1; vii. 26, 1, 2; x. 23, 6; x. 54, 6; x. 105,

¹ Original Sanskrit Texts, vol. iii. pp. 116–161.

8), whose activity they stimulated (iii. 34, 1; vii. 19, 11), and whose blessing they drew down. In some of the hymns a supernatural character or insight is claimed for the rishis (i. 179, 2; vii. 76, 4; iii. 53, 9; vii. 33, 11 ff.; vii. 87, 4; vii. 88, 3 ff.; x. 14, 15; x. 62, 4, 5), and a mysterious efficacy is ascribed to their compositions (vol. iii. pp. 173 f.) The rishis called their hymns by various names, as *arka*, *uktha*, *rich*, *gir*, *dhī*, *nītha*, *nivid*, *mantra*, *mati*, *sūkta*, *stoma*, *vāch*, *rachas*, etc. etc.; and the also applied to them the appellation of *brahma* in numerous passages.² That in the passages in question *brahma* has generally the sense of hymn or prayer is clear from the context of some of them (as in i. 37, 4; viii. 32, 27, where the word is joined with the verb *gāyata*, “sing,” and in vi. 69, 7, where the gods are supplicated to hear the *brahma*), as well as from the fact that the poets are said (in i. 62, 13; v. 73, 10; vii. 22, 9; vii. 31, 11; x. 80, 7) to have fashioned or generated the prayer, in the same way as they are said to have fashioned or generated hymns in other texts (as i. 109, 1; v. 2, 11; vii. 15, 4; viii. 77, 4; x. 23, 6; x. 39, 14), where the sense is indisputable; while in other places (iv. 16, 21; v. 29, 15; vi. 17, 13; vi. 50, 6; vii. 61, 6; x. 89, 3) new productions of the poets are spoken of under the appellation of *brahma*.

That *brahma* has the sense of hymn or prayer is also shown by the two following passages. In vii. 26, 1, it is said: *Na somah Indram asuto mamāda na abrahmāno magharānaṁ sūtāsah | tasmai ukthaṁ janayaj jujoshad nṛirad narīyah śrinavad yathā nah |* 2. *Ukthe ukthe somah Indram mamāda nīthe nīthe magharānaṁ sūtāsah | yad im sabādhaḥ pitarāṁ na putrāḥ samāna-dakshāḥ avase haviṁtr |* “Soma unless poured out does not exhilarate Indra; nor do libations without hymns (*abrahmānaḥ*). I generate for him a hymn (*uktha*) which he will love, so that like a man he may hear our new (production). 2. At each hymn (*uktha*) the soma exhilarates Indra, at each psalm (*nītha*) the libations (exhilarate) Maghavat, when the worshippers united, with one effort, invoke him for help, as sons do a father.”³ Again in x. 105, 8, it is

² For a list of these texts and other details which are here omitted, I refer to my article “On the relations of the priests to the other classes of Indian Society in the Vedic age,” in the Journal of the Roy. As. Soc. for 1866 (from which this section is mostly borrowed).

³ It is clear from the context of this passage that *abrahmānaḥ* means “unattended by hymns,” and not “without a priest.” After saying that soma-libations without

said: *Ava no vṛjīnā śīśiki ṛichā vanema anṛichah | na abrahmā yajnah ṛidhag joshati tve* | “Drive away our calamities. With a hymn (*ṛichā*) may we slay the men who are hymnless (*anṛichah*). A sacrifice without prayer (*abrahmā*) does not please thee well.”

I have said that great virtue is occasionally attributed by the poets to their hymns and prayers; and this is true of those sacred texts when called by the name of *brahma*, as well as when they receive other appellations, such as *mantra*. Thus it is said, iii. 53, 12, *Viśvāmitrasya rakshati brahma idam Bhārataṁ janam* | “This prayer (*brahma*) of Viśvāmitra protects the tribe of Bharata;” v. 40, 6, *Gūlham sūryaṁ tamasā apavratena turīyena brahmaṇā avindat Atriḥ* | “Atri with the fourth prayer (*brahmaṇā*) discovered the sun concealed by unholy darkness;” vi. 75, 19, *Brahma varma mama antaram* | “Prayer (*brahma*) is my protecting armour;” vii. 33, 3, *Eva id nu kam dāśarājne Sudāsam prāvad Indro brahmaṇā vo Vasishṭhāḥ* | “Indra preserved Sudās in the battle of the ten kings through your prayer, o Vasishṭhas.” In ii. 23, 1, *Brahmaṇaspati* is said to be the “great king of prayers” (*jyeshṭharājam brahmaṇām*) (compare vii. 97, 3), and in verse 2, to be the “generator of prayers” (*janitā brahmaṇām*); whilst in x. 61, 7, prayer is declared to have been generated by the gods (*svādhyo ajanayan brahma devāḥ*). Compare vii. 35, 7.

Brāhmān in the masculine is no doubt derived from the same root as *brāhmān* neuter, and though differing from it in accent⁴ as well as gender, must be presumed to be closely connected with it in signification, just as the English “prayer” in the sense of a petition would be with “prayer,” a petitioner, if the word were used in the latter sense. As, then, *brāhmān* in the neuter means a hymn or prayer, *brāhmān* in the masculine must naturally be taken to denote the person who composes or repeats a hymn or prayer. We do not, however, find that the composers of the hymns are in general designated by the word

hymns are unacceptable to Indra, the poet does not add that he is himself a *priest*, or that he is attended by one, but that he generates a hymn; and the same sense is required by what follows in the second verse. Accordingly we find that Sāyaṇa explains *abrahmāṇah* by *stotra-hīnāḥ*, “destitute of hymns.” The same sense is equally appropriate in the next passage cited, x. 105, 8. On iv. 16, 9, where *abrahmā* is an epithet of *dasyu*, “demon,” Sāyaṇa understands it to mean “without a priest,” but it may mean equally well or better, “without devotion, or prayer.”

⁴ In *brāhmān* neuter the accent is on the first syllable; in *brahmān* masculine on the last.

brāhmān, the name most commonly applied to them being *ṛishi*, though they are also called *vipra*, *vedhas*, *kavi*, etc. (see vol. iii. of this work, pp. 116 ff.). There are, however, a few texts, such as i. 80, 1 ; i. 164, 35 ; ii. 12, 6 ; ii. 39, 1 ; v. 31, 4 ; v. 40, 8 ; ix. 113, 6, etc., in which the *brāhmān* may or must be understood as referred to in the capacity of author of the hymn he utters. So, too, in ii. 20, 4, and vi. 21, 8, a new composer of hymns seems to be spoken of under the appellation of *nutānasya brāhmānyataḥ* ; and in ii. 19, 8, the *Ṛṣṭsamadas* are referred to both as the fabricators of a new hymn (*manma navīyaḥ*) and as (*brāhmānyāntaḥ*) performing devotion.⁵ In three passages, vii. 28, 2 ; vii. 70, 5, and x. 89, 16, the *brāhmā* and *brāhmāni*, “prayer” and “prayers,” or “hymn” and “hymns,” of the *rishis* are spoken of ; and in vii. 22, 9, it is said, “that both the ancient and the recent *rishis* have generated prayers” (*ye cha pūrve ṛishayo ye cha nūtnāḥ Indra brahmāni janayanta viprāḥ*). In i. 177, 5, we find *brahmāni karoḥ*, “the prayers of the poet.” The fact that in various hymns the authors speak of themselves as having received valuable gifts from the princes their patrons, and that they do not there allude to any class of officiating priests as separate from themselves, would also seem to indicate an identity of the poet and priest at that early period.

The term *brahman* must therefore, as we may conclude, have been originally applied (1) to the same persons who are spoken of elsewhere in the hymns as *ṛishi*, *kavi*, etc., and have denoted devout worshippers and contemplative sages who composed prayers and hymns which they themselves recited in praise of the gods. Afterwards when the ceremonial gradually became more complicated, and a division of sacred functions took place, the word was more ordinarily employed (2) for a minister of public worship, and at length came to signify (3) one particular kind of priest with special duties. I subjoin a translation of the different passages in which the word occurs in the Rig-veda, and I have attempted to classify them according as it seems to bear, in each case, the first, second, or third of the senses just indicated. This, however, is not always an easy task, as in many of these texts there is nothing to fix the meaning of the term with precision, and one signi-

⁵ In another place (x. 96, 5) *Indra* is said to have been lauded by former worshippers, *pūrvabhū yajvabhū*, a term usually confined (as *brāhmān* was frequently applied) in after times to the offerers of sacrifice.

fication easily runs into another, and the same person may be at once the author and the reciter of the hymn.

I. Passages in which *brāhmān* may signify "contemplator, sage, or poet."

(In all these texts I shall leave the word untranslated.)

i. 80, 1. *Itthā hi some id made brahmā chakāra vaddhanam* |

"Thus in his exhilaration from soma juice the *brāhmān* has made (or uttered) a magnifying⁶ (hymn)."

i. 164, 34. *Prichhāmi tvā param antam prithivyāḥ prichhāmi yatra bhuvanasya nābhiḥ | prichhāmi tvā vṛishno āśvasya retaḥ prichhāmi vāchaḥ pāramam̐ vyoma* | 35. *Iyaṁ vedīḥ paro antaḥ prithivyāḥ ayaṁ yajno bhuvanasya nābhiḥ ayaṁ somo vṛishno āśvasya reto brahmā ayaṁ vāchaḥ paramam̐ vyoma* |

"I ask thee (what is) the remotest end of the earth; I ask where is the central point of the world; I ask thee (what is) the seed of the vigorous horse; I ask (what is) the highest heaven⁷ of speech. 35. This altar is the remotest end of the earth; this sacrifice is the central point of the world; this soma is the seed of the vigorous horse; this *brāhmān* is the highest heaven of speech.⁸

ii. 12, 6. *Yo radhrasya choditā yaḥ kṛishasya yo brahmaṇo nādhamānasya kīreḥ* |

"He (Indra) who is the quickener of the sluggish, of the emaciated, of the suppliant *brāhmān* who praises him," etc.

vi. 45, 7. *Brahmānam brahma-vāhasam gīrbhiḥ sakhāyam ṛigniyam | gāṁ na dohasē hve* |

"With hymns I call Indra, the *brāhmān*,—the carrier of prayers (*brāhmā-vāhasam*), the friend who is worthy of praise,—as men do a cow which is to be milked."

vii. 33, 11. *Uta asi Maitrāvaruṇo Vasishṭha Urvaśyāḥ brahman manaso 'dhi jātaḥ | drapsam skannam brahmonā daigena viśve devāḥ pushkare tvā 'dulanta* |

"And thou, o Vasishṭha, art a son of Mitra and Varuṇa (or a Maitrāvaruṇa-priest), born, o *brāhmān*, from the soul of Urvaśī. All the

⁶ *Vaddhanam* = *vṛiddhi-karam stotram* (Sāyaṇa).

⁷ Compare R.V. iii. 32, 10; x. 109, 4, below, and the words, the highest heaven of invention "

⁸ Compare R.V. x. 71 and x. 125.

gods placed in the vessel thee, the drop which had fallen through divine contemplation."

viii. 16, 7. *Indro brahmā Indrah ṛishir Indrah puru puruhūtaḥ | mahān mahībhiḥ śachībhiḥ |*

"Indra is a *brāhmān*, Indra is a rishi,⁹ Indra is much and often invoked, great through his mighty powers."

x. 71, 11. (See the translation of the entire hymn below. The sense of *brāhmān* in verse 11 will depend on the meaning assigned to *jāta-vidyā*.)

x. 77, 1. (In this passage, the sense of which is not very clear, the word *brāhmān* appears to be an epithet of the host of Maruts.)

x. 85, 3. *Somam manyate papivān yat sampiṃshanti oshadhīm | somāṇyam brahmāṇo vidur na tasya aśnāti kaśchana |* 16. *Dve te chakre Sūrya brahmāṇo ṛituthā viduḥ | atha ekaṁ chakraṁ yad guhā tad addhātayaḥ id viduḥ |* 34. . . . *Sūryāṁ yo brahmā vidyāt sa id vādhyam arhati |*

"A man thinks he has drunk soma when they crush the plant (so called). But no one tastes of that which the *brāhmāns* know to be soma (the moon). 16. The *brāhmāns* rightly know, Sūryā, that thou hast two wheels; but it is sages (*addhātayaḥ*) alone who know the one wheel which is hidden. 34. The *brāhmān* who knows Sūryā deserves the bride's garment."¹⁰

x. 107, 6. *Tam eva ṛishiṁ tam u brahmāṇam āhur yajñanyaṁ sāma-gāṁ uktha-śāsam | sa śukrasya tanvo veda tisraḥ yaḥ prathamam dakṣiṇayā varādha |*

"They call him a rishi, him a *brāhmān*, reverend, a chanter of Sāma verses (*sāma-gāṁ*), and reciter of *ukthas*,—he knows the three forms of the brilliant (Agni)—the man who first worshipped with a largess."

Even in later times a man belonging to the Kshattriya and Vaiśya castes may perform all the Vedic rites. Any such person, therefore, and consequently a person not a Brāhman might, according to this verse, have been called, though, no doubt, figuratively, a priest (*brahmā*).

⁹ Different deities are called *ṛishi*, *kavi*, etc., in the following texts: v. 29, 1; vi. 14, 2; viii. 6, 41; ix. 96, 18; ix. 107, 7; x. 27, 22; x. 112, 9.

¹⁰ See Dr. Haug's Ait. Br. vol. i. Introduction, p. 20.

x. 117, 7. . . . *Vadan brahmā avadato vanīyān prīṇann āpir aprīṇan-tam abhi syāt* |

“A *brāhmān*¹¹ who speaks is more acceptable than one who does not speak: a friend who is liberal excels one who is illiberal.”¹²

x. 125, 5. *Yaṁ kāmāye taṁ tam ugraṁ kṛīṇomi tam brahmāṇaṁ tam rishiṁ taṁ sumedhām* |

“I (says Vāch) make him whom I love formidable, him a *brāhman*, him a rishi, him a sage.”

This would seem to prove that sometimes, at least, the *brāhmān* was such not by birth or nature, but by special favour and inspiration of the goddess. In this passage, therefore, the word cannot denote the member of a caste, who would not be dependent on the good will of Vāch for his position.

II. In the passages which follow the word *brāhmān* does not seem to signify so much a “sage or poet,” as a “worshipper or priest.”

i. 10, 1. *Gāyanti tvā gāyatrīṇo archanti arkam arkiṇaḥ* | *brahmāṇas tvā Satakrato ud vaṁśam iva yenire* |

“The singers sing thee, the hymners recite a hymn, the *brāhmāns*, o Satakratu, have raised thee up like a pole.”¹³

i. 33, 9. *Amānyamānān abhi manyamānair nir brahmabhir adhamo dasyum Indra* |

“Thou, Indra, with the believers, didst blow against the unbelievers, with the *brāhmāns* thou didst blow away the Dasyu.”¹⁴

i. 101, 5. *Yo viśasya jagataḥ prāṇatas patir yo brahmane prathamogāḥ arindat* | *Indro yo dasyūn adharān avātirat* . . .

“Indra, who is lord of all that moves and breathes, who first found the cows for the *brāhmān*, who hurled down the Dasyu.”

i. 108, 7. *Yad Indrāgnī madathaḥ sve durone yad brahmaṇi rājani vā yajatrā* | *ataḥ pari vṛishanāv ā hi yātām athā somasya pibatām sutasya* |

“When, o adorable Indra and Agni, ye are exhilarated in your own

¹¹ The word here seems clearly to indicate an order or profession, as the *silent* priest is still a priest.

¹² See Dr. Haug's remark on this verse, Ait. Br. Introd. p. 20. The contexts of the two last passages are given in my article “Miscellaneous Hymns from the R. and A. Vedas,” pp. 32 f.

¹³ Compare i. 5, 8; i. 7, 1; viii. 16, 9. See Dr. Haug's remark on this verse, Ait. Br. Introd. p. 20.

¹⁴ See on this verse the remarks of M. Bréal, *Hercule et Cacus*, etc. p. 152.

abode, or with a *brāhmān* or a *rājan*,¹⁵ come thence, ye vigorous (deities), and then drink of the poured out soma.”¹⁶

i. 158, 6. *Dirghatamāḥ Māmateyo jujurvān daśame yuge | apām arthaṁ yatīnām brahmā bhavati sārathiḥ |*

“Dirghatamas, son of Mamatā, being decrepit in his tenth lustre, (though) a *brāhmān*, becomes the charioteer of (or is borne upon) the waters which are hastening to their goal.”

(Professor Aufrecht understands this to mean that Dirghatamas is verging towards his end, and thinks there is a play on the word “charioteer” as an employment not befitting a priest.)

ii. 39, 1. . . . *Grīdhṛā iva vṛikṣaṁ nidhimantam acha | brahmānā iva vidathe ukthasāsā . . . |*

“Ye (Asvins) (cry) like two vultures on a tree which contains their nest; like two *brāhmāns* singing a hymn at a sacrifice.”

iv. 50, 7. *Sa id rājā pratijanyāni viśvā śuśhmeṇa tasiḥv abhi vīryeṇa | Bṛihaspatiṁ yaḥ subhṛitam bibharti valgūyati vandate pūrva-bhūjam |*
8. *Sa it kṣheti sudhitaḥ okasi sve tasmai ilā pinvate viśvadanīm | tasmai viśaḥ svayam eva namante yasmin brahmā rājani pūrvaḥ eti |* 9. *Apratito jayati saṁ dhanāni pratijanyāni uta yā sajanyā | avasyave yo varivaḥ kṛinoti brahmane rājā tam avanti devāḥ |*

“That king overcomes all hostile powers in force and valour who maintains Bṛihaspati in abundance, who praises and magnifies him as (a deity) enjoying the first distinction. 8. He dwells prosperous in his own palace, to him the earth always yields her increase,¹⁷ to him the

¹⁵ A distinction of orders or professions appears to be here recognised. But in v. 51. 7, a *rishi* and a *rājan* are distinguished much in the same way as a *brāhmān* and *rājan* are in i. 108, 7 *Sa na jīyate Maruto nu hanyate na sredhati na vyathate na rishyati | na asya rīgyuḥ upa dasyanti na ūtayaḥ rishim vā yaṁ rājānaṁ vā sushūdatha |* “That man, whether *rishi* or prince, whom ye, o Maruts, support, is neither conquered nor killed, he neither decays nor is distressed, nor is injured; his riches do not decline, nor his supports.” Compare v. 14, where it is said. *Yūgam rayim marutaḥ spūrha-vīraṁ yūyam rishim avatha sāmā-vipram | yūyam arantam Bharatīya vājāṁ yūyam dhattha rājānaṁ śrūṣṭināntam |* “Ye, o Maruts, give riches with desirable men, ye protect a *rishi* who is skilled in hymns; ye give a horse and food to Bharata, ye make a king prosperous.” In iii. 43, 5, reference is found to Viśvāmitra, or the author, being made by Indra both a prince and a *rishi* (*kuvid mū gopīṁ karase janasya kuvid rājānam maghavann rījishuḥ | kuvid mū rishim papivāmsam sutasya*).

¹⁶ See on this verse Prof. Benfey's note, *Orient und Occident*, 3, 142.

¹⁷ Compare R.V. v. 37, 4 f. : *Na sa rājā vyathate yasminn Indras tīvram somam pivati go-sukhāyam |* “That king suffers no distress in whose house Indra drinks the pungent soma mixed with milk,” etc.

people bow down of themselves,—that king in whose house a *brāhmān* walks first.¹⁸ 9. Unrivalled, he conquers the riches both of his enemies and his kinsmen—the gods preserve the king who bestows wealth on the *brāhmān* who asks his assistance.”¹⁹

iv. 58, 2. *Vayaṁ nūma pra bravāma ghṛitasya asmin yajne dhārayāma namobhiḥ | upa brahmā śrinavat śasyamānaṁ chatuḥ-śringo avamid gau-rah etat |*

“Let us proclaim the name of butter; let us at this sacrifice hold it (in mind) with prostrations. May the *brāhmān* (Agni?) hear the praise which is chanted. The four-horned bright-coloured (god) has sent this forth.”

v. 29, 3. *Uta brahmāno Maruto me asya Indrah somasya sushutasya pyāḥ |*

“And, ye Maruts, *brāhmāns*, may Indra drink of this my soma which has been poured out,” etc.

v. 31, 4. *Anuras te ratham āsvāya takshan Tvashṭā vajram puruhūta dṛumantam | brahmāṅgaḥ Indram mahayanto arkair avariddhayann Ahaye hantavai u |*

“The men²⁰ have fashioned a car for thy (Indra’s) horse, and Tvashṭri a gleaming thunderbolt, o god greatly invoked. The *brāhmāns*, magnifying Indra, have strengthened him for the slaughter of Ahi.”

v. 32, 12. *Erā hi trāṁ rituthā yātayantam maghā viprebhyo dadotaṁ śrinomi | kiṁ te brahmāno grihate sakhāyo ye tvāyāḥ nidadhuḥ kāmam Indra |*

“I hear of thee thus rightly prospering, and bestowing wealth on, the sages (*viprebhyah*). What, o Indra, do the *brāhmāns*, thy friends, who have reposed their wishes on thee, obtain?”

v. 40, 8. *Grārṇo brahmā yuyujānaḥ saparyan kīriṇā dvrān namasā upaśikshan | Atriḥ sūryasya divi chakshur ā adhāt Svarbhānor apa mā-yāḥ aghukshat |*

“Applying the stones (for pressing soma), performing worship, honouring the gods with praise and obeisance, the *brāhmān* Atri placed

¹⁸ Compare viii. 69, 4; x. 39, 11; x. 107, 5; and the word *purohita*, used of a ministering priest as one placed in front. Prof. Aufrecht, however, would translate the last words, “under whose rule the priest receives the first or principal portion.”

¹⁹ See on this passage Roth’s article, “On Brahma and the Brāhmans,” Journ. Germ. Or. Soc. i. 77 ff. See also Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, viii. 26

²⁰ Are the Ribhus intended?

the eye of the sun in the sky, and swept away the magical arts of Svarbhānu."

vii. 7, 5. *Asādi vṛito vahnir ājaganvān Agnir brahmā nṛi-shadane vidharttā* |

"The chosen bearer (of oblations), Agni, the *brāhmān*, having arrived, has sat down in a mortal's abode, the upholder."

vii. 42, 1. *Pra brahmāṇo Angiraso nakshanta* |

"The *brāhmāns*, the Angirases, have arrived," etc.

viii. 7, 20. *Kra nūnaṁ sudānaro madatha vṛikta-barhishah* | *brahmō ko rah saparyati* |

"Where now, bountiful (Maruts), are ye exhilarated, with the sacrificial grass spread beneath you? What *brāhmān* is serving you?"

viii. 17, 2. *Ā tvā brahma-yujā harī vahatām Indra keśinā* | *upa brahmāni naḥ śṛiṇu* | 3. *Brahmāṇas tvā vayan yujā somapām Indra sominaḥ* | *sutāvanto havāmahe* |

"Thy tawny steeds with flowing manes, yoked by prayer (*brahma-yujā*),²¹ bring thee hither, Indra; listen to our prayers (*brāhmāni*). 3. We *brāhmāns*, offerers of soma, bringing oblations, continually invoke the drinker of soma."

viii. 31, 1. *Yo yajāti yajāte it sunavach cha pachāti cha* | *brahmā id Indrasya chākanat* |

"That *brāhmān* is beloved of Indra who worships, sacrifices, pours out libations, and cooks offerings."

viii. 32, 16. *Na nūnam brahmaṇām riṇam prāśūnām asti sunvatām* | *na somo apratū pape* |

"There is not now any debt due by the active *brāhmāns* who pour out libations. Soma has not been drunk without an equivalent."

viii. 33, 19. *Adhaḥ paśyasva mā upari santorāṁ pādau hara* | *mā te kaśa-plakau dṛiṣan strī hi brahmā babhūritha* |

"Look downward, not upward; keep thy feet close together; let them not see those parts which should be covered; thou, a *brāhmān*, hast become a woman."

viii. 45, 39. *Ā te etā vacho-yujā harī grībhne sumadrathā* | *yad im brahmabhyah id dadaḥ* |

²¹ Compare viii. 45, 39, below: *brahma-yuj* occurs also in i. 177, 2; iii. 35, 4; viii. 1, 24; viii. 2, 27.

"I seize these thy tawny steeds, yoked by our hymn (*vachoyujā*)²² to a splendid chariot, since thou didst give (wealth) to the *brāhmāns*.

viii. 53, 7. *Kva sya vṛishabho yuvā turi-grīvo anānataḥ | brāhmā kas taṁ saparyati |*

"Where is that vigorous, youthful, large-necked, unconquered (Indra)? What *brāhmān* serves him?

viii. 66, 5. *Abhi Gandharvam atrīṇad abudhneshu rajassu ā | Indro brahmabhyāḥ id vṛidhe |*

"Indra clove the Gandharva in the bottomless mists, for the prosperity of the *brāhmāns*."

viii. 81, 30. *Mo su brāhmā iva tandrayur bhuro vājānām pate | matsva sutasya gomataḥ |*

"Be not, o lord of riches (Indra), sluggish like a *brāhmān*.²³ Be exhilarated by the libation mixed with milk."

viii. 85, 5. *Ā yad vajram bāhvor Indra dhatse mada-chyutam Ahave hantavai u | pra parvatāḥ anavanta pra brāhmāṇo abhinakshanta Indram |*

"When, Indra, thou seizest in thine arms the thunderbolt which brings down pride, in order to slay Ahi, the (aerial) hills and the cows utter their voice, and the *brāhmāns* draw near to thee."

ix. 96, 6. *Brahmā devānām padarīḥ kavīnām ṛishir viprāṇām mahisho mṛigānām | śyeno grīḍhrāṇām svadhītir vanānām somaḥ pavitram ati eti rebhan |*

"Soma, resounding, overflows the filter, he who is a *brāhmān* among the gods, a leader among poets, a rishi among the wise, a buffalo among wild beasts, a falcon among kites, an axe among the woods."

ix. 112, 1. *Nānānām vai u no dhiyo rī vratāni janānām | takshā rish-taṁ rutam bhishag brāhmā sunvantam ichhati.*

"Various are the thoughts and endeavours of us different men. The carpenter seeks something broken, the doctor a patient, the *brāhmān* some one to offer libations."²⁴

²² Compare viii. 87, 9, *yoyjanti harī ishīrasya gūthayā vrau rathe urvyuge | Indra-vāhū vachoyujā*; i. 7, 2, *vachoyujā*; i. 14, 6, *manoyujā*; vi. 19, 5, *ratho . . . manasā yiyānah*.

²³ Dr. Haug (Introd. to Ait. Br. p. 20) refers to Ait. Br. v. 34, as illustrating this reproach. See p. 376 of his translation. This verse clearly shows that the priests formed a professional body.

²⁴ This verse also distinctly proves that the priesthood already formed a profession. Verse 3 of the same hymn is as follows: "I am a poet, my father a physician, my

ix. 113, 6. *Yatra brahmā pavamāna chhandasyām vāchaṁ vadan | grāvṇā some mahīyate somena ānandaṁ janayann Indrāya Indo pari srava |*

“O pure Soma, in the place where the *brāhmān*, uttering a metrical hymn, is exalted at the soma sacrifice through (the sound of) the crushing-stone, producing pleasure with soma, o Indu (Soma) flow for Indra.”

x. 28, 11. *Tebhyo godhā ayathaṁ karshad etad ye brahmanaḥ pratipīyanti annaiḥ | sime ukshnaḥ avasṛiṣṭān adanti svayam balāni tanvaḥ śrīnānāḥ |* (The word *brahmanaḥ* occurs in this verse, but I am unable to offer any translation, as the sense is not clear.)

x. 71, 11. (See translation of this verse below, where the entire hymn is given.)

x. 85, 29. *Parā dehi śumulyam brahmabhyo vi bhaja vasu | . . . 35. Sūryāyāḥ paśya rūpāni tāni brahmā tu śundhati |*

“Put away that which requires expiation (?). Distribute money to the *brāhmāns*. . . . 35. Behold the forms of Sūryā. But the *brāhmān* purifies them.”

x. 141, 3. *Somaṁ rājānam avase Agniṁ gīrbhir havāmahe | Ādityān Vishṇuṁ Sūryam brahmāṇaṁ cha Bṛihaspatim |*

“With hymns we invoke to our aid king Soma, Agni, the Ādityas, Vishṇu, Sūrya, and Bṛihaspati, the *brāhmān*.”

III. In the following passages the word *brāhmān* appears to designate the special class of priest so called, in contradistinction to *hotṛi*, *udgātṛi*, and *adhvaryu*.

ii. 1, 2 (= x. 91, 10). *Tava Agne hotraṁ tava potram ṛitviyaṁ tava neshṭraṁ tvaṁ id agnid ṛitūyataḥ | tava praśāstraṁ tvaṁ adhvarīyasi brahmā cha asi grihapatīś cha no dame | 2. Tvaṁ Agne Indro vṛiṣabhaḥ satām asi tvaṁ Vishṇur urugāyo namasyaḥ | tvaṁ brahmā rayivid Brahmanaspate tvaṁ vidharttaḥ sachase purandhyā |*

“Thine, Agni, is the office of *hotṛi*, thine the regulated function of *potṛi*, thine the office of *neshṭṛi*, thou art the *agnidh* of the pious man, thine is the function of *praśāstri*, thou attest as *adhvaryu*, thou art the *brāhmān*, and the lord of the house in our abode. 2. Thou, Agni, art Indra, the chief of the holy, thou art Vishṇu, the wide-stepping, the

mother a grinder of corn” (*lārur ahaṁ tato bhishag upala-prakṣiṇī nānā*). Unfortunately there is nothing further said which could throw light on the relations in which the different professions and classes of society stood to each other.

adorable, thou, o Brahmanaspati, art the *brāhmān*, the possessor of wealth, thou, o sustainer, art associated with the ceremonial."

iv. 9, 3. *Sa sadma pari nīyate hotā mandro divishṭishu | uta potā ni shīdati |* 4. *Uta gnā Agnir adhware uta grihapatir dame | uta brahmā ni shīdati |*

"He (Agni) is led round the house, a joyous *hotri* at the ceremonies, and sits a *potri*. 4. And Agni is a wife (*i.e.* a mistress of the house) at the sacrifice, and the master of the house in our abode, and he sits a *brāhmān*."

x. 52, 2. *Ahañ hotā ni asīdañ yajīyān viśre devāḥ maruto mā junanti | ahar ahar Aśvinā ādhvaryavañ vām brahmā samid bhavati sā ahutir vām |*

(Agni says) "I have sat down an adorable *hotri*; all the gods, the Maruts, stimulate me. Day by day, ye Aśvins, I have acted as your *adhvaryu*; the *brāhmān* is he who kindles the fire: this is your invocation."

I shall now bring forward the whole of the texts in which the word *brāhmāṇa*, which, no doubt, originally meant a son, or descendant, of a *brāhmān*, occurs in the Rig-veda.²⁵ They are the following:

i. 164, 45. *Chatvāri vāk parimitā padāni tāni vidur brāhmaṇāḥ ye manīṣiṇaḥ | guhā trīṇi nibhītā na ingayanti turīyam vācho manushyāḥ vadanti |*

"Speech consists of four defined grades. These are known by those *brāhman*s who are wise. They do not reveal the three which are esoteric. Men speak the fourth grade of speech."

This text is quoted and commented upon in Nirukta xiii. 9.

vi. 75, 10. *Brāhmaṇsah pitarah somyāsah śive no dyāvā-prthivī ane hasā | Pūshā nah pātu duriṭād ṛitārridhaḥ . . . |*

"May the *brāhman* fathers, drinkers of soma, may the auspicious, the sinless, heaven and earth, may Pūshan, preserve us, who prosper by righteousness, from evil, etc."

²⁵ There are two more texts in which the word *brāhmaṇa* is found, viz. i. 15, 5, and ii. 36, 5, on which see the following note. The word *brahmaputra* (compare Asv. S'. S ii. 18, 13) "son of a brahman," is found in ii. 43, 2. *Udgātā iva śakune sāmā gāyasi brāhmā-putraḥ iva savaneshu sāmāsasi |* "Thou, o bird, singest a sāmā verse like an *udgātri*; thou singest praises like the son of a *brāhmān* at the libations." (Ind. Stud. ix. 342 ff.) *Vipra*, used in later Sanskrit as synonymous with *Brāhman*, has in the R.V. the sense of "wise," "sage" assigned by Nigh. 3, 15 (= *medhāvī-nāma*), and in Nir. 10, 19, = *medhāvinaḥ*. It is often applied as an epithet to the gods.

vii. 103, 1 (= Nirukta 9, 6). *Saṁvatsaraṁ śaśayānāḥ brāhmaṇāḥ vrata-chārīnāḥ | vācham Parjanya-jinvitām pra mandūkāḥ avādishuḥ | 7. Brāhmaṇāso atirātre na some saro na pūrṇam abhito vadataḥ | saṁvatsarasya tad ahaḥ pari śkṛtha yad mandūkāḥ prāvṛṣhīnam babhūva | 8. Brāhmaṇāsaḥ somino vācham akrata brahma kṛṇvantāḥ parivatsarīnam | adhvaryavo gharmināḥ sishvidānāḥ āvir bhavanti guhyā na ke chit |*

“After lying quiet for a year, those rite-fulfilling *brāhmans*²⁶ the frogs have (now) uttered their voice, which has been inspired by Parjanya 7. Like *brāhmans* at the Atirātra soma rite, like (those *brāhmans*) speaking round about the full pond (or soma-bowl²⁷), you, frogs, surround (the pond) on this day of the year, which is that of the autumnal rains. 8. These soma-offering *brāhmans* (the frogs) have uttered their voice, performing their annual devotion (*brahma*); these adhvaryu priests sweating with their boiled oblations (or in the hot season) come forth from their retreats like persons who have been concealed.”

x. 16, 6. *Yat te krishṇaḥ śakunaḥ ātutoda pipīlāḥ sarpaḥ uta vā śvāpadaḥ | Agnis tad viśvād agadaṁ karotu Somaś cha yo brāhmaṇān āviveśa |*

“Whatever part of thee any black bird, or ant, or serpent, or wild beast has mutilated, may Agni cure thee of all that, and Soma who has entered into the *brāhmans*.”²⁸

²⁶ In the Nighantus, iii. 13, these words *brāhmaṇāḥ vrata-chārīnāḥ* are referred to as conveying the sense of a simile, though they are unaccompanied by a particle of similitude. In his Illustrations of the Nirukta, p. 126, Roth thus remarks on this passage: “This is the only place in the first nine mandalas of the R.V. in which the word *Brāhmaṇa* is found with its later sense, whilst the tenth mandala offers a number of instances. This is one of the proofs that many of the hymns in this book were composed considerably later (than the rest of the R.V.). The word *brāhmaṇa* has another signification in i. 15, 5; ii. 36, 5; and vi. 75, 10.” (In the first of these texts, Roth assigns to the word the sense of the Brāhman's soma-vessel. See his Lexicon, s.v. It does not appear what meaning he would give to the word in vi. 75, 10. He has in this passage overlooked R.V. i. 164, 15, which, however, is duly alluded in his Lexicon). See Wilson's translation of the hymn, as also Müller's, in his Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 494 f.

²⁷ *Saras*. See R.V. viii. 66, 4, quoted in Nirukta, v. 11, where Yāska says, “The ritualists inform us that at the mid-day oblation there are thirty *uktha* platters destined for one deity, which are then drunk at one draught. These are here called *saras*.” (Compare Roth's Illustrations on the passage. See also R.V. vi. 17, 11, and viii. 7, 10, with Sāyaṇa's explanations of all three passages).

²⁸ Compare A.V. vii. 115, 1 f.; xii. 5, 6.

x. 71, 1.²⁹ *Bṛihaspate prathamam vācho agraṁ yat prairata nāmadheyaṁ dadhānāḥ | yad eshāṁ śreshthāṁ yad aripram asīt prenū tad eshāṁ nihitāṁ guhā āriḥ | 2. (= Nirukta iv. 10) Saktum iva titaunā punanto yatra dhīrāḥ manasā vācham akrata | atra sakhāyaḥ sakhyaṇi jānate bhadra eshāṁ lakshmīr nihitā adhi vāchi | 3. Yajñena vāchaḥ padarīyam āyan tām anr avindann rishishu pravishtām | tām ābhṛitya vi adadhuh purutrā tām sapta rebhāḥ abhi saṁ navante | 4. (= Nir. i. 19) Uta traḥ paśyan na dudarśa vācham uta traḥ śrīṇvan na śrīṇoti enām | uto trasmai tanvaṁ vi sasre jāyū iva patye usāti surāsāḥ | 5. (= Nir. i. 20) Uta traṁ sakhye sthīrapitam āhur na enaṁ hinvanty api vājīneshu | adhenvā charati māyayā esha vācham śūsruvān aphalām apushpām | 6. Yas tityāja sachi-vidom sakhāyaṁ na tasya vāchi api bhāgo asti | yad im śrīṇoti alakam śrīṇoti na hi praveda sukrītasya panthām | 7. Akṣanvantāḥ karnavantāḥ sakhāyo manojaveshu asamāḥ babhūruḥ | ādaghnāsāḥ upakakshāsāḥ u tre hradāḥ iva snātvāḥ u tre dadṛiṣre | 8. (= Nir. xiii. 13) Hṛidū tashṭeshu manaso javeshu yad brāhmaṇāḥ saṁyajante sakhāyaḥ | atra aha traṁ vi jahur vedyābhīr ohabrahmaṇo vi charanti u tre | 9. Ime ye na arvāṁ na parāś charanti na brāhmaṇāso na sute-karāsāḥ | te ete vācham abhipadya pāpayā sirīs tantraṁ tanvate aprajajnyayāḥ | 10. Sarve nandanti yaśasū āgatena sabhā-sahena sakhya sakhāyaḥ | kilbisha-sprīt pitu-shanir hi eshām araṁ hito bhavati vājināya | 11. (= Nir. i. 8) Rīchām traḥ posham āste pupushvān gāyatraṁ tro gāyati śakrarīshu | brahmā tro vadati jāta-vidyāṁ yajnasya mātṛāṁ vi mīmṛte u traḥ |*

“When, o Brihaspati, men first sent forth the earliest utterance of speech, giving a name (to things), then all that was treasured within them, most excellent and pure, was disclosed through love. 2. Wherever the wise,—as if cleansing meal with a sieve,—have uttered speech with intelligence, there friends recognize acts of friendliness; good fortune dwells in their speech.³⁰ 3. Through sacrifice they came upon

²⁹ I cannot pretend that I am satisfied with some parts of the translation I have attempted of this very difficult hymn: but I give it such as it is, as the interpretation of the Vedic poems is still to a certain extent tentative. Verses 4 and 5 are explained in Sāyana's Introduction to the Rīg-veda, pp. 30 f. of Muller's edition. I am indebted here, as elsewhere, to Prof. Aufrecht for his suggestions.

³⁰ I quote here, as somewhat akin to this hymn, another from the A.V. vi. 108, being a prayer for wisdom or intelligence. 1. *Tri am no medhe prathamā gobhīr aśvebhīr ā gahi | traṁ sūryasya raśmibhis traṁ no asi yajuryā | 2. Medhām aham prathamām*

the track of speech, and found her entered into the rishis. Taking, they divided her into many parts :³¹ the seven poets celebrate her in concert. 4. And one man, seeing, sees not speech, and another, hearing, hears her not ;³² while to a third she discloses her form, as a loving well-dressed wife does to her husband. 5. They say that one man has a sure defence in (her³³) friendship ; he is not overcome even in the conflicts (of discussion). But that person consorts with a barren delusion who has listened to speech without fruit or flower. 6. He who abandons a friend who appreciates friendship, has no portion whatever in speech. All that he hears, he hears in vain, for he knows not the path of righteousness. 7. Friends gifted both with eyes and ears have proved unequal in mental efforts. Some have been (as waters) reaching to the face or armpit, while others have been seen like ponds in which one might bathe. 8. When *brāhmans* who are friends strive (?) together in efforts of the mind produced by the heart,³⁴ they leave one man behind through their acquirements, whilst others walk about boasting to be *brāhmāns*. (This is the sense Professor Aufrecht suggests for the word *ohabrāhmānaḥ*. Professor Roth *s.v.* thinks it may mean "real priests." The author of Nirukta xiii. 13, explains it as meaning "reasoning priests," or "those of whom reasoning is the sacred science.") 9. The men who range neither near nor far, who are neither (reflecting) *brāhmans* nor yet pious worshippers at libations,—these, having acquired speech, frame their web imperfectly, (like) female

brahmaṇvatīm brahma-jūtām rishishṭutām | prapītām brahmachārībhīr devānām avase huve | 3. *Yām medhām Rībhavo vidur yām medhām asurāḥ viduḥ | rishayo bhadram medhām yām vidus tām mayy ā veśayāmāsi |* 4. *Yām rishayo bhūta-kṛto medhām medhāvino viduḥ | tayā mām adya medhayā Agne medhāvinaṁ kṛnu |* 5. *Medhām śīyam medhām prātarmedhūmadhyandinam pari | medhām sūryasya raśmībhīr vacasā "*veśayāmahe 1. "Come to us, wisdom, the first, with cows and horses ; (come) thou with the rays of the sun ; thou art to us an object of worship. 2. To (obtain) the succour of the gods, I invoke wisdom the first, full of prayer, inspired by prayer, praised by rishis, imbibed by Brahmachārins. 3 We introduce within me that wisdom which Rībhū know, that wisdom which divine beings (*asurāḥ*) know, that excellent wisdom which rishis know. 4. Make me, o Agni, wise to-day with that wisdom which the wise rishis—the makers of things existing—know. 5. We introduce wisdom in the evening, wisdom in the morning, wisdom at noon, wisdom with the rays of the sun, and with speech" (*vacasā*). Regarding the *rishayo bhūtakṛtaḥ* see above, p. 37, note.

³¹ Compare x. 125, 3 ; i. 164, 45 ; (x. 90, 11) ; and A.V. xii. 1, 45.

³² Compare Isaiah vi. 9, 10 ; and St. Matthew xiii. 14, 15.

³³ *Vāk-sakhye*, Yāska.

³⁴ Compare i. 171, 2 ; ii. 35, 2 ; vi. 16, 47.

weavers,³⁵ being destitute of skill. 10. All friends rejoice at the arrival of a renowned friend who rules the assembly; for such a one, repelling evil, and bestowing nourishment upon them, is thoroughly prepared for the conflict (of discussion). 11. One man possesses a store of verses (*richām*); a second sings a hymn (*gāyatra*) during (the chanting of) the *śaktarīs*; one who is a *brāhmān* declares the science of being (*jāta-vidyām*), whilst another prescribes the order of the ceremonial.”³⁶

R.V. x. 88, 19 (= Nir. vii. 31). *Yāvan-mātram ushaso na pratīkaṁ suparṇyo vasate Mātariśvaḥ | tavad dadhāti upa yajnam āyan brāhmaṇo hotur avaro nishīdan |*

“As long as the fair-winged Dawns do not array themselves in light, o Mātariśvan, so long the *brāhmaṇ* coming to the sacrifice, keeps (the fire), sitting below the hotṛi-priest.”

(See Professor Roth's translation of this verse in his *Illustrations of the Nirukta*, p. 113).

x. 90, 11 (= A.V. xix. 5, 6; Vaj. S. xxxi.). See above, pp. 8-15.

x. 97, 22. *Oshadhayaḥ saṁvadante Somena saha rājā | yasmai kṛṇoti brāhmaṇas taṁ rājan parayāmasi |*

“The plants converse with king Soma,³⁷ (and say), for whomsoever a *brāhmaṇ* acts (*kṛṇoti*, officiates), him, o king, we deliver.”

x. 109, 1. *Te 'evadan prathamāḥ brahma-kilbishe akūpāraḥ salilo Mātariśvā | rīḷuharās tapa vgro mayobhūr āpo devīr prathamajāḥ rītena | Soma rājā prathamā brahma-jāyāṁ pūnah prāyachhad ahṛinīyamānaḥ | anvaritā Varcas Mitraḥ āsīt Agnir hotā hastagrīhya nūnāya | 3. Hastena eva grāhyah ādhir a-gyāḥ “brahma-jāyā igam” iti cha id arochan | na dātāya prahye tasthe chā tathā rūshtraṁ gupitaṁ kshottreyasya | 4. Devāḥ itasyām aradante pūrve sapta rishayas tapase ye nisheduḥ | bhīmā jāyā brāhmaṇasya upanītā durahāṁ dadhāti parame vyoman |*

³⁵ Such is the sense which Prof. Aufrecht thinks may, with probability, be assigned to *śrīṣ*, a word which occurs only here.

³⁶ According to Yāska (Nir. i. 8), these four persons are respectively the *hotṛi*, *udgātṛi*, *brāhmaṇ*, and *adhvaryu* priests. The *brahman*, he says, being possessed of all science, ought to know everything; and gives utterance to his knowledge as occasion arises for it (*jāte jāte*). See Dr. Haug's remarks on this verse, *Ant. Br. Introd.* p. 20.

³⁷ Compare *oshadhīḥ Soma-rūpāḥ*, “the plants whose king is Soma,” in verses 18 and 19 of this hymn.

5. *Brahmachārī charati revishad vishah sa devānām bhuvati ekam angam |*
ēna jāyām anr acindad Bṛhaspatiḥ Somena nītām juhvaṁ na devāḥ |
 6. *Punar vai devūḥ adaduh punar manushyāḥ uta | rājānaḥ satyaṁ*
kṛṇvānāḥ brahma-jāyām punar daduh | 7. *Punardāya brahma-jāyām*
ṛitvī devair nikilbisham | ūjam prithivyāḥ bhaktvāya urugāyam upāsate |

“These (deities), the boundless, liquid Mātariśvan (Air), the fiercely-flaming, ardently-burning, beneficent (Fire), and the divine primeval Waters, first through righteousness exclaimed against the outrage on a *brāhmān*. 2. King Soma,³⁸ unenvious, first gave back the *brāhmān*’s wife; Varuṇa and Mitra were the inviters; Agni, the invoker, brought her, taking her hand. 3. When restored, she had to be received back by the hand, and they then proclaimed aloud, ‘This is the *brāhmān*’s wife;’ she was not committed to a messenger to be sent:—in this way it is that the kingdom of a ruler (or Kshattriya) remains secured to him.³⁹ 4. Those ancient deities, the Rishis, who sat down to perform austerities, spoke thus of her, ‘Terrible is the wife of the *brāhmān*; when approached, she plants confusion in the highest heaven.’ 5. The *Brahmachārīn*⁴¹ (religious student) continues to perform observances. He becomes one member⁴² of the gods. Through him Bṛhaspati obtained his wife, as the gods obtained the ladle which was brought by Soma. 6. The gods gave her back, and men gave her back; kings, performing righteousness, gave back the *brāhmān*’s wife. 7. Giving back the *brāhmān*’s wife, delivering themselves from sin against the gods, (these kings) enjoy the abundance of the earth, and possess a free range of movement.”

³⁸ Compare R.V. x. 85, 39 ff. (=A.V. xiv. 2, 2 ff.) *Panah patnīm Agni adād āyushā saha varuṇasā |* *ṛigheṣu asyāḥ yaḥ patir jvoti saradāḥ satam |* 40. *Somāḥ prathamā rivide Gandharva rivide uttarāḥ* (the A.V. reads: *Somasya jāyā prathamāṁ Gandharvas te* ‘*panah patih*’) | *trīṇyo Agnash te patir bṛhas te manushyagēḥ |* *Soma dadad Gandharvāyo Gandharva dadad Agnaye |* *veyaṁ cha patnīm chidād Agnir mahyam atho imām |* “Agni gave back the wife with life and splendour—may he who is her husband live to an old age of 100 years! Soma was thy first, the Gandharva was thy second, Agni thy third, husband; thy fourth is one of human birth—Soma gave her to the Gandharva, the Gandharva to Agni, Agni gave me wealth and sons, and then this woman.” The idea contained in this passage may possibly be referred to in the verse before us (x. 109, 2).

³⁹ I am indebted to Prof. Aufrecht for this explanation of the verse.

⁴⁰ See R.V. i. 164, 34, 35, above.

⁴¹ See my paper on the Progress of the Vedic Religion, in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 374 ff.

⁴² See A.V. x. 7, 1 ff.; 9, 26.

This hymn is repeated in the Atharva-veda with the addition of ten more verses which I shall quote in the next section.

I shall here state summarily the remarks suggested by a perusal of the texts which I have quoted, and the conclusions which they appear to authorize regarding the relation of the Vedic poets and priests to the other classes of the Indian community at the time when the earlier hymns of the Rig-veda were composed.

First: Except in the Purusha Sūkta (translated above in pp. 9 ff.) there is no distinct reference in the hymns to any recognised system of four castes.

Second: In one text (iii. 34, 9, see p. 176) where mention is made of the Āryan "colour," or "race," all the upper classes of the Indian community are comprehended under one designation, as the Kshattriya- and Vaiśyas as well as the Brāhmins were always in after-times regarded as Āryas (see above, p. 176.)

Third: The term *brāhmāṇa* occurs only in eight hymns of the Rig-veda, besides the Purusha Sūkta, whilst *brāhmān* occurs in forty-six. The former of these words could not therefore have been in common use at the time when the greater part of the hymns were composed. The term *rājanya* is found only in the Purusha Sūkta; and *kshattriya* in the sense of a person belonging to a royal family, a noble, occurs only in a few places, such as x. 109, 3.⁴³ The terms Vaiśya and Sūdra are only found in the Purusha Sūkta, although *viś*, from which the former is derived, is of frequent occurrence in the sense of "people" (see p. 14, above).

Fourth: The word *brāhmān*, as we have seen, appears to have had at first the sense of "sage," "poet;" next, that of "officiating priest;" and ultimately that of a "special description of priest."

Fifth: In some of the texts which have been quoted (particularly i. 108, 7; iv. 50, 8 f.; viii. 7, 20; viii. 45, 39; viii. 53, 7; viii. 81, 30; ix. 112, 1; x. 85, 29) *brāhmān* seems to designate a "priest by profession."

Sixth: In other places the word seems rather to imply something peculiar to the individual, and to denote a person distinguished for

⁴³ This text is quoted above. In viii. 104, 13, Kshattriya is perhaps a neuter substantive. *Na viś u Soma vṛyānāṁ kinoti na kshattriyānāṁ mithunā dhūrayantam* | "Soma does not prosper the sinner, nor the man who wields royal power deceitfully."

genius or virtue (x. 107, 6), or elected by special divine favour to receive the gift of inspiration (x. 125, 5).

Seventh : *Brāhmāṇa* appears to be equivalent to *brāhmā-putra*, "the son of a *brāhmān*" (which, as we have seen, occurs in ii. 43, 2), and the employment of such a term seems necessarily to presuppose that, at the time when it began to become current, the function of a *brāhmān*, the priesthood, had already become a profession.

The Rig-veda Sanhitā contains a considerable number of texts in which the large gifts of different kinds bestowed by different princes on the authors of the hymns are specified, and these instances of bounty are eulogized.

Of these passages R.V. i. 125 ; i. 126 ; v. 27 ; v. 30, 12 ff. ; v. 61, 10 ; vi. 27, 8 ; vi. 45, 31 ff. ; vi. 47, 22 ff. may be consulted in Prof. Wilson's translation ; and a version of R.V. x. 107, which contains a general encomium on liberality will be found in the article entitled "Miscellaneous Hymns from the Rig- and Atharva-vedas," in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, p. 32 f. The following further texts, which describe the presents given by different princes to the rishis, viz. vii. 18, 22 ff. ; viii. 3, 21 ff. ; viii. 4, 19 ff. ; viii. 5, 37 ff. ; viii. 6, 46 ff. ; viii. 19, 36 f. ; viii. 21, 17 f. ; viii. 24, 29 f. ; viii. 46, 21 ff. ; viii. 54, 10 ff. ; viii. 57, 14 ff. ; x. 33, 4 ff. ; x. 62, 6 ff. ; x. 93, 14 f. are translated in the article "On the relations of the priests to the other classes of Indian Society in the Vedic age" in the same Journal for 1866, pp. 272 ff., to which I refer.

On the other hand the hymns of the Rig-veda contain numerous references to persons who, if not hostile, were at least indifferent and inattentive to the system of worship which the rishis professed and inculcated ; and niggardly in their offerings to the gods and their gifts to the priests. The article to which I have just referred contains (pp. 286 ff.) a long list of such passages, from which I extract the following :

i. 84, 7. *Yah ekah id vidayate vasu marttāya dāśushe | īśāno apratishkutaḥ Indro anga |* 8. *Kādā martyam arādhāsam padā kshumpam iva sphurat | kadā naḥ śuśruvad girah Indro anga |*

"Indra, who alone distributes riches to the sacrificing mortal, is lord and irresistible. 8. When will Indra crush the illiberal man like a bush with his foot? when will he hear our hymns?"

i. 101, 4. . . . *viṣoś chid Indro yo asuncato vadhaḥ* . . . |

“Indra, who is the slayer of him, however strong, who offers no libations.”

i. 122, 9. *Jano yo Mitṛā-varuṇār abhidhrug apo na vām sunoti akshu-
yādhruk | svayaṁ sa yakshmaṁ hṛdaye ni dhutte āpa yad iṁ hotrābhir
ritārā |*

“The hostile man, the malicious enemy, who pours out no libations to you, o Mitra and Varuṇa, plants fever in his own heart, when the pious man has by his offerings obtained (your blessing).”

i. 125, 7. *Mā prīṇanto duritum enaḥ ā aran mā jūrishuḥ sūrayaḥ
suratāsah | anyas teshāṁ paridhrī astu kaś chid aprīṇantam abhi saṁ
jantu śokāḥ |*

“Let not the liberal suffer evil or calamity; let not devout sages decay; let them have some further term; let griefs befall the illiberal (*aprīṇantam*).”

i. 182, 3. *Kim utra dasrā kṛiṇuthaḥ kim āsātthe jano yaḥ kaśchid ahavi
mahiyate | uti kramishṭam juratam paṇer asuṁ jyotiḥ viprāya kṛiṇutaṁ
sachasyave |*

“What do ye here, o powerful (Aśvin-)? why do ye sit (in the house of) a man who offers no oblation, and (yet) is honoured? Assail, wear away the breath of the niggard, and create light for the sage who desires to extol you.”

ii. 23, 4. *Saṁtībhir nayaśi trāyase jamaṁ yas tubhyaṁ dūśad na tam
amho aśnavat | brahma-drishṭas tapato manyumār asi Bṛihatspate mahi tat
te mahitvanam |*

“By thy wise leadings thou guidest and protectest the man who worships thee; no calamity can assail him. Thou art the vexer of him who hates devotion (*brahma-drishṭas*), and the queller of his wrath: this, o Brihaspati, is thy great glory.”

iv. 25, 6. . . . *na asushrer āpīr na sakhā na jāmir dushprāyo ara-
hantā id avāchaḥ | 7. Na revatā paṇinā sakhyam Indro asumatā suta-
pāḥ saṁ grīṇīte | ā asya vedah khidati hanti nagnaṁ ei sushraye paktaye
kevalo 'bhūt |*

“Indra is not the relation or friend or kinsman of the man who offers no libations; he is the destroyer of the prostrate irreligious man. 7. Indra, the soma-drinker, accepts not friendship with the wealthy niggard who makes no soma-libations; but robs him of his riches, and

slays him when stripped bare, whilst he is the exclusive patron of the man who pours out soma and cooks oblations."

vi. 44, 11. . . . *jahi asushvīm pra vṛiḥa aprīnataḥ* |

"Slay (o Indra) those who offer no libations; root out the illiberal."

viii. 53, 1. *Ut tvā mandantu stomāḥ kṛiṇuṣva rādho adriṇaḥ* | *ar-*
brahma-driṣho jahi | *pūdā paṇīm arādhaso nī badhasva mahān asi* | *na h-*
tvā kaśchana prati |

"Let our hymns gladden thee; give us wealth, o thunderer. Slay the haters of devotion. 2. Crush with thy foot the niggards who bestow nothing. Thou art great; no one is comparable to thee."

It seems evident, then, from these texts (and there are many more of the same tenor), that the irreligious man, the *parcus deorum cultor et infrequens*, was by no means a rare character among the Āryas of the Vedic age, and that the priests often found no little difficulty in drawing forth the liberality of their contemporaries towards themselves and in enforcing a due regard to the ceremonials of devotion. And if we consider, on the other hand, that the encomiums on the liberality of different princes to the poets and priests which are contained in the passages to which I before adverted, are the production of the class whose pretensions they represent, and whose dignity they exalt, we shall, no doubt, see reason to conclude that the value of the presents bestowed has been enormously exaggerated, and make some deduction from the impression which these texts are calculated to convey of the estimation in which the priests were held at the time when they were composed. But after every allowance has been made for such considerations, and for the state of feeling indicated by the complaints of irreligion and illiberality of which I have cited specimens, it will remain certain that the *brāhmān*, whether we look upon him as a sage and poet, or as an officiating priest, or in both capacities, was regarded with respect and reverence, and even that his presence had begun to be considered as an important condition of the efficacy of the ceremonial. Thus, as we have already seen, in i. 164, 35, the *brāhmān* is described as the highest heaven of "speech;" in x. 107, 6, a liberal patron is called a rishi and a *brāhmān*, as epithets expressive of the most distinguished eulogy; in x. 125, 5, the goddess Vāch is said to make the man who is the object of her special affection a *brāhmān* and a rishi; in vi. 45 7; vii. 7, 5; viii. 16, 7: and ix. 96, 6, the term *brāhmān* is applied

honorifically to the gods Indra, Agni, and Soma; in iv. 50, 8, 9, great prosperity is declared to attend the prince by whom a *brāhman* is employed, honoured, and succoured; and in iii. 53, 9, 12; v. 2, 6; vii. 33, 2, 3, 5; and vii. 83, 4, the highest efficacy is ascribed to the intervention and intercession of this class of functionaries.

Again, whatever exaggeration we may suppose in the texts which eulogize the liberality of princely patrons, in regard to the value of the presents bestowed, there is no reason to doubt that the ministers of public worship, who possessed the gift of expression and of poetry, who were the depositaries of all sacred science, and who were regarded as the channels of access to the gods, would be largely rewarded and honoured.⁴⁴

⁴⁴ It is to be observed that, in these eulogies of liberality, mention is nowhere made of *Brāhmanas* as the recipients of the gifts. In two places, viii. 4, 20, and x. 33, 4, a *rishi* is mentioned as the receiver. In later works, such as the *S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa*, on the contrary, the presents are distinctly connected with *Brāhmanas*. Thus it is said in that work, ii. 2, 2, 6. *Devyāḥ vai devāḥ devāḥ aha eva devāḥ atha ye brāhmanāḥ śisruvāṁso 'nūkleṭāṭs te manushya-dvāḥ | tushṭvā dṛadhā vibhaktāḥ eva yajnaḥ āhutyajāḥ eva devānām dakṣiṇāḥ manushya-dvānām brāhmanānām śisruvāṁśām anūchātānām | āhutyajāḥ eva devānāṁ prīṇāti dakṣiṇāḥ manushya-dvānām brāhmanānām śisruvāṁśām 'nūkleṭāṭs | te evam abhoge devāḥ prīṇātīḥ sūkhāgātāḥ dadhātāḥ |* "Two kinds of gods are gods, viz. the gods (proper), whilst those *Brāhmanas* who have the Vedic tradition, and are learned, are the human gods. The worship (*yajna*) of these is divided into two kinds. Oblations constitute the worship offered to the gods, and presents (*dakṣiṇā*) that offered to the human gods, the *Brāhmanas*, who possess the Vedic tradition and are learned. It is with oblations that a man gratifies the gods, and with presents that he gratifies the human gods, the *Brāhmanas*, who possess the Vedic tradition, and are learned. Both these two kinds of gods, when gratified, place him in a state of happiness" (*sūkhāgātāḥ*): (or "convey him to the heavenly world," as the expression is varied in the parallel passage of the same work, iv. 3, 1, 4). It is similarly said in the *Taitt. Sanh. i. 7, 3, 1*: *Parokṣaṁ eva anye devāḥ ḡyante pratyakṣam anye | yad yajati ye eva devāḥ parokṣam ḡyante tā eva tad yajati | yad anvāhāryam āharaty ete vai devāḥ pratyakṣam yad brāhmanāḥ tān eva tena prīṇāti | atha dakṣiṇā eva asya śāḥ | atha yajasya eva chidhrām apī-dadhāti yad vai yajasya krūrām yad viluṣṭam tad anvāhāryam anvāharaty | tad anvāhāryasya anvāhāryatāṁ | devadūtāḥ vai ete yad pīṇīḥ yad anvāhāryam āharaty devadūtān eva prīṇāti |* "Some gods are worshipped in their absence, and others in their presence. It is to those gods who are worshipped in their absence that the sacrificer offers the oblation which he presents. And it is these gods who are visible, i.e. the *Brāhmanas*, whom he gratifies with the *anvāhārya* (present of cooked rice) which he afterwards brings. Now this *anvāhārya* is the present (*dakṣiṇā*) connected with it (the sacrifice). Then he covers over the faults of the sacrifice. Whatever in it is excessive or defective, that he removes by means of the *anvāhārya*. In this consists the nature of that offering. These officiating priests are the messengers of the gods; and it is the messengers of the gods whom the sacrificer gratifies with this *anvāhārya* gift which he presents."

It is further clear, from some of the texts quoted above (ii. 1, 2; iv. 9, 3; x. 52, 2), as well as i. 162, 5, and from the contents of hymns ii. 36; ii. 37; ii. 43; and x. 124, 1,⁴⁵ that in the later part of the Vedic era, to which these productions are probably to be assigned, the ceremonial of worship had become highly developed and complicated, and that different classes of priests were required for its proper celebration.⁴⁶ It is manifest that considerable skill must have been required for the due performance of these several functions; and as such skill could only be acquired by early instruction and by practice, there can be little doubt that the priesthood must at that period have become a regular profession.⁴⁷ The distinction of king or noble and priest appears to be recognized in i. 108, 7, as well as in iv. 50, 8, 9; whilst in v. 47, 7, 14, a similar distinction is made between king and rishi; and it is noticeable that the verse, in other respects nearly identical, with which the 36th and 37th hymns of the eight maṇḍala respectively conclude, ends in the one hymn with the words, "Thou alone, Indra, didst deliver Trasadasyu in the conflict of men, magnifying prayers" (*brahmāṇi vardhayan*); whilst in the other the last words are, "magnifying (royal) powers" (*kṣattrāṇi vardhayan*), as if the former contained a reference to the functions of the priest, and the latter to those of the prince. (Compare viii. 35, 16, 17.)

While, however, there thus appears to be every reason for supposing that towards the close of the Vedic period the priesthood had become a profession, the texts which have been quoted, with the exception of the verse in the Puruṣa Sūkta (x. 90, 12), do not contain anything which necessarily implies that the priests formed an exclusive caste, or, at least, a caste separated from all others by insurmountable barriers, as in later times. There is a wide difference between a profession, or even a hereditary order, and a caste in the fully developed Brahmanical sense.

⁴⁵ See also i. 94, 6, where it is said: "Thou (Agni) art an *adhvaryu*, and the earliest *hotri*, a *praśūstri*, a *potri*, and by nature a *purohita*. Knowing all the priestly functions (*ṛtvijyō*) wise, thou nourishest us," etc. (*tvam adhvaryu ato hotā 'si pūrvyaḥ praśūstū potū janushū purohitaḥ | viśvā vidvān ṛtvyā dhīna pushyasy Agne ity ādi*).

⁴⁶ See Prof. Muller's remarks on this subject, *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 485 ff.; and Dr. Haug's somewhat different view of the same matter in his *Introd. to Ait. Br.* pp. 11 ff.

⁴⁷ In regard to the great importance and influence of the priests, see Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 485 ff.

Even in countries where the dignity and exclusive prerogatives of the priesthood are most fully recognized (as in Roman Catholic Europe), the clergy form only a profession, and their ranks may be recruited from all sections of the community. So, too, is it in most countries, even with a hereditary nobility. Plebeians may be ennobled at the will of the sovereign. There is, therefore, no difficulty in supposing that in the Vedic era the Indian priesthood—even if we suppose its members to have been for the most part sprung from priestly families—may have often admitted aspirants to the sacerdotal character from other classes of their countrymen. Even the employment of the word *brāhmaṇa* in the Rig-veda does not disprove this. This term, derived from *brahman*, “priest,” need not, as already intimated, signify anything further than the son or descendant of a priest (the word *brahmaputra*, “son of a priest,” is, as we have seen, actually used in one text),—just as the *rājanya* means nothing more than the descendant of a king or chief (*rājan*), a member of the royal family, or of the nobility.

The paucity of the texts (and those, too, probably of a date comparatively recent) in which the word *brāhmaṇa* occurs, when contrasted with the large number of those in which *brāhmān* is found, seems, as I have already observed, to prove conclusively that the former word was but little employed in the earlier part of the Vedic era, and only came into common use towards its close. In some of these passages (as in vii. 103, 1, 7, 8; x. 88, 19) there is nothing to shew that the Brāhman is alluded to as anything more than a professional priest, and in vii. 103, the comparison of frogs to Brāhmans may seem even to imply a want of respect for the latter and their office.⁴⁸ In other places (i. 164, 45, and x. 71, 8, 9) a distinction appears to be drawn between intelligent and unintelligent Brāhmans, between such as were thoughtful and others who were mere mechanical instruments in carrying on the ceremonial of worship,⁴⁹ which, certainly points to the existence of a sacerdotal class. In another passage (x. 97, 22) the importance of a Brāhman to the proper performance of religious rites appears to be clearly expressed. In x. 109, where the words *brāhmān* (*passim*) and *brāh-*

⁴⁸ See Muller's remarks on this hymn in his *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 194.

⁴⁹ In R.V. viii. 50, 9, it is said “Whether an unwise or a wise man, o Indra, has offered to thee a hymn, he has gladdened (thee) through his devotion to thee (*avipro vā yad avidhūd vipro vā Indra te vachah | sa pra mamantat tvāyā ity ādī*).”

mana (in verse 4) seem to be used interchangeably—the inviolability of Brāhman's wives, the peril of interfering with them, and the blessing attendant on reparation for any outrage committed against them, are referred to in such a way as to shew at once the loftiness of the claim set up by the Brāhmanas on their own behalf, and to prove that these pretensions were frequently disregarded by the nobles. In x. 16, 6, the Brāhmanas are spoken of as inspired by Soma, and in vi. 75, 10, the manes of earlier Brāhmanas are reckoned among those divine beings who have power to protect the suppliant. But in none of these texts is any clear reference made to the Brāhmanas as constituting an exclusive caste or race, and nothing whatever is said about their being descended from an ancestor distinct from those of the other classes of their countrymen.

SECT. II.—*Quotations from the Rig-veda, the Nirukta, the Mahābhārata, and other works, to shew that according to ancient Indian tradition, persons not of priestly families were authors of Vedic hymns, and exercised priestly functions.*

But in addition to the negative evidence adduced in the preceding section, that during the age to which the greater part of the hymns of the Rig-veda are referable, the system of castes had, to say the least, not yet attained its full development, we find also a considerable amount of proof in the hymns themselves, or in later works, or from a comparison of both, that many of the hymns either were, or from a remote antiquity were believed to be, the productions of authors not of sacerdotal descent; and that some of these persons also acted as priests. The most signal instance of this kind is that of Viśvāmitra; but from the abundance of the materials which exist for its illustration I shall reserve it for the next chapter, where I shall treat of the contests between the Brāhmanas and the Kshattriyas.

In later times, when none but Brāhman priests were known, it seemed to be an unaccountable, and—as contradicting the exclusive sacerdotal pretensions of the Brāhmanas—an inconvenient circumstance, that priestly functions should have been recorded as exercised by persons whom tradition represented as Rājanyas; and it therefore became necessary to explain away the historical facts, by inventing miraculous legends to make it appear that these men of the royal order had been

in reality transformed into Brāhmans, as the reward of their superhuman merits and austerities—an idea of which we shall meet with various illustrations in the sequel. The very existence, however, of such a word as *rājarshi*, or “royal rishi,” proves that Indian tradition recognized as rishis or authors of Vedic hymns persons who were considered to belong to Rājanya families. A number of such are named (though without the epithet of *rājarshi*) in the *Anukramanikā* or index to the *Rig-veda*; but Sāyana, who quotes that old document, gives them this title. Thus, in the introduction to hymn i. 100, he says: *Attra anukramyate “sa yo vṛishā ’ekonā Vārshāgirāḥ Rījrāśvāambarīsha-Sahadeva-Bhayamāna-Surādhasaḥ” iti | Vṛishāgiro mahārājasya putrabhūtāḥ Rījrāśvādyaḥ pancha rājarshayaḥ sadelam sūktam dadriśuḥ | atas te asya sūktasya ṛishayaḥ | ukteḥ hy ārshānukramanyām “sūktam sa yo vṛishety etat pancha Vārshāgirāḥ viduḥ | nityuktāḥ nāmādheyaḥ saiv api ‘chaitut tyat’ iti rishi” iti |* “It is said in the *Anukramanikā*, ‘Of this hymn (the rishis) are Rījrāśva, Ambarīsha, Sahadeva, Bhayamāna, and Surādhas, sons of Vṛishāgir.’ Rījrāśva and others, sons of King Vṛishāgir, in all five rājarshis, saw this hymn in a bodily form. Hence they are its rishis (or seers). For it is declared in the *Ārsha Anukramaṇī*: ‘The five sons of Vṛishāgir, who are mentioned by name in the verse beginning “this praise” (the 17th), know this hymn.’” The 17th verse is as follows: *Etat tyat te Indra vṛishas uktham Vārshāgirāḥ abhi grīnanti rādhaḥ | Rījrāśvaḥ prashṭibhir Ambarīshaḥ Sahadevo Bhayamānaḥ Surādhaḥ |* “This hymn the Vārshāgiras, Rījrāśva, with his attendants, and Ambarīsha, Sahadeva, Bhayamāna, and Surādhas, utter to thee, the vigorous, o Indra, as their homage;” on which Sāyana repeats the remark that these persons were rājarshis (*etat uktham stotraṁ rādhaḥ samrādhaḥ tat - priti - hetuṁ Vārshāgirāḥ Vṛishāgiro rājnoḥ putrāḥ Rījrāśvādyaḥ bhi grīnanti abhimukhyena vadanti | . . . Rījrāśvaḥ etat-sanjño rājarshih prashṭibhiḥ pārśva-sthair anyair ṛishibhiḥ saka Indram astut | ke te pārśva-sthāḥ | Ambarīshādayaś chutvāro rājarshayaḥ*). Ambarīsha is also said to be the rishi of ix. 98. Again, “Trasadasyu, son of Purukutsa, a Rājarshi,” is said by Sāyana on R.V. iv. 42, to be the rishi of that hymn (*Purukutsasya putras Trasadasyuḥ rājarshih | . . . atrānukramanikā ‘mama devitā’ daśa Trasadasyuḥ Paurukutsyaḥ*). In the 8th and 9th verses Trasadasyu is thus mentioned: *Asmākam atra pitaras te āsan sapta ṛishayo Daurgahe badhyamāne | te ā*

ayajanta Trasadasyum asyāḥ Indraṁ na vṛittraturam arddhadevam | 9.
Purukutsānī hi vām adāśad haryebhīr Indrā-varuṇā namobhīh | *atha rā-*
jānaṁ Trasadasyum asyāḥ vṛittrahonaṁ dadāthur arddhadevam | 8.

“These seven rishis were our fathers. When the son of Durgaha was bound they gained by sacrifice for her (Purukutsānī) a son Trasadasyu, a slayer of foes, like Indra, a demigod. 9. Purukutsānī worshipped you, o Indra and Varuṇa, with salutations and obeisances; then ye gave her king Trasadasyu, a slayer of enemies, a demigod.” I give Sāyana’s note on these verses: “*Purukutsasya mahishī Durgahē bandhana-sthite | putyār arājakaṁ dṛishṭvā rāshṭram putrasya lipsayā | yadṛichhayaṁ samāgātān saptarshīn paryapūjayat | te cha prītāḥ pumāḥ prochuḥ ‘yajendra-varuṇaṁ bhṛiṣam’ | sā chendra-varuṇār iṣṭvā Trasadasyum ajājanat | itihāsam imān jānān rishīr brūte rīchār iha*” | *atha asmākaṁ atre asmīn arājake dāśe asyām prīthicyām rā pitarah pālagitārah utpādakās te ūsann abhavarān | ete saptarshayah prasiddhāḥ Durgahē Durgahasya putre Purukutsē budhyamāne dṛidham pūṣair yasmād asyāḥ asyai Purukutsānyai Trasadasyum āyajanta prādūr Indrā-Varuṇayor anugrahāt* | “The queen of Purukutsa, when her husband, the son of Durgaha, was imprisoned, seeing the kingdom to be destitute of a ruler, and desirous of a son, of her own accord paid honour to the seven rishis who had arrived. And they, again, being pleased told her to sacrifice to Indra and Varuṇa. Having done so she bore Trasadasyu. Knowing this story, the rishi utters these two verses;” which Sāyana then explains. Similarly Sāyana says on v. 27: “Tryaruna son of Trivṛishṇa, Trasadasyu son of Purukutsa, and Aśvamedha son of Bharata, these three kings conjoined, are the rishis of this hymn; or Atri is the rishi” (*Atrānukramaṇikā* | “*Anas-cantā śat! Traivṛishṇa-purukutsayau deṁ Tryaruna-Transadasyū rājānau Bhārotāś cha Aśvamedhah* | . . . ‘na ātmā ātmāne dadyāt’ iti sūrvāś Atriṁ kechit” . . . *Trivṛishṇasya putras Tryarunaḥ Purukutsasya putras Trasadasyur Bharatasya putro’śvamedhah ete trayo’pi rājānaḥ sambhūya asya sūktasya rīshayah | yadvā Atrir eva rīshih*). The Anukramaṇikā, however, adds that according to some, as “no one would give gifts to himself, none of the princes mentioned as donors could be the author; but Atri must be the rishi.” As the hymn is spoken by a fourth person, in praise of the liberality of these kings, it is clear they cannot well be its authors. And a similar remark applies to iv. 42, 8 f. However, the Hindu tradition, being such as it is, is good proof that kings could, in

conformity with ancient opinion, be rishis. Trasadasyu and Trayaruna are also mentioned as the rishis of ix. 110.⁵⁰ The rishis of iv. 43 and iv. 44 are declared by Sāyana, and by the Anukramanikā, to be Purumīḥa, and Ajamīḥa, sons or descendants of Suhotra (iv. 43, *Atrānukramanikā* 'kaḥ u śaśvat' *sapta Purumīḥajamīḥau Sauhotrau tv Āśvinān hi* | iv. 44, *Purumīḥajamīḥāc eva rishī*). Though these persons are not said by either of these authorities to be kings, yet in the Vishnu and Bhāgavata Purāṇas the latter is mentioned as being of royal race, and a tribe of Brāhmanas is said to have been descended from him (see above p. 227). In the sixth verse of iv. 44, the descendants of Ajamīḥa are said to have come to the worship of the Āśvins (*naro yad vām Āśvinā stomam āvan sadhastutim Ajamīḥāso agman*). The following hymns, also, are said by tradition to have had the undermentioned kings for their rishis, viz.: vi. 15, Vitahavya (or Bharadvāja); x. 9, Sindhudvīpa, son of Ambarisha (or Trisīras, son of Tvashtṛi); x. 75, Sindhukshit, son of Priyamedha; x. 133, Sudās, son of Pijavana; x. 134, Māndhātṛi, son of Yuvanāśva (see above, p. 225); x. 179, Sibi, son of Uśinara, Pratardana, son of Divodāsa and king of Kāśī (see above, p. 229), and Vasumanas, son of Rohidaśva; and x. 148 is declared to have had Prithī Vainya⁵¹ as its rishi. In the fifth verse of that hymn it is said: *Srudhi havam Indra śūra Prithyāḥ uta stavase Venyasya arkaiḥ* | "Hear, o heroic Indra, the invocation of Prithī; and thou art praised by the hymn of Venya." In viii. 9, 10, also, Prithī Vainya is mentioned at the same time with three rishis: *Yad vām Kakshivān uta yad Vyaśvaḥ rishir yad vām Dīrghatamāḥ jukāva* | *Prithī yad vām Vainyaḥ sudaneshu eva id ato Āśvinā chetayethām* | "Whatever oblation (or invocation) Kakshivāt has made to you, or the rishi Vyaśva, or Dīrghatamas, or Prithī, son of Vena, in the places of

⁵⁰ In the Vishnu Purāṇa, as we have seen above, p. 237, Trayyāruna, Pushkarin, and Kapi are said to have been sons of Urukshaya, and all of them to have become Brāhmanas; and in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, Trayyaruni, Pushkarāruni, and Kapi are said to have all become Brāhmanas.

⁵¹ The S. P. Br. v. 3, 5, 4, refers to Prithī as "first of men who was installed as a king" (*Prithī ho vai Vainya manushyānām prathamō 'bhishishiche*). I extract from Dr. Hall's edition of Prof. Wilson's Vishnu Purāṇa, vol. iii. the following verse, adduced by the editor from the Vāyu Purāṇa about royal rishis: *Mānave Vainave (?) ramaśe Aikṣvāke cha ye nripāḥ* | *Aulā Aikshvākā Nābhāgā jayā rājashreyas tu te* | "Kings in the race of Manu, Vena (?), and Iḍa, the descendants of Iḍa, Ikshvāku, and Nabhāga are to be known as having been rājashis."

sacrifice, take notice of that, o Aśvins." Here Sāyaṇa refers to Prithī as "the royal rishi of that name."

From the details I have supplied it is clear that in many cases the evidence is against the supposition that the princes to whom the hymns are ascribed were in reality their authors. The only instances in which the authorship seems to be established by the tenor of the hymns themselves are those of the Vārshagiras, or, at all events, that of Prithī. But, as has been already remarked, the fact that ancient Hindu tradition recognizes royal rishis as the authors of hymns is sufficient to prove that such cases were not unknown. Even if we were to suppose that flattery had any share in the creation of these traditions, it no doubt proceeded upon the belief of those who put them into circulation, that in earlier times the distinction between the priests and other classes was not so sharply defined as in their own day.

I proceed, however, to the case of Devāpi, in which the materials for forming a judgment are more adequate and satisfactory, and prove that he was not merely a rishi but an officiating priest.

In the Anukramanikā, R.V. x. 98 is ascribed to him as its author, and Yāska states as follows in the Nirukta, ii. 10 :

*Tatra itihāsam āchokshate | Devāpiś cha Ārṣṭiśheṇaḥ S'antanuś cha Kauraryau bhrātaram babhūvatuḥ | sa S'antanuḥ kauṇḍīnā abhishechayān-chakre | Devāpiś tapah pratipede¹ | tataḥ S'antanuḥ rājye dādaśa var-
shāni deo na cararsha | tam āchur brāhmaṇāḥ "adharmas trayā charito
jyeshtham bhrātaram antariṭya abhishechitam | tasmāt te deo na var-
shati" iti | sa S'antanur Devāpiṁ śiśiksha rājyena | tam mācha Devā-
piḥ "parokitas te 'sāni yājagāni cha trā" iti | tasya etad varshu-kāma-
sūktam | tasya eshā bharati |*

"Here they relate a story. Devāpi son of Rishṭiśheṇa, and Sāntanu, belonged to the race of Kuru and were brothers. Sāntanu, who was the younger, caused himself to be installed as king, whilst Devāpi betook himself to austere fervour. Then the god did not rain for twelve years of Sāntanu's reign. The Brāhmans said to him: 'Thou hast practised unrighteousness in that, passing by thy elder brother, thou hast caused thyself to be installed as king. It is for this reason that the god does not rain.' Sāntanu then sought to invest Devāpi with the sovereignty; but the latter said to him: 'Let me be thy

purohita and perform sacrifice for thee.' This hymn, expressing a desire of rain, is his. The following verse is part of it."

Yaska then quotes a verse of R.V. x. 98, the whole of which is as follows :

Bṛihaspati prati me devatām ihi Mitro vā yad Varuṇo vā asi Pūshā Ḍityair vā yad Vasubhir Marutvān sa Parjanyaṁ S'antanave vṛishāya 2. *Ā dero dāto ajirāś chikitrān tead Devāpe abhi mām āgachhat | prati-chīnuh prati mām ā caritsva dadhāmi te dyumatīm vācham āsan* | 3. *Asmā dhehi dyumatīm vācham āsan Bṛihaspate anamīrām ishirām | yayā vṛishṭīm S'antanave vanāca dico drapso madhumān ā rivśa* | 4. *Ā no drapsāḥ madhumanto viśantu Indro dehi adhiratham sahasram | nī shīde hotram* ³² *ṛituthā gajasa devān Devāpe havishā saparya* | 5. *Ārsh-ṭishno hotram vishir nishīdan Devāpīr deva-sumatīm chikitrān | sa uttarasmasā adharām samudram apo di-gaḥ asrijad varsh-gaḥ abhi* | 6. *Asmā samudre adhi uttarasman āpo derebhir nīṛṇitāḥ atishṭhan | tāḥ adrasman Ārshṭishno na vṛishṭāḥ Devāpina preshitāḥ vṛikshinīshu* | 7. *Yad Devāpīḥ S'antanave purohito hotrāya ṛituh kṛipoyann adāhet | deva-śrutām vṛishṭi-ramitā vevāṇo Bṛihaspatir vācham asmai āgachhat* | 8. *Yam trā Devāpīḥ Śasubhāno Agne Ārshṭishno manushgaḥ san idhe | vīśebhir devāir anumadyamānāḥ pra Parjanyaṁ trayā vṛishṭimantam* | 9. *Teām pūrre vishayo gūrbhir āyan teām adharashta parakūta vīśe | sahasrāṇi adhirathāni esmā ā no gajmān rohidasaṁ apa yāhi* | 10. *Etāni Agnī naratir nara te āhutāni adhirathā sahasrā | tibhir vardhasra tamah śūra pūrre dico no vṛishṭim ishto vīśhi* | 11. *Etāni Agne napatīm sahasrā sam pra yebha vṛishṇe Indrāya bhūgam | vīśvān pathah ṛitūśo devayānān a-gy antāpāṇe di-vi dveshu dhehi* | 12. *Agne bādhasa vi vṛidho vi durgahā apa amīrām apa rakshāmāse sedha | asmāt samudrād bṛiḥato dico no opām bhūmānam apa nah sṛija iha* |

"Approach, Bṛihaspati,"³³ to my worship of the gods, whether thou art Mitra, Varuṇa, Pūshan, or art attended by the Ādityas, Vasus, or Maruts: cause Parjanya to rain for S'antanu. 2. The god, a rapid messenger, has become aware, and has come from thee, o Devāpi, to me, (saying) 'approach towards me; I will place a brilliant hymn

³² Compare R.V. ii. 1, 2.

³³ It looks as if Agni were here to be understood by Bṛihaspati, see verses 9-12. In R.V. ii. 1, 4 ff. Agni is identified with Varuṇa, Mitra, Aryaman, Amśa, Tvashtri, Rudra, Pūshan, Savitri, Bhaga.

in thy mouth.' 3. Place in our mouth, o Bṛihaspati, a brilliant hymn, powerful, and spirited, whereby we two may solicit rain for Santanu. The drop full of sweetness has descended on us from the sky. 4. May the drops full of sweetness come down upon us: give us, o Indra, a thousand waggon-loads (of them?). Perform the function of a hotṛi, sacrifice in due form, worship the gods with an oblation, o Devāpi. 5. The rishi Devāpi, son of Ṛishṭishena, performing the function of a hotṛi, knowing (how to gain) the goodwill of the gods, has discharged from the upper to the lower ocean those waters of the sky which fall in rain. 6. The waters remained shut up by the gods in this upper ocean: they rushed forth when released by the son of Ṛishṭishena, when discharged by Devāpi into the torrents.⁵⁴ 7. When Devāpi, placed in front of Santanu (as his purohita), chosen for the office of hotṛi, fulfilling his function, kindled (the fire),—then, granting the prayer for rain which was heard by the gods, Bṛihaspati gave him a hymn. 8. Do thou, o Agni, whom the man⁵⁵ Devāpi the son of Ṛishṭishena has inflamed and kindled,—do thou, delighted, with all the gods, send hither the rain-bearing Parjanya. 9. Former rishis have approached thee with their hymns; and all (approach) thee, o god, much-invoked, in their sacrifices: give us thousands of waggon-loads: come, thou who art borne by red horses,⁵⁶ to our sacrifice. 10. These ninety-nine thousands of waggon-loads (of wood and butter?) have been thrown into thee, o Agni, as oblations. Through them grow, hero, to (the bulk of) thy former bodies;⁵⁷ and stimulated, grant us rain from the sky. 11. (Of) these ninety thousands give, o Agni, a share to the vigorous Indra. Knowing the paths which rightly lead to the gods, convey the oblation (?) to the deities in the sky. 12. Overcome, o Agni, our enemies, our calamities; drive away sickness, and rakshases. From this great ocean of the sky discharge upon us an abundance of waters."

The fact of Devāpi being reputed as the author of this hymn, and as the purohita and hotṛi of his brother, seems to have led the legendary writers to invent the story of his becoming a Brāhman, which (as men-

⁵⁴ So the word *mṛikshinī* is explained in Bohtlingk and Roth's Lexicon.

⁵⁵ Or, "descendant of Manush" (*manushya*).

⁵⁶ This is a common epithet of Agni.

⁵⁷ This means, I suppose, "burst forth into vast flames."

tioned by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, i. p. 203) is recorded in the Śalya-parvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 2281 ff. where he is there said to have attained this distinction at a certain place of pilgrimage called Prithūdaka; where Sindhudvīpa and Viśvāmītra also were received into the higher caste :

Tatrārṣtīṣheṇaḥ Kauravya brāhmanyam saṁśīta-vratāḥ | tapasā mahatā rājan prāptavān rīshi-sattumāḥ | Sindhudvīpaś cha rājarshir Devāpiś cha mahātapaḥ | brāhmanyam lobdharān yatra Viśvāmītras tathā munīḥ | mahātapsasī bhagavān ugra-tjāḥ mahātapaḥ | . . . 2287. Purā kṛtāyuge rājann Ārṣtīṣheṇo drījottamāḥ | eṣaṇ guru-kule nityam nityam adhyayane rataḥ | tasya rājan guru-kule vasato nityam eva cha | samāptim āgamad vidyā nāpi viduḥ viśāmpate | sa nīrciṇas tato rājans tapas tpe mahātapaḥ | tato vai tapasā tena prāpya vedān anuttamanān | sa vīdēn vedā-yuktas cha siddhas chāpy rīshi-sattumāḥ | . . . | eṣaṇ siddhaḥ sa bhagavān Ārṣtīṣheṇaḥ pratāpavān | tasmīn eva talā tīrthe Sindhudvīpaḥ pratāpavān | Devāpiś cha mahārāja brāhmanyam prāpatat mahat |

2281. "There the most excellent rishi Ārṣtīṣheṇa, constant in his observances, obtained Brāhmanhood by great austere fervour; as did also the royal rishi Sindhudvīpa,⁵³ and Devāpi great in austere fervour, and the glorious muni Viśvāmītra, of great austere fervour and fiery vigour." Some other particulars of Ārṣtīṣheṇa are given further on : 2287. "Formerly in the Kṛita age the most excellent Brāhman Ārṣtīṣheṇa dwelt constantly in his preceptor's family, devoted to incessant study; but could not complete his mastery of science or of the vedas⁵⁴ Being in consequence discouraged, he betook himself to intense austere fervour. By this means he acquired the incomparable Vedas, and became learned and perfect. . . . At the same place of pilgrimage the majestic Sindhudvīpa and Devāpi obtained the great distinction of Brāhmanhood."

It will be observed that here Ārṣtīṣheṇa is, in opposition to the authority of the Nirukta, made a distinct person from Devāpi.

⁵³ This prince also, as we have seen above, is mentioned among those Rājanyas who composed Vedic hymns.

⁵⁴ The Vedas are here spoken of in the plural, although Ārṣtīṣheṇa is said to have lived in the Kṛita age. But the M. Bh. itself says elsewhere (see above, p. 145) that there was then but one Veda.

In a note to his (French) translation of the Rig-veda, M. Langlois (vol. iv. 502) supposes that the hymn above translated (x. 98), like the Purusha Sūkta, is very much posterior in date to the other hymns in the collection. The names of Devāpi and Sāntanu indicate, he thinks, as the date of its composition, a period not far preceding that of the great war of the Mahābhārata. Professor Weber, on the other hand, considers (Indische Studien, i. 203) that the Sāntanu and Devāpi mentioned in that work (Ādi-parvan, 3750 f.) cannot be the same as the persons alluded to in the Rigveda, because their father was Pratīpa, not Rishṭishēṇa; and because he thinks it doubtful whether a prince who preceded the Pāṇḍavas by only two generations could have been named in the Rig-veda, and appear there as an author of hymns.

The verses of the Ādi-parvan just referred to are as follows :

*Pratīpasya trayāḥ putrāḥ jajñire Bharatarshabha | Devāpiḥ S'āntanuś
chaiva Vāhlikāś mahārathāḥ | Devāpiś cha pravavrāja teshām dharmā-
hitepsayā | S'āntanuś cha mahīm lebhe Vāhlikāś cha mahārathāḥ |*

“Three sons were born to Pratīpa, viz. Devāpi, Sāntanu, and Vāhlika the charioteer. Of these Devāpi, desiring the benefits of religious excellence, became an ascetic; whilst Sāntanu and Vāhlika obtained (the rule of) the earth.”

The Harivaṁśa gives a different story about the same Devāpi, verse 1819 :

*Pratīpo Bhīmasenāt tu Pratīpasya tu S'āntanuh | Devāpīr Vāhlikāś
chaiva trayāḥ eva mahārathāḥ | . . . 1822. Upādhyāyas tu devānām
Devāpīr abhavad muniḥ | Chyavanasya kṛitāḥ putrāḥ iṣṭāś chāsīd ma-
hātmanah |*

“Pratīpa sprang from Bhīmasena; and Sāntanu, Devāpi, and Vāhlika were the three chariot-driving sons of Pratīpa. . . . 1822. Devāpi became a muni, and preceptor of the gods, being the adopted son of Chyavana, by whom he was beloved.”

The Viṣṇu Purāṇa (iv. 20, 7 ff.) concurs with the preceding authorities in making Devāpi and Sāntanu to be sons of Pratīpa, and descendants of Kuru, and his son Jahnu. It repeats the legend given in the Nirukta of the country of Sāntanu being visited by a drought of twelve years duration, in consequence of his having assumed the royal authority while his elder brother lived. And although, as will be seen, the sequel of the story is widely different from that recorded by the

Nirukta, the earlier incidents in the two narratives are so similar, that it would appear to have been the intention of the Puranic writer to identify the Devāpi and Sāntanu whose history he relates with the persons of the same names, although of different parentage, mentioned in Yāska's work. He may, however, possibly have transferred an older legend to more recent personages. The passage of the Vishṇu Purāṇa is as follows :

Rikshād Bhīmasenas tatas cha Dilīpaḥ | Dilīpāt Pratīpas tasyāpi Devāpi Sāntanu-Vāhlika-sanjñās trayāḥ putrāḥ babhūvuh | Devāpir bālāḥ eva aranyaṁ viveśa | Sāntanūr avanīpatir abharat | ayaṁ cha tasya ślokaḥ prithivyaṁ gīyate “yaṁ yaṁ karābhyāṁ sprīṣati jīrṇaṁ yauvanam eti saḥ | śāntiṁ chāpnoti yenāgryāṁ karmaṇā tena Sāntanuh” | tasya Sāntanoḥ rūṣṭre dvādośa varshāni devo na vararsha | tatoścha dśesha-rūṣṭra-vināśam avekshya asau rājā brāhmaṇūn aprichhad “bhoḥ kasmād asmiṁ rūṣṭre devo na varshati | ko mama aparādhah” iti | te tam ūchur “agrajasya te ’rhā iyaṁ avonīs trayā bhujyate parirettā tram” | ity uktaḥ sa punas tām aprichhot “kim mayā vidheyam” iti | tena tam ūchur “yāvad Devāpir na patanādibhir doṣhair abhikbhūyate tācat tasya arhaṁ rājyam | tad alam etena tasmai diyatām” | ity ukte tasya mantri-pravareṇa Aśmasārīṇā tatra aranye tapasvino vedavāda-virodha-vaktūrah prajojitāḥ | tair ati-rīju-mater mahīpati-putrasya buddhir veda-virodha-mārgānusārīṇy akriyata | rājā cha Sāntanur dīja-rachanoṭpanna-parivedana-śokas tām brāhmaṇān agrāṇīkritya agraja-rājya-pradānāya aranyaṁ jagāma | tuḍ-āśramam upagatās cha tam avanīpati-putraṁ Devāpim upatasthuḥ | te brāhmaṇāḥ veda-vādānurvīddhāni vacchāṇsi “rājyam agrajena karttaryam” ity artharanti tam ūchuḥ | asāv api veda-vāda-virodha-yukti-dūṣhitam aneka-prakāram tām āha | tatus te brāhmaṇāḥ Sāntanum ūchur “āgachha bho rājann alam atra ati-nirbandhena | praśāntaḥ eva asāv anūṣṭishṭi-dōṣah | patito ’yam anādikāla-mahita-veda-rachana-dūṣhanochehāraṇāt | patite cha agraje naiva pāriṭtryam bharati” | ity uktaḥ Sāntanuhḥ sva-puram āgatyā rājyam akarot | veda-vāda-virodhi-rachanochehāraṇa-dūṣhite cha jyeshṭhe ’smin bhrāturi tiṣṭhaty api Devāpāḥ akhila-sasya-nishpattaye vararsha bhagavān Parjanyaḥ |

“From Riksha sprang Bhīmasena; from him Dilīpa; from him Pratīpa, who again had three sons called Devāpi, Sāntanu, and Vāhlika. Devāpi while yet a boy retired to the forest; and Sāntanu became

king. Regarding him this verse is current in the world: 'Every decrepit man whom he touches with his hands becomes young. He is called Sāntanu from that work whereby he obtains supreme tranquillity (*śānti*).' The god did not rain on the country of this Sāntanu for twelve years. Beholding then the ruin of his entire realm, the king enquired of the Brāhmans: 'Why does not the god rain on this country; what is my offence?' The Brāhmans replied: 'This earth, which is the right of thy elder brother, is now enjoyed by thee; thou art a *parivetttri* (one married before his elder brother).' ⁶⁰ Receiving this reply, he again asked them: 'What must I do?' They then answered: 'So long as Devāpi does not succumb to declension from orthodoxy and other offences, the royal authority is his by right; to him therefore let it be given without further question.' When they had so said, the king's principal minister Aśmasārīn employed certain ascetics propounding doctrines contrary to the declarations of the Vedas to proceed into the forest, by whom the understanding of the very simple-minded prince (Devāpi) was led to adopt a system at variance with those sacred books. King Sāntanu being distressed for his offence in consequence of what the Brāhmans had said to him, went, preceded by those Brāhmans, to the forest in order to deliver over the kingdom to his elder brother. Arriving at the hermitage, they came to prince Devāpi. The Brāhmans addressed to him statements founded on the declarations of the Veda, to the effect that the royal authority should be exercised by the elder brother. He, on his part, expressed to them many things that were vitiated by reasonings contrary to the tenor of the Veda. The Brāhmans then said to Sāntanu, 'Come hither, o king: there is no occasion for any excessive hesitation in this affair: the offence which led to the drought is now removed. Your brother has fallen by uttering a contradiction of the words of the Veda which

⁶⁰ This is illustrated by Manu iii, 171 f.: *Dvāgñihotra-sāṃyogaṃ kurute yo 'graje sthite | parivettā sa vijneyaḥ parivittis tu pūrvajāḥ | 172. Parivittih parivettā gayā cha parividyate | sarve te narakam yānti dūtṛi-yūjaka-punchanūḥ |* "171. He who, while his elder brother is unwedded, marries a wife with the nuptial fires, is to be known as a *parivetttri*, and his elder brother as a *parivitti*. 172. The *parivitti*, the *parivetttri*, the female by whom the offence is committed, he who gives her away, and fifthly the officiating priest, all go to hell." The Indian writers regard the relation of a king to his realm as analogous to that of a husband to his wife. The earth is the king's bride.

have been revered from time without beginning; and when the elder brother has fallen, the younger is no longer chargeable with the offence of *pārivettrya* (i.e. of marrying before his elder brother).’ When he had been so addressed, Sāntanu returned to his capital, and exercised the royal authority. And although his eldest brother Devāpi continued to be degraded by having uttered words opposed to the doctrines of the Veda, the god Parjanya rained in order to produce a harvest of all sorts of grain.”

Can the compiler of the Purāṇa have deviated from the conclusion of this history as found in the Nirukta, and given it a new turn, in order to escape from the conclusion that a Rājanya could officiate as a purohita?

The same story is briefly told in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 22, 14-17.

In the Udyogaparvan of the Mahābhārata, on the other hand, Devāpi’s virtues and orthodoxy are extolled in the highest terms, and his exclusion from the throne is ascribed solely to his being a leper, v. 5054:

*Devāpis tu mahātejas tvag-doshī rāja-sattamaḥ | dhārmikāḥ satya-vādī
cha pituḥ śuśrūṣhaṇe rataḥ | paura-jānapadānām cha sammataḥ sūdhū-
satkṛitaḥ | sarveśhām bāla-vṛiddhānām Devāpir hṛidayangamaḥ | vadān-
yaḥ satyasandhaḥ cha sarva-bhūta-hite rataḥ | varttamānaḥ pituḥ śāstre
brāhmaṇānām tathaitra cha | | tam brāhmaṇās cha vṛiddhās cha
paura-jānapadāni saha | sarve nivārayāmāsur Devāper abhisechanam | sa
‘ach chkrutvā tu nṛpatir abhiseka-nivāraṇam | āśru-kanṭho ’bhavad rājā
paryāśochata chātmanjam | evam vadānyo dharmajñaḥ satyasandhaḥ cha so
’bharat | priyaḥ prajānām api sa tvag-doshena pradūṣitaḥ | “hīnāṅgam
prithivīpālām nābhinandanti decatāḥ” | iti kṛtvā nṛipa-śreṣṭhām pra-
tyasheghan dvijaṣhabhūḥ | | nivāritaṁ nṛipaṁ dṛiṣṭvā Devāpiḥ
saṁśṛito vanam |*

“But the glorious Devāpi, a most excellent prince, righteous, veracious, and obedient to his father, was a leper. He was esteemed by the inhabitants both of town and country, honoured by the good, beloved by all, both young and old, eloquent, true to his engagements, devoted to the welfare of all creatures, and conformed to the commands of his father, and of the Brāhmans.” [The king his father grew old and was making preparations for the investiture of his successor; but public opinion was opposed to the devolution of the royal authority on

a leper, however virtuous]. “The Brahmans and aged men, together with the dwellers both in town and country, all restrained him from the investiture of Devāpi. The king, learning their opposition, was choked with tears, and bewailed his son’s fate. Thus Devāpi was eloquent, acquainted with duty, true to his promise, and beloved by the people, but vitiated by leprosy. The Brāhmans forbade the king (to make Devāpi his successor), saying, ‘the gods do not approve a king who labours under any corporeal defect.’ . . . Perceiving that the king (his father) was hindered (from carrying out his wishes) Devāpi retired to the forest.”

On the same subject, the Matsya Purāṇa, 49, v. 39 f., states as follows:

*Dilīpasya Pratīpastu tasya putrās trayāḥ smṛitāḥ | Devāpiḥ Sāntanuś
chaiva Bāhlikaś chaiva te trayāḥ | Bāhlikasya tu dāyādāḥ sapta Bāhliś-
varāḥ nṛipāḥ | Devāpis tu apādhrastuḥ prajābhīr abhavad muniḥ |
ṛishayaḥ ūchkuḥ | prajābhis tu kimarthaṁ vai apādhrasto janeśvaraḥ |
ke doshāḥ rājaputrasya prajābhiḥ samudāhṛitāḥ | Sūta uvācha | kilāsid
rājaputras tu kushṭi taṁ nābhyapūjayan | ko ’rthān vai atra (? vetty
atra) devānām kshatṛam prati dvijottamāḥ |*

“The son of Dilīpa was Pratīpa, of whom three sons are recorded, Devāpi, Sāntanu, and Bāhlika. The sons of the last were the seven Bāhliśvara kings. But the Muni Devāpi was rejected by the people. The rishis enquired: ‘why was that prince rejected by the people? what faults were alleged against him?’ Sūta replied: ‘the prince was leprous, and they paid him no respect. Who knows the designs of the gods towards the Kshattriya race?’”

No more is said of Devāpi in this passage.⁶¹ The Vishṇu Purāṇa has the following further curious particulars regarding him, iv. 24, 44 ff.:

*Devāpiḥ Pauravo rājā Maruś chekshvāku-vaṁśajāḥ | mahāyoga-balo-
petau Kulāpa-grāma-saṁśrayau | kṛite yuge ihāgatya kshatṛa-prāvart-
takau hi tau | bharishyato Manor vaṁśe vīja-bhūtau vyavasthitau | etena
krama-yogena Manu-putrair rasundharā | kṛita-tretādi-saṁjñāni yugāni
trīni bhujyate | Kalau tu vīja-bhūtās te kechit tishṭhanti bhūtale | yathāiva
Devāpi-Marū sāmprataṁ samavasthitau |*

“King Devāpi of the race of Puru,⁶² and Maru of the family of

⁶¹ See Prof. Wilson’s note, 4to. ed. p. 458.

⁶² In the twentieth chapter, as we have seen, he is said to be of the race of Kuru.

Ikshvāku, filled with the power of intense contemplation (*mahāyoga*) are abiding in the village of Kalāpa, continuing to exist as seeds in the family of Manu; they shall come hither in the (next) Kṛita age, and re-establish the Kshattriya race. According to this order the earth is enjoyed by the sons of Manu throughout the three ages called Kṛita, Tretā, and Dvāpara. But during the Kali certain persons remain upon earth as seeds (of a future race), as Devāpi and Maru now exist.”

According to the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 22, 17, it is the lunar race, which had perished in the Kali age, that Devāpi is to restore in the future Kṛita (*soma-raṁśe kalau naṣṭe kṛitādau sthāpayiṣhyati*).

I shall quote here from the 132nd section of the Matsya Purāṇa, entitled *Manvantara-varṇanam* (a description of the Manvantaras) some of the particulars about the rishis with which it concludes :

98. *Bhṛiguḥ Kāśyaḥ Prachetās cha Dadhicho hy Atmarān api* |
 99. *Aurvo 'tha Jamadagniś cha Kṛipah Sāradvatus tathā | Ārṣṭiṣheṇo*
Yudhājich cha Vītahavya-Surarchasau | 100. *Vainah Prithur Divodāso*
Brahmāśvo Gṛitsa-Saunakau | ekonaviṁśatir hy ete Bhṛigavo mantra-
kṛittamāḥ | 101. *Angirōḥ Vedhasāś chaiva Bharadvājo Bhalandanaḥ |*
Ritabādhas tato Gargaḥ Sitiḥ Sankṛitir eva cha | 102. *Gurudhīrāś cho*
Māndhātā Ambarīśhas tathāiva cha | Yuranāśvaḥ Puruḥ Kutsaḥ Pra-
dyumnaḥ Sravanasya cha | 103. *Ajamīdho 'tha Haryāśvas Takshapaḥ*
Kavir eva cha | Prishadaśco Vīrūpaś cha Kunvaś chaivātha Mudgaluḥ |
 104. *Utathyāś cha Saradvāmś cha tothā Vājaśravā iti | Apaśyo 'tha*
Surittāś cha Vāmadevas tathāiva cha | 105. *Ajito Bṛihadukthāś cha*
rishir Dīrghatāmā api | Koḷshivāmś cha trayastrīṁśat smṛitā hy Angiraso
varāḥ | 106. *Ete mantra-kṛitāḥ sarve Kāśyapāmś tu nibodhata* | . . . |
 111. *Viśvāmitrāś cha Gādheyo Devarājas tathā Balah | tathā vidvān*
Madhuchhanduḥ Rishabhaś chāghamarṣanaḥ | 112. *Ashtako Lohitāś*
chaiva Bhṛitakīlāś cha tīr ubhau | Vedāśravāḥ Devarātah Purāṇāśvo
Dhananjayaḥ | 113. *Mithilāś cha mahātejāḥ Sālankāyana eva cha | tra-*
yodaśaite vijneyāḥ brahmishṭkāḥ Kauśikāḥ varāḥ | . . . | 115. *Manur*
Vaivasvataś chaiva Iḍo rājā Purūravarāḥ | Kshuttriyaṇām varāḥ hy ete
vijneyāḥ mantra-vādināḥ | 116. *Bhalandaś chaiva Vandyāś cha San-*
kṛittiś⁶³ chaiva te trayah | ete mantra-kṛito jneyāḥ Vaiśyāṇām pravarāḥ
sadā | 117. *Ity eka-navatiḥ proktāḥ mantrāḥ yaiś cha bahiḥ kṛitah |*

⁶³ Various readings—*Bhalandakaś cha Vāsāścha Sankālascha*.

brāhmanāḥ kshattriyaḥ vaiśyaḥ ṛishi-putrān nibodhata | 118. *Ṛishikānām sutāḥ hy ete rishi-putrāḥ śrutarshayaḥ* | ⁶⁴

“98. Bhṛigu, Kāśya, Prachetas, Dadhīcha, Ātmavat, (99) Aurva, Jamadagni, Kṛipa, Śāradvata, Ārshṭishena, Yudhājī, Vītahavya, Suvarchas, (100) Vaiṇa, Prithu, Divodāsa, Brahmāśva, Gṛitsa, Saunaka, these are the nineteen ⁶⁵ Bhṛigus, composers of hymns. 101. Angiras, Vedhasa, Bharadvāja, Bhalandana, ⁶⁶ Ritabādha, Garga, Siti, Sankṛiti, Gurudhīra, ⁶⁷ Māndhātṛi, Ambarisha, Yuvanāśva, Purukutsa, ⁶⁸ Pradyumna, Śravaṇasya, ⁶⁹ Ajamīdha, Haryaśva, Takshapa, Kavi, Prishadaśva, Virūpa, Kanva, Mudgala, Utathya, Śāradvat, Vājaśravas, Apaśya, Suvitta, Vāmadeva, Ajīta, Bṛihaduktha, Dīrghatamas, Kakshivat, are recorded as the thirty-three eminent Angirases. These were all composers of hymns. Now learn the Kāśyapas. . . . 111. Viśvāmitra, son of Gādhi, Devarāja, Bala, the wise Madhuchhandas, Ṛishabha, Aghamarshaṇa, (112) Aśṭaka, Lohita, Bhṛitakīla, Vedaśravas, Devārāta, Purāṇāśva, Dhananjaya, the glorious (113) Mithila, Sālankayana, these are to be known as the thirteen devout and eminent Kuśikas.⁷⁰ 115. Manu Vaivasvata, Iḍa, king Purūravas, these are to be known as the eminent utterers of hymns among the Kshattriyaas. 116. Bhalanda, Vandya, and Sankīrtti,⁷¹ these are always to be known as the three eminent persons among the Vaiśyas who were composers of hymns. 117. Thus ninety-one⁷² persons have been declared, by whom hymns have been given forth, Brāhmanas, Kshattriyaas, and Vaiśyas. Learn the sons of the rishis. 118. These are the offspring of the ṛishikas, sons of rishis, secondary rishis (*śrutarshis*).”

The section ends here.

⁶⁴ I am indebted for an additional copy of this section of the Matsya Purāṇa (of which some account is given by Prof. Aufrecht in his Catalogue, p. 41), to the kindness of Mr. Griffith, Principal of Queen's College, Benares, who, at my request, has caused it to be collated with various other MSS. existing in Benares. I have not thought it necessary to exhibit all the various readings in the part I have quoted.

⁶⁵ The number of nineteen is only obtained by making Vaiṇa and Prithu two persons.

⁶⁶ Instead of this word, one Benares MS. has Lakshmaṇa.

⁶⁷ Two MSS. have Turavīta.

⁶⁸ This word is divided into two in the MS.

⁶⁹ Two MSS. have, instead, Svaśravas and Tamasyavat.

⁷⁰ Unless some of the words I have taken as names are really epithets, fifteen persons are enumerated here.

⁷¹ Some MSS. have Bhalandaka, Vandha or Vāsas, and Sankāla or Sankīrna.

⁷² This is the total of several lists, some of which I have omitted.

It will be observed from a comparison of this extract with the details previously given, that some of the rājarshis, or rishis of royal blood, such as Ārṣṭishena, Vīṭahavya, Prīthu (the same as Prīthī) are spoken of as belonging to the family of Bhṛigu, while others of the same class, such as Māndhātṛi, Ambarīsha, Yuvanāśva, Purukutsa, are reckoned among the Angirases. Viśvāmitra and his descendants are merely designated as Kuśikas without any specific allusion to their Rājanya descent; but Manu, Iḍa, and Purūravas, are distinctly recognized as being as once authors of hymns and Kshattriyas; and, what is more remarkable, three Vaiśyas are also declared to have been sacred poets. These traditions of an earlier age, though scanty in amount, are yet sufficient to show that in the Vedic times the capacity for poetical composition, and the prerogative of officiating at the service of the gods, was not regarded as entirely confined to men of priestly families.

SECT. III.—*Texts from the Atharva-veda illustrating the progress of Brāhmanical pretensions.*

I have already quoted (in pp. 21 and 22) three short passages from the Atharva-veda regarding the origin of the Brāhman and Kshattriya castes. I shall now bring forward some other texts from the same collection which show a much greater development of the pretensions of the priests to a sacred and inviolable character than we meet in any part of the Rig-veda, if the 109th hymn of the tenth book (cited above) be excepted.

I shall first adduce the 17th hymn of the fifth book, to which I have already alluded, as an expansion of R.V. x. 109.

Atharva-veda v. 17. (Verses 1–3 correspond with little variation to verses 1–3 of R.V. x. 109). 4. *Yām āhus “tārakū cshā vikeśi” iti ducheḥhounām grāmam avapadyamānām | sū brahma-jāyā vi dunoti rāsh-trañ yatra prāpādi śaśaḥ ulkushīmān |* (verses 5 and 6 = verses 5 and 4 of R.V. x. 109). 7. *Ye garbhāḥ avapadyante jagad yach chāpalupyate | virāḥ ye tṛihyante mitho brahma-jāyā hinasti tām |* 8. *Uta yat patayo daśa strigāḥ pūrve abrahmanāḥ | brahmā ched hastam agraḥīt sa eva patir ekadhā |* 9. *Brāhmanāḥ eva patir na rājanyo na vaiśyaḥ | tat sūryaḥ prabrucann eti panchabhyo mānavebhyoḥ |* (Verses 10 and 11 = verses 6 and 7 of R.V. x. 109). 12. *Nāsya jāyā śatavāhi kalyāṇī talpam*

ā śaye | yasmin rāṣtre nirudhyate brahma-jāyā achittiyā | 13. Na vikarṇaḥ prithuśirās tasmin veśmani jāyate | yasminn ityādi | 14. Nāsyā kṣhattā nishka-grivāḥ sūnānām eti agrataḥ | yasminn ityādi | 15. Nāsyā śvetaḥ kṛishṇa-karṇo dhuri yukto mahīyate | yasminn ityādi | 16. Nāsyā kehettre pushkaraṇī nāṇḍikaṁ jāyate viśam | yasminn ityādi | 17. Nāsmāi priśnīm vi duhanti ye 'syāḥ doham upāsate | yasminn ityādi | 18. Nāsyā dhenuḥ kalyāṇī nānaḍvān sahate yugam | vijānir yatra brāhmaṇo rātriṁ vasati pāpayā |

“ 4. That calamity which falls upon the village, of which they say, ‘this is a star with dishevelled hair,’ is in truth the *brāhmān’s* wife, who ruins the kingdom; (and the same is the case) wherever (a country) is visited by a hare attended with meteors. 7. Whenever any miscarriages take place, or any moving things are destroyed, whenever men slay each other, it is the *brāhmān’s* wife who kills them. 8. And when a woman has had ten former husbands not *brāhmāns*, if a *brāhmān* take her hand (*i.e.* marry her), it is he alone who is her husband. 9. It is a Brāhmaṇ only that is a husband, and not a Rājanya or a Vaiśya. That (truth) the Sun goes forward proclaiming to the five classes of men (*pañcubhyo mānavebhyah*), 12. His (the king’s) wife does not repose opulent (*śatarāhi*) and handsome upon her bed in that kingdom where a *brāhmān’s* wife is foolishly shut up. 13. A son with large ears (*vikarṇaḥ*) and broad head is not born in the house in that kingdom, etc. 14. A charioteer with golden neckchain does not march before the king’s hosts⁷³ in that kingdom, etc. 15. A white horse with black ears does not make a show yoked to his (the king’s) chariot in that kingdom, etc. 16. There is no pond with blossoming lotuses⁷⁴ in his (the king’s) grounds in that kingdom where, etc. 17. His (the king’s) brindled cow is not milked by his milkmen in that kingdom, etc. 18. His (the king’s) milch cow does not thrive, nor does his ox endure the yoke, in that country where a Brāhmaṇ passes the night wretchedly without his wife.”

This hymn appears to show that, however extravagant the pretensions of the Brāhmāns were in other respects, they had, even at the comparatively late period when it was composed, but little regard to

⁷³ The word here in the original is *sūnānām*, with which it is difficult to make any sense. Should we not read *senānām*?

⁷⁴ Compare R.V. x. 107, 10.

the purity of the sacerdotal blood, as they not only intermarried with women of their own order, or even with women who had previously lived single, but were in the habit of forming unions with the widows of Rājanyas or Vaiśyas,⁷⁵ if they did not even take possession of the wives of such men while they were alive.⁷⁶ Even if we suppose these women to have belonged to priestly families, this would only show that it was no uncommon thing for females of that class to be married to Rājanyas or Vaiśyas—a fact which would, of course, imply that the caste system was either laxly observed, or only beginning to be introduced among the Indians of the earlier Vedic age. That, agreeably to ancient tradition, Brāhmins intermarried with Rājanya women at the period in question, is also distinctly shewn

⁷⁵ That the remarriage of women was customary among the Hindus of those days is also shewn by A.V. ix. 5, 27 f., quoted in my paper on Yama, Jour. R. A. S. for 1865, p. 299.

⁷⁶ This latter supposition derives a certain support from the emphasis with which the two verses in question (A.V. v. 17, 8, 9) assert that the Brāhman was the only true husband. Whence, it may be asked, the necessity for this strong and repeated asseveration, if the Rājanya and Vaiśya husbands were not still alive, and prepared to claim the restoration of their wives? The verses are, however, explicable without this supposition.

It is to be observed, however, that no mention is here made of S'ūdras as a class with which Brāhmins intermarried. S'ūdras were not Āryas, like the three upper classes. This distinction is recognised in the following verse of the A.V. xix. 62, 1 "Make me dear to gods, dear to princes, dear to every one who beholds me, both to S'ūdra and to Ārya." (Unless we are to suppose that both here and in xix. 32, S-*ārya* = a Vaiśya, and not *ārya*, is the word). In S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, Kāṇva Sākhā (Adhvara Kāṇḍa, i. 6), the same thing is clearly stated in these words (already partially quoted above, p. 176), for a copy of which I am indebted to Prof. Müller: *Tan na sarva eva prapadyeta na hi devāḥ sarveṇaiva sangachhante | ārya eva brāhmaṇo vā kshattriyo vā vaiśyo vā te hi yajñiyāḥ | na eva sarveṇaiva samvadeta na hi devāḥ sarveṇaiva samvadante āryeṇaiva brāhmaṇena vā kshattriyeṇa vā vaiśyena vū te hi yajñiyāḥ | yady enam s'ūdreṇa samvādo vindet "ittham enam nichakshet" ity anyam brūyād esha dikshitasyopachārah.* "Every one cannot obtain this (for the gods do not associate with every man), but only an Ārya, a Brāhman, or a Kshattriya, or a Vaiśya, for these can sacrifice. Nor should one talk with everybody (for the gods do not talk with every body), but only with an Ārya, a Brāhman, or a Kshattriya, or a Vaiśya, for these can sacrifice. If any one have occasion to speak to a S'ūdra, let him say to another person, 'Tell this man so and so.' This is the rule for an initiated man."

In the corresponding passage of the Mādhyandina Sākhā (p. 224 of Weber's edition) this passage is differently worded.

From Manu (ix. 149-157; x. 7 ff.) it is clear that Brāhmins intermarried with S'ūdra women, though the offspring of those marriages was degraded.

by the story of the rishi Chyavana and Sukanyā, daughter of king Saryāta, narrated in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, and quoted in my paper entitled "Contributions to a Knowledge of Vedic Mythology," No. ii., in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, pp. 11 ff. See also the stories of the rishi Śyāvāśva, who married the daughter of king Rathavīti, as told by the commentator on Rig-veda, v. 61, and given in Professor Wilson's translation, vol. iii. p. 344.

The next hymn, from the same work, sets forth with great liveliness and vigour the advantages accruing to princes from the employment of a domestic priest.

Atharva-veda, iii. 19, 1. *Samśītam me idam brahma samśītam vīryam balam | samśītam kshattram ajaram astu jishnur (? jishnu) yeshām asmi purohitaḥ |* 2. *Sam aham eshām rāshṭraṁ syāmi sam oja vīryam balam | vṛśchāmi śatrūṇām bāhūn anena harishā aham |* 3. *Nichaiḥ padyantam adhare bhavantu ye naḥ sūrim maghavānam prītunyan | kshīṇāmi brahmaṇā 'mītrān unnayāmi svān aham |* 4. *Tikshnīyāmsaḥ paraśor agnes tikshnatārāḥ uta | Indrasya vajrāt tikshnīyāṁso yeshām asmi purohitaḥ |* 5. *Eshām aham āyudhā saṁ syāmi eshām rāshṭraṁ suvīraṁ vardhayāmi | eshām kshattram ajaram astu jishnu eshām chittam visve arantu devāḥ |* 6. *Uddharshantām Maghavan vājīnāni ud vīrāṇāṁ jayatām etu ghoshāḥ | prithagghoshāḥ ululayaḥ ketumantaḥ udīratām | devāḥ Indra-jyeshthāḥ Maruto yantu senayā |* 7. *Preta jayata naraḥ ugrāḥ vaḥ santu bāhavaḥ | tikshneshavo abala-dhanvāno hata ugrāyudhāḥ abalān ugra-bāhavaḥ |* 8. *Avasṛishṭā parā patu śaravye brahma-samśīte | jayāmītrān pra padyasva jahy eshām varaṁ-varam mā 'mīshām mochi kāśhana |*

"1. May this prayer of mine be successful; may the vigour and strength be complete, may the power be perfect, undecaying, and victorious of those of whom I am the priest (*purohita*). 2. I fortify their kingdom, and augment their energy, valour, and force. I break the arms of their enemies with this oblation. 3. May all those who fight against our wise and prosperous (prince) sink downward, and be prostrated. With my prayer I destroy his enemies and raise up his friends. 4. May those of whom I am the priest be sharper than an axe, sharper than fire, sharper than Indra's thunderbolt. 5. I strengthen their weapons; I prosper their kingdom rich in heroes. May their power be undecaying and victorious. May all the gods foster their designs.

6. May their valorous deeds, o Maghavat, burst forth; may the noise of the conquering heroes arise; may their distinct shouts, their clear yells, go up; may the gods, the Maruts, with Indra as their chief, march forward with their host. 7. Go, conquer, ye warriors; may your arms be impetuous. Ye with the sharp arrows, smite those whose bows are powerless; ye whose weapons and arms are terrible (smite) the feeble. 8. When discharged, fly forth, o arrow, sped by prayer. Vanquish the foes, assail, slay all the choicest of them; let not one escape."

The two following hymns from the same collection declare the guilt, the peril, and disastrous consequences of oppressing Brāhmanas, and robbing them of their property. The threats and imprecations of haughty sacerdotal insolence could scarcely be expressed more energetically.

Atharva-veda, v. 18. 1. *Naitāṁ te devāḥ adadus tubhyaṁ nṛipate attave | mā brāhmaṇasya rājanya gūṁ jighatso anādyāṁ |* 2. *Aksha-drugdho rājanyo pāpaḥ ātma-parājiteḥ | sa brāhmaṇasya gāṁ adyād "adya jīvāni mā śvaḥ" |* 3. *Ārīṣṭitā agha-vishā prīḍākūr iva charmanā | mā brāhmaṇasya rājanya trīṣṭtā eshā gaur anādyā |* 4. *Nir vai kshattraṁ nayati hanti varecho agnir ārabdho vi dunoti sarvam | yo brāhmaṇam manyate annam eva sa vishasya pibati tainātasya |* 5. *Yāḥ enaṁ hanti mṛidum manyamāno deva-pīyur dhana-kāmo na chittāt | saṁ tasya Indro hṛidaye agnim indhe ubhe enaṁ dviṣṭo nabhasī charantaṁ |* 6. *Nā brāhmaṇo hiṁsītavyo agniḥ prīyatanor iva | Somo hi asya dāyādāḥ Indro asyābhiṣastipāḥ |* 7. *Sūtāpāshthām ni girati tāṁ na śaknoti niḥkḥidam | annaṁ yo brāhmaṇam malacāḥ svādu admīti manyate |* 8. *Jihvā jyā bhavati kulmalāṁ vāṁ nāḍikāḥ dentās tapasā 'bhidagdhaḥ | tebhīr brahmā vidhyati deva-pīyūṁ hṛīd-balaīr dhanurbhīr deva-jūtaiḥ |* 9. *Tikṣṇeshavo brāhmaṇāḥ hetimanto yām asyanti śaravyām na sā mṛīṣhā | anukāya tapasā manyunā cha uta dūrād eva bhindanti enam |* 10. *Ye sahasram arājann āsan doṣa-śatā uta | te brāhmaṇasya gūṁ jagdhvā Vaitahavyāḥ parābhavan |* 11. *Gaur eva tām hanyamānā Vaitahavyāṁ avātīrat | ye Kesaraprābandhāyāś charamājām apechiran |* 12. *Eka-śataṁ tāḥ janatāḥ yāḥ bhūmir vyadhūnuta | prajāṁ hiṁsītva brāhmaṇim asam-bhavyam parābhavan |* 13. *Deva-pīyus charati marttyeshu gara-gīrṇo bhavati asthi-bhūyān | yo brāhmaṇam deva-bandhuṁ hinasti na sa pitri-yānam apyeti lokam |* 14. *Agnir vai naḥ padarāyaḥ Somo dāyūda uchryate |*

hantābhiśastā Indras tathā tad vedhaso viduḥ | 15. Ishur iva digdhā nṛpate prīdākūr iva gopate | sū brāhmaṇasya ishur ghorā tayā vidhyati pīyataḥ |

“1. King, the gods have not given thee (this cow) to eat. Do not, o Rājanya (man of royal descent), seek to devour the Brāhman’s cow, which is not to be eaten. 2. The wretched Rājanya, unlucky in play, and self-destroyed, will eat the Brāhman’s cow, saying, ‘Let me live to-day, (if I can) not (live) to-morrow.’ 3. This cow, clothed with a skin, contains deadly poison, like a snake. Beware, Rājanya, of this Brāhman’s (cow); she is ill-flavoured, and must not be eaten. 4. She takes away his regal power, destroys his splendour, consumes him entire like a fire which has been kindled. The man who looks upon the Brāhman as mere food to be eaten up, drinks serpent’s poison. 5. Indra kindles a fire in the heart of that contemner of the gods who smites the Brāhman, esteeming him to be inoffensive, and foolishly covets his property. Heaven and earth abhor the man who (so) acts. 6. A Brāhman is not to be wronged, as fire (must not be touched) by a man who cherishes his own body. Soma is his (the Brāhman’s) kinsman, and Indra shields him from imprecations. 7. The wicked (?) man who thinks the priests’ food is sweet while he is eating it, swallows (the cow) bristling with a hundred sharp points, but cannot digest her. 8. The priest’s tongue is a bow-string, his voice is a barb, and his windpipe is arrow-points smeared with fire. With these god-directed, and heart-subduing bows, the priest pierces the scorers of the gods. 9. Brāhmans bearing sharp arrows, armed with missiles, never miss their mark when they discharge a shaft. Shooting with fiery energy and with anger, they pierce (the enemy) from afar. 10. The descendants of Vitahavya, who ruled over a thousand men, and were ten hundred in number, were overwhelmed after they had eaten a Brāhman’s cow.⁷⁷ 11. The cow herself, when she was slaughtered, destroyed them,—those men who cooked the last she-goat of Kesaraprābandhā. 12. Those hundred persons whom the earth shook off, after they had wronged the priestly race, were overwhelmed in an inconceivable manner. 13. He lives among mortals a hater of the gods; infected with poison he becomes reduced to a skeleton; he who wrongs a Brāhman the kins-

⁷⁷ I am not aware whether any traces of this story are discoverable in the Purāṇas or Mahābhārata. See the first verse of the hymn next to be quoted.

man of the deities, fails to attain to the heaven of the Forefathers.

14. Agni is called our leader; Soma our kinsman. Indra neutralizes imprecations (directed against us); this the wise understand. 15. Like a poisoned arrow, o king, like a serpent, o lord of cows,—such is the dreadful shaft of the Brāhman, with which he pierces his enemies.”

Atharva-veda, 7. 19, 1. *Atimātram avardhanta nod iva divam aspriṣan | Bhṛiguṁ himsitvā Sṛñjayāḥ Vaitahavyāḥ parābhavan | 2. Bṛihatsāmānam Āngirasam āpayan brāhmaṇāṁ janāḥ | petras teshām ubhayādam avis tokāny ārayat | 3. Ye brāhmaṇam pratyashkṛīvan ye vā 'smīn śuklam īshire | asnas te madhye kulyāyāḥ keśān khādanta āsate | 4. Brahmagavī pachyamānā yāvat sā 'bhi vijāgahe | tejo rāshṭrasya nirhanti na vīro jāyate vṛishā | 5. Krūram asyāḥ āśasanaṁ trisṭam piṣitam asyate | kshīraṁ yad asyāḥ pīyate tad vai pītṛishu kilbīsham | 6. Ugro rājā manyamāno brāhmaṇaṁ yaj jighatsati | parā tat sichyate rāshṭram brāhmaṇo yatra jiyate | 7. Aṣṭāpadi chaturakṣi chatuḥśrotrā chaturhanuḥ | dryāsyā dvijihvā bhūtvā sā rāshṭram avadhūnute brahmajyasya | 8. Tad vai rāshṭram āsṛavati nāvam bhinnām ivodekam | brāhmaṇaṁ yatra hīnsanti tad rāshṭraṁ hanti ducchhunā | 9. Taṁ vṛikṣhāḥ apa sedhanti “chhāyām no mopa gāḥ” iti | yo brāhmaṇasya soddhanam abhi Nārada manyate | 10. Viśam etad deva-kṛitaṁ rājā Varuṇo abravīt | na brāhmaṇasya gām jagdhuā rāshṭre jāgāra kuśchana | 11. Navaiva tāḥ navatayo yāḥ bhūmīr vyadhūnuta | prajāṁ himsitvā brāhmaṇim asam-bhacyaṁ parābhavan | 12. Yām mṛitāyānubadhñanti kūdyam pada-yopanīm | tad vai brahmajya te devāḥ upastaraṇam abruvan | 13. Āsrūni kṛipamāṇasya yāni jītasya cāvṛituh | taṁ vai brahmajya te devāḥ apām bhāgam adhārayan | 14. Yena mṛitaṁ snapayanti śmaśrūni yena undate | taṁ vai brahmajya te devāḥ apām bhāgam adhārayan | 15. Na varshaṁ Maitrāvaruṇam brahmajyam abhi varshati | nāsmāi samitiḥ kalpate na mitraṁ nayate vaśam |*

“1. The Sṛñjayas, descendants of Vītahavya, waxed exceedingly; they almost touched the sky; but after they had injured Bhṛigu, they were overwhelmed. 2. When men pierced Bṛihat-āman, a Brāhman descended from Āngiras, a ram with two rows of teeth swallowed their children. 3. Those who spit, or throw filth (?) upon a Brāhman, sit eating hair in the midst of a stream of blood. 4. So long as this Brāhman's cow is cut up (?) and cooked, she destroys the glory of the kingdom; no vigorous hero is born there. 5. It is cruel to

slaughter her; her ill-flavoured flesh is thrown away. When her milk is drunk, that is esteemed a sin among the Forefathers. 6. Whenever a king, fancying himself mighty, seeks to devour a Brāhman, that kingdom is broken up, in which a Brāhman is oppressed. Becoming eight-footed, four-eyed, four-eared, four-jawed, two-faced, two-tongued, she (the cow) shatters the kingdom of the oppressor of Brāhmans. 8. (Ruin) overflows that kingdom, as water swamps a leaky boat: calamity smites that country in which a priest is wronged. 9. Even trees, o Nārada, repel, and refuse their shade to, the man who claims a right to the property of a Brāhman. This (property), as king Varuṇa hath said, has been turned into a poison by the gods. No one who has eaten a Brāhman's cow continues to watch (*i.e.* to rule) over a country. 11. Those nine nineties (of persons) whom the earth shook off, when they had wronged the priestly race, were overwhelmed in an inconceivable manner (see verse 12 of the preceding hymn). 12. The gods have declared that the cloth wherewith a dead man's feet are bound shall be thy pall, thou oppressor of priests. 13. The tears which flow from a persecuted man as he laments,—such is the portion of water which the gods have assigned to thee, thou oppressor of priests. 14. The gods have allotted to thee that portion of water wherewith men wash the dead, and moisten beards. 15. The rain of Mitra and Varuṇa does not descend on the oppressor of priests. For him the battle has never a successful issue; nor does he bring his friend into subjection."

The attention of the reader is directed to the intensity of contempt and abhorrence which is sought to be conveyed by the coarse imagery contained in verses 3, and 12–14, of this last hymn.

There is another section of the same Veda, xii. 5, in which curses similar to those in the last two hymns are fulminated against the oppressors of Brāhmans. The following are specimens:

Atharva-veda, xii. 5, 4. *Brahma padarāyam brāhmano 'dhipatiḥ |*
 5. *Tām ādadānasya brahma-garvīm jīnato brāhmaṇān kshattriyaśya |*
 6. *Apā krāmāti sūṇṛitā vīryam puṇyā lakṣmīḥ |* 7. *Ojścha tejaś cha sahaś cha balaṁ cha vāk cha indriyaṁ cha śrīś cha dharmāś cha |*
 8. *Brahma cha kshattraṁ cha rāshṭraṁ cha viśaś cha tvishiś cha yaśaś cha varchaś cha draviṇaṁ cha |* 9. *Āyuś cha rūpaṁ cha nāma cha kīrttiś cha prāṇaś cha apānaś cha chakṣuś cha śrotraṁ cha |* 10. *Payāś cha rasaś*

cha annaṁ cha annādyaṁ cha ṛitaṁ cha satyaṁ cha ishṭaṁ cha pūrttaṁ cha prajā cha paśavaś cha | 11. *Tāni sarvāṇi apa krāmanti brahma-gavīm ādadānasya jīnato brāhmaṇaṁ kshattriyasya* | 12. *Sā eshā bhīmā brahma-gavī agha-vishā* | 13. *Sarvāṇy asyāṁ ghorāṇi sarve cha mṛitya-vaḥ* | 14. *Sarvāṇy asyāṁ krūrāṇi sarve puruṣa-vadhāḥ* | 15. *Sā brahma-jyaṁ deva-pīyūṁ brahmagavī ādīyamānā mṛityoḥ paḍbīṣe ādyati* |

“4. Prayer (*brāhmān*) is the chief (thing); the Brāhman is the lord (*adhipati*). 5. From the Kshattriya who seizes the priest's cow, and oppresses the Brāhman, (6) there depart piety, valour, good fortune, (7) force, keenness, vigour, strength, speech, energy, prosperity, virtue, (8) prayer (*brāhmān*), royalty, kingdom, subjects, splendour, renown, lustre, wealth, (9) life, beauty, name, fame, inspiration and expiration, sight, hearing, (10) milk, sap, food, eating, righteousness, truth, oblation, sacrifice, offspring, and cattle;—(11) all these things depart from the Kshattriya who seizes the priest's cow. 12. Terrible is the Brāhman's cow, filled with deadly poison. . . . 13. In her reside all dreadful things, and all forms of death, (14) all cruel things, and all forms of homicide. 15. When seized, she binds in the fetters of death the oppressor of priests and despiser of the gods.”

A great deal more follows to the same effect, which it would be tiresome to quote.

I subjoin some further texts, in which reference is made to *brāhmāns*.

In xix. 22, 21 (= xix. 23, 30) it is said:

Brahma-jyeshṭhā sambhṛitā vīryāṇi brahmāgre jyeshṭhaṁ divam ātatāna | bhūtānām brahmā prathamo ha jajne tenārhati brahmaṇā sparddhituṁ kaḥ |

“Powers are collected, of which prayer (or sacred science, *brāhmān*) is the chief. Prayer, the chief, in the beginning stretched out the sky. The priest (*brāhmān*) was born the first of beings. Who, then, ought to vie with the *brāhmān*.”

A superhuman power appears to be ascribed to the *brāhmān* in the following passages,—unless by *brāhmān* we are to understand *Bṛihaspati*:—

xix. 9, 12. *Brahmā Prajāpatir Dhātā lokāḥ vedāḥ sapta-ṛishayo 'gnayaḥ | tair me kṛitaṁ siastyayanam Indro me śarma yachhatu brahmā me śarma yachhatu* |

“May a prosperous journey be granted to me by prayer, Prajāpati, Dhātṛi, the worlds, the Vedas, the seven rishis, the fires; may Indra grant me felicity, may the *brāhmān* grant me felicity.”

xix. 43, 8. *Yatra brāhma-vido yānti dīkṣayā tapasā saha | brahmā mā tatra nayatu brahmā brahma dadhātu me | brahmaṇe svāhā.*

“May the *brāhmān* conduct me to the place whither the knowers of prayer (or of sacred science) go by initiation with austerity. May the *brāhmān* impart to me sacred science. *Svāhā* to the *brāhmān*.”

The wonderful powers of the Brahmachārin, or student of sacred science, are described in a hymn (A.V. xi. 5), parts of which are translated in my paper on the progress of the Vedic Religion, pp. 374 ff.

And yet with all this sacredness of his character the priest must be devoted to destruction, if, in the interest of an enemy, he is seeking by his ceremonies to effect the ruin of the worshipper.

v. 8, 5. *Yam amī puro dadhire brāhmāṇam apabhūtaye | Indra sa me adhaspudān tam pratyasyāmi mṛityave |*

“May the *brāhmān* whom these men have placed in their front (as a *purohita*) for our injury, fall under my feet, o Indra; I hurl him away, to death (compare A.V. vii. 70, 1 ff.).

SECT. IV.—*Opinions of Professor R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug regarding the origin of caste among the Hindus.*

I shall in this section give some account of the speculations of Prof. R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug on the process by which they conceive the system of castes to have grown up among the Indians.

The remarks which I shall quote from Prof. Roth are partly drawn from his third “Dissertation on the Literature and History of the Veda,” p. 117, and partly from his paper on “Brahma and the Brāhmans,” in the first volume of the Journal of the German Oriental Society.⁷⁸ He says in the latter essay: “The religious development of India is attached through the course of three thousand years to the word *brāhmā*. This conception might be taken as the standard for estimating the progress of thought directed to divine things, as at every step taken by the latter, it has gained a new form, while at the same time

⁷⁸ The reader who is unacquainted with German will find a fuller account of this article in the Benares Magazine for October 1851, pp. 823 ff.

it has always embraced in itself the highest spiritual acquisition of the nation. . . . The original signification of the word *brāhmā*, as we easily discover it in the Vedic hymns, is that of prayer; not praise or thanksgiving, but that invocation which, with the force of the will, directed to God, seeks to draw him to itself, and to receive satisfaction from him. . . . From this oldest sense and form of *brāhmā* (neuter) was formed the masculine noun *brahmā*, which was the designation of those who pronounced the prayers, or performed the sacred ceremonies; and in nearly all the passages of the Rig-veda in which it was thought that this word must refer to the Brahmanical caste, this more extended sense must be substituted for the other more limited one. . . . From this sense of the word *brahmā*, nothing was more natural than to convert this offerer of prayer into a particular description of sacrificial priest: so soon as the ritual began to be fixed, the functions which were before united in a single person, who both prayed to the gods and sacrificed to them, became separated, and a priesthood interposed itself between man and God.”⁷⁹

Then further on, after quoting R.V. iv. 50, 4 ff. (see above, p. 247), Prof. Roth continues: “In this manner here and in many places of the liturgical and legal books, the promise of every blessing is attached to the maintenance of a priest by the king. Inasmuch as he supports and honours the priest, the latter ensures to him the favour of the gods. So it was that the caste of the Brāhmans arose and attained to power and consideration: first, they were only the single domestic priests of the kings; then the dignity became hereditary in certain families; finally a union, occasioned by similarity of interests, of these families in one larger community was effected; and all this in reciprocal action with the progress made in other respects by theological doctrine and religious worship. Still the extension of the power which fell into the hands of this priestly caste would not be perfectly comprehensible

⁷⁹ In his third Dissertation on the Literature and History of the Veda, Prof. Roth remarks. “In the Vedic age, access to the gods by prayer and sacrifice was open to all classes of the community; and it was only the power of expressing devotion in a manner presumed to be acceptable to the deities, or a readiness in poetical diction, that distinguished any individual or family from the mass, and led to their being employed to conduct the worship of others. The name given to such persons was *purohita*, one ‘put forward;’ one through whose mediation the gods would receive the offering presented. But these priests had as yet no especial sanctity or exclusive prerogative which would render their employment imperative.”

from this explanation alone. The relation of spiritual superiority in which the priests came to stand to the kings was aided by other historical movements."

Professor Roth then proceeds: "When—at a period more recent than the majority of the hymns of the Rig-veda—the Vedic people, driven by some political shock, advanced from their abodes in the Punjab further and further to the south, drove the aborigines into the hills, and took possession of the broad tract of country lying between the Ganges, the Jumna, and the Vindhya range; the time had arrived when the distribution of power, the relation of king and priest, could become transformed in the most rapid and comprehensive manner. Principalities separated in such various ways, such a division into tribes as had existed in the Punjab, were no longer possible here, where nature had created a wide and continuous tract with scarcely any natural boundaries to dis sever one part from another. Most of those petty princes who had descended from the north with their tribes must here of necessity disappear, their tribes become dissolved, and contests arise for the supreme dominion. This era is perhaps portrayed to us in the principal subject of the Mahābhārata, the contest between the descendants of Pāṇḍu and Kuru. In this stage of disturbance and complication, power naturally fell into the hands of those who did not directly possess any authority, the priestly races and their leaders, who had hitherto stood rather in the position of followers of the kings, but now rose to a higher rank. It may easily be supposed that they and their families, already honoured as the confidential followers of the princes, would frequently be able to strike a decisive stroke to which the king would owe his success. If we take further into account the intellectual and moral influence which this class possessed in virtue of the prerogative conceded to, or usurped by, them, and the religious feeling of the people, it is not difficult to comprehend how in such a period of transition powerful communities should arise among the domestic priests of petty kings and their families, should attain to the highest importance in every department of life, and should grow into a caste which, like the ecclesiastical order in the middle ages of Christianity, began to look upon secular authority as an effluence from the fulness of their power, to be conferred at their will; and how, on the other hand, the numerous royal families should

sink down into a nobility which possessed, indeed, the sole right to the kingly dignity, but at the same time, when elected by the people, required inauguration in order to their recognition by the priesthood, and were enjoined above all things to employ only Brāhmans as their counsellors."

In order to render the probability of this theory still more apparent, Professor Roth goes on to indicate the relations of the other castes to the Brāhmans. The position which the three superior classes occupied in the developed Brahmanical system was one of gradation, as they differed only in the extent of their religious and civil prerogatives, the Kshattriya being in some respects less favoured than the Brāhman, and the Vaiśya than the Kshattriya. With the Sūdras, on the other hand, the case was quite different. They were not admitted to sacrifice, to the study of the Vedas, or to investiture with the sacred cord. From this Professor Roth concludes that the three highest castes stood in a closer connection with each other, whether of descent, or of culture, than any of them did to the fourth. The Indian body politic, moreover, was complete without the Sūdras. The Brāhman and Kshattriya were the rulers, while the Vaiśyas formed the mass of the people. The fact of the latter not being originally a separate community is confirmed by the employment assigned to them, as well as by their name Vaiśya, derived from the word *Vīś*, a word which in the Veda designates the general community, especially considered as the possessor of the pure Aryan worship and culture, in contradistinction to all barbarian races. Out of this community the priesthood arose in the manner above described, while the Kshattriyas were the nobility, descended in the main from the kings of the earlier ages. The fourth caste, the Sūdras, consisted, according to Prof. Roth, of a race subdued by the Brahmanical conquerors, whether that race may have been a branch of the Arian stock which immigrated at an earlier period into India, or an autochthonous Indian tribe.

In his tract on the origin of Brāhmanism, from which I have already quoted (see above, pp. 11 and 14), Dr. Haug thus states his views on this question: "It has been of late asserted that the original parts of the Vedas do not know the system of caste. But this conclusion was prematurely arrived at without sufficiently weighing the evidence. It is true the caste system is not to be found in such a developed state;

the duties enjoined to the several castes are not so clearly defined as in the Law Books and Purāṇas. But nevertheless the system is already known in the earlier parts of the Vedas, or rather presupposed. The barriers only were not so insurmountable as in later times." (p. 6). This view he supports by a reference to the Zend Avesta, in which he finds evidence of a division of the followers of Ahura Mazda into the three classes of Atharvas, Rathæsthas, and Vāstrya fshuyans, which he regards as corresponding exactly to the Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas of India. The Atharvas, or priests, in particular formed a class or even a caste; they had secrets which they were prohibited from divulging; they were the spiritual guides of their nation, and none but the son of a priest could become a priest—a rule which the Parsīs still maintain. From these facts, Dr. Haug deduces the conclusion that the nation of which both the Indo-Arians and the Perso-Arians originally formed a part had been divided into three classes even before the separation of the Indians from the Iranians; and he adds (p. 7): "From all we know, the real origin of caste appears to go back to a time anterior to the composition of the Vedic hymns, though its development into a regular system with insurmountable barriers can be referred only to the latest period of the Vedic times."

I shall furnish a short analysis of some other parts of Dr. Haug's interesting tract. He derives (p. 7) the word *brāhmaṇa* from *brāhmān* (neuter), which originally meant "a sacred song, prayer," as an effusion of devotional feeling. *Brāhmā* was the "sacred element" in the sacrifice, and signified "the soul of nature, the productive power." The Brahmanic sacrifices had production as their object, and embraced some rites which were intended to furnish the sacrificer with a new spiritual body wherewith he might ascend to heaven, and others calculated to provide him with cattle and offspring (p. 8). The symbol of this *brāhmā*, or productive power, which must always be present at the sacrifice, was a bunch of *kūśa* grass, generally called Veda (a word alternating with *brāhmā*), which, at the sacrifice, was passed from one priest to another, and given to the sacrificer and his wife. The corresponding symbol of twigs used by the Parsīs was called in Zend *bāresma*, which Dr. Haug considers to have been originally the same as *brāhmā* (p. 9). As it was essential to the success of these sacrifices

that every portion of the complicated ceremonial should be accurately performed, and as mistakes could not be avoided, it became necessary to obviate by an atonement (*prāyaścitti*) the mischief which would otherwise have ensued; and the priest appointed to guard against or expiate such mistakes, when committed by the other priests—the *hotri*, *adhvaryu*, and *udgātri*—was called, “from the most ancient times,” the *brāhmān* (‘masculine’), who was a functionary pre-eminently supplied with *brāhmā* (‘neuter’) or sacred knowledge, and thereby connected “with the soul of nature, the cause of all growth, the last cause of all sacrificial rites” (p. 10). The office of *brāhmān* was not one to which mere birth gave a claim, but had to be attained by ability and study. The descendants of these *brāhmān* priests were the Brāhmans, and the speculations of the most eminent *brāhmān* priests on divine things, and especially on sacrificial rites, are contained in the works called Brāhmaṇas (p. 12). Dr. Haug considers that no such a class as that of the *brāhmān* priests existed at the early period when the ancestors of the Hindus separated from those of the Parsīs in consequence of religious differences. The few rites preserved by the Parsīs as relics of the remotest antiquity closely resemble those of the Brāhmans. Dr. Haug finds that in the Homa ritual of the former (corresponding to the Soma ceremony of the latter) only two priests, called *Zota* and *Raspi* or *Rathwi*, are required, whom he recognises as corresponding to the *Hotri* and *Adhvaryu* of the latter. So long as the rites were simple, no *brāhmān* priest was wanted; but when they became complicated and multiform, the necessity for such a functionary arose. And it was only then that the sons of the *brāhmāns*, i.e. the Brāhmans, could rise through the possession of sacred knowledge, derived from their fathers, to great power, and form themselves into a regular caste. The development of these ceremonies out of their primitive simplicity into the complexity and multiformity which they ultimately assumed must, Dr. Haug thinks, have been the work of many centuries. This transformation must have taken place in the region bordering on the Sarasvatī, where the expansion of the Brahmanical system, and the elevation of the Brāhmans to full spiritual supremacy, is to be sought, before the Indo-Arians advanced south-eastwards into Hindostan proper (p. 14). The ascendancy of the Brāhmans was not however attained without opposition on the part of the kings (p. 18). Dr. Haug concludes by relating the reception .

of Viśvāmitra into the order of Brāhmans, and by giving some account of the rishis and the several classes into which they were divided.

• As the question is generally stated by Dr. Haug in pages 6 and 12 ff., the difference between him and other European scholars is one of age and not of principle, for neither party admits any distinction of race or congenital diversity between the three superior castes or classes.

CHAPTER IV.

EARLY CONTESTS BETWEEN THE BRAHMANS AND KSHATTRIYAS.

I proceed to give some legendary illustrations of the struggle which no doubt occurred in the early ages of Hindu history between the Brāhmans and the Kshattriyas, after the former had begun to constitute a fraternity exercising the sacerdotal profession, but before the respective provinces of the two classes had been accurately defined by custom, and when the members of each were ready to encroach on the prerogatives claimed as their own exclusive birthright by the other.

SECT. I.—*Manu's Summary of refractory and submissive monarchs.*

I shall begin with the following passage, which we find in the Institutes of Manu, vii. 38 ff., regarding the impious resistance, as the lawgiver considered it, of certain monarchs to the legitimate claims of the priests, and the dutiful behaviour of others.

38. *Vṛiddhāś cha nityaṁ seveta viprān veda-vidāḥ śuchīm | vṛiddha-sevā hi satatāṁ rakshobhir api pājyate |* 39. *Tebhya 'dhigachhed vīnayaṁ vīnātātmā 'pi nityaśaḥ | vīnātātmā hi nripatir na vīnasyati karchi-chit |* 40. *Baharo 'vinayād nashṭāḥ rājānaḥ sa-parichhadāḥ | ranasthāḥ api rājyāni vinayāt pratipedire |* 41. *Veṇo vīnashṭo 'vinayād Nahushāś chaiva pārthivāḥ | Sudāḥ Paijaranaś⁹⁰ chaiva Sumukho Nimir eva cha |* 42. *Prithus tu vinayād rājyam prāptavān Manur eva cha | Kūveraś cha dhanaśravyam brāhmaṇyaṁ chaiva Gādhijah |*

“Let the king constantly reverence ancient Brāhmans skilled in the Vedas, and pure in conduct; for he who always respects the aged is honoured even by the Rākshāses. 39. Let him, even though humble-

⁹⁰ In support of this reading, see M. Loiseleur Deslongchamps's and Sir G. C. Haughton's notes on the passage.

minded, be continually learning submissiveness from them : for a submissive monarch never perishes. 40. Through want of this character many kings have been destroyed with all their possessions; whilst by humility even hermits have obtained kingdoms. 41. Veṇa perished through want of submissiveness, and king Nahusha, and Sūdas the son of Pijavana, and Sumukha, and Nimi. 42. But through submissiveness Prithu and Manu attained kingly power, Kuvera the lordship of wealth, and the son of Gādhi (Viśvāmitra) Brāhmanhood.”⁵¹

Veṇa is again referred to in Manu ix. 66 f. : *Ayaṁ drījair hi vidvadbhiḥ paśudharmo nigarhitaḥ | manushyānām api prokto Veṇe rājyam praśāsati |* 67. *Sa mahīm akhilām bhunjan rājārshi-prararāḥ purā | varṇānām sankarām chakre kāmopahata-chetunāḥ |*

“This custom (of raising up seed to a deceased brother or kinsman by his widow) fit only for cattle was declared to be (law) for men also, when Veṇa held sway. This eminent royal rishi, who in former times ruled over the whole earth, having his reason destroyed by lust, occasioned a confusion of castes.”

The legendary history of nearly all the kings thus stigmatized or celebrated can be traced in the Purāṇas and other parts of Indian literature. I shall supply such particulars of the refractory monarchs as I can find.

It will be observed that Manu is spoken of as an ordinary prince; and that even Kuvera, the god of wealth, is said to have attained his dignity by the same species of merit as the other persons whom the writer eulogizes. I am not aware whether any legends exist to the same effect. Something of a contrary tendency is found with regard to the deity in question in the passage of the Mahābhārata, of which an extract is given above, in p. 140, note 249.

⁵¹ Kullūka remarks on this passage *Gādhi-putro Viśvāmitras' cho kshattriyāḥ saṁs tanaivadehena brāhmanyam prāptaṁ āp | rājya-tūbhāvasari brāhmanya-prāptir aprastatā 'pi vinayotkarshānatham uktā |* *īdṛśo 'yaṁ s īstrānushthāna-nishiddha-varjāna-rūpa-vinayodayena kshattriyo 'pi durlabham brāhmanyam lebbe |* “Viśvāmitra, the son of Gādhi, being a Kshattriya, obtained Brāhmanhood in the same body (i.e. without being again born in another body). The attainment of Brāhmanhood by one who at the time held kingly authority, although an unusual occurrence, is mentioned to show the excellence of submissiveness. Through that quality, as exhibited in the observance of scriptural injunctions, and in abstinence from things forbidden, he, being a Kshattriya, obtained Brāhmanhood, so difficult to acquire.”

I have not met with any story of Sumukha's contest with the Brāhmins. Some MSS. read Suratha instead of Sumukha.

The name of Sudās, the son of Pijavana, occurs in several parts of the Rīg-veda. I shall return to him in relating the contest between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra. I begin with the story of Vena.

SECT. II.—*Legend of Vena.*

According to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, i. 13, Vena was the son of Anga, and the descendant in the ninth generation of the first Manu, Svāyambhuva; the line of ancestors from the latter downwards being as follows: Uttānapāda, Dhruva, Ślishti, Ripu, Chākshusha, the sixth Manu called Chākshusha, Uru, Anga (see Wilson's Viṣṇu P. vol. i.). Vena thus belongs to a mythical age preceding by an enormous interval that of the descendants of Manu Vaivasvata mentioned in the preceding chapter of this volume; five Manvantaras, or periods of 308,571 years each, having intervened in the present Kalpa between the close of the Svāyambhuva, and the beginning of the existing, or Vaivasvata, Manvantara.

Viṣṇu Purāṇa, i. 13, 7: *Parāśara uvācha | Sunīthā nāma yā kanyā Mrityoḥ prathamajā bhavat | Angasya bhāryyā sa dattā tasyām Venas te ajāyata |* 8. *Sa mātāmaha-doshen tu tena Mrityoḥ sūtātmanajā | nisargād iva Maitreya dushṭā eva vyajāyata |* 9. *Abhishikto yadā rājye sa Venāḥ paramarshibhiḥ | ghoshayāmāsa sa tadā prithivyām prithivīpatiḥ |* “*na yashṭaryām na dātavyām hotavyām na kulāchana | bhoktā yajnasya kas te anyo hy ahaṁ yajna-patiḥ sudā |* 10. *Tatas tam ṛishayaḥ sarve sampūjya prithivīpatim | ūchuḥ sāmakalām saṁyañ Maitreya samupasthitāḥ | ṛishayaḥ ūchuḥ |* 11. “*Bho bho rājan śrinushva traṁ yad vadāmas tava prabho | rājya-dhōpakāre yaḥ prajānām cha hitam param |* 12. *Dīrgha-sattreṇa deveṣāṁ sarva-yajneśvaraṁ Harim | pūjayishyāmo bhadrām te tatrāmśas te bhavishyati |* 13. *Yajnena yajna-purusḥo Viṣṇuḥ samprīṇito vibhuḥ | asmābhū bhavataḥ kāmān sarvān eva pradāsyati | yajnair yajneśvaro yeshām rāshṭre sampūjyate Harīḥ | teshām sarveṣṭācāptīm dadāti nrīpa bhūbhujām” |* *Venāḥ uvācha |* “*mattaḥ ko 'bhyadhiko 'nyo 'sti kaś chārādhyo mamōparaḥ | ko 'yaṁ Harir iti khyāto yo vo yajneśvaro mataḥ |* *Brahmā Janārdano Rudraḥ Indro Vāyur Yamo Raviḥ |*

Hutabhuḡ Varuṇo Dhātū Pūshā Bhūmir Niśākaraḥ | ete chānye cha ye devāḥ śāpānugraha-kāriṇaḥ | nṛipasya te śarīra-sthāḥ sarva-devamayo nṛipaḥ | etaj jñātvā mayā 'jñaptam yad yathā kriyatām tathā | na dātavyam na hotavyam na yashṭavyam cha 10 diṇjāḥ | 14. Dharttuḥ śuś-rūshaṇam dharmo yathā strīṇām paro mataḥ | mamājñā-pālanam dharmo bhavatām cha tathā diṇjāḥ" | ṛishayaḥ ūchuḥ | "deḡy anujñam mahā-rāja mū dharmo yātu sankshayaḥ | havishām parināmo 'yaṁ yad etad akhilaṁ jagat | 15. Dharme cha sankshayaṁ yāte kshiyate chākhilaṁ jagat" | Parāśaraḥ uvācha | iti vijnāpyamāno 'pi sa Veṇaḥ paramar-shibhiḥ | yadā dudāti nānujñam proktaḥ proktaḥ punaḥ punaḥ | tatas te munayaḥ sarve kopāmarsha-samanvitāḥ | "hanyatām hanyatām pūpaḥ" ity ūchuḥ te parasparam | 16. "Yo yajña-purushaṁ devam anādi-ni-dhanam prabhum | vinindaty adhamāchāro na sa yogyo bhuvāḥ patih" | ity uktvā mantra-pūtais te kuśair muni-gaṇāḥ nṛipam | nṛjaghnur nihataḥ pūrvam bhagavan-nindanādinā | tataś cha munayo reṇuḁ duḍṛiṣuḥ sar-vato diṇja | "kim etad" iti chāsannam paprachkṣuḥ te janaṁ tada | 17. Ākhyātām cha janais teshām "chaurībhūtair arājake | rūshṭre tu lokair ārabdham para-svādānaṁ āturaḥ | 18. Teshām udirṇa-regānām chaurāṇām muni-sattamāḥ | sumahūn dṛiṣyate reṇuḥ para-vittāpahā-rinām" | tataḥ sammantrya te sarve munayas tasya bhūbhṛitāḥ | maman-thur ūrum putrārtham anapatyasya yatnataḥ | mathyataś cha samuttas-thau tasyoroḥ purushaḥ kila | dagdhu-sthūṇāpratīkāsuḥ khariṇāṭasyo 'tihrasvakaḥ | 19. Kiṁ karomīti tān sarvān viprān āha sa chāturaḥ | nishīdeti tam ūchuḥ te nishādas tena so 'bhavat | 20. Tatas tat-sambharāḥ jātāḥ Vindhya-śaila-nirāsinaḥ | nishādāḥ muni-śārdūla pāpa-karmo-palakshaṇāḥ | 21. Tena dvāreṇa nishkrāntam tat pāpam tasya bhūpateḥ | nishādās te tathā jātāḥ Veṇa-kulmasha-sambharāḥ | 22. Tato 'sya dak-shiṇām hastam mamanthas te tadā diṇjāḥ | mathyamāne cha tatrābhūt Prithur Vainyaḥ pratāpavān | dīpyamānaḥ sva-rapushā sākshād Agnir ivaḡjvalan | 23. Ādyam ājagaraṁ nāma khāt papātu tato dhanāḥ | śarās cha divyāḥ nabhasaḥ kavachaṁ cha papātu ha | tasmin jāte tu bhūtāni samprahrishṭāni sarvasaḥ | satputreṇa cha jātena Veṇo 'pi tridivam yayau | pun-nāmno narakāt trātāḥ sa tena sumahātmanā |

"7. The maiden named Sunīthā, who was the first-born of Mṛityu (Death)⁸² was given as wife to Anga; and of her Veṇa was born. 8. This son of Mṛityu's daughter, infected with the taint of his ma-

⁸² See above, p. 124, and note 230.

ternal grandfather, was born corrupt, as if by nature. 9. When Vena was inaugurated as king by the eminent rishis, he caused this proclamation to be made on the earth: 'Men must not sacrifice, or give gifts, or present oblations. Who else but myself is the enjoyer of sacrifices? I am for ever the lord of offerings.' 10. Then all the rishis approaching the king with respectful salutations, said to him in a gentle and conciliatory tone: 11. 'Hear, o king, what we have to say: 12. We shall worship Hari, the monarch of the gods, and the lord of all sacrifices, with a Dirghasattra (prolonged sacrifice), from which the highest benefits will accrue to your kingdom, your person, and your subjects. May blessings rest upon you! You shall have a share in the ceremony. 13. Vishnu the lord, the sacrificial Male, being propitiated by us with this rite, will grant all the objects of your desire. Hari, the lord of sacrifices, bestows on these kings in whose country he is honoured with oblations, everything that they wish.' Vena replied: 'What other being is superior to me? who else but I should be adored? who is this person called Hari, whom you regard as the lord of sacrifice? Brahmā, Janārdana, Rudra, Indra, Vāyu, Yama, Ravi (the Sun), Agni, Varuṇa, Dhātṛi, Pūshan, Earth, the Moon,—these and the other gods who curse and bless are all present in a king's person: for he is composed of all the gods.⁸³ Knowing this, ye must

⁸³ The orthodox doctrine, as stated by Manu, vii. 3 ff., coincides very nearly with Vena's estimate of himself, although the legislator does not deduce from it the same conclusions. 3. *Rakṣhārtham asya sarvasya rūpinam asrijat prabhoḥ* | 4. *Indrānilayamārkanām Agniś cha Varuṇasya cha* | *Chandra-Viśvāyos' chaiva mātṛbhiḥ nīkṛitya śāśvatīḥ* | 5. *Yasmād eśām surendrāṇām mātṛbhiḥ nirmīto nripaḥ* | *tasmād abhībhavaty eśa sarva-bhūtāni tjasū* | 6. *Tupaty āditya-rach chauriśa cakṣmāṁśi cha manāṁśi cha* | *na chānam bhūvi śaknoti kṣēchid apy abhīrīkṣitam* | 7. *So 'gnir bhavati Vāyoś cha so 'rkaś Somaś ca Dharmarūḥ* | *sa Kuveraś sa Varuṇaś sa Mahendroḥ prabhūvataḥ* | 8. *Būto 'pi nāramantavyo "manuṣyaḥ" iti bhūmipah* | *mahatī devatā hy eśā nara-rūpeṇa tishṭhati* | "3. The lord created the king for the preservation of this entire world, (4) extracting the eternal essential particles of Indra, Vāyu, Yama, Sūrya, Agni, Varuṇa, Chandra, and Kuvera. 5. Inasmuch as the king is formed of the particles of all these gods, he surpasses all beings in brilliancy. 6. Like the Sun, he distresses both men's eyes and minds; and no one on earth can ever gaze upon him. 7. He is Agni, Vāyu, Sūrya, Soma, Yama, Kuvera, Varuṇa, and Indra, in majesty. 8. Even when a child a king is not to be despised under the idea that he is a mere man; for he is a great deity in human form."

In another passage, ix. 303, this is qualified by saying that the king should imitate the functions of the different gods: *Indrasyūrkaśya Vāyoścha Yamasya Varuṇasya cha* | *Chandrasyāgnēḥ Prithivyās cha tejo vrittaṁ nripas' charet* | This expanded in the next verses.

act in conformity with my commands. Brāhmans, ye must neither give gifts, nor present oblations nor sacrifices. 14. As obedience to their husbands is esteemed the highest duty of women, so is the observance of my orders incumbent upon you.' The rishis answered: 'Give permission, great king: let not religion perish: this whole world is but a modified form of oblations. 15. When religion perishes the whole world is destroyed with it.' When Vena, although thus admonished and repeatedly addressed by the eminent rishis, did not give his permission, then all the munis, filled with wrath and indignation, cried out to one another, 'Slay, slay the sinner. 16. This man of degraded life, who blasphemes the sacrificial Male, the god, the lord without beginning or end, is not fit to be lord of the earth.' So saying the munis smote with blades of kuśa grass consecrated by texts this king who had been already smitten by his blasphemy of the divine Being and his other offences. The munis afterwards beheld dust all round, and asked the people who were standing near what that was. 17. They were informed: 'In this country which has no king, the people, being distressed, have become robbers, and have begun to seize the property of others. 18. It is from these robbers rushing impetuously, and plundering other men's goods, that this great dust is seen? Then all the munis, consulting together, rubbed with force the thigh of the king, who was childless, in order to produce a son. From his thigh when rubbed there was produced a man like a charred log, with flat face, and extremely short. 19. 'What shall I do?' cried the man, in distress, to the Brāhmans. They said to him, 'Sit down' (*nishāda*); and from this he became a Nishāda. 20. From him sprang the Nishādas dwelling in the Vindhya mountains, distinguished by their wicked deeds. 21. By this means the sin of the king departed out of him; and so were the Nishādas produced, the off-spring of the wickedness of Vena. 22. The Brāhmans then rubbed his right hand; and from it, when rubbed, sprang the majestic Prithu, Vena's son, resplendent in body, glowing like the manifested Agni. 23. Then the primeval bow called Ājagava fell from the sky, with celestial arrows, and a coat of mail. At Prithu's birth all creatures rejoiced. And through the birth of this virtuous son, Vena, delivered from the hell called Put⁵⁴ by this eminent person, ascended to heaven."

⁵⁴ This alludes to the fanciful derivation of *puttra*, "son," from *put* + *tra*.

The *Harivaṁśa* (sect. 5) relates the same story thus, with little variation from the *Vishṇu Purāṇa* :

*Vaiśampāyanaḥ uvācha | Āśīd dharmasya goptā vai pūrvam Atri-samaḥ
prabhuḥ | Atri-vaṁśa-samutpannas tv Aṅgo nāma prajāpatiḥ | tasya
putro 'bhavad Veno nātyarthaṁ dharmā-kovidāḥ | jāto Mrityu-sutāyām
vai Sunīthāyām prajāpatiḥ | sa mātāmaha-doshena tena kālātma-jātma-jāḥ |
sva-dharmān prishṭhataḥ kṛtvā kāmāl lobheshr avarttata | maryādām
sthāpayāmāsa dharmāpetām sa pārthivaḥ | veda-dharmān atikramya so
'dharmā-nirato 'bhavot | niḥ-svādhyāya-rashaṭkārās tasmīn rājani śūsati |
prāvarttan na papuḥ somaṁ hutaṁ yajneshu devatūḥ | “na yashṭavyam
na hotavyam” iti tasya prajāpateḥ | āsit pratīpnā krūreyaṁ vināśe
samupasthite | aham iyaś cha yashṭā cha yajnaś cheti kurūdraha |
“mayi yajnaḥ vidhātavyaḥ mayi hotavyam” ity api | tam atikrānta-
maryādām ādadānam asāmpratam | ūchur maharshayaḥ sarve Marīchi-
pramukhās tadā | “vayaṁ dīkshām prarekshyāmaḥ samvatsara-gaṇān
bahuṁ | adharmaṁ kuru mā Vena naiśha dharmāḥ sanātanaḥ | anvaye
'treḥ prasūtas tvam prajāpatir asaṁśayam | ‘prajāś cha pūlayishye
'ham’ iti te samayaḥ kritāḥ” | tāṁs tatkā bruvataḥ sarvān maharshīn
abravīt tadā | Venaḥ prahasya durbuddhir imam artham anartha-vit |
Venaḥ uvācha | “sraśṭā dharmasya kaś chānyaḥ śrotariyaṁ kasya vā
mayā | śruta-vīrya-tapaḥ-satyair mayā vā kaḥ samo bhuvī | prabhavaṁ
sarva-bhūtānām dharmānām cha viśeshataḥ | sammūdhāḥ na vidur nūnam
bhavanto mām achetasāḥ | ichhan daheyaṁ prithivīm plāvayeyaṁ jalais
tathā | dyām bhuvam chaiva rundheyaṁ nātra kāryā vichāraṇā” | yadū
na śakyaite mohād avalepāc cha pārthivaḥ | anunetum tadā Venas tataḥ
kruddhāḥ maharshayaḥ | nigrihya tam mahātmāno visphurantam mahā-
balam | tato 'sya saryam ūrum te mamanthur jāta-manyavaḥ | tasmīns tu
mathyamāne vai rājnaḥ ūrau vijajnivān | hrasvo 'timūtraḥ puruṣaḥ
kṛishnaś chāpi babbhūra ha | sa bhītaḥ prānjaliḥ bhūtrā sthitarān Jana-
mājya | tam Atrir viḥḥalaṁ dṛishṭvā nishīdety abravīt tadā | nishāda-
vaṁśa-karttā 'sau babbhūra radatām vara | dhīvarān asṛjoch chāpi Vena-
kalmasha-sambharān | ye chānye Vīndhya-nīlayās Tukhārās Tumburās
tathā | adharma-ruchayas tāta viddhi tām Vena-sambharān | tataḥ punar
mahātmānaḥ pāṇīn Venasya dekshinam | arāṇim ira saṁrabdhāḥ maman-
thur jāta-manyavaḥ | Prithus tasmāt samuttasthan karāj jvalana-sannī-
bhaḥ | dīpyamānaḥ sru-rapushā śākshūd Agnir ira jalān |*

“There was formerly a Prajapati (lord of creatures), a protector of

righteousness, called Anga, of the race of Atri, and resembling him in power. His son was the Prajāpati Vena, who was but indifferently skilled in duty, and was born of Sunīthā, the daughter of Mrityu. This son, of the daughter of Kāla (Death), owing to the taint derived from his maternal grandfather, threw his duties behind his back, and lived in covetousness under the influence of desire. This king established an irreligious system of conduct: transgressing the ordinances of the Veda, he was devoted to lawlessness. In his reign men lived without study of the sacred books and without the vashatkāra, and the gods had no Soma-libations to drink at sacrifices. 'No sacrifice or oblation shall be offered,'—such was the ruthless determination of that Prajāpati, as the time of his destruction approached. 'I,' he declared, 'am the object, and the performer of sacrifice, and the sacrifice itself: it is to me that sacrifice should be presented, and oblations offered.' This transgressor of the rules of duty, who arrogated to himself what was not his due, was then addressed by all the great rishis, headed by Marīchi: 'We are about to consecrate ourselves for a ceremony which shall last for many years: practise not unrighteousness, o Vena: this is not the eternal rule of duty. Thou art in very deed a Prajāpati of Atri's race, and thou hast engaged to protect thy subjects.' The foolish Vena, ignorant of what was right, laughingly answered those great rishis who had so addressed him: 'Who but myself is the ordainer of duty? or whom ought I to obey? Who on earth equals me in sacred knowledge, in prowess, in austere fervour, in truth? Ye who are deluded and senseless know not that I am the source of all beings and duties. Hesitate not to believe that I, if I willed, could burn up the earth, or deluge it with water, or close up heaven and earth.' When owing to his delusion and arrogance Vena could not be governed, then the mighty rishis becoming incensed, seized the vigorous and struggling king, and rubbed his left thigh. From this thigh, so rubbed, was produced a black man, very short in stature, who, being alarmed, stood with joined hands. Seeing that he was agitated, Atri said to him 'Sit down' (*nishīda*). He became the founder of the race of the Nishādas, and also progenitor of the Dhīvaras (fishermen), who sprang from the corruption of Vena. So too were produced from him the other inhabitants of the Vindhya range, the Tukhāras, and Tumburas, who are prone to lawlessness. Then the mighty sages, excited and incensed, again rubbed

the right hand of Vena, as men do the *araṇi* wood, and from it arose Prithu, resplendent in body, glowing like the manifested Agni."

Although the Harivaṁśa declares Vena to be a descendant of Atri, yet as the Prajāpati Atri is said in a previous section to have adopted Uttānapāda, Vena's ancestor, for his son (Hariv. sect. 2, verse 60, *Uttānapādām jagrāha putrum Atriḥ prajāpatiḥ*) there is no contradiction between the genealogy given here and in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa.

The story of Vena is told in the same way, but more briefly, in the Mahābhārata, Śāntip. sect. 59. After narrating the birth of Prithu, the writer proceeds, verse 2221 :

Tatas tu prāṇjalir Vainyo maharshīṁś tām urācha ha | "susūkṣhmā me samutpannā buddhir dharmārtha-darśinī | anayā kim mayā kāryyaṁ tad me tattvena śaśvata | yad mām bhavanto rakṣyanti kāryam artha-samanvītam | tad ahaṁ vai karishyāmi nātra kāryā vichāranā" | tam ūchus tatra devās te te chaiva paramarshayaḥ | "nigato yatra dharmo vai team āsankāḥ samāchura | priyāpriye parityajya samāḥ sarceṣu jan-tuṣa | kāma-krodhau cha lobhaṁ cha mānaṁ chotsṛjya dūrataḥ | yaś cha dharmāt parichele loka kśāhana mānavaḥ | nigrāhyās te sa-bāhubhyāṁ śaśvad dharmam arekṣatā | pratijñāṁ chādhirohasva manasā karmaṇā girā | 'pālayishyāmy aham bhūmam brahma' ity eva chāsukṛit | . . . adandyaḥ me deijās cheti pratijñānī he vibho | lokaṁ cha sankarāt kṛtsnaṁ trātāsmṛti parantapa" | Vainyas tatas tām urācha devān rishi-purogamān | "brāhmaṇāḥ me mahābhāgāḥ namasyāḥ puruṣarshabhāḥ" | "eram aṣṭe" iti Vainyas tu tair ukto brahmaṇādibhiḥ | purodhās chābharatasya Sukro brahmanayo nūbhiḥ | mantriṇo Bālakhilyās cha Sārasvatyo gargas tathā | maharshir bhagavān Gargas tasya sāmṛtsaro bhavat |

"The son of Vena (Prithu) then, with joined hands, addressed the great rishis : 'A very slender understanding for perceiving the principles of duty has been given to me by nature : tell me truly how I must employ it. Doubt not that I shall perform whatever you shall declare to me as my duty, and its object.' Then those gods and great rishis said to him : 'Whatever duty is enjoined perform it without hesitation, di-regarding what thou mayest like or dislike, looking on all creatures with an equal eye, putting far from thee lust, anger, cupidity, and pride. Restrain by the strength of thine arm all those men who swerve from righteousness, having a constant regard to duty. And in thought, act, and word take upon thyself, and continually renew, the

engagement to protect the terrestrial Brāhmān (Veda, or Brāhmans?) And promise that thou wilt exempt the Brāhmans from punishment, and preserve society from the confusion of castes.' The son of Vena then replied to the gods, headed by the rishis: 'The great Brāhmans, the chief of men, shall be revered by me.' 'So be it,' rejoined those declarers of the Veda. Śukra, the depository of divine knowledge, became his purohita; the Bālakhilyas and Sārasvatyas his ministers; and the venerable Garga, the great rishi, his astrologer."

The character and conduct of Prithu, as portrayed in the last passage presents a strong, and when regarded from a Brahmanical point of view, an edifying, contrast to the contempt of priestly authority and disregard of Vedic observances which his predecessor had shewn.

In legends like that of Vena we see, I think, a reflection of the questions which were agitating the religious world of India at the period when the Purāṇas in which they appear were compiled, viz., those which were then at issue between the adherents of the Veda, and the various classes of their opponents, Bauddha, Jaina, Chārvāka, etc. These stories were no doubt written with a purpose. They were intended to deter the monarchs contemporary with the authors from tampering with those heresies which had gained, or were gaining, circulation and popularity, by the example of the punishment which, it was pretended, had overtaken the princes who had dared to deviate from orthodoxy in earlier times. Compare the account given of the rise of heretical doctrines in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (pp. 209 ff. vol. iii. of Dr. Hall's edition of Professor Wilson's translation), which the writer no doubt intended to have something more than a merely historical interest.

The legend of Vena is told at greater length, but with no material variation in substance, in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, iv. sections 13-15. See also Professor Wilson's note in his Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. i. in loco.

In ascribing to Vena an irreligious character and a contempt for the priests, the Purāṇas contradict a verse in the Rig-veda x. 93, 14, in which (unless we suppose a different individual to be there meant) Vena is celebrated along with Duḥśīma, Prithavāna, and Rāma for his conspicuous liberality to the author of the hymn (*pra tad Duḥśīme Prithavāne Vene pra Rāme rocham asure maghavatsu | ye yuktīya pancha śatā asmayu pathā viśrāvi eshām*). The two other passages,

viii. 9, 10, and x. 148, 5, in which he is alluded to as the father of Prithu have been quoted above, p. 268.

I observe that a Vena, called Bhārgava (or a descendant of Bhṛigu), is mentioned in the list of traditional authors of hymns, given at the end of Professor Aufrecht's Rig-veda, vol. ii., as the rishi of R.V. ix. 85, and x. 123.

SECT. III.—*Legend of Purūravas.*

Purūravas has been already alluded to (in pp. 158, 221, 226, 268, and 279 f.) as the son of Iḍa (or Iḍā), and the grandson of Manu Vaivasvata; as the author of the triple division of the sacred fire; and as a royal rishi. We have also seen (p. 172) that in Rig-veda i. 31, 4, he is referred to as *sukṛite*, a “beneficent,” or “pious,” prince. Rig-veda x. 95 is considered to contain a dialogue between him and the Apsaras Urvāśī (see above, p. 226). In verse 7 of that hymn the gods are alluded to as having strengthened Purūravas for a great conflict for the slaughter of the Daśyus ‘*mahe yat trā Purūraro raṇāya avarddhayan daśyu-batyaṇya devāḥ*’; and in the 18th verse he is thus addressed by his patronymic: *Iti trā devāḥ ime āhur Iḍa yathā im etad bhavasi mṛityubandhuḥ | prajā te devān harishā yajāti sarge u tvaṁ api mādayāse* | “Thus say these gods to thee, o son of Iḍa, that thou art indeed nothing more than a kin-man of death: (yet) let thy offspring worship the gods with an oblation, and thou also shalt rejoice in heaven.”

It thus appears that in the Vedic hymns and elsewhere Purūravas is regarded as a pious prince, and Manu does not include him in his list of those who resisted the Brāhmanas. But the M. Bh., Ādiparvan 3143 speaks of him as follows:

Purūravāḥ tato vidvān Ilāyām samapadyata | sū vai tasyābharad mātū pitū chaiti naḥ śrutam | trayodaśa samudrasya dvīpān aśnan Purūravāḥ | amānushair vṛtāḥ sarvair mānushaḥ san mahāyaśaḥ | vipraiḥ sa viṅrahaṁ cakre vṛgyonmattaḥ Purūravāḥ | juhāra cha sa viprāṇāṁ ratnāny utkrośatām api | Sanatkumāras taṁ rājan Brahma-lokāḍ upetya ha | anudarśaṁ tataś cakre pratyagrīhṇād na chāpy asau | tato maharshibhiḥ kṛuddhaiḥ sadyaḥ śapto vyaṇāśyata | lobhāncito bala-madād naśṭa-sañjao narādhipaḥ | sa hi gandharva-loka-sthān Urvaśyā sahito vāt | ānmāya krīgārthe ’gūṇ yathāvad vīhitāns trīdhā |

“Subsequently the wise Purūravas was born of Ilā, who, as we have heard, was both his father and his mother. Ruling over thirteen islands of the ocean, and surrounded by beings who were all superhuman, himself a man of great renown, Purūravas, intoxicated by his prowess, engaged in a conflict with the Brāhmins, and robbed them of their jewels, although they loudly remonstrated. Sanatkumāra came from Brahmā’s heaven, and addressed to him an admonition, which, however, he did not regard. Being then straightway cursed by the incensed rishis, he perished, this covetous monarch, who, through pride of power, had lost his understanding. This glorious being (*vīrāt*), accompanied by Urvaśī, brought down for the performance of sacred rites the fires which existed in the heaven of the Gandharvas, properly distributed into three.” (See Wilson’s *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, 4to. ed. pp. 350 and 394 ff. with note p. 397.)

I cite from the *Harivaṃśa* another passage regarding Purūravas, although no distinct mention is made in it of his contest with the Brāhmins:

Harivaṃśa 8811. *Pitā Budhasyottama-vīrya-karmā Purūravāḥ yasya suto nṛi-devaḥ | prāṇāgnir īdyo ’gniṃ ajījanad yo nashṭaṃ śamī-garbha-bhavam bhavātmā | tathaiṣa paśchāc chakame mahātmā purorvaśīm ap-sarasāṃ varishṭhām | pītaḥ purā yo ’mṛita-sarva-deho muni-pravīrair vara-gātri-ghoraṃ | nṛipaḥ kuśāgraiḥ punar eva yaś cha dhīmān kṛito ’gnir divi pūjyate cha |*

“He (the Moon) was the father of Budha (Mercury), whose son was Purūravas, a god among men, of distinguished heroic deeds, the vital fire, worthy of adoration, the generator, who begot the lost fire which sprang from the heart of the śamī-wood, the great personage, who, placed to the west, loved Urvaśī, the paragon of Apsarases, who was placed to the east. This king with his entire immortal body was formerly swallowed up with the points of Kuśa grass by the munis terrible with their resplendent forms; but was again made wise, and is worshipped in heaven as fire.”

SECT. IV.—*Story of Nahusha.*

The legend of Nahusha,⁶⁵ grandson of Purūravas (see above, p. 226),

⁶⁵ The name of Nahush occurs in the *Rig-veda* as that of the progenitor of a race.

the second prince described by Manu as having come into hostile collision with the Brāhmans is narrated with more or less detail in different parts of the Mahābhārata, as well as in the Purāṇas. The following passage is from the former work, Ādip. 3151 :

*Āyusho Nahushaḥ putro dhīmān satya-parākramah | rājyaṁ śāsāsa
sumahad dharmena prithivīpate | pitṛin devān ṛishīn viprān gandharvo-
raga-rākshasān | Nahushaḥ pālayāmāsa brahma kshattram atho viśaḥ |
sa hatrū dasyu-saṅghātān ṛishīn karam adāpayat | paśuvach chaiva tīn
prishṭhe vāhayāmāsa vīryavān | kārayāmāsa chendratvam abhībhūya
divaukasaḥ | tejasū tapasā chaiva vikramenaujasā tathā |*

“Nahusha the son of Āyus, wise, and of genuine prowess, ruled with justice a mighty empire. He protected the pitṛis, gods, rishis, wise men, gandharvas, serpents (*uraga*), and rākshasas, as well as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas. This energetic prince, after slaying the hosts of the Dasyus, compelled the rishis to pay tribute, and made them carry him like beasts upon their backs. After subduing the celestials he conquered for himself the rank of Indra, through his vigour, austere fervour, valour and fire.”

The story is thus introduced in another part of the same work, the Vanaparvan, section 180. Yudhisṭhira found his brother Bhīmasena seized by a serpent in a forest (see above, p. 133). This serpent, it appears, was no other than king Nahusha, who on being questioned thus relates his own history :

*Nahusho nāma rājā 'ham āsam pūrcas tavānagha | prathitah panchamah
Somād Āyoh putro narādhipa | krotubhis tapasā chaiva svādhyāyena
damena cha | trilokyaiśtaryam avyagram prāpto 'ham vikramena cha |
tad aiśvaryyaṁ samāśādy darpo mām ugamat tadā | sahasraṁ hi dvijā-
tīnām uāha śivikām mama | aiśvaryya-mada-matto 'ham avamanya tato
dvijān | imām Agastyena dasām ānītaḥ prithivīpate | . . . ahaṁ hi
divi devyena vimānena charan purā | abhimānena mattaḥ san kauchid
nānyam achintayam | brahmarshi-deva-gandharva-yaksha-rākshasa-pan-
nagāḥ | karān mama prayachhanti sarve trilokya-vāsinah | chakshushā
yam propaśyāmi prāṇinam prithivīpate | tasya tejo harāmy āsu tad hi
drishṭer balam mama | maharshīnām sahasraṁ hi uāha śivikām mama |*

See above, p. 165, note 7, and pp. 179 f. Nahusha Mānava is the traditional rishi of Rig-veda ix. 101, verses 7-9, and Yayāti Nāhusha of verses 4-6 of the same hymn. See list of rishis in Professor Aufrecht's Rig-veda ii. 164 ff.

*sa mām apanayo rājan bhraṁśayāmāsa vai śriyaḥ | tatra hy Agastyah
pādena vahan sprishṭo mayā muniḥ | Agastyena tato 'smy ukto dhraṁsa
sarpeti vai rushā | tatas tasmād vimānāgryāt prachyutaś chyuta-laksha-
nah | prapatan bubudhe 'tmānaṁ vyātibhūtam adhomukham | ayāchom
tam ahaṁ vipraṁ "śāpasyānto bhaved" iti | "pramādāt sampramūḍha-
sya bhagavan kshantum arhasi" | tataḥ sa mām uvāchedam prapatantaṁ
kṛipānvitaḥ | "Yudhishṭhiro dharma-rājah śāpāt tvām mochayishyati" |
. . . . ity uktrā "jagaraṁ deham muktvā na Nahusho nṛipaḥ | divyaṁ
vapuh samāsthāya gatas tridivam eva cha |*

"I was a king called Nahusha, more ancient than thou, known as the son of Āyus, and fifth in descent from Soma. By my sacrifices, austere fervour, sacred study, self-restraint, and valour, I acquired the undisturbed sovereignty of the three worlds. When I had attained that dominion, pride took possession of my soul: a thousand Brāhmans bore my vehicle. Becoming intoxicated by the conceit of my lordly power, and contemning the Brāhmans, I was reduced to this condition by Agastya." The serpent then promises to let Bhīmasena go, if Yudhishṭhira will answer certain questions (above referred to in p. 133 ff.). Yudhishṭhira afterwards enquires how delusion had happened to take possession of so wise a person as their conversation shewed Nahusha to be. The latter replies that he had been perverted by the pride of power, and proceeds: "Formerly, as I moved through the sky on a celestial car, intoxicated with self-conceit, I regarded no one but myself. All the inhabitants of the three worlds, brāhmanical rishis, gods, gandharvas, yakshas, rākshasas, pannagas, paid me tribute. Such was the power of my gaze that on what creature soever I fixed my eyes, I straightway robbed him of his energy. A thousand of the great sages bore my vehicle. That misconduct it was, o king, which hurled me from my high estate. For I then touched with my foot the muni Agastya who was carrying me. Agastya in his wrath cried out to me 'Fall, thou serpent.' Hurled therefore from that magnificent car, and fallen from my prosperity, as I descended headlong, I felt that I had become a serpent. I entreated the Brāhman (Agastya), 'Let there be a termination of the curse: thou, o reverend rishi, shouldest forgive one who has been deluded through his inconsideration.' He then compassionately replied to me as I fell, 'Yudhishṭhira, the king of righteousness, will free thee from the curse.'" And at the close of the

conversation between Yudhishthira and the serpent, we are told that "King Nahusha, throwing of his huge reptile form, became clothed in a celestial body, and ascended to heaven."

The same story is related in greater detail in the Udyogaparvan, sections 10-16, as follows :

After his slaughter of the demon Vṛittra, Indra became alarmed at the idea of having taken the life of a Brāhman (for Vṛittra was regarded as such), and hid himself in the waters. In consequence of the disappearance of the king of the gods, all affairs, celestial as well as terrestrial, fell into confusion. The rishis and gods then applied to Nahusha to be their king. After at first excusing himself on the plea of want of power, Nahusha at length, in compliance with their solicitations, accepted the high function. Up to the period of his elevation he had led a virtuous life, but he now became addicted to amusement and sensual pleasure; and even aspired to the possession of Indrāṇī, Indra's wife, whom he had happened to see. The queen resorted to the Angiras Vṛihaspati, the preceptor of the gods, who engaged to protect her. Nahusha was greatly incensed on hearing of this interference; but the gods endeavoured to pacify him, and pointed out the immorality of appropriating another person's wife. Nahusha, however, would listen to no remonstrance, and insisted that in his adulterous designs he was no worse than Indra himself: 373. *Ahalyā dharshitā pūrvam ṛishi-patnī yaśustinī | jīvato bharttur Indreṇa sa vaḥ kiṃ na nivāritaḥ |* 374. *Bahūni cha nṛiṣaṃsāni kṛitānīndreṇa vai purā | vai-dharmyāny upadās chaiva sa vaḥ kiṃ na nivāritaḥ |* "373. The renowned Ahalyā, a rishi's wife, was formerly corrupted by Indra in her husband's lifetime (see p. 121 f.): Why was he not prevented by you? 374. And many barbarous acts, and unrighteous deeds, and frauds, were perpetrated of old by Indra: Why was he not prevented by you?" The gods, urged by Nahusha, then went to bring Indrāṇī; but Vṛihaspati would not give her up. At his recommendation, however, she solicited Nahusha for some delay, till she should ascertain what had become of her husband. This request was granted. The gods next applied to Viṣṇu on behalf of Indra; and Viṣṇu promised that if Indra would sacrifice to him, he should be purged from his guilt, and recover his dominion, while Nahusha would be destroyed. Indra sacrificed accordingly; and the result is thus told: 419. *Vibhajya brahma-hatyām tu vṛiksheshu*

cha nadishu cha | parvateshu prithivyām cha strīshu chaiva Yudhishthira | sa vibhajya cha bhūteshu visṛijya cha sureśvaraḥ | vijāro dhuta-pāpmā cha Vāsavo 'bharat ātmavān | "Having divided the guilt of brahmanicide among trees, rivers, mountains, the earth, women, and the elements, Vāsava (Indra), lord of the gods, became freed from suffering and sin, and self-governed." Nahusha was by this means shaken from his place. But (unless this is said by way of prolepsis, or there is some confusion in the narrative) he must have speedily regained his position, as we are told that Indra was again ruined, and became invisible. Indrāṇī now went in search of her husband; and by the help of Upaśruti (the goddess of night and revealer of secrets) discovered him existing in a very subtle form in the stem of a lotus growing in a lake situated in a continent within an ocean north of the Himālaya. She made known to him the wicked intentions of Nahusha, and entreated him to exert his power, rescue her from danger, and resume his dominion. Indra declined any immediate interposition on the plea of Nahusha's superior strength; but suggested to his wife a device by which the usurper might be hurled from his position. She was recommended to say to Nahusha that "if he would visit her on a celestial vehicle borne by rishis, she would with pleasure submit herself to him" (449. *Rishi-yānena divyena mām upaihi jagatpate | evaṁ tara vaśe prītā bhaviṣhyāmīti taṁ vada*). The queen of the gods accordingly went to Nahusha, by whom she was graciously received, and made this proposal: 457. *Ichhāmy aham athāpūrraṁ vāhanaṁ te surādhipa | yad na Viṣṇor na Rudrasya nāsurāṇāṁ na rākṣhāsāṁ | vahantu trāṁ mahā-bhāgāḥ ṛishayaḥ saṅgatāḥ vibho | sarve śivikayā rājann etad hi mama rochate |* "I desire for thee, king of the gods, a vehicle hitherto unknown, such as neither Viṣṇu, nor Rudra, nor the asuras, nor the rakshases employ. Let the eminent rishis, all united, bear thee, lord, in a car: this idea pleases me." Nahusha receives favourably this appeal to his vanity, and in the course of his reply thus gives utterance to his self-congratulation: 463. *Na hy alpa-rīryo bharati yo vāhān kurute munīn | ahaṁ tapasvī balavān bhūta-bhāya-bharat-prabhuḥ | mayi kruddho jagad na syād mayi sarvaṁ pratishṭhitam | . . . tasmāt te vacchanaṁ devi karishyāmi na saṁśayaḥ | saptarshayo mām rakshyanti sarve brahmarshayas tathā | paśya mātmyam asmākaṁ ṛiddhiṁ cha varavarṇini | . . .* 468. *Vimāne yojayitrā sa ṛishīn niyamam āsthītān | abrahmanyō*

balopeto matto mada-balena cha | kâma-vṛittāḥ sa dushtātmā vāhayāmāsa tām ṛishīn | "He is a personage of no mean prowess who makes the munis his bearers. I am a fervid devotee of great might, lord of the past, the future, and the present. If I were angry the world would no longer stand; on me everything depends. . . . Wherefore, o goddess, I shall, without doubt, carry out what you propose. The seven rishis, and all the brāhman-rishis, shall carry me. Behold, beautiful goddess, my majesty and my prosperity." The narrative goes on: "Accordingly this wicked being, irreligious, violent, intoxicated by the force of conceit, and arbitrary in his conduct, attached to his car the rishis, who submitted to his commands, and compelled them to bear him." Indrānī then again resorts to Vṛihaspati, who assures her that vengeance will soon overtake Nahusha for his presumption; and promises that he will himself perform a sacrifice with a view to the destruction of the oppressor, and the discovery of Indra's lurking place. Agni is then sent to discover and bring Indra to Vṛihaspati; and the latter, on Indra's arrival, informs him of all that had occurred during his absence. While Indra, with Kuvera, Yama, Soma, and Varuṇa, was devising means for the destruction of Nahusha, the sage Agastya came up, congratulated Indra on the fall of his rival, and proceeded to relate how it had occurred: 527. *Śramārttāścha vahantas tam Nahusham pāpakārinam | devaṛshayo mahābhāgas tathā brahmarshayo 'malūḥ | papracchur Nahusham devam saṁśayaṁ jayatām vara | ye ime brāhmaṇāḥ proktāḥ mantrāḥ vai prokshane gavām | ete pramāṇam bhavataḥ utāho neti Vāsava | Nahusho neti tām āha tamasā mūḍha-chetanāḥ | ṛishayaḥ ūchuḥ | adharme sampravṛittas tvam dharmam na pratipadyase | pramāṇam etad asmākam pūrvam proktam maharshibhiḥ | Agastyāḥ urācha | Tato rivadamānah sa munibhiḥ saha Vāsava | atha mām aspriśad mūrdhni pādenādharma-yojitāḥ | tenābhūd hata-trjās cha niḥśrīkaś cha mahōpatih | tatas tām sahasā vignam avocham bhaya-pṛḍitam | "yasmāt pūrvaiḥ kṛitam brahma brahmarshibhur anuśṭhitam | aduṣṭāṁ dūshayasi vai yach cha mūrdhny aspriśaḥ padā | yach chāpi tvam ṛishōn mūḍha brahma-kalpān durāsādān | vāhān kṛitvā vāhayasi tena svargād hata-prabhaḥ | dhvaṁsa pāpa paribhrashtāḥ kṣhīṇa-puṇyo mahītalām | daśa-varsha-sahasrāṇi sarpa-rūpa-dharo mahān | richarishyasi pūrneshu punaḥ siargam avāpsyasi"* | *evam bhrashto durātmā sa deva-rājyād arindama | dishtyā vaddhāmahe śakra hato brāhmaṇa-kan-*

takah | tripishṭapam prapadyasva pāhi lokān śachīpate | jetendriyo jitāmitrah stūyamāno maharshibhiḥ | “Wearied with carrying the sinner Nahusha, the eminent divine-rishis, and the spotless brāhman-rishis, asked that divine personage Nahusha [to solve] a difficulty: ‘Dost thou, o Vāsava, most excellent of conquerors, regard as authoritative or not those Brāhmaṇa texts which are recited at the immolation of kine?’ ‘No,’ replied Nahusha, whose understanding was enveloped in darkness. The rishis rejoined: ‘Engaged in unrighteousness, thou attainest not unto righteousness: these texts, which were formerly uttered by great rishis, are regarded by us as authoritative.’ Then (proceeds Agastya) disputing with the munis, Nahusha, impelled by unrighteousness, touched me on the head with his foot. In consequence of this the king’s glory was smitten and his prosperity departed. When he had instantly become agitated and oppressed with fear, I said to him, ‘Since thou, o fool, contemnest that sacred text, always held in honour, which has been composed by former sages, and employed by brāhman-rishis, and hast touched my head with thy foot, and employest the Brahmā-like and irresistible rishis as bearers to carry thee,—therefore, shorn of thy lustre, and all thy merit exhausted, sink down, sinner, degraded from heaven to earth. For ten thousand years thou shalt crawl in the form of a huge serpent. When that period is completed, thou shalt again ascend to heaven.’ So fell that wicked wretch from the sovereignty of the gods. Happily, o Indra, we shall now prosper, for the enemy of the Brāhmans has been smitten. Take possession of the three worlds, and protect their inhabitants, o husband of Śachī (Indrāṇī), subduing thy senses, overcoming thine enemies, and celebrated by the great rishis.”⁸⁶

Indra, as we have seen above, was noted for his dissolute character. The epithet “subduing thy senses,” assigned to him in the last sentence by Agastya, is at variance with this indifferent reputation. Is it to be regarded as a piece of flattery, or as a delicate hint that the god would do well to practise a purer morality in future?

This legend appears, like some others, to have been a favourite with the compilers of the Mahābhārata; for we find it once more related, though with some variety of detail, (which may justify its repetition in

⁸⁶ Further on, in verse 556, Nahusha is called “the depraved, the hater of brahman, the sinful-minded (*durūchūras cha Nahusho brahma-dvīṭ pāpachetanah*).

a condensed form), in the Anuśāsanaparvan, verses 4745-4810. We are there told that Nahusha, in recompense for his good deeds, was exalted to heaven; where he continued to perform all divine and human ceremonies, and to worship the gods as before. At length he became puffed up with pride at the idea that he was Indra, and all his good works in consequence were neutralized. For a great length of time he compelled the rishis to carry him about. At last it came to Agastya's turn to perform the servile office. Bhṛigu then came and said to Agastya, 'Why do we submit to the insults of this wicked king of the gods?' Agastya answered that none of the rishis had ventured to curse Nahusha, because he had obtained the power of subduing to his service everyone upon whom he fixed his eyes; and that he had *amṛita* (nectar) for his beverage. However, Agastya said he was prepared to do anything that Bhṛigu might suggest. Bhṛigu said he had been sent by Brahmā to take vengeance on Nahusha, who was that day about to attach Agastya to his ear, and would spurn him with his foot; and that he himself (Bhṛigu), "incensed at this insult, would by a curse condemn the transgressor and hater of Brāhmans to become a serpent" (*vyutkrānta-dharmam tam aham dharshanamarshito bhṛīṣam | ahir bhavarasreti rushā śapsye pāpam drīja-druham*). All this accordingly happened as follows:

Athāgastyam ṛishi-śreshṭham vāhanāyājūhāva ha | drutaṁ Sarasvatī-kūlāt smayann iva mahābalaḥ | tato Bhṛīgur mahātejāḥ Maitrāvaruṇim abharīt | "nīmīloyasva nayane jātām yāvad viśāmi te" | sthānubhūtasya tasyātha jātām prāiśad achyutaḥ | Bhṛīgus sa sumahātejāḥ pātānāya nṛipaśya cha | tataḥ sa deva-rāt prāptas tam ṛishiṁ vāhanāya vai | tato 'gastyah surapatim rākyam āha viśāmpate | "yojayasveti mām kshipraṁ kaṁ cha deśam caḥāmi te | yatra vakshyasi tatra tvām nayishyāmi surādhipa" | ity ukto Nahushas tena yojayāmāsa tam munim | Bhṛīgus tasya jātāntaḥ-stho babhūva hṛishito bhṛīṣam | na chāpi darśanaṁ tasya chakāra sa Bhṛīgus tadā | vara-dāna-prabhāva-jño Nahushasya mahātmanah | na chukopa tadā 'gastyo yukto 'pi Nahushena vai | tam tu rāja pratodena chodayāmāsa Bhārata | na chukopa sa dharmātmā tataḥ pādena deva-rāt | Agastyasya tadā kruddho vāmenābhyahanach chhirah | tasmin śīrasy abhīhate sa jātāntargato Bhṛīgus | śasāpa balavat kruddho Nahusham pāpachetasam | "yasmāt padā 'hanah krodhāt śīrasīmam mahāmunim | tasmād āśu mahīm gachha sarpo bhūtvā sudurmate" | ity uktaḥ sa tadā tena

*sarpo bhūtā papāta ha | adṛiṣṭenātha Bhṛiguṇā bhūtale Bharatarsha-
bha | Bhṛiguṇ hi yadi so 'drakshyad Nahushaḥ prithivīpate | sa na śakto
'bharishyad vai pātane tasya tejasā |*

• “The mighty Nahusha, as it were smiling, straightway summoned the eminent rishi Agastya from the banks of the Sarasvatī to carry him. The glorious Bhṛigu then said to Maitrāvaruṇi (Agastya), ‘Close thy eyes whilst I enter into the knot of thy hair.’ With the view of overthrowing the king, Bhṛigu then entered into the hair of Agastya who stood motionless as a stock. Nahusha then came to be carried by Agastya, who desired to be attached to the vehicle and agreed to carry the king of the gods whithersoever he pleased. Nahusha in consequence attached him. Bhṛigu, who was lodged in the knot of Agastya’s hair, was greatly delighted, but did not venture to look at Nahusha, as he knew the potency of the boon which had been accorded to him (of subduing to his will everyone on whom he fixed his eyes). Agastya did not lose his temper when attached to the vehicle, and even when urged by a goad the holy man remained unmoved. The king of the gods, incensed, next struck the rishi’s head with his left foot, when Bhṛigu, invisible within the knot of hair, became enraged, and violently cursed the wicked Nahusha: ‘Since, fool, thou hast in thine anger smitten this great muni on the head with thy foot, therefore become a serpent, and fall down swiftly to the earth.’ Being thus addressed, Nahusha became a serpent, and fell to the earth, through the agency of Bhṛigu, who remained invisible. For if he had been seen by Nahusha, the saint would have been unable, in consequence of the power possessed by the oppressor, to hurl him to the ground.”

Bhṛigu, on Nahusha’s solicitation, and the intercession of Agastya, placed a period to the effects of the curse, which, as in the other version of the legend, Yudhishṭhira was to be the instrument of terminating.

From several phrases which I have quoted from the version of this legend given in the Udyogaparvan, as well as the tenor of the whole, it appears to be the intention of the writers to hold up the case of Nahusha as an example of the nemesis awaiting not merely any gross display of presumption, but all resistance to the pretensions of the priesthood, and contempt of their persons or authority.

SECT. V.—*Story of Nimi.*

Nimi (one of Ikshvāku's sons) is another of the princes who are stigmatized by Manu, in the passage above quoted, for their want of deference to the Brāhmans. The Vishṇu P. (Wilson, 4to. ed. p. 388) relates the story as follows: Nimi had requested the Brāhman-rishi Vaśishṭha to officiate at a sacrifice, which was to last a thousand years. Vaśishṭha in reply pleaded a pre-engagement to Indra for five hundred years, but promised to return at the end of that period. The king made no remark, and Vaśishṭha went away, supposing that he had assented to this arrangement. On his return, however, the priest discovered that Nimi had retained Gautama (who was, equally with Vaśishṭha, a Brāhman-rishi) and others to perform the sacrifice; and being incensed at the neglect to give him notice of what was intended, he cursed the king, who was then asleep, to lose his corporeal form. When Nimi awoke and learnt that he had been cursed without any previous warning, he retorted, by uttering a similar curse on Vaśishṭha, and then died. "In consequence of this curse" (proceeds the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 5, 6) "the vigour of Vaśishṭha entered into the vigour of Mitra and Varuṇa. Vaśishṭha, however, received from them another body when their seed had fallen from them at the sight of Urvaśī" (*tach-ckhāpāch cha Mitrā-varuṇayos tejasi Vaśishṭha-tejah pravishṭam | Urvaśī-darśanād udbhūta-vīryya-prapātayoḥ sakāśād Vaśishṭho deham aparaṁ lehe*).⁵⁷ Nimi's body was embalmed. At the close of the sacrifice which he had begun, the gods were willing, on the intercession of the priests, to restore him to life, but he declined the offer; and was placed by the deities, according to his desire, in the eyes of all living creatures. It is in consequence of this that they are always opening and shutting (*nimisha* means "the twinkling of the eye").

The story is similarly related in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 13, 1-13. A portion of the passage is as follows:

3. *Nimiś chalam idaṁ vidvān satṭram ārabhatātmarān | ṛitvighhir aparais tāvad nāgamad yāvatā guruḥ | śishya-vyatikramam vīkshya nīr-arttya gurur āgataḥ | aśapat "patatād deho Nimeḥ paṇḍita-māninaḥ" | Nimiḥ pratidadau śūpaṁ gurure 'dharma-varttine | "tavāpi patatād deho*

⁵⁷ This story will be further illustrated in the next section.

lobhād dharmam ajānataḥ” | *ity utsasarjja svaṁ dehaṁ Nimir adhyātma-kovidāḥ* | *Mitrā-varuṇayor jajñe Urvaśyām prapitāmahaḥ* |

“Nimi, who was self-controlled, knowing the world to be fleeting, commenced the sacrifice with other priests until his own spiritual instructor should come back. The latter, on his return, discovering the transgression of his disciple, cursed him thus: ‘Let the body of Nimi, who fancies himself learned, fall from him.’ Nimi retorted the curse on his preceptor, who was acting unrighteously: ‘Let thy body also fall from thee, since thou, through covetousness, art ignorant of duty.’ Having so spoken, Nimi, who knew the supreme spirit, abandoned his body: and the patriarch (Vaśishṭha) was born of Urvaśī to Mitra and Varuṇa.”⁶⁸

The offence of Nimi, as declared in these passages, is not that of contemning the sacerdotal order in general, or of usurping their functions; but merely of presuming to consult his own convenience by proceeding to celebrate a sacrifice with the assistance of another Brāhman (for Gautama also was a man of priestly descent) when his own spiritual preceptor was otherwise engaged, without giving the latter any notice of his intention. The Bhāgavata, as we have seen, awards blame impartially to both parties, and relates (as does also the Vishṇu Purāṇa) that the king’s curse took effect on the Brāhman, as well as the Brāhman’s on the king.

SECT. VI.—*Vaśishṭha*.

One of the most remarkable and renowned of the struggles between Brāhmans and Kshattriyas which occur in the legendary history of India is that which is said to have taken place between Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra. I propose to furnish full details of this conflict with its fabulous accompaniments from the Rāmāyaṇa, which dwells upon it at considerable length, as well as from the Mahābhārata, where it is repeatedly

⁶⁸ On the last verse the commentator Śrīdhara has the following note. *Urvaśī-darsanāt skannaṁ retas tūbhyām kambhe nishkṛtaṁ* | *tasmāt prapitāmaho Vaśishṭho jajñe* | *tathā cha śrutiḥ “kambhe retas sishkṛtāḥ samānam” itī* | “Seed fell from them at the sight of Urvaśī and was shed into a jar: from it the patriarch, Vaśishṭha, was born. And so says the śruti” (R.V. vii. 33, 13, which will be quoted in the next section).

introduced; but before doing so, I shall quote the passages of the Rig-veda which appear to throw a faint light on the real history of the two rivals. It is clear from what has been said in the Introduction to this volume, pp. 1-6, as well as from the remarks I have made in pp. 139 f., that the Vedic hymns, being far more ancient than the Epic and Puranic compilations, must be more trustworthy guides to a knowledge of the remotest Indian antiquity. While the Epic poems and Puranas no doubt embody numerous ancient traditions, yet these have been freely altered according to the caprice or dogmatic views of later writers, and have received many purely fictitious additions. The Vedic hymns, on the contrary, have been preserved unchanged from a very remote period, and exhibit a faithful reflection of the social, religious, and ecclesiastical condition of the age in which they were composed, and of the feelings which were awakened by contemporary occurrences. As yet there was no conscious perversion or colouring of facts for dogmatic or sectarian purposes; and much of the information which we derive from these naïve compositions is the more trustworthy that it is deduced from hints and allusions, and from the comparison of isolated particulars, and not from direct and connected statements or descriptions. It is here therefore, if anywhere, that we may look for some light on the real relations between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra. After quoting the hymns regarding these two personages, I shall adduce from the Brāhmaṇas, or other later works, any particulars regarding their birth and history which I have discovered. The conflict between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra has been already discussed at length in the third of Dr. Rudolf Roth's "Dissertations on the literature and history of the Veda,"⁶⁹ where the most important parts of the hymns bearing upon the subject are translated. The first hymn which I shall adduce is intended for the glorification of Vasishṭha and his family. The latter part relates the birth of the sage, while the earlier verses refer to his connection with king Sudās. Much of this hymn is very obscure.

R.V. vii. 33, 1. *Sṛityāncho mā dakṣiṇatas-kapardāḥ dhiyaṃjinvāso abhi hi pramanduh | uttishṭhan voce pari barhiṣho nṛin nu me dūrād avitave Vasishṭhāḥ |* 2. *Dūrād Indram anayann ā sutena tiro vaiśantam ati pāntam ugram | Pūśadyumnasya Vāyatasya somāt sutād Indro arṇi-ṇīta Vasishṭhān |* 3. *Eva in nu kaṃ sindhum ebhis tatāra eva in nu kam*

⁶⁹ Zur Litteratur und Geschichte des Weda. Stuttgart. 1846.

Bhedam ebhir jaghāna | eva in nu kaṁ dāsarājne Sudāsam prāvad Indro brahmanā vo Vasishthāḥ | 4. Jushṭi naro brahmanā vaḥ pitrīnām aksham aryaṁ na kila rishātha | yat śakvaṛishu bṛihatā ravena Indre śushmam adadhāta Vasishthāḥ | 5. Uḍ dyām iva it trishnajo nāthitāso adidhayur dāsarājne vṛitāsah | Vasishthasya stuvataḥ Indro āśrod uruṁ Trītsubhyo akrinod u lokam | 6. Dandā iva gojanūśah āsan parichhin-nāḥ Bharatāḥ arbhakāśah | abharach cha pura-etā Vasishthāḥ ād it Trītsūnām viśo aprathanta | 7. Trayah kṛinvanti bhuvaneshu retas tisrah prajāḥ āryāḥ jyotir-agrah | trayo gharmāsah ushasam sachante sarrān it tām anu vidur Vasishthāḥ | 8. Sūryasya iva vakshatho jyotir eshām samudrasya iva mahimā gabhīrah | vātasya iva prajavo na anyena stomo Vasishthāḥ anu etare vaḥ | 9. Te in ninyām hṛidayasya praketaiḥ sahasra-valśam abhi sam charanti | yamena tatam paridhiṁ vayanto apsarasah upa sedur Vasishthāḥ | 10. Vidyuto jyotiḥ pari sam jihānam Mitrā-varuṇā yad apāśyatām tvā | tat te janma uta ekaṁ Vasishthā Agastyo yat tvā viśah ājabhāra | 11. Uta asi Maitrāvaruṇo Vasishthā Urcasīyāḥ brahman manaso 'dhi jātaḥ | drapsam skannam brahmanā dairyaena viśve devāḥ pushkare tvā 'dudanta | 12. Sa praketaḥ ubhayasya pravidvān sahasra-dānah uta vā sadānah | yamena tatam paridhiṁ vayishyann apsarasah pari jajne Vasishthah | 13. Sattre ha jātūr ishitā namobhiḥ kumbhe retah sishichataḥ samānam | tato ha Mānah ud iyāya madhyāt tato jātām rishim āhur Vasishtham |

“1. The white-robed (priests) with hair-knots on the right, stimulating to devotion, have filled me with delight. Rising from the sacrificial grass, I call to the men, ‘Let not the Vasishthas (stand too) far off to succour [or gladden] me.’⁹⁰ 2. By their libation they brought Indra hither from afar across the Vaisanta away from the powerful draught.⁹¹ Indra preferred the Vasishthas to the soma offered by Pāsadyumna,⁹² the son of Vayata. 3. So too with them he crossed the river; so too with them he slew Bheda; so too in the battle of the ten kings⁹³ Indra delivered Sudās through your prayer, o Vasishthas.

⁹⁰ Sāyana thinks that Vasishtha is the speaker, and refers here to his own sons. Professor Roth (under the word *av*) regards Indra as the speaker. May it not be Sudās?

⁹¹ This is the interpretation of this clause suggested by Professor Aufrecht, who thinks Vaisanta is probably the name of a river.

⁹² According to Sāyana, another king who was sacrificing at the same time as Sudās.

⁹³ See verses 6–8 of R.V. vii. 83, to be next quoted.

4. Through gratification caused by the prayer of your fathers, o men, ye do not obstruct the undecaying axle (?), since at (the recitation of the) Śakvārī verses⁹⁴ with a loud voice ye have infused energy into Indra, o Vasishṭhas. 5. Distressed, when surrounded in the fight of the ten kings, they looked up, like thirsty men, to the sky. Indra heard Vasishṭha when he uttered praise, and opened up a wide space for the Tritsus.⁹⁵ 6. Like staves for driving cattle, the contemptible Bharatas were lopped all round. Vasishṭha marched in front, and then the tribes of the Tritsus were deployed. 7. Three deities create a fertilizing fluid in the worlds. Three are the noble creatures whom light precedes. Three fires attend the dawn.⁹⁶ All these the Vasishṭhas know. 8. Their lustre is like the full radiance of the sun; their greatness is like the depth of the ocean; like the swift-ness of the wind, your hymn, o Vasishṭhas, can be followed by no one else. 9. By the intuitions of their heart they seek out the mystery with a thousand branches. Weaving the envelopment stretched out by Yama, the Vasishṭhas sat down by the Apsaras. 10. When Mitra and Varuṇa saw thee quitting the flame of the lightning, that was thy birth; and thou hadst one (other birth), o Vasishṭha, when Agastya brought thee to the people. 11. And thou art also a son of Mitra and Varuṇa, o Vasishṭha, born, o priest, from the soul of Urvaśī. All the gods placed thee—a drop which fell through divine contemplation—in the vessel. 12. He, the intelligent, knowing both (worlds?), with a thousand gifts, or with gifts—he who was to weave the envelopment stretched out by Yama—he, Vasishṭha, was born of the Apsaras. 13. They, two (Mitra and Varuṇa?), born at the sacrifice, and impelled by adorations, dropped into the jar the same amount of seed. From the

⁹⁴ See R.V. x. 71, 11, above, p. 256.

⁹⁵ This is evidently the name of the tribe which the Vasishṭhas favoured, and to which they themselves must have belonged. See vii. 83, 4. The Bharatas in the next verse appear to be the hostile tribe.

⁹⁶ In explanation of this Sāyana quotes a passage from the S'ātyāyana Brāhmaṇa, as follows: "*Trayaḥ kṛpavanti bhūvanashu retah*" ity Agnih prithivīṃ retah kṛpātī Vāyur antarikṣhe Ādityo duri | "*tisraḥ prajāḥ āryyāḥ jyotiḥ-agnīḥ*" itī Vaso o Rudrāḥ Ādityās tūsoṃ jyotiḥ yad asūv Ādityaḥ | "*trayo ghormāḥaḥ ushasāṃ sachante*" ity Agnur Ushasāṃ sachate Vāyur Ushasāṃ sachate Ādityaḥ Ushasāṃ sachate | (1) "Agni produces a fertilizing fluid on the earth, Vāyu in the air, the Sun in the sky. (2) The 'three noble creatures' are the Vasus, Rudras, and Adityas. The Sun is their light. (3) Agni, Vāyu, and the Sun each attend the Dawn."

midst of that arose Māna (Agastya ?); and from that they say that the rishi Vasishṭha sprang.”⁹⁷

There is another hymn (R.V. vii. 18) which relates to the connection between Vasishṭha and Sudās (verses 4, 5, 21–25) and the conflict between the latter and the Trītsus with their enemies (verses 6–18); but as it is long and obscure I shall content myself with quoting a few verses.⁹⁸

R.V. vii. 18, 4. *Dhenuṁ na tvā suyavase dudhukshann upa brahmāni sasṛje Vasishṭhaḥ | tvām id me gopatiṁ vīśvaḥ āha ā naḥ Indrah sumatiṁ gantu achha |* 5. *Arṇāṁsi chit paprathānā Sudāse Indro gādhāni*

⁹⁷ Whatever may be the sense of verses 11 and 13, the Nirukta states plainly enough v. 13; *Tasyāḥ darśanād Mitrā-varuṇayoḥ retasḥ chaskanda | tad-abhūādinyeshū rig bhavati |* “On seeing her (Urvaśī) the seed of Mitra and Varuṇa fell from them. To this the following verse (R.V. vii. 33, 11) refers.” And Sāyaṇa on the same verse quotes a passage from the Brihaddevatā: *Tayor ādityayoḥ sattre dṛishṭvā 'psarasam Urvaśīm | retasḥ chaskanda tat kumbhe nyapatad vāsativare | tenaiva tu muhūrttena vīryavantan tapasvinau | Agastyas' cha Vasishṭhas' cha tatrarshī sambabhūratuḥ | bahudhā putitaṁ retasḥ kalāse cha jale sthale | sthale Vasishṭhas tu muniḥ sambabhūvārshi-sattamaḥ | kumbhe tv Agastyah sambhūto jale matsyo mahādyaṭiḥ | udiḡya tato 'gastyo śamyā-mātro mahātōpāḥ | mānena sammito yasvīt tasmād Mānyaḥ ihochyate | yadvā kumbhād rishir jātaḥ kumbhenāpi hi miyate | kumbhaḥ ity abhūdūnām cha parimāṇasya lakshyate | tato 'psu grhyamēvānsu Vasishṭhaḥ pushkare sthitah | sarīataḥ pushkare taṁ hi vīre devāḥ adhūrojan |* “When these two Adityas (Mitra and Varuṇa) beheld the Apsaras Urvaśī at a sacrifice their seed fell from them into the sacrificial jar called *vāsativara*. At that very moment the two energetic and austere rishis Agastya and Vasishṭha were produced there. The seed fell on many places, into the jar, into water, and on the ground. The muni Vasishṭha, most excellent of rishis, was produced on the ground; while Agastya was born in the jar, a fish of great lustre. The austere Agastya sprang thence of the size of a *śamyā* (i.e. the pin of a yoke; see Wilson, *s.v.*, and Professor Roth, *s.v. māna*). Since he was measured by a certain standard (*māna*) he is called the ‘measurable’ (*mānya*). Or, the rishi, having sprung from a jar (*kumbha*), is also measured by a jar, as the word *kumbha* is also designated as the name of a measure. Then when the waters were taken, Vasishṭha remained in the vessel (*pushkara*), for all the gods held him in it on all sides.” In his Illustrations of the Nirukta, p. 64, Prof. Roth speaks of the verses of the hymn which relate to Vasishṭha's origin as being a more modern addition to an older composition, and as describing the miraculous birth of the sage in the taste and style of the Epic mythology. Professor Max Muller (Oxford Essays for 1856, pp. 61 f.) says that Vasishṭha is a name of the Sun; and that the ancient poet is also “called the son of Mitra and Varuṇa, night and day, an expression which has a meaning only in regard to Vasishṭha, the sun; and as the sun is frequently called the offspring of the dawn, Vasishṭha, the poet, is said to owe his birth to Urvaśī” (whom Müller identifies with Ushas). For M. Langlois's view of the passage, see his French version of the R.V. vol. iii. pp. 79 f. and his note, p. 234.

⁹⁸ See Roth's Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, pp. 87 ff. where it is translated into German.

akrinot supārā | 21. *Pra ye grihād amamadus tvāyā Parāśaraḥ Satayātur Vasishṭhaḥ* | *na te bhojasya sakhyam mṛishanta adha sūribhyaḥ sudinā vi uhhān* | 22. *Dve naptur Devavataḥ śate gor dvā rathā vadhūmantā Sudāsaḥ* | *arhann Agne Paijavanasya dānam hoteva sadma pari emi rebhan* | 23. *Chatvāro mā Paijavanasya dānāḥ smad-dishtayaḥ kṛīṣanino nireke* | *ṛijrāso mā prithivishṭhāḥ Sudāsaḥ tokān tokāya śravase vahanti* | 24. *Yasya śvaro rodasī antar urvī śīrshṇe śīrshṇe vibabhāja vibhaktā* | *sapta id Indraṁ na sravato grīṇanti nī Yudhyāmadhim aśīśād abhīke* | *imaṁ naro Marutaḥ saśchatānu Divodāsaṁ na pitaraṁ Sudāsaḥ* | *aviṣṭana Paijavanasya ketān dūṇāsaṁ kshatram ajaraṁ duvoṇu* |

“4. Seeking to milk thee (Indra), like a cow in a rich meadow, Vasishṭha sent forth his prayers to thee; for every one tells me that thou art a lord of cows; may Indra come to our hymn. 5. However the waters swelled, Indra made them shallow and fordable to Sudās. 21. Parāśara,⁹⁹ Satayātu, and Vasishṭha, devoted to thee, who from indifference have left their home, have not forgotten the friendship of thee the bountiful;—therefore let prosperous days dawn for these sages. 22. Earning two hundred cows and two chariots with mares, the gift of Sudās the son of Pijavana, and grandson of Devavat,¹⁰⁰ I walk round the house, o Agni, uttering praises, like a hotṛi priest. 23. The four brown steeds, bestowed by Sudās the son of Pijavana, vigorous, decked with pearls, standing on the ground, carry me on securely to renown from generation to generation. 24. That donor, whose fame pervades both worlds, has distributed gifts to every person. They praise him as the seven rivers¹⁰¹ praise Indra; he has slain Yudhyāmadhi in battle. 25. Befriend him (Sudās), ye heroic Maruts, as

⁹⁹ *Parāśara* is said in Nir. vi. 30, which refers to this passage, to have been a son of Vasishṭha born in his old age (*Parāśaraḥ parāśṛṇasya Vasishṭhasya sthāvarasya jṇe*); or he was a son of Śakti and grandson of Vasishṭha (Roth s. v.)

¹⁰⁰ *Devavat* is said by Sāyana to be a proper name. He may be the same as Divodāsa in verse 25. Or Divodāsa may be the father, and Pijavana and Devavat among the forefathers of Sudās. In the Viṣṇu Purāṇa Sarvakāma is said to have been the father and Rituparna the grandfather of Sudāsa, Wilson's V.P. Ho. ed. p. 380. At p. 154 f. a Sudāsa is mentioned who was son of Chyavana, grandson of Mitrāyu and great-grandson of Divodāsa.

¹⁰¹ Professor Roth (Jätt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 109) compares R.V. i. 102, 2, *asya śravo mulgah sapta bibhṛati*, “the seven rivers exalt his (Indra's) renown.” These rivers are, as Roth explains, the streams freed by Indra from Vritra's power.

ye did Divodāsa the (fore)father of Sudās; fulfil the desire of the son of Pijavana (by 'granting him) imperishable, undecaying power, worthy of reverence (?)."

Although the Vasishṭhas are not named in the next hymn, it must refer to the same persons and circumstances as are alluded to in the first portion of R.V. vii. 33, quoted above.

R.V. vii. 83, 1. *Yuvāṁ narā paśyamānāsaḥ āpyam prāchā gayantāḥ prithu-parśavo yayuḥ | dāsā cha vṛittrā hatam āryāni cha Sudāsam Indrā-varuṇā 'vasā 'vatam |* 2. *Yatra naraḥ samayante kṛita-dhvaḥ yasmīn ājā bhavati kinchana priyam | yatra bhayante bhuvanā svar-drīśas tatra naḥ Indrā-varuṇā 'dhi rochatam |* 3. *Sam bhūmyāḥ antāḥ dhrasirāḥ adrikshata Indrā-varuṇā divi ghoshāḥ āruhat | asthur janānām upa mām arātayo arvāg avasā havana-śrutā āgatam |* 4. *Indrā-varuṇā vadhanābhīr aprati Bhedaṁ vanvantā pra Sudāsam āvatam | brahmāni eshām śrinutaṁ havīmani satyā Tṛitsūnām abhavat purohitiḥ |* 5. *Indrā-varuṇāv abhi ā tapanti mā aghāni aryo vanushām arātayaḥ | yuvāṁ hi vasvaḥ ubhayāsaḥ ājishu Indram cha vasvo Varuṇam cha sātaye | yatra rājābhīr dāsābhīr nibādhitam pra Sudāsam āvataṁ Tṛitsubhiḥ saha |* 7. *Dāsa rājānaḥ samitāḥ ayajyavaḥ Sudāsam Indrā-varuṇā na yuyudhuḥ | satyā nṛiṇām adma-sadām upastutir devāḥ eshām abhavan deva-hūtishu |* 8. *Dāsarājne pariyattāya viśvataḥ Sudāse Indra-varuṇāv asikshatam | śvityancho yatra namasā kaparddino dhiyā dhīvanto asapanta Tṛitsavaḥ |*

"Looking to you, o heroes, to your friendship, the men with broad axes advanced to fight. Slay our Dāsa and our Arya enemies, and deliver Sudās by your succour, o Indra and Varuṇa. 2. In the battle where men clash with elevated banners, where something which we desire¹⁰² is to be found, where all beings and creatures tremble, there, o Indra and Varuṇa, take our part. 3. The ends of the earth were seen to be darkened, o Indra and Varuṇa, a shout ascended to the sky; the foes of my warriors came close up to me; come hither with your help, ye hearers of our invocations. 4. Indra and Varuṇa, unequalled with your weapons, ye have slain Bheda, and delivered Sudās; ye heard the prayers of these men in their invocation; the priestly agency

¹⁰² Sāyaṇa divides the *kinchana* of the Pada-text into *kincha na*, which gives the sense "where nothing is desired, but everything is difficult."

of the Tritsus¹⁰³ was efficacious. 5. O Indra and Varuṇa, the injurious acts of the enemy, the hostilities of the murderous, afflict me on every side. Ye are lords of the resources of both worlds: protect us therefore (where ye live) in the remotest heavens. 6. Both parties¹⁰⁴ invoke you, both Indra and Varuṇa, in the battles, in order that ye may bestow riches. (They did so in the fight) in which ye delivered Sudās—when harassed by the ten kings—together with the Tritsus. 7. The ten kings, who were no sacrificers, united, did not vanquish Sudās, o Indra and Varuṇa. The praises of the men who officiated at the sacrifice were effectual; the gods were present at their invocations. 8. Ye, o Indra and Varuṇa, granted succour to Sudās, hemmed in on every side in the battle of the ten kings,¹⁰⁵ where the white-robed Tritsus,¹⁰⁶ with hair-knots, reverentially praying, adored you with a hymn.”

From these hymns it appears that Vasishṭha, or a Vasishṭha and his family were the priests of king Sudās (vii. 18, 4 f., 21 ff.; vii. 33, 3 f.); that, in their own opinion, these priests were the objects of Indra's preference (vii. 33, 2), and had by the efficacy of their intercessions been the instruments of the victory gained by Sudās over his enemies in the battle of the ten kings. It seems also to result from some of the verses (vii. 33, 6; vii. 83, 4, 6; and vii. 33, 1, compared with vii. 83, 8) that both the king and the priests belonged to the tribe of the Tritsus.¹⁰⁷ Professor Roth remarks that in none of the hymns which

¹⁰³ Compare verses 7 and 8. Sāyana, however, translates the clause differently. “The act of the Tritsus for whom I sacrificed, and who put me forward as their priest, was effectual—my priestly function on their behalf was successful” (*Tritsūnām etat-sarjūnām mama yājyānām purohitir mama purodhānam satyā satya-phalam abhavat | teshu yad mama purohityām tat saphalam jātam* |).

¹⁰⁴ According to Sāyana the two parties were Sudās and the Tritsus his allies (*ubhaya-udbhūḥ Sudāḥ-sarjūno rājā tat-sahāya-bhūtāḥ Tritsavas cha evam deva-prakārāḥ jarūḥ*). It might have been supposed that one of the parties meant was the hostile kings, but they are said in the next verse to be *ayajyarah*, “persons who did not sacrifice to the gods.”

¹⁰⁵ *Dāśarājne*. This word is explained by Sāyana in his note on vii. 33, 3, *daśa-bhī rājābhīḥ saha yuddhe pravṛtite*, “battle having been joined with ten kings.” In the verse before us he says “the lengthening of the first syllable is a Vedic peculiarity, and that the case-ending is altered, and that the word merely means ‘by the ten kings’” (*daśa-sabdasya chhāndaso dīrghaḥ | vibhakti-yatyaḥ | daśabhi rājābhīḥ . . . pariveshītūya*).

¹⁰⁶ Here Sāyana says the Tritsus are “the priests so called who were Vasishṭha's disciples” (*Tritsavo Vasishṭha-śishyāḥ etat-sarjūḥ ratvijāḥ*).

¹⁰⁷ See Roth, Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 120.

he quotes is any allusion made to the Vasishṭhas being members of any particular caste; but that their connection with Sudās is ascribed to their knowledge of the gods, and their unequalled power of invocation (vii. 33, 7 f.)

In the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, viii. 21, we have another testimony to the connection of Vasishṭha with Sudās, as he is there stated to have "consecrated Sudās son of Pijavana by a great inauguration similar to Indra's;¹⁰⁸ in consequence of which Sudās went round the earth in every direction conquering, and performed an aśvamedha sacrifice" (*etena ha vai aindreṇa mahābhishhekena Vasishṭhaḥ Sudāsam Pijavanam abhishishcheha | tasmād u Sudāḥ Pajavanah samantaṁ sarvataḥ prithivīm jayan parīyāya āsvena cha medhyena īje*).

The following passages refer to Vasishṭha having received a revelation from the god Varuṇa, or to his being the object of that god's special favour:

vii. 87, 4. *Urācha me Varuṇo medhirāya triḥ sapta nāma aglanyā bibhartti | vidrāṇ padasya guhyā na vachad yugūya vipraḥ upāraya śikshan |*

"Varuṇa has declared to me¹⁰⁹ who am intelligent, 'The Cow'¹¹⁰ possesses thrice seven names. The wise god, though he knows them, has not revealed the mysteries of (her) place, which he desires to grant to a future generation."

R.V. vii. 88, 3. *Ā yad rukāva Varuṇas cha nāvam pra yat samudram trayāva madhyam | adhi yad apām snubhiś charāva pra pra inkhe inkha-yūruhai śubhe kam | 4. Vasishṭham ha Varuṇo nāvi ā adhād ṛishim chakāra svapāḥ mahobhiḥ | stotāraṁ vipraḥ sudinatve ahaṇām yād nu dyāvas tatanan yād ushasaḥ | 5. Kva tyāni nau sakhyā babhūvuh sachāvahe yad*

¹⁰⁸ Colebrooke's Misc. Essays, i. 40.

¹⁰⁹ Vasishṭha is not named in this hymn, but he is its traditional author.

¹¹⁰ Sāyaṇa says that either (1) Vāch is here meant under the figure of a cow having the names of 21 metres, the Gāyatrī, etc., attached to her breast, throat, and head, or (2) that Vāch in the form of the Veda holds the names of 21 sacrifices; but that (3) another authority says the earth is meant, which (in the Nighaṇṭu, i. 1) has 21 names, *go, gū, jū, etc.* (*Vāg atra gaur uchhate | sū cha urasi kṇthe śrasi cha baddhāni gāyatrī-ādīni sapta chhandasām nāmāni bibhartti | yadā vedūtmikā vāg chariṁśati-saṁsthānām yajñānām nāmāni bibhartti | dhārayat | aparaḥ āha "gauh prithivī | tasyās cha 'gaur gū jū' iti pathitāny chariṁśati-nāmāni" iti*). I have, in translating the second clause of the verse, followed for the most part a rendering suggested by Professor Aufrecht.

avṛikam purā chit | bṛihantam mānam Varuṇa svadhāvah sahasra-dvāraṁ jagama grīhaṁ te | 6. Yaḥ āpir nityo Varuṇa priyaḥ san tvām āgāṁsi kṛṇavat sakhā te | mā te enasvanto yakshin bhujema yandhi sma viprah stuvate varūtham |

“When Varuṇa and I embark on the boat, when we propel it into the midst of the ocean, when we advance over the surface of the waters, may we rock upon the undulating element till we become brilliant. 4. Varuṇa took Vasishṭha into the boat; by his mighty acts working skilfully he (Varuṇa) has made him a rishi; the wise (god has made) him an utterer of praises in an auspicious time, that his days and dawns may be prolonged.¹¹¹ 5. Where are (now) our friendships, the tranquillity which we enjoyed of old? We have come, o self-sustaining Varuṇa, to thy vast abode, to thy house with a thousand gates. 6. Whatever friend of thine, being a kinsman constant and beloved, may commit offences against thee;—may we not, though sinful, suffer (punishment), o adorable being; do thou, o wise god, grant us protection.”

R.V. vii. 86 is a sort of penitential hymn in which Vasishṭha refers to the anger of Varuṇa against his old friend (verse 4) and entreats forgiveness of his offences. This hymn, which appears to be an earnest and genuine effusion of natural feeling, is translated in Professor Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 540.

The passage which follows is part of a long hymn, consisting chiefly of imprecations directed against Rākshāses and Yātudhānas, and said in the *Bṛihaddevatā* (as quoted by Sāyaṇa in his introductory remarks) to have “been ‘seen’ by the rishi (Vasishṭha) when he was overwhelmed with grief and anger for the loss of his hundred sons who had been slain by the sons of Sudās” (*rishir dadarśa raksho-ghnam puttra-śoka-pariplutāḥ | hate puttra-śate kruddhaḥ Saudāsair dukkhitas tadā*). I shall cite only the verses in which Vasishṭha repels the imputation (by whomsoever it may have been made) that he was a demon (Rakshas or Yātudhāna).

R.V. vii. 104, 12. *Suvijnānaṁ chikitushe janāya sach cha asach cha vachasī paspridhāte | taylor yat satyaṁ yatarad ṛijīyas tad it Somo avati hanti asat | 13. Na vai u Somo vṛijinaṁ hinoti na kshattriyam mithuyā*

¹¹¹ Professor Aufrecht renders the last clause, “As long as days and dawns shall continue.”

dhārayantam | hanti raksho hanti asad vadantam ubhāv Indrasya prasitau śayāte | 14. Yadi vā aham anṛita-devaḥ āsa moghaṁ vā devān api āhe Agne | kim asmabhyaṁ Jātavedo hr̥iṇīṣhe droghavāchas te nirṛithaṁ śachantām | 15. Adya muriya yadi yātudhāno asmi yadi vā āyus tatapa pūrushasya | adha sa vīrair daśabhir vi gūyāḥ yo mā moghaṁ “Yātudhāna” ity āha | 16. Yo mā ayātuṁ “yātudhāna” ity āha yo vā rakshāḥ “śuchir asmi” ity āha | Indras taṁ hantu mahatā vadhena viśvasya jantor adhamas padīṣṭa |

“The intelligent man is well able to discriminate (when) true and false words contend together. Soma favours that one of them which is true and right, and annihilates falsehood. 13. Soma does not prosper the wicked, nor the man who wields power unjustly. He slays the Rakshas; he slays the liar: they both lie (bound) in the fetters of Indra. 14. If I were either a follower of false gods, or if I erroneously conceived of the gods, o Agni:—Why, o Jātavedas, art thou incensed against us? Let injurious speakers fall into thy destruction. 15. May I die this very day, if I be a Yātudhāna, or if I have destroyed any man's life. May he be severed from his ten sons who falsely says to me, ‘o Yātudhāna.’ 16. He who says to me, who am no Yātu, ‘o Yātudhāna,’ or who (being himself) a Rakshas, says, ‘I am pure,’—may Indra smite him with his great weapon; may he sink down the lowest of all creatures.

In elucidation of this passage Sāyaṇa quotes the following lines:

Matrā puttra-śatam pūrvam Vasishṭhasya mahātmanaḥ | Vasishṭhaṁ “rākshaso ’si tvam” Vāsishṭhaṁ rūpam āsthitaḥ | “aham Vasishṭhaḥ” ity evaṁ jighāṁsuḥ rākshaso ’bravīt | atrottarāḥ ṛicho dṛishṭāḥ Vasishṭhēti naḥ śrutam |

“Having slain the hundred sons of the great Vasishṭha, a murderous Rākshasa, assuming the form of that rishi, formerly said to him, ‘Thou art a Rākshasa, and I am Vasishṭha.’ In allusion to this the latter verses were seen by Vasishṭha, as we have heard.”

We may, however, safely dismiss this explanation resting on fabulous grounds.

The verses may, as Professor Max Müller supposes,¹¹² have arisen out

¹¹² “Vasishṭha himself, the very type of the Arian Brahman, when in feud with Viśvāmitra, is called not only an enemy, but a ‘Yātudhāna,’ and other names which in common parlance are only bestowed on barbarian savages and evil spirits. We

of Vasishṭha's contest with Viśvāmitra, and it may have been the latter personage who brought these charges of heresy, and of murderous and demoniacal character against his rival.¹¹³

Allusion is made both in the Taittirīya Sanhitā and in the Kaushī, takī Brāhmaṇa to the slaughter of a son of Vasishṭha by the sons or descendants of Sudās. The former work states, *Ashṭaka vii.* (p. 47 of the India Office MS. No. 1702):

Vasishṭho hataputro 'kāmayata "vīndeya prajāṃ abhi Saudāsān bhareyam" iti | sa etam ekasmānnapanchāśam apaśyat tam āharat tenāyajata | tato vai so 'vīndata prajāṃ abhi Saudāsān abharat |

"Vasishṭha, when his son had been slain, desired, 'May I obtain offspring; may I overcome the Saudāsas.' He beheld this *ekasmānnapanchāśa* (?), he took it, and sacrificed with it. In consequence he obtained offspring, and overcame the Saudāsas."

The passage of the Kaushitakī Brāhmaṇa, 4th adhyāya, as quoted by Professor Weber (*Ind. St. ii.* 299) is very similar :

Vasishṭho 'kāmayata hata-putraḥ "prajāyeya prajāyā paśubhir abhi Saudāsān bhareyam" iti | sa etam yajna-kratum apaśyad Vasishṭha-yajnam tena ishṭvā abhi Saudāsān abharat |

"Vasishṭha, when his son had been slain, desired, 'May I be fruitful in off-spring and cattle, and overcome the Saudāsas.' He beheld this form of offering, the Vasishṭha-sacrifice; and having performed it, he overcame the Saudāsas."

In his introduction to *Rig-veda*, vii. 32, Sāyaṇa has the following notice from the Anukramanikā :

"Saudāsair agnau prakshipyamāṇaḥ Śaktir antyam pragātham ālebhe so 'rdharche ukte 'dahyata | tam putroktam Vasishṭhaḥ samāpayata" iti Sātyāyanakam | "Vasishṭhasya eva hata-putrasya ārsham" iti Tāṇḍakam |

"The Sātyayana Brāhmaṇa says that 'Śakti (son of Vasishṭha)', when being thrown into the fire by the Saudāsas, received (by inspiration) the concluding pragātha of the hymn. He was burnt after he had spoken half a *rich*; and Vasishṭha completed what his son was

have still the very hymn in which Vasishṭha deprecates such charges with powerful indignation." Prof. Müller then quotes verses 14-16 of the hymn before us ("Last Results of the Turanian Researches," in Bunsen's "Outlines of the Philosophy of Univ. History," i 344.

¹¹³ See my article "On the relations of the priests to the other classes of Indian society in the Vedic age," in the *Journal Roy. As. Soc.* for 1866, pp. 295 ff.

uttering. The Tāṇḍaka says that ‘it was Vasishṭha himself who spoke the whole when his son was slain.’”

The words supposed to have been spoken by Sakti, viz. “O Indra, grant to us strength as a father to his sons” (*Indra kratuṁ naḥ ā bhara pitā putrebhyo yathā*) do not seem to be appropriate to the situation in which he is said to have been placed; and nothing in the hymn appears to allude to any circumstances of the kind imagined in the two Brāhmanas.

Manu says of Vasishṭha (viii. 110): *Maharshibhiḥ cha derais cha karyyārthaṁ śapathāḥ kṛitāḥ | Vasishṭhas chāpi śapatham śepe Paiyavane nṛipe |* “Great rishis and gods too have taken oaths for particular objects. Vasishṭha also swore an oath to king Paiyavana.” The occasion on which this was done is stated by the Commentator Kullūka: *Vasishṭho 'py anena puttra-śatam bhakṣitam iti Viśvāmitrena ākrushṭo sra-pariśuddhaye Piyavanāpatye Sudāmnī rājani śapatham chakāra |* “Vasishṭha being angrily accused by Viśvāmitra of having eaten (his) hundred sons, took an oath before king Sudāman (Sudās, no doubt, is meant) the son of Piyavana in order to clear himself.” This seems to refer to the same story which is alluded to in the passage quoted by the Commentator on Rig-veda vii. 104, 12.

In the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 55, 5 f., a hundred sons of Viśvāmitra are said to have been burnt up by the blast of Vasishṭha's mouth when they rushed upon him armed with various weapons (*Viśvāmitra-sutānām tu śatām nānā-vidhāyudham | abhyudhāvat susankruddham Vasishṭham japatām varam | hunkareṇaiva tān sarvān nirdadāha mahān ṛishiḥ*).

Vasishṭha is also mentioned in Rig-veda, i. 112, 9, as having received succour from the Aśvins (—*Vasishṭham yābhīr ajarār ajinvatam*).

Vasishṭha, or the Vasishṭhas, are also referred to by name in the following verses of the seventh Mandala of the Rig-veda: 7, 7; 9, 6; 12, 3; 23, 1, 6; 26, 5; 37, 4; 39, 7; 42, 6; 59, 3; 70, 6; 73, 3; 76, 6, 7; 77, 6; 80, 1; 90, 7; 95, 6; 96, 1, 3; but as no information is derivable from these texts, except that the persons alluded to were the authors or reciters of the hymns, it is needless to quote them.¹¹⁴

¹¹⁴ Another verse of a hymn in which the author is not referred to (vii. 72, 2) is as follows *Ā no drebhūr upa yātum arvāk sajoshashū nāsatyā rathena | yuvor ha naḥ sakhyā pitṛyām samāno bandhūr uta tasya vittaṁ |* “Come near to us, Aśvins, on the same ear with the gods: for we have ancestral friendships with you, a common relation: do ye recognize it.” Although this has probably no mythological

In the Atharva-veda, iv. 29, 3 and 5, Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra are mentioned among other personages, Angiras, Agasti, Jamadagni, Atri, Kaśyapa, Bharadvāja, Gavishṭhira, and Kutsa, as being succoured by Mitra and Varuṇa (. . . *yār Angirasam avatho yār Agastim Mitrā-Varuṇā Jamadagnim Atrim | yau Kaśyapam avatho yau Vasishṭham . . . yau Bharadvājam avatho yau Gavishṭhiraṁ Viśvāmitraṁ Varuṇa Mitra Kutsam*). And in the same Veda, xviii. 3, 15 f., they are invoked as deliverers: *Viśvāmitro 'yaṁ Jamadagnir Atrir avantu naḥ Kaśyapo Vāmaderah | Viśvāmitra Jamadagne Vasishṭha Bharadvāja Gotama Vāmadeva . . .* | “15. May this Viśvāmitra, may Jamadagni, Atri, Kaśyapa, Vāmadeva preserve us. 16. O Viśvāmitra, o Jamadagni, o Vasishṭha, o Bharadvāja, o Gotama, o Vāmadeva.” The second passage at least must be a good deal more recent than the most of the hymns of the Rig-veda.

Sudās is mentioned in other parts of the Rig-veda without any reference either to Vasishṭha or to Viśvāmitra. In some cases his name is coupled with that of other kings or sages, which appears to shew that in some of these passages at least a person, and not a mere epithet, “the liberal man,” is denoted by the word Sudās.

R.V. i. 47, 6. (The traditional rishi is Praskaṇva.) *Sudāse dasrā vasu bibhratū rathe prikshe vahatam Aśvinā | rayiṁ samudrād uta vā divas pari asme dhattam puru-sprīham |*

“O impetuous Aśvins, possessing wealth in your ear, bring sustenance to Sudās. Send to us from the (aerial) ocean, or the sky, the riches which are much coveted.”

Sāyaṇa says the person here meant is “king Sudās, son of Pijavana” (*Sudāse . . . rājne Pijavana-puttrāya*).

i. 63, 7. (The rishi is Nodhas, of the family of Gotama.) *Traṁ ha tyad Indra sapta yudhyan puro rajrīm Purukutsāya dardah | barhir na yat Sudāse vrīthā varḡ anho rājan varivah Pūrave kah |*

“Thou didst then, o thundering Indra, war against, and shatter, the seven cities for Purukutsa, when thou, o king, didst without effort hurl

reference, Sāyaṇa explains it as follows: *Vivasvān Varuṇas cha ubhāv api Kaśyapād Aditer jātau | Vivasvān Aśvinor janako Varuṇo Vasishṭhasya ity evam samāna-bandhutvam* | “Vivasvat and Varuṇa were both sons of Kaśyapa and Aditi. Vivasvat was the father of the Aśvins and Varuṇa of Vasishṭha; such is the affinity.” Sāyaṇa then quotes the Brihaddevatā to prove the descent of the Aśvins from Vivasvat. Compare R.V. x. 17, 1, 2, and Nirukta, xii. 10, 11.

away distress from Sudās like a bunch of grass, and bestow wealth on Pūru.¹¹⁵

i. 112, 19. (The rishi is Kutsa.) *yābhīr Sudāse ūhathuḥ sude-
ryam tābhīr u shu ūtibhīr Áśvinā gatam* |

“Come, o Áśvins, with those succours whereby ye brought glorious power to Sudās” [‘son of Pijavana’—Sāyana].¹¹⁶

The further texts which follow are all from the seventh Mandala, of which the rishis, with scarcely any exception, are said to be Vasishṭha and his descendants :

vii. 19, 3. *Tvaṁ dhṛishṇo dhṛishatā vītaharyam prāvo viśvābhīr ūtibhīḥ
Sudāsam | pra Paurukutsiṁ Trasadasyum āvaḥ kshettrasātā vṛittrahat-
yeshu Pūrun* |

“Thou, o fierce Indra, hast impetuously protected Sudās, who offered oblations, with every kind of succour. Thou hast preserved Trasadasyu the son of Purukutsa, and Pūru in his conquest of land and in his slaughter of enemies.”

vii. 20, 2. *Īantā Vṛittram Indrah śuśuvānaḥ prāvid nu vīro jari-
tāram uti | karttā Sudāse aha vai u lokam dātā vasu muhur u dāsushe bhūt* |

“Indra growing in force slays Vṛitra; the hero protects him who praises him; he makes room for Sudās [or the liberal sacrificer—*kal-yāna-dānāya yajamānāya*. Sāyana]; he gives riches repeatedly to his worshipper.”

vii. 25, 3. *S'atam te śiprinn ūtayaḥ Sudāse sahasraṁ saṁsāḥ uta
rātir astu | jahi vadhar vanusho marttyasya asme dyumnam adhi ratnam
cha dhehi* |

“Let a hundred succours come to Sudās, a thousand desirable (gifts) and prosperity. Destroy the weapon of the murderous. Confer renown and wealth on us.”

(Sāyana takes *sudās* here and in all the following citations to signify a “liberal man.”)

¹¹⁵ Professor Roth renders this passage differently in his *Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda*, p. 132; as does also Prof. Benfey, *Orient und Occident*, i. p. 590.

¹¹⁶ In R.V. i. 185, 9, we find the word *sudās* in the comparative degree *sudāstara*, where it must have the sense of “very liberal”: *bhūri chid aryah sudāstarāya* | “(give the wealth) of my enemy, though it be abundant to (me who am) most liberal.” In v. 53, 2, the term *sudās* appears to be an adjective: *ā etān ratheshu tasthushaḥ laḥ śuśrūva kathā yuyuh | kasmāi sasruh sudāse anu āpayah ilābhīr vṛiḥṭayah saha* | “Who has heard them (the Maruts) mounted on their cars, how they have gone? To what liberal man have they resorted as friends, (in the form of) showers with blessings?”

vii. 32. 10. *Nakīḥ Sudāso ratham pari āsa na rīramat | Indro yasya aritā yasya Maruto gamat sa gomātī vraje |*

“No one can oppose or stop the chariot of Sudās. He whom Indra, whom the Maruts, protect, walks in a pasture filled with cattle.”

vii. 53, 3 : *Uto hi raṁ ratnadheyāni santi purūṇi dyāvā - prithivī Sudāse |*

“And ye, o Heaven and Earth, have many gifts of wealth for Sudās [or the liberal man].”

vii. 60, 8. *Yad gopāvad Aditiḥ śarma bhadram Mitro yachhanti Varuṇaḥ Sudāse | tasminn ā tokaṁ tanayaṁ dadhānāḥ mā karma deva-
helanaṁ turāsaḥ | 9. . . . pari dveshobhir Aryamā vṛṇaktu uruṁ
Sudāse vṛṣhanau u lokam |*

“Since Aditi, Mitra, and Varuṇa afford secure protection to Sūdās (or the liberal man), bestowing on him offspring;—may we not, o mighty deities, commit any offence against the gods. 9. . . . May Aryaman rid us of our enemies. (Grant) ye vigorous gods, a wide space to Sudās.”

There is another passage, vii. 64, 3 (*bravād yathā naḥ ād ariḥ Sudāse*), to which I find it difficult to assign the proper sense.

Vasishṭha is referred to in the following passages of the Brāhmanas :

Kāṭhaka 37, 17.¹¹⁷ *Ṛishayo vai Indram pratyakshaṁ na apaśyaṁs taṁ Vasishṭhaḥ eva pratyasham apaśyat | so 'bibhet "itarebhyo mā ṛishi-
bhyah pravakshyati" iti¹¹⁸ | so 'bravīd "brāhmaṇaṁ te vakshyāmi yathā
tvat-purohitāḥ prajāḥ prajānīshyante | atha mā itarebhyah ṛishibhyo mā
pravochaḥ" iti | tasmai etān stoma-bhūgān abravīt tato Vasishṭha-puro-
hitāḥ prajāḥ prajāyanta |*

“The rishis did not behold Indra face to face; it was only Vasishṭha who so beheld him. He (Indra) was afraid lest Vasishṭha should reveal him to the other rishis; and said to him, ‘I shall declare to thee a Brāhmaṇa in order that men may be born who shall take thee for their purohita. Do not reveal me to the other rishis.’ Accordingly he declared to

¹¹⁷ Quoted by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, iii. 478.

¹¹⁸ The words from *so 'bibhet* down to *iti* are omitted in the Taitt. Sanhitā, iii. 5, 2, 2, where this passage is also found. Weber refers in *Ind. St.* ii. to another part of the Kāṭhaka, ii. 9, where Vasishṭha is alluded to as having “seen” a text beginning with the word *purohita* during a time of drought (“*Purohita*” *iti ṛishity-apete bhūta-grāme Vasishṭho dadarsa*).

him these parts of the hymn. In consequence men were born who took Vasishṭha for their purohita."

Professor Weber refers in the same place to a passage of the Sātapatha Brāhmaṇa relating to the former superiority of Vasishṭha's family in sacred knowledge and priestly functions:

xii. 6, 1, 38. *Vasishṭho ha virājam vidānchakāra tāṃ ha Indro 'bhidadhyau | sa ha uvācha "ṛishe virājam ha vai vettha tāṃ me brūhi" iti | sa ha uvācha "kim mama tataḥ syād" iti | "sarvasya cha te yajnasya prāyaśchittim brūyām rūpaṃ cha tvā darśayeya" iti | sa ha uvācha "yad nu me sarvasya yajnasya prāyaśchittim brūyāḥ kim u sa syād yaṃ tvaṃ rūpaṃ darśayethāḥ" iti | jīva-svarga eva asmāl lokāt preyād" iti | tato ha etām ṛishir Indrāya virājam uvācha "iyaṃ vai virād" iti | tasmād yo'syai bhūyishṭhaṃ labhate sa eva śreshṭho bhavati | atha ha etām Indrah ṛishaye prāyaśchittim uvācha agnihotrād agre ā mahataḥ ukthāt | tāḥ ha sma etāḥ purā vyāhṛitir Vasishṭhāḥ eva viduḥ | tasmād ha sma purā Vāsishṭhāḥ eva brahmā bhavati |*

"Vasishṭha was acquainted with the Virāj (a particular Vedic metre). Indra desired it; and said, 'O rishi, thou knowest the Virāj: declare it to me.' Vasishṭha asked: 'What (advantage) will result to me from doing so?' (Indra replied) 'I shall both explain to thee the forms for rectifying anything amiss (*prāyaśchitti*)¹¹⁹ in the entire sacrifice, and show thee its form.' Vasishṭha further enquired, 'If thou declarest to me the remedial rites for the entire sacrifice, what shall he become to whom thou wilt show the form?' (Indra answered) 'He shall ascend from this world to the heaven of life.' The rishi then declared this Virāj to Indra, saying, 'this is the Virāj.' Wherefore it is he who obtains the most of this (Virāj) that becomes the most eminent. Then Indra explained to the rishi this remedial formula from the *agnihotra* to the great *uktha*. Formerly the Vasishṭhas alone knew these sacred syllables (*vyāhṛiti*). Hence in former times a Vasishṭha only was a (priest of the kind called) *brāhmān*."

Professor Weber quotes also the following from the Kāthaka 32, 2. *Yām abrahmaṇaḥ prāśnāti sā skannā āhutis tasyā vai Vasishṭhāḥ eva prāyaśchittaṃ vidānchakāra |* "The oblation of which a person not a brāhman partakes is vitiated. Vasishṭha alone knew the remedial rite for such a case."

¹¹⁹ See above, p. 294.

In the *Shadviṃśa Brāhmaṇa* of the *Sāma-veda*, quoted by the same writer (*Ibid.* i. 39, and described p. 37, as possessing a distinctly formed Brahmanical character indicating a not very early date), we have the following passage :

i. 5. *Indro ha Viśvāmitrāya uktham uvācha Vasishṭhāya brahma vāg uktham ity era Viśvāmitrāya mano brahma Vasishṭhāya | tad vai etad Vāsishṭham brahma | api ha evaṁvidhaṁ vā Vāsishṭhaṁ vā brāhmānaṁ kurvita |*

“Indra declared the *uktha* (hymn) to Viśvāmitra, and the *brāhmān* (devotion) to Vasishṭha. The *uktha* is expression (*vāk*); that (he made known) to Viśvāmitra; and the *brāhmān* is the soul; that (he made known) to Vasishṭha. Hence this *brāhmān* (devotional power) belongs to the Vasishṭhas. Moreover, let either a person of this description, or a man of the family of Vasishṭha, be appointed a *brāhmān*-priest.”

Here the superiority of Vasishṭha over Viśvāmitra is clearly asserted.¹²⁰

Vasishṭha is mentioned in the *Mahābhārata*, *Santip.* verses 11221 ff., as having communicated divine knowledge to king Janaka, and as referring (see verses 11232, 11347, 11409, 11418, 11461, etc.) to the *Sāṅkhya* and *Yoga* systems. The sage is thus characterized :

11221. *Vasishṭhaṁ śreṣṭham āsīnam rishinām bhāskara-dyutim | paprachha Janako rājā jñānaṁ naiśśreyasam param | param adhyātma-kuśalam adhātma-gati-niśchayam | Mitrarāvaṇim āsīnam abhivādya kṛtānjaliḥ |*

“King Janaka with joined hands saluted Vasishṭha the son of Mitra and Varuṇa, the highest and most excellent of rishis, resplendent as the sun, who was acquainted with the Supreme Spirit, who had ascertained the means of attaining to the Supreme Spirit; and asked him after that highest knowledge which leads to final beatitude.”

The doctrine which the saint imparts to the king he professes to have derived from the eternal *Hiranyagarbha*, i.e. *Brahmā* (*arūpam etad hi mayā sanātānād Hiranyagarbhād gudato narādhipa*).

I have already in former parts of this volume quoted passages from *Manu*, the *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, and the *Mahābhārata*, regarding the creation

¹²⁰ Professor Weber mentions (*Ind. St.* i. 53) that in the commentary of Rāmākrishṇa on the *Pāraskara Gṛhya Sūtras* allusion is made to the “*Chhandogās* who follow the *Sūtras* of the Vasishṭha family” *Vāsishṭha-sūtrānuchārinas chhandogāḥ*).

of Vasishṭha. The first-named work (see above, p. 36) makes him one of ten Maharshis created by Manu Svāyambhuva in the first (or Svāyambhuva) Manvantara. The Vishṇu Purāṇa (p. 65) declares him to have been one of nine mind-born sons or Brahmās created by Brahmā in the Manvantara just mentioned. The same Purāṇa, however, iii. 1, 14, makes him also one of the seven rishis of the existing or Vaivasvata Manvantara, of which the son of Vivasvat, Śrāddhadeva,¹²¹ is the Manu (*Vivasvataḥ suto vipra Śrāddhadevo mahādhyutiḥ | Manuḥ saṁvarttate dhīmān sāmprataṁ saptame 'ntare . . . Vasishṭhaḥ Kāśyapo 'thātrir Jamadagniḥ sa-Gautamaḥ | Viśvāmitra-Bharadvājau sapta saptarshayo 'bhavan*). The Mahābhārata (see p. 122) varies in its accounts, as in one place it does not include Vasishṭha among Brahmā's six mind-born sons, whilst in a second passage it adds him to the number which is there raised to seven,¹²² and in a third text describes him as one of twenty-one Prajāpatīs.

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 10, 10, "Vasishṭha had by his wife Ūrjā" (one of the daughters of Daksha, and an allegorical personage, see V. P. i. 7, 18), seven sons called Rajas, Gātra, Ūrdhva-bāhu, Savana, Anagha, Sutapas, and Sukra, who were all spotless rishis" (*Ūrjāyām cha Vasishṭhasya saptāyānta vai sutāḥ | Rajo-Gātrordhva-bāhuścha Savanaś chānaghas tathā | Sutapāḥ Sukraḥ ity ete sarve saptarshayo 'malāḥ*). This must be understood as referring to the Svāyambhuva Manvantara. The Commentator says these sons were the seven rishis in the third Manvantara (*saptarshayas tṛtīya-manvantare*). In the description of that period the V. P. merely says, without naming them (iii. 1, 9) that "the seven sons of Vasishṭha were the seven rishis" (*Vasishṭha-tanayās tatra sapta saptarshayo 'bhavan*).¹²³ The Bhāgavata Purāṇa (iv. 1, 40 f.) gives the names of Vasishṭha's sons differently; and also specifies Śaktṛi and others as the offspring of a different marriage. (Compare Professor Wilson's notes on these passages of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.)

¹²¹ See above p. 209, note 66, and pp. 188 ff.

¹²² In another verse also (Ādip. 6638, which will be quoted below in a future section) he is said to be a mind-born son of Brahmā.

¹²³ Ūrjā, who in the Vishṇu P. iii. 1, 6, is stated to be one of the rishis of the second or Svārochi-ha Manvantara, is said in the Vāyu P. to be a son of Vasishṭha. See Professor Wilson's note (vol. iii. p. 3) on Vishṇu P. iii. 1, 6. The Vāyu P. also declares that one of the rishis in each of the fourth and fifth Manvantaras was a son of Vasishṭha. (See Prof. Wilson's notes (vol. iii. pp. 8 and 11) on Vishṇu P. iii. 1.)

In Manu, ix. 22 f., it is said that "a wife acquires the qualities of the husband with whom she is duly united, as a river does when blended with the ocean. 23. Akshamālā, though of the lowest origin, became honourable through her union with Vasishṭha, as did also Sārangī through her marriage with Mandapāla" (*Yādṛig-guṇena bhartṛā strī saṁyujyate yathāvidhi | tādṛig-guṇā sā bhavati samudreṇeva nīmanagā | 23. Akshamālā Vasishṭheṇa saṁyuktā 'dhama-yoni-jā | Sārangī Mandāpalena jagāmbharyarhanīyatām*).

Vasishṭha's wife receives the same name (*Vasishṭhas chākshamālayā*) in a verse of the Mahābhārata (Udyogaparvan, v. 3970);¹²⁴ but in two other passages of the same work, which will be adduced further on, she is called Arundhatī.¹²⁵

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa (ii. 10, 8) Vasishṭha is one of the superintendents who in the month of Āshāḍha abide in the Sun's chariot, the others being Varuṇa, Rambhā, Sahajanyā, Huhu, Budha, and Rathachitra (*Vasishṭho Varuṇo Rambhā Sahajanyā Huhur Budhaḥ | Rathachitras tathā Sūkṛe vasanty Āshāḍha-sanjñite*); whilst in the month of Phalguṇa (ibid. v. 16) the rival sage Viśvāmitra exercises the same function along with Vishṇu, Aśvatara, Rambhā, Sūryavarchas, Satyajit, and the Rākshasa Yajñāpeta (*śrūyatāṁ chāpare sūrye phalguṇe nivasanti ye | Viṣṇur Aśvataro Rambhā Sūryavarchas cha Satyajit | Viśvāmitras tathā raksho Yajñāpeto mahātmanah*).

At the commencement of the Vāyu Purāṇa Vasishṭha is characterized as being the most excellent of the rishis (*riṣiṇāṁ cha varishṭhāya Vasishṭhāya mahātmane*).

It is stated in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iii. 3, 9, that the Vedas have been already divided twenty-eight times in the course of the present or Vaivasvata Manvantara; and that this division has always taken place in the Dvāpara age of each system of four yugas. In the first Dvāpara Brahmā Svayambhū himself divided them; in the sixth Mrityu (Death, or Yama); whilst in the eighth Dvāpara it was Vasishṭha who was the Vyāsa or divider (*Aṣṭārcimśatikṛitvo vai vedāḥ vyastāḥ maharshibhiḥ | Vaivasvate 'ntare tasmin dvāpareshu punaḥ punaḥ | . . . 10. Dvāpare prathame vyastāḥ svayam vedāḥ Svayambhuvā | . . . 11. . . . Mrityuḥ shashṭhe smṛitah prabhuḥ | . . . Vasishṭhas chāshṭame smritah*).

¹²⁴ Two lines below Haimavatī is mentioned as the wife of Viśvāmitra (*Haimavatī cha Kauśikah*).

¹²⁵ In the St. Petersburg Lexicon *akshamālā* is taken for an epithet of Arundhatī.

Vasishṭha was, as we have seen above, the family-priest of Nimi, son of Ikshvāku, who was the son of Manu Vaivasvata, and the first prince of the solar race of kings; and in a passage of the Mahābhārata, Ādip. (66+3 f.), which will be quoted in a future section, he is stated to have been the purohita of all the kings of that family. He is accordingly mentioned in Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 3, 18, as the religious teacher of Sagara, the thirty-seventh in descent from Ikshvāku (*tat-kula-guruṃ Vasishṭham śaraṇaṃ jagmuḥ*); and as conducting a sacrifice for Saudāsa or Mitrasaha, a descendant in the fiftieth generation of the same prince (Vishṇu P. iv. 4, 25, *Kālena gachhatā sa Saudāso yajnam ayajat | parinishṭhita-yajne cha āchāryye Vasishṭhe nishkrānte ityādi*).

Vasishṭha is also spoken of in the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, 1 (see above, p. 115), and elsewhere (ii. 111, 1, etc.), as the priest of Rāma, who appears from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, (iv. 4, 40, and the preceding narrative), to have been a descendant of Ikshvāku in the sixty-first generation.¹²⁶

Vasishṭha, according to all these accounts, must have been possessed of a vitality altogether superhuman; for it does not appear that any of the accounts to which I have referred intend under the name of Vasishṭha to denote merely a person belonging to the family so called, but to represent the founder of the family himself as taking part in the transactions of many successive ages.

It is clear that Vasishṭha, although, as we shall see, he is frequently designated in post-vedic writings as a Brāhman, was, according to some other authorities I have quoted, not really such in any proper sense of the word, as in the accounts which are there given of his birth he is declared to have been either a mind-born son of Brahmā, or the son of Mitra, Varuṇa, and the Apsaras Urvaśī, or to have had some other supernatural origin.

SECT. VII.—*Viśvāmitra*.

Viśvāmitra is stated in the Anukramaṇikā, as quoted by Sāyaṇa at the commencement of the third Maṇḍala of the Rig-veda, to be the rishi, or "seer," of that book of the collection: *Asya maṇḍala-drashṭā*

¹²⁶ Rāma's genealogy is also given in the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 70, and ii. 110, 6 ff., where, however, he is said to be only the thirty-third or thirty-fourth from Ikshvāku.

Viśvāmitraḥ ṛishiḥ | “The rishi of this (the first hymn) was Viśvāmitra, the ‘seer’ of the Maṇḍala.” This, however, is to be understood with some exceptions, as other persons, almost exclusively his descendants, are said to be the rishis of some of the hymns.

I shall quote such passages as refer, or are traditionally declared to refer, to Viśvāmitra or his family.

In reference to the thirty-third hymn the Nirukta states as follows :

ii. 24. *Tatra itihāsam āchakshate* | *Viśvāmitraḥ ṛishiḥ Sudāsaḥ Pajavanasya purohito babhūva* . . . | *sa vittaṁ grihitva Vipāt-chhutudryoḥ sambhedam āyayau* | *anuyayur itare* | *sa Viśvāmitro nadīs tushṭāva* “*gādhāḥ bhavata*” *iti* |

“They there relate a story. The rishi Viśvāmitra was the purohita of Sudās, the son of Pijavana. (Here the etymologies of the names Viśvāmitra, Sudās, and Pijavana are given.) Taking his property, he came to the confluence of the Vipās and Sūtudrī (Sutlej); others followed. Viśvāmitra lauded the rivers (praying them to) become fordable.”

Sāyana expands the legend a little as follows :

Purā kila Viśvāmitraḥ Pajavanasya Sudāso rājnaḥ purohito babhūva | *sa cha paurohityena labdha-dhanaḥ sarvam dhanam ādāya Vipāt-chhutudryoḥ sambhedam āyayau* | *anuyayur itare* | *athottitirshur Viśvāmitro* ‘*gādhā-jale te nadyau dṛishṭvā uttaraṇārtham ādyābhis tisṛibhis tushṭāva* |

“Formerly Viśvāmitra was the purohita of king Sudās, the son of Pijavana. He, having obtained wealth by means of his office as purohita, took the whole of it, and came to the confluence of the Vipās and the Sūtudrī. Others followed. Being then desirous to cross, but perceiving that the waters of the rivers were not fordable, Viśvāmitra, with the view of getting across lauded them with the first three verses of the hymn.”

The hymn makes no allusion whatever to Sudās, but mentions the son of Kuśika (Viśvāmitra) and the Bharatas. It is not devoid of poetical beauty, and is as follows :

R.V. iii. 33, 1 (= Nirukta, ix. 39). *Prā parvatānām usatī upasthād aśve iva iśhite hāsamāne* | *gāveṇa śubhre mātara rihāne Vipāt Chhutudrī payasā javete* | 2. *Indreshite prasavam bhikshamāne achha samudraṁ rathyā iva yāthah* | *samārāne ūrmibhiḥ pinamāne anyā vām anyām api eti śubhre* | 3. *Achha sindhum mātṛitamām ayāsam Vipāsam ūrcīm*

*subhagām aganma | ratsam iva mātārā saṁrihāṇe samānām yonim anu
sancharantī | 4. Enā vayam payasā pinvāmānā anu yoniṁ dera-kṛitām
charantiḥ | na varttave prasavaḥ sarga-taktāḥ kiṁyur'vipro nadyo johanvī |
5 (= Nirukta, ii. 25). Ramadhvam me rachase somyāya ritārarir upa
muhūrttam evaiḥ | pra sindhum achha bṛihatī manīshā avasyur ahve
Kusikasya sūnuḥ | 6 (= Nir. ii. 26). Indro asmān aradat vajra-bāhur
apāhan Vṛittram paridhiṁ nadīnām | devo 'nayat Savitā supānis tasya
vayam prasave yūmah ūrvīḥ | 7. Pravāchyaṁ śaśvadhā vīryam tad
Indrasya karma yad Ahiṁ viriśchat | vi vajreṇa parishado jaghāna
āyann āpo ayanam ichhamānāḥ | 8. Etad vacho jaritar mā 'pi mṛiṣṭāḥ
ā yat te ghoshān uttarā yugāni | uktheshu kāro prati no jushasva mā no
ni kaḥ purushatra namas te | 9. O su svasārah kārave śrinota yayau yo
dūrād anasū rathena | ni su namadhvam bhavata supārā adhoakshaḥ
sindhavaḥ srotiābhiḥ | 10 (= Nir. ii. 27). Ā te kāro śṛiṇavāma vachāṁsi
yayātha dūrād anasū rathena | ni te naṁsai pīpyānā iva yoshā maryāya
iva kanyā śaśvachai te | 11. Yad anga trā Bharatāḥ santareyur gavyan
grāmāḥ ishitaḥ Indra-jūtaḥ | arshād aha prasavaḥ sarga-taktāḥ ā vo
vṛiṇe sumatiṁ yajniyānām | 12. Atārishur Bharatāḥ gavyavaḥ sam
abhakta viprah sumatiṁ nadīnām | pra pinvadhvam ishayanṭiḥ surādhāḥ
ā vakshanāḥ prinadhvam yāta śibham |*

“1. (Viśvāmitra speaks): Hastening eagerly from the heart of the mountains, contending like two mares let loose, like two bright mother-cows licking¹²⁷ (each her calf), the Vipās and Sūtudrī rush onward with their waters. 2. Impelled by Indra, seeking a rapid course, ye move towards the ocean, as if mounted on a car. Running together, as ye do, swelling with your waves, the one of you joins the other, ye bright streams. 3. I have come to the most motherly stream; we have arrived at the broad and beautiful Vipās; proceeding, both of them, like two mother(-cows) licking each her calf, to a common receptacle. 4. (The rivers reply): Here swelling with our waters we move forward to the receptacle fashioned by the gods (the ocean); our headlong course cannot be arrested. What does the sage desire that he invokes the rivers? 5. (Viśvāmitra says): Stay your course for a moment, ye pure streams, (yielding) to my pleasant words.¹²⁸ With a powerful prayer, I, the son

¹²⁷ Prof. Roth (Illustr. of Nirukta, p. 133) refers to vii. 2. 5 (*pūrvī śisūṁ na mātārā rihūṇe*) as a parallel passage.

¹²⁸ Prof. Roth (Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 103) renders “Listen joyfully for a

of Kuśika,¹²⁹ desiring succour, invoke the river. 6. (The rivers answer): Indra, the wielder of the thunderbolt, has hollowed out our channels; he has smitten Ahi who hemmed in the streams. Savitṛi the skilful-handed has led us hither; by his impulse we flow on in our breadth. 7. For ever to be celebrated is the heroic deed of Indra, that he has split Vṛittra in sunder. He smote the obstructions with his thunderbolt; and the waters desiring an outlet went on their way. 8. Do not, o utterer of praises, forget this word, which future ages will re-echo to thee. In hymns, o bard, show us thy devotion; do not humble us before men; reverence be paid to thee. 9. (Viśvāmitra says): Listen, o sisters, to the bard who has come to you from afar with waggon and chariot. Sink down; become fordable; reach not up to our chariot-axles with your streams. 10. (The rivers answer): We shall listen to thy words, o bard; thou hast come from far with waggon and chariot. I will bow down to thee like a woman with full breast¹³⁰ (suckling her child); as a maid to a man will I throw myself open to thee. 11. (Viśvāmitra says): When the Bharatas,¹³¹ that war-loving tribe, sent forward, impelled by Indra, have crossed thee, then thy headlong current shall hold on its course. I seek the favour of you the adorable. 12. The war-loving Bharatas have crossed; the S.ṅge has obtained the favour of the rivers. Swell on impetuous, and fertilizing; fill your channels; roll rapidly."

The next quotation is from the fifty-third hymn of the same third Maṇḍala, verses 6 ff.:

6. *Apāḥ somam astam Indra pra yāhi kalyāṇīr jāyā suraṇām grihe*

moment to my amiable speech, ye streams rich in water; stay your progress;" and adds in a note: "I do not connect the particle *upa* with *ramadhvam*, as the Nirukta and Sāyaṇa do; the fact that *upa* stands in another Pāda (quarter of the verse) requires a different explanation. The most of those interpretations of the Commentator which destroy the sense have their ultimate ground in the circumstance that he combines the words of different divisions of the verse; and any one may easily convince himself that every Pāda has commonly a separate sense, and is far more independent of the others than is the case in the śloka of later times." In his Lexicon Roth renders *ṛitūvarī* in this passage by "regular," "equally flowing."

¹²⁹ "Kusika was a king" (*Kuśiko rājā babhūva*. Nir. ii. 25). Sāyaṇa calls him a royal rishi.

¹³⁰ This is the sense assigned by Prof. Roth, *s.v.* *pī* to *pīpyāmā*. Sāyaṇa, following Yāska, ii. 27, gives the sense "suckling her child." Prof. Aufrecht considers that the word means "pregnant." In the next clause *śaśvachon* is rendered in the manner suggested by Prof. A., who compares R.V. x. 18, 11, 12.

¹³¹ "The men of the family of Bharata, my people" (*Bharata-kula-jāḥ madiyāḥ sarve*. Sāyaṇa).

te | yatra rathasya bṛhato nidhānaṁ vimochanaṁ vājino dakṣiṇāvrat |
 7. Ime bhojāḥ angiraso virūpāḥ divas putrāso asurasya vīrāḥ | Viśvā-
 mītrāya dadato mughāni sahasra-sāve pratirante āyuh | 8. Rūpaṁ rūpaṁ
 maghavā bobhavīti māyāḥ kṛiṇcānas tanvam pari svām | trir gad divaḥ
 pari muhūrttam āgāt svair mantrair anṛitupāḥ ṛitāvā | 9. Mahān ṛishir
 deva-jāḥ deva-jāto astabhnāt sindhum anṛavaṁ nṛichakshāḥ | Viśvāmitro
 yad avāhat Sudāsam apriyāyata Kuśikebhīr Indrah | 10. Hamsāḥ iva
 kṛiṇutha ślokaṁ adribhīr madanto gīrbhīr adhvare sute sachā | devebhīr
 vīrāḥ ṛishayo nṛichakshaso vi pibadhvaṁ Kuśikāḥ soṃyam madhu |
 11. Upa preta Kuśikāś chetayadhvam āśvaṁ rāye pra munchata Su-
 dāsah | rājā vṛittraṁ junghanat prāg apāg udag atha yajāte rare ā
 prithiriyāḥ | 12. Yah ime rodasī ubhe aham Indram atushtavam | Viśvā-
 mitrasya rakshati brahma idam Bhārataṁ janam | 13. Viśvāmitrāḥ
 arāsata brahma Indrāya vajrine | karad in naḥ surādhasah | 14 (= Nir.
 vi. 32). Kīm te kurvanti Kīkaṭeshu gāvo nāsīraṁ duhre na tapanti ghar-
 mam | ā no bhara Pramagandasya vedo Naichāsakham maghavan randhaya
 naḥ | 15. Sasarpārīr amatim bādhamānā bṛihad mimāya Jamadagni-
 dattā | ā Sūryasya duhitā tatāna śraro dceshu amṛitam ajurṃyam | 16.
 Sasarpārīr abharat tūyam ebhyo adhi śrarah panchajanyāsu kṛishṭishu |
 sā pukshyā naryam āyur dadhānā yām me pulasti-jamadagnayo daduh |
 21. Indra ūtibhīr bahulābhīr no adya yāchehhreshṭhābhīr ma-
 ghavan śūra jinva | yo no dceshṭi adharah sas padīshṭa yam u drishmas
 tum u prāno jakātu | 22. paraśum chid vi tapati śimbalaṁ chid vi vīś-
 chati | ukhā chid Indra yeshanti prayastā phenam asyati. 23. Na sāya-
 kasya chikite janāso lodhaṁ nayanti paśu manyamānāḥ | nārājinoṁ
 vājinoḥ hāsayanti na gardabham puro āśvān nayanti | 24. Ime Indra
 Bharatasya putrāḥ apapitraṁ chikitur na prapitraṁ | hinvanti āśvam
 arāvaṁ na nityaṁ jyārājāṃ pari nayanti ājau |

“ 6. Thou hast drunk soma ; depart, Indra, to thy abode : thou hast a handsome wife and pleasure in thy house. In whatever place thy great chariot rests, it is proper that the steed should be unyoked. 7. These bountiful Virūpas of the race of Angiras,¹³² heroic sons of the divine

¹³² Sāyana says that the liberal men are the K-hattriya, sons of Sudā, that virūpāḥ means their different priests of the race of Angiras, Medhātithi, and others, and that the sons of the sky are the Maruts, the sons of Rudra (*Ime yāgāṁ kurvānūḥ bhojāḥ Saudāsāḥ kshattriyaḥ tushāṁ yūjakāḥ virūpāḥ nānārūpāḥ Medhātithi-prabhṛitayo 'ngiraso cha divo 'surasya dcebhyo 'pi balavato Rudrasya putrāso . . . Marutah*). The Virūpas are connected with Angiras in R.V. x. 62, 5; and a Virūpa is mentioned in i. 45, 3; and viii. 64, 6.

Dyaus (sky), bestowing wealth upon Viśvāmitra at the sacrifice with a thousand libations, prolong their lives. 8. The opulent god (Indra) constantly assumes various forms, exhibiting with his body illusive appearances; since he came from the sky thrice in a moment, drinking (soma) according to his own will, at other than the stated seasons, and yet observing the ceremonial. 9.¹³³ The great rishi, god-born, god-impelled, leader of men, stayed the watery current; when Viśvāmitra conducted Sudās, Indra was propitiated through the Kuśikas. 10. Like swans, ye make a sound with the (soma-crushing) stones, exulting with your hymns when the libation is poured forth; ye Kuśikas, sage rishis, leaders of men, drink the honied soma with the gods.¹³⁴ 11. Approach, ye Kuśikas, be alert; let loose the horse of Sudās to (conquer) riches; let the king smite strongly his enemy in the east, the west, and the north; and then let him sacrifice on the most excellent (spot) of the earth.¹³⁵ 12. I Viśvāmitra have caused both heaven and earth to sing the praises of Indra;¹³⁶ and my prayer protects the race of Bharata. 13. The Viśvāmitras have offered up prayer to Indra the thunderer. May he render us prosperous! 14. What are thy cows doing among the Kikāṭas,¹³⁷ who neither draw from them the milk (which is to be mixed with soma), nor heat the sacrificial kettle. Bring to us the wealth of Pramaganda; subdue to us to the son of Nīchāśākha. 15. Moving swiftly, removing poverty, brought by the Jamadagnis, she has mightily uttered her voice: this daughter of the sun has conveyed (our) renown, eternal and undecaying, (even) to the gods. 16. Moving swiftly she has speedily brought down (our) renown from them to the five races of men; this winged¹³⁸ goddess whom the aged Jamadagnis brought to us, has conferred on us new life." Omitting verses

¹³³ Verses 9–13 are translated by Prof. Roth, *Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda*, p. 106 f.

¹³⁴ Comp. M. Bh. Adip. v. 6695. *Apibach cha tataḥ somam Indreṇa saha Kauśikāḥ* | "And then the Kauśika drank soma with Indra."

¹³⁵ Compare R.V. iii. 23, 4, which will be quoted below.

¹³⁶ Compare R.V. iv. 17, 1.

¹³⁷ *Kikāṭāḥ nāma deśo 'nāryya-nivāsaḥ* | "Kikāṭa is a country inhabited by people who are not Āryas." See the second vol. of this work, p. 362, and *Journ. Royal As. Soc.* for 1866, p. 340.

¹³⁸ *Pakṣhyā*. This word is rendered by Sāyaṇa "the daughter of the sun who causes the light and dark periods of the moon, etc." (*Pakṣhasya pakṣhūdi-nirvāha-kaaya Sūryasya duhitū*). Prof. Roth *s.v.* thinks the word may mean "she who changes according to the (light and dark) fortnights."

17-20 we have the following: "21. Prosper us to-day, o opulent Indra, by numerous and most excellent succours. May he who hates us fall down low; and may breath abandon him whom we hate." This is succeeded by three obscure verses, of which a translation will be attempted further on.

Sāyana prefaces verses 15 and 16 by a quotation from Shadguru-śishya's Commentary on the Anukramanikā, which is given with an addition in Weber's Indische Studien i. 119 f. as follows: *Sasarparī-dv-riche prāhur itihāsam purāvidah | Saudāsa-nṛipater yajne Vasishthāt-maja-Saktinā | Viśvāmitrasyaābhībhūtam balaṁ vāk cha samantataḥ | Vāsishṭhenābhībhūtaḥ sa hy avāsīdach cha Gādhi-jah | tasmai Brāhmīm tu Saurīm vā nāmnā vāchaṁ Sasarparīm | Sūrya-veśmana āhṛitya dadur vai Jamadagnayaḥ | Kuśikānām tataḥ sā vān manāk chintām athānudat | upapreteti Kuśikān Viśvāmitro 'nvachodayat | labdhvā vā-chaṁ cha hrishṭātmā Jamadagnīn apūjayat | "Sasarparī" iti dvābhyāṁ ṛigbhyāṁ Vācham stuvam svayam |* "Regarding the two verses beginning "*Sasarparīḥ*" those acquainted with antiquity tell a story. At a sacrifice of king Saudāsa¹³⁹ the power and speech of Viśvāmitra were completely vanquished by Sakti, son of Vasishṭha; and the son of Gādhi (Viśvāmitra) being so overcome, became dejected. The Jamadagnis drew from the abode of the Sun a Voice called "Sasarparī," the daughter of Brahmā, or of the Sun, and gave her to him. Then that voice somewhat dispelled the disquiet of the Jamadagnis [or, according to the reading of this line given by Sāyana (*Kuśikānām matiḥ sā vāg amatiṁ tām apānudat*) "that Voice, being intelligence, dispelled the unintelligence of the Kuśikas."]. Viśvāmitra then incited the Kuśikas with the words *upapreta* 'approach' (see verse 11). And being gladdened by receiving the Voice, he paid homage to the Jamadagnis; praising them with the two verses beginning '*Sasarparīḥ*.'

In regard to the verses 21-24 Sāyana has the following remarks: "*Indra ūtibhir ity ādyāś chatasro Vasishṭha-dveshinyah | purā khalu Viśvāmitra-śishyah Sudāḥ nāma rājarshir āsit | sa cha kenachit kāraṇena Vasishṭha-dveshyo 'bhūt | Viśvāmitras tu śishyasya rakshārtham ābhir ṛigbhir Vasishṭham āsapat | imāḥ abhiśāpa-rūpāḥ | tāḥ ṛicho Vasishṭhāḥ na śṛiṇvanti |* "The four verses beginning 'o Indra, with succours' express hatred to Vasishṭha. There was formerly a royal rishi called

¹³⁹ The Brihaddevatā, which has some lines nearly to the same effect as these I have quoted (see Ind. Stud. i. 119), gives Sudās instead of Saudāsa.

Sudās, a disciple of Viśvāmitra; who for some reason had incurred the ill-will of Vasishṭha. For his disciple's protection Viśvāmitra cursed Vasishṭha in these verses. They thus consist of curses, and the Vasishṭhas do not listen to them."

In reference to the same passage the Bṛihaddevatā iv. 23 f., as quoted in Indische Studien, i. 120, has the following lines: *Parās chatasro yās tatra Vasishṭha-dvешinīr viduḥ | Viśvāmitrena tāḥ proktāḥ abhiśāpāḥ iti smṛitāḥ | dvешa-dvешās tu tāḥ proktāḥ vidyāch chaivābhichārikāḥ | Vasishṭhās tu na śṛiṇvanti tad āchārryaka-sammatam | kīrttanāch chharaṇād vā 'pi mahān doṣaḥ prajāyate | śatadhā bhidyate mūrdhā kīrtti-tena śruteṇa vā | teshām bālāḥ pramīyante tasmāt tās tu na kīrttayet |* "The other four verses of that hymn, which are regarded as expressing hatred to Vasishṭha, were uttered by Viśvāmitra, and are traditionally reported to contain imprecations. They are said to express hatred in return for (?) hatred, and should also be considered as incantations. The descendants of Vasishṭha do not listen to them, as this is the will of their preceptor. Great guilt is incurred by repeating or hearing them. The heads of those who do so are split into a hundred fragments; and their children die. Wherefore let no one recite them."

Durga, the commentator on the Nirukta,¹⁴⁰ in accordance with this injunction and warning, says in reference to verse 23: *Yasmin nigame esha śabdaḥ (lodhaḥ) sā Vasishṭha-dvешinī rik | ahaṁ cha Kāpiṣṭhālo Vāsiṣṭhaḥ | atas tām na nirbravīmi |* "The text in which this word (*lodha*) occurs is a verse expressing hatred of Vasishṭha. But I am a Kāpiṣṭhāla of the family of Vasishṭha; and therefore do not interpret it."

The following text also may have reference to the personal history of Viśvāmitra: R.V. iii. 43, 4. *Ā cha tvām etā vrishanā rahāto harī sakhyā sudhurā sraṅgā | dhānārad Indrah savanām jushānaḥ sakhā sakhyuḥ śṛiṇavad vandanāni |* 5. *Kurid mā gopaṁ karase janasya kurid rājānam maghavann riḡishin | kurid mā ṛishim papivāṁsaṁ sutasya kurid me vasro amṛitasya śikṣhāḥ |* "4. May these two vigorous brown steeds, friendly, well-yoked, stout-limbed, convey thee hither. May Indra gratified by our libation mingled with grain, hear (like) a friend, the praises of a friend. 5. Wilt thou make me a ruler of the people? wilt

¹⁴⁰ As quoted both by Prof. Roth, Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 108, note, and by Prof. Müller, Pref. to Rīg-veda, vol. ii. p. lvi.

thou make me a king, o impetuous lord of riches? wilt thou make me a rishi a drinker of soma? wilt thou endow me with imperishable wealth? ”

The next passage refers to Devaśravas and Devavāta, of the race of Bharata, who are called in the *Anukramanikā*, quoted by Sāyana, “sons of Bharata” (*Bharatasya putrau*); but one of whom at least is elsewhere, as we shall see, said to be a son of Viśvāmitra: R.V. iii. 23, 2. *Amanthishṭām Bhāratā revad Agniṁ Devaśravāḥ Devavātāḥ sudaksham | Agne vi paśya bṛihatā 'bhi rāyā ishām no netā bhavatād anudyūn |* 3. *Dāśa kshipaḥ pūrvyaṁ śim ajījman sujātam mātṛishu priyam | Agniṁ stuhi Daivavātāṁ Devaśravo yo janānām asad raśi |* 4. *Ni tvā dadhe vare ā prithivyāḥ ilāyās pade sudinatre ahnām | Dṛishadvatyām mānushē Āpayāyām Sarasvatyām revad Agne didhi |* “2. The two Bhāratas Devaśravas and Devavāta have brilliantly created by friction the powerful Agni. Look upon us, o Agni, manifesting thyself with much wealth; be a bringer of nourishment to us every day. 3. The ten fingers (of Devavāta) have generated the ancient god, happily born and dear to his mothers. Praise, o Devaśravas, Agni, the offspring of Devavāta, who has become the lord of men. 4. I placed (or he placed) thee on the most excellent spot of earth on the place of worship,¹¹ at an auspicious time. Shine, o Agni, brilliantly on the (banks of the) Dṛishadvatī, on (a site) auspicious for men, on (the banks of) the Āpayā, of the Sarasvatī.”

Viśvāmitra is mentioned along with Jamadagni in the fourth verse of the 167th hymn of the tenth Maṇḍala, which is ascribed to these two sages as its authors: *Prasūto bhuksham akaram charāc api stomaṁ chemam prathamah sūrir un mṛije | sute sātēna yadi āgumaṁ rām prati Viśvāmitra-Jamadagnī dame |* “Impelled, I have quaffed this draught of soma when the oblation of boiled rice was presented; and I, the first bard, prepare this hymn, whilst I have come to you, o Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni in the house, with that which has been offered as a libation.”

The family of the Viśvāmित्रas has, as we have seen, been already mentioned in R.V. iii. 53, 13. They are also named in the following passages:

iii. 1, 21. *Janman janman nihito Jātavedāḥ Viśvāmित्रebhir idhyate ajasrah |*

¹¹ Compare R.V. iii. 29, 3, 4.

“The undecaying Jātavedas (Agni) placed (on the hearth) is in every generation kindled by the Viśvāmitras.”

iii. 18, 4. *Uch chhochishā sahasas putraḥ stuto bṛihad vayaḥ śaśamā-
neshu dhehi | revad Agne Viśvāmitreshu śaṁ yor marmṛijma te tanvam
bhūri kṛitraḥ |*

“Son of strength, when lauded, do thou with thy upward flame inspire vigorous life into thy worshippers; (grant) o Agni, brilliant good fortune and prosperity to the Viśvāmitras; many a time have we given lustre to thy body.”

x. 89, 17. *Eva te vajam Indra bhunjatinām vidyāma sumatinām navā-
nām | vidyāma vāstor arasā grīṇanto Viśvāmitrāḥ uta te Indra nūnam |*

“Thus may we obtain from thee new favours to delight us: and may we, Viśvāmitras, who praise thee, now obtain riches through thy help, o Indra.”

This hymn is ascribed in the Anukramaṇī to Reṇu, the son or descendant of Viśvāmitra; and the 18th verse is identical with the 22nd of the 30th hymn of the third Maṇḍala, which is said to be Viśvāmitra’s production.

In a verse already quoted (R.V. iii. 33, 11) Viśvāmitra is spoken of as the son of Kuśika; at least the Nirukta regards that passage as referring to him; and the Kuśikas, who no doubt belonged to the same family as Viśvāmitra, are mentioned in another hymn which I have cited (iii. 53, 9, 10). They are also alluded to in the following texts:

R.V. iii. 26, 1. *Vaiśvānaram manasā ’gnīm nichāyja havishmanto anu-
shatyaṁ svarvidam | sudānuṁ devaṁ rathiraṁ vasūyavo gīrbhiḥ raṇvaṁ
Kuśikāso havāmahe | 3. Aśvo na krandan janibhiḥ sam idhyate
Vaiśvānaraḥ Kuśikebhir yuge yuge | sa no Agniḥ suvīryaṁ svaśvyaṁ da-
dhātu ratnam amṛiteshu jāgrivih |*

“We, the Kuśikas, presenting oblations, and desiring riches, revering in our souls, as is meet,¹⁴² the divine Agni Vaiśvānara, the heavenly, the bountiful, the charioteer, the pleasant, invoke him with hymns. . . . 3. Vaiśvānara, who (crackles) like a neighing horse, is kindled by the Kuśikas with the mothers (*i.e.* their fingers) in every age. May

¹⁴² This is the sense of *anushatyaṁ* according to Prof. Aufrecht. Sāyaṇa makes it one of the epithets of Agni “he who is true to his promise in granting rewards according to works” (*satyenānugataṁ karmāmūrūpa-phala-pradāne satya-pratīnam*).

this Agni, who is ever alive among the immortals, bestow on us wealth, with vigour and with horses."

iii. 29, 15. *Amitrāyudho Marutām iva prayāḥ prathamajāḥ brahmaṇo viśvam id viduḥ | dyumnavaḥ brahma Kuśikāsaḥ ā īrire ekaḥ eko dame Agniṁ sam īdhire |*

"Combating their enemies like the hosts of the Maruts, (the sages) the first-born of prayer¹⁴³ know everything; the Kuśikas have sent forth an enthusiastic prayer; they have kindled Agni, each in his own house."

iii. 30, 20. *Imaṁ kāmam mandaya gobhir āsvaiś chandrāvātā rādhasā paprathāś cha | svaryavo matibhis tubhyam viprāḥ Indrāya vāhaḥ Kuśikāso akran |*

"Gratify this (our) desire with kine and horses; and prosper us with brilliant wealth. The wise Kuśikas, desiring heaven, have with their minds composed for thee a hymn."

iii. 42, 9. *Trāṁ sutasya pītaye pratnam Indra havāmahe | Kuśikāso avasyavaḥ |*

"We, the Kuśikas, desiring succour, summon thee the ancient Indra to drink the soma libation."

It will be seen from these passages that the Viśvāmitras and the Kuśikas assert themselves to have been ancient worshippers of Agni, and to be the composers of hymns, and the possessors of all divine knowledge.

In the eleventh verse of the tenth hymn of the first Maṇḍala of the R.V., of which the traditional author is Madhuchhandas of the family of Viśvāmitra, the epithet *Kauśika* is applied to Indra: *Ā tu naḥ Indra Kauśika mandasānaḥ sutam piba | naryam āyuh pra sutira kṛidhi sahasra-sām ṛiṣim |* "Come, Indra, Kauśika, drink our oblation with delight. Grant me new and prolonged life; make the rishi the possessor of a thousand boons."

Sāyaṇa explains the epithet in question as follows: *Kauśika Kuśikasya putra . . . yadyapi Viśvāmitro Kuśikasya putras tathāpi tadrūpeṇa Indrasya eva utpannatvāt Kuśika-putratvam aviruddham | ayaṁ ṛittānto 'nukramaṇikāyām uktah |* "Kuśikas *tv* Aishirathir Indra-

¹⁴³ Compare with this the epithet of *devajāḥ*, "god-born," applied to Viśvāmitra in iii. 53, 9 (above p. 342); and the claim of knowledge made for the Vasishṭhas in vii. 33, 7 (above p. 320).

tulyam putram ichhan brahmacharyaṁ chaachāra | tasya Indrah eva Gāthī putro jajne” *iti* | “Kauśika means the son of Kuśika . . . Although Viśvāmitra was the son of Kuśika, yet, as it was Indra who was born in his form, there is nothing to hinder Indra being the son of Kuśika. This story is thus told in the Anukramaṇikā: ‘Kuśika, the son of Ishīratha desiring a son like Indra, lived in the state of a Brahmachārin. It was Indra who was born to him as his son Gāthīn.’” To this the Anukramaṇī (as quoted by Prof. Müller, Rig-veda, vol. ii. pref. p. xl.) adds the words: *Gāthīno Viśvāmitraḥ | sa tṛtīyam maṇḍalam apaśyat* | “The son of Gāthīn was Viśvāmitra, who saw the third Maṇḍala.” In quoting this passage Professor Müller remarks: “According to Shāṅkara this preamble was meant to vindicate the Rishitva of the family of Viśvāmitra: ¹⁴⁴ *Saty apavāde svayam ṛishitvam anubharato Viśvāmitra-gotrasya rivakshayā itihāsam āha*” | “Wishing to declare the rishihood of the family of Viśvāmitra which was controverted, although they were themselves aware of it, he tells a story.”

Professor Roth in his Lexicon (*s.v. Kauśika*) thinks that this term as originally applied to Indra meant merely that the god “belonged, was devoted to,” the Kuśikas; and Professor Benfey, in a note to his translation of R.V. i. 10, 11,¹⁴⁵ remarks that “by this family-name Indra is designated as the sole or principal god of this tribe.”

¹⁴⁴ Prof. Müller states that “Sāyana passes over what Kātyāyana (the author of the Anukramaṇī) says about the race of Viśvāmitra;” and adds “This (the fact of the preamble being ‘meant to vindicate the Rishitva of the family of Viśvāmitra’) was probably the reason why Sāyana left it out.” It is true that Sāyana does not quote the words of the Anukramaṇī in his introductory remarks to the third Maṇḍala; but as we have seen he had previously adduced the greater part of them in his note on i. 10, 11.

¹⁴⁵ Orient und Occident, vol. i. p. 18, note 50. We have seen above, p. 345, that in R.V. iii. 23, 3, another god, Agni, is called *Dāivodāsa*, after the rishi Devavāta, by whom he had been kindled. Compare also the expression *Dāivodāso Agnir* in R.V. viii. 92, 2, which Sāyana explains as = *Dāivodāseno āhūyamāno 'gnir*, “Agni invoked by Divodāsa;” while Prof. Roth *s.v.* understands it to mean “Agni who stands in relation to Divodāsa.” In R.V. vi. 16, 19, Agni is called *Dāivodāsaḥ satpatih*, “the good lord of Divodāsa.” Agni is also called Bhārata in R.V. ii. 7, 1, 5; iv. 25, 4; vi. 16, 19. On the first text (ii. 7, 1) Sāyana says *Bharatūḥ ṛitvī jah | teshām sambandhī Bhārataḥ*, “Bharatas are priests. Bhārata is he who is connected with them.” On ii. 7, 5 he explains the word by *ṛitvīḥ putra-sthānīya*, “Thou who art in the place of a son to the priests.” On the second text (iv. 25, 4) *tasmai Agnir Bhārataḥ sarva yajñat*, “may Agni Bhārata give him protection”) Sāyana takes Bhārata to mean “the bearer of the oblation” (*harisho bhārta*); but also refers to the S.P.Br. i. 4, 2, 2, where it is said, “or Agni is called ‘Bhārata,’ because, becoming breath, he sustains all creatures”

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa (pp. 398–400, Wilson, 4to. ed.) Viśvāmitra was the twelfth in descent from Purūravas, the persons intermediate being (1) Amāvasu, (2) Bhīma, (3) Kāñchana, (4) Suhotra, (5) Jahnu, (6) Sumantu, (7) Ajaka, (8) Valākāśva, (9) Kuśa, (10) Kuśāmba, and (11) Gādhi. The birth of Viśvāmitra's father is thus described, V.P. iv. 7, 4: *Teshāṁ Kuśāmbaḥ 'śakra-tulyo me putro bhaved' iti topaś chachāra | tāṁ cha ugra-tapasam avalokya "mā bhavaty anyo 'smat-tulya-vīryyaḥ" ity ātmanā eva asya Indrah putratvam agachhat | Gādhir nāma sa Kauśiko 'bhavat |* "Kuśāmba (one of Kuśa's four sons) practised austere fervour with the view of obtaining a son equal to Indra. Perceiving him to be very ardent in his austere fervour, Indra, fearing lest another person should be born his own equal in vigour, became himself the son of Kuśāmba, with the name of Gādhi the Kauśika." Regarding the birth of Viśvāmitra himself, the Vishṇu Purāṇa relates the following story: Gādhi's daughter Satyavatī had been given in marriage to an old Brāhman called Rīchika, of the family of Bhṛigu. In order that his wife might bear a son with the qualities of a Brāhman, Rīchika had prepared for her a dish of charu (rice, barley, and pulse, with butter and milk) for her to eat; and a similar mess for her mother, calculated to make her conceive a son with the character of a warrior. Satyavatī's mother, however, persuaded her to exchange messes. She was blamed by her husband on her return home for what she had done. I quote the words of the original:

V.P. iv. 7, 14. "*Ati pāpe kim idam akāryyam bhavatyā kṛitam | atiraudraṁ te vapur ālukshyate | nūnaṁ tvayā tran-mātri-satkṛitaś charur upayuktaḥ (? upabhuktaḥ) | na yuktam etat |* 15. *Mayā hi tatra charau sakalā eva śauryya-vīryya-bala-sampad āropitā tvadīye charār apy akhila-śānti-jnāna-titikshādikā brāhmaṇa-sampat | etach cha vipa-*

(*esha n vai imāḥ prajāḥ prāṇo bhūtvā bibharti tasmād vā iva āha "Bhārata" iti*). Another explanation had previously been given that the word *Bhārata* means "he who bears oblations to the gods." On the third text (vi. 16, 19) Sāyaṇa interprets the term in the same way. Roth, *s.v.*, thinks it may mean "warlike." In R.V. vii 8, 4, (V.S. 12, 34) we find the words *pra pra ayam Agnir Bharatasya śrinve*, "this Agni (the son ?) of Bharata has been greatly renowned." Sāyaṇa makes *bharatasya* = *yagamūnasya*, "the worshipper," and *pra pra śrinve* = *prathito bharatī*, "is renowned." The Comm. on the Vāj. S. translates "Agni hears the invocation of the worshipper" (*śrinve śrinute āhrīnam*). The S. P. Br. vi. 8, 1, 14, quotes the verse, and explains *Bharata* as meaning "Prajāpati, the supporter of the universe" (*Prajāpatir vai Bharataḥ sa hi idam sarvam bibharti*).

*rītaṁ kurvatyās tava atiraudrāstra-dhārana-mārana-nishṭha-kshattri-
yāchārahḥ puttro bhaviṣhyaty asyās cha upasāma-ruchir brāhmaṇā-
chārahḥ*" | *ity ākarnya eva sū tasya pādau jagrāha prañipaty cha enam
āha* "bhagavan mayā etad ajnānād anuśṭhitam | prasādam me kuru |
mā evaṁvidaḥ putro bhavatu | kāmam evaṁvidhaḥ putro bhavatu" | *ity
ukto munir apy āha* "evam astu" iti | 16. *Anantaraṁ cha sū Jamad-
agnim ajījanat tan-mātā cha Viśvāmitraṁ janayāmāsa | Satyavatī cha
Kauśikī nāma nady abhavat | Jamadagnir Ikshvāku-raṁśodbhavasya Reṇu-
s tanayāṁ Renukāṁ upayame tasyāṁ cha āśeṣa-kshattri-vaṁśa-hantāram
Paraśurāma-sañjnam bhagavataḥ sakala-loka-guror Nārāyaṇasya aṁśaṁ
Jamadagnir ajījanat | Viśvāmitra-putras tu Bhārgavaḥ eva Sunaśśepo
nāma devair dattaḥ | tataś cha Devarāta-nāmā 'bhavat | tataś cha anye
Madhucchanda-Jayakṛita-Devadeva-Ashṭaka-Kachhapa-Hārītaḥkḥyāḥ
Viśvāmitra-putrāḥ babhūvuh | 17. Teshāṁ cha bahūni Kauśika-gotrāṇi
rishyantareshu vaivāhyāni bhavanti |*

" 'Sinful woman, what improper deed is this that thou hast done ?
I behold thy body of a very terrible appearance. Thou hast certainly
eaten the charu prepared for thy mother. This was wrong. For into
that charu I had infused all the endowments of heroism, vigour, and
force, whilst into thine I had introduced all those qualities of quietude,
knowledge, and patience which constitute the perfection of a Brāhman.
Since thou hast acted in contravention of my design a son shall be born
to thee who shall live the dreadful, martial, and murderous life of a
Kshattriya; and thy mother's offspring shall exhibit the peaceful dis-
position and conduct of a Brāhman.' As soon as she had heard this,
Satyavatī fell down and seized her husband's feet, and said, 'My lord,
I have acted from ignorance; show kindness to me; let me not have
a son of the sort thou hast described; if thou pleasest, let me have a
grandson of that description.' Hearing this the muni replied, 'Be it
so.' Subsequently she bore Jamadagni, and her mother gave birth to
Viśvāmitra. Satyavatī became the river called Kauśikī. Jamadagni
wedded Renukā, the daughter of Reṇu, of the family of Ikshvāku; and
on her he begot a son called Paraśurāma, the slayer of the entire race
of Kshattriyas, who was a portion of the divine Nārāyaṇa, the lord of
the universe.¹⁴⁶ To Viśvāmitra a son called Sunaśśepa, of the race of

¹⁴⁶ According to the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, i. 3, 20, Paraśurāma was the sixteenth
incarnation of Viṣṇu. *Atātare śloḍaśame paśyan brāhma-dūho nṛpān | trissapta-*

Bṛiḡu, was given by the gods, who in consequence received the name of Devarāta ("god-given"). And then other sons, Madhuchhandas, Jayakṛita, Devadeva, Aṣṭaka, Kachhapa, Hārītaka, etc., were born to Viśvāmitra. From them sprang many families of Kausikas, which intermarried with those of other rishis."

The Harivaṃśa, verses 1425 ff., gives a similar account, but makes Kuśika, not Kuśāmba, the grandfather of Viśvāmitra :

Kuśa-putrāḥ babhūvur hi chatvāro deva-varchasaḥ | Kuśikāḥ Kuśanābhaḥ cha Kuśāmba Mūrtimāṃs tathā | Pahlavaiḥ saha saṃvṛiddho rājā vana-charais tadā | Kuśikas tu tapas tepe puttram Indra-samaṃ vibhuḥ | labheyam iti taṃ Sakras trāsād abhyetya jajñivān | pūrṇe varsha-sahasre vai taṃ tu Sakro hy apaśyata | aty ugra-tapasaṃ dṛishṭvā sahasrākṣaḥ purandaraḥ | samarthaḥ putra-janane svam evāṃśam avāsayat | putratve kalpayāmāsa sa devendraḥ surottamaḥ | sa Gādhir abhavad rājā Maghavān Kauśikāḥ svayam | Paurukutsy abhavad bhāryyā Gādhis tasyām ajāyata |

"Kuśa had four sons, equal in lustre to the gods, Kuśika, Kuśanābha, Kuśāmba, and Mūrttimat. Growing up among the Pahlavas, who dwelt in the woods, the glorious king Kuśika practised austere fervour, with the view of obtaining a son equal to Indra ; and Indra from apprehension came and was born. When a thousand years had elapsed Sakra (Indra) beheld him. Perceiving the intensity of his austere fervour, the thousand-eyed, city-destroying, god of gods, highest of the deities, powerful to procreate offspring, introduced a portion of himself, and caused it to take the form of a son ; and thus Maghavat himself became Gādhi, the son of Kuśika. Paurukutsī was the wife (of the latter), and of her Gādhi was born."

The Harivaṃśa then relates a story similar to that just extracted from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa regarding the births of Jamadagni and Viśvāmitra, and then proceeds, verse 1456 :

Aurasyaivam Richikasya Satyavatyām mahāyasaḥ | Jamadagnis tapo-vīryyāj jajne brahma-vidāṃ varaḥ | madhyamaś cha Sunaśśephaḥ Sunaḥ-puchhaḥ kanishṭhakaḥ | Viśvāmitraṃ tu dāyādām Gādhiḥ Kuśika-nandanaḥ | janayāmāsa putraṃ tu tapo-vidyā-samātmaḥ | prāpya brah-

kṛiteva kupito nihkshattrīm akaroḥ mahīm | "In his sixteenth incarnation, perceiving that kings were oppressors of Brāhmanas, he, incensed, made the earth destitute of Kshattriyas one and twenty times."

*marshi-samatām yo 'yam saptarshitām gataḥ | Viśvāmitras tu dharmātmā
nāmnā Viśvarathah smṛitah | jāne Bhṛigu-prasādena Kauśikād vaṁśa-
rarddhanah | Viśvāmitrasya cha sutāḥ Devarātādayaḥ smṛitāḥ | vikhyātās
trishu lokeshu teshām nāmāni vai śṛiṇu | Devaśravāḥ Katiś chaiva yasmāt
Kātyāyanāḥ smṛitāḥ | Sālāvatyām Hiranyāksho Renor jāne 'tha Reṇu-
mān | Sāṅkritir Gālavās chaiva Mudgalaś cheti viśrutāḥ | Madhuchhando
Jayaś chaiva Devalāś cha tathā 'shtakaḥ | Kachhapo Hāritaś chaiva Viśvā-
mitrasya te sutāḥ | teshām khyātāni gotrāṇi Kauśikānām mahātmanām |
Pāṇino Babhravāś chaiva Dhyānājapyās tathāiva cha | Pārthivāḥ Deva-
rātāś cha Sālankāyana-Vāskulāḥ | Lohitāḥ Yāmadūtāś cha tathā Kārī-
shayaḥ smṛitāḥ | Sauśrutāḥ Kauśikāḥ rājāṁs tathā 'nye Saindhavāya-
nāḥ | Devalāḥ Renarāś chaiva Yājñavalkyāghamarshaṇāḥ | Audumbarāḥ
hy Abhiśhnātās Tārakāyana-chunchulāḥ | Sālāvatyāḥ Hiranyākshāḥ
Sāṅkrityāḥ Gālavās tathā | Nārāyaṇir Narāś chānyo Viśvāmitrasya
dhimataḥ | rishy-antara-virāhyās cha Kauśikāḥ bahavaḥ smṛitāḥ | Pau-
ravasya mahārāja brahmarsheḥ Kauśikasya cha | sambandho 'py asya
cāmśe 'smin brahma-kshattrasya viśrutah |*

“Thus was the renowned Jamadagni, the most excellent of those possessed of sacred knowledge, born by the power of austere fervour to Rīchika, the son of Ūrva, by Śatyavati. Their second son was S'unaś-śepha¹⁴⁷ and the youngest Sunahpuchha. And Gādhi, son of Kuśika, begot as his son and inheritor Viśvāmitra, distinguished for austere fervour, science, and quietude; who attained an equality with Brahman-rishis, and became one of the seven rishis. The righteous Viśvāmitra, who was known by name as Viśvaratha,¹⁴⁸ was by the favour of a Bhṛigu born to the son of Kuśika, an augments (of the glory) of his race. The sons of Viśvāmitra are related to have been Devarāta and the rest, renowned in the three worlds. Hear their names: Devaśravas, Kati (from whom the Kātyāyanas had their name); Hiranyāksha, born of Sālāvatī, and Reṇumat of Reṇu; Sāṅkriti, Gālava, Mudgala, Madhuchhanda, Jaya, Devala, Ashtaka, Kachhapa, Hārita — these were the

¹⁴⁷ The Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, as we shall shortly see, makes 'S'unaśśepa' a son of Ajigarta. The Mahābhārata Anuśāsanap. verse 186, coincides with the Harivaṁśa.

¹⁴⁸ In another passage of the Harivaṁśa (verses 1764 ff.), which repeats the particulars given in this passage, it appears to be differently stated, verse 1766, that besides a daughter Satyavati, and his son Viśvāmitra, Gādhi had three other sons, Viśvaratha, Viśvakṛit, and Viśvajit (*Viśvāmitras tu Gādheyo rājā Viśvarathas tadā | Viśvakṛit Viśvajit chaiva tathā Satyavatī nripa*).

sons of Viśvāmitra. From them the families of the great Kauśikas are said to have sprung: the Pāṇins, Babhrus, Dhānājapyas, Pārthivas, Devarātas, Śālankāyanas, Vāskalas, Lohitas, Yāmadūtas, Kārishis, Sauśrutas, Kauśikas, Saindhavāyanas, Devalas, Reṇus, Yājñavalkyas, Aghamarshaṇas, Audumbaras, Abhishnātas, Tārakāyanas, Chunchulas, Śālāvatyas, Hiranyākshas, Sāṅkṛityas, and Gālavas.¹⁴⁹ Nārāyaṇi and Nara were also (descendants) of the wise Viśvāmitra. Many Kauśikas are recorded who intermarried with the families of other rishis. In this race of the Paurava and Kauśika Brahman-rishi, there is well known to have been a connection of the Brāhmans and Kshattriyas. Śunaśśepha, who was a descendant of Bhṛigu, and obtained the position of a Kauśika, is recorded to have been the eldest of Viśvāmitra's sons."

It will be observed that in this passage, Devaśravas is given as one of Viśvāmitra's sons. A Devaśravas, as we have already seen, is mentioned in R.V. iii. 23, 2, as a Bhārata, along with Devavāta. Here however in the Harivaṁśa we have no Devavāta, but a Devarāta, who is identified with Śunaśśepha. This, as we shall find, is also the case in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa.

In the genealogy given in both of the preceding passages, from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, and the 27th chapter of the Harivaṁśa respectively, Viśvāmitra is declared to be the descendant of Amāvasu the third son of Purūravas. In the 32nd chapter of the Harivaṁśa, however, we find a different account. Viśvāmitra's lineage is there traced up to a Jahnu, as in the former case; but Jahnu is no longer represented as a descendant of Amāvasu, the third son of Purūravas; but (as appears from the preceding narrative) of Āyus, the eldest son of that prince, and of Puru, the great-grandson of Āyus. Professor Wilson (Viṣṇu Purāṇa, 4to. ed. p. 451, note 23) is of opinion that this confusion originated in the recurrence of the name of Suhotra in different genealogical lists, and in the ascription to one king of this name of descendants who were

¹⁴⁹ Professor Wilson (V.P. 4to. ed. p. 405, note) gives these names, and remarks that the authorities add "an infinity of others, multiplied by intermarriages with other tribes, and who, according to the Vāyu, were originally of the regal caste like Viśvāmitra; but like him obtained Brahmanhood through devotion. Now these gotras, or some of them at least, no doubt existed, partaking more of the character of schools of doctrine, but in which teachers and scholars were very likely to have become of one family by intermarrying; and the whole, as well as their original founder, imply the interference of the Kshattriya caste with the Brahmanical monopoly of religious instruction and composition."

really sprung from another. It is not, however, clear that the genealogy of Viśvāmitra given in the Vishṇu Purāṇa is the right one. For in the Rig-veda, as we have seen, he is connected with the Bharatas, and in the passage about to be quoted from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, he is called a Bharata and his sons Kuśikas; and Bharata is said both in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (Wilson's V.P. 4to. ed. p. 449) and in the Harivaṃśa (sect. 32, v. 1723, and preceding narrative) to be a descendant of Āyus and of Puru. Accordingly we have seen that the Harivaṃśa styles Viśvāmitra at once a Paurava and a Kauśika.

A similar genealogy to that in the 32nd section of the Harivaṃśa is given in the Mahābhārata, Anuśāsanaparvan, verses 201 ff., where it is said that in the line of Bharata there was a king called Ajamīdha who was also a priest (*Bharatasyañvaye chaivājamīdho nāma pārthivaḥ | bābhūva Bharata-śreṣṭha yajvā dharma-bhṛitām varaḥ*), from whom Viśvāmitra was descended through (1) Jahnu, (2) Sindhudvīpa, (3) Balākaśva, (4) Kuśika, (5) Gādhi.

One of the names applied to Viśvāmitra and his race, as I have just noticed, is Bharata.¹⁵⁰ The last of the four verses at the close of the 53rd hymn of the third Maṇḍala of the Rig-veda, which are supposed to contain a malediction directed by Viśvāmitra against Vasishṭha (see above) is as follows : iii. 53, 24. *Ime Indra Bharatasya putrāḥ apapitvāṃ chikitur na prapitvāṃ* | "These sons of Bharata, o Indra, desire to avoid (the Vasishṭhas), not to approach them." These words are thus explained by Sāyaṇa : *Bharatasya putrāḥ Bharata-vaṃśyāḥ ime Viśvāmitrāḥ apapitvāṃ apagamanaṃ Vasishṭhebhyaś chikitur na prapitvāṃ* | [*Va*]*sisṭhāiḥ saha teshāṃ sangatir nāsti | brāhmaṇāḥ eva ity arthaḥ* | "These sons of Bharata, persons of his race, know departure from, and not approach to, the Vasishṭhas. They do not associate with the Vasishṭhas. This means they are Brāhmanas."

The persons who accompanied Viśvāmitra when he wished to cross the Vipās and the Śutudrī are, as we have seen above, called Bhārātas; and Devaśravas and Devavāta are designated in R.V. iii. 23, 2, as Bhārātas. On the other hand in one of the hymns ascribed to Vasishṭha (R.V. vii. 33, 6) the Bhārātas are alluded to as a tribe hostile to the Tritsus, the race to which Vasishṭha belonged.

¹⁵⁰ See Roth's Lexicon, *s.v.* *Bharata*, (7) "the name of a hero, the forefather of a tribe. His sons are called Viśvāmitras and the members of his family Bharatas."

In the legend of Sunaśśepa, told in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, vii. 13-18,¹⁵¹ Viśvāmitra is alluded to as being the hotṛi-priest of king Hariśchandra, and as belonging to the tribe of the Bharatas. He is also addressed as *rājaputra*, and his sons are called Kuśikas. The outlines of the story are as follows: King Hariśchandra of the family of Ikshvāku having no son, promised to Varuṇa, by the advice of Nārada, that if a son should be born to him he would sacrifice him to that god. A son was accordingly born to the king, who received the name of Rohita; but Hariśchandra, though called upon by Varuṇa, put off from time to time, on various pleas, the fulfilment of his promise. When the father at length consented, the youth himself refused to be sacrificed and went into the forest. After passing six years there he met a poor Brāhman rishi called Ajīgarta who had three sons, the second of whom, Sunaśśepa, he sold for a hundred cows to Rohita, who brought the young Brāhman to be sacrificed instead of himself. Varuṇa accepted the vicarious victim, and arrangements were made accordingly, "Viśvāmitra being the hotṛi-priest, Jamadagni the adhvaryu, Vasishṭha the brāhmān, and Ayāsyā the udgātri (*tasya ha Viśvāmitro hotā āsij Jamadagnir adhvaryur Vasishṭho brāhmā Ayāsyāḥ udgātā*)." The sacrifice was not, however, completed, although the father received a hundred more cows for binding his son to the sacrificial post, and a third hundred for agreeing to slaughter him. By reciting verses in honour of different deities in succession Sunaśśepa was delivered; and at the request of the priests took part in the ceremonial of the day. I shall quote the remainder of the story at length:

17. *Atha ha Sunaśśepo Viśvāmitrasyaṅkam āsasāda | sa ha uvācha Ajīgarttaḥ Sauvarasir "ṛishe punar me puttraṁ dehi" iti | "Na" iti ha uvācha Viśvāmitro "devāḥ vai imam mahyam arāsata" iti | sa ha Devarāto Viśvāmitraḥ āsa | tasya ete Kāpileya-Bāhhravāḥ | sa ha uvācha Ajīgarttaḥ Sauvarasir "traṁ vchi vhrayārahai" iti | sa ha uvācha Ajīgarttaḥ Sauvarasir "Āngiraso janmanā 'sy Ājīgarttiḥ śrutah karīḥ | ṛishe paitāmahāt tantor mā 'pagāḥ punar ehi mām" iti | sa*

¹⁵¹ This legend is translated into German by Prof. Roth in Weber's Ind. Stud. i. 457 ff., into English by Prof. Wilson, Journ. Roy. As. Soc. vol. xiii. for 1851, pp. 96 ff., by Dr. Haug in his Ait. Brāhmaṇa, vol. ii. 460 ff., by Prof. Müller in his Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 408 ff., and into Latin by Dr. Streiter in his "Diss. de Sunaśśepo."

ha urācha Sunaḥśepaḥ “adarsus tvā śāsa-hastaṁ na yach chhūdreshv alapsata | gavāṁ trīṇi śatāni tvam arjūnīthāḥ mad Angirah” iti | sa ha urācha Ajigarttaḥ Sauyavasis “tad vai mā tāta tapati pāpaṁ karma mayā kṛitam | tad ahaṁ nihnave tubhyam pratiyantu śatā gavāṁ” iti | sa ha urācha Sunaḥśepaḥ “yah sakrit pāpakaṁ kuryāt kuryād enat tato 'param | nāpāgāḥ śaudrānyāyād asandheyaṁ trayā kṛitam” iti | “asandheyaṁ” iti ha Viśvāmitraḥ upapapāda | sa ha urācha Viśvāmitraḥ “Bhīmaḥ eva Sauyavasiḥ śāsena viśiśāsishuḥ | asthād maitasya putro bhūr mamaivopehi putratām” iti | sa ha urācha Sunaḥśepaḥ “sa vai yathā no jñāpyā rājaputra tathā vada | yathairāṅgirasah sann upeyāṁ tava putratām” iti | sa ha urācha Viśvāmitro “Jyeshtho me tvam putrā-ṇāṁ syās tava śreshthā prajā syāt | upeyāḥ daivam me dāyaṁ tena vai tvopamantrage” iti | sa ha urācha Sunaḥśepaḥ “sanjñānāneshu vai brūyāt sauhārdyāya me śriyai | yathā 'ham Bharata-ṛishabha upeyāṁ tava putratām” iti | atha ha Viśvāmitraḥ putrān āmantrayāmāsa “Madhuchhandāḥ śrinotana Ṛishabho Reṇur Ashtakāḥ | ye ke cha bhrātaraḥ sthana asmai jyāishṭhyāya kalpadhvam” iti | 18. Tasya ha Viśvāmitrasya eka-śatam putrāḥ āsuh panchāśad eva jyāyāṁso Madhuchhandasaḥ panchāśat kaṇīyāṁsaḥ | tad ye jyāyāṁso na te kuśalam menire | tāt anuvyājahāra “antān vaḥ prajā bhakshishṭa” iti | te ete 'ndhrāḥ Puṇḍrāḥ Sabarāḥ Pulindāḥ Mātibāḥ ity udantyāḥ bahavo bhavanti | Faiśvāmitrāḥ Dasyūnām bhūyishṭhāḥ | sa ha urācha Madhuchhandāḥ panchāśatā sardham “yad naḥ pitā sanjñānīte tasmiṁs tishṭhūmahe rayam | puras tvā sarve kurmahe tvām anvancho rayāṁ smasi” iti | atha ha Viśvāmitraḥ pratītaḥ putrāṁs tushtāra “te vai putrāḥ paśumanto vīravanto bhavishyatha | ye mānam me 'nugrihṇanto vīravantam akartta mā | pura-etrā vīravanto Devarātena Gāthīnāḥ | sarve rādhyāḥ stha putrāḥ esha vaḥ sadvirāchanam | esha vaḥ Kuśikāḥ vīro Devarātas tam anvita | yushmāṁs dāyam me upetā vidyāṁ yām u cha vidmasi | te samyancho Faiśvāmitrāḥ sarve sūkāṁ sarātayaḥ | Devarātāya tasthire dhṛityai śraishṭhyāya Gāthīnāḥ | adhīyata Devarāto rikthayor ubhyayor ṛishikḥ | Jahnūnām chādhipatyē daire vede cha Gāthīnām |

“Sunaśśepa came to the side of Viśvāmitra. Ajigartta, the son of Suyavasa, said, ‘Rishi, give me back my son.’ ‘No,’ said Viśvāmitra, ‘the gods have given him to me’ (*devāḥ arāsata*); hence he became Devarāta the son of Viśvāmitra. The Kāpileyas and Bābhavas are his descendants. Ajigartta said to Viśvāmitra, ‘Come; let us both call

(him) to us.¹⁵² He (again) said (to his son), 'Thou art an Āngirasa, the son of Ajīgarta, reputed a sage; do not, o rishi, depart from the line of thy ancestors; come back to me.' Sunaśśepa replied, 'They have seen thee with the sacrificial knife in thy hand—a thing which men have not found even among the Sūdras; thou didst prefer three hundred cows to me, o Angiras.' Ajīgarta rejoined, 'That sinful deed which I have done distresses me, my son; I abjure it to thee. Let the [three] hundreds of cows revert (to him who gave them).'¹⁵³ Sunaśśepa answered, 'He who once does a sinful deed, will add to it another; thou hast not freed thyself from that iniquity, fit only for a Sūdra. Thou hast done what cannot be rectified.' 'What cannot be rectified,' interposed Viśvāmitra; who continued, 'Terrible was the son of Suyavasa as he stood about to immolate (thee) with the knife: continue not to be his son; become mine.' Sunaśśepa replied, 'Speak, o king's son (*rāja-putra*), whatever thou hast to explain to us, in order that I, though an Āngirasa, may become thy son.' Viśvāmitra rejoined, 'Thou shalt be the eldest of my sons, and thy offspring shall be the most eminent. Thou shalt receive my divine inheritance; with this (invitation) I address thee.' Sunaśśepa answered, 'If (thy sons) agree, then for my welfare enjoin on them to be friendly, that so, o chief of the Bharatas, I may enter on thy sonship.' Viśvāmitra then addressed his sons, 'Do ye, Madhuchhandas, Rishabha, Renu, Aṣṭaka, and all ye who are brothers, listen to me, and concede to him the seniority.' 18. Now Viśvāmitra had a hundred sons, fifty of whom were older than Madhuchhandas and fifty younger. Then those who were older did not approve (their father's proposal). Against them he pronounced (this

¹⁵² I follow here the tenor of the interpretation (which is that of the Commentator on the S'āṅkhāyana Brāhmaṇa) given by Prof. Weber in his review of Dr. Haug's Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, in Indische Studien, ix. 316. Prof. Weber remarks that in the Brāhmaṇas the root *hu + ri* is employed to denote the opposing invitations of two persons who are seeking to bring over a third person to their own side; in proof of which he quotes Taitt. S. 6, 1, 6, 6, and S. P. Br. 3, 2, 4, 4, and 22. Profs. Roth, Wilson, and Muller, as well as Dr. Haug, understand the words to be addressed to Sunaśśepa by his father, and to signify "we, too (I and thy mother), call, or will call (thee to return to us)." But it does not appear that Sunaśśepa's mother was present. And it is to be observed that the next words uttered by Ajīgarta, which are addressed to Sunaśśepa, are preceded by the usual formula *sa ha uvācha Ajīgartaḥ Saugavasīḥ*, "Ajīgarta the son of S. said," which perhaps would not have been the case if both sentences had been addressed to the same person.

¹⁵³ Here too I follow Weber, Ind. St. ix. p. 317.

doom), 'Let your progeny possess the furthest ends (of the country).' These are the numerous border-tribes, the Andhras, Puṇḍras, Śābaras, Pulindas, Mūtibas. Most of the Dasyus are sprung from Viśvāmitra.¹⁵⁴ Madhuchhandas with the (other) fifty said, 'Whatever our father determines, by that we abide. We all place thee in our front, and follow after thee.' Then Viśvāmitra was pleased, and said to his sons, 'Ye, my children who, shewing deference to me, have conferred upon me a (new) son, shall abound in cattle and in sons. Ye, my sons, the offspring of Gāthīn, who possess in Devarāta a man who shall go before you, are all destined to be prosperous; he is your wise instructor. This Devarāta, o Kuśikas, is your chief; follow him. He will receive you as my inheritance, and obtain all the knowledge which we possess.' All these sons of Viśvāmitra, descendants of Gāthīn, submitted together in harmony and with good will to Devarāta's control and superiority. The rishi Devarāta was invested with both possessions, with the lordly authority of the Jahnu, and with the divine Veda of the Gāthins."¹⁵⁵

On this legend Professor Müller (Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 415 f.) remarks, amongst other things, as follows: "So revolting, indeed, is the descrip-

¹⁵⁴ See Weber, Ind. St. ix. p. 317 f., and Roth in his Lexicon, s.v. *anta* and *udantya*.

¹⁵⁵ This legend is perhaps alluded to in the Kāthaka Brāhmaṇa, 19, 11, quoted by Prof. Weber, Ind. St. iii. 478. *S'unasśepo vai etām Ajigarttir Varuṇa-grihīto'paśyat | tayā sa vai Varuṇa-pāsūd amuchyate* | "S'unasśepa the son of Ajigartta, when seized by Varuṇa, saw this (verse); and by it he was released from the bonds of Varuṇa." Manu also mentions the story, x. 105. *Ajigarttaḥ sutam hantum upāsarpad bubhukshitah | nu chālipyate pāpena khut-pratikūram ācharam* | "Ajigartta, when famished, approached to slay his son; and (by so doing) was not contaminated by sin, as he was seeking the means of escape from hunger." On this Kullūka annotates: *Rishir Ajigarttīkhyo bubhukshitah san putram S'unasśepha-nūmānam srayam vikritavān yajne go-śata-lābhāya yajnu-yūpe baddhvā viśasitā bhūtvā hantum prachakrame* | *na cha khut-pratikā-rtham tathā kurvan pāpena tīptah* | *etach cha Bahvricha-brāhmaṇe S'unasśephākhyāneshu vyaktam uktam* | "A rishi called Ajigartta, having, when famished, himself sold his son called S'unasśepha, in order to obtain a hundred cows at a sacrifice, bound him to the sacrificial stake, and in the capacity of immolator was about to slay him. By doing so, as a means of escape from hunger, he did not incur sin. This is distinctly recorded in the Bahvricha (Aitareya) Brāhmaṇa in the legend of S'unasśepa." The speakers in the Brāhmaṇa, however, do not take by any means so lenient a view of Ajigartta's conduct as Manu. (See Muller's Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 415.) The compiler of the latter work lived in an age when it was perhaps thought that a rishi could do no wrong. The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. sect. 7, and sect. 16, verses 30-37 follows the Ait. Br. in the version it gives of the story; but, as we shall see in a subsequent section, the Rāmāyana relates some of the circumstances quite differently.

tion given of Ajigartta's behaviour in the Brāhmaṇa, that we should rather recognize in him a specimen of the un-Āryan population of India. Such a supposition, however, would be in contradiction with several of the most essential points of the legend, particularly in what regards the adoption of Sunaḥśepa by Viśvāmitra. Viśvāmitra, though arrived at the dignity of a Brāhman, clearly considers the adoption of Sunaḥśepa Devarāta, of the famous Brahmanic family of the Āngirāsas, as an advantage for himself and his descendants; and the Devarātas are indeed mentioned as a famous branch of the Viśvāmitras (V.P. p. 405, 23). Sunaḥśepa is made his eldest son, and the leader of his brothers, evidently as the defender and voucher of their Brahmanhood, which must have been then of very recent date, because Viśvāmitra himself is still addressed by Sunaḥśepa as *Rāju-putra* and *Bharata-rishabha*." It must, however, be recollected that the story, as told in the Brāhmaṇa, can scarcely be regarded as historical, and that it is not unreasonable to suppose that the incidents related, even if founded on fact, may have been coloured by the Brahmanical prepossessions of the narrator. But if so, the legend can give us no true idea of the light in which Viśvāmitra's exercise of priestly functions was looked upon either by himself or by his contemporaries.

In *Indische Studien*, ii. 112-123, this story forms the subject of an interesting dissertation by Professor Roth, who arrives at the following conclusions:

"(i.) The oldest legend about Sunaḥśepa (alluded to in R.V. i. 24, 11-13,¹⁵⁶ and R.V. v. 2, 7) knows only of his miraculous deliverance by divine help from the peril of death.

"(ii.) This story becomes expanded in the sequel into a narrative of Sunaḥśepa's threatened slaughter as a sacrificial victim, and of his deliverance through Viśvāmitra.

"(iii.) This immolation-legend becomes severed into two essentially distinct versions, the oldest forms of which are respectively represented by the stories in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and the Rāmāyaṇa.

"(iv.) The latter becomes eventually the predominant one; but its proper central-point is no longer the deliverance from immolation, but

¹⁵⁶ Compare also Rosen's remarks on the hymns ascribed to Sunaḥśepa; *Rig-veda Sanhita*, Annotations, p. lv. He thinks they contain nothing which would lead to the belief that they have any connection with the legend in the Rāmāyaṇa and Ait. Br.

the incorporation of S'unaḥśepa, or (with a change of persons) of Rīchīka, into the family of the Kuśikas. It thus becomes in the end a family-legend of the race of Viśvāmitra.

"There is thus no historical, perhaps not even a genealogical, result to be gained here. On the other hand the story obtains an important place in the circle of those narratives in which the sacerdotal literature expressed its views regarding the character and agency of Viśvāmitra."

In a passage of the Mahābhārata, Ādip. verses 3694 ff.,¹⁵⁷ where the descendants of Pūru are recorded, we find among them Bharata the son of Dushyanta (verse 3709) from whom (1) Bhumanyu, (2) Suhotra, (3) Ajamīdha, and (4) Jahnu are said to have sprung in succession (verses 3712-3722); and the last-named king and his brothers Vrajana and Rūpin are said to have been the ancestors of the Kuśikas (verse 3723: *anvayāḥ Kuśikāḥ rājan Jahnor amita-tejasaḥ | Vrajana-Rūpinoh*), who were therefore, according to this passage also, descended from Bharata (see above, p. 354). The Mahābhārata then goes on to relate that during the reign of Samvarana, son of Jahnu's eldest brother Riksha, the country over which he ruled was desolated by various calamities (verses 3725 f.). The narrative proceeds, verse 3727:

*Abhyaghnān Bhāratāmś chaiva sapatnānām balāni cha | chālayan
vasudhām chemām balena chaturanginā | abhyayāt taṁ cha Pāṇchālyo
vijitya tarasā mahīm | akshauhiniḥbhīr dasabhiḥ sa enaṁ samare 'jayat |
tataḥ sa-dāraḥ sāmātyaḥ sa-puttraḥ sa-suhṛijjanāḥ | rājā Saṁvaranaḥ
tasmāt palāyata mahābhayāt | 3730. Sindhor nadasya mahato nikuṇje
nyarasat tadā | nudi-vishaya-paryyante parvatasya samīpataḥ | tattra-
vasan bahūn kālān Bhāratūḥ durgam āśritāḥ | teshām nivasatām tuttra
sahasraṁ parivatsarān | athābhyagachhad Bhāratān Vāsishṭho bhagavān
ṛishiḥ | tam āgatam prajātneṇa pratyudgamyābhivādya cha | arghyam
abhyāharamś tasmai te sarve Bhāratās tadā | nivedya sarvaṁ ṛishaye
satkāreṇa suvarchase | tam āsane chopaviśṭam rājā vavre svayam tadā |
"purohito bhavān no 'stu rājyāja prayatemahi" | 3735. "Om" ity
evam Vāsishṭho 'pi Bhāratān pratyapadyata | athābhyasinchat sāmṛājye
sarva-kshatrasya Pauravam | vishūṇa-bhūtaṁ sarvasyām prithivyām iti
naḥ śrutam | Bharatādhyushitam pūrvaṁ so 'dhyatishṭhat purottamam |
punar balibhrītaś chaiva chakre sarva-mahikshitaḥ |*

¹⁵⁷ Referred to by Roth, Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, pp. 142 ff., and Wilson, Rig-veda, iii. p. 86.

" 3727. And the hosts of their enemies also smote the Bhāratas. Shaking the earth with an army of four kinds of forces, the Pāṇchālya chief assailed him, having rapidly conquered the earth, and vanquished him with ten complete hosts. Then king Samvaraṇa with his wives, ministers, sons, and friends, fled from that great cause of alarm; (3730) and dwelt in the thickets of the great river Sindhu (Indus), in the country bordering on the stream, and near a mountain. There the Bhāratas abode for a long time, taking refuge in a fortress. As they were dwelling there, for a thousand years, the venerable rishi Vasishṭha came to them. Going out to meet him on his arrival, and making obeisance, the Bhāratas all presented him with the *arghya* offering, shewing every honour to the glorious rishi. When he was seated the king himself solicited him, 'Be thou our priest; let us strive to regain my kingdom.' 3735. Vasishṭha consented to attach himself to the Bhāratas, and, as we have heard, invested the descendant of Pūru with the sovereignty of the entire Kshattriya race, to be a horn (to have mastery) over the whole earth. He occupied the splendid city formerly inhabited by Bhārata, and made all kings again tributary to himself."

It is remarkable that in this passage the Bhāratas, who, as we have seen, are elsewhere represented as being so closely connected with Viśvāmitra, and are in one text of the Rig-veda (vii. 33, 6) alluded to as the enemies of Vasishṭha's friends, should be here declared to have adopted the latter rishi as their priest. The account, however, need not be received as historical, or even based on any ancient tradition; and the part referring to Vasishṭha in particular may have been invented for the glorification of that rishi, or for the honour of the Bhāratas.

The 11th and 12th khandas of the second adhyāya of the Sarvasāra Upanishad (as we learn from Professor Weber's analysis in Ind. St. i. 390) relate that Viśvāmitra was instructed on the identity of breath (*prāṇa*) with Indra, by the god himself, who had been celebrated by the sage on the occasion of a sacrifice, at which he officiated as hotṛi-priest, in a thousand Brihatī verses, and was in consequence favourably disposed towards him.

It is abundantly clear, from the details supplied in this section, that Viśvāmitra, who was a rājanya of the Bhārata and Kuśika families (Ait. Br. vii. 17 and 18), is represented by ancient Indian tradition as

the author of numerous Vedic hymns, as the domestic priest (*purohita*) of king Sudās (Nir. ii. 24), and as officiating as a *hotṛi* at a sacrifice of king Hariśchandra (Ait. Br. vii. 16). The Rāmāyaṇa also, as we shall see in a future section, connects him with Trisāṅku, the father of Hariśchandra, and makes him also contemporary with Ambarīsha; and in the first book of the same poem he is said to have visited king Daśaratha, the father of Rāma (Bālakanda, i. 20, 1 ff.). As these kings were separated from each other by very long intervals, Trisāṅku being a descendant of Ikshvāku in the 28th, Ambarīsha in the 44th,¹⁵⁸ Sudās in the 49th, and Daśaratha in the 60th generation (see Wilson's *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, vol. iii. pp. 284, 303, 304, 313), it is manifest that the authors of these legends either intentionally or through oversight represented Viśvāmitra, like Vasishṭha (see above), as a personage of miraculous longevity; and on either supposition a great deal that is related of him must be purely fabulous. All the authorities describe him as the son of Gāthīn or Gādhi, the Anukramaṇī, the *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, and the *Harivaṃśa* declaring also that Gāthīn was an incarnation of Indra, and thus asserting Viśvāmitra to be of divine descent. It is not clear whether this fable is referred to in R.V. iii. 53, 9, where Viśvāmitra is styled *deva-jāh*, "born of a god," or whether this verse may not have led to the invention of the story. In either case the verse can scarcely have emanated from the rishi himself; but it is more likely to be the production of one of his descendants.¹⁵⁹

¹⁵⁸ According to the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 70, 41; ii. 110, 32, Ambarīsha was only 28th from Ikshvāku. Compare Prof. Wilson's note on these genealogies, V.P. iii. 313 ff.

¹⁵⁹ The word *devajāh*, which, following Roth, s.v., I have translated "god-born," is taken by Sāyaṇa as = *dyotamānānām t.jasām janayitā*, "generator of shining lights," and appears to be regarded by him as referring to the creation of constellations by Viśvāmitra, mentioned in the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 60, 21. Prof. Wilson renders the phrase by "generator of the gods;" and remarks that "the compound is not *devajā*, 'god-born,' nor was Viśvāmitra of divine parentage" (R.V. iii. p. 85, note 4). This last remark overlooks the fact above alluded to of his father Gādhi being represented as an incarnation of Indra, and the circumstance that Prof. Wilson himself (following Sāyaṇa) had shortly before translated the words *prathamajāh brahmanah* in R.V. iii. 29, 15, as applied to the Kuśikas, by "the first-born of Brahṃā," although from the accent *brahman* here must be neuter, and the phrase seems to mean, as I have rendered above, "the first-born of prayer." The word *jā* is given in the Nighaṇṭu as one of the synonymes of *aputya*, "offspring;" and in R.V. i. 164, 15, where it is coupled with *ṛishajāh*, the compound *devajāh* is explained by Sāyaṇa as "born of the god," i.e. the sun, and by Prof. Wilson as "born of the gods." See

This verse (R.V. iii. 53, 9) which claims a superhuman origin for Viśvāmitra, and the following verses 11–13 of the same hymn, which assert the efficacy of his prayers, form a sort of parallel to the contents of R.V. vii. 33, where the supernatural birth of Vasishṭha (vv. 10 ff.), the potency of his intercession (vv. 2–5), and the sacred knowledge of his descendants (vv. 7 and 8), are celebrated.

As the hymns of Viśvāmitra and his descendants occupy so prominent a place in the Rig-veda Sanhitā, and as he is the alleged author of the text reputed the holiest in the entire Veda (iii. 62, 10), the Gāyatrī *par excellence*, there is no reason to doubt that, although he was a *rājanya*, he was unreservedly acknowledged by his contemporaries to be both a rishi and a priest. Nothing less than the uniform recognition and employment of the hymns handed down under his name as the productions of a genuine “seer,” could have sufficed to gain for them a place in the sacred canon.¹⁶⁰ It is true we possess little authentic information regarding the process by which the hymns of different families were admitted to this honour; but at least there is no tradition, so far as I am aware, that those of Viśvāmitra and his family were ever treated as *antilegomena*. And if we find that later works consider it necessary to represent his priestly character as a purely exceptional one, explicable only on the ground of supernatural merit acquired by ardent devotion, we must recollect that the course of ages had brought about a most material change in Indian society, that the sacerdotal function had at length become confined to the members of an exclusive caste, and that the exercise of such an office in ancient times by persons of the regal or mercantile classes had ceased to be intelligible, except upon the supposition of such extraordinary sanctity as was alleged in the case of Viśvāmitra.

It is worthy of remark that although the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (see above) declares that Śunaśśepa, as belonging to a priestly family, was called on to exercise the sacerdotal office immediately after his release, yet the anterior possession of divine knowledge is also ascribed to Viśvāmitra and the Gāthins, and that Śunaśśepa is represented as such also R.V. ix. 93, 1 = S.V. i. 538. (Compare Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, for 1866, p. 387 ff.)

¹⁶⁰ That many at least of these compositions were really the work of Viśvāmitra, or his descendants, is proved, as we have seen, by the fact that their names are mentioned in them.

ceeding to this sacred lore, as well as to the regal dignity of the race on which he became engrafted.

The fact of Viśvāmitra having been both a rishi and an officiating priest, is thus, as we have seen, and if ancient tradition is to be believed, undoubted. In fact, if we look to the number of Vedic hymns ascribed to him and to his family, to the long devotion to sacerdotal functions which this fact implies, and to the apparent improbability that a person who had himself stood in the position of a king should afterwards have become a professional priest, we may find it difficult to believe that although (as he certainly was) a scion of a royal stock, he had ever himself exercised regal functions. Professor Roth remarks (Litt. u. Gesch. p. 125) that there is nothing either in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, or in the hymns of the Rig-veda to shew that he had ever been a king.¹⁶¹ But on the other hand, as the same writer observes (p. 126), and as we shall hereafter see, there are numerous passages in the later authorities in which the fact of his being a king is distinctly, but perhaps untruly, recorded.

It is so well known, that I need scarcely adduce any proof of the fact, that in later ages Rājanyas and Vaiśyas, though entitled to sacrifice and to study the Vedas, were no longer considered to have any right to officiate as priests on behalf of others. I may, however, cite a few texts on this subject. Manu says, i. 88 :

Adhyāpanam adhyayanam yājñanam yājñanam tathā | dānam pratigrahaṁ chaiva Brāhmaṇānām akalpayat | 89. *Prajānām rakṣaṇam dānam ijjā'dhyayanam eva cha | viśhayeṣhv aprasaktiṁ cha kṣhattriyaṣya samāsataḥ |* 90. *Paśūnām rakṣaṇam dānam ijjā'dhyayanam eva cha | vaṇikpatham kusīdam cha Vaiśyaṣya kṛṣhim eva cha |* 91. *Ekam eva tu Sūdrasya prabhuḥ karma samādiśat | eteṣhām eva varṇānām śūśrūṣhām anasūyayā |* 88. He (Brahmā) ordained teaching, study, sacrificing, officiating for others at sacrifices, and the giving and receiving of gifts, to be the functions of Brāhmans. 89. Protection of the people, the giving of gifts, sacrifice, study, and non-addiction to objects of sense he assigned as the duties of the Kshattriya. 90. The tending of cattle, giving of gifts, sacrifice, study, commerce, the taking of usury, and agriculture he appointed to be the occupations of the Vaiśya. 91. But the

¹⁶¹ May not R.V. iii. 43, 5 (quoted above), however, be understood to point to something of this kind ?

lord assigned only one duty to the Sūdra, that of serving these other three classes without grudging."

Similarly it is said in the second of the Yajna-paribhāṣhā Sūtras, translated by Professor M. Müller (at the end of the ninth volume of the Journal of the German Oriental Society, p. xliii.), "that sacrifice is proper to the three classes, the Brāhman, Rājanya, and also the Vaiśya." ¹⁶² Prof. Müller also refers to Kātyāyana's Śrauta Sūtras, of which i. 1, 5 and 6 are as follows:

5. *Angahināśrotriya - śhaṇḍa - śūdra - varjam* | 6. *Brāhmaṇa-rājanya-vaiśyānām śruteḥ* | "Men, ¹⁶³ with the exception of those whose members

¹⁶² Prof. Müller does not give the original text.

¹⁶³ In one of these Sūtras of Kātyāyana (i. 1, 4) and its commentary a curious question (one of those which the Indian authors often think it necessary to raise and to settle, in order that their treatment of a subject may be complete and exhaustive) is argued, viz. whether the lower animals and the gods have any share in the practice of Vedic observances; or whether it is confined to men. The conclusion is that the gods cannot practise these rites, as they are themselves the objects of them, and as they have already obtained heaven and the other objects of desire with a view to which they are practised (*tatra devānām devatāntarābhāvād anadhikārah | na hy ātmānam uddīśya tyūgaḥ sambhavati | kincha | derūs cha prāpta-svargūdi-kāmūḥ | na cha teshām kinchid avāptaryam asti yad-arthaṁ karmūni kurvate* |). As regards the right of the lower animals to sacrifice, although the point is decided against them on the ground of their only "looking to what is near at hand, and not to the rewards of a future world" (*te hy āsannam eva chetayante na pāralaukikam phalam*); still it is considered necessary seriously to obviate a presumption in their favour that they seek to enjoy pleasure and avoid pain, and even appear to indicate their desire for the happiness of another world by seeming to observe some of the Vedic prescriptions: "Nanu uktaṁ śūnas' chaturdaśyām upavāsa-darśanāt śyenasya cha aśṭamyaṁ upavāsa-darśanāch cha te 'pi pāralaukikāṁ jñanti" iti | tat katham aragamya te dharma-mārtham upavasanti" iti | ye hi vedu-smṛiti-purāṇādikam pathanti te eva jñanti yad "anena karmanā idam phalam amutra prāpsyate" iti | na cha ete vedūdikam pathanti nāpy anyebhyaḥ āgamayanti | tena śāstrārtham avūtrāṁsaḥ phalam āmushmikaṁ akāmayantāḥ kathaṁ tat-sādhanāṁ karma kuryuḥ | tasmād na dharmārtham upavasanti iti | kimarthaṁ tarhy eteshām upavāsaḥ | uchyate | rogād arucir eshām | tarhi niyata-kāle kathaṁ rogaḥ | uchyate | niyata-kālūḥ api rogūḥ bhavanti yathā tritīyaka-chā-turthikādi-jvarūḥ | adhanūs cha ete | "But do not some say that 'from a dog having been noticed to fast on the fourteenth day of the month, and a hawk on the eighth, they also have a knowledge of matters connected with a future life?' But how is it known that these dogs and hawks fast from religious motives? For it is only those who read the Vedas, Smritis, Purāṇas, etc., who are aware that by means of such and such observances, such and such rewards will be obtained in another world. But these animals neither read the sacred books for themselves, nor ascertain their contents from others. How then, ignorant as they are of the contents of the scriptures, and devoid of any desire for future rewards, can they perform those rites which are the means of attaining them? It is therefore to be concluded that they do not fast from religious motives. But why, then, do they fast? We reply, because from sickness they have a disinclin-

are defective, those who have not read the Veda, eunuchs, and Sūdras, have a right to sacrifice. 6. It is Brāhmans, Rājanyas, and Vaiśyas (only who) according to the Veda (possess this privilege).”¹⁶⁴

ation for food. But how do they happen to be sick on certain fixed days? We answer, there are also certain diseases which occur on fixed days, as tertian and quartan agues. Another reason why the lower animals cannot sacrifice is that they are destitute of wealth (and so unable to provide the necessary materials).”

¹⁶⁴ “And yet,” Prof. Müller remarks (ibid), “concessions were made (to other and lower classes) at an early period. One of the best known cases is that of the Rathakāra. Then the Nishādasthapati, though a Nishāda chief and not belonging to the three highest classes was admitted to great sacrifices, e.g. to the gāvedhukacharu.” The S’atap. Br. i. 1, 4, 12, has the following words: *Tūni vai etāni chatvāri vāchah ehi*” *iti brāhmaṇasya āgahi*” *ādhrava*” *vaiśyasya cha rājanyabandhoś cha ādhāra*” *iti sūdrasya* | “[In the formula, *harishkrid ehi*, ‘come, o oblation-maker,’ referred to in the previous paragraph, and its modifications] these four (different) words are employed to express ‘come:’ *ehi*, ‘come,’ in the case of a Brāhman; *āgahi*, ‘come hither,’ in the case of a Vaiśya; *ādhrava*, ‘hasten hither,’ in the case of a Rājanyabandhu, and *ādhrāva*, ‘run hither,’ in the case of a Sūdra.” On this Prof. Weber remarks, in a note on his translation of the first adhyāya of the first book of the S’ P. Br. (Journ. Germ. Or. Soc. iv. p. 301): “The entire passage is of great importance, as it shews (in opposition to what Roth says in the first vol. of this Journal, p. 83) that the Sūdras were then admitted to the holy sacrifices of the Arians, and understood their speech, even if they did not speak it. The latter point cannot certainly be assumed as a necessary consequence, but it is highly probable; and I consequently incline to the view of those who regard the Sūdras as an Arian tribe which immigrated into India before the others.” See above, p. 141, note 251, and Ind. Stud. ii. 194, note, where Prof. Weber refers to the Mahābhārata, S’antip. verses 2304 ff. which are as follows: *Śvāhākāra-vashatkāraṇa mantrah sūdre na vidyate | tasmāch chhūdraḥ pākayajnaṁ yajitāravataṁ śrayam | pūrnapātramayīm ākuḥ pākayajnasya dakṣiṇīm | sūdraḥ Pajjavano nāma sahasrāṇām śataṁ dadau | Aindrāgnyena vidhānena dakṣiṇīm iti naḥ śrutam* | “The svāhākāra, and the vashatkāra, and the mantras do not belong to a Sūdra. Wherefore let a man of this class sacrifice with pākayajnas, being incapacitated for (Vedic) rites (*śrauta vratopāya-hīnaḥ* | Comm.). They say that the gift (*dakṣiṇī*) proper for a pākayajna consists of a full dish (*pūrnapātramayī*). A Sūdra called Pajjavana gave as a present a hundred thousand (of these pūrnapātras) after the Aindrāgnya rule.” Here, says Prof. Weber, “the remarkable tradition is recorded that Pajjavana, i.e. Sūdās, who was so famous for his sacrifices, and who is celebrated in the Rig-veda as the patron of Viśvāmitra and enemy of Vaśiṣṭha, was a Sūdra.” In the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, vii. 11, 24, the duties of a Sūdra are described to be “submissiveness, purity, honest service to his master, sacrifice without mantras, abstinence from theft, truth, and the protection of cows and Brāhmans” (*sūdrasya sannatiḥ sauchaṁ sevā śrīmāny amāyagā | amantrayajno hy asteyam satyam go-vipra-rakṣaṇam* |). The Commentator defines *amantrayajnaḥ* thus *namaskāreṇaṁ pancha-yagnādashikṣānam*, “the practice of the five sacrifices with obeisance,” and quotes Yājñavalkya. See also Wilson’s Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. iii. p. 87, and notes; Muller’s Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 203; the same author’s Essay, at the end of the ninth vol. of the Journ. Germ. Or. Soc. p. lxxiii.; and Bohtlingk and Roth’s Lexicon, s.v. *pākayajna*.

According to the Ait. Br. vii. 19, "the Brāhman alone of the four castes has the right of consuming things offered in sacrifice" (*etāḥ vai prajāḥ hutādo yad brāhmaṇāḥ | atha etāḥ ahutādo yad rājanyo vaiśyaḥ śūdraḥ*). And yet, as Prof. Müller observes, it is said in the Satap. Br. v. 5, 4, 9: *Chatvāro vai varṇāḥ brāhmaṇo rājanyo vaiśyaḥ śūdro na ha eteshāṃ ekaśchana bhavati yaḥ somaṃ vamati | sa yad ha eteshāṃ ekaśchit syāt syād ha eva prāyaśchittiḥ* | "There are four classes, the Brāhman, Rājanya, Vaiśya, and Śūdra. There is no one of these who vomits (*i.e.*, I suppose, dislikes) the soma. If anyone of them however should do so, let there be an atonement."

Professor Weber, by whom also these words are quoted (Ind. St. x. 12), remarks that "they leave open the possibility of Rājanyas, Vaiśyas, and even Śūdras partaking of the soma, the only consequence being that they must as an expiation perform the Sautramaṇī rite."

In the twenty-first of the Yajna-paribhāṣhā Sūtras, translated by Müller, p. xlvi., it is declared that the priestly dignity belongs to the Brāhmans; and it is laid down by the Indian authorities that even when the sacrifice is of a kind intended exclusively for Kshattriyas, the priest must still be a Brāhman and not a Kshattriya, the reason being that men of the former class only can eat the remains of the sacrifice (see Kātyāyana's Sr. Sūtras, i. 2, 8): *Brāhmaṇāḥ ritrijo bhaksha-pratishedhād itarayoh*, "the Brāhmans only are priests, because the other two castes are forbidden to eat (the remains of the sacrifice)". See also Weber, Ind. St. x. pp. 17 and 31, and the passages of the Ait. Br. viii. 24 and 27, referred to in pages 30 and 31: 24. *Na ha vai apurohitasya rājno devāḥ annam adanti | tasmād rājā 'yakshamāno brāhmaṇam puro dadhita* | "The gods do not eat the food offered by a king who has no purohita. Wherefore (even) when not about to sacrifice, the king should put forward a Brāhman (as his domestic priest)." 27. *Yo ha vai trīn purohitāṃs trīn purodhātṛīn veda sa brāhmaṇaḥ purohitāḥ | sa vadeta purodhāyai | Agnir vāra purohitāḥ pṛithivī purodhātā cāyur vāra purohito 'ntariksham purodhātā ādityo vāra purohito dyauḥ purodhātā | esha ha vai purohito yaḥ evaṃ veda atha sa tirohito yaḥ evaṃ na veda | tasya rājā mitraṃ bhavati dvishantam apabādhati | yasyaivaṃ vidvān brāhmaṇo rāshṭra-gopaḥ purohitāḥ | kshattrena kshattriṃ jayati balena balam aśnute | yasyaivaṃ vidvān brāhmaṇo rāshṭra-gopaḥ purohitoḥ | tasmai viśaḥ sanjānate sammukhāḥ ekamanasaḥ | yasyaivaṃ vidvān brāhmaṇo*

rāshṭra-gopaḥ purohitaḥ | “The Brāhman who knows the three purohitas, and their three appointers, is a (proper) purohita, and should be nominated to this office. Agni is one purohita, and the earth appoints him; Vāyu another, and the air appoints him; the Sun is a third, and the sky appoints him. He who knows this is a (proper) purohita; and he who does not know this is to be rejected. (Another) king becomes the friend of the prince who has a Brāhman possessing such knowledge for his purohita and the protector of his realm; and he vanquishes his enemy. He who has a Brāhman possessing etc. (as above) conquers (another’s) regal power by (his own) regal power, and acquires another’s force by (his own) force. With him who has a Brāhman etc. (as above) the people are openly united and in harmony.”

I add another passage from the same Brāhmaṇa, which might also have been properly introduced in an earlier chapter of this work (chapt. i. sect. iii.) as it relates to the creation of the four castes :

Ait. Br. vii. 19. *Prajāpatiḥ yajnam asṛjata | yajnaṁ sṛṣṭam anu brahma-kshattre asṛjīyetām | brahma-kshattre anu dravyaḥ prajāḥ asṛjyanta hutādaś cha ahutādaś cha brahma eva anu hutādaḥ kshattram anvahutādaḥ | etāḥ vai prajāḥ hutādo yad brāhmaṇāḥ | atha etāḥ ahutādo yad rājanyo vaiśyaḥ śūdraḥ | tābhyo yajnaḥ udakrāmat | tam brahma-kshattre anvaitām yāny eva brahmaṇaḥ āyudhāni tair brahma anvait yāni kshattrasya tam (ṛ taiḥ) kshattram | etāni vai brahmaṇaḥ āyudhāni yad yajnāyudhāni | atha etāni kshattrasya āyudhāni yad asva-rathaḥ kavachaḥ ishū-dhanva | tam kshattram ananvāpya nyavarttata | āyudhebhyo ha sma asya vijamānaḥ parāṇ eva eti | atha enam brahma anvait | tam āpnot | tam āptvā parastād nirudhya atishṭhat | sa āptaḥ parastād niruddhas tishṭhan jñātvā svāny āyudhāni brahma upāvarttata | tasmād ha apy etarhi yajno brahmany eva brāhmaṇeshu pratishṭhitaḥ | atha enat kshattram anvāgachhat tad abravīt “upa mā asmin yajne hrayasva” iti | tat “tathā” ity abravīt “tad vai nidhāya svāny āyudhāni brahmaṇaḥ eva āyudhair brahmaṇo rūpeṇa brahma bhūtvā yajnam upāvarttasva” iti | “tathā” iti tat kshattram nidhāya svāny āyudhāni brahmaṇaḥ eva āyudhair brahmaṇo rūpeṇa brahma bhūtvā yajnam upāvarttata | tasmād ha apy etarhi kshattriyo yajamāno nidhāya eva svāny āyudhāni brahmaṇaḥ eva āyudhair brahmaṇo rūpeṇa brahma bhūtvā yajnam upāvarttate |*

“Prajāpati created sacrifice. After sacrifice, Brāhmān (sacred know-

ledge) and Kshātra (regal power)¹⁶⁵ were created. After these, two kinds of creatures were formed, viz. those who eat, and those who do not eat, oblations. After Brāhmān came the eaters of oblations, and after Kshātra those who do not eat them. These are the eaters of oblations, viz. the Brāhmans. Those who do not eat them are the Rājanya, the Vaiśya, and the Sūdra. From these creatures sacrifice departed. Brāhmān and Kshātra followed it, Brāhmān with the implements proper to itself, and Kshātra with those which are proper to itself. The implements of Brāhmān are the same as those of sacrifice, while those of Kshātra are a horse-chariot,¹⁶⁶ armour, and a bow and arrows. Kshātra turned back, not having found the sacrifice; which turns aside, afraid of the implements of Kshātra. Brāhmān followed after it, and reached it; and having done so, stood beyond, and intercepting it. Being thus found and intercepted, sacrifice, standing still and recognizing its own implements, approached to Brāhmān. Wherefore now also sacrifice depends upon Brāhmān, upon the Brāhmans. Kshātra then followed Brāhmān, and said, 'invite me'¹⁶⁷ (too to participate) in this sacrifice.' Brāhmān replied, 'so be it: then laying aside thy own implements, approach the sacrifice with the implements of Brāhmān, in the form of Brāhmān, and having become Brāhmān.'¹⁶⁸

¹⁶⁵ The two principles or functions represented by the Brāhmans and Kshattriyas respectively.

¹⁶⁶ See Weber, Indische Studien, ix. p. 318.

¹⁶⁷ See Weber, in the same page as last quoted.

¹⁶⁸ This idea may be further illustrated by a reference to several passages adduced by Professor Weber, Ind. St. x. 17, who remarks: "Hence every Rājanya and Vaiśya becomes through the consecration for sacrifice (*dīkshā*) a Brāhmaṇ during its continuance, and is to be addressed as such in the formula employed," and cites S'. P. Br. iii. 2, 1, 39 f., part of which has been already quoted above, in p. 136, note; and also Ait. Br. vii. 23: *Sa ha dīkshamāṇaḥ eva brāhmaṇatām abhyupaiti* | "He a king, when consecrated, enters into the condition of a Brāhmaṇ." See the rest of the section and sections 24, 25, and 31 in Dr. Haug's translation. The S'. P. Br. xiii. 4, 1, 3, says, in opposition to the opinion of some, that an *aśvamedha*, which is a sacrifice proper to Rājanya, should be begun in summer, which is their season: *tad vai vasante eva abhyūraheta* | *vasanto vai brāhmaṇasya rituḥ* | *yah u vai kaś'cha yajate brāhmaṇī-bhūya eva eva yajate* | "Let him commence in spring, which is the Brāhmaṇ's season. Whosoever sacrifices does so after having as it were become a Brāhmaṇ." So too Kātyāyana says in his S'rāuta Sūtras vii. 4, 12: "*Brāhmaṇa*" *ity eva vaiśya-rājanyayor api* | "The word Brāhmaṇa is to be addressed to a Vaiśya and a Rājanya also." On which the Commentator annotates *Vaiśya-rājanyayor api yajne "dīkshito 'yam brāhmaṇaḥ" ity eva vaktavyam* | *na "dīkshito 'yaṁ kshattriyo vaiśyo vā" iti* | "The formula 'This Brāhmaṇ has been consecrated' is to be used at the sacrifice of a Vaiśya

Kshättra rejoined, 'Be it so,' and, laying aside its own implements, approached the sacrifice with those of Brāhmān, in the form of Brāhmān, and having become Brāhmān. Wherefore now also a Kshattriya when sacrificing, laying aside his own implements, approaches the sacrifice with those of Brāhmān, in the form of Brāhmān, and having become Brāhmān."

The Mahābhārata, Śāntip. verses 2280 f. distinctly defines the duty of a Kshattriya in reference to sacrifice and sacred study: *Kshattriya-syāpi yo dharmaṣ tuṁ te vakshyāmi Bhārata | dadyād rājan na yācheta yajeta na cha yājayet | nādhyāpayed adhyāta prajāś cha paripālayet |* "I will tell thee also the duties of a Kshattriya. Let him give, and not ask (gifts); let him sacrifice, but not officiate for others at sacrifices; let him not teach, but study; and let him protect the people."

It is clear that these passages which restrict the right of officiating ministerially at sacrifices to the members of the Brahmanical order,¹⁶⁹ represent a very different state of opinion and practice from that which prevailed in the earlier Vedic age, when Viśvāmītra, a Rājanya, and his relatives, were highly esteemed as the authors of sacred poetry, and were considered as perfectly authorized to exercise sacerdotal functions.

The result of the conflict between the opposing interests represented by Vasishṭha and Viśvāmītra respectively, is thus described by Professor

and a Rājanya also; and not the words 'this Rājanya, or this Vaisya, has been consecrated.' "

¹⁶⁹ It appears from Arrian that the Greeks were correctly informed of this prerogative of the Brāhmins. He says, *Indica*, ch. xi. . *Καὶ ὅστις δὲ ἰδίᾳ θύει, ἐξηγητῆς αὐτῷ τῆς θυσιῆς τῶν τις σοφιστῶν τούτων γίνεται, ὥς οὐκ ἂν ἄλλως κεχαρισμένα τοῖς θεοῖς θύσαντας.* "And whosoever sacrifices in private has one of these sophists" (so the highest of the classes, here said to be seven in number, is designated) "as director of the ceremony, since sacrifice could not otherwise be offered acceptably to the gods." Arrian makes another assertion (*ibid.* xii.) which, if applied to the time when he wrote (in the second Christian century), is not equally correct. After observing that the several classes were not allowed to intermarry, nor to practice two professions, nor to pass from one class into another, he adds: *Μοῦνον σφίσιν ἀνέιται σοφιστὴν ἐκ παντὸς γένεος γενέσθαι· ὅτι οὐ μαλθακὰ τοῖσι σοφιστῆσιν εἰσὶ τὰ πρήγματα, ἀλλὰ πάντων ταλαιπωρότατα.* "Only it is permitted to a person of any class among them to become a sophist; for the life of that class is not luxurious, but the most toilsome of all." However indubitably true the first part of this sentence may have been in the age of Viśvāmītra, it cannot be correctly predicated of the age of Arrian, or even of the period when India was invaded by Alexander the Great. The mistake may have arisen from confounding the Buddhists with the Brāhmins, or from supposing that all the Brahmanical Indians, who adopted an ascetic life, were regarded as "sophists."

Roth at the close of his work on the literature and history of the Veda, which has been so often quoted, p. 141 : "Vasishṭha, in whom the future position of the Brahmans is principally foreshadowed, occupies also a far higher place in the recollections of the succeeding centuries than his martial rival ; and the latter succumbs in the conflict out of which the holy race of Brahṁāvartta was to emerge. Vasishṭha is the sacerdotal hero of the new order of things. In Viśvāmitra the ancient condition of military shepherd-life in the Punjab is thrown back for ever into the distance. This is the general historical signification of the contest between the two Vedic families, of which the literature of all the succeeding periods has preserved the recollection."

SECT. VII.—*Do the details in the last two sections enable us to decide in what relation Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra stood to each other as priests of Sudās ?*

It appears from the data supplied in the two preceding sections that both Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra are represented as priests of a king called Sudās. This is shewn, as regards the former rishi (see pp. 319 ff., above), by R.V. vii. 18, 4, 5, and 21-25 ; and vii. 33, 1-6, where he is said to have interceded with Indra for Sudās, who, as appears from verse 25 of the second of these hymns, was the son of Pijavana. A similar relation is shewn by R.V. iii. 53, 9-13 to have subsisted between Viśvāmitra and Sudās (see above, p. 342) ; and although Sudās is not in that passage identified with the king who was Vasishṭha's patron, by the addition of his patronymic, we are told in the Nirukta, ii. 24, that he was the same person, the son of Pijavana. There is therefore no doubt that, according to ancient tradition, the two rishis were both priests of the same prince. It further appears that the Bharatas, with whom, as we have seen, Viśvāmitra was connected, are in R.V. vii. 33, 6 referred to as in hostility with Sudās and his priest. Are we then to conclude that the one set of facts excludes the other—that the two rishis could not both have been the family-priests of Sudās ?

There is no reason to arrive at such an inference. Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra could not, indeed, have been the domestic priests of Sudās at one and the same period. But they may have been so at different

times ; and the one may have supplanted the other. It is, however, very difficult to derive from the imperfect materials supplied in the passages to which I have referred any clear conception of the shape and course which the contest between these two rivals took, or to fix the periods at which they respectively enjoyed their patron's favour. Prof. Roth thinks¹⁷⁰ that some light is thrown on this obscure subject by the different parts of the 53rd hymn of the third mandala of the Rig-veda. This composition, as it stands, contains, as he considers, fragments of hymns by Viśvāmitra or his descendants, of different dates ; and the verses (9-13), in which that rishi represents himself and the Kauśikas as being the priests of Sudās, are, in his opinion, earlier than the concluding verses (21-24),¹⁷¹ which consist of imprecations directed against Vasishṭha. These last verses, he remarks, contain an expression of wounded pride, and threaten vengeance against an enemy who had come into possession of some power or dignity which Viśvāmitra himself had previously enjoyed. And as we find from one of his hymns (the 53rd) that he and his adherents had at one time led Sudās to victory, and enjoyed a corresponding consideration ;—while from Vasishṭha's hymns it is clear that he and his family had also been elevated in consequence of similar claims to a like position ;—it would seem to result that Viśvāmitra had cursed Vasishṭha for this very reason that he had been supplanted by him. The former with his Kuśikas had through the growing influence of his rival been driven away by Sudās to the Bharatas the enemies of that prince and of the Trītsus ; and then

¹⁷⁰ See Litt. und Gesch. des Weda, pp. 121 ff.

¹⁷¹ I have (above, p. 343) characterized these verses as obscure and have left them untranslated. The portions of the following version which are printed in italics are doubtful : verse 22. "He (or, it) vexes (*turns the edge of*) even an axe ; and breaks even a *sword*. A *seething* cauldron, even, o Indra, when *over-heated*, casts out foam. 23. O men, no notice is taken of the arrow. They lead away the *intelligent* (*lodha*) looking upon him as a beast. Men do not, however, pit a hack to run against a racer ; they do not lead an ass before horses. 24. These sons of Bharata, o Indra, desire separation, not vicinity. They constantly urge the horse as *if to a distance* ; they carry about the *bow* in the battle." The reader may consult Prof. Wilson's translation R.V. vol. iii. p. 89 f, as well as Roth's Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 109 f. In his Illustrations of the Nirukta, p. 42, Roth conjectures that both *lodha* and *paśu*, in verse 23, may denote animals of different natures, and that the clause may mean something to the same effect as "they look on the wolf as if it were a hare." In his Lexicon, s.v. *paśu*, he takes that word to denote a head of cattle (ein Stück Vieh) as a term of contempt. He takes *jyūrāja*, in verse 24, to mean "having the impulsive force (?) (*Schnell-Kraft*) of a bow-string."

vowed vengeance against their enemies. Roth remarks that if this conjecture appears too bold, which he does not allow, there is no alternative but to regard verses 9–11 of R.V. iii. 53, as interpolated, and to hold that Viśvāmitra had always been allied with the Bharatas. But, as he urges, in a period such as that which the hymns of the Veda represent to us—a time of feud and foray among the small neighbouring tribes, when the power of the leaders of families and petty chiefs was unlimited, when we observe that the ten kings were allied against Sudās—in a period of subdivided dominion like this it would be far more surprising to find a family so favoured by the gods as that of Viśvāmitra or Vasishṭha in continued and undisturbed possession of influence over any one of these chieftains, than to see mutual aggression, hostility, and vindictiveness, prevailing even among families and clans united to one another by community of language and manners. It is further evident from later tradition, as Roth remarks, that Vasishṭha and his family had not always been the objects of Sudās's favour; but had, on the contrary, been at some time or other sufferers from his enmity or that of his house; and in proof of this he refers to the passage which has been cited above (p. 328) from Sāyana's note on R.V. vii. 32, and the Sātyāyana and Tāṇḍya Brāhmaṇas, as there quoted; and also to the 176th adhyāya of the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 6696 ff., which will be adduced in a future section.

According to Roth's view (p. 124) the alienation between Sudās and Vasishṭha fomented by Viśvāmitra was only of temporary duration, and we must, therefore, understand that according to his view, the former rishi and his family remained eventually victors in the contest for influence between themselves and their rivals.

Professor Weber, in a note appended to an article by Dr. A. Kuhn in page 120 of the first volume of his *Indische Studien*, expresses a different opinion. "The testimonies," he says, "adduced by Roth, pp. 122 ff., according to which Sudās appears in the Epic age as hostile to Brahmanical interests, stand in opposition to his assertion that Vasishṭha's family finally banished Viśvāmitra and the Kuśikas from the court of that prince. The enmity between the latter and Vasishṭha, the prototype of Brahmanhood, is thus by no means of temporary duration (Roth, p. 124), but the very contrary." The passages cited by Roth, which Weber here claims as supporting his

own view, are Manu, vii. 41 (see above, p. 296), the Anukramanī with the Sātyāyana and Tāndya Brāhmaṇas quoted in p. 328, and the 126th and following sections of the Ādip. of the M. Bh. which will be adduced hereafter. To these may be added the text from the Kaushītakī Brāhmaṇa, cited in p. 328. If Sudās became ultimately reconciled to Vasishṭha, and re-instated him and his relatives in their position of court priests, to the exclusion of the rival family of Viśvāmitra, it seems hard to understand, according to Professor Weber's argument, how that prince's name should have been handed down by tradition as one of the most prominent examples of impiety displayed in resistance to Brahmanical pretensions. It is, however, to be observed that, except in the text of Manu, it is the descendants of Sudās, and not the king himself, who are charged with the outrages committed against Vasishṭha's family; and that in the passage of the M. Bh. above referred to (Ādip. vv. 7669 ff.) the son of Sudās is represented as becoming ultimately reconciled to Vasishṭha.¹⁷² And if the passages, which have been cited above from the Rig-veda (pp. 330 f.) in allusion to Sudās's deliverance by the gods, refer to a real person, and to the

¹⁷² It is also worthy of remark that the Anuśāsanap. of the M. Bh. contains a conversation between Vasishṭha and Saudāsa (the son, or one of the descendants of, Sudās) about the pre-eminent purity and excellence of cows, verse 3732: *Etasminn eva kūle tu Vasishṭhum rishi-suttamam | Ikshvāku-vamsajo rājā Saudāso vadatām varah | sarva-loka-charaṇṇaṁ siddhum brahma-koshaṁ saṁtānam | purohitam abhi-praśṭum abhivādyaopachokrame | Saudāsa uvācha | trailohye bhagavan kṛṇsvit pavitraṁ kathyate 'nagha | yat kīrttayan sadā marṭtyaḥ prāpnuyāt punyam uttanam |* "At this time the eloquent king Saudāsa, sprung from the race of Ikshvāku, proceeded, after salutation, to make an enquiry of his family-priest Vasishṭha, the eternal saint, the most excellent of rishis, who was able to traverse all the world, and was a treasure of sacred knowledge: 'What, o venerable and sinless man, is declared to be the purest thing in the three worlds, by constantly celebrating which one may acquire the highest merit?' Vasishṭha in reply expatiates at great length on the merit resulting from bestowing cows, and ascribes to these animals some wonderful properties, as that they are the "support of all beings" (*pratishṭhā bhūtānām*, verse 3736), "the present and the future" (*gīvo bhūtāṁ cha bhaviṣyāṁ cha*, 3737), and describes the cow as "pervading the universe, mother of the past and future" (*gayā sarvam idaṁ vyāptam jagat sthūvara-jangamam | tām dhenuṁ śirasā vande bhūta-bharyasya mātaram*, 3799). The sequel is thus told in verse 3801: *Varaṁ idam iti bhūmido (bhūmipo?) vichintya pravaram risher vacchanāṁ tato mahātmā | vyasryajata nīyatātmanā devajebhyo subahu cha go-dhanam āptarāṁs lokān |* "The great, self-subduing king, considering that these words of the rishi were most excellent, lavished on the Brāhmins very great wealth in the shape of cows, and obtained the worlds."—So here we find the son of Saudāsa extolled as a saint.

same individual with whom we are at present concerned, they are difficult to reconcile with these traditions in the Brāhmaṇas, Mahābhārata, and Purāṇas; inasmuch as they are not said to be the productions of Viśvāmitra or his descendants, and as they necessarily imply that Sudās was a pious prince who worshipped the popular deities in the way prescribed by the rishis by whom he was commemorated, since the latter would not otherwise have celebrated him in their hymns as a conspicuous object of divine favour. Tradition, too, as we have seen (p. 268) represents Sudās to have been the author of a Vedic hymn. The verses of the 104th hymn of the seventh book which I have quoted (above, p. 327) do not appear to contribute any further aid towards the solution of the question under consideration. Assuming that they contain a curse aimed at Viśvāmitra we have no means of ascertaining when they were uttered; whether the charge preferred against Vasishṭha preceded or followed the ascendancy of his rival.

We seem, therefore, to possess no sufficient data for settling the question of the relations in which Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra respectively stood to king Sudās, further than that they both appear, from the hymns of the Rig-veda, to have been, at one period or another, his family priests; but which of the two was the first, and which the last, to enjoy the king's favour, must, according to all appearance, remain a mystery.

SECT. VIII.—*Story of Triśanku.*

I shall now proceed to adduce the different legends in the Purāṇas, the Rāmāyaṇa, and the Mahābhārata, in which Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra are represented as coming into conflict.

In the third chapter of the fourth book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa (Wilson, vol. iii. pp. 284 ff.) we find a story about a king Satyavrata, called also Triśanku, the 26th in descent from Ikshvāku, who had become degraded to the condition of a Chāṇḍāla, about whom it is briefly related, iv. 3, 13 : *Drādaśa-vārshikyām anāvṛiṣṭyāṁ Viśvāmitra - kalatrāpatya - poshaṇārthaṁ chāṇḍāla - pratigraha - pariharaṇāya cha Jāhnavī-tīra - nyagrodhe mṛiga-māṁsam anudinam babandha* | 14. *Paritusṭeṇa cha Viśvāmitreṇa sa-śarīraḥ svargam āropitaḥ* | “During a twelve years' drought he daily suspended deer's flesh for the support of Viśvāmitra's wife and children

on a nyagrodha-tree on the banks of the Ganges, intending by this means to spare them the (humiliation of) receiving a gift from a Chāṇḍāla; and was in consequence raised bodily to heaven by Viśvāmitra, who was gratified (with his conduct)."¹⁷³

This story is told at greater length in the Harivaṁśa (sections 12 and 13) where Vasishṭha also is introduced. I have already (p. 337) remarked on the super-human longevity ascribed to this sage, who is represented as contemporary both with Ikshvāku, and with his descendants down to the sixty-first generation. But Indian mythology, with its boundless resources in supernatural machinery, and in the doctrine of transmigration, can reconcile all discrepancies, and explain away all anachronisms, making any sage re-appear at any juncture when his presence may be required, another and yet the same.

The Harivaṁśa states that Satyavrata (Trisanku) had been expelled from his home by his father for the offence of carrying off the young wife of one of the citizens under the influence of a criminal passion (verse 718. *Yena bhāryyā hṛitā pūrvam kṛitodvāhā parasya vai* | 720. *Jahāra kāmāt kanyām sa kasyachit puravāsinaḥ*); and that Vasishṭha did not interfere to prevent his banishment. His father retired to the woods to live as a hermit. In consequence of the wickedness which had been committed, Indra did not rain for a period of twelve years. At that time Viśvāmitra had left his wife and children and gone to practice austerities on the sea-shore. His wife, driven to extremity by want, was on the point of selling her second son for a hundred cows, in order to support the others; but this arrangement was stopped by the intervention of Satyavrata, who liberated the son when bound,¹⁷⁴ and

¹⁷³ In the Mahābh. S'āntip. verses 5330 ff. (referred to by Weber, Ind. St. i. 475, note) there is a story of Viśvāmitra determining to eat dog's flesh in a period of famine between the end of the Tretā-age and the beginning of the Dvāpara; and holding a conversation on this subject with a Chāṇḍāla. The circumstance is referred to in Manu, x. 108 *Kṣudhārttaś' chātum abhyāgād Viśvāmitraḥ śva-jūghaṇīm* | *Chāṇḍālu-hastūd ādāya dharmādhorma-ricakṣaṇaḥ* | "And Viśvāmitra, who knew right and wrong, resolved to eat a dog's thigh, taking it from the hand of a Chāṇḍāla."

¹⁷⁴ See in Ind. Stud. ii. 121 ff. Professor Roth's remarks on the peculiar relation in which he regards this story as standing to that of S'unas'sēpa, as given in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa. The various incidents in the one present in many respects a curious parallel to those of the other, which he considers can hardly be accidental; and he thinks this version of the legend of Trisanku may have arisen out of a transformation and distortion of that of S'unas'sēpa.

maintained the family by providing them with the flesh of wild animals: and according to his father's injunction, consecrated himself for the performance of a silent penance for twelve years (verse 732. *Upāṁśa - vratam āsthāya dīkshāṁ dvādaśa - vārshikīm | pitur niyogād avahat tasmīn vana-gate nṛipe*). The story proceeds thus:

Verse 733. *Ayodhyāṁ chaiva rūkṣtraṁ cha tathaivāntahpuram muniḥ | yājñopādhyāya-sambandhād Vaśiṣṭhaḥ paryarakshata | Satyavrataḥ tu bālyād vai bhāvino 'rthasya vā balāt | Vaśiṣṭhe 'bhyadhikam manyuṁ dhārayāmāsa nityadā |* 735. *Pitrā hi tam tadā rājyāt tyajyamānaṁ svam ātmajam | na vārayāmāsa munir Vaśiṣṭhaḥ kāraṇena ha | pāṇi-grahaṇa-mantrāṇaṁ niṣṭhū syāt saptame pade | na cha Satyavrataḥ tas-mād dhṛitavān saptame pade | jñāna dharmān Vaśiṣṭhaḥ tu na mān trātīti Bhārata | Satyavrataḥ tadā roṣaṁ Vaśiṣṭhe manasā 'karot | guṇa-buddhyā tu bhagavān Vaśiṣṭhaḥ kṛitavāns tadā | na cha Satyavrataḥ tasya tam upāṁśum abudhyata | 740. Tena tv idānīm vahatā dīkshāṁ tām durvāḥaṁ bhuvī | "kulasya niṣkṛītis tāta kṛitā sā vai bhaved" iti | na tam Vaśiṣṭho bhagavān pitrā tyaktaṁ nyavārayat | abhisheksyāmy aham putram asyety evam matir muneḥ | sa tu dvādaśa-varshāṇi tām dīkshāṁ udcchan bali | avidyamāne māmse tu Vaśiṣṭhasya mahātmanah | sarva-kāma-dughāṁ dogdhrīm dadarśa sa nṛipātmajaḥ | tām vai krodhāc cha mohāc cha śramāc chaiva kṣudhārditaḥ | daśa-dharma-gato rājā jaghāna Janamejaya | 745. Tach cha mām-saṁ svayaṁ caiva Viśvāmitrasya chātmajan | bhojayāmāsa tach chhṛutvā Vaśiṣṭho 'py asya chukrudhe | 750. Viśvāmitras tu dārāṇaṁ āgato bharaṇe kṛite | sa tu tasmai varam prādād muniḥ prītas Trīśankave | chhandyamāno vareṇātha varam vatre nṛipātmajaḥ | saśarīro vraje svargam ity evaṁ yāchito varaḥ | anācṛiṣṭi-bhaye tasmīn gate dvādaśa-vārshike | pitrye 'bhishichya rājye tu yājñayāmāsa tam muniḥ | mi-shatām devatānām cha Vaśiṣṭhasya cha Kauśikaḥ | saśarīraṁ tadā tam tu divam ūropayāt prabhuḥ |*

733. "Meanwhile Vaśiṣṭha, from the relation subsisting between the king (Satyavrata's father) and himself, as disciple¹⁷⁵ and spiritual preceptor, governed the city of Ayodhyā, the country, and the interior apartments of the royal palace. But Satyavrata, whether through folly or the force of destiny, cherished constantly an increased indignation against Vaśiṣṭha, who for a (proper) reason had not interposed to pre-

¹⁷⁵ Literally "the person in whose behalf sacrifice was to be performed."

vent his exclusion from the royal power by his father. 'The formulas of the marriage ceremonial are only binding,' said Satyavrata, 'when the seventh step has been taken,¹⁷⁶ and this had not been done when I seized the damsel: still Vaśishṭha, who knows the precepts of the law, does not come to my aid.' Thus Satyavrata was incensed in his mind against Vaśishṭha, who, however, had acted from a sense of what was right. Nor did Satyavrata understand (the propriety of) that silent penance imposed upon him by his father. . . . 740. When he had supported this arduous rite, (he supposed that) he had redeemed his family position. The venerable muni Vaśishṭha did not, however, (as has been said) prevent his father from setting him aside, but resolved to install his son as king. When the powerful prince Satyavrata had endured the penance for twelve years, he beheld, when he was without flesh to eat, the milch cow of Vaśishṭha which yielded all objects of desire; and under the influence of anger, delusion, and exhaustion, distressed by hunger, and failing in the ten duties [the opposites of which are then enumerated] he slew her . . . (745) and both partook of her flesh himself, and gave it to Viśvāmitra's sons to eat. Vaśishṭha hearing of this, became incensed against him," and imposed on him the name of Triśanku as he had committed three sins (verses 747-749). "750. On his return home, Viśvāmitra was gratified by the support which his wife had received, and offered Triśanku the choice of a boon. When this proposal was made, Triśanku chose the boon of ascending bodily to heaven. All apprehension from the twelve years' drought being now at an end, the muni (Viśvāmitra) installed Triśanku in his father's kingdom, and offered sacrifice on his behalf. The mighty Kauśika then, in spite of the resistance of the gods and of Vaśishṭha, exalted the king alive to heaven."

The legend of Triśanku is also related, though differently, in the *Bālakāṇḍa* of the *Rāmāyaṇa*; but as it is there introduced as a portion of the history of Viśvāmitra's various contests with Vaśishṭha recorded in the 51st to 65th sections of that book, I shall reserve it till I take up that narrative.

¹⁷⁶ "The next ceremony is the bride's stepping seven steps. It is the most material of all the nuptial rites; for the marriage is complete and irrevocable so soon as she has taken the seventh step, and no sooner." Colebrooke's *Misc. Ess.* i. 218, where further details will be found.

SECT. IX.—*Legend of Hariśchandra.*

The son of Trisanku, the subject of the preceding story, was Hariśchandra, whose name is mentioned in the Vishṇu P., but without any allusion to the events of his life. According to the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa,¹⁷⁷ however, he gave up his whole country, and sold his wife and son, and finally himself, in satisfaction of Viśvāmitra's demands for money. The following is a summary of the story as there told, book i. sections 7-9. We may perhaps regard it as having in part a polemical import, and as intended to represent Viśvāmitra, the Kshattriya rival of the Brāhmins, in the most unfavourable colours. The sufferings of Hariśchandra, his wife, and son, are very pathetically depicted, and the effect of the various incidents is heightened with great artistic skill. The story, in fact, appears to me one of the most touching to be found in Indian literature. Hariśchandra, the Purāṇa tells us, was a royal rishi (*rājarshi*) who lived in the Tretā age, and was renowned for his virtues, and the universal prosperity, moral and physical, which prevailed during his reign. On one occasion, when hunting, the king heard a sound of female lamentation which proceeded, it appears, from the Sciences who were becoming mastered by the austere-fervid sage Viśvāmitra, in a way they had never been before by anyone else; and were consequently crying out in alarm at his superiority. In fulfilment of his duty as a Kshattriya to defend the weak, and inspired by the god Gaṇeśa, who had entered into him, Hariśchandra exclaimed (i. 7, 12) “ ‘What sinner is this who is binding fire in the hem of his garment, while I, his lord, am present, resplendent with force and fiery vigour?’ He shall to-day enter on his long sleep, pierced in all his limbs by arrows, which, by their discharge from my bow, illuminate all the quarters of the firmament” (12. *Ko'yam badhnāti vastrānte pāvakaṃ pāpa-kṛin naraḥ | baloṣṇa-tejasā dipte mayi patyāv upasthite |* 13. *So'dya mat-kārmukā-kṣhepa - vidīpita - digantaraiḥ | śarair vibhinna - sarvāṅgo dīrghanidrām pravekshyati |*). Viśvāmitra was provoked by this address. In consequence of his wrath the Sciences instantly perished, and Hariśchandra, trembling like the leaf of an aśvattha tree, submissively represented that

¹⁷⁷ The same story is told in the Padma Purāṇa also. See Wilson's V.P. vol. iii. p. 287, and note. The glory of Hariśchandra is described in the M.Bh. Sabhāp. verses 489 ff.

he had merely done his duty as a king, which he defined as consisting in the bestowal of gifts on eminent Brāhman and other persons of slender means, the protection of the timid, and war against enemies. Viśvāmitra hereupon demands a gift as a Brāhman intent upon receiving one. The king offers him whatever he may ask : Gold, his own son, wife, body, life, kingdom, good fortune (*hiranyaṁ vā suvarṇaṁ vā putraḥ patnī kalevaram | prāṇāḥ rājyam purāṁ lakṣmīṁ yad abhipretam ātmanaḥ* |). The saint first requires the present for the Rājasūya sacrifice. On this being promised, and still more offered, he asks for the empire of the whole earth, including everything but Hariśchandra himself, his wife and son, and his virtue which follows its possessor wherever he goes ¹⁷⁵ (i. 7, 28. *Finā bhāryyāṁ cha putraṁ cha śarīraṁ cha tavānagha |* 29. *Dharmaṁ cha sarva-dharma-jña yo yāntam anugachhati*). Hariśchandra joyfully agrees. Viśvāmitra then requires him to strip off all his ornaments, to clothe himself in the bark of trees, and to quit the kingdom with his wife Saivyā and his son. When he is departing the sage stops him and demands payment of his yet unpaid sacrificial fee. The king replies that he has only the persons of his wife, his son, and himself left. Viśvāmitra insists that he must nevertheless pay ; and that “unfulfilled promises of gifts to Brāhman bring destruction” (i. 7. 35. *Viśeshato brāhmaṇānāṁ hantya adattam pratiṣṭutam*). The unfortunate prince, after being threatened with a curse, engages to make the payment in a month ; and commences his journey with a wife unused to such fatigues, amid the universal lamentations of his subjects. While he lingers, listening to their affectionate remonstrances against his desertion of his kingdom, Viśvāmitra comes up, and being

¹⁷⁵ Compare Manu's very striking verses, viii. 17, and iv. 239 ff., which may be freely rendered as follows.

“Our virtue is the only friend that follows us in death ;
 All other ties and friendships end with our departing breath.
 Nor father, mother, wife, nor son beside us then can stay,
 Nor kinsfolk :—virtue is the one companion of our way.
 Alone each creature sees the light, alone the world he leaves ;
 Alone of actions, wrong or right, the recompence receives.
 Like log or clod, beneath the sod their lifeless kinsman laid,
 His friends turn round and quit the ground, but virtue tends the dead.
 Be then a hoard of virtue stored, to help in day of doom ;
 By virtue led, we cross the dread, immeasurable gloom.”

See the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. xix. for 1862, p. 303 f.

incensed at the delay and the king's apparent hesitation, strikes the queen with his staff, as she is dragged on by her husband. All this Hariśchandra endures with patience, uttering no complaint. Then the five Viśvedevas, merciful gods, exclaimed, " 'To what worlds shall this sinner Viśvāmitra go, who has thrust down this most excellent of sacrificers from the royal dignity? Whose faith shall now sanctify the soma-juice poured out with recitation of texts at the great sacrifice, that we may drink it, and become exhilarated ' " (i. 7, 62. *Atha viśve tadā devāḥ pancha prāhuḥ kṛipālavāḥ | Viśvāmitraḥ supāpo 'yaṁ lokān kām samavāpsyati |* 63. *Yenāyaṁ yajvanām śreshṭhaḥ sva-rājyād avaropitaḥ | kasya vā śraddhayā pūtaṁ sutaṁ somam mahādhvare | pītṛa vāyam prayāsyāmo mudam mantra-purassaram |*). Viśvāmitra heard what they said, and by a curse doomed them to become men; he relented, however, so far as to exempt them from having offspring, and from other family ties and human weaknesses, and promised that they should eventually be restored to their pristine position as gods. They in consequence became partially incarnate as the five Pāṇḍus, the sons of Draupadī. Resuming the story of Hariśchandra, the writer tells us that he then proceeded with his wife and little son to Benares, imagining that this divine city, as the special property of Śiva, could not be possessed by any mortal. Here he found the relentless Viśvāmitra waiting for him, and ready to press his demand for the payment of his sacrificial gift, even before the expiration of the full period of grace. In this extremity Śaivya the queen suggests with a sobbing voice that her husband should sell her. On hearing this proposal Hariśchandra swoons, then recovers, utters lamentations, and swoons again, and his wife, seeing his sad condition, swoons also. While they are in a state of unconsciousness, their famished child exclaims in distress, "O father, father, give me bread; O mother, mother, give me food: hunger overpowers me; and my tongue is parched" (i. 8, 35. *Tāta tāta dadasvānam anubāmba bhojanam dada | kshud me balavati jātā jihvāgraṁ śushyate tathā*). At this moment Viśvāmitra returns, and after recalling Hariśchandra to consciousness by sprinkling water over him, again urges payment of the present. The king again swoons, and is again restored. The sage threatens to curse him if his engagement is not fulfilled by sunset. Being now pressed by his wife, the king agrees to sell her, adding, however, "If my voice can utter such a wicked word, I do

what the most inhuman wretches cannot perpetrate" (i. 8, 48 f. *Nṛi-śaṁsair api yat karttū na śakyaṁ tat karomy aham | yadi me śakyate vānī vaktum idṛik sudurvachah*). He then goes into the city, and in self-accusing language offers his queen for sale as a slave. A rich old Brāhman offers to buy her at a price corresponding to her value, to do his household work. Hariśchandra's heart was torn, and he could make no reply. The Brāhman paid down the money, and was dragging away the queen by the hair of her head, when her little son Rohitāśva, seeing his mother about to be taken away from him, began to cry, and laid hold of her skirts. The mother then exclaims: i. 8, 59, "*Munchāryya muncha mām tāvad yāvat pāśyāmy ahaṁ śiśum | durlabhaṁ darśanaṁ tāta punar asya bhavishyati* | 60. *Paśyaihi vatsa mām evam mātaraṁ dāsyatām gatām | mām mā sprākshih rāja-puttra aspriśyā 'haṁ tavā-dhunā*" | 61. *Tataḥ sa bālūḥ sahasā dṛiṣṭvā kṛiṣṭāṁ tu mātaram | samabhyadhāvad ambetī rudan sāsrāṇīlekshaṇah* | 62. *Tam āgataṁ drijaḥ kretā bāluṁ abhyāhanat padā | vadaṁs tathāpi so 'mbetī naivāmunchata mātaram* | 63. *Rājapatny uvācha | "prasādaṁ kuru me nātha krīṇishvemaṁ cha bālakam | krītā 'pi nāham bhavato vinaināṁ kāryya-sādhikā* | 64. *Ittham mamālpa-bhāgyāyāḥ prasāda-samukho bhava | mām saṁyojaya bālena vatsenera payasvinīm*" | 65. *Brāhmaṇaḥ uvācha | "grihyatām vittam etat te diyatām bāluko mama*" | "Let me go, let me go, venerable sir, till I look upon my son. I shall hardly ever behold him again. Come, my darling, see thy mother now become a slave. Touch me not, young prince; I may no longer be handled by thee.' Seeing his mother dragged away, the child ran after her, his eyes dimmed with tears, and crying 'mother.' The Brāhman purchaser kicked him when he came up; but he would not let his mother go, and continued crying 'mother, mother.' The queen then said to the Brāhman, 'Be so kind, my master, as to buy also this child, as without him I shall prove to thee but a useless purchase. 64. Be thus merciful to me in my wretchedness; unite me with my son, like a cow to her calf.'¹⁷⁹ The Brāhman agrees: 'Take this money and give me the boy.'" When his wife and son were being carried away, Hariśchandra broke out into lamentations: i. 8, 68. *Yāṁ na vāyur na chādityo nendur na cha pri-thag-janaḥ | dṛiṣṭavantaḥ purā patnīm seyaṁ dāsītvam āgatā* | 69. *Sūrya-raṁśa-prasūto 'yaṁ sukumāra-karāṅgulih | samprāpto vikrayam*

¹⁷⁹ The whole of this reads like a scene from "Uncle Tom's Cabin."

bālo dhiñ mām astu sudurmatim | “‘She, my spouse, whom neither air, nor sun, nor moon, nor stranger had beheld, is now gone into slavery. This my son, a scion of the solar race, with his delicate hands and fingers, has been sold. Woe to me, wicked wretch that I am.’” After the Brāhman had gone out of sight with his purchases, Viśvāmitra again appeared and renewed his demands; and when the afflicted Hariśchandra offered him the small sum he had obtained by the sale of his wife and son, he angrily replied, i. 8, 74: *Kshattrabandho mame-mām trañ sadṛiṣiñ yajna-dakṣhiṇām* | *manyase yadi tat kshipram paśya tram me balam param* | 75. *Tapaso ’ttra sutaptasya brāhmaṇasyāmalasya cha* | *mat-prabhāvasya chograsya śuddhasyādhyayanasya cha* | “‘If, miserable Kshattriya, thou thinkest this a sacrificial gift befitting my deserts, thou shalt soon behold the transcendent power of my ardent austere-fervour, of my spotless Brāhmanhood, of my terrible majesty, and of my holy study.’” Hariśchandra promises an additional gift, and Viśvāmitra allows him the remaining quarter of the day for its liquidation. On the terrified and afflicted prince offering himself for sale, in order to gain the means of meeting this cruel demand, Dharma (Righteousness) appears in the form of a hideous and offensive Chanḍāla, and agrees to buy him at his own price, large or small. Hariśchandra declines such a degrading servitude, and declares that he would rather be consumed by the fire of his persecutor’s curse than submit to such a fate. Viśvāmitra however again comes on the scene, asks why he does not accept the large sum offered by the Chanḍāla; and, when he pleads in excuse his descent from the solar race, threatens to fulminate a curse against him if he does not accept that method of meeting his liability. Hariśchandra implores that he may be spared this extreme of degradation, and offers to become Viśvāmitra’s slave in payment of the residue of his debt; whereupon the sage rejoins, “If thou art my slave, then I sell thee as such to the Chanḍāla for a hundred millions of money” (i. 8, 95. *Yadi preshyo mama bharān chaṇḍālāya tato mayā* | *dāsa-bhāvam anuprāpto datto vittārbudena vai* |). The Chanḍāla, delighted, pays down the money, and carries off Hariśchandra, bound, beaten, confused, and afflicted, to his own place of abode. Morning, noon, and evening the unfortunate prince repeats these words: i. 8, 99. *Bālā dīna-mukhī dṛiṣṭvā bālāñ dīna-mukham puraḥ* | *mām smaraty asukhāviṣṭā* “*mochayishyati nau nṛipaḥ* | 100. *Upātta-vitto*

riprāya dattvā vittam ato 'dhikam" | *na sū mām mṛiga-sāvākshī veti pāpataraṁ kṛitam* | 101. *Rājya-nāśaḥ suhrīt-tyāgo bhāryyā-tanaya-vikrayaḥ* | *prāptā chaṇḍālatā cheyam aho duḥkha-paramparā* | "My tender wife, dejected, looking upon my dejected boy, calls me to mind while she says, 'The king will ransom us (100) after he has gained money, and paid the Brāhman a larger sum than he gave for us.' But my fawn-eyed spouse is ignorant that I have become yet more wretched than before. 101. Loss of my kingdom, abandonment of friends, sale of my wife and son, and this fall into the condition of a Chaṇḍāla,— what a succession of miseries!" Hariśchandra is sent by the Chaṇḍāla to steal grave-clothes in a cemetery (which is described at tedious length, with all its horrors and repulsive features), and is told that he will receive two-sixths of the value for his hire; three-sixths going to his master, and one-sixth to the king. In this horrid spot, and in this degrading occupation, he spent, in great misery, twelve months, which seemed to him like a hundred years (i. 8, 127. *Evaṁ dvādaśa-māsas tu nītāḥ śata-samopamāḥ*). He then falls asleep and has a series of dreams suggested by the life he had been leading (*śmaśānābhyāsa-yogena*, verse 129). After he awoke, his wife came to the cemetery to perform the obsequies of their son, who had died from the bite of a serpent (verses 171 ff.). At first the husband and wife did not recognize each other, from the change in appearance which had been wrought upon them both by their miseries. Hariśchandra, however, soon discovers from the tenor of her lamentations that it is his wife, and falls into a swoon; as the queen does also when she recognizes her husband. When consciousness returns, they both break out into lamentations, the father bewailing in a touching strain the loss of his son, and the wife the degradation of the king. She then falls on his neck, embraces him, and asks "whether all this is a dream, or a reality, as she is utterly bewildered;" and adds, that "if it be a reality, then righteousness is un-availing to those who practise it" (verse 210. *Rājan swapno 'tha tathyaṁ vā yad etad manyate bhavān* | *tat kathyatām mahābhūga mano vai muhyate mama* | 211. *Yady etad evaṁ dharmajña nāsti dharme sahāyatā* |). After hesitating to devote himself to death on his son's funeral pyre without receiving his master's leave, (as such an act of insubordination might send him to hell) (verses 215 ff.), Hariśchandra resolves to do so, braving all the consequences, and consoling himself with the hopeful

anticipation: verse 224. *Yadi dattaṁ yadi hutaṁ guravo yadi toshitāḥ | paratra sangamo bhūyāt puttrena saha cha tvayā |* "If I have given gifts, and offered sacrifices, and gratified my religious teachers, then may I be reunited with my son and with thee (my wife) in another world."¹⁸⁰ The queen determines to die in the same manner. When Hariśchandra, after placing his son's body on the funeral pile, is meditating on the lord Hari Nārāyaṇa Kṛishṇa, the supreme spirit, all the gods arrive, headed by Dharma (Righteousness), and accompanied by Viśvāmitra.¹⁸¹ Dharma entreats the king to desist from his rash in-

¹⁸⁰ In the following verses of the Atharva-veda a hope is expressed that families may be re-united in the next world: vi. 120, 3. *Yatra suhṛddāḥ suhṛdo madanti vihāya rogaṁ tanvāḥ svāyāḥ | asloṇīḥ angair ahrutāḥ svarge tatra paśyema pitarau cha putrān |* "In heaven, where our friends, and intimates live in blessedness, having left behind them the infirmities of their bodies, free from lameness or distortion of limb,—may we behold our parents and our children." ix. 5, 27. *Yā pūrvam patiṁ vītṛā athūnyaṁ vindate 'param | panchaudanaṁ cha tūv ajaṁ dadṛto na vi yoshataḥ |* 28. *Samānaloko bhavati punarbhuvā 'paraḥ patiḥ | yo 'jam panchaudanaṁ dakṣhiṇā-jyotiṣaṁ dadṛti |* "When a woman has had one husband before, and takes another, if they present the *aja panchaudana* offering they shall not be separated. 28. A second husband dwells in the same (future) world with his re-wedded wife, if he offers the *aja panchaudana*, illuminated by presents." xii. 3, 17. *Svargaṁ lokam abhi no nayāsi saṁ jāyayā saha puttraiḥ syāma |* "Mayest thou conduct us to heaven; may we be with our wives and children." xviii. 3, 23. *Svān gachhatu te mano adha pitṛin upa grava |* "May thy soul go to its own (its kindred) and hasten to the fathers." From the texts cited by Mr. Colebrooke "on the duties of a faithful Hindu widow," (Misc. Ess. 115 ff.) it appears that the widow who becomes a *satī* (i.e. burns herself with her husband's corpse, or, in certain cases, afterwards) has the promise of rejoining her lord in another life, and enjoying celestial felicity in his society. In order to ensure such a result in all cases it was necessary either that both husband and wife should have by their lives merited equal rewards in another existence, or that the heroism of the wife, in sacrificing herself on her husband's funeral-pile should have the vicarious effect of expiating his offences, and raising him to the same heavenly region with herself. And it is indeed the doctrine of the authorities cited by Mr. Colebrooke that the self-immolation of the wife had this atoning effect. But in other cases where the different members of a family had by their actions during life merited different kinds of retribution, they might, according to the doctrine of the transmigration of souls current in later ages, be re-born in the shape of different animals, and so rendered incapable of any mutual communication after death. In regard to the absence of any traces of the tenet of metempsychosis from the earliest Indian writings, see Professor Weber's remarks in the Journ. of the Germ. Or. Soc. ix. 327 ff. and the abstract of them given in Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1865, pp. 365 ff.

¹⁸¹ An attempt is here made, verses 234 f. to give the etymology of Viśvāmitra. *Viśva-trayaṇa yo mitram karttūṁ na śakitāḥ purā | Viśvāmitras tu te mātṛīm iṣṭāṁ chāharttūṁ ichhati |* "That Viśvāmitra, whom the three Viśvas formerly could not induce to be their friend, wishes to offer thee his friendship, and whatsoever thou desirest."

tention; and Indra announces to him that he, his wife, and son have conquered heaven by their good works. Ambrosia, the antidote of death, and flowers, are rained by the god from the sky; and the king's son is restored to life and the bloom of youth. The king, adorned with celestial clothing and garlands, and the queen, embrace their son. Harischandra, however, declares that he cannot go to heaven till he has received his master the Chāṇḍāla's permission, and has paid him a ransom. Dharma then reveals to the king that it was he himself who had miraculously assumed the form of a Chāṇḍāla. The king next objects that he cannot depart unless his faithful subjects, who are sharers in his merits, are allowed to accompany him to heaven, at least for one day. This request is granted by Indra; and after Visvāmitra has inaugurated Rohitaśva the king's son to be his successor, Harischandra, his friends and followers, all ascend in company to heaven. Even after this great consummation, however, Vasishṭha, the family-priest of Harischandra, hearing, at the end of a twelve years' abode in the waters of the Ganges, an account of all that has occurred, becomes vehemently incensed at the humiliation inflicted on the excellent monarch, whose virtues and devotion to the gods and Brāhmins he celebrates, declares that his indignation had not been so greatly roused even when his own hundred sons had been slain by Viśvāmitra, and in the following words dooms the latter to be transformed into a crane: i. 9, 9. *Tasmād durātmā brahma-dviṭ prājñānām acaropitaḥ | mach-ekhāpopahato mūḍhaḥ sa vakatvam avāpsyati* | "Wherefore that wicked man, enemy of the Brāhmins, smitten by my curse, shall be expelled from the society of intelligent beings, and losing his understanding shall be transformed into a Vaka." Visvāmitra reciprocates the curse, and changes Vasishṭha into a bird of the species called Āṛi. In their new shapes the two have a furious fight,¹⁵² the Āṛi being of the portentous height of two thousand yojanas (= 18000 miles), and the Vaka of 3090 yojanas. They first assail each other with their wings; then the Vaka smites his antagonist in the same manner, while the Āṛi strikes with his talons. Falling mountains, overturned by the blasts of wind raised by the

¹⁵² On the subject of this fight the Bhāgavata Purāna has the following verse ix. 7, 6. *Trisankuro Harischandro Viśvāmitra-Vasishṭhayoh | yan-nimittam abhūd yuddham pakṣiṇor bahu-vārshikam* | "The son of Trisanku was Harischandra, on whose account Visvāmitra and Vasishṭha in the form of birds had a battle of many

flapping of their wings, shake the whole earth, the waters of the ocean overflow, the earth itself, thrown off its perpendicular, slopes downwards towards Pātāla, the lower regions. Many creatures perish by these various convulsions. Attracted by the dire disorder, Brahmā arrives, attended by all the gods, on the spot, and commands the combatants to desist from their fray. They were too fiercely infuriated to regard this injunction: but Brahmā put an end to the conflict by restoring them to their natural forms, and counselling them to be reconciled: i. 9, 28. *Na chāpi Kauśika-śreshtas tasya rājno 'parādhyate | svarga-prāptikaro brahmann upakāra-paṇe sthitaḥ |* 29. *Tapo-vighnasya karttārau kāma-krodha-vaśaṁ gatau | parityajata bhadrāṁ no brahma hi prachuram balam |* 'The son of Kuśika has not inflicted any wrong on Hariśchandra: inasmuch as he has caused the king's elevation to heaven he stands in the position of a benefactor. 29. Since ye have yielded to the influence of desire and anger ye have obstructed your austere fervour; leave off, bless you; the Brahmanical power is transcendent.' The sages were accordingly pacified, and embraced each other."

This interesting legend may be held to have had a double object, viz. first to portray in lively colours the heroic fortitude and sense of duty exhibited by Hariśchandra and his wife in enduring the long series of severe trials to which they were subjected; and secondly, to represent Viśvāmitra in an unamiable light, as an oppressive assertor of those sacerdotal prerogatives, which he had conquered for himself by his austerities,¹⁵³ to place him in striking contrast with the genuine Brāhman Vaśiṣṭha who expresses strong indignation at the harsh procedure of his rival, and to recall the memory of those conflicts between

years duration." On this the Commentator remarks: *Viśvāmitro rajasūya-dakṣiṇā-chhalena Hariśchandraya sarva-sam apahṛitya yātayāmāsa | tuch chkrutā kupīto Vaśiṣṭho 'pi Viśvāmitraṁ "team āri bhava" iti saśāpa | so 'pi "team vako bhava" iti Vaśiṣṭham saśāpa | tayos cha yuddham abhūd iti prasiddham |* "Viśvāmitra under pretence of taking a present for a rajasūya sacrifice, stripped Hariśchandra of all his property, and afflicted him. Vaśiṣṭha hearing of this, became incensed, and by an imprecation turned him into an Āri. Viśvāmitra retorted the curse and changed Vaśiṣṭha into a Vāka. And then a battle took place between them, as is well known." Here it will be seen that the Commentator changes the birds into which the rishis were transformed, making Viśvāmitra the Āri and Vaśiṣṭha the Vāka.

¹⁵³ It is true that the Brāhman rishi Durvāsas also is represented as a very irascible personage. See vol. iv. of this work, pp. 165, 169, 208, 407; and Weber's Ind. St. iii. 398.

the Brāhmans and Kshattriyas, which were exemplified in the persons of these two sages, of whom the one is said to have been made the "lord of Brāhmans" (*Vaśishṭham īśaṁ viprānām*, M.Bh. Sāntip. v. 4499), and the other is declared in the story before us to have been the "enemy of the priests."

SECT. X.—*Contest of Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra according to the Mahābhārata.*

In the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 6638 ff., we find another legend, in the Brahmanical interest, regarding the same two great personages, which begins with a panegyric on Vaśishṭha, at the expense of the rival rishi :

6638. *Brahmaṇo mānasaḥ putro Vaśishṭho 'rundhatī-patiḥ | tāpasā nirjitau śaśvad ajeyāv amarair api | kāma-krodhāv ubhau yasya charaṇau samravāhatuḥ | yas tu nochchedanaṁ chakre Kuśikānām udāra-dhīḥ | Viśvāmitrāparādhenā dhārayan manyum uttamam |* 6640. *Putra-vyasana-santaptaḥ śaktimān apy aśakta-vat | Viśvāmitra-vināśāya na chakre karma dārunam | mṛitāṁś cha punar āhartum yaḥ sa putrān Yama-kshayāt | kṛitāntaṁ nātichakrāma velām iva mahodadhiḥ | yam prāpya vijitātmanam mahātmanam narādhipāḥ | Ikshvākaro mahipālāḥ lebhire pṛithivīm imām | purohitam imam prāpya Vaśishṭham ṛishi-sattamam | ijire kratubhiḥ chaiva nṛipās te Kuru-nandana | sa hi tān yājayāmāsa sarvān nṛipati-sattamān | brahmarshiḥ Pāṇḍava-śreṣṭha Vṛihaspatir ivāmarān |* 6645. *Tasmād dharma-pradhānātmā veda-dharma-vid īpsitaḥ | brāhmaṇo guṇavān kaśchit purodhāḥ paridṛśyatām | kshattriyeṇābhijātena pṛithivīm jetum ichkatā | pūrvam purohitaḥ kuryyaḥ pārtha rājyābhisiddhaye | mahīm jigīṣhatā rājñā brahma kāryam purassaram | . . .* 6666. *Kshattriyo 'ham bhavān vipras tapaḥ-svādhyāya-sādhanāḥ | brāhmaṇeshu kuto vīryam praśānteshu dhṛitātmasu | arbudena gavām yas tvaṁ na dadāsi mamepsitam | sva-dharmaṁ na prahāsyāmi neshyāmi cha balena gām | . . .* 6679. *"Sthīyatām" iti tach chhṛutvā Vaśishṭhasya payasvinī | ūrdhvaṅchita-śīro-grīvā prababhau raudra-darśanā |* 6680. *Krodha-raktekshaṇā sū gaur hambhā-rava-ghana-svanā | Viśvāmitrasya tat sainyaṁ vyadrāvayata sarvaśaḥ | kaśūgra-daṇḍābhikātā kālyamānā tatastataḥ | krodha-raktekshaṇā krodham bhūya eva samūdadhe | āditya iva madhyāhne krodha-dīpta-rapur babhau | angāra-varsham munchantī muhur bāladhito*

mahat | asṛijāt Pahlavān pucchāt prasravād Drāviḍān Sakān | yonidesūch cha Yavanān śakṛitaḥ Savarān bahūn | . . . 6691. Drishṭvā tad mahad āścharyam brahma-tejo-bhavam tadā | Viśvāmitraḥ kshattri-bhāvād nirvinno vākyam abravīt | “dhig balaṁ kshattriya-balam brahma-tejo-balam balam | balābalaṁ viniśchitya tapaḥ eva param balam” | sa rājyaṁ sphītam utsṛijya tām cha dīptāṁ nṛipa-śriyam | bhogāṁś cha prishṭhataḥ kṛtvā tapasy eva mano dadhe | sa gatvā tapasā siddhim lokān vishṭabhya tejasā | 6695. Tatāpa sarvān dīptaujāḥ brāhmaṇatram arāptavān | apibach cha tataḥ somam Indrena saha Kauśikāḥ |

6638. “Vasishṭha,” a Gandharva informs Arjuna, “was the mind-born son of Brahmā and husband of Arundhati.¹⁸⁴ By his austere fervour, lust and anger, invincible even by the immortals, were constantly vanquished and embraced his feet. Restraining his indignation at the wrong done by Viśvāmitra, he magnanimously abstained from exterminating the Kuśikas.¹⁸⁵ 6640. Distressed by the loss of his sons, he acted, although powerful, like one who was powerless, and took no

¹⁸⁴ Arundhati is again mentioned as the wife of Vasishṭha, in the following lines of the M. Bh. Ādip. 7351 f. addressed to Draupadī: *Yathendrāṇī Harihaye Svāhā chaiva Vibhāvasau | Rohiṇī cha yathā Some Damayantī yathā Nale | yathā Vaiśravaṇe Bhadrā Vasishṭhe chāpy Arundhatī | yathā Nārāyaṇe Lakshmīs tathā tram bhava bhartṛishu |* “What Indrāṇī is to Indra, Svāhā to the Sun, Rohiṇī to the Moon, Damayantī to Nala, Bhadrā to Kuvera, Arundhati to Vasishṭha, and Lakshmī to Nārāyaṇa, that be thou to thy husbands.” She is again noticed in verses 8455 ff.: *Suvratā chāpi kalyāṇī sarva-bhūteshu vīsrutā | Arundhatī mahātmānaṁ Vasishṭham paryasankata | viśuddha-bhāvam atyantāṁ sadā priya-hite ratam | saptarṣi-madhyagaṁ vīram avamene cha tam munim | apadhyūnena sū tena dhūmaruṇa-sama-prabhū | lakshyā 'lakshyā nābhīrūpā nimittam iva paśyati |* “The faithful and beautiful Arundhati, renowned among all creatures, was suspicious about the great Vasishṭha, whose nature was eminently pure, who was devoted to the welfare of those he loved, who was one of the seven rishis, and heroic; and she despised the muni. In consequence of these evil surmises, becoming of the dusky colour of smoke, both to be seen and not to be seen, devoid of beauty, she looks like a (bad) omen.” This version of the last line is suggested by Prof. Aufrecht. The Commentator explains it thus: “*Nimittam*” *bhartur lakshmanām “iva paśyati” kapaṭena | ataḥ eva “nābhīrūpā prachhanna-reshā | tena hetunāt “lakshyā 'lakshyā cha” |* “‘She regards as it were’ i.e. by guile ‘the omen’ afforded by her husband’s (bodily) marks, hence she assumed a disguise, and was ‘both to be seen and not to be seen.’”

¹⁸⁵ As regards the magnanimous character here assigned to Vasishṭha, I quote a passage from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 9, 15 ff., where the irascible Durvāsas (to whom I lately referred, and who is said, in verse 2, to be a partial incarnation of Śiva, *S'ankarasyāmśah*), addressing Indra, who, he conceived, had insulted him, thus speaks of that sage’s amiable temper, as contrasted with his own fierce and revengeful disposition: 15. *Nūhaṁ kṛpātu-hṛdayo na cha mām bhajate kshamā | anye te mun-*

dreadful measures for the destruction of Viśvāmitra. To recover those sons from the abode of Yama, he would not overstep fate, as the ocean respects its shores. Having gained this great self-mastering personage, the kings of Ikshvāku's race acquired (the dominion of) this earth. Obtaining this most excellent of rishis for their family-priest, they offered sacrifices. This Brāhman-rishi officiated as priest for all those monarchs, as Vṛihaspati does for the gods. 6645. Wherefore let some desirable, virtuous Brāhman, with whom righteousness is the chief thing, and skilled in Vedic observances, be selected for this office. Let a well-born Kshattriya, who wishes to subdue the earth, first of all appoint a family-priest in order that he may augment his dominion. Let a king, who desires to conquer the earth, give precedence to the Brahmanical power." The Gandharva then, at Arjuna's request, goes on (verses 6650 ff.) to relate the "ancient story of Vaśishṭha" (*vāśishṭham ākhyānam purāṇam*) and to describe the cause of enmity between that rishi and Viśvāmitra. It happened that the latter, who was son of Gādhi, king of Kānyakubja (Kanauj), and grandson of Kuśika, when out hunting, came to the hermitage of Vaśishṭha, where he was received with all honour, entertained together with his attendants with delicious food and drink, and presented with precious jewels and dresses obtained by the sage from his wonder-working cow, the fulfiller of all his desires. The cupidity of Viśvāmitra is aroused by the sight of this beautiful animal (all of whose fine points are enumerated in the legend), and he offers Vaśishṭha a hundred million cows, or his kingdom, in exchange for her. Vaśishṭha, however, replies that he is unable to part with her even in return for the kingdom. Viśvāmitra then tells him that he will enforce the law of the stronger: 6665. "I am a Kshattriya, thou art a Brāhman, whose functions are austere fervour, and sacred study. How can there be any vigour in Brāhmans who are calm and self-restrained? Since thou doest not give up to me, in exchange for a

ayaḥ śakra durvāsasam avehi mām | Gautamādibhir anyais traṇṇ garraṁ āpādito mudhū | akshānti-sūra-sarvasvaṁ durvāsasam avehi mām | 17. *Vaśishṭhādyair dayā-sārath stotraṁ kurvadbhīr uchehakaiḥ | garraṁ gato 'si yenaivam mām athādya manyase |* 15. "I am not tender-hearted. patience lodges not in me. Those munis are different: know me to be Durvāsas. 16. In vain hast thou been rendered proud by Gautama and others: know me to be Durvāsas, whose nature and whose entire substance is irascibility. 17. Thou hast become proud through the loud praises of Vaśishṭha and other merciful saints, since thou thus contemnest me to-day."

hundred million of cows, that which I desire, I shall not abandon my own class-characteristic; I will carry away the cow by force." *Vaśishṭha*, confident, no doubt, of his own superior power, tells him to do as he proposes without loss of time. *Viśvāmitra* accordingly seizes the wonder-working cow; but she will not move from the hermitage, though beaten with whip and stick, and pushed hither and thither. Witnessing this, *Vaśishṭha* asks her what he, a patient *Brāhman*, can do? She demands of him why he overlooks the violence to which she is subjected. *Vaśishṭha* replies: "Force is the strength of *Kshattriyas*, patience that of *Brāhmans*. As patience possesses me, go, if thou pleasest" (6676. *Kshattriyānām balaṁ tejo brāhmaṇānām kshamā balaṁ | kshamā mām bhajate yasmāt ganyatām yadi rochate*). The cow enquires if he means to abandon her; as, unless he forsakes her, she can never be carried off by force. She is assured by *Vaśishṭha* that he does not forsake her, and that she should remain if she could. "Hearing these words of her master, the cow tosses her head aloft, assumes a terrific aspect, (6680) her eyes become red with rage, she utters a deep bellowing sound, and puts to flight the entire army of *Viśvāmitra*. Being (again) beaten with whip and stick, and pushed hither and thither, she becomes more incensed, her eyes are red with anger, her whole body, kindled by her indignation, glows like the noonday sun, she discharges showers of fire-brands from her tail, creates *Pahlavas* from the same member, *Drāviḍas* and *Sakas*, *Yavanas*, *Sābaras*,¹⁸⁶ *Kānehis*, *Sarabhas*, *Paundras*, *Kirātas*, *Sinhalas*, *Vaśas*, and other tribes of armed warriors from her sweat, urine, excrement, e'c., who assail *Viśvāmitra*'s army, and put it to a complete rout. 6692. "Beholding this great miracle, the product of Brahmanical might, *Viśvāmitra* was humbled at (the impotence of) a *Kshattriya*'s nature, and exclaimed, 'Shame on a *Kshattriya*'s force; it is the force of a *Brāhman*'s might that is force indeed.' Examining what was and was not force, and (ascertaining) that austere fervour is the supreme force, he abandoned his prosperous kingdom and all its brilliant regal splendour; and casting all enjoyments behind its back, he devoted himself to austerity. Having by this means attained perfection, and *Brāhmanhood*, he arrested the worlds by his fiery vigour, and disturbed them all by the blaze of his glory; and at length the *Kauśika* drank soma with *Indra*."¹⁸⁶

¹⁸⁶ See above, p. 342, and note 131.

The same legend is repeated in the Salyaparvan, verses 2295 ff. :

*Tāthā cha Kauśikas tāta tapo-nityo jitendriyaḥ | tapasū vai sutaptena
brāhmaṇatvam avāptavān | Gādhir nāma mahān āsit kshattriyaḥ prathito
bhūvi | tasya puttro 'bhavaḍ rājan Viśvāmitraḥ pratāpavān | sa rājā
Kauśikas tāta mahāyogy abhavat kila | sa puttram abhishichyātha Viśvā-
mitram mahātapāḥ | deha-nyāse manas chakre tam ūchuḥ pranatūḥ pra-
jāḥ | “na gantavyam mahāprājña trāhi chāsmān mahābhayāt” | evam
uktaḥ pratyuvācha tato Gādhiḥ prajāḥ tataḥ | “viśvasya jagato goptā
bhariṣyati suto mama” | 2300. Ity uktvā tu tato Gādhir Viśvāmitraṁ
niveśya cha | jagāma tridivāṁ rājan Viśvāmitro 'bhavaḍ nṛipaḥ | na sa
śaknoti prithivīm yatnān api rakshitum | tataḥ śūsrāva rājā sa rāksha-
sebhya mahābhayam | niryayau nagarācchāpi chatur-anga-balānvitaḥ |
sa yātvā dūram adhvānam Vasiṣṭhāśramam abhyagāt | tasya te sainikāḥ
rājāṁś chakrus tattrālayān bahūn | tatas tu bhagavān vipro Vasiṣṭho
Brahmaṇaḥ sutāḥ | dudṛiṣe 'tha tataḥ sarvam bhajyamānam mahāvanam |
tasya kruddho mahārāja Vasiṣṭho muni-sattamaḥ | 2305. “Sṛjāsva Śa-
varān ghorān” iti svām gām uvācha ha | tathoktā sū 'sṛjād dhenuḥ pu-
rushān ghora-darśanān | te cha tad balam āśādy babhrujuḥ sarvato
diśam | tach chhruvā vidrutaṁ saīnyaṁ Viśvāmitras tu Gādhijaḥ | tapaḥ
param manyamānas tapasy eva mano dadhe | so 'smiṁś tirtha-vare rājan
Sarvasvatyāḥ samāhitaḥ | niyamaiś chopavāsaiś cha karshayan deham āt-
manaḥ | jalāhāro vāyubhakshaḥ parṇāhāraś cha so 'bhavet | tathā sthan-
ḍila-sāyī cha ye chānye niyamāḥ prithak | asakrit tasya devās tu vrata-
vighnam prachakrire | 2310. Na chāsya niyamād buddhir apayāti mahāt-
manaḥ | tataḥ pareṇa yatnena taptvā bahu-vidhāṁ tapaḥ | tejasā bhūka-
rākūro Gādhijaḥ samapadyata | tapasū tu tathā yuktūṁ Viśvāmitram
Pitāmahaḥ | amanyata mahātējāḥ vara-do varam asya tat | sa tu vatre
varam rājan “syām aham brāhmaṇas tv” iti | tatketi chābravīd Brahmā
sarva-loka-pitāmahaḥ | sa labdhvā tapasogreṇa brāhmaṇatvam mahāyasaḥ |
vichachāra mahīm kṛtsnām kṛitakāmaḥ suropanaḥ |*

“2295. So too the Kauśika, constant in austerities, and subduing his senses, acquired Brāhmaṇhood by the severity of his exercises. There was a great Kshattriya named Gādhi, renowned in the world, whose son was the powerful Viśvāmitra. This Kauśika prince (Gādhi) was greatly addicted to contemplation (*mahāyogī*): and after having installed his son as king, he resolved to abandon his corporeal existence. His subjects, however, submissively said to him, ‘Do not go, o great sage, but deliver

us from our great alarm.' He replied, 'My son shall become the protector of the whole world.' 2300. Having accordingly installed Viśvāmitra, Gādhi went to heaven, and his son became king. Viśvāmitra, however, though energetic, was unable to protect the earth. He then heard that there was great cause of apprehension from the Rākshasas, and issued forth from the city, with an army consisting of four kinds of forces. Having performed a long journey, he arrived at the hermitage of Vaśishṭha. There his soldiers constructed many dwellings. In consequence the divine Brāhman Vaśishṭha, son of Brahmā, beheld the whole forest being cut up; and becoming enraged, he said to his cow, (2305) 'Create terrible Śavaras.' The cow, so addressed, created men of dreadful aspect, who broke and scattered in all directions the army of Viśvāmitra. Hearing of this rout of his army, the son of Gādhi devoted himself to austerities, which he regarded as the highest (resource). In this sacred spot on the Sarasvatī he macerated his body with acts of self-restraint and fastings, absorbed in contemplation, and living on water, air, and leaves, sleeping on the sacrificial ground, and practising all the other rites. Several times the gods threw impediments in his way; (2310) but his attention was never distracted from his observances. Having thus with strenuous effort undergone manifold austerities, the son of Gādhi became luminous as the sun; and Brahmā regarded his achievements as most eminent. The boon which Viśvāmitra chose was to become a Brāhman; and Brahmā replied, 'So be it.' Having attained Brāhmanhood, the object of his desire, by his severe austerities, the renowned sage traversed the whole earth, like a god."

We have already seen how the power of austere fervour (*tapas*) is exemplified in the legend of Nahusha (above, pp. 308 ff.). In regard to the sense of this word *tapas*, and the potency of the exercise which it denotes, I may refer to my articles in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, p. 348 f., and for 1864, p. 63, as well as to the fourth volume of this work, pp. 20 ff. and 288; and to pp. 23 and 28 of the present volume. In further illustration of the same subject I quote the following panegyric upon *tapas* from Manu, xi. 234 ff. where, however, the word cannot have the same sense in all the verses:

*Tapo-mūlam idaṁ sarvaṁ daiva-mānushakaṁ sukham | tapo-madhyam
budhaiḥ proktaṁ tapo'ntaṁ veda-darsibhiḥ | 235. Brāhmanasya tapo jñā-
naṁ tapaḥ kshatrasya rakshaṇam | vaiśyasya tu tapo vārttā tapaḥ śūdra-*

sya sevnam | 236. *Ṛishayaḥ saṁyatātmānaḥ phala-mūlānilāsanāḥ* | *tapasaiva prapaśyanti trailokyam sa-charāccharam* | 237. *Aushadhāny agado ridyā daivī cha vividhā sthitiḥ* | *tapasaiva prasiddhyanti tapas teshām hi sādhanam* | 238. *Yad dustaraṁ yad durāpaṁ yad durgam yach cha dush-karam* | *sarvaṁ tu tapasā sādhyam tapo hi duratikramam* | 239. *Mahāpātakinaś chaiva śeshāś chākūryya-kāriṇaḥ* | *tapasaiva sutaptena muchyante kilviśāt tataḥ* | 240. *Kṛtāś chāhi-patangāś cha paśavaś cha rayāṁsi cha* | *sthāvarāṇi cha bhūtāni divaṁ yānti tapo-balāt* | 241. *Yat kinchid enaḥ kurranti mano-vāñ-mūrttibhir janāḥ* | *tat sarvaṁ nirdahanty āśu tapasaiva tapodhanāḥ* | 242. *Tapasaina viśuddhasya brāhmaṇasya divaukasaḥ* | *ijyāś cha pratigrihṇanti kāmān saṁvarddhayanti cha* | 243. *Prajāpatir idam śāstraṁ tapasavāsrījat prabhuḥ* | *tathaiva vedān ṛishayas tapasā pratipedire* | 244. *Ity etat tapaso devāḥ mahābhāgyam prachakshate* | *sarvasyāśya prapaśyantas tapasaḥ punyam uttamam* |

"234. All the enjoyment, whether of gods or men, has its root, its centre, and its end in *tapas*; so it is declared by the wise who have studied the Veda. 235. Knowledge is a Brāhman's *tapas*; protection that of a Kshattriya; traffic that of Vaiśya; and service that of a Sūdra. 236. It is by *tapas* that rishis of subdued souls, subsisting on fruits, roots, and air obtain a vision of the three worlds with all things moving and stationary. 237. Medicines, health, science, and the various divine conditions are attained by *tapas* alone as their instrument of acquisition. 238. Whatever is hard to be traversed, or obtained, or reached, or effected, is all to be accomplished through *tapas*, of which the potency is irresistible. 239. Both those who are guilty of the great sins, and all other transgressors, are freed from sin by fervid *tapas*. 240. Worms, serpents, insects, beasts, birds, and beings without motion attain to heaven through the force of *tapas*. 241. Whatever sin men commit by thought, word, or bodily acts, by *tapas* they speedily consume it all, when they become rich in devotion. 242. The gods both accept the sacrifices and augment the enjoyments of the Brāhman who has been purified by *tapas*. 243. It was by *tapas* that Prajāpati the lord created this scripture; and through it that the rishis obtained the Vedas. 244. Such is the great dignity which the gods ascribe to *tapas*, beholding its transcendent merit."

I return for a moment to the story of Vasishṭha and his cow.

Lassen remarks (Ind. Alt. 2nd ed. i. 631, note) that Atharvan is given

in the Lexicons as a name of Vasishṭha (see Wilson's Dictionary, *s.v.*). Weber (Ind. St. i. 289) quotes from Mallinātha's Commentary on the the Kīrātārjunīya the following words: *Atharvaṇas tu mantroddhāro* • *Vasishṭhena kṛitah ity āgamaḥ* | "There is a passage of scripture to the effect that the mantras of the Atharvan were selected by Vasishṭha." In Böhlingk and Roth's Lexicon, *s.v.* Atharvan, it is noticed that the eleventh hymn of the fifth book of the Atharva-veda contains a conversation between Atharvan and Varuṇa about the possession of a wonderful cow bestowed by the latter on the former; and it is remarked that this circumstance may explain the subsequent identification of Atharvan with Vasishṭha. Prof. Roth, however (Diss. on the A.V., Tübingen, 1865, p. 9), thinks the two sages are distinct. The cow is spoken of in A.V. vii. 104, as the "brindled cow given by Varuṇa to Atharvan which never lacked a calf" (*prīṣṇīm dhenuṃ Varuṇena dattām Atharvane nitya-ratsām*). The following is the curious hymn referred to :

A.V. v. 11, 1. *Katham mahe asurāya abravīr iha katham pitre haraye tresha-nṛimrah* | *prīṣṇīm Varuṇa dakṣiṇāṃ dadūrān punarmaghatvam*¹⁸⁷ *manasā 'chikitsīḥ* | 2. *Na kūmena punarmagho bhavāmi saṃ chakṣhe kam prīṣṇim etām upāje* | *kena nu tvam Atharvan kāryena kena jātena asi jāta-redāḥ* | 3. *Satyam ahaṃ gabhīrah kāryena satyaṃ jātena asmi jāta-redāḥ* | *na me dāso na āryyo mahitrā vratam mīmāya yad ahaṃ dharishye* | 4. *Na tvad anyah kavitaro na medhaya dhīrataro Varuṇa svadhāran* | *tvam tā viśvā bhuranāni vettha sa chid nu tvaj jano māyī bibhāya* | 5. *Tvam hi anga Varuṇa svadhāran viśvā vettha janimā supranīte* | *kiṃ rajasaḥ enā paro anyad asti enā kim pareṇa avaram amūra* | 6. *Ekam rajasaḥ enā paro anyad asti enā pareḥ ekena durṇasāṃ chid arvāk* | *tat te vidvān Varuṇa pra bravīmī adhvarchasaḥ paṇayo bhavantu* | *nīchair dāsūḥ upa sarvantu bhūmim* | 7. *Tvam hi anga Varuṇa bravīshi punarmagheshu avadyāni bhūri* | *mo shu paṇīr abhi etāvato bhūr mā tvā rochann arādhasaṃ janāsaḥ* | 8. *Mā mā rochann arādhasaṃ janāsaḥ punas te prīṣṇīm jaritar dadāmi* | *stotram me viśvam ā yāhi śachibhir antar viśvāsu mānushīshu vikshu* | 9. *Ā te stotrāni udyatāni yantu antar viśvāsu mānushīshu vikshu* | *dehi nu me yad me ādatto asi yujyo me sapta-padaḥ sakhā 'si* | 10. *Samāno bandhur Varuṇa samā jā redāhaṃ tad yad nūr eṣhā samā jā* | *dadāmi tad yat te ādatto asmi yujyas*

¹⁸⁷ This is the reading proposed by Professor Aufrecht instead of *punarmagha tvam*, which is found in Roth and Whitney's edition of the A.V.

te sapta-padaḥ sakhā'smi | 11. *Devo devāya grīṇate vayoḍāḥ vipro viprāya stuvate sumedhāḥ* | *ajījano hi Varuṇa svadhāvann Atharvānam pitarāṃ deva-bandhum* | *tasmai u rādhaḥ kṛiṇuki suprasastaṃ sakhā no asi paramāś cha bandhuḥ* |

1. (Atharvan speaks) "How hast thou, who art mighty in energy, declared before the great deity, how before the shining father (that the cow was mine)? ¹⁵⁸ Having bestowed a brindled cow (on me) as a sacrificial gift, thou hast resolved in thy mind to take her back. 2. (Varuṇa replies) It is not through desire that I revoke the gift; I drive hither this brindled cow that I may contemplate her. But by what wisdom, o Atharvan, in virtue of what nature, doest thou know the nature of beings? 3. (Atharvan answers) In truth I am profound in wisdom; in truth by my nature I know the nature of beings. Neither Dāsa nor Āryya can hinder the design which I shall undertake. 4. There is none other wiser or sager in understanding than thou, o self-dependent Varuṇa. Thou knowest all creatures; even the man of deep devices is afraid of thee. 5. Thou, o self-dependent Varuṇa, o wise director, knowest all creatures. What other thing is beyond this atmosphere? and what is nearer than that remotest thing, o thou unerring? 6. (Varuṇa replies) There is one thing beyond this atmosphere; and on this side of that one there is that which is near though inaccessible. Knowing that thing I declare it to thee. Let the glory of the niggards be cast down; let the Dāsas sink downward into the earth. 7. (Atharvan rejoins) Thou, o Varuṇa, sayest many evil things of those who revoke their gifts. Be not thou numbered among so many niggards; let not men call thee illiberal. 8. (Varuṇa replies) Let not men call me illiberal; I restore to thee, o worshipper, the brindled cow. Attend with all thy powers at every hymn in my honour among all the tribes of men. 9. (Atharvan answers) Let hymns ascend to thee among all the tribes of men. Give me that which thou hast taken from me; thou art to me an intimate friend of seven-fold value. 10. We two have a common bond, o Varuṇa, a common descent. I know what this common descent of ours is. (Varuṇa answers) I give thee that which I

¹⁵⁸ Professor Aufrecht thinks that *Dyaus*, 'the Heaven,' is denoted by *mahe asu-rāya*, and that *pitr̥e haraye*, if the correct reading, can only mean the Sun, the word *har̥i* being several times applied to that great luminary. I am otherwise indebted to Prof. A. for the correct sense of this line, and for other suggestions.

THE BRAHMANS AND KSHATTRIYAS.

have taken from thee. I am thy intimate friend of seven-fold va-
who, myself a god, confer life on thee a god [or priest, *devāya*] w
praisest me, an intelligent sage on thee a sage. (The poet says) Tho-
o self-dependent Varuṇa, hast begotten our father Atharvan, a kinsman
of the gods. Grant to him most excellent wealth; thou art our friend
and most eminent kinsman."

SECT. XI.—*The same, and other legends, according to the Rāmāyaṇa.*

The story told in the preceding section is related at greater length
in chapters 51–65¹⁸⁹ of the Bālakāṇḍa, or first book, of the Rāmāyaṇa,
of which I shall furnish an outline, noting any important variations
from, or additions to, the account in the Mahābhārata, and at the same
time giving an abstract of the other legends which are interwoven with
the narrative. There was formerly, we are told, a king called Kuśa,
son of Prajāpati, who had a son called Kuśanābha, who was father
of Gādhi, the father of Viśvāmitra. The latter ruled the earth for
many thousand years. On one occasion, when he was making a cir-
cuit of the earth, he came to Vaśishṭha's hermitage, the pleasant abode
of many saints, sages, and holy devotees (chapter 51, verses 11–29),
where, after at first declining, he allowed himself to be hospitably
entertained with his followers by the son of Brahmā (ch. 52). Viś-
vāmitra (ch. 53), however, coveting the wondrous cow, which had
supplied all the dainties of the feast, first of all asked that she should
be given to him in exchange for a hundred thousand common cows,
adding that "she was a gem, that gems were the property of the king,
and that, therefore, the cow was his by right" (53, 9. *Ratnaṁ hi bha-
gavann etad ratna-hārī cha pārthivaḥ* | 10. *Tasmād me śabalām dehi ma-
maishā dharmato dvija*). On this price being refused, the king advances
immensely in his offers, but all without effect. He then proceeds
(ch. 54)—very ungratefully and tyrannically, it must be allowed—to
have the cow removed by force, but she breaks away from his attend-
ants, and rushes back to her master, complaining that he was deserting
her. He replies that he was not deserting her, but that the king was

¹⁸⁹ These are the sections of Schlegel's and the Bombay editions, which correspond
to sections 52–67 of Gorresio's edition.

EARLY CONTESTS BETWEEN

more powerful than he. She answers, 54, 14 : *Nā balam kshat-jasyāhur brāhmaṇāḥ balavattarāḥ | brahman brahma-balaṁ diryaṁ hātrāc̣ cha balabattaram | aprameyam balaṁ tubhyaṁ na trayā bala-attarāḥ | Viśvāmitro mahāvīryo tejas tava durāsadam | niyunkshva mām mahātejas tram brahma-bala-sambhritām | tasya darpam balam yatnaṁ nāśayāmi durātmanaḥ* | “Men do not ascribe strength to a Kshattriya : the Brāhmans are stronger. The strength of Brāhmans is divine, and superior to that of Kshattriyas. 15. Thy strength is immeasurable. Viśvāmitra, though of great vigour, is not more powerful than thou. Thy energy is invincible. Commission me, who have been acquired by thy Brahmanical power, and I will destroy the pride, and force, and attempt of this wicked prince.”¹⁹⁰ She accordingly by her bellowing creates hundreds of Pahlavas, who destroy the entire host (*nāśayanti balaṁ sarvam*, verse 19) of Viśvāmitra, but are slain by him in their turn. Śukas and Yavanas, of great power and valour, and well armed, were then produced, who consumed the king's soldiers,¹⁹¹ but were routed by him. The cow then (ch. 55) calls into existence by her bellowing, and from different parts of her body, other warriors of various tribes, who again destroyed Viśvāmitra's entire army, foot soldiers, elephants, horses, chariots, and all. A hundred of the monarch's sons, armed with various weapons, then rushed in great fury on Vaśiṣṭha, but were all reduced to ashes in a moment by the blast of that sage's mouth.¹⁹² Viśvāmitra, being thus utterly vanquished and humbled, appointed one of his sons to be regent, and travelled to the Himālaya, where he betook himself to austerities, and thereby obtained a vision of Mahādeva, who at his desire revealed to him the science of arms in all its branches, and gave him celestial weapons with which, elated and full of pride, he consumed the hermitage of Vaśiṣṭha, and put its inhabitants to flight. Vaśiṣṭha then threatens Viśvāmitra and

¹⁹⁰ Compare Manu, xi. 32. *Sva-vīryād rāja-vīryāc̣ cha sva-vīryam balavattaram | tasmāt sva-va vīryaṁ nigrihāyād arāṇa diryaḥ* | “Of the two, his own, and a king's might, let a Brāhman know that his own is superior. By his own might alone, therefore, let him restrain his enemies.”

¹⁹¹ We had been before told that they had been killed, so that this looks like a slaying of the slain, as no resuscitation of the army is alluded to.

¹⁹² On this the Commentator remarks that “though these princes were Kshattriyas, they were not actual kings, and had acted tyrannically, so that a very slight expiation was required for killing them” (*kshattriyatve 'pi pṛithvī-patuvābhūtāt tad-badhe alpa-prāyaścittam ātutāyitrāc̣ cha* |).

uplifts his Brahmanical mace. Viśvāmitra, too, raises his fiery weapon and calls out to his adversary to stand. Vaśishṭha bids him to show his strength, and boasts that he will soon humble his pride. He asks: (56, 4) *Kva cha te kshattriya-balam kva cha brahma-balam mahat | pāsya brahma-balaṁ divyam mama kshattriya-pāṁśana | tasyāstram Gādhiputrasya ghoram āgneyam udyatam | brahma-danḍena tuch chkhāntam agner vegah ivāmbhasā* | “‘What comparison is there between a Kshattriya’s might, and the great might of a Brāhman? Behold, thou contemptible Kshattriya, my divine Brahmanical power.’ The dreadful fiery weapon uplifted by the son of Gādhi was then quenched by the rod of the Brāhman, as fire is by water.” Many and various other celestial missiles, as the nooses of Brahmā, Kāla (Time), and Varuṇa, the discus of Viṣṇu, and the trident of Śiva, were hurled by Viśvāmitra at his antagonist, but the son of Brahmā swallowed them up in his all-devouring mace. Finally, to the intense consternation of all the gods, the warrior shot off the terrific weapon of Brāhmā (*brāhmāstra*); but this was equally ineffectual against the Brahmanical sage. Vaśishṭha had now assumed a direful appearance: (58, 18) *Roma-kūpeshu sarreshu Vaśishṭhasya mahātmanah | marīchyah iva nishpetur agner dhūmakulārchishah | prajāvalad brahma-danḍas cha Vaśishṭhasya karodyatah | vidhūmah iva kālāgnir Yama-danḍah ivāparah* | “‘Jets of fire mingled with smoke darted from the pores of his body; (19) the Brahmanical mace blazed in his hand like a smokeless¹⁹³ mundane conflagration, or a second sceptre of Yāma.’” Being appeased, however, by the munis, who proclaimed his superiority to his rival, the sage stayed his vengeance; and Viśvāmitra exclaimed with a groan: (56, 23) *Dhig balam kshattriya-balam brahma-tejo-balam balam | ekena brahma-danḍena sarvāstrāṇi hatāni me* | “‘Shame on a Kshattriya’s strength: the strength of a Brahman’s might alone is strength: by the single Brahmanical mace all my weapons have been destroyed.’” No alternative now remains to the humiliated monarch, but either to acquiesce in this helpless inferiority, or to work out his own elevation to the Brahmanical order. He embraces the latter alternative: (56, 24) *Tad etat prasamīkshyāham prasannendriya-mānasah | tapo mahat samāsthāsye yad vai brahmatra-kāraṇam* | “‘Having pondered well this defeat, I shall betake myself, with composed senses and mind,

¹⁹³ The Bombay edition has *vidhūmah*. Schlegel’s and Gorresio’s editions have *sadhūmah*, “enveloped in smoke.”

to strenuous austere fervour, which shall exalt me to the rank of a Brāhman." Intensely vexed and mortified, groaning and full of hatred against his enemy, he travelled with his queen to the south, and carried his resolution into effect; (ch. 57) and we are first of all told that three sons Havishyanda, Madhusyanda, and Dṛiḍhanetra were born to him. At the end of a thousand years Brahmā appeared, and announced that he had conquered the heaven of royal sages (*rājārshis*); and, in consequence of his austere fervour, he was recognised as having attained that rank. Viśvāmitra, however, was ashamed, grieved, and incensed at the offer of so very inadequate a reward, and exclaimed: "I have practised intense austerity, and the gods and ṛishis regard me only as a *rājārshi*!¹⁹⁴ Austerities, it appears, are altogether fruitless" (57, 5. *Jitāḥ rājārshi-lokās te tapasā Kuśikātmaḥ* | 6. *Anena tapasā tvam hi rājārshir iti vidmahe* | . . . 7. *Viśvāmित्रोऽपि तच्च च्छ्रुत्व ह्रियं किञ्चिद अवृणु-मुक्त्वा | दुष्कृतेना महता विष्टा समान्युर इदम अब्रवीत् | तपाश् चा समहत तप्तम रājārshir iti माम विदुः | देवैश्च सार्षि-गुणैश्च सर्वे नृन्ति मयि तपा-फलम्* |). Notwithstanding

¹⁹⁴ The Vishṇu Purāṇa, iii. 6, 21, says. "There are three kinds of rishis: Brāhmarshis, after them Dēvarshis, and after them Rājārshis" (*jneyāḥ brahmarshayaḥ pūrvaṁ tebhyo devarshayaḥ punaḥ | rājārshayaḥ punas tebhyāḥ ṛishi-prakṛitayas trayāḥ* |). Bohtlingk and Roth, *s.v. ṛishi*, mention also (on the authority of the vocabulary called Trikaṇḍasheṣha) the words *māharshi* (great rishi), *pārāmarshi* (most eminent rishi), *śrutarshi* (secondary rishi), and *kāṇḍarshi*, who is explained *s.v.* to be a teacher of a particular portion (*kāṇḍa*) of the Veda. *Devarshi* are explained by Professor Wilson (V.P. iii. p. 68, paraphrasing the text of the Vishṇu Purāṇa), to be "sages who are demi-gods also;" *Brāhmarshis* to be "sages who are sons of Brahmā or Brahmans;" and *Rājārshis* to be "princes who have adopted a life of devotion." In a note he adds: "A similar enumeration is given in the Vāyu, with some additions: Rishi is derived from *ṛish*, 'to go to,' or 'approach;' the Brahmarshis, it is said, are descendants of the five patriarchs, who were the founders of races or gotras of Brahmans, or Kaśyapa, Vasiṣṭha, Angiras, Atri, and Bhṛigu; the Devarshi are Nara and Nārāyaṇa, the sons of Dharma; the Bālakhilyas, who sprang from Kratu; Kardama, the son of Pulaha; Kuvēra, the son of Pulastya; Achala, the son of Pratyūsha; Nārada and Parvata, the sons of Kaśyapa. Rājārshis are Ikshvaku and other princes. The Brahmarshis dwell in the sphere of Brahmā; the Devarshi in the region of the gods; and the Rājārshis in the heaven of Indra." Brahmarshis are evidently rishis who were priests; and Rājārshis, rishis of kingly extraction. If so, a Devarshi, having a divine character, should be something higher than either. Professor Roth, following apparently the Trikaṇḍasheṣha, defines them as "rishis dwelling among the gods." I am not aware how far back this classification of rishis goes in Indian literature. Roth, *s.v. ṛishi, brahmarshi* and *devarshi* does not give any references to these words as occurring in the Brāhmaṇas; and they are not found in the hymns of the R.V. where, however, the "seven rishis" are mentioned. Regarding *rājārshis* see pp. 266 ff. above.

this disappointment, he had ascended one grade, and forthwith recommenced his work of mortification.

At this point of time his austerities were interrupted by the following occurrences: King Triśanku, one of Ikshvāku's descendants, had conceived the design of celebrating a sacrifice by virtue of which he should ascend bodily to heaven. As Vasiṣṭha, on being summoned, declared that the thing was impossible (*āsakyaṃ*), Triśanku travelled to the south, where the sage's hundred sons were engaged in austerities, and applied to them to do what their father had declined. Though he addressed them with the greatest reverence and humility, and added that "the Ikshvākus regarded their family-priests as their highest resource in difficulties, and that, after their father, he himself looked to them as his tutelary deities" (57, 22. *Ikshvākūṇāṃ hi sarveśhām purodhāḥ paramā gatiḥ | tasmād anantaram sarve bhavanto daivatam mama*), he received from the haughty priests the following rebuke for his presumption: (58, 2) *Pratyākhyāto'si durbuddhe gurunā satyavādinā | taṃ kathaṃ samatikramya śākhāntaram upeyivān | 3. Ikshvākūṇāṃ hi sarveśhām purodhāḥ paramā gatiḥ | na chātikramitūṃ śakyaṃ vachanaṃ satyavādināḥ | 4. "Āsakyam" iti chovācha Vasiṣṭho bhagavān ṛishiḥ | taṃ vayaṃ vai samāharttum kratuṃ śaktāḥ kathaṃ tava | 5. Bālīśas traṃ nara-śreṣṭha gamyatāṃ sva-puram punaḥ | yājane bhagavān śaktas trilokyasyāpi pārthiva | avamānaṃ kathaṃ kartuṃ tasya śakshyāmahe vāyam |* "Fool, thou hast been refused by thy truth-speaking preceptor. How is it that, disregarding his authority, thou hast resorted to another school (*śākhā*)?"¹⁹⁵ 3. The family-priest is the highest oracle of all the Ikshvākus; and the command of that veracious personage cannot be transgressed. 4. Vasiṣṭha, the divine rishi, has declared that 'the thing cannot be;' and how can we undertake thy sacrifice? 5. Thou art foolish, king; return to thy capital. The divine (Vasiṣṭha) is competent to

¹⁹⁵ It does not appear how Triśanku, in asking the aid of Vasiṣṭha's sons after applying in vain to their father, could be charged with resorting to another *śākhā* (school), in the ordinary sense of that word: as it is not conceivable that the sons should have been of another *Sākhā* from the father, whose cause they espouse with so much warmth. The Commentator in the Bombay edition explains the word *śākhāntaram* as = *yājānādinā rakṣaḥkāntaram*, "one who by sacrificing for thee, etc., will be another protector." Gorresio's Gauḍa text, which may often be used as a commentary on the older one, has the following paraphrase of the words in question, ch. 60, 3 *Mūlam utsṛjya kasmāt traṃ śākhāṃ ichhasi lambitum |* "Why, forsaking the root, dost thou desire to hang upon the branches."

act as priest of the three worlds; how can we shew him disrespect?" Triśanku then gave them to understand, that as his preceptor and "his preceptor's sons had declined compliance with his requests, he should think of some other expedient." In consequence of his venturing to express this presumptuous intention, they condemned him by their imprecation to become a Chāṇḍāla (58, 7. "*Pratyākhyāto bhagavatā guru-putrais tathaiva cha | anyām gatim gamishyāmi svasti vo 'stu tapodhanāḥ*" | *rishi-putrās tu tach chhruvā vākyaṁ ghorābhisaṁhitam | śepuḥ parama-sankruddhās "chāṇḍālatvaṁ gamishyasi"* |). As this curse soon took effect, and the unhappy king's form was changed into that of a degraded outcast, he resorted to Viśvāmitra (who, as we have seen, was also dwelling at this period in the south), enlarging on his own virtues and piety, and bewailing his fate. Viśvāmitra commiserated his condition (ch. 59), and promised to sacrifice on his behalf, and exalt him to heaven in the same Chāṇḍāla-form to which he had been condemned by his preceptors' curse. "Heaven is now as good as in thy possession, since thou hast resorted to the son of Kuśika" (59, 4. *Guru-śāpa-kṛitaṁ rūpaṁ yad udaṁ trayi varttate | anena saha rūpeṇa saśarīro gamishyasi | hasta-prāptam aham manye svargaṁ tava narādhipa | yas traṁ Kauśikam āgamyā śaranyāḥ śaraṇaṁ gataḥ* |). He then directed that preparations should be made for the sacrifice, and that all the rishis, including the family of Vaśiṣṭha, should be invited to the ceremony. The disciples of Viśvāmitra, who had conveyed his message, reported the result on their return in these words: (59, 11) *Srutvā te vachanaṁ sarve samāyānti dijātayaḥ | sarva-deśeṣu chōgachhan varjayitvā Mahodayam | Vaśiṣṭhaṁ tach chhataṁ sarvaṁ krodha-paryākulāksharam | yad uvācha vacho ghorāṁ śṛṇu traṁ muni-pungava | "kshattriyo yājako yasya chāṇḍālasya viśeshataḥ | kathaṁ sadusi bhoktāro haris tasya surarshayaḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ rā mahātmāno bhuktvā chāṇḍāla-bhojanam | kathaṁ svargaṁ gamishyanti Viśvāmitrena pālitaḥ"* | *etad vachana-naishṭhuryyam ūchuḥ saṁrakta-lochanāḥ | Vaśiṣṭhāḥ muni-śārdūla sarve saha-mahodayāḥ* | "Having heard your message, all the Brāhmans are assembling in all the countries, and have arrived, excepting Mahodaya (Vaśiṣṭha?). Hear what dreadful words those hundred Vaśiṣṭhas, their voices quivering with rage, have uttered: 'How can the gods and rishis ¹⁹⁶ con-

¹⁹⁶ The rishis as priests (*ritul*) would be entitled to eat the remains of the sacrifice, according to the Commentator.

sume the oblation at the sacrifice of that man, especially if he be a Chāṇḍāla, for whom a Kshattriya is officiating-priest? How can illustrious Brāhmans ascend to heaven, after eating the food of a Chāṇḍāla, and being entertained by Viśvāmitra? These ruthless words all the Vaśishṭhas, together with Mahodaya, uttered, their eyes inflamed with anger." Viśvāmitra, who was greatly incensed on receiving this message, by a curse doomed the sons of Vaśishṭha to be reduced to ashes, and reborn as degraded outcasts (*mṛitapāh*) for seven hundred births, and Mahodaya to become a Nishāda. Knowing that this curse had taken effect (ch. 60), Viśvāmitra then, after eulogizing Triśanku, proposed to the assembled rishis that the sacrifice should be celebrated. To this they assented, being actuated by fear of the terrible sage's wrath. Viśvāmitra himself officiated at the sacrifice as *yājaka*; ¹⁹⁷ and the other rishis as priests (*ritvijah*) (with other functions) performed all the ceremonies. Viśvāmitra next invited the gods to partake of the oblations: (60, 11) *Nābhyagaman yadā tatra bhāgārthaṁ sarva-devatāḥ | tataḥ kopa-samāviṣṭo Viśvāmitro mahāmuniḥ | sruvam udyamya sakrodhas Triśankum idam abravīt | "paśya me tapaso vīryaṁ svārjitasya nareśvara | esha tvām svaśarireṇa nayāmi svargam ojasā | dushprāpyaṁ svaśarireṇa svargaṁ gachchha nareśvara | svārjitaṁ kinchid apy asti mayā hi tapasaḥ phalam |* "When, however, the deities did not come to receive their portions, Viśvāmitra became full of wrath, and raising aloft the sacrificial ladle, thus addressed Triśanku: 'Behold, o monarch, the power of austere fervour acquired by my own efforts. I myself, by my own energy, will conduct thee to heaven. Ascend to that celestial region which is so arduous to attain in an earthly body. I have surely earned *some* reward of my austerity.' " Triśanku ascended instantly to heaven in the sight of the munis. Indra, however, ordered him to be gone, as a person who, having incurred the curse of his spiritual preceptors, was unfit for the abode of the celestials;—and to fall down headlong to earth (60, 17. *Triśanko gachchha bhūyas tvam nāsi svargakṛitālayaḥ | guru-śāpa-hato mādha pata bhūmim arāk-śrāḥ |*). He accordingly began to descend, invoking loudly, as he fell, the help of his spiritual patron. Viśvāmitra, greatly incensed, called out to him to stop: (60, 20) *Tato brahma-tapo-yogāt Prajāpatir ivāperah | sasarpjja dakṣiṇe bhāge saptarshīn aparāṇ punaḥ | dakṣiṇāṁ diśam āsthāya*

¹⁹⁷ This means as *adhvaryu* according to the Commentator.

rishi-madhye mahāyaśāḥ | nakshattra-mālām aparām asṛijāt krodha-mūrçchitāḥ | anyam Indraṁ karishyāmi loko vā syād anindrakaḥ | daiva-tāny api sa krodhāt srashtuṁ samupachakrame ¹⁹⁸ “Then by the power of his divine knowledge and austere fervour he created, like another Prajāpati, other Seven Rishis (a constellation so called) in the southern part of the sky. Having proceeded to this quarter of the heavens, the renowned sage, in the midst of the rishis, formed another garland of stars, being overcome with fury. Exclaiming, ‘I will create another Indra, or the world shall have no Indra at all,’ he began, in his rage, to call gods also into being.” The rishis, gods (Suras), and Asuras now became seriously alarmed and said to Viśvāmitra, in a conciliatory tone, that Triśanku, “as he had been cursed by his preceptors, should not be admitted bodily into heaven, until he had undergone some lustration” (60, 24. *Ayaṁ rājā mahābhāga guru-śūpa-parikshataḥ | saśarīro divaṁ yātuṁ nārhaty akṛita-pāvanaḥ* |).¹⁹⁹ The sage replied that he had given a promise to Triśanku, and appealed to the gods to permit his protégé to remain bodily in heaven, and the newly created stars to retain their places in perpetuity. The gods agreed that “these numerous stars should remain, but beyond the sun’s path, and that Triśanku, like an immortal, with his head downwards, should shine among them, and be followed by them,” adding “that his object would be thus attained, and his renown secured, and he would be like a dweller in heaven” (60, 29. *Evam bhavatu bhadrāṁ te tishṭhantv etāni sarvaśaḥ | gagane tāny anekāni vaiśvānara-pathād vahiḥ | nakshattrāṇi muni-śreṣṭhā teshu jyottishshu jājvalan | avāk-śirōs Triśankuś cha tishṭhatv amara-sannibhaḥ | anuyāsyanti chaitāni jyotīṁshi nṛipa-sattamam | kṛitārthaṁ kīrtimantaṁ cha svarga-loka-gataṁ yathā* |). Thus was this great dispute adjusted by a compromise, which Viśvāmitra accepted.

This story of Triśanku, it will have been observed, differs materially from the one quoted above (p. 375 ff.) from the Harivamśa; but brings out more distinctly the character of the conflict between Vaiśiṣṭha and Viśvāmitra.

When all the gods and rishis had departed at the conclusion of the

¹⁹⁸ I follow Schlegel’s text, which differs verbally, though not in substance, both from the Bombay edition and from Gorresio’s.

¹⁹⁹ The last compound word *akṛitapāvanaḥ*, “without lustration,” is given by Schlegel and Gorresio. The Bombay edition has instead of it *eva tapodhana*, “o sage rich in austerity.”

sacrifice, Viśvāmitra said to his attendant devotees: (61, 2) *Mahān vighnaḥ pravṛtito 'yaṁ dakṣiṇām āsthito dīśam | dīśam anyām prapat-syāmas tatra tapsyāmahe tapaḥ* | “This has been a great interruption [to our austerities] which has occurred in the southern region: we must proceed in another direction to continue our penances.” He accordingly went to a forest in the west, and began his austerities anew. Here the narrative is again interrupted by the introduction of another story, that of king Ambārīsha, king of Ayodhyā, who was, according to the Rāmāyaṇa, the twenty-eighth in descent from Ikshvāku, and the twenty-second from Trisanku. (Compare the genealogy in the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 70, and ii. 110, 6 ff., with that in Wilson’s Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. iii. pp. 260 ff. 280, 284 ff. and 303; which is different.) Viśvāmitra is nevertheless represented as flourishing contemporaneously with both of these princes. The story relates that Ambarīsha was engaged in performing a sacrifice, when Indra carried away the victim. The priest said that this ill-omened event had occurred owing to the king’s bad administration; and would call for a great expiation, unless a human victim could be produced (61, 8. *Prāyaścittam mahad hy etad naraṁ vā puruṣarshabha | ānayasva pāśūṁ śighraṁ yāvat karma pravarttate*). After a long search the royal-rishi (Ambarīsha) came upon the Brāhmaṇa-rishi Richīka, a descendant of Bhṛigu, and asked him to sell one of his sons for a victim, at the price of a hundred thousand cows. Richīka answered that he would not sell his eldest son; and his wife added that she would not sell the youngest: “eldest sons,” she observed, “being generally the favourites of their fathers, and youngest sons of their mothers” (61, 18. *Prāyena hi nara-śreṣṭha jyeshṭhāḥ pitṛiṣu valla-bhāḥ | mātṛiṇāṁ chu kanīyāṁsas tasmād rakshe kanīyasam* |). The second son, Śunaśśepa, then said that in that case he regarded himself as the one who was to be sold, and desired the king to remove him. The hundred thousand cows, with ten millions of gold-pieces and heaps of jewels, were paid down, and Śunaśśepa carried away. As they were passing through Pushkara (ch. 62) Śunaśśepa beheld his maternal uncle Viśvāmitra (see Rāmāyaṇa, i. 34, 7,²⁰⁰ and p. 352 above) who was engaged in austerities there with other rishis, threw himself into his arms,

²⁰⁰ *Pūrvajā bhagavī chāpi mama Rūghava suratā | nāmā Satyavatī nāma Richīke pratipādūtā* | “And I have a religious sister older than myself called Satyavatī, who was given in marriage to Richīka.”

and implored his assistance, urging his orphan, friendless, and helpless state, as claims on the sage's benevolence (62, 4. *Na me 'sti mātā na pitā jñātayo bāndhavāḥ kutah | trātum arhasi mām saumya dharmena muni-pungava | 7. Na me nātho hy anāthasya bhava bhavyena chetasā* |). Viśvāmitra soothed him; and pressed his own sons to offer themselves as victims in the room of S'unaśśepa. This proposition met with no favour from Madhushyanda²⁰¹ and the other sons of the royal hermit, who answered with haughtiness and derision: (62, 14) *Katham ātma-sutān hitrā trāyase 'nya-sutān vibho | akāryyam iva paśyāmaḥ svamāṁsam iva bhojane* | "How is it that thou sacrificest thine own sons, and seekest to rescue those of others? We look upon this as wrong, and like the eating of one's own flesh."²⁰² The sage was exceedingly wroth at this disregard of his injunction, and doomed his sons to be born in the most degraded classes, like Vaśishṭha's sons, and to eat dog's flesh,²⁰³ for a thousand years. He then said to S'unaśśepa: (62, 19) *Paritrapāśair ābaddho rakta-mālyānulepanaḥ | Vaiṣṇavaṁ yūpam āśādyā vāgbhir Agniṁ udāhara | ime cha gāthe dve divye gāyethāḥ muni-puttraka | Ambarīshasya yajne 'smiṁs tataḥ siddhim avāpsyasi* | "When thou art bound with hallowed cords, decked with a red garland, and anointed with unguents, and fastened to the sacrificial post of Viṣṇu, then address thyself to Agni, and sing these two divine verses (*gāthās*), at the sacrifice of Ambarīsha; then shalt thou attain the fulfilment [of thy desire]." Being furnished with the two *gāthās*, S'unaśśepa proposed at once to king Ambarīsha that they should set out for their destination. When bound at the stake to be immolated, dressed in a red garment, "he celebrated the two gods, Indra and his younger brother (Viṣṇu), with the excellent verses. The Thousand-eyed (Indra) was pleased with the secret hymn, and bestowed long life on S'unaśśepa" (62, 25. *Sa baddho vāgbhir agryābhir abhītusṭāva vai surau | Indram Indrānujaṁ chaiva yathāvad muni-puttrakāḥ | tasmai prītaḥ sahasrākṣo*

²⁰¹ The word is written thus in Schlegel's and Gorresio's editions. The Bombay edition reads Madhuchhanda.

²⁰² Schlegel and Gorresio read *svamāṁsam*, "one's own flesh," which seems much more appropriate than *śva-māṁsam*, "dog's flesh," the reading of the Bombay edition.

²⁰³ Gorresio's edition alone reads *sva-māṁsa-īṣṭayoh*, "subsisting on your own flesh," and makes this to be allusion to what the sons had just said and a punishment for their impertinence (64, 16. *Yasmāt śva-māṁsam uddiṣṭān yushmābhir avamanya mām*).

rahasya-stuti-toshitaḥ | dīrgham āyus tadā prādācch Chhunaśśephāya Vāsavaḥ |).²⁰⁴ King Ambarīsha also received great benefits from this sacrifice. Viśvāmitra meanwhile proceeded with his austerities, which he prolonged for a thousand years.

At the end of this time (ch. 63) the gods came to allot his reward; and Brahmā announced that he had attained the rank of a rishi, thus apparently advancing an additional step. Dissatisfied, as it would seem, with this, the sage commenced his task of penance anew. After a length of time he beheld the nymph (Apsāras) Menākā, who had come to bathe in the lake of Pushkara. She flashed on his view, unequalled in her radiant beauty, like lightning in a cloud (63, 5. *Rūpenāprati-mām tatra vidutaṁ jalade yathā*). He was smitten by her charms, invited her to be his companion in his hermitage, and for ten years remained a slave to her witchery, to the great prejudice of his austerities.²⁰⁵ At length he became ashamed of this ignoble subjection, and full of indignation at what he believed to be a device of the gods to disturb his devotion; and, dismissing the nymph with gentle accents, he departed for the northern mountains, where he practised severe austerities for a thousand years on the banks of the Kauśikī river. The gods became alarmed at the progress he was making, and decided that he should be dignified with the appellation of great rishi (*māhārshi*); and Brahmā, giving effect to the general opinion of the deities, announced that he had conferred that rank upon him. Joining his hands and bowing his head, Viśvāmitra replied that he should consider himself to have indeed completely subdued his senses, if the incomparable title of Brāhman-rishi were conferred upon him (63, 31. *Brāhmarshi-śabdāṁ atulaṁ svārjitaiḥ karmabhiḥ śubhaiḥ | yadi me bhagavān āha tato 'haṁ vijitendriyaḥ |*). Brahmā informed him in answer, that he had not yet acquired the power of perfectly controlling his senses; but should make further efforts with that view. The sage then began to put himself through a yet more rigorous course of austerities, standing with his arms erect, without support, feeding on air, in summer exposed to five fires (*i.e.* one on each of four sides, and the sun overhead), in the rainy season remaining unsheltered from the wet, and in

²⁰⁴ I have alluded above, p. 358, note, to the differences which exist between this legend of S'unaśśepa and the older one in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa.

²⁰⁵ Compare Mr. Leckie's History of Rationalism, vol. i. p. 86.

winter lying on a watery couch night and day. This he continued for a thousand years. At last Indra and the other deities became greatly distressed at the idea of the merit he was storing up, and the power which he was thereby acquiring; and the chief of the celestials desired (ch. 64) the nymph Rāmbhā to go and bewitch him by her blandishments. She expressed great reluctance to expose herself to the wrath of the formidable muni, but obeyed the repeated injunction of Indra, who promised that he and Kandarpa (the god of love) should stand by her, and assumed her most attractive aspect with the view of overcoming the sage's impassibility. He, however, suspected this design, and becoming greatly incensed, he doomed the nymph by a curse to be turned into stone and to continue in that state for a thousand years.²⁰⁶ The curse took effect, and Kandarpa and Indra slunk away. In this way, though he resisted the allurements of sensual love,²⁰⁷ he lost the whole fruit of his austerities by yielding to anger; and had to begin his work over again. He resolved to check his irascibility, to remain silent, not even to breathe for hundreds of years; to dry up his body; and to fast and stop his breath till he had obtained the coveted character of a Brāhman. He then (ch. 65) left the Himālaya and travelled to the east, where he underwent a dreadful exercise, unequalled in the whole history of austerities, maintaining silence, according to a vow, for a thousand years. At the end of this time he had attained to perfection, and although thwarted by many obstacles, he remained unmoved by anger. On the expiration of this course of austerity, he prepared some food to eat; which Indra, coming in the form of a Brāhman, begged that he would give him. Viśvāmitra did so, and though he had none left for himself, and was obliged to remain fasting, he said nothing to the Brāhman, on account of his vow of silence. 65, 8. *Tasyānucheḥkcasamānasya mūrdhni dhūmo vyajāyata* | 9. *Trailokyāṁ yena sambhrāntam ātāpitam ivābharat* | . . . 11. "*Bahubhiḥ kṛāṇair deca Viśvāmitro mahāmuniḥ* | *lobhitaḥ krodhitaś chaiva tapasā chābhivardhate* | . . . 12. *Nā dīyate yadi te asya manasā yad abhīpsitam* | 13. *Vināśayati trailokyāṁ tapasā sa-charācaram* | *vyākulāś*

²⁰⁶ On this the Commentator remarks that this incident shews that anger is more difficult to conquer than even lust (*etena kāmād api krodho durjayaḥ iti śūchitam*).

²⁰⁷ The Commentator, however, suggests that the sudden sight of Rāmbhā may at first have excited in him some feelings of this kind (*āpūtato Rāmbhā-darśana-pracuratyā kāmēnūpi tapaḥ-kshayaḥ*).

cha diśaḥ sarvāḥ na cha kinchit prakāśate | 14. *Sāgarāḥ kshubhitāḥ sarve viśīryante cha parvatāḥ* | *prakampate cha vasudhā vāyur vātiha sankulāḥ* | 15. *Brahman na pratijānāmo nāstiko jāyate janah* | 16. *Buddhiṁ na kurute yāvad nāśe deva mahāmuniḥ* | 17. *Tāvat prasādyo bhagavān agnirūpo mahādhyutiḥ*” | 19. *Brahmarshe svāgataṁ te ’stu tapasā smah sutoshitāḥ* | 20. *Brāhmaṇyaṁ tapasogreṇa prāptavān asi Kauśika* | *dirgham āyus che te brahman dadāmi sa-marud-gaṇaḥ* | 21. *svasti prāpnuhi bhadraṁ te gachha saumya yathāsukham* | . . . 22. . . . *brāhmaṇyaṁ yadi me prāptaṁ dirgham āyus tathaiva cha* | 23. *Oṁkāro ’tha vashatkāro vedās cha varayantu mām* | *kshattria-veda-vidām śreshtḥo brahma-veda-vidām api* | 24. *Brahma-putro Vāsishṭho mām evaṁ vadatu devatāḥ* | 25. *Tataḥ prasādito decair Vāsishṭho japatām varaḥ* | *sakhyāṁ chakāra brahmarshir “evam aśt” iti chābravīt* | 26. “*Brahmarshitvāṁ na sandehaḥ sarvam sampadyate tva*” | 27. *Viśvāmitro ’pi dharmātmā labdhvā brāhmaṇyam uttamam* | *pūjayāmāsa brahmarshiṁ Vāsishṭhaṁ japatām varam* | “As he continued to suspend his breath, smoke issued from his head, to the great consternation and distress of the three worlds.” The gods, rishis, etc., then addressed Brahmā: “The great muni Viśvāmitra has been allured and provoked in various ways, but still advances in his sanctity. If his wish is not conceded, he will destroy the three worlds by the force of his austerity. All the regions of the universe are confounded, no light anywhere shines; all the oceans are tossed, and the mountains crumble, the earth quakes, and the wind blows confusedly. 15. We cannot, o Brahmā, guarantee that mankind shall not become atheistic. . . . 16. Before the great and glorious sage of fiery form resolves to destroy (everything) let him be propitiated.” The gods, headed by Brahmā, then addressed Viśvāmitra: “‘Hail Brāhmaṇ rishi, we are gratified by thy austerities; o Kauśika, thou hast, through their intensity, attained to Brāhmaṇhood. I, o Brāhmaṇ, associated with the Maruts, confer on thee long life. May every blessing attend thee; depart wherever thou wilt.’ The sage, delighted, made his obeisance to the gods, and said: ‘If I have obtained Brāhmaṇhood, and long life, then let the mystic monosyllable (*oṁkāra*) and the sacrificial formula (*vāshatkāra*) and the Vedas recognise me in that capacity. And let Vāsishṭha, the son of Brahmā, the most eminent of those who are skilled in the Kshattria-veda, and the Brāhma-veda (the knowledge of the Kshattriya and the Brahmanical disciplines), address me simi-

larly.' . . . Accordingly Vaśishṭha, being propitiated by the gods, became reconciled to Viśvāmitra, and recognised his claim to all the prerogatives of a Brāhman rishi. . . . Viśvāmitra, too, having attained the Brahmanical rank, paid all honour to Vaśishṭha." Such was the grand result achieved by Viśvāmitra, at the cost of many thousand years of intense mortification of the body, and discipline of the soul. During the course of the struggle he had manifested, as the story tells us, a power little, if at all, inferior to that of Indra, the king of the gods; and as in a former legend we have seen King Nahusha actually occupying the throne of that deity, we cannot doubt that—according to the recognised principles of Indian mythology—Viśvāmitra had only to recommence his career of self-mortification in order to raise himself yet higher than he had yet risen, to the rank of a devārshi, or divine rishi (if this be, indeed, a superior grade to that of brahmarshi), or to any other elevation he might desire. But, as far as the account in the Rāmāyaṇa informs us, he was content with his success. He stood on a footing of perfect equality with his rival Vaśishṭha, and became indifferent to further honours. In fact, it was not necessary for the purpose of the inventors of the legend to carry him any higher. They only wished to account for his exercising the prerogatives of a Brāhman; and this had been already accomplished to their satisfaction.

In the story of Sakuntalā, however, as narrated in the Mahābhārata, Ādiparvan, sixty-ninth and following sections, we are informed that, to the great alarm of Indra, Viśvāmitra renewed his austerities, even long after he had attained the position of a Brāhman, verse 2914: *Tapyamānaḥ kula purā Viśvāmitro mahat tapaḥ | subhriṣāṁ tāpayāmāsa Sakraṁ sura-gaṇeśraram | tapasū dipta-vīryyo'yaṁ sthānād mām chyārayed iti* | "Formerly Viśvāmitra, who was practising intense austere-fervour, occasioned great distress to Sakra (Indra), the lord of the deities, lest by the fiery energy so acquired by the saint he himself should be cast down from his place." Indra accordingly resorted to the usual device of sending one of the Apsarases, Menakā, to seduce the sage by the display of her charms, and the exercise of all her allurements, "by beauty, youth, sweetness, gestures, smiles, and words" (verse 2920, *Rūpa-yauvana-mādhuryya-chesṭita-smita-bhāṣitaḥ*), into the indulgence of sensual love; and thus put an end to his efforts after increased sanctity. Menakā urges the dangers of the mission arising from the great power

and irascibility of the sage, of whom, she remarked, even Indra himself was afraid, as a reason for excusing her from undertaking it; and refers to some incidents in Viśvāmitra's history, verse 2923: *Mahābhāgaṃ* , *Vaśiṣṭhaṃ yaḥ putrair iṣṭair vyayojayat | kṣhattra-jātaś cha yaḥ pūrvam abhavat brāhmaṇo balāt | śaughārthaṃ yo naḍīm chakre durgamām bahubhir jalaiḥ | yām tām punyathamām loke Kauśikīti vidur janāḥ |* 2925. *Babhāra yatrāsya purā kāle durge mahātmanah | dārān Matango dharmātmā rājarshir vyādhatām gataḥ | atīta-kāle durbhikṣhe abhyetya punar āśramam | muniḥ Pāreti nadyāḥ vai nāma chakre tadā prabhūḥ | Matangam yājyāṇchakre yatra prīta-manāḥ scayam | traṇi cha somam bhayād yasya gataḥ pātum sureśvara | chakārānyaṃ cha lokaṃ vai krud-dho nakṣhatra-sampadā | pratiśravaṇa-pūrvāṇi nakṣhatrāṇi chakāra yaḥ | guru-śāpa-hatasyāpi Triśankoḥ śaraṇam dadau |* “2923. He deprived the great Vaśiṣṭha of his beloved sons; and though born a Kshatriya, he formerly became a Brāhman by force. For the purpose of purification he rendered the holy river, known in the world as the Kauśikī, unfordable from the mass of water. 2925. His wife was once maintained there in a time of distress by the righteous rājarshi Matanga, who had become a huntsman; and when the famine was past, the muni returned to his hermitage, gave to the river the name of Pārā, and being gratified, sacrificed for Matanga on its banks; and then thou thyself, Indra, from fear of him wentest to drink his soma. He created, too, when incensed, another world, with a garland of stars, formed agreeably to his promise, and gave his protection to Triśanku, even when smitten by his preceptor's curse.” Menakā, however, ends by saying that she cannot decline the commission which has been imposed upon her; but begs that she may receive such succours as may ensure her success. She accordingly shows herself in the neighbourhood of Viśvāmitra's hermitage. The saint yields to the influence of love, invites her to become his companion, and as a result of their intercourse Śakuntalā is born. The Apsaras then returns to Indra's paradise.

SECT. XII.—*Other accounts, from the Mahābhārata, of the way in which Viśvāmitra became a Brāhman.*

In the Udyogaparvan of the Mahābhārata, sections 105–118, a story is told regarding Viśvāmitra and his pupil Gālava, in which a different

account is given of the manner in which Viśvāmitra attained the rank of a Brāhman; viz. by the gift of Dharma, or Righteousness, appearing in the form of his rival. M. Bh. Udyogap. 3721: *Viśvāmitraṁ tapasyantam Dharmo jijnāsaya purā | abhyūgachhat svayam bhūtvā Vaśishṭho bhagarān ṛishiḥ | . . . 3728. Atha varsha-śate pūrṇe Dharmah punar upāgamat | Vaśishṭhaṁ veśam āsthāya Kauśikam bhojanepsaya | sa dṛishṭvā śirasā bhaktuṁ dhriyamāṇam maharshiṇā | tishṭhatā vāyubhakshenā Viśvāmitreṇa dhimata | pratigrihya tato Dharmaḥ tathāivoshmaṁ tathā natam | bhuktvā "prīto 'smi viprarshe" tam uktvā sa munir gataḥ | kshattri-bhūcād apagato brāhmaṇatvam upāgataḥ | Dharmasya vachanāt prīto Viśvāmitras tathā 'bhavat |* "Dharma, assuming the personality of the sage Vaśishṭha, once came to prove Viśvāmitra, when he was living a life of austerity;" and after consuming some food, given him by other devotees, desired Viśvāmitra, who brought him some freshly cooked charu, quite hot, to stand still for the present. Viśvāmitra accordingly stood still, nourished only by air, with the boiled rice on his head. "The same personage, Dharma, in the same disguise, reappeared after a hundred years, desiring food, and consumed the rice (still quite hot and fresh), which he saw supported upon the hermit's head, while he himself remained motionless, feeding on air. Dharma then said to him, 'I am pleased with thee, o Brāhman rishi;' and went away. •Viśvāmitra, having become thus transformed from a Kshattriya into a Brāhman by the word of Dharma, was delighted."

In the Anuśāsanaparvan of the Mahābhārata, we have another reference to the story of Viśvāmitra. King Yudhishṭhira enquires of Bhīshma (verse 181) how, if Brāhmanhood is so difficult to be attained by men of the other three castes, it happened that the great Kshattriya acquired that dignity. The prince then recapitulates the chief exploits of Viśvāmitra: 183. *Tena hy amita-vīryeṇa Vaśishṭhasya mahātmanah | hatam putra-śataṁ sadyas tapasā 'pi pitāmaha | yātudhānās cha bahavo rākshasās tigma-tejasah | mangunā "vishṭa-dehena sṛishṭāḥ kālāntakopamāḥ |* 185. *Mahān Kuśika-raṁśās cha brahmarshi-śata-sankulāḥ | sthāpito nara-loke 'smiṁ vidvān brāhmaṇa-saṁyutāḥ | Richikasyātma-jas chaiva Sunahṣepho mahātapaḥ | vimokshito mahāsattrāt paśutām apy upāgataḥ | Hariśchandra-kratau devāns toshayitvā "tma-tejasā | putratām anusamprāpto Viśvāmitrasya dhimataḥ | nābhī-ādāyato jyeshṭhaṁ Devarātāṁ narā-*

*dhipa | puttrāḥ panchāśad evāpi śaptāḥ śvapachatām gatāḥ | Trisankur bandhubhir muktaḥ Aikshvākuḥ prīti-pūrvakam | avāk-śirāḥ divaṁ nīto dakṣiṇām āsrito diśam | . . . tato vighnakarī chaiva Panchachūdā su-
 sammatā | Rambhā nāmāpsarāḥ śāpād yasya śailatvam āgatā | tathairvā-
 sya bhayād baddhvā Vaśishṭhaḥ salile purā | ātmānam majjayan śrīmān
 vipāśaḥ punar utthitaḥ |* “For he destroyed Vaśishṭha’s hundred sons
 by the power of austere-fervour; when possessed by anger, he created
 many demons, fierce and destructive as death; he (185) established
 the great and wise family of the Kuśikas, which was full of Brāhman
 and hundreds of Brāhman rishis; he delivered Śunaśśepha, son of
 Richika, who was on the point of being slaughtered as a victim, and
 who became his son, after he had, at Hariśchandra’s sacrifice, through
 his own power, propitiated the gods; he cursed his fifty sons who
 would not do homage to Devarāta, (adopted as) the eldest, so that they
 became outcastes; through affection he elevated Trisanku, when for-
 saken by his relations, to heaven, where he remained fixed with his
 head downwards in the southern heavens; (191) . . . he changed the
 troublesome nymph Rambhā, known as Panchachūdā, by his curse into
 a form of stone; he occasioned Vaśishṭha through fear to bind and throw
 himself into the river, though he emerged thence unbound;” and per-
 formed other deeds calculated to excite astonishment. Yudhisṭhira
 ends by enquiring, “how this Kshattriyā became a Brāhman without
 transmigrating into another body” (197. *Dehāntaram anūsādya katham
 sa brāhmaṇo ’bharat* |). In answer to this question, Bhīshma (verses
 200 ff.) deduces the descent of Viśvāmitra from Ajamidha, of the race
 of Bharata, who was a pious priest, or sacrificer (*yajvā dharmabhṛitām
 varaḥ*), the father of Jahnu, who again was the progenitor of Kuśika,
 the father of Gādhi; and narrates the same legend of the birth of Viś-
 vāmitra, which has been already extracted from the Vishṇu Purāṇa (see
 above, pp. 349 f.). The conclusion of the story as here given is, that the
 wife of Richika bore Jamadagni, while “the wife of Gādhi, by the grace
 of the rishi, gave birth to Viśvāmitra, who was a Brāhman rishi, and an
 utterer of the Veda; who, though a Kshattriya, attained to Brāhman-
 hood, and became afterwards also the founder of a Brāhman race” (246.
*Viśvāmitraṁ chājanayad Gādhi-bhāryyā yaśasvinī | risheḥ prasādād rā-
 jendra brahmarshim brahmavādīnam | tato brāhmaṇatām yāto Viśvāmitro
 mahātapaḥ | kshattriyāḥ so ’py atha tathā brahma-vaṁśasya kūrakāḥ* |).

of which the members are detailed,²⁰⁸ including the great rishi Kapila. In regard to the mode in which Viśvāmitra was transformed from a Kshattriya into a Brāhman, we are only told that he belonged to the former class, and that “*Richika* infused into him this exalted Brāhmanhood” (259. *Tathairā kshattriyo rājan Viśvāmitro mahātapaḥ | Richikenāhitam brahma param etad Yudhishṭhira* |).

This version of the story is different from all those preceding ones which enter into any detail, as it makes no mention of Viśvāmitra having extorted the Brahmanical rank from the gods by force of his austerities; and ascribes his transformation to a virtue communicated by the sage Richika.

I have above (p. 296 f.) quoted a passage from Manu on the subject of submissive and refractory monarchs, in which reference is made to Viśvāmitra’s elevation to the Brahmanical order. Nothing is there said of his conflict with Vaśishṭha, or of his arduous penances, endured with the view of conquering for himself an equality with his rival. On the contrary, it is to his submissiveness, *i.e.* to his dutiful recognition of the superiority of the Brāhmans, that his admission into their class is ascribed. Kullūka, indeed, explains the word submissiveness (*vināya*) to mean virtue in general; but the contrast which is drawn between Prithu, Manu, and Viśvāmitra, on the one hand, and Veṇa, Nahusha, Sudās, and Nimi, the resisters of Brāhmanical prerogatives (as all the legends declare them to have been), on the other, makes it tolerably evident that the merit which Manu means to ascribe to Viśvāmitra is that of implicit submission to the spiritual authority of the Brāhmans.

SECT. XIII.—*Legend of Saudāsa.*

In the reign of Mitrasaha, also called Saudāsa, and Kalmāshapāda, the son of Sudāsa, and the descendant of Tiṣanku in the twenty-second generation (see p. 337, above), we still find Vaśishṭha figuring in the legend, as the priest of that monarch, and causing him, by an imprecation, to become a cannibal, because he had, under the influence of a delusion, offered the priest human flesh to eat. I shall not extract the

²⁰⁸ The names in this list differ considerably from those given above, p. 352, from the Harivaṃśa.

version of the story given in the Vishṇu Purāṇa in detail (Wilson, V.P. vol. iii. pp. 304 ff.), as it does not in any way illustrate the rivalry of Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra.

- The Mahābhārata gives the following variation of the history (Ādi-parvan, sect. 176): “Kalmāshapāda was a king of the race of Ikshvāku. Viśvāmitra wished to be employed by him as his officiating priest; but the king preferred Vaśishṭha” (verse 6699. *Akāmayaṭ taṁ yājyārthe Viśvāmitraḥ pratāpavān | sa tu rājā mahātmānaṁ Vaśishṭhaṁ ṛishi-sat-tamam* |). It happened, however, that the king went out to hunt, and after having killed a large quantity of game, he became very much fatigued, as well as hungry and thirsty. Meeting Śaktri, the eldest of Vaśishṭha’s hundred sons, on the road, he ordered him to get out of his way. The priest civilly replied (verse 6703): *Mama panthāḥ mahārāja dharmāḥ esha sanātanaḥ | rājā sarveshu dharmeshu deyaḥ panthāḥ dvijātaye* | “The path is mine, o king; this is the immemorial law; in all observances the king must cede the way to the Brāhman.” Neither party would yield, and the dispute waxing warmer, the king struck the muni with his whip. The muni, resorting to the usual expedient of offended sages, by a curse doomed the king to become a man-eater. “It happened that at that time enmity existed between Viśvāmitra and Vaśishṭha on account of their respective claims to be priest to Kalmāshapāda” (verse 6710. *Tato yājya-nimittaṁ tu Viśvāmitra-Vaśishṭhayoḥ | vairam āsit tadā taṁ tu Viśvāmitro’nvapodyata* |). Viśvāmitra had followed the king; and approached while he was disputing with Śaktri. Perceiving, however, the son of his rival Vaśishṭha, Viśvāmitra made himself invisible, and passed them, watching his opportunity. The king began to implore Śaktri’s clemency: but Viśvāmitra wishing to prevent their reconciliation, commanded a Rākshasa (a man-devouring demon) to enter into the king. Owing to the conjoint influence of the Brāhman-rishi’s curse, and Viśvāmitra’s command, the demon obeyed the injunction. Perceiving that his object was gained, Viśvāmitra left things to take their course, and absented himself from the country. The king having happened to meet a hungry Brāhman, and sent him, by the hand of his cook (who could procure nothing else, some human flesh to eat, was cursed by him also to the same effect as by Śaktri. The curse, being now augmented in force, took effect, and Śaktri himself was the first victim, being eaten up by the king. The same fate

befell all the other sons of Vaśishṭha at the instigation of Viśvāmitra :
 6736. *S'aktrim taṁ tu mṛitaṁ dṛishṭvā Viśvāmitraḥ punaḥ punaḥ | Vaśish-*
ṭhasyaiva putresku tad rakshaḥ sandideśa ha | sa tān S'aktry-avarān putrān
Vaśishṭhasya mahātmanah | bhakshayāmāsa sankruddhaḥ sīṁhaḥ kshudra-
mṛigān iva | Vaśishṭho ghātītān śrutvā Viśvāmitrena tān sutān | dhāra-
yāmāsa taṁ śokam mahādrir iva medinīm | chakre chātma-vināśāya bud-
dhiṁ sa muni-sattamaḥ | na tv eva Kauśīkocchedam mene matimatāṁ
raraḥ | 6740. *Sa Meru-kūṭād ātmānam mumocha bhagavān ṛishih | gires*
tasya śilāyām tu tūla-rāsāv ivāpatat | na mamāra cha pātena sa yadā
tena Pāṇḍava | tadā 'gnim iddham bhagavān saṁviveśa mahāvane | taṁ
tadā susamidho 'pi na dadāha hutāsanaḥ | dīpyamāno 'py amitra-ghna
śito 'gnir abhavat tataḥ | sa samudram abhiprekshya śokāriṣṭho mahāmuni-
niḥ | baddhvā kaṇṭhe śilāṁ gurvīm nīpapāta tadā 'mbhasi | sa samudror-
ni-regena sthale nyasto mahāmuniḥ | jagāma sa tataḥ khinnah punar
evāśramam prati | 6745. *Tato dṛishṭvā "śrama-padaṁ rahitaṁ taiḥ sutair*
muniḥ | nirjagāma suduḥkhārttaḥ punar apy āśramāt tataḥ | so 'paśyat
saritam pūrṇam prāvṛit-kāle navāmbhasā | vṛikshān bahuvīdhān pārtha
harantīm tīra-jān bahūn | atha chintāṁ samāpede punaḥ kaurava-nan-
dana | "ambhasy asyām nimajjeyam" iti duḥkha-samanvitaḥ | tataḥ pāsais
tadā "tmānam gūḍham baddhvā mahāmuniḥ | tasyāḥ jale mahānadyāḥ
nimamajja suduḥkhitaḥ | atha chhittvā nadī pāsāṁs tasyāri-bala-sūdana |
sthala-sthaṁ tam ṛishim kṛtvā vipāśāṁ samavāsrījat | 6750. *Uttatāra*
tataḥ pāsair vimuktaḥ sa mahān ṛishih | Vipāseti cha nūmāsyāḥ nadyās
chakre mahān ṛishih | . . . 6752. *Dṛishṭvā sa punar evarshir nadīm*
haimavatīm tadā | chandragrāhavatīm bhīmāṁ tasyāḥ srotasy apātayat |
sū tam agni-samāṁ vipram anuchintya sarid varā | śatadhā vidrutā yas-
māch śatadrur iti viśrutā | . . . 6774. *Saudāso 'ham mahābhāga yājyas*
te muni-sattama | asmin kāle yad iṣṭaṁ te brūhi kiṁ karavāṇi te | Va-
śishṭha uvācha | vṛittam etad yathā-kālāṁ gachha rājyam praśādhi vai |
brāhmaṇāṁs tu manushyendra mā 'ramaṁsthāḥ kadāchana | rājā uvācha |
nāvamaṁsye mahābhāga kadāchid brāhmaṇarshabhān | tran-nideśe sthitaḥ
samyak pūjayishyāmy ahaṁ dvijān | Ikshvākūṇāṁ cha yenāham anṛiṇaḥ
syām dvijottama | tat tvattaḥ prāptum icchāmi sarva-veda-vidāṁ vara |
apatyam īpsitam mahyāṁ dātum arhasi sattama | "Perceiving Saktri to
 be dead, Viśvāmitra again and again incited the Rākshasa against the
 sons of Vaśishṭha; and accordingly the furious demon devoured those
 of his sons who were younger than Saktri, as a lion eats up the small

beasts of the forest.²⁰⁹ On hearing of the destruction of his sons by Viśvāmitra, Vasishṭha supported his affliction, as the great mountain sustains the earth. He meditated his own destruction, but never thought of exterminating the Kauśikas. 6740. This divine sage hurled himself from the summit of Meru, but fell upon the rocks as if on a heap of cotton. Escaping alive from his fall, he entered a glowing fire in the forest; but the fire, though fiercely blazing, not only failed to burn him, but seemed perfectly cool. He next threw himself into the sea with a heavy stone attached to his neck; but was cast up by the waves on the dry land. He then went home to his hermitage; (6745) but seeing it empty and desolate, he was again overcome by grief and went out; and seeing the river Vipāśā which was swollen by the recent rains, and sweeping along many trees torn from its banks, he conceived the design of drowning himself into its waters: he accordingly tied himself firmly with cords, and threw himself in; but the river severing his bonds, deposited him unbound (*vipāśā*) on dry land; whence the name of the stream, as imposed by the sage.²¹⁰ 6752. He afterwards saw and threw himself into the dreadful Satadru (Sutlej), which was full of alligators, etc., and derived its name from rushing away in a hundred directions on seeing the Brāhman brilliant as fire. In consequence of this he was once more stranded; and seeing he could not kill himself, he went back to his hermitage. After roaming about over many mountains and countries, he was followed home by his daughter-in-law Adriśyāntī, Saktri's widow, from whose womb he heard a sound of the recitation of the Vedas, as she was pregnant with a child, which, when born, received the name of Parāśara, verse 6794. Learning from her that there was

²⁰⁹ See above (pp. 327 ff.), the passages quoted from the Brāhmaṇas, about the slaughter of Vasishṭha's sons. In the Panchaviṃśa Br. (cited by Prof. Weber, Ind St. i. 32) Vasishṭha is spoken of as *putra-hatah*.

²¹⁰ The Nirukta. ix. 26, after giving other etymologies of the word Vipāś, adds a verse. *Pāśāḥ asyām vyapāśyanta Vasishṭhasya mumūrshataḥ | tasmād Vipāś uchyate pūrvam āsīt Uruñjirā* | "In it the bonds of Vasishṭha were loosed, when he was on the point of death hence it is called Vipāś. It formerly bore the name of Uruñjirā." It does not appear whether or not this verse is older than the Mahābhārata. On this text of the Nirukta, Durga (as quoted by Prof. Müller, Rig-veda. ii. Pref. p. liv.) annotates. *Vasishṭhaḥ kila nimamāja asyām mumūrshatḥ putra-maraṇa-sokāntaḥ pāśair ātmānam baddhā | tasya kila te pāśāḥ asyām vyapāśyanta vyamuchyanta udakena* | "Vasishṭha plunged into it, after binding himself with bonds, wishing to die when grieved at the death of his sons. In it (the river) his bonds were loosed by the water."

thus a hope of his line being continued, he abstained from further attempts on his own life. King Kalmāshapāda, however, whom they encountered in the forest, was about to devour them both, when Vāśishṭha stopped him by a blast from his mouth; and sprinkling him with water consecrated by a holy text, he delivered him from the curse by which he had been affected for twelve years. The king then addressed Vāśishṭha thus: “‘Most excellent sage, I am Saudāsa, whose priest thou art: what can I do that would be pleasing to thee?’ Vāśishṭha answered: ‘This which has happened has been owing to the force of destiny: go, and rule thy kingdom; but, o monarch, never contemn the Brāhman.’ The king replied: ‘Never shall I despise the most excellent Brāhman; but submitting to thy commands I shall pay them all honour. And I must obtain from thee the means of discharging my debt to the Ikshvākus. Thou must give me the offspring which I desire.’” Vāśishṭha promised to comply with his request. They then returned to Ayodhyā. And Vāśishṭha having been solicited by the king to beget an heir to the throne²¹¹ (verse 6787. *Rājnas tasyājñayā devī Vāśishṭham upachakrame | maharshiḥ sañvidāṁ kṛtvā sambabhūva tayā saha | devyā divyena vidhinā Vāśishṭho bhagarān ṛishiḥ*), the queen became pregnant by him, and brought forth a son at the end of twelve years. This extraordinary proceeding, so contrary to all the recognized rules of morality, is afterwards (verses 6888–6912) explained to have been necessitated by the curse of a Brāhmaṇī, whose husband Kalmāshapāda had devoured when in the forest, and who had doomed him to die if he should attempt to become a father, and had foretold that Vāśishṭha should be the instrument of propagating his race (verse 6906: *Patnīm ṛitāv anuprāpya sadyas tyakshyasi jīvitam | yasya charsher Vāśishṭhasya trayā putrāḥ vināśitāḥ | tena sangamya te bhāryyā tanayāṁ janayishyati*).²¹²

²¹¹ The same story is told in the Vishnu Pur. iv., 4, 38 (Wilson, vol. 3, p. 310).

²¹² This incident is alluded to in the Ādip., section 122. It is there stated that in the olden time women were subject to no restraint, and incurred no blame for abandoning their husbands and cohabiting with anyone they pleased (verse 4719. *Anāṛitāḥ kula purā striyaḥ āsan varānane | kāmā-chāra-vihārīṇyaḥ svatantrāḥ chāru-hāsmi | tāsāṁ vyuchcharamāṇānām kaumārūt subhage patīm | nūdharmo 'bhūd varārohe sa hi dharmah purā bhavat*, compare verse 4729). A stop was, however, put to this practice by Uddālaka Śvetaketu, whose indignation was on one occasion aroused by a Brāhmaṇ taking his mother by the hand, and inviting her to go away with him, although his father, in whose presence this occurred, informed him that

The Mahābhārata has a further legend, regarding Viśvāmītra's jealousy of Vaśiṣṭha, which again exhibits the former in a very odious light, and as destitute of the moral dispositions befitting a saint, while Vaśiṣṭha is represented as manifesting a noble spirit of disinterestedness and generosity.

Salyap. 2360. *Viśvāmītrasya viprarsher Vaśiṣṭhasya cha Bhārata | bhṛīṣaṁ vairam abhūd rājāṁś tapah-sparddhā-kṛitam mahat | āśramo vai Vaśiṣṭhasya sthānu-tīrthe 'bhavad mahān | pūrvataḥ pārśvataś chāsīd Viśvāmītrasya dhīmataḥ | . . .* 2366. *Viśvāmītra-Vaśiṣṭhau tār ahany ahani Bhārata | sparddhāṁ tapah-kṛitāṁ tivrām chakratus tau tapo-dhanau | tattrāpy adhika-santapto Viśvāmītro mahāmuniḥ | drishṭvā tejo Vaśiṣṭhasya chintām ati jagāma ha | tasya buddhir iyaṁ hy āsīd dharma-nītyasya Bhārata | iyaṁ Sarasvatī tūrṇam mat-samīpam tapo-dhanam | ānayishyati regena Vaśiṣṭhāṁ japatām varam | ihāgataṁ dvija-śreshṭhāṁ hanishyāmi na saṁśayaḥ |* 2370. *Evaṁ nīśchitya bhagavān Viśvāmītro mahāmuniḥ | sasmāra saritāṁ śreshṭhāṁ krodhasaṁrakta-lochanah | sū dhyātū muninā tena vyākulatraṁ jagāma ha | jajne chainam mahāvīryyam mahākopaṁ cha bhūvini | tataḥ enaṁ vepamānā vivarṇā prāñjalīś tadā | upatasthe muni-varaṁ Viśvāmītraṁ Sarasvatī | hata-vīrā yathā nārī sū 'bhavad duḥkhitā bhṛīṣam | brūhi kiṁ karavāṇīti provācha muni-sattamam | tām uvācha muniḥ krudhho "Vaśiṣṭhāṁ śiḡhram ānaya | yāvad enaṁ nihanmy adya" tach chhruvā vyathitā nadī |* 2375. *Prāñjalīm tu tataḥ kṛitvā puṇḍarīka-nibhekṣaṇā |*

there was no reason for his displeasure, as the custom was one which had prevailed from time immemorial (verse 4726. *S'vetaketoh kila purā samakṣham mātaram pituḥ | jagrāha brāhmaṇaḥ pūṇau "gachhāra" iti chūbravīt | rīshis-puttras tataḥ kopaṁ chakārūmarsha-choditah | mātaram tām tathā drishṭvā nīyamānūm balād iva | krudham tām tu pitū drishṭvā S'vetaketum uvācha ha | "mā tāta kopaṁ kūrshīs tvam eṣha dharmah sanātanaḥ | "*). But Svetaketu could not tolerate the practice, and introduced the existing rule (verse 4730. *Rīshi-puttro 'tha tām dharmāṁ S'vetaketur na chakṣhame | chakūra chaiva maryaḍūm imāṁ strī-pūmsayor bhuvī |*). A wife and a husband indulging in promiscuous intercourse were therefore thenceforward guilty of sin. But a wife, when appointed by her husband to raise up seed to him (by having intercourse with another man), is in like manner guilty if she refuse (4734. *Patyū niyuktā yā chaiva patnī putrārtham eva cha | na karishyati tasyāś cha bhavishyati tad eva hi | iti tena purā bhīru maryaḍā sthūpitā bulāt |*). Pūṇḍu, the speaker, then proceeds to give an instance of the latter procedure in the case of Madayantī, the wife of Saudāsa, who, by her husband's command, visited Vaśiṣṭha for the purpose in question (4736. *Saudāseṇa cha rambhoru niyuktā putra-janmani | Madayantī jagāmarshīm Vaśiṣṭham iti naḥ śrutam |*). Compare what is said above, p. 224, of Angiras, and in pp. 232 and 233 of Dīrgatamas or Dīrghatapās; and see p. 423, below.

prākampata bhṛīśam bhītā vāgunerāhatā latā | . . . 2377. *Sā tasya vachanam śrutvā jñātvā pāpa-chikīrshitam* | *Vaśīshthasya prabhūvaṁ cha jānanty apratimam bhuvī* | *sā 'dhigamyā Vaśīshtham cha imam artham achodayat* | *yad uktā saritām śreshthā Viśvāmitrena dhimatā* | *ubhayoḥ śāpayor bhītā repamānā punaḥ punaḥ* | . . . 2380. *Tām kṛīṣāṁ cha rivarnām cha dṛishṭvā chintā-samanvitām* | *uvācha rājan dharmātma Vaśīshtho dvipadām varaḥ* | *Vaśīshthah uvācha* | “*pāhy ātmānaṁ sarich-chhresthe vaha mām śīghra-gāmini* | *Viśvāmitrah śaped hi tvām mā kṛithās tvām vichāraṇam*” | *tasya tad vachanam śrutvā kṛipū-śīlasya sā sarit* | *chintayāmāsa Kauravya kiṁ kṛitvā sukritam bhavet* | *tasyās chintā samutpannā* “*Vaśīshtho mayy atīva hi* | *kṛitavān hi dayām nityam tasya kāryyam hitam mayā*” | *atha kūle svake rājan japantam ṛishi-sattamam* | *jukrānaṁ Kauśikam prekshya sarasvaty abhyachintayat* | 2385. “*Idam antaram*” ity eva tataḥ sā saritām varā | *kūlāpahāram akarot svena regena sā sarit* | *tena kūlāpahārena Maitrāvaruṇir auhyata* | *ūhyamānaḥ sa tushṭāva tadā rājan Sarasvatīm* | *Pitāmahasya sarasaḥ prarittā 'si Sarasvatī* | *vyāptam chedaṁ jagat sarvaṁ tavaivambhobhir uttamaiḥ* | *tvam evākāśa-gā dīvi megheśhūtsṛijase payaḥ* | *sarvās chāpas tvam eveti tvatto vāyam adhīnāhi* | *pushṭir dyutis tathā kīrttiḥ siddhir buddhir umā tathā* | *tvam eva rāṇī srōhā tvām tarāyattam idaṁ jagat* | 2390. *Tvam eva sarva-bhūteshu rasasīha chaturvidhā* | 2392. *Tam ānītam Sarasvatyā dṛishṭvā kopa-samanvitāḥ* | *athānreshat praharaṇam Vaśīshthānta-karaṁ tadā* | *tām tu kruddham abhiprekshya brahma-bādhyā-bhayād nadī* | *aporūha Vaśīshtham tu prāchin diśam atandritā* | *ubhayoḥ kuruatī vākyam vanchayitvā cha Gādhiyam tato 'parūhitām dṛishṭvā Vaśīshtham ṛishi-sattamam* | 2395. *Abravīd duḥkha-sankruddho Viśvāmitro hy amarshaṇaḥ* | “*yasmād mām tvām sarich-chhreshthe vanchayitvā punargatā* | *sonītam vaha kalyāṇī raksho-'gra-maṇi-sammatam*” | *tataḥ Sarasvatī śaptā Viśvāmitrena dhimatā* | *avahach chhonitonmiśraṁ toyam saṁvrat-sāraṁ tadā* | 2401. *Athājagmus tato rājan rākshasās tattrā Bhūrōta* | *tattrā te sonītam sarve pīvantāḥ sukham āsate* | 2402. *Nṛityantaś cha hasantaś cha yathā svarga-jitas tathā* | 2407. *tām dṛishṭvā rākshasān rājan munayaḥ saṁśīta-vratāḥ* | *paritrāṇe Sarasvatyāḥ paraṁ yatnam prachakrīre* |

“2360. There existed a great enmity, arising from rivalry in their austerities, between Viśvāmitra and the Bṛāhman rishi Vaśīshṭha. Vaśīshṭha had an extensive hermitage in Sthānūtīrtha, to the east of

which was Viśvāmītra's 2366. These two great ascetics were every day exhibiting intense emulation in regard to their respective austerities. But Viśvāmītra, beholding the might of Vaśishṭha, was the most chagrined; and fell into deep thought. The idea of this sage, constant in duty (!), was the following: 'This river Sarasvatī will speedily bring to me on her current the austere Vaśishṭha, the most eminent of all mutterers of prayers. When that most excellent Brāhmaṇ has come, I shall most assuredly kill him.' 2370. Having thus determined, the divine sage Viśvāmītra, his eyes reddened by anger, called to mind the chief of rivers. She being thus the subject of his thoughts, became very anxious, as she knew him to be very powerful and very irascible. Then trembling, pallid, and with joined hands, the Sarasvatī stood before the chief of munis. Like a woman whose husband has been slain, she was greatly distressed; and said to him, 'What shall I do?' The incensed muni replied, 'Bring Vaśishṭha hither speedily, that I may slay him.' 2375. The lotus-eyed goddess, joining her hands, trembled in great fear, like a creeping plant agitated by the wind." Viśvāmītra, however, although he saw her condition, repeated his command. 2377. "The Sarasvatī, who knew how sinful was his design, and that the might of Vaśishṭha was unequalled, went trembling, and in great dread of being cursed by both the sages, to Vaśishṭha, and told him what his rival had said. 2380. Vaśishṭha seeing her emaciated, pale, and anxious, spoke thus: 'Deliver thyself, o chief of rivers; carry me unhesitatingly to Viśvāmītra, lest he curse thee.' Hearing these words of the merciful sage, the Sarasvatī considered how she could act most wisely. She reflected, 'Vaśishṭha has always shown me great kindness; I must seek his welfare.' Then observing the Kauśika sage [so in the text, but does not the sense require Vaśishṭha?] praying and sacrificing on her brink, she regarded (2385) that as a good opportunity, and swept away the bank by the force of her current. In this way the son of Mitra and Varuṇa (Vaśishṭha)²¹³ was carried down; and while he was being borne along, he thus celebrated the river: 'Thou, o Sarasvatī, issuest from the lake of Brahmā, and pervadest the whole world with thy excellent streams. Residing in the sky, thou dischargest water into the clouds. Thou alone art all waters. By thee we study.' [Here the river Sarasvatī is identified with Saras-

²¹³ See above, pp. 316 and 320 f.

vatī the goddess of speech.]²¹⁴ ‘Thou art nourishment, radiance, fame, perfection, intellect, light. Thou art speech; thou art Svāhā; this world is subject to thee. 2390. Thou, in fourfold form, dwellest in all creatures.’ . . . 2392. Beholding Vaśishṭha brought near by the Sarasvatī, Viśvāmitra searched for a weapon with which to make an end of him. Perceiving his anger, and dreading lest Brahmanicide should ensue, the river promptly carried away Vaśishṭha in an easterly direction; thus fulfilling the commands of both sages, but eluding Viśvāmitra. Seeing Vaśishṭha so carried away, (2395) Viśvāmitra, impatient, and enraged by vexation, said to her: ‘Since thou, o chief of rivers, hast eluded me, and hast receded, roll in waves of blood acceptable to the chief of demons,’ [which are fabled to gloat on blood]. “The Sarasvatī, being thus cursed, flowed for a year in a stream mingled with blood. . . . 2401. Rākshasas came to the place of pilgrimage, where Vaśishṭha had been swept away, and revelled in drinking to satiety the bloody stream in security, dancing and laughing, as if they had conquered heaven.” Some rishis who arrived at the spot some time after were horrified to see the blood-stained water, and the Rākshasas quaffing it, and (2407) “made the most strenuous efforts to rescue the Sarasvatī.” After learning from her the cause of the pollution of her waters, they propitiated Mahādeva by the most various austerities, and thus obtained the restoration of the river to her pristine purity (2413 ff.).

We have another reference to the connection of the families of Sudās and Vaśishṭha in the legend of Paraśurāma,²¹⁵ the destroyer of the Kshattriyas, in the 49th section of the Sāntiparvan of the Mahābhārata. Sarvakarman, a descendant of Sudās, is there mentioned as one of those

²¹⁴ See the remarks on Sarasvatī in my “Contributions to a knowledge of the Vedic Theogony and Mythology No. II.,” in the Journ. R. A. S., for 1866, pp. 18 ff.

²¹⁵ Paraśurāma was the son of Jamadagnī, regarding whose birth, as well as that of Viśvāmitra and the incarnation of Indra in the person of his father Gādhi, the same legend as has been already given above, p. 349 ff, is repeated at the commencement of the story referred to in the text. In discoursing with his wife Satyavatī about the exchange of her own and her mother’s messes, Richika tells her, verse 1741: *Brahmabhūtaṁ hi sakalam pitus tara kulam bhavit* | “All the family of thy father (Gādhi) shall be Brahmanical;” and Vāsudeva, the narrator of the legend, says, verse 1745: *Viśvāmitraṁ cha dīyādāṁ Gādhiḥ Kṛṣṇānandanaḥ* | *yam prāpa brahmasammitaṁ visvair brahmaguṇair yutam* | “And Gādhi begot a son, Viśvāmitra, whom he obtained equal to a Brāhman, and possessed of all Brahmanical qualities.”

Kshattriyas who had been preserved from the general massacre by Parāśara, grandson of Vaśishṭha : verse 1792. *Tathā 'nukampamānena yajranā 'mita-tejasā | Parāśareṇa dāyādah Saudāsasyābhirakshitah | sarva-karmāṇi kurute śūdra-vat tasya vai dvijah | Sarvakarmety abhikhyātaḥ sa māñ rakshatu pāṛthivah |* “ Sarvakarman, the son of Saudāsa, was preserved by the tender-hearted priest Parāśara, who performed, though a Brāhman, all menial offices for him, like a Śūdra ; whence the prince's name ;—may this king protect me (the earth).” The same book of the Mahābhārata, when recording a number of good deeds done to Brāhmans, has also the following allusion to Mitrasaha and Vaśishṭha : verse 8604. *Rājā Mitrasahaś chāpi Vaśishṭhāya mahātmane | Damayantīm priyām dattvā tayā saha divaṁ gataḥ |* “ King Mitrasaha, having bestowed his dear Damayanti on Vaśishṭha, ascended to heaven along with her.”²¹⁶

The same passage has two further allusions to Vaśishṭha, which, though unconnected with our present subject, may be introduced here. In verse 8591 it is said : *Rantidevaś cha Sankṛityo Vaśishṭhāya mahātmane | apah pradāya śitoshnāḥ nāka-prishṭhe mahīyate |* “ Rantideva, son of Sankṛiti, who gave Vaśishṭha tepid water, is exalted to the heavenly regions.” (See the Bhāg. Pur. ix. 21, 2-18, where the various acts of self-sacrifice practised by this prince are celebrated.) It is said of Vaśishṭha in verse 8601 : *Avarshati cha Parjanya sarva-bhūtāni bhūta-kṛit | Vaśishṭho jīvayāmāsa prajāpatir ivāparaḥ |* “ When Parjanya failed to send rain, the creative Vaśishṭha, like Brahmā, gave life to all beings.”

Vaśishṭha, in short, is continually reappearing in the Mahābhārata. I will here adduce but one other passage. In the Sāntiparvan, verses 10,118 ff., it is said : *Tasya Vṛittrādditasyātha mohah āśich chhuta-kra-toḥ | rathantareṇa taṁ tatra Vaśishṭhaḥ samabodhayat | Vaśishṭhaḥ uvācha | deva-śreshṭho 'si devendra daityāsura-nibarhaṇa | trailokyā-bala-*

²¹⁶ This appears to refer to the story told above, p. 418 ff., of Kalmāshapāda (who was the same as Mitrasaha), allowing Vaśishṭha to be the agent in propagating the royal race ; for both there (v. 6910) and in the Vishṇu Pur. (Wilson, vol. iii., pp. 308 and 310), the name of the queen is said to have been Madayanti, which is probably the right reading here also, the first two letters only having been transposed. If so, however, it is to be observed that a quite different turn is given to the story here, where it is represented as a meritorious act on the king's part, and as a favour to Vaśishṭha, that the queen was given up to him ; whilst, according to the other account, the king's sole object in what he did was to get progeny.

saṁyuktaḥ kasmāch chhakra nishidasi | esha Brahmā cha Vishṇuś cha S'ivaś chaira jagat-patiḥ | Somaś cha bhagavān devaḥ sarve cha paramarshayaḥ | mā kārshīḥ kaśmalaṁ S'akra kaśchid evetaro yathā | āryyāñ yuddhe matiṁ kṛtvā jahi śatrūn surādhipa | “By reciting the Rathan-tāra, Vaśishṭha encouraged Indra, when he had become bewildered and distressed in his conflict with Vritra, saying to him, ‘Thou art the chief of the gods, o slayer of the Daityas and Asuras, possessing all the strength of the three worlds: wherefore, Indra, dost thou despond? There are here present Brahmā, Vishṇu, S'iva, the divine Soma, and all the chief rishis. Faint not, o Indra, like an ordinary being. Assume a heroic spirit for the fight, and slay thine enemies, etc.’” Strength was thus infused into Indra.

In a later work, the Rāja Taranginī, Book IV. verses 619-655 (pp. 188 ff. and note, pp. 521 and 522, of Troyer's edition, vol. i. and vol. ii. 189, 469, note), a curious echo of these old legends is found still reverberating. A story is there told of a king Jayāpīḍa who oppressed his people, and persecuted the Brāhmans, and was eventually destroyed by them in a miraculous manner. He is compared to Saudāsa in verse 625: *Sa Saudāsaḥ ivāneka-loka-prāṇāpahāra-kṛit | astutya-kṛitya-sauhityaṁ swapne 'pi na samāyayau |* “Like Saudāsa, depriving many persons of their lives, he was not satiated with wicked deeds even in his dreams.” One of the Brāhmans stood up on behalf of the rest to remonstrate: *Āha sma “Viśvāmitro vā Vaśishṭho vā taponidhiḥ | tram Agastyo'tharā kiṁ stha” iti darpeṇa taṁ nṛipaḥ | . . . bhavān yatra Hariśchandras Triśankur Nahusho 'pi vā | Viśvāmitra-mukhebhyaḥ 'hañ tattraiko bhavituṁ kṣamaḥ | vihasyavācha taṁ rājā “Viśvāmitrādīkopataḥ | Hariśchandrāgo nashtās trayi krudde tu kim bhavet” | pāṇinā tādāyann ūrvīm tataḥ krudde 'bhyadhād dvijoḥ | “mayi krudde kṣaṇād eva brahma-daṇḍaḥ pated na kim” | tach chkrutvā vihasan rājā kopād brāhmaṇam abraut | “patatu brahma-daṇḍo 'sau kim adyāpi vilambate” | naur ayam patito jālmety aha vipreṇa bhāshite | rājnaḥ kanaka-daṇḍo 'nge vitāna-skhalito 'patat |* “The king haughtily asked him: ‘Art thou Viśvāmitra, or Vaśishṭha, so rich in devotion? or Agastya? or what art thou?’ . . . The Brāhman answered, swelling with indignation: ‘Just as thou art a Hariśchandra, a Triśanku, or a Nahusha, so too have I power to be a Viśvāmitra, or one of those other rishis.’ The king answered with a smile of contempt: ‘Hariśchandra

and the rest perished by the wrath of Viśvāmitra and the other sages : but what will come of thy wrath ?' The Brāhman angrily replied, smiting the ground with his hand, ' When I am incensed, shall not the Brahmanical bolt instantly descend ? ' The king retorted with an angry laugh : ' Let it descend ; why does it not come down at once ? ' ' Has it not fallen, tyrant ? ' said the Brāhman ; and he had no sooner spoken, than a golden beam fell from the canopy and smote the king," so that he became tortured by worms, and shortly after died ; and went, as the story concludes, to hell.

Professor Lassen, who quotes the stories regarding Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra (Ind. Alt. 2nd ed. i. 718 f.), makes the following remarks on their import :

"The legend of the struggle between Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra embraces two distinct points : one is the contest between the priests and warriors for the highest rank ; the other is the temporary alienation of the Ikshvākus from their family priests. Vaśishṭha is represented as the exemplar of such a priest ; and the story of Kalmāshapāda is related for the express purpose of showing by an example that the Ikshvākus, after they had retained him, were victorious, and fulfilled perfectly the duties of sacrifice (see above, p. 390) : in his capacity of priest he continues to live on, and is the representative of his whole race. We may conclude from the legend that his descendants had acquired the position of family priests to the Ikshvākus, though neither he himself nor his son Saktri belonged to their number. Triśanku is the first prince who forsook them, and had recourse to Viśvāmitra. His successor Ambarīsha received support from that personage, as well as from Richika, one of the Bhṛigus ;—a family whose connection with the Kuśikas appears also in the story of Paraśurāma. The hostility between the Ikshvākus and the family of Vaśishṭha continued down to Kalmāshapāda. Viśvāmitra is represented as having intentionally fostered the alienation ; while Vaśishṭha is described as forbearing (though he had the power) to annihilate his rival.

"The conflict between the two rivals with its motives and machinery is described in the forms peculiar to the fully developed epos. To this style of poetry is to be referred the wonder-working cow, which supplies all objects of desire. There is no ground for believing in any actual war with weapons between the contending parties, or in

any participation of degraded Kshattriyas, or aboriginal tribes, in the contest; for all these things are mere poetical creations. Besides, the proper victory of Vasishṭha was not gained by arms, but by his rod. The legend represents the superiority of the Brāhmanas as complete, since Viśvāmitra is forced to acknowledge the insufficiency of a warrior's power; and acquires his position as a Brāhman by purely Brahmanical methods.

"From Viśvāmitra are derived many of the sacerdotal families, which bear the common name of Kauśika, and to which many rishis famous in tradition belong. As there were also kings in this family, we have here an example of the fact that one of the old Vedic races became divided, and in later times belonged to both of the two higher castes. It appears impossible that any of the aboriginal tribes should have been among the descendants of Viśvāmitra's sons, as the legend represents; and the meaning of this account may therefore be that some of his sons and their descendants accepted the position of priests among these tribes, and are in consequence described as accursed."²¹⁷

SECT. XIV.—*Story from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa about king Janaka becoming a Brāhman.*

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa has the following account of a discussion between Janaka, king of Videha, and some Brāhmanas:²¹⁸

xi. 6, 2, 1. *Janako ha vai Vaidēho brāhmaṇair dhāvayadbhir samājagāma Svetaaketunā Aruṇeyena Somaśushmēṇa Sātyajajñinā Yājñavalkyena | tān ha uvācha "kathaṁ katham agnihotram juhutha" iti | 2. Sa ha uvācha Svetaaketur Aruṇeyo "gharmāḥ eva samrād ahaṁ ajasrau yaśasū visyandamanāv anyo'nyasmin juhomi" iti | "kathaṁ tad" iti | ādityo vai gharmaś taṁ sūyam agnau juhomi agnir vai gharmaś tam prātara āditye juhomi" iti | "kiṁ sa bhavati yaḥ evaṁ juhoti" | "ajasraḥ eva śrīyā yaśasū bhavaty etayoś cha devatayoḥ sāyijyaṁ salokatāṁ jayati" iti | 3. Atha ha uvācha Somaśushmaḥ Sātyajajñiḥ "tejaḥ eva samrād ahaṁ tejasi juhomi" iti | "kathaṁ tad" iti | "Ādityo vai tejaś taṁ sūyam agnau juhomi | agnir vai tejaś tam prātara āditye juhomi"*

²¹⁷ See also Prof. Muller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.*, pp. 80 f., 383 f., 408, 413 ff., 485 f.

²¹⁸ This passage is referred to and translated by Prof. Müller, *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 121 ff.

iti | “*kiṃ sa bhavati yaḥ evaṃ juhōti*” iti | “*tejasvī yaśasvy annādo bhavaty etayoḥ chaira devatayoḥ sāyujyaṃ salokatām jayati*” iti | 4. *Atha ha uvācha Yājñavalkyaḥ “yad aham agniṃ uddharāmy agnihotram eva tad udyachhāmi | ādityaṃ vai astaṃ yantam sarve devāḥ anuyanti | te me etam agniṃ uddhṛtaṃ drishṭvā upācārtante atha aham pātrāṇi nir-
ṇijya upavāpya āgnihotrīm dohayitvā paśyan paśyatas tarpayāmi*” iti |
trāṇi nedishṭhāṃ yājñavalkya agnihotrasya amīmāṃsishṭhāḥ | dhenu-
śataṃ dadāmi” iti ha uvācha “na tv eca enayos tcam utkrāntiṃ na
gatiṃ na pratishṭhāṃ na triptiṃ na punarācṛittiṃ na lokaṃ praty-
uthāyam” | ity uktvā ratham āsthāya pradhārayān chakāra | 5. *Te ha ūchur “ati vai no ’yaṃ rājanyabandhur avādīd hanta enam
brahmodyam āvrayāmahai*” iti | *sa ha uvācha Yājñavalkyo “brāh-
maṇūḥ vai vayaṃ smo rājanyabandhur asau yady amuṃ vayaṃ jayema
kam ajaishma iti brūyāma atha yady asāv asmān jayed brāhmaṇān
rājanyabandhur ajaishīd iti no brūyuh | mā idam ādriḍham*” iti |
tad ha asya jajnuḥ | atha ha Yājñavalkyo ratham āsthāya pradhā-
rayānchakāra taṃ ha anvājagāma | *sa ha uvācha “agnihotraṃ Yājña-
valkya veditum*” iti | “*agnihotraṃ samrād*” iti | 6. “*Te vai ete āhuti-
hute utkrāmatas te antariksham āviśatas te antariksham eva āhavanīyaṃ
kuvāte vāyuṃ samidham marīchīr eva śukrāṃ āhutiṃ te antarikshaṃ
tarpayatas te tataḥ utkrāmataḥ*” | 7. *Te divaṃ āviśatas te divaṃ eva āha-
vanīyaṃ kuvāte ādityaṃ samidham chandramasam eva śukrāṃ āhutiṃ te
divaṃ tarpayatas te tataḥ ācārtate*” | 8. *Te imāṃ āviśatas te imāṃ eva
āhavanīyaṃ kuvāte agniṃ samidham oshadhīr eva śukrāṃ āhutiṃ te
imāṃ tarpayatas te tataḥ utkrāmataḥ*” | 9. *Te puruṣam āviśatas tasya
mukham eva āhavanīyaṃ kuvāte jihvāṃ samidham annam eva śukrāṃ
āhutiṃ te puruṣaṃ tarpayataḥ | sa yaḥ evaṃ vidvān āśnāty agnihotram
eva asya hutam bhavati | te tataḥ utkrāmataḥ*” | 10. *Te striyaṃ āviśatas
tasyāḥ upastham eva āhavanīyaṃ kuvāte dhārakāṃ samidham (dhārakā
ha vai nāma eshā | etayā ha vai Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ dhārayānchakāra)
retāḥ eva śukrāṃ āhutiṃ te striyaṃ tarpayataḥ | sa yaḥ evaṃ vidvān
mithunam upaity agnihotram eva asya hutam bhavati yas tataḥ putro
jāyate sa lokaḥ pratyutthāyī | etad agnihotraṃ Yājñavalkya na atah
param asti” iti ha uvācha | tasmai Yājñavalkyo varam dadau | sa ha
uvācha “kāmapraśnaḥ eva me trayi Yājñavalkya asad” iti | tato brahmā
Janakaḥ āsa |*

“Janaka of Videha met with some travelling Brāhmaṇas, Svetaketu

Aruneya, Somaśushma Sātyayajni, and Yājñavalkya, and said to them, 'How do ye respectively offer the agnihotra oblation?' 2. Svetaketu replied, 'I, o monarch, in sacrificing, throw the one of the two eternal heats which pervade the world with their splendour into the other.' 'How is that done,' asked the king. (S. replied), 'Āditya (the sun) is one heat; in the evening I throw him into Agni (Fire). Agni is the other heat; in the morning I throw him into Āditya.' 'What' (enquired the king) 'does he become who thus sacrifices?' 'He acquires' (replied S.) 'perpetual prosperity and renown; conquers for himself an union with these two deities, and dwells in the same region as they.' 3. Then Somaśushma answered, 'I, o monarch, in sacrificing, throw light into light.' 'How is that done,' asked the king. 'The Sun' (answered S.) 'is light; in the evening I throw him into Fire: and Fire is light; in the morning I throw him into the Sun.' 'What' (enquired the king) 'does he become who thus sacrifices?' 'He becomes' (rejoined S.) 'luminous, and renowned, an eater of food, and conquers for himself an union with these two deities, and dwells in the same region as they.' 4. Then Yājñavalkya said, 'When I take up the fire I lift the agnihotra. All the gods follow the Sun when he sets; and when they see me take up the Fire, they come back to me. Then, after washing and putting down the vessels, and having the Agnihotra Cow milked, beholding them as they behold me, I satisfy them (with sacrificial food).' The king answered, 'Thou hast approached very close to a solution of the Agnihotra, o Yājñavalkya; I give thee a hundred milch-cows: but thou hast not discovered the ascent of these two (oblations), nor the course, nor the resting-place, nor the satisfaction, nor the return, nor the world where they re-appear(?).' Having so spoken, Janaka mounted his car and drove away. 5. The Brāhmins then said amongst themselves, 'This Rājanya has surpassed us in speaking; come, let us invite him to a theological discussion.' Yājñavalkya, however, interposed, 'We are Brāhmins, and he a Rājanya; if we overcome him, we shall ask ourselves, whom have we overcome? but if he overcome us, men will say to us, a Rājanya has overcome Brāhmins. Do not follow this course.' They assented to his advice. Then Yājñavalkya mounted his car, and drove after the king; and came up to him. Janaka asked, 'is it to learn the agnihotra (that thou hast come), Yājñavalkya?' 'The agnihotra, o

monarch,' said Y. 6. The king rejoined, 'These two oblations, when offered, ascend; they enter the air, they make the air their āhavanīya fire, the wind their fuel, the rays their bright oblation, they satisfy the air, and thence ascend. 7. They enter the sky, they make the sky their āhavanīya fire, the sun their fuel, the moon their bright oblation; they satisfy the sky, they return thence. 8. They enter this earth, they make this earth their āhavanīya fire, Agni their fuel, the plants their bright oblation; they satisfy the earth, they ascend thence. They enter man, they make his mouth their āhavanīya fire, his tongue their fuel, food their bright oblation; they satisfy man. (He who, thus knowing, eats, truly offers the agnihotra). 9. They ascend from him, they enter into woman [the details which follow are better left untranslated], they satisfy her. The man who, thus knowing, approaches his wife, truly offers the agnihotra. The son who is then born is the world of re-appearance. This is the agnihotra, o Yājñavalkya; there is nothing beyond this.' Y. offered the king the choice of a boon. He replied, 'Let me enquire of thee whatever I desire, o Yājñavalkya.' Henceforward Janaka was a Brāhmān."²¹⁹

By Brāhmān in the last sentence we have, I presume, to understand a Brāhman. Even if it were taken to dignify a priest of the kind called Brāhmān, the conclusion would be the same; as at the time when the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa was written, none but Brāhmans could officiate as priests.²²⁰

Janaka's name occurs frequently in the Mahābhārata. In the Vana-parvan of that poem (8089) he is called a rājarshi. In the Śānti-parvan, verse 6640, it is said: *Ātrāpy udāharantīmam iti hāsam purātanam | gītāṁ Videha-rājena Janakena praśūmyatā |* "anantaṁ vata me vittaṁ yasya me nāsti kinchana | Mithilāyām pradṛptāyāṁ na me dahyati kinchana" | "They here relate an ancient story,—the words recited by Janaka the tranquil-minded king of Videha:

'Though worldly pelf I own no more,
Of wealth I have a boundless store.
While Mithilā the flames devour,
My goods can all defy their power.'

²¹⁹ The Commentator explains *brahmā* by *brahmishṭhah*, "Most full of divine knowledge."

²²⁰ Prof. Müller remarks in his article on Caste (Chips from a German Workshop, ii. 338): "That king Janaka of Videha possessed superior knowledge is acknowledged by one of the most learned among the Brahmans, by Yājñavalkya himself; and in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, which is believed to have been the work of Yājñavalkya, it is said that king Janaka became a Brahman."

The same sentiment is ascribed to the same royal rishi in verse 7891 : *Api cha bhavati Maithilena gītaṁ nagaram upāhitam agninā 'bhvikshya | "na khalu mama hi dahyate 'ttra kinchit" svayam idam āha sma bhūmi-pālāḥ |* "And these words were repeated by the king of Mithilā when he beheld the city enveloped in fire, 'nothing of mine is burnt here ;' —so said the king himself."

Another "ancient story" of Janaka is related in verses 7882–7983 of the same book. It is there stated that this king was constantly engaged in thinking on matters connected with a future life ; and that he had a hundred religious teachers to instruct him on different points of duty (verse 7884). He was, however, visited by the rishi Panchaśikha²²¹ (verses 7886, 7888), a pupil of Āsuri (verse 7890), who so confounded the king's hundred instructors by his reasoning, that they were abandoned by their pupil, who followed this new teacher (7898. *Upetya śatam āchāryān mohayāmāsa hetubhiḥ |* 7899. *Janakas tv abhisamraktaḥ Kāpileyānudarśanāt | utsriḃya śatam āchāryyān prishṭhato 'nujagāmatam*). Panchaśikha appears also, at verse 11839, as his instructor. At verse 10699 Janaka is again brought forward as receiving religious information from Parāśara ; in verses 11545–11836 as being taught by the rishi Yājñavalkya the principles of the Yoga and Sāṅkhya philosophies ; and in verses 11854–12043 as holding a conversation with a travelling female mendicant (*bhikṣukī*), named Sulabhā, who sought to prove him, and to whom he declares himself to be a pupil of Panchaśikha (here said to belong to the family of Parāśara, verse 11875), and an adept in the systems just mentioned ; and from whom, in answer to some reproaches he had addressed to her regarding her procedure, he learns that she belongs to the Rājanya class, like himself, of the family of the rājarshi Pradhāna, that she had obtained no suitable husband, and wandered about, following an ascetic life, and seeking final emancipation (verses 12033 ff.).

A further story in illustration of Janaka's indifference to worldly objects is told in the Āśvamedhikaparvan, verses 887 ff.

²²¹ See Prof. Wilson's Sāṅkhya-kārikā, p. 190 ; and Dr. Hall's Preface to his edition of the Sāṅkhya-pravachana-bhāṣya, pp. 9 ff.

SECT. XV.—*Other instances in which Brāhmanas are said to have been instructed in divine knowledge by Kshattriyas.*

Two other cases in which Brāhmanas are recorded to have received instruction from Kshattriyas are thus stated by Professor Müller:²²²

“For a Kshattriya to teach the law was a crime (*sva-dharmātikrama*), and it is only by a most artificial line of argument that the dogmatic philosophers of the Mīmāṃsā school tried to explain this away. The Brāhmanas seem to have forgotten that, according to their own Upanishads, Ajātaśatru, the king of Kāśi, possessed more knowledge than Gārgya, the son of Bālaka, who was renowned as a reader of the Veda, and that Gārgya desired to become his pupil, though it was not right, as the king himself remarked, that a Kshattriya should initiate a Brāhman. They must have forgotten that Pravāhaṇa Jaivali, king of the Panchālas, silenced Svetaketu Āruṇeya and his father, and then communicated to them doctrines which Kshattriyas only, but no Brāhmanas, had ever known before.” I subjoin two separate versions of each of these stories. The first is that of Ajātaśatru:

Kaushītakī Brāhmaṇa Upanishad, iv. 1. *Atha ha vai Gārgyo Bālākir anūchānaḥ saṁspashtaḥ āsa | so 'vasad Uśinareshu savasan Matsyeshu Kuru-panchāleshu Kāśi-videheshe iti | sa ha Ajātaśatruṁ Kāśyam āvraja uvācha “brahma te bravāni” iti | taṁ ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ “sahasraṁ dadmaḥ” iti “etasyāṁ vāchi | ‘Janako Janakaḥ’ iti vai u janāḥ dhāvanti” iti | . . . 19. Tataḥ u ha Bālākiḥ tūshnīm āsa | taṁ ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ “etāvad nu Bālāke” iti | “etāvad” iti ha uvācha Bālākiḥ | tam ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ “mṛishā vai khalu mā saṁvādayishthāḥ “brahma te bravāni” iti | yo vai Bālāke eteshāṁ puruṣhāṇāṁ karttā yasya vai tat karma sa vai veditaryah” iti | tataḥ u ha Bālākiḥ samit-pāniḥ pratichakrame “upāyāni” iti | taṁ ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ “pratiloma-rūpam eva tad manye yat kshattriyo brāhmaṇam upanayeta chi vy eva tvā jnapayishyāmi” iti | taṁ ha pāṇāv abhipadya pravavrāja |*

“Now Gārgya Bālāki was renowned as a man well read in the Veda. He dwelt among the Uśīnaras, Matsyas, Kurus, Panchālas, Kāśis, and Videhas, travelling from place to place. He came to

²²² Chips from a German Workshop, vol. ii. p. 338.

Ajātaśatru, the Kāśya, and said, 'Let me declare to thee divine knowledge.' Ajātaśatru said, 'We bestow on thee a thousand (cows) for this word.' Men run to us crying, 'Janaka, Janaka.' The learned man accordingly addresses Ajātaśatru in a series of statements regarding the object of his own worship, but is silenced by the king's display of superior knowledge on every topic.²²³ The story ends thus: 19. "Then the son of Balāka remained silent. Ajātaśatru said to him, 'Dost (thou know only) so much, o Bālāki.' 'Only so much,' he answered. The king rejoined, 'Thou hast vainly proposed to me, let me teach thee divine knowledge.' He, son of Balāka, who is the maker of these souls, whose work that is, — he is the object of knowledge.' Then the son of Balāka approached the king with fuel in his hand, and said, 'Let me attend thee (as thy pupil).' The king replied, 'I regard it as an inversion of the proper rule that a Kshatriya should initiate a Brāhman. (But) come, I will instruct thee. Then, having taken him by the hand, he departed."

Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiv. 5, 1, 1 (= Bṛihadāraṇyaka Upanishad, ii. 1, 1, p. 334 of Cal. edit.). *Dṛiptabālākir ha anūchāno Gārgyaḥ āsa | sa ha uvācha Ajātaśatruṁ Kāśyam "brahma te bravāṇi" iti | sa uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ "sahasram etasyāṁ vāchi dadmaḥ 'Janako Janakaḥ' iti vai janāḥ dhāvanti" iti | . . . 12. Sa ha tūshṇīm āsa Gārgyaḥ | 13. Sa ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ "etavad nu" iti | "etavad hi" iti | "na etavatā vīditāṁ bhavati" iti | sa ha uvācha Gārgyaḥ "upa tvā ayāni" iti | 14. Sa ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ "pratilomaṁ vai tad yad brāhmaṇaḥ kshattriyam upeyād 'brahma me vakshyati' iti | vy eva tvā jñāpayishyāmi" iti | tam pāṇār ādāya uttasthaṁ |*

"Dṛiptabālāki Gārgya was well read in the Veda. He said to Ajātaśatru, the Kāśya, 'Let me declare to thee divine knowledge.' Ajātaśatru replied, 'We give thee a thousand (cows) for this word. Men run to me calling out, "Janaka, Janaka." At the end of their conversation we are told: 12. "Gārgya remained silent. 13. Then Ajātaśatru asked him, '(Dost thou know) so much only?' 'Only so much,' he replied. 'But this,' rejoined Ajātaśatru, 'does not comprehend the whole of knowlege.' Then said Gārgya, 'Let me come to thee (as thy disciple).' Ajātaśatru answered, 'This is an inversion of the proper rule, that a Brāhman should attend a Kshattriya with the view

²²³ See Prof. Cowell's Translation of the Upanishad, pp. 167 ff.

of being instructed in divine knowledge. (But) I will teach thee.' He took him by the hand, and rose."

The second story is that of Pravāhana Jaivali :

Sātapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiv. 9, 1, 1 (= Bṛihadāranyaka Upanishad, vi. 2, 1, p. 1030 of Cal. edit.). *S'vetaketuḥ ha vai Āruṇeyaḥ Panchālānām parīśhadam ājagāma | sa ājagāma Pravāhanaṁ Jaivalim parichārayamānam | tam udrīkshya abhyuvāda "kumāra" iti | sa "bhoḥ" iti pratiśuśrāva | "anūśiṣṭo nū asi pitrā" | "om" iti ha uvācha | 2. "Vettha yathā imāḥ prajāḥ prayatyō vipratipadyante" iti | "na" iti ha uvācha | "vettha yathā imāṁ lokam punar āpadyante" iti | "na" iti ha eva uvācha | "vettha yathā 'sau lokāḥ evam bahubhiḥ punaḥ punaḥ prayadbhir na sampūryate" iti | "na" iti ha eva uvācha | 3. "Vettha yatithyām āhutyām hutāyām āpaḥ puruṣa-vācho bhūtvā samutthāya vadanti" iti | "na" iti ha eva uvācha | "vettha u decayānasya vā pathaḥ pratipadam pitṛiyūnasya vā yat kṛtvā decayānaṁ vā panthānam pratipadyate pitṛiyūnāṁ vā | 4. Api hi naḥ ṛiṣher vachaḥ śrutam (R.V. x. 88, 15 = Vāj. S. 19, 47) 'dve sṛitī āsrīṇavam pitṛīnām ahaṁ devānām uta marttyānām | tābhyām idaṁ viśvam ejaṭ sameti yad antaraḥ pitarām mātaram cha'" iti | "na aham ataḥ ekanekāna veda" iti ha uvācha | 5. Atha ha enaṁ vasatyā upamantrayānchakre | anādritya vasatīm kumārāḥ pradadrāva | sa ājagāma pitarām | tam ha uvācha "iti vāra kila nō bhuvān purā 'nūśiṣṭān avochaḥ" ²²⁴ iti | "kathaṁ sumedhaḥ" iti | "pancha mā praśnūn rājanyabandhur aprākṣhīt tato na ekanekāna veda" iti ha uvācha | "katame te" iti | "ime" iti ha pratikāny udājahāra | 6. Sa ha uvācha | "tathā naṣ traṁ tāta jānīthāḥ yathā yad ahaṁ kīncha veda sarvaṁ ahaṁ tat tubhyam avochaṁ | prehi tu tatra pratitya brahmacharyyāṁ vatsyāva" iti | bhavān eva gachhatv" iti | 7. Sa ājagāma Gautamo yatra Pravāhanasya Jaivaler āsa | tasmai āsanam āhāryya ²²⁵ udukam āhārayānchakāra | atha ha asmai arghaṁ ²²⁶ chākara | 8. Sa ha uvācha "varam bhavate Gautamāya dadmaḥ" iti | sa ha uvācha "pratījñāto me esha varaḥ | yām tu kumārasya ante vācham abhūshathās tām me brūhi" iti | 9. Sa ha uvācha "daireṣhu vai Gautama tad vareshu | mānushānām brūhi" iti | 10. Sa ha uvācha "vijñāyate ha asti hiraṇyasya apāttaṁ go-āśvānām dāsīnām pravarānām paridhānānām | mā nō bhavān bahor anantasya*

²²⁴ The text of the Bṛihadāranyaka Up. reads *avochaṭ*.

²²⁵ The Bṛih. Ār. reads *āhāryya*.

²²⁶ The Bṛih. Ār. reads *arghyam*.

aparyantasya abhy avadāṅyo bhūd" iti | "sa vai Gautama tīrthēna ichhāsai" iti | "upainy aham bhavantam" iti "vāchā ha sma eva pūrve upayanti" | 11. Sa ha upāyana-kīrttā²²⁷ uvācha | "tathā nas tvaṁ Gautama mā 'parādhās tava cha pitāmahāḥ yathā | iyaṁ vidyā itaḥ pūrvaṁ na kasmimśchana brāhmaṇe uvāsa | tāṁ tv ahaṁ tubhyaṁ vakshyāmi | ko hi tvā evam brucantam arhati pratyākhyātum" iti |

"Svetaketu Āruṇeya came to the assembly of the Panchālas. He came to Pravāhaṇa Jaivali, who was receiving service from his attendants. Seeing Svetaketu, the king said, 'o youth.' 'Sire,' he answered. (King) 'Hast thou been instructed by thy father?' (Svetaketu) 'I have.' 2. (K.) 'Dost thou know how these creatures, when departing, proceed in different directions?' (S.) 'No.' (K.) 'Dost thou know how they return to this world?' (S.) 'No.' (K.) 'Dost thou know how it is that the other world is not filled with those numerous beings who are thus constantly departing?' (S.) 'No.' 3. (K.) 'Dost thou know after the offering of what oblation the waters, acquiring human voices, rise and speak?' (S.) 'No.' (K.) 'Dost thou know the means of attaining the path which leads to the gods, or that which leads to the Pitris; by what act the one or the other is gained? 4. And we have heard the words of the rishi: (R.V. x. 88, 15 = Vaj. S. 19, 47) "I have heard of two paths for mortals, one to the pitris, another to the gods. By these proceeds every moving thing that exists between the father and the mother (*i.e.* between Dyaus and Prithivī, heaven and earth)."' 'I know none of all these things,' answered Svetaketu. 5. The king then invited him to stay. The youth, however, did not accept this invitation, but hastened away, and came to his father, to whom he said, 'Thou didst formerly declare me to be instructed.' 'How now (my) intelligent (son)?' asked his father. 'The Rājanya,' replied the son, 'asked me five questions, of which I know not even one.' 'What were the questions?' 'They were these,' and he told him the initial words of each of them. 6. The father then said, 'Be assured, my son, that I told thee all that I myself know. But come, let us proceed thither, and become (his) pupils.' 'Do thou thyself go,' rejoined the son. 7. Gantama accordingly arrived (at the abode) of Pravāhaṇa Jaivali, who caused a seat to be brought, and water and the madhuparka mess to be

²²⁷ The text of the Brih. Ār. Up. reads *kīrttā uvāsa*.

presented: 8. and said, 'We offer thee a boon, Gautama.' Gautama replied, 'Thou hast promised me this boon: explain to me the questions which thou hast proposed to the youth.' 9. The king replied, 'That is one of the divine boons; ask one of those that are human.' 10. Gautama rejoined, 'Thou knowest that I have received gold, cows, horses, female slaves, attendants, raiment; be not illiberal towards us in respect to that which is immense, infinite, boundless.' 'This, o Gautama,' said the king, 'thou rightly desirest.' 'I approach thee (as thy) disciple,' answered Gautama. The men of old used to approach (their teachers) with words (merely). He (accordingly) attended him by merely intimating his intention to do so.²²³ 'Do not,' then said the king, 'attach any blame to me, as your ancestors (did not). This knowledge has never heretofore dwelt in any Brāhman; but I shall declare it to thee. For who should refuse thee when thou so speakest?'"

Chhândogya Upanishad, v. 3, 1. *S'vetaketuḥ ha Āruṇeyah Panchālānām samitīm eyāya | taṁ ha Pravāhaṇo Jairalir urācha "kumāra anu tvā 'śishat pitā" iti | "anu hi bhagavaḥ" iti |* 2. *"Vettha yad ito 'dhi prajāḥ prayanti" iti | "na bhagavaḥ" iti | "vettha yathā punar āvarttante" iti | "na bhagavaḥ" iti | "vettha pathor deva-yānasya pitṛi-yānasya cha vyāvarttane" iti | "na bhagavaḥ" iti |* 3. *"Vettha yathā 'sau loko na sampūryyate" | "na bhagavaḥ" iti | "vettha yathā pañchamyām āhutaḥ āpaḥ puruṣha-rachaso bhavanti" iti | "naiva bhagavaḥ" iti |* 4. *"Atha na kim anuśiṣṭo 'rochathāḥ | yo hi imāni na vidyāt kathaṁ so 'nuśiṣṭo bravīta" iti | sa ha āyastah pitur arddham eyāya | taṁ ha urācha "anānuśiṣhya vāva kila mā bhagavān abravīd 'anu tvā 'śisham'" iti |* 5. *"Pancha mā rājanyabandhuḥ praśnān aprākṣhāt tēṣhām na ekanchana āśakāṁ ivaktum" iti | sa ha urācha "yathā mā tvāṁ tadā etān arado yathā 'ham eṣhām na ekanchana veda yady aham imān uredishyaṁ kathaṁ te na avalśhyam" iti |* 6. *Sa ha Gautamo rājno 'rddham eyāya | tasmai ha prāptāya urhām chakāra | sa ha prātaḥ sabhāguḥ udyaṇāya | taṁ ha urācha "mānushasya bhagavan Gautama vitta-sya varāṁ vṛinīthāḥ" iti | sa ha urācha "tara eva rājan mānushaṁ vittam | yām eva kumārasya ante vācham abhāshathāḥ tām eva me brūhi" iti |* 7. *Sa ha kṛichhrī babbhūa | taṁ ha "chiraṁ vasa" ity ājnāpayān-*

²²³ Or, "by merely intimating, not performing, the respectful mode of approach by touching his feet," according to the Commentator.

chakāra | taṁ ha urācha “yathā mā traṁ Gautama avado yathā iyaṁ na prāk tvattaḥ purā brāhmaṇān gachhati tasmād u sarveshu lokeshu kshattrasya eva praśāsanam abhūd” iti | tasmai ha urācha |

“1. Svetaketu Āruneṃya came to the assembly of the Panchālas. Pravāhana Jaivali asked him, ‘Young man, has thy father instructed thee?’ ‘He has, sire,’ replied Svetaketu. 2. ‘Dost thou know,’ asked the king, ‘whither living creatures proceed when they go hence?’ (S.) ‘No, sire.’ (King) ‘Dost thou know how they return?’ (S.) ‘No, sire.’ (K.) ‘Dost thou know the divergences of the two paths whereof one leads to the gods, and the other to the pitris?’ (S.) ‘No, sire.’ 3. (K.) ‘Dost thou know how it is that the other world is not filled?’ (S.) ‘No, sire.’ (K.) ‘Dost thou know how at the fifth oblation the waters acquire human voices?’ (S.) ‘I do not, sire.’ 4. (K.) ‘And hast thou then said “I have been instructed?” for how can he who does not know these things allege that he has been so?’ The young man, mortified, went to his father, and said, ‘Thou didst tell me, I have instructed thee, when thou hadst not done so. 5. That Rājanya proposed to me five questions, of which I could not solve even one.’ The father replied, ‘As thou didst then say to me regarding these five questions, I know not one of them,—(so I ask thee whether) if I had known them, I would not have told them to thee?’ 6. Gautama went to the king, who received him with honour. In the morning, having received his share (of attention), he presented himself before the king, who said to him, ‘Ask, o reverend Gautama, a present of human riches.’ He replied, ‘To thee, o king, belongs wealth of that description. Declare to me the questions which thou proposedst to the youth.’ 7. The king was perplexed and desired him to make a long stay: and said to him, ‘As thou hast declared to me, o Gautama, that this knowledge has not formerly reached the Brāhmans (who lived) before thee, it has therefore been among all peoples a discipline inculcated by the Kshattriya class alone.’ He then declared it to him.”

SECT. XVI.—*Story of King Viśvantara and the S'yāparṇa Brāhmans.*

Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, vii. 27. *Viśvantaro ha Saushadmanaḥ S'yāparṇān parichakshāno vīśyāparṇaṁ yajnam ājahre | tad ha anubudhya S'yāparṇās taṁ yajnam ājagmuḥ | te ha tad-antarvedy āsānchakrīre | tān ha dṛishṭvā*

uvācha “*pāpasya vai ime karmanāḥ karttārāḥ āsate apūtāyai vācho
 vaditāro yach chhyāparṇāḥ imān utthāpayata ime me 'ntarvedim āsi-
 shata*” *iti* | “*tathā*” *iti* *tān utthāpayānchakruḥ* | *te ha utthāpyamānāḥ*
ruruvire “*ye tebhya Bhūtacīrebhyaḥ Asitamṛigāḥ Kaśyapānām soma-
 pītham abhijigyuḥ Pārikshitasya Janamejayasya vikaśyape yajne tais te
 tatra vīravantaḥ āsuh* | *kaḥ svit so 'smāka asti vīro yaḥ imān somapītham
 abhijeshyati*” *iti* | “*ayam aham asmi vo vīrah*” *iti* *ha uvācha Rāmo Mār-
 gareyaḥ* | *Rāmo ha āsa Mārgareyo 'nūchānāḥ S'yāparṇīyaḥ* | *teskām ha
 uttishthātām uvācha* “*api nu rājann itthaṁvidān veder utthāpayanti*”
iti | “*yas traṁ katham vettha brahmabandho*” *iti* | 28. “*Yatra Indram
 devatāḥ paryavṛinjan Viśvarūpaṁ Tvāshtram abhyamaṁsta Vṛittram
 astrita yatin sālāvṛikebhyaḥ prādād Arurmaghān avadhīd Bṛihaspateḥ
 pratyavadhīd*” *iti* | “*tatra Indrah somapīthena vyārdhyata* | *Indrasya
 anu vyṛiddhīm kshattram somapīthena vyārdhyata* | *api Indrah somapīthe
 'bhavat Trashtur āmushya somam* | *tad vyṛiddham eva adyāpi kshattram
 somapīthena* | *sa yas tam bhakshaṁ vidyād yaḥ kshattrasya somapīthena
 vyṛiddhasya yenu kshattram samṛidhyate katham tān veder utthāpayanti*”
iti | “*vettha brāhmaṇa traṁ tam bhaksham*” | “*veda hi*” *iti* | “*tām vai
 no brāhmaṇa brūhi*” *iti* | “*tasmai vai te rājann*” *iti* *ha uvācha* | 29.
Trayāṇām bhakshāṇām ekam āharishyanti somaṁ vā dadhi vā apo vā |
sa yadi somam brāhmaṇānām sa bhakshaḥ | *brāhmaṇāms tena bhakshena
 jinvishyasi* | *brāhmaṇa-kalpas te prajāyām ājanishyate ādāyī āpāyī āva-
 sāyī yathā-kāma-prayūpyaḥ* | *yadā vai kshattriyāya pāpam bhavati
 brāhmaṇa-kalpo 'sya prajāyām ājāyate īśvaro ha asmād dṛitiyo vā tṛitiyo
 vā brāhmaṇatām abhyupaitoḥ sa brahmabandhavena jījyūshataḥ* | *atha
 yadi dadhi vaiśyānām sa bhakshaḥ* | *vaiśyāms tena bhakshena jinvishyasi* |
*vaiśya-kalpas te prajāyām ājanishyate 'nyasya bali-kṛid anyasya ādya
 yathā-kāma-jyeyaḥ* | *yadā vai kshattriyāya pāpam bhavati vaiśya-kalpo
 'sya prajāyām ājāyate īśvaro ha asmād dṛitiyo vā tṛitiyo vā vaiśyatām
 abhyupaitoḥ sa vaiśyatayā jījyūshitaḥ* | *atha yady apāḥ śūdrāṇām sa
 bhakshaḥ* | *śūdrāms tena bhakshena jinvishyasi* | *śūdra-kalpas te prajā-
 yām ājanishyate 'nyasya preshyaḥ kāmottthāpyo yathākāma-vadhyāḥ* |
yadā vai kshattriyāya pāpam bhavati śūdra-kalpo 'sya prajāyām ājāyate |
īśvaro ha asmād dṛitiyo vā tṛitiyo vā śūdratām abhyupaitoḥ | *sa śūdra-
 tayā jījyūshitaḥ* | 30. *Ete vai te trayo bhakshāḥ rājann*” *iti* *ha uvācha*
*“yeshām āśān na iyāt kshattriyo yajamānāḥ atha asya esha svo 'bha-
 kshaḥ” ityādi* |

“Viśvantara, the son of Sushadman, setting aside the Śyāparṇas, was performing a sacrifice without their aid. Hearing of this the Śyāparṇas came to the ceremony, and sat down within the sacrificial enclosure. Observing them, the king said, ‘Remove these Śyāparṇas, doers of evil deeds, and speakers of impure language,²²⁹ who have sat down within my sacrificial enclosure.’ Saying, ‘So be it,’ they removed them. When they were being removed, they exclaimed, ‘The Kaśyapas found champions in the Asitamṛigas who conquered for them from the Bhūta-vīras the soma-draught at the sacrifice which Janamejaya, the son of Parikshit, was performing without their (the Kaśyapas’) aid. Who is the champion who will conquer for us this soma-draught?’ ‘I am your champion,’ cried Rāma Mārgaveya. This Rāma was a learned man, belonging to the Śyāparṇa race. When the Śyāparṇas were moving away, he said, ‘Do they, o king, remove from the sacrificial enclosure a man who possesses such knowledge [as I]?’ ‘How dost thou possess it, Brāhman?’ asked the king. 28. (Rāma answered) “When the deities rejected Indra, who had killed Tvāṣṭra,²³⁰ prostrated Vṛitra, given over the Yatis to the wolves, slain the Arurmaghas, and contradicted Brihaspati, then he (Indra) forfeited the soma-draught. In consequence of his forfeiture, the Kshātra (Kshattriya) class lost it

²²⁹ Prof. Weber (Ind. St. i., 215) thinks the words “doers of evil deeds” appear to refer to some variety of ceremonial peculiar to the Śyāparṇas, and the words “speakers of impure language” to a difference in their dialect; and he is inclined to derive the patronymic of Rāma, Mārgavēya, from the impure caste of Mārgavas mentioned in Manu, x. 34; by which supposition, he thinks, a ground would be discovered for the reproaches which Viśvantara addresses to the Śyāparṇa family. In reference to the story of Janamejaya, alluded to in this passage, Weber remarks (Ind. Stud. i. 204): “The same work (the Aitareya Brahmana, vii., 27) makes mention of a dispute which this king had with the sacerdotal family of the Bhūtāvīras, a branch of the Kaśyapas; and which was adjusted by the intervention of the Asitamṛigas, who belonged to the same race.” A Śyāparṇa is alluded to in S’ P. Br. x., 4, 1, 10 (quoted by Prof. Weber, Ind. St. i., 215): *Etad ha sma vai tad vidvān Śyāparṇaḥ Śayakāyanaḥ āha “yad vai me idam karma samūpsyata mama iva praṇi Salvānām rūṇāno ’bharishyan mama brūhmaṇāḥ mama vaiśyaḥ | yat tu me ctvāḥ karmāṇaḥ samūpi tena me ubhayathā Salvān praṇi ’tīrekshyate” iti |* “Knowing this Śayakāyana, the Śyāparṇa, said, ‘If this my rite had been completed, my offspring would have become the kings of the Salvās, mine their Brāhmins, mine their Vaiśyas. But as (only) so much of the rite has been completed, my offspring shall, in both respects, excel the Salvās.’” See also Ind. St. x. 18.

²³⁰ See Dr. Haug’s note, p. 487, where he states why he cannot follow Sāyaṇa in rendering *abhyamanāntu* by “killed.” Prof. Weber (Ind. St. ix. 326) defends Sāyaṇa’s interpretation.

also. (But Indra recovered a share in the soma-draught, having stolen Tvashṭri's soma.) Hence at present also the Kshattriyas are excluded from the soma-draught. Why do they remove from the sacrificial enclosure a man who knows that (other) draught which (properly belongs) to the Kshattriyas who are excluded from the soma-draught, and by which they are rendered prosperous?' 'Dost thou, o Brāhman, know that draught?' asked the king. 'I know it,' answered Rāma. 'Declare it then to us,' rejoined the prince. 'I declare it to thee, o king,' said the other. 29. 'Of the three draughts they shall bring one, either soma, or curds, or water. If he (the priest, bring) the soma, that is the draught of the Brāhmans, and with it thou shalt satisfy the Brāhmans. One like a Brāhman shall be born in thy line, a receiver of gifts, a drinker (of soma), a seeker of food,²³¹ a rover at will.' Whenever the offence (of drinking the Brāhman's draught)²³² is chargeable to a Kshattriya, one like a Brāhman is born in his line, who in the second or third generation from him has the power of becoming a Brāhman, and likes to live as a Brāhman. Next, if (the priest bring) curds, that is the Vaiśya's draught; with it thou shalt satisfy the Vaiśyas. One like a Vaiśya shall be born in thy line, one who is tributary to another, who is to be used (*lit.* eaten) by another, and who may be oppressed at will. Whenever the offence (of consuming the Vaiśya's portion) is chargeable to a Kshattriya, one like a Vaiśya is born in his line, who in the second or third generation from him has the power of becoming a Vaiśya, and is desirous of living as a Vaiśya. Next, if (the priest bring) water, that is the Sūdra's draught; with it thou shalt satisfy the Sūdras. One like a Sūdra shall be born in thy line, the servant of another, who may be expelled and slain at pleasure. When the offence (of drinking the Sūdra's draught) is chargeable against a Kshattriya, one like a Sūdra is born in his line, who in the second or third generation from him has the power of becoming a Sūdra, and desires to live like a Sūdra. 30. 'These, o king, are the three draughts, which the Kshattriya when sacrificing should not desire. His own proper draught is as follows: Let him squeeze the descending branches

²³¹ Prof. Weber (Ind. Stud. ix. 326) would prefer to translate *āvṣayī* (überall-) wohnend, "dwelling everywhere."

²³² Dr. Haug translates "when there is any fault on the Kshattriya (who, when sacrificing, eats the Brāhmana portion)," etc. See the beginning of par. 30 below.

of the nyagrodha (Indian fig) tree, with the fruits of the udumbara, the aśvattha, and the plaksha trees, and drink these juices. This is his own proper draught."

The continuation may be read in Dr. Haug's translation, pp. 486 ff. After the priest has given the king a deal of further information the result is told in par. 34, as follows:

Tam evam etam bhaksham provācha Rāmo Mārgaveyo Viśvantarāya Saushadmanāya | tasmin ha uvācha prokte "sahasram u ha brāhmaṇa tubhyaṁ dadmaḥ | saśyūparnaḥ u me yajnaḥ" iti |

"This draught did Rāma Mārgaveya declare to Viśvantara the son of Sushadman. When it had been declared the king said, 'Brāhman, we give thee a thousand (cows): and my sacrifice (shall be performed) with (the aid of the) Śyāparṇas.'"

SECT. XVII.—*Story of Matanga who tried in vain to raise himself to the position of a Brāhman.*

The legend of Matanga, which is narrated in the Anuśāsana-parvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 1872 ff., is introduced by a question which Yudhishtira addresses to Bhīshma, verse 1867: *Kshattriyo yadi vā vaiśyeh śūdro vā rājusattama | brāhmaṇyam prāpnuyād yena tad me vyākhyātum arhasi | tapasā vā sumahatā karmaṇā vā śrutena vā | brāhmaṇyaṁ atha cheḍ ichhet tad me brūhi samāsataḥ | Bhīshmaḥ uvācha |* 1870. *Brāhmaṇyaṁ tāta dushprāpyaṁ varṇaiḥ kshattrādibhis tṛibhiḥ | paraṁ hi sarva-bhūtānāṁ sthānam etad Yudhishtira | bahvīs tu saṁsaran yonīr jāyamānaḥ punaḥ punaḥ | paryāye tāta kasmimśchid brāhmaṇo nāma jāyate |* "Explain to me the means—whether it be intense austere-fervour, or ceremonies, or Vedic learning—whereby a Kshattriya, a Vaiśya, or a Śūdra, if he desire it, can attain to the state of a Brāhman. Bhīshma replies (1870), The state of a Brāhman is hard to be acquired by men of the other three classes, the Kshattriyas, etc.; for this Brāhmanhood is the highest rank among all living creatures. It is only after passing through numerous wombs, and being born again and again, that such a man, in some revolution of being, becomes a Brāhman." Bhīshma proceeds to illustrate this principle by the case of Matanga, who was apparently the son of a Brāhman, was distinguished for his good qualities, and was esteemed to be himself of the same class as his

father (verse 1873 : *devjāteḥ kasyachit tāta tulya-varṇaḥ sutas tv abhūt | Matango nāma nāmnā vai sarvaiḥ samudito guṇaiḥ |*) He was, however, discovered to be of spurious birth in the following manner : He happened to be sent somewhere by his father to perform sacrifice, and was travelling in a car drawn by asses. On his way he repeatedly pierced on its nose with the goad the colt which was conveying him along with its mother. Feeling for the wound thus inflicted on her offspring, the she-ass said : “ Be not distressed, my son, it is a Chaṇḍāla who is on the car. There is nothing dreadful in a Brāhman; he is declared to be kindly, a teacher who instructs all creatures : how then can he smite any one ? This man of wicked disposition shows no pity to a tender colt, and thereby indicates his origin ; for it is birth which determines the character ” (verse 1876. *Uvācha mā śuchaḥ puttra chaṇḍālas tv adhitishṭhati | brāhmaṇe dūrunaṁ nāsti maitro brāhmaṇa uchyate | āchāryaḥ sarva-bhūtānāṁ śāstā kim praharishyati | ayaṁ tu pāpa-prakṛitir bāle na kurute dayāṁ | sva-yonim mānayatṣ esha bhāvo bhāvaṁ niyachhati |*). Overhearing this colloquy, Matanga instantly got down from the car and besought the she-ass, whom he honoured with the epithet of “ most intelligent,” to tell him how she knew him to be a Chaṇḍāla and how his mother had been corrupted. The she-ass informs him that his mother when intoxicated had received the embraces of a low-born barber, and that he was the offspring of this connection and consequently no Brāhman (verse 1882. *Brāhmanyāṁ vṛishalena tram mat-tāyāṁ nāpitena ha | jātas tram aṣi chaṇḍālo brāhmanyāṁ tena te ’naśat |*). On receiving this unwelcome revelation, Matanga returned home, and being questioned by his reputed father about the cause of his speedy reappearance, he told him what he had heard ; and expressed his determination to enter on a course of austerities. He does so accordingly with such effect that he alarms the gods, and receives the offer of a boon from Indra. He asks for Brāhmanhood ; but Indra tells him that he must perish if he continues to make that request, as the high position he seeks cannot be obtained by one born as a Chaṇḍāla (verse 1895). Matanga, however, continues his exercises for a hundred years, when Indra repeats his former determination, and supports it by reasons, explaining (1901 ff.) that a Chaṇḍāla can only become a Sūdra in a thousand births, a Sūdra a Vaiśya after a period thirty times as long, a Vaiśya a Rājanya after a period sixty times the length, a Rā-

janya a Brāhman after a period of sixty times the duration, and so on, a Brāhman only becoming a Kāṇḍappriṣṭha, a Kāṇḍappriṣṭha a Japa, a Japa a Śrotriya, after immense intervals. Indra therefore advises Matanga to choose some other boon. But the devotee is still dissatisfied with the god's decision, and renews his austerities for a thousand years. At the end of that period he receives still the same answer, and the same advice. But though distressed he did not yet despair; but proceeded to balance himself on his great toe; which, although reduced to skin and bone, he succeeded in doing for a hundred years without falling. At length, when he was on the point of tumbling, Indra ran up and supported him; but continued inexorably to refuse his request; and though further importuned, would only consent to give him the power of moving about like a bird, and changing his shape at will, and of being honoured and renowned (verses 1934 ff.).

The assertion here made of the impossibility of a Kshattriya becoming a Brāhman until he has passed through a long series of births is of course in flagrant contradiction with the stories of Viśvāmitra, Vītahavya, and others.

Matanga (or a Matanga) is mentioned in a passage already quoted in p. 411 as a rājarshi who supported Viśvāmitra's family and for whom that sage sacrificed. He is also named in the Sabhā-parvan, verse 340, as sitting in Yama's assembly along with Agastya, Kāla, and Mrityu, etc., etc.; in the Vana-parvan, 8079, as a great rishi (*maharshi*); and in the Śānti-parvan, 10875, as one of certain sages who had acquired their position by austerities (see above, p. 132). His disciples, he himself, and his forest are mentioned in the Rāmāyaṇa, iii. 73, 23, 29, 30.

SECT. XVIII.—*Legend of the Brāhman Paraśurāma, the exterminator of the Kshattriyas.*

As Paraśurāma belonged to the race of the Bhṛigus, it may be advisable to premise some particulars regarding that family.

In his *Lexicon*, s.v., Professor Roth tells us that the Bhṛigus were a class of mythical beings, who, according to the Nirukta, xi. 19, belonged to the middle or aerial class of gods (“*mādhyamiko deva-gaṇaḥ*” *iti Nairuktāḥ*). They were the discoverers of fire and brought it to men

(R.V. x. 46, 2, etc.)²³³ He adds, however, that this race has also a connection with history, as one of the chief Brahmanical families bears this name, and allusions are made to this fact even in the hymns of the Rig-veda (vii. 18, 6; viii. 3, 9, 16; viii. 6, 18; viii. 91, 4). Bhṛigu is also, as Prof. Roth observes, the name of a rishi representing a family, who is mentioned in Atharva-veda, v. 19, 1, as suffering injury at the hands of the Sṛinjayas (see above, p. 286). As regards his birth, it is said in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 34, that first the Sun, and then Bhṛigu arose out of the seed which had issued from Prajāpati,²³⁴ that Bhṛigu was adopted by Varuṇa, and was consequently called Vāruṇi, etc. (*Tasya yad retasaḥ prathamam udadīpyata tad asāv ādityo 'bharat | yad dvitīyam āsīt tad Bhṛigur abhavat | taṁ Varuṇo nyagṛiṇṛta | tas-māt sa Bhṛigur Vāruṇiḥ*). He is accordingly called by this name in the S. P. Br. xi. 6, 1, 1, where he is said to have conceived himself to be superior in knowledge to his father Varuṇa (*Bhṛigur ha vai Vāruṇir Varuṇam pitaram vidyayā 'timene*); and also in the Taittirīya Upaniṣad (Bibl. Ind. p. 123: *Bhṛigur vai Vāruṇir Varuṇaṁ pitaram upa-sāsāra*).²³⁵ The preceding story of Bhṛigu's birth is developed and modified in the Anuśāsana-parvan of the Mahābhārata, verse 4104 ff.: *Vaśiṣṭhaḥ uvācha | api chedam purā Rāma śrutam me Brahma-darśanam | Pitāmahasya yad vṛittam Brahmanāḥ paramātmanāḥ | devasya mahutas tāta Vāruṇim bibhratas tanum | aiśvaryye vāruṇe Rāma Rudrasyeśasya vai prabhoḥ |* "Vaśiṣṭha said, 4104: I have also heard, o Rāma (*i.e.* Paraśurāma), of this vision of Brahmā, of that which occurred regarding Pitāmaha, Brahma, the supreme spirit, the great god (*i.e.* Mahādeva), Rudra, Īśa, the lord, assuming the body of Varuṇa, and invested with the dominion of Varuṇa." After this singular description of Mahādeva as identified with Brahmā, Brahma the supreme spirit, and Varuṇa, the speaker goes on to tell us that the munis, the gods headed by Agni, the embodied portions of the sacrifice, and the Vedas, etc., assembled on the occasion referred to, and then proceeds, verse 4112: *Esha Brahmā S'ivo Rudro Varuṇo 'gniḥ Prajā-patiḥ | kīrttyate bhagavān devaḥ sarva-bhūta-patiḥ śivaḥ | tasya yajnaḥ*

²³³ See my article on "Manu, the progenitor of the Āryyan Indians" in Journ. R. A. S. for 1863, p. 415 f.; and above, pp. 168 and 170.

²³⁴ The commencement of the story, of which this is part of the sequel, is given above, p. 107 f.

²³⁵ See Ind. Stud. ii. 231, and Journ. of the German Or. Soc. ix. 240.

*Paśupates tapaḥ kratava eva cha | dīkshā dipta-vratā devī dīśāś cha sa-
digīśvarāḥ | deva-patnyaś cha kanyās cha devānām chaiva mātaraḥ |
ājagmuḥ sahitās tatra tadā Bhṛigu-kulodraha | 4115. Yajnam Paśu-
pateḥ prītāḥ Varuṇasya mahātmanaḥ | Svayambhūvas tu tāḥ dṛishṭrā
retaḥ samapatad bhūri | tasya śukrasya viśyandāt pāmśūn sangrihya
bhūmitaḥ | prāsyat Pūshā karābhyām vai tasmīn eva hutāsane | tatas
tasmin sampravṛitte sattre jvalita-pāvake | Brahmano juhvatas tatra
prādurbhāvo bubhūva ha | skanna-mātraṁ cha tach chhukram śruveṇa
parigrihya saḥ | ājya-rad mantrataś chāpi so 'juhoḥ Bhṛigu-nandana |
tatas tu janayāmāsa bhūta-grāmaṁ cha vīryavān | . . . 4121. Sukre
hute 'gnau tasmiṁs tu prādurāsaṁs trayāḥ prabho | puruṣāḥ vapuṣhā
yuktāḥ svaiḥ svaiḥ prasava-jair-guṇaiḥ | "bhṛig" ity eva Bhṛiguḥ pūr-
vam angārebhyo 'ngirā 'bhavat | angāra-saṁśrayāc chaivo Kavir ity
aparo 'bhavat | saha jvālūbhir utpanno Bhṛigus tasmād Bhṛiguḥ smṛitaḥ |
. . . . 4140. "Varuṇaś cheśvaro devo labhatām kāmam īpsitam" | nisar-
gād Brahmanaś chāpi Varuṇo yādasāmpatiḥ | jagrāha vai Bhṛigum pūr-
vam apatyāṁ sūrya-varehasam | Īśvaro 'ngirasaṁ chāgner apatyārtham
akalpayat | Pitāmahas tv apatyāṁ vai Kaviṁ jagrāha tattva-vit | tadā
sa Vāruṇaḥ khyāto Bhṛiguḥ prasava-karma-kṛit | Āgneyas tv Angirāḥ
śrīmān Kavir Brāhmo mahāyasaḥ | Bhārgavāngirasaṁ loke loka-san-
tāna-lakṣhaṇau | ete hi prasavāḥ sarve prajānām patayas trayāḥ |
sarvam santānam eteshām idam ity upadhāraya | Bhṛigos tu puttrāḥ
saptāsan sarve tulyāḥ Bhṛigor guṇaiḥ | Chyavāno Vajrasīrṣhaś cha
S'uchir Aurvas tathāiva cha | Sukro Varenjyaś cha Vībhuḥ Savanaś
cheti sapta te | Bhārgarāḥ Vāruṇāḥ sarve yeshāṁ vāṁśo bhavān api |
"4112. This adorable and gracious god, lord of all creatures, is known
as Brahmā, Śiva, Rudra, Varuṇa, Agni, Prajāpati. This Paśupati (had)
a sacrifice.²³⁶ Austere-fervour, Oblations, Consecration, (Dīkshā) that
goddess with brilliant rites, the Points of the compass, their regents,
the wives, daughters and mothers of the gods came all together with
joy (4115) to this sacrifice of Paśupati the great Varuṇa. When Sva-
yambhū (Brahmā) saw these goddesses his seed fell to the ground.
Pūshan in consequence collected the particles of dust which were thus
moistened, and threw them into the fire. When the sacrifice with its
blazing fires had begun, there was seen an apparition of Brahmā offering
an oblation. Collecting with the sacrificial ladle that which had fallen,*

²³⁶ Such seems to be the construction of this line.

he cast it, like butter, with sacred texts, into the fire. And thence the powerful god generated all beings. . . . 4121. When the seed had been cast into the fire, there arose three men endowed with bodies, and with their own respective qualities derived from their generation. Bhṛigu sprang first from *bhṛik* (the blazing of the fire), Angiras from the cinders, and Kavi²³⁷ from a heap of cinders. Bhṛigu was so named because he was produced together with flames." The god, called Mahādeva, Varuṇa, and Pavana, claimed these three men as his own, and the fruit of his sacrifice (verse 4133 f.). Agni and Brahmā also claimed them (4135 f.). The other gods, however, entreated Brahmā to accede to the wishes of Agni and Varuṇa: "4140. 'And let Varuṇa, the lord, the god, also receive the object of his desire.' By the gift of Brahmā, Varuṇa, lord of sea-monsters, first received for his offspring Bhṛigu brilliant as the sun. And Īśvara (Mahādeva) appointed Angiras to be Agni's son. And Pitāmaha, who knows the reality of things took Kavi as his offspring, Then Bhṛigu, the progenitor of creatures, was named the son of Varuṇa, Angiras the son of Agni, and the glorious Kavi the son of Brahmā. The Bhārgava and the Āngirasa are distinguished in the world as the propagators of mankind. For all these three lords of creatures were propagators. Know the whole of this world to be their offspring. Bhṛigu had seven sons, all equal to their father in good qualities, Chyavana, Vajrasīrsha, Sūchi, Aurva, Sūkra, Varenya, Vibhu, and Savana. These were all Bhārgavas, and Vāruṇas, to whose race you (Paraśurāma) yourself also belong."

In another passage of the M. Bh. Ādip. 869, it is similarly said: *Bhṛigur maharshir bhagavān Brahmanā vai Svayambhuvā | Varuṇasya kratau jātāḥ pāvakād iti naḥ śrutam |* "We have heard that the great and venerable rishi Bhṛigu was produced by Brahmā from fire at the sacrifice of Varuṇa."

The Nirukta, iii. 17, has the following etymology of Bhṛigu: *Archishī Bhṛiguḥ sambabhūa | Bhṛigur bhṛijyamāno na dehe |* "Bhṛigu was produced in the flame; though roasted, he was not consumed."

The Taitt. Br. i. 8, 2, 5, has a different account: *Indrasya sushurānasya tredhā indryam vīryam parāpatat | Bhṛigus tritīyam abhavat |*

²³⁷ In the M. Bh. Ādip. v. 2606, Kavi is said to be Bhṛigu's son (*Bhṛigoh putrah Kaviṃ vidvān Sūkraḥ*). On the other hand he, or another person of the same name, is said in the Anuśāsana-p. 4150, to be, along with Kavi, a son of Kavi.

“ While Indra was continuing to pour out Soma, his manly vigour fell in three portions. The third became Bhṛigu.”

Bhṛigu is declared in the Vishṇu P. (see above, p. 65) to have been one of the nine Brahmās, mental sons of Brahmā. The Bhāg. P. iii. 12, 23, says he sprang from the skin of the creator (*Bhṛigus tvachi*). The M. Bh. Ādip. 2605, on the contrary declares: *Brahmaṇo hṛidayam bhittvā nissṛito bhagavān Bhṛiguḥ* | “The venerable Bhṛigu, having split Brahmā’s heart, issued forth” (Weber, Ind. St. ii. 231). So, too, the Vāyu P. i. 9, 100: *Bhṛigus tu hṛidayāj jājne rishiḥ Salilajanmanah* | “Bhṛigu was produced from the heart of the Water-born (Brahmā);” and adds, verse 103: *Ity ete mānasāḥ puttrāḥ vijneyāḥ Brahmanah sutāḥ* | *Bhṛigr-ādayas tu ye śṛiṣṭāḥ navaite brahma-vādinah* | 104. *Grihamedhinaḥ purāṇas dharmas taiḥ prāk pravartitāḥ* | “These were the mind-born sons of Brahmā. Bhṛigu, and the others, nine in all, who were created, were declarers of sacred knowledge and ancient householders; by them was duty of old established.” Manu mentions Bhṛigu (i. 35, see above, p. 36) as one of his own ten sons. He also speaks of him (i. 59, 60, above, p. 38) as commissioned by himself (Manu) to promulgate his code. In Manu, v. 1. however, the sage is said to have sprung from fire (*idam ūhur mahātmānam anala-prabhavam Bhṛigum*). As, however, he had been previously declared to be one of Manu’s ten sons, and is so called also in the third verse of book v. and the second of book vii., where he is styled *Mānava Bhṛiguḥ*, Kullūka thinks it necessary to explain this other alleged descent from fire by saying that that had been the sage’s origin in a previous mundane era (*Kalpa*): *Yadyapi prathamādhyāye daśa-prajāpati-madhye “Bhṛiguṃ Nāradaṃ eva cha” iti Bhṛigu-śṛiṣṭir api Manutaḥ eva uktā tathāpi kalpa-bhedena agni-prabhavatvam achyate* | *tathā cha śrutiḥ “tasya yad retasaḥ prathamam dedīpyate tad asāv ādityo ’bhavat* | *yad dvitīyam āsīd Bhṛigur”* | *iti* | *ataḥ eva bhrashtād retasaḥ utpannatvād Bhṛiguḥ* | “Though the creation of Bhṛigu, as one of the ten Prajāpātis, is declared, in the 35th verse of the first book, to have proceeded from Manu, still he is here said to have been produced from fire, from the difference in the manner of his birth in the different Kalpas. And so the Veda says (in the passage quoted above from the Ait. Br.). Hence he is called Bhṛigu, because he sprang from the seed which fell (*bhrashtāt*).²³⁸

²³⁸ See Prof. Wilson’s note, Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. i. p. 100 ff., in the course of

Professor Roth (Lit. and History of the Veda, p. 135) says: "The Bhrigus are one of the most important Vedic families, to which Jamadagni, Chyavana, Aurva, Apnavāna, and other rishis are assigned. Many conjectures might be formed in connection with the part which these several Bhrigus play in the later legends; but it seems to me unsafe to draw any conclusions till we are in possession of the intermediate links, and especially till we have learnt more precisely from the Vedic hymns themselves the relations of these families to each other. Nevertheless I will remark that Śunahśepha, the adopted son of Viśvāmitra, is, according to the Purāṇas, a Bhrigu; and consequently the Bhrigus appear in intimate connection with the enemy of Vasishṭha; and further, that Sagara, who was reared by the Bhrigu Aurva, is restrained by Vasishṭha in his war of extermination against the Śakas and other barbarous tribes. His enemies, when hard pressed, had resorted to Vasishṭha as an intercessor." (See above, p. 337, and Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. iii. p. 291.)

The story of Paraśurāma and the Kshattriyas is briefly mentioned in the second section of the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata (verses 272–280), where the events referred to are said to have occurred in the interval between the Tretā and Dvāpara ages (*Tretā-dvāparayoḥ sandhau Rāmaḥ śāstra-bhritāṃ varāḥ | asakṛit pārthivaṃ kshattriāṃ jaghānāmarsha-choditoḥ | sa sarvaṃ kshattriāṃ utsādya sa-vīryeṇānala-dyutiḥ* |). The history is more fully told in other parts of the Mahābhārata. In the 178th–180th sections of the Ādiparvan there is a legend in which no mention is made of Paraśurāma, or the slaughter of the Kshattriyas; but in which we have the following particulars: Paraśara was son of Saktri, and grandson of Vaśishṭha, as we have seen above, p. 417. When he heard of the way in which his father had met his death, he determined to execute a general slaughter of all creatures (v. 6800);²³⁹ but his grandfather restrained him by narrating the history of the

which he says, "The Vāyu has also another account of their (the Prajāpatīs) origin, and states them to have sprung from the fires of a sacrifice offered by Brahmā; an allegorical mode of expressing their probable original—considering them to be in some degree real persons—from the Brahmanical ritual, of which they were the first institutors and observers."

²³⁹ Reference is made in the commencement of the Vishṇu Purāṇa to the same circumstance (Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. i. pp. 7 ff.) Paraśara is the narrator of the Vishṇu Purāṇa (ibid. p. 11).

Bhrigus and Kshattriyas, as follows: There was a king named Kṛita-viryya, by whose liberality the Bhrigus, learned in the Vedas, who officiated as his priests, had been greatly enriched with corn and money (verse 6802. *Yājño veda-vidāṃ loke Bhrigūṇāṃ pārthivarsha-bhaḥ | sa tān agra-bhujas tāta dhānyena cha dhanena cha | somānte tar-payāmāsa vipulena viśāmpate |*). After he had gone to heaven, his descendants were in want of money, and came to beg for a supply from the Bhrigus, of whose wealth they were aware. Some of the latter hid their money under ground, others bestowed it on Brāhmins, being afraid of the Kshattriyas, while others again gave these last what they wanted. It happened, however, that a Kshattriya, while digging the ground, discovered some money buried in the house of a Bhrigu. The Kshattriyas then assembled and saw this treasure, and, being incensed, slew in consequence all the Bhrigus, whom they regarded with contempt, down to the children in the womb (verse 6809. *Arumanya tataḥ krodhād Bhrigūṃs tān śaranāgatān | nijaghnūḥ parameshvāsāḥ sarvāṃs tān niśitauḥ śaraiḥ | ā-garbhād avakṛintantaś cheruḥ sarvāṃ vasundharām |*). The widows, however, fled to the Himālāya mountains. One of them concealed her unborn child in her thigh. The Kshattriyas, hearing of its existence from a Brāhmanī informant, sought to kill it; but it issued forth from its mother's thigh with lustre, and blinded the persecutors. After wandering about bewildered among the mountains for a time, they humbly supplicated the mother of the child for the restoration of their sight; but she referred them to her wonderful infant Aurva into whom the whole Veda, with its six Vedāṅgas, had entered (verse 6823. *Shaḍ-angāś chākṣhilo vedāḥ imaṃ garbhastham eva ha | viveśa Bhrigu-raṃśasya bhūyaḥ priya-chikīrshayā |*), as the person who (in retaliation of the slaughter of his relatives) had robbed them of their eyesight, and who alone could restore it. They accordingly had recourse to him, and their eyesight was restored. Aurva, however, meditated the destruction of all living creatures, in revenge for the slaughter of the Bhrigus, and entered on a course of austerities which alarmed both gods, asuras, and men; but his progenitors (Pitris) themselves appeared, and sought to turn him from his purpose by saying that they had no desire to be revenged on the Kshattriyas: 6834. *Nā-nīśair hi tadā tāta Bhrigubhir bhāvitātmabhiḥ | budho hy upekshitāḥ sarvaiḥ kshattriyāṇāṃ vihiṃsatām | āyushā viprakriṣṭena yadā naḥ*

*kheda āviśāt | tadā 'smābhir badhas tāta kshattriyaair īpsitah svayam |
nikhātām yach cha vai vittaṁ kenachid Bhṛigu-reśmani | vairāyaiva tadā
nyastaṁ kshattriyaṁ kopayishñubhiḥ | kiṁ hi vittena naḥ kāryyaṁ svar-
gepsūnām dvijottama | 6841. Mā badhīḥ kshattriyaṁs tāta na
lokān sapta puttraka | dūshayantaṁ tapas-tejaḥ krodham utpatitaṁ jahi |*

“6834. It was not from weakness that the devout Bhṛigus overlooked the massacre perpetrated by the murderous Kshattriya. When we became distressed by old age, we ourselves desired to be slaughtered by them. The money which was buried by some one in a Bhṛigu's house was placed there for the purpose of exciting hatred, by those who wished to provoke the Kshattriya. For what had we, who were desiring heaven, to do with money?” They add that they hit upon this device because they did not wish to be guilty of suicide, and concluded by calling upon Aurva to restrain his wrath; and abstain from the sin he was meditating, verse 6841: “Destroy not the Kshattriya, o son, nor the seven worlds. Suppress thy kindled anger which nullifies the power of austere-fervour.” Aurva, however, replies that he cannot allow his threat to remain unexecuted. His anger, unless wreaked upon some other object, will, he says, consume himself. And he argues on grounds of justice, expediency, and duty, against the clemency which his progenitors recommend. He is, however, persuaded by the Pitṛis to throw the fire of his anger into the sea, where they say it will find exercise in assailing the watery element, and in this way his threat will be fulfilled. “It accordingly became the great Hayaśiras, known to those who are acquainted with the Veda, which vomits forth that fire and drinks up the waters” (*Mahad Hayaśiro bhūtvā yat tad veda-viduḥ | tam agnim udgīrad raktrāt pibaty āpo mahodadhuḥ*). It is worthy of remark that in a legend, one object of which, at least, would seem to be to hold up to abhorrence the impiety of the Kshattriya in oppressing the Brāhmans, we should thus find a palliation of the conduct of the oppressors, coming from the other world. But here the principle of the nothingness of mundane existence asserts itself; and the final superiority of the Brāhmans is vindicated, while their magnanimity is exemplified.

The next version of this legend, which I shall quote, is that given in the 115th–117th sections of the Vamaparvan. Arjuna, son of Kṛiṭa-vīrya, and king of the Haihāyas, had, we are told, a thousand arms.

He obtained from Dattātreyā an aerial car of gold, the march of which was irresistible. He thus trod down gods, Yākshas, rishis, and oppressed all creatures (10137. *Aryāhata-gaṭiś chaiva rathas tasya mahāt-manah | rathena tena tu tadā vara-dānena vīryavān | mamardda devān yakshāṃś cha ṛishīṃś chaiva samantataḥ | bhūtāṃś chaiva sa sarvāṃś tu pīḍayāmāsa sarvataḥ* |). The gods and rishis applied to Viṣṇu, and he along with Indra, who had been insulted by Arjuna, devised the means of destroying the latter. At this time, the story goes on, there lived a king of Kānyakubja, called Gādhi, who had a daughter named Satyavatī. The marriage of this princess to the rishi Ṛichika, and the birth of Jamadagni, are then told in nearly the same way as above narrated in page 350. Jamadagni and Satyavatī had five sons, the youngest of whom was the redoubtable Paraśurāma. By his father's command he kills his mother (who, by the indulgence of impure desire, had fallen from her previous sanctity), after the four elder sons had refused this matricidal office, and had in consequence been deprived of reason by their father's curse. At Paraśurama's desire, however, his mother is restored by his father to life, and his brothers to reason; and he himself is absolved from all the guilt of murder; and obtains the boon of invincibility and long life from his father. His history now begins to be connected with that of king Arjuna (or Kārtavīrya). The latter had come to Jamadagni's hermitage, and had been respectfully received by his wife; but he had requited this honour by carrying away by force the calf of the sage's sacrificial cow, and breaking down his lofty trees. On being informed of this violence, Paraśurāma was filled with indignation, attacked Arjuna, cut off his thousand arms, and slew him. Arjuna's sons, in return, slew the peaceful sage Jamadagni, in the absence of Paraśurāma. The narrative thus proceeds:

10201. *Dudāha pitarāṃ chāgnau Rāmaḥ para-puranjayah | pratijajne badhaṃ chāpi sarva-kshatrasya Bhārata | sa kruddho 'tibalaḥ sankhye śastraṃ ādya vīryavān | jughnivān Kārttavīryasya sutaṃ eko'ntak-opamaḥ | Teshāṃ chānugatāḥ ye cha kshattriyaḥ kshattriyaṃśhabha | tāmś cha sarvāṃ avāmṛdhnād Rāmaḥ proharatām varaḥ | trissapta-kṛitvaḥ pṛithivīm kṛitvā niḥkshattriyaṃ prabhūḥ | samantapanchake pancha chakāra raudhirān hradān | 10205. Sa teshu tarpayāmāsa Bhṛīgūn Bhṛigu-kulodvahaḥ | sākshād dadarśa charchikāṃ sa cha Rāmaṃ*

*nyavedayat | tato yajñena mahatū Jāmadagnyaḥ pratāpavān | tarpayā-
māsa devendram ṛitvighnyaḥ pradadau mahīm | vedīm chāpy adadād hai-
mīm Kaśyapāya mahātmane | daśa-vyāmāyatām kṛtvā navotsedhām
viśāmpate | tām Kaśyapasyānumater brāhmaṇāḥ khaṇḍaśas tadā | rya-
bhajaṃs te tadā rājan prakhyātāḥ Khāṇḍavāyanāḥ | sa pradāya mahīm
tasmai Kaśyapāya mahātmane | asmin mahendre śailendre vasaty amita-
vikramaḥ | evaṃ vairam abhūt tasya kshattriyaṛ loka-vāsibhiḥ | pṛithivī
chāpi vijitā Rāmeṇāmīta-tejasā |*

“Rāma, after performing, on his return, his father’s funeral obsequies, vowed to destroy the whole Kshattriya race; and executed his threat by killing first Arjuna’s sons and their followers. Twenty-one times did he sweep away all the Kshattriyas from the earth, and formed five lakes of blood in Samantapanchaka; (10,205) in which he satiated the manes of the Bhṛigus, and beheld face to face (his grand-father) Ṛichika, who addressed himself to Rāma. The latter gratified Indra by offering to him a grand sacrifice, and gave the earth to the officiating priests. He bestowed also a golden altar, ten fathoms long and nine high, on the mighty Kaśyapa. This, by his permission, the Brāhmans divided among themselves, deriving thence the name of Khāṇḍavāyanas. Having given away the earth to Kaśyapa, Paraśu-rāma himself dwells on the mountain Mahendra. Thus did enmity arise between him and the Kshattriyas, and thus was the earth conquered by Rāma of boundless might.”

The means by which the Kshattriya race was restored are described in the following passage from the Ādiparvan, verses 2459 ff. :

*Trissapta-kṛitvaḥ pṛithivīm kṛtvā niḥkshattriyām purā | Jāmad-
agnyaḥ tapas tepe Mahendre pariatottame | 2460. Tadā niḥkshattriye
loke Bhārgaveṇa kṛite satī | brāhmaṇān kshattriyāḥ rājan sutārthiṇyo
'bhichakramaḥ | tābhiḥ saha samāpetur brāhmaṇāḥ śamsita-vratāḥ | ṛitār
ṛitau nara-vyāghra na kāmād nāṇṛitau tathā | tebhyaś cha lebhire garb-
haṃ kshattriyāḥ taḥ sahasraśaḥ | tataḥ sushucire rājan kshattriyān
vīryavattarān | kumāraṃś cha kumārīś cha punaḥ kshattrābhīṇṛid-
dhyaye | evaṃ tad brāhmaṇāḥ kshattram kshattriyāsu tapasvibhiḥ |
jātaṃ vṛiddhaṃ cha dharmena sudīrghenāyushānvitam | chatvāro 'pi tato
varṇāḥ babhūvur brāhmaṇottarāḥ |*

“2459. Having one and twenty times swept away all the Kshattriyas from the earth, the son of Jamadagni engaged in austerities on

Mahendra the most excellent of mountains. 2460. After he had cleared the world of Kshatriyas, their widows came to the Brāhman, praying for offspring. The religious Brāhman, free from any impulse of lust, cohabited at the proper seasons with these women, who in consequence became pregnant, and brought forth valiant Kshatriya boys and girls, to continue the Kshatriya stock. Thus was the Kshatriya race virtuously begotten by Brāhman on Kshatriya women, and became multiplied and long-lived. Thence there arose four castes inferior to the Brāhman."

This restoration of the Kshatriyas and their rule is said to have been followed by a state of great virtue, happiness, and prosperity. As one exemplification of the religious perfection which prevailed, it is said that "the Brāhman did not sell their sacred lore, nor recite the Vedas in the vicinity of Sūdras" (verse 2474. *Na cha vikrīṇate brahma brāhmaṇās cha tadā nṛipa | na cha śūdra-samābhyaṣe vedān uchchārayanty uta |*).

Another version of this legend is given in the Sāntiparvan, section 49. The birth of Jamadagni as the son of Richika and Satyavati is related very much as in the Vishnu Purāṇa (see above, p. 349 f.); but Richika tells his wife that the whole of her father's race shall become Brāhmanical (verse 1741. *Brahma-bhūtaṁ hi sakalam pitus tava kulam bhavet*); and of Viśvāmitra, the son of Gādhi, we are told that he "had the character of a Brāhman, and was possessed of all Brahmanical qualities" (1745. *Viśvāmitraṁ cha dāyādān Gādhiḥ Kuśika-nandanah | yam prāpa brahma-samitaṁ viśvair brahma-guṇair yutam |*). Jamadagni was father of the dreadful Paraśurāma, "who became perfect in science, thoroughly versed in archery, and the slayer of the Kshatriyas, himself violent as flaming fire. By propitiating Mahādeva he obtained, among other weapons, the irresistible axe (*paraśu*)" (1747. *Sarva-vidyānta-gaṁ śreshṭhaṁ dhanur-vedasya pāragam | Rāmaṁ kshatriya-hantāram pradīptam iva pāvakam | toshayitrā Mahādevam parrate Gandhamādane | astrāṇi varayāmāsa paraśum chātitejasam |*), from which his name is derived. Arjuna, son of Kṛitavīrya, king of the Haihayas, is here also represented as having a thousand arms, but in opposition to the previous account he is described as a "dutiful and religious monarch, who at an *aśvamedha* (horse-sacrifice) bestowed on the Brāhman the earth with its seven continents and mountains, which he had conquered by his

arms and weapons" (verse 1751. *Chakravartī mahātejā viprāṇām āśva-medhike | dadau sa prithivīm sarvām sapta-dvīpām sa-parvatām | svabāhv-astra-balenājau jītvā parama-dharma-vit |*). He had, however, at the solicitation of Agni permitted that voracious deity to consume his towns, villages, forests, etc.; and as the hermitage of Āpava (Vasishṭha) had been destroyed in the conflagration, Arjuna was doomed by the sage's curse to have his arms cut off by Paraśurāma. The story proceeds:

Verse 1769. *Arjunas tu mahātejā bātī nityam śamātmekah | brahmanyas cha śaranyas dātā śūras cha Bhārata |* 1760. *Nāchintayat tadā śāpam tena dattam mahātmanā | tasya putrās tu balinah śāpenāsura pitur badhe | nimittād avaliptāḥ vai nṛśaṁsās chaiva sarvadā | Jama-dagni-dhenvās te ratsam āninyur Bharatarshabha | ajnātām Kārtta-vīryena Haihayendreṇa dhīmatā | tannimittam abhūd yuddham Jāmadagner mahātmanah | tato 'rjunasya bāhuṁs tām chhittvā Rāmo rushū 'nvitah |* 1766. *Tataḥ pitri-badhāmarshād Rāmah parama-manyumān | nihkshattriyaṁ pratiśrutya mahīm śāstram agrihṛta | tataḥ sa Bhṛigu-śārdūlah Kārttavīryasya vīryavān | vikramya vijaghānāsu puttṛān pauttrāmś cha sarvaśah | sa Haihaya-sahasrāṇi hatvā parama-manyumān | chakāra Bhārgavo rājan mahīm śonita-kardamām | sa tathā "śu mahātejāḥ kṛtvā nihkshattriyaṁ mahīm |* 1770. *Kṛipayā parayā "vishṭo vanam eva jagāma ha | tato varsha-sahasreshu samatīteshu keshuchit | kshepam samprāptavāṁs tatra prakṛityā kopanaḥ prabhuḥ | Viśvāmitrasya pauttras tu Raibhya-puttro mahātapaḥ | Parāvasur mahārāja kshiptāha (kshiptvā "ha?) jana-saṁsadi | "ye te Yayāti-patane yajne santah samūgatāḥ | Pratarddana-prabhṛitayo Rāma kiṁ kshattriyaḥ na te | mithyā-pratijño Rāma tvaṁ katthase jana-saṁsadi | bhayāt kshattriya-vīrāṇām parvatām samupāśritah | sū punaḥ kshattriya-śataiḥ prithivī sarvatas tṛitā" |* 1775. *Parāvasor vachah śrutvā śāstram jagṛha Bhārgavaḥ | tato ye Kshattriyaḥ rājan śataśas tena varjītāḥ | te viriddhāḥ mahāvīryyāḥ prithivī-patayo 'bhavan | sa punas tām jaghānāsu bālān api narādhipa | garbha-sthais tu mahi vyūptā punar evābhavat tadā | jātām jātām sa garbham tu punar eva jaghāna ha | arakshaṁs tu sūtān kāmśchit tadā kshattriya-yoshitah | trissapta-kṛitraḥ prithivīm kṛitvā nihkshattriyaṁ prabhuḥ | dakṣiṇām āśvamedhānte Kaśyapāyādādāt tadā | sa kshattriyaṇām śeshārtham karenoddīśya Kaśyapaḥ |* 1780. *Sruk-pragrahvatā rājāṁs tato vākyam athābravit | "gachha tīram samudrasya dakṣiṇasya mahāmune | na te mad-vishaye Rāma vastavyam iha karhichit" | tataḥ*

S'ūrpārakaṁ deśaṁ sāgaras tasya nirmame | sahasā Jāmadagnyasya so
'parānta-mahītaṁ | Kāśyapas tām mahārāja pratigrihya vasundharām |
kṛtvā brāhmaṇa-saṁsthām vai pravishṭaḥ sumahāvanam | tataḥ śūdrāś
cha vaiśyās cha yathā - svaira - prachārīnaḥ | avarttanta dvijāgryānāṁ
dāreshu Bharatarshabha | arūjake jīva-loke durbalāḥ balavattaraiḥ |
 1785. *Pīdyante na hi vītteṣhu prabhutvaṁ kasyachit tadā | tataḥ kālena*
prithivī pīdyamānā durātmaḥ | viparyayaṇa tenāśu praviveśa rasāta-
lam | arakshyamānā vidhivat kshattriyair dharmaraksibhiḥ | tām
drishṭvā dravatiṁ tatra saṁtrāsāt sa mahāmanāḥ | ūruṇā dhūrayāmāsa
Kāśyapaḥ prithivīm tataḥ | dhṛitā tenorūṇa yena tenorvīti mahī smṛitā |
rakṣaṇārthaṁ samuddiśya yayāche prithivī tadā | prasādyā Kāśyapaṁ
devī varayāmāsa bhūmipam | prithivy urācha | 1790. “*Santi brahman*
mayā guptāḥ strīṣhu kshattriya-pungavāḥ | Haihayānāṁ kule jātās te
saṁrakṣantu mām mune | asti Paurava-dāyādo Vīdūratha-sutaḥ prabho |
ṛikṣaiḥ saṁvardhito vipra ṛikṣavatī atha parvate | tathā 'nukampa-
mānena yajñāṁ 'py amitaṁjasaḥ | Parāśareṇa dāyādāḥ Saudāsasyā-
bhirakṣitāḥ | sarva-kurmāṇi kurute śūdra-vat tasya sa dvijaḥ | Sarva-
karmety abhikhyātāḥ sa mām rakṣatu pāṛthivaḥ | . . . 1799. *Ete*
kshattriya-dāyādās tatraṣṭ tatra pariśritāḥ | dyokāra-hema-kūrādi-jātiṁ
nityaṁ saṁśritāḥ | 1800. *Yadi mām abhirakṣanti tadā sthāsyāmi*
nīśchalā | eteṣāṁ pitarāś chaiva tuthaiva cha pitāmahāḥ | mad-arthaṁ
nihatāḥ yuddhe Rāmeṇāklīṣṭa-karmaṇā | teshāṁ apachītiś chaiva mayā
kāryā mahāmune | na hy ahaṁ kāmāye nityaṁ atikrāntena rakṣaṇam |
varttamānena vartteyaṁ tat kṣhipraṁ saṁvidhīyatām” | tataḥ prithivyā
nirdiśṭāṁ tām samānīya Kāśyapaḥ | abhyashinchad mahīpālān kṣat-
triyān vīrya-sammatān |

“Being of a meek, pious, kind, and charitable turn of mind, the valiant Arjuna thought nothing of the curse; but his sons, who were of an arrogant and barbarous disposition, became the cause of its resulting in his death. Without their father's knowledge they took away Jamadagni's calf; and in consequence Paraśurāma attacked Arjuna and cut off his arms.” His sons retaliated by killing Jamadagni. 1766. Paraśurāma incensed at the slaughter of his father, having vowed in consequence to sweep away all Kshattriyas from the earth, seized his weapons; and slaying all the sons and grandsons of Arjuna, with thousands of the Haihayas, he turned the earth into a mass of ensanguined mud. 1770. Having thus cleared the earth of

Kshattriyas, he became penetrated by deep compassion and retired to the forest. After some thousands of years had elapsed, the hero, naturally irascible, was taunted by Parāvasu, the son of Raibhya and grandson of Viśvāmitra, in a public assembly in these words: 'Are not these virtuous men, Pratardana and the others, who are assembled at the sacrifice in the city of Yayāti,—are they not Kshattriyas? Thou hast failed to execute thy threat, and vainly boastest in the assembly. Thou hast withdrawn to the mountain from fear of those valiant Kshattriyas, while the earth has again become overrun by hundreds of their race.' Hearing these words, Rāma seized his weapons. The hundreds of Kshattriyas who had before been spared had now grown powerful kings. These, however, Paraśurāma now slew with their children, and all the numerous infants then unborn as they came into the world. Some, however, were preserved by their mothers. Having twenty-one times cleared the earth of Kshattriyas, Rāma gave her as a sacrificial fee to Kaśyapa at the conclusion of an aśvamedha. 1780. Making a signal with his hand, in which he held the sacrificial ladle, Kaśyapa, in order that the remaining Kshattriyas should be spared, said to Paraśurāma, 'Go, great muni, to the shore of the southern ocean. Thou must not dwell in my territory.' Sāgara (the ocean) created for him a country called Sūrpāraka on the remotest verge of the earth. Having received dominion over the earth, Kaśyapa made it an abode of Brāhmans, and himself withdrew to the forest. Sūdras and Vaiśyas then began to act lawlessly towards the wives of the Brāhmans; and, in consequence of there being no government, the weak (1785) were oppressed by the strong, and no one was master of any property. The Earth, being distressed by the wicked, in consequence of that disorder, and unprotected according to rule by the Kshattriyas, the guardians of justice, descended to the lower regions. Perceiving her moving from place to place in terror, Kaśyapa upheld her with his thigh (*ūru*). From this circumstance she derives her name of *urvī*.²⁴⁰ The goddess Earth then propitiated Kaśyapa, and supplicated him for protection, and for a king. 'I have,' she said, 'preserved among females many Kshattriyas who have been born in the race of the Haihayas; let them be my protectors. There is the heir of the Pauravas, the son of Vidūratha, who has been brought up by bears

²⁴⁰ *Urvī* really means "the broad," signifying the same as *prithivī*.

on the mountain Rikshavat: let him protect me. So, too, the heir of Saudāsa has been preserved by the tender-hearted and glorious priest, Parāśara, who has performed, though a Brāhman, all menial offices (*sarvakarmāṇi*) for him, like a Sūdra;—whence the prince's name Sarvakarman." After enumerating other kings who had been rescued, the Earth proceeds: "All these Kshatriyas' descendants have been preserved in different places, abiding continually among the classes of dyokāras and goldsmiths. If they protect me, I shall continue unshaken. Their fathers and grandfathers were slain on my account by Rāma, energetic in action. It is incumbent on me to avenge their cause. For I do not desire to be always protected by an extraordinary person [such as Kaśyapa]; but I will be content with an ordinary ruler. Let this be speedily fulfilled.' Kaśyapa then sent for these Kshatriyas who had been pointed out by the Earth, and installed them in the kingly office."

This reference to the bestowal of the Earth upon Kaśyapa is founded on an older story which occurs both in the Aitareya and the Satapatha Brāhmaṇas. The passage in the first-named work is as follows, viii. 21. *Etena ha vai Aindreṇa mahābhishhekena Kaśyapo Viśvakarmānam Bhauranam abhishhechu | tasmād u Viśvakarmā Bhauranaḥ samantaṁ sarvataḥ prithivīm jayan pariyāya asvena cha madhyena ije | bhūmir ha jagāv ity udāharanti* "na mā marttyaḥ kaśchana dātum arhati Viśvakarman Bhaurana mām didāsitha | nimankshye 'haṁ salilasya madhye moghas te esha Kaśyapāyāsa sangaraḥ" iti | "With this great inauguration like that of Indra did Kaśyapa consecrate Viśvakarman Bhaurana, who in consequence went round the Earth in all directions, conquering it; and offered an asvamedha sacrifice. They relate that the Earth then recited this verse:

"Me may no mortal give away; but thou, oh king, dost so essay;
Deep will I plunge beneath the main; thy pledge to Kaśyapa is vain."

The Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiii. 7, 1. 15, says: *Taṁ ha Kaśyapo yājyāṇchakāra | tad api bhūmiḥ slokaṁ jagau* "na mā marttyaḥ kaśchana dātum arhati Viśvakarman Bhaurana mandāḥ āsitha | upamankshyati syā salilasya madhye mṛishaisha te sangaraḥ Kaśyapāya" iti | "Kaśyapa officiated for him at this sacrifice. Wherefore also the Earth recited this verse: 'No mortal may give me away. Viśvakarman, son of

Bhauvana, thou wast foolish (in offering to do so). She will sink into the midst of the waters. Thy promise to Kaśyapa is vain.' ”²⁴¹

The story is also related in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa in a similar way. I note the chief points and variations. When Gādhi's daughter was demanded in marriage by the rishi Richika, the king considered that the suitor was not a fit husband for a daughter of his noble race; and said, “Give me a thousand horses white as the moon, each with one black ear, as a marriage gift for the maiden; for we are Kuśikas” (ix. 15, 5. *Varaṇ visadriṣam matrā Gādhir Bhārgavam abravīt* | 6. *Ekataḥ śyāma-karṇū-nāṁ hayānāṁ chandra-varchasām* | *sahasraṁ dīyatāṁ śulkaṁ kanyāyāḥ Kuśikāḥ vrayam* |). The youngest offspring of their union was, we are told, “Paraśurāma, who is declared to have been a portion of Vāsudeva (Vishṇu in the form of Kṛishṇa),²⁴² and who exterminated the Haihaya race. Thrice seven times he swept away from this earth all the Kshattri-yas, that depraved and impious race, full of passion and darkness, with which she was burthened. He destroyed them, though the offence which they had committed was but insignificant (v. 14. *Yam āhur Vā-suderāṁśaṁ Haihayānaṁ kulāntakam* | *trissaptakṛitco yaḥ ināṁ chakre niḥkshattriyāṁ mahīm* | *dushtaṁ kshattram bhūvo bhāram abrahmanyam anīnaśat* | *rajas-tamo-vṛitam ahan phalguny api kṛite 'mhasi* |). King Arjuna, who had been endowed with miraculous powers, took Rāvana prisoner, then released him, and afterwards carried away by force Ja-madagni's cow and calf. Paraśurāma, in revenge, after a terrible battle, and the defeat of the king's army, cut off Arjuna's arms and head, and recovered the cow and calf. When his father was informed of the king's death, he said to Paraśurāma: “Rāma, Rāma, thou hast com-mitted sin, in that thou hast causelessly slain the lord of men, who is composed of all the deities.²⁴³ It is by longsuffering that we, the Brāh-mans, have acquired respect; the same means whereby the deity, the instructor of all worlds, attained the highest rank of godhead. By

²⁴¹ It will be observed that there are some varieties of reading in the verse, as given in the two Brāhmaṇas. *Manda āsitha* in the S. P. Br. looks like a corruption of the *mām dūtāsitha* of the Aitareya. The story of Arjuna, Paraśurāma, and the Kshattri-yas is briefly told again in the Āśvamedhika-parvan, but without any new circumstances of particular interest.

²⁴² See above, p. 350, and note 146. None of the passages I have quoted from the Mahābhārata allude to Paraśurāma being an incarnation of Vishṇu.

²⁴³ Compare the passages quoted above in p. 300 from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, and from Manu.

patience the fortune of Brahmā shines like the splendour of the Sun. Hari, the lord, is speedily pleased with those who are patient. The murder of a king who has been formally inaugurated is worse than that of a Brāhman. Go and expiate thy sin by visiting holy places, with thy mind intent upon Achyuta (Vishṇu)" (ix. 15, 38. *Rāma Rāma mahābhāga bhavān pāpam akāraskṛt*²⁴⁴ | *abadhīd nara-devaṁ yat sarva-devamayaṁ vṛithā* | *vayaṁ hi brāhmanās tāta kshamayā 'rhanatāṁ gatāḥ* | *yayā loka-gurur devaḥ pārameshṭhyam ayāt padam* | *kshamayā rochate lakṣmīr Brāhmī saurī yathā prabhā* | *kshamināṁ āśu bhagavāns tushyate* | *Harir īśvaraḥ* | *rājno mūrdhābhishiktasya badho brahma-badhād guruḥ* | *tīrtha-saṁsevayā chāṁho jahy angāchyuta-chetanaḥ* |). On his return from this pilgrimage Rāma was desired by his father to kill his mother (on grounds similar to those stated in the account quoted above, p. 450, from the Mahābhārata), as well as his brothers, and executed the order; but at his intercession they were all restored to life. During his absence in the forest, his father Jamadagni was slain, and his head cut off, notwithstanding the entreaties of his wife, by the sons of Arjuna, in revenge for the loss of their own father. Paraśurāma, hearing his mother's outeries, hastened back to the hermitage, and laying hold of his axe, proceeded to avenge this outrage: ix. 16, 17. *Gatvā Māhishmatīm Rāmo brahma-ghna-vihata-śriyam* | *teshām sa śīrshabhiḥ rājan mudhye chakre mahāgirim* | 18. *Tad-raktena nadīm ghorām abrahmanya-bhoyāvahām* | *hetuṁ kṛtvā pūtri-badhaṁ kshattre 'mangala-kāriṇi* | . . . 20. *Pituh kāyru sandhāya śiraḥ ādāya barhishi* | *sarva-devamayaṁ devam ātmānam ayajad makhaiḥ* | 21. *Dadau prāchīm diśaṁ hotre brahmaṇ dukṣiṇāṁ diśam* | *adhvaryave pratichīm vai udgātre uttarām diśam* | 22. *Aṅgebhyo 'vāntara-diśaḥ Kāśyapāya cha madhyataḥ* | *āryāvarttam upadrashtre sadasyebhyas tataḥ param* | 23. *Tataś chāvabhṛitha-snāna-vihūtāśesha-kīlciśaḥ* | *Sarascatyām brahma-nadyāṁ reje vyabhrah īāṁśumān* | . . . 26. *Āste 'dyāpi Mahendrādrav nyastadandāḥ praśāntadhīḥ* | *upagīyamāna-charitāḥ siddha-gandharva-chāranaiḥ* | 27. *Evam Bhrīgushu vīśvātmā bhagavān Harir īśvaraḥ* | *avatīrya param bhāram bhuvō 'han bahuśo nṛipān* | "17. He went to the city of Māhishmatī, which had been robbed of its glory by those Brāhman-slayers, and raised in the midst of it a great mountain composed of their heads. With their blood he formed a dreadful river, which struck

²⁴⁴ So in the Bombay edition. Burnouf's text has the usual form *akārskṛt*.

fear into the impious ; justifying his action against the oppressive Kshattriyas by their murder of his father. . . . 20. He then united his father's head to his body, laying it on the sacred grass ; and offered a sacrifice to the divine Spirit, who is formed of all the deities. On this occasion he gave the eastern region of the earth to the hotṛi priest, the south to the brahman, the west to the adhvaryu, and the north to the udgāṭri. To others he gave the intermediate regions (south-east, south-west, etc.), to Kaśyapa the central ; on the upadrashṭṛi he bestowed Āryāvartta, and on the Sadasyas what was beyond. Having then cleansed all his impurity by the avabhṛitha ablution in the Sarasvatī, the river of Brahmā, he shone like the sun unobscured by clouds. . . . 26. Having laid aside his weapons, he sits to this day in tranquillity of mind on the mountain Mahendra, whilst his exploits are celebrated by the Siddhas, Gandharvas, and Chāranas. Thus did the universal Spirit, the divine lord, Hari, become incarnate in the Bhr̥gu, and destroy numerous kings who were a burden to the earth." It is singular that sin requiring expiation should be, as it is in this narrative, imputed to Paraśurāma, while he is at the same time declared to have been a portion of Viṣṇu, the supreme Spirit.

The story of Paraśurāma is also told in the Dronaparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 2427 ff., after those of many other kings and warriors, to illustrate the truth that death must sooner or later overtake even the most pious and distinguished personages. The earlier incidents are briefly narrated ; but some of the details, as the slaughter of the Kshattriyas, are dwelt on at greater length than in the other accounts. Some of the victims of the hero's vengeance are described as "haters of Brāhmans" (*brahma-dvishām*, verse 2431). The Kshattriyas who were slain are described as of various provinces, viz. Kāśmīras, Daradas, Kuntis, Kshudrakas, Mālavas, Angas, Vangas, Kalingas, Videhas, Tāmraliptakas, Raksho-vāhas, Vitihoṭras, Trigarttas, Mārttikāvatas, Sīvis, and other Rājanyas (*Sivīm anyāṃś cha rājanyān*, verse 2437). At verse 2443 the narrative proceeds : *Nirdasyum prithivīm kṛtvā śiṣṭeṣṭa-jana-sankulām | Kaśyapāya dadau Rāmo haya-medhe mahāmakhe | trisapta-vārān prithivīm kṛtvā nuḥkshattriyām prabhuh | iṣṭvā kratu-śatair rīro brāhmaṇebhyo hy amanyata | sapta-dvīpān rasumatīm Mārīcho 'grihṇata dvijah | Rāmam provācha "nirgachha rasudhāto mamājnyayā | sa Kaśyapasya*

*vachanāt protsārya saritāmpatim | ishupātair yudhām śreshṭhaḥ kurvan
brāhmaṇa-sāsanam | adhyūvasad giri-śreshṭham Mahendram parvato-
ttamam |* “2443. Having freed the earth from Dasyus (or robbers), and
filled her with respectable and desirable inhabitants, he gave her to
Kaśyapa at an aśvamedha. Having twenty-one times cleared the earth
of Kshattriyas, and offered hundreds of sacrifices, he destined the earth
for the Brāhmans. The Brāhman, the son of Marīchi (*i.e.* Kaśyapa),
received the earth, and then said to Rāma, ‘Depart out of her by my
command.’ Having repelled the ocean by his arrows, and established
the rule of the Brāhmans, Rāma dwelt on the mountain Mahendra.”

The Anuśāsanaparvan of the same poem has another “ancient story”
about Paraśurāma, which, like the preceding passage from the Bhāga-
vata Purāṇa, adverts to the pollution incurred by that warrior from his
numerous deeds of blood. It begins as follows: verse 3960. *Jāmad-
agnyena Rāmena tīra-roshānvītena vai | trissapta-kṛitraḥ pṛithivī kṛitā
niḥkshattriyā purā | tato jītvā mahīm kṛitsnām Rāmo rājiva-lochanah |
ājahūra kratum vīro brahma-kshattreṇa pūjitam | vāji-medham mahārāja
sarva-kāma-samanvitam | pāvanam sarva-bhūtānām tejo-dyuti-vivardha-
nam | vipāpnū sa cha tejasev tena kratu-phalena cha | naivātmano 'tha
laghutām Jāmadagnyo 'dhyaguchhata | sa tu kratu-vareṇeshṭrā mahātmā
dakṣiṇāvatā |* 3965. *Paprachhāgama-sampannān rishin devānś cha
Bhārgarah |* “*pāvanam yat param nrīṇām ugre karmanī varttatām |
tad uchyatām mahābhāgāḥ*” *iti jāta-gṛiṇo 'brauīt | ity uktāḥ veda-
sāstra-jnās tam ūchus te maharshayah |* “*Rāma viprah satkriyantām
veda-prāmānya-darśanāt | bhūyaścha viprarshi-gaṇāḥ prasṭavyāḥ pāva-
nam prati | te yad brūyur mahāprājñās tach chaiva samudāchura |*
“3960. Rāma, son of Jamadagni, having thrice seven times cleared
the world of Kshattriyas, and conquered the whole earth, performed
the horse-sacrifice, venerated by Brāhmans and Kshattriyas, which
confers all objects of desire, which cleanses all creatures, and augments
power and lustre; and became thereby sinless and glorious. He did
not, however, feel relieved in his mind, but after offering the most
excellent of sacrifices, at which presents were bestowed, he (3965) en-
quired of the rishis skilled in the scriptures, and of the gods, what was
that which most perfectly cleansed those men who had committed
deeds of violence; for he felt compunction for what he had done. The
rishis skilled in the Vedas and Sāstras replied, ‘Let the Brāhmans be

the objects of your liberality, as the authority of the Vedas requires; let the Brāhman-rishis be further consulted in regard to the means of lustration; and do whatever these wise men may enjoin.'” Paraśurāma accordingly consulted Vasiṣṭha, Agastya, and Kaśyapa. They replied that a sinner was cleansed by bestowing cows, land, and other property, and especially gold, the purifying power of which was very great. “Those who bestow it, bestow the gods,” a proposition which is thus compendiously proved: “for Agni comprehends all the gods; and gold is of the essence of Agni” (verse 3987. *Devatās te prayachhanti ye suvarṇaṁ dadaty atha | Agnir hi devatāḥ sarvāḥ suvarṇaṁ cha tadātmakam*). In regard to the origin of this precious metal, Vasiṣṭha tells a very long story, which he had heard Prajāpati relate, how it was born by the goddess Gangā to Agni, by whom she had been impregnated, and was thus the son of that god. “Thus was gold born the offspring of Jātavedas (Agni). That which is produced in Jambūnada is the best, and a fit ornament even for the gods. It is called the chief of gems and of ornaments, the most pure of all pure things, the most auspicious of all auspicious objects; and one with the divine Agni, the lord Prajāpati” (verse 4099. *Evaṁ suvarṇam utpannam apatyāṁ Jātavedasaḥ | tatra Jambūnadaṁ śreṣṭhaṁ devānām api bhūṣaṇam | 4001. Ratnānām uttamaṁ ratnam bhūṣaṇānām tathottamaṁ | pavitraṁ cha pavitrāṇām maṅgalānām cha maṅgalaṁ | yat suvarṇaṁ sa bhugarāṁ Agnir īśaḥ prajāpatiḥ |*). It must be highly consolatory for those who are disposed to be liberal to the Brāhman, to be assured that the gold which they bestow has such a high mystical, as well as current, exchangeable value. “Paraśurāma,” the story concludes, “after being thus addressed by Vasiṣṭha, gave gold to the Brāhman, and was freed from sin” (verse 4183. *Ity uktaḥ sa Vasiṣṭhena Jāmadagnyaḥ pratāpavān | dadau suvarṇaṁ viprebhyaḥ vyamuḥyata cha kilviṣāt*).

It is interesting to remark how the different distinctive principles of Indian religion and sentiment severally assert themselves in turn, and thus, occasionally, come into conflict with each other, as in the story of Paraśurāma. The primary object of this legend is no doubt to illustrate the vengeance which inevitably overtakes all those who violate the sacredness of the Brāhmanical prerogative, and the meritorious character of those who act as its defenders. No sooner, however, is this end ac-

complished, and the impious foes of the priesthood swept away again and again from the face of the earth, than a revulsion of feeling takes place, and the higher principles of the sacredness of life, and of the blessedness of mercy, come forward to claim recognition; and a deep sense of the pollution of bloodshed calls aloud for atonement. In the Bhāgavata, as we have seen, Jamadagni imputes it as a crime to the avenger of the Brāhmans that he had slain a king; and even goes the length of declaring that in doing so he had incurred greater guilt than if he had murdered a Brāhman.

In the same book of the Mahābhārata, verses 7163 ff., an extravagant description is given of the prerogatives and powers of the Brāhmans; and Arjuna is again brought forward, in verses 7187 ff., as at first scouting their pretensions, but as ultimately conceding their unapproachable superiority: "The magnificent and mighty Kārttavīrya (Arjuna), possessing a thousand arms, was lord of this whole world, living in Māhishmatī. This Haihaya of unquestioned valour ruled over the whole sea-girt earth, with its oceans and continents" (verse 7187. *Sahasra-bhuja-bhṛit śrīmān Kārttavīryo 'bhavat prabhuh | asya lokasya sarcasya Māhishmatyām mahābalaḥ | sa tu ratnā-karavatiṁ sadvīpām sāgarāmbaram | śāsāsa prithivīm sarvām Haihayah satya-vikramah*). He obtained boons from the muni Dattātreyā, a thousand arms whenever he should go into battle, power to make the conquest of the whole earth, a disposition to rule it with justice, and the promise of instruction from the virtuous in the event of his going astray. 7196. *Tataḥ sa ratham āsthāya jvalanārka-samadyutiṁ | abrahūḍ vīryyasammohāt "ko nv asti sadṛśo mama | dhairyye vīryye gaṣaḥ-sauryye vikramenaujasā 'pi vā" | tad-vākyānte 'ntarīkṣhe vai vāg uvāchāśurirīṇi | "na tram mūḍha vijānīṣhe brāhmaṇān kṣhattriyaḍ varam | sahito brāhmaṇeneha kṣhattriyaḥ śāsti vai prajāḥ" | Arjuna uvācha | kuryām bhūtāni tuṣṭo 'haṁ kruddho nāśān tathā naye | karmaṇā manasā vāchā na matto 'sti varo drijaḥ | 7200. Pārvo brahmottaro vādo dvitīyaḥ kṣhattriyaḥ | trayoktau hetu-yuktau tau viśeṣas tatra drīṣyate | brāhmaṇāḥ saṁśrītāḥ kṣhattraṁ na kṣhattraṁ brāhmaṇāśritam | śrītāḥ brahmopadhāḥ viprāḥ khādanti kṣhattriyaṁ bhuci | kṣhattriyeṣu āśrito dharmah prajānām paripālunam | kṣhattrād ṛttir brāhmaṇānām taiḥ katham brāhmaṇo varah | sarva-bhū-pradhānāns tām bhaikṣa-ṛittin ahaṁ sadā | ātma-sambhūitān viprān*

sthūpayāmy ātmano vaśe | kathitaṁ hy anayā satyam gāyatrīyā kanyayū divi | vijeshyāmy avasān sarvān brāhmaṇāṁś charma-vāsasaḥ | 7205. *Nā cha māṁ chārayed rāshṭrāt trishu lokeshu kaśchana | devo vā mānusho vā 'pi tasmāj jyeshtho dvijād aham | atha brahmottaraṁ lokaṁ karishye kshattriyottaram | na hi me saṁyuge kaśchit sodhum utsahate balam | Arjunasya vachaḥ śrutvā vitrastā 'bhūd niśācharī | athainam antarikshasthas tato Vāyur abhāshata | “ tyajainaṁ kaluṣhaṁ bhāvam brāhmaṇebhyo namaskuru | eteṣhāṁ kurvataḥ pāpāṁ rāshṭra-kshobho bhaviṣhyati | atha vā tvāṁ mahāpāla śamayishyanti vai dvijāḥ | nirasishyanti te rāshṭrād hatotsāham mahābalāḥ ” |* 7210. *Taṁ rājā “ kas tvam ” ity āha tatas tum prāha Mūrutaḥ | “ Vāyur vai deva-dūto 'smi hitaṁ tvāṁ prabravīmy aham ” | Arjunaḥ uvācha | “ aho trayā 'dya vipreshu bhaktirāgaḥ pradarśitaḥ | yādriṣaṁ prithivī-bhūtaṁ tādriṣaṁ brūhi vai dvijam | vāyor vā sadriṣaṁ kinchid brūhi tvam brāhmaṇottamam | apāṁ vai sadriṣo vahnīḥ sūryasya nabhaso 'pi vā |* “ Then ascending his chariot glorious as the resplendent sun, he exclaimed in the intoxication of his prowess, ‘ Who is like me in fortitude, courage, fame, heroism, energy, and vigour ? ’ At the end of this speech a bodiless voice in the sky addressed him : ‘ Thou knowest not, o fool, that a Brāhman is better than a Kshattriya. It is with the help of the Brāhman that the Kshattriya rules his subjects.’ Arjuna answers : ‘ If I am pleased, I can create, or, if displeased, annihilate, living beings ; and no Brāhman is superior to me in act, thought, or word. The first proposition is that the Brāhmans are superior ; the second that the Kshattriyas are superior ; both of these thou hast stated with their grounds, but there is a difference between them (in point of force). The Brāhmans are dependant on the Kshattriyas, and not the Kshattriyas on the Brāhmans ; and the Kshattriyas are eaten up by the Brāhmans, who wait upon them, and only make the Vedas a pretence. Justice, the protection of the people, has its seat in the Kshattriyas. From them the Brāhmans derive their livelihood : how then can the latter be superior ? I always keep in subjection to myself those Brāhmans, the chief of all beings, who subsist on alms, and who have a high opinion of themselves. For truth was spoken by that female the Gāyatrī in the sky. I shall subdue all those unruly Brāhmans clad in hides. 7200. No one in the three worlds, god or man, can hurl me from my royal authority ; wherefore I am

superior to any Brāhman. Now shall I turn the world in which Brāhman have the upper hand into a place where Kshattriyas shall have the upper hand: for no one dares to encounter my force in battle.' Hearing this speech of Arjuna, the female roving in the night became alarmed. Then Vāyu, hovering in the air, said to Arjuna: 'Abandon this sinful disposition, and do obeisance to the Brāhman. If thou shalt do them wrong, thy kingdom shall be convulsed. They will subdue thee: those powerful men will humble thee, and expel thee from thy country.' The king asks him, 'Who art thou?' Vāyu replies, 'I am Vāyu, the messenger of the gods, and tell thee what is for thy benefit.' Arjuna rejoins, 'Oh, thou displayest to-day a great warmth of devotion to the Brāhman. But say that a Brāhman is like (any other) earth-born creature. Or say that this most excellent Brāhman is something like the wind. But fire is like the waters, or the sun, or the sky.'"²⁴⁵ Vāyu, however, goes on to answer this spirited banter by adducing various instances in which the superiority or terrible power of the Brāhman had been manifested: 7124. *Tyaktvā mahitram bhūmis tu sparddhayā 'nga-nṛipasya ha | nāsaṁ jagāma tām vipro yashatambhayata Kāśyapaḥ* | "The earth, being offended with king Anga, had abandoned her form and become destroyed: but the Brāhman Kāśyapa supported her." This is afterwards told more at length, verse 7232: *Imām bhūmīm dvijātibhyo ditsur vai dakṣiṇām purā | Aṅgo nāma nṛipo rājāṁs tatas' chintām mahi yayau | "dhāraṇīm sarva-bhūtānām ayam prāpya varo nṛipaḥ | katham ichhati mām dātūn dvijebhyo Brahmanāḥ sutām | sā 'haṁ tyaktvā gamishyāmi bhūmitram Brahmanāḥ padam | ayaṁ sa-rāshṭro nṛipatir mā bhād "* iti tato 'gamat | 7235. *Tatas tām Kāśyapo dṛishṭvā vrajantīm prithivīm tadā | praviveśa mahīm sadyo muktvā "tmānaṁ samāhitaḥ | riddhā sā sarvato jajñe triṇaushadhi-saṁnamitā | . . . 7258. Athāgāmya mahārāja na-naskṛitya cha Kāśyapam | prithivī Kāśyapī jajñe sutā tasya mahātmanāḥ | eṣha rājann idṛiśo vai brāhmanāḥ Kāśyapo 'bhavat | anyam prabrūhi vā tuām cha Kāśyapāt kshattriyaṁ varam* | "King Anga wished to bestow this earth on the Brāhman as a sacrificial fee. The earth then reflected, 'How does this excellent king, after having obtained me, the daughter of Brahmā, and the supporter of all creatures, desire to give

²⁴⁵ The drift of the last line is not very clear, unless it be a reply by anticipation to line 225, which will be found a little further on.

me to the Brāhmins? I shall abandon my earthly form, and depart to the world of Brahmā. Let this king be without any realm.' Accordingly she departed. 7235. Beholding her going away, Kaśyapa, sunk in contemplation, entered into her, leaving his own body. She then became replenished, and covered with grass and plants, etc., etc. . . . 7238. She afterwards came and did obeisance to Kaśyapa, and became his daughter. Such was the Brāhman Kaśyapa: Declare, on your part, any Kshattriya who has been superior to him."

Further illustrations of the tremendous power of the Brāhmins are the following :

7215. *Apibat tejasā hy āpaḥ srayam evāngirāḥ purā | sa tāḥ pīban kṣhīram iva nātripyata mahāmanūḥ | apūrayad mahaughena mahīm sarvām cha pārthiva | tasminn ahaṁ cha kruddhe vai jagat tyaktvā tato gataḥ | vyatishṭham agnihotre cha chīram Angiraso bhayāt | atha śaptaś cha bhagavān Gautamena Purandaraḥ | Ahalyām kāmāyāno vai dharmaṁrtham cha na hīṁsitaḥ | yathā samudro nṛpate pūrṇo mṛishṭaś cha vāriṇā | brāhmaṇair abhiśaptaḥ san babhūva lavaṇodakāḥ | . . . 7223. Dandakānām mahad rājyam brāhmaṇena vināśitam | Tālajangham mahākshattram Aurveṇaikena nāśitam | . . . 7225. Agniṁ traṁ yajase nityam kasmād brāhmaṇam Arjuna | sa hi sarvasya lokasya havya-vāt kiṁ na vetsyam | . . . 7241. Bhadrā Somasya duhitā rūpeṇa paramā matā | yasyās tulyam patiṁ Somam Utathyaṁ samapaśyata | sū cha tīvrām tapas tepe mahābhāgā yaśasvinī | Utathyārthe tu chārvāṅgī paramā niyamam āsthitā | tataḥ āhūya sotathyaṁ dudār Atrir yaśasvinīm | bhāryyārthe sa tu jagrāha vidhivad bhūri-dakṣiṇaḥ | tāṁ tv akāmayata śrīmān Varuṇaḥ pūrvam eva ha | sa-chāganya vanaprasthāṁ Yamunāyām jahāra tām | 7245. Jaleśvaras tu hṛitvā tām anayat svapuram prati .| paramādbhuta-sankūśam shat-sahasra-śataṁ hradam | na hi ramyatarām kinchit tasmād anyat purottamam | prāsādair apsarobhīś cha divyair kāmair cha śobhitam | tatra devas tayā sārddham reme rājan jaleśvaraḥ ! athākhyātum Utathyāya tataḥ patny-avumarddanam | tach chhṛtvā Nāradaḥ sarvam Utathyo Nāradaṁ tadā | provācha "gachha brūhi traṁ Varuṇam parushaṁ vachuḥ | madvākyād muncha me bhāryyam kasmād tām hṛitavān asi | lokapālo 'si lokānām na lokasya vilumpakaḥ | Somena dattā me bhāryyā tvayā chāpahrītā 'dya vai" | . . . 7251. Iti śrūtvā vachas tasya tatas tāṁ Varuṇo 'bravīt | "mamaishā supriyā bhūrur nainām utsrashtum utsahe" | ity ukto Varuṇenātha Nā-*

*raduḥ prāpya vai munim | Utathyam abravīd vākyaṁ nātikhṛṣhta-manāḥ
iva | “gale grīhītvā kshipto ’smi Varuṇena mahāmune | na prayachhati
te bhāryyāṁ yat te kāryyaṁ kurushva tat” | Nāradaśya vacchaḥ śrutvā
kruddhaḥ prājvalad Angirāḥ | 7255. Apibat tejasā vāri vishtabhya sa
mahātapaḥ | pīyamāne tu sorvasmiṁś toyē vai salileśvaraḥ | suhrīdbhiḥ
kshobhyamāno vai nairāmunchata tām tadā | tataḥ kruddho ’bravīd bhū-
mim Utathyo brāhmaṇottamāḥ | darśayasva chhalam bhadre shaṭ-sahasra-
śataṁ braḍam | tatas tad īriṇaṁ jātaṁ samudraś chāvasarpitaḥ | tasmād
deśān nadīm chaiva provāchāsau dvijottamaḥ | “adriśyā gachha bhīru
tvāṁ Sarasvati marūn prati | apunyaḥ esha bhavatu deśas tyoktas trayā
śubhe” | tasmin saṁśoshite deśe Bhadrām ādāya vāripaḥ | 7260. Adadāt
śaraṇaṁ gatvā bhāryyāṁ Angiraśāya vai | pratigrīhya tu tām bhāryyāṁ
Utathyoḥ sumanā ’bhavat | mumocha cha jagad duḥkhād Varuṇaṁ chaiva
Haihaya | 7262. Mamaishā tapasā prōptā krośatas te jalādhipa |
7263. . . . esha rājonn īdriśo vai Utathyo brāhmaṇottamaḥ | bravīmy
aḥam brūhi vā tvam Utathyāt kshattriyam varam |*

“Angiras, too, himself formerly drank up the waters by his own might. Drinking them up like milk he was not satisfied: and filled the whole earth with a great flood. When he was thus wroth, I abandoned the world and departed, and dwelt for a long time in the agnihotra. The divine Purandara (Indra), who had a passion for Ahalyā, was cursed by (her husband) Gautama; but, from motives of religion, he was not injured.²⁴⁶ The sea, which is filled and purified by water, being cursed by the Brāhmans, became salt.” 7223. The great king-

²⁴⁶ See above pp. 121 and 310; and also pp. 107-113. In this same Anuśāsana Parva, verses 2262 ff., there is found another story (told to illustrate the frailty of the female sex) of Indra being enamoured of Ruchi, the wife of the rishi Devaśarma, and of the method which that sage's disciple, Vipula, (to whose care his preceptor's wife had been entrusted during her husband's absence,) devised to preserve his charge from being corrupted by the licentious immortal who was in the habit of assuming manifold Protean disguises in order to carry out his unworthy designs, and to save the female from being “licked up by the king of the gods, as a mischievous dog licks up the butter deposited at the sacrifice” (*Yathā Ruchiṁ nūraliked devendro Bhṛigu-sattama | Iratīr upakite nyastaṁ kaviḥ śreva durātmanā*), a respectful comparison, truly, to be applied to the chief of the Indian pantheon! The plan which Vipula adopted to save the virtue of his master's wife against her will was to take possession of her body with his own spirit, and to restrain her movements by the force of Yoga, and compel her to say the contrary of what she desired. The story ends by his re-entering his own body, reproaching Indra with his disgraceful behaviour, and compelling him to retire abashed.

dom of the Dandakas was overthrown by a Brāhman; and the great Kshattriya family of the Tālajanghas was destroyed by Aurva alone. 7225. And why dost thou, o Arjuna, worship Agni (who is) a Brāhman? for knowest thou not that he bears the oblations of the whole world?" The story of Utathya, of the race of Angiras, is afterwards told: "7241. Bhadrā was the daughter of Soma, and considered to be a person of great beauty. Soma regarded Utathya as a fitting husband for her. She practised severe austerities in order to gain him. Atri (the father of Soma, according to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, Wilson, 1st ed. p. 392) then sent for Utathya, and gave her to him, and he married her in due form, presenting large gifts. 7245. The god Varuṇa, however, who had formerly been enamoured of her, came and carried her off from the abode of the hermit, who was living on the banks of the Yamunā, and took her to his own city, to a very wonderful lake of six hundred thousand (yojanas). No city was more delightful than that, adorned as it was by palaces and apsaras, and rich in celestial objects of enjoyment. There the god enjoyed her society. His wife's dishonour being made known to Utathya by Nārada, he requested the latter to go and deliver a severe message to Varuṇa: 'I command thee to let my wife go, who was given to me by Soma; wherefore hast thou carried her away? Thou art a guardian of the world, not a robber.' . . . 7251. Varuṇa answered, 'She is my beloved; I cannot bear to give her up.' Nārada, in no very gratified humour, reported this answer to Utathya, and said, 'Varuṇa took me by the throat, and cast me out. He will not give up thy wife. Take whatever measures thou esteemest proper.' Utathya was greatly incensed (7255), and stopped up and drank all the sea. Still Varuṇa, though urged by his friends, would not give up the female. Utathya then desired the earth to try some other stratagem; and the lake above described was turned into a salt wilderness, and the ocean swept away. The saint then addressed himself to the countries and to the river: 'Sarasvatī, disappear into the deserts; and let this land, deserted by thee, become impure.' After the country had become dried up, Varuṇa submitted himself to Utathya, and brought back Bhadrā. The sage was pleased to get his wife, and released both the world and Varuṇa from their sufferings. . . . He said to the latter (7262) 'This, my wife, was gained by my austerities in spite of thy remonstrances.' 7263. . . . 'Such, o king, I say, was

the Brāhman Utathya; tell me of any Kshattriya superior to him.'"

A story is next told (verses 7265 ff.) of the gods being conquered by the Asuras or Dānavas, deprived of all oblations, and stripped of their dignity, and of their coming to earth, where they saw the sage Agastya, and applied to him for protection. The succour they implored was granted to them by the sage, who scorched the Dānavas, expelled them from heaven and earth, and made them fly to the south. Thus were the gods reinstated in their dominion.

We have then, verses 7280-7290, the following legend of Vaśishṭha: The Ādityas were performing a sacrifice, bearing Vaśishṭha in their remembrance, when they were attacked by the Dānavas, called Khalins, who came in tens of thousands to slay them:

Verse 7284. *Tatas tair ardditāḥ devāḥ śaraṇaṁ Vāsavaṁ yayuḥ | sa cha tair vyathitāḥ Sakro Vaśishṭhaṁ śaraṇaṁ yayau | tato 'bhayaṁ dadau tebhyo Vaśishṭho bhagarān rishih | tadā tān duḥkhitān jñātrā āṇṛiśaṁsya-paro munih | ayatnenādahat sarvān Kḥhalinaḥ svena tejasā |* . . . 7289. *Evaṁ sendrāḥ Vaśishṭhena rakshitās tridivaukasah | Brahma-datta-varāś chaiva hatāḥ daityāḥ mahātmanā | etat karma Vaśishṭhasya kuthitaṁ hi mayā 'nagha | bravīmy aham brūhi vā tvam Vaśishṭhāt kshattriyaṁ varam |*

"The gods being distressed by them, resorted to Indra; and he too, being harassed by them, went to Vaśishṭha for help. This reverend and benevolent sage gave them all his protection; and being aware of their distress, without any exertion, burnt up all the Dānavas . . . 7289. Thus were the gods, including Indra, preserved by Vaśishṭha, and the Daityas, even although they had obtained a boon from Brahmā, were slain. Such was the exploit of Vaśishṭha: can you tell me of any Kshattriya who was superior to him?"

A further tale is told of the prowess of the sage Atri, who interposed to deliver the gods and restore light to the celestial luminaries:

Verse 7292. *Ghore tamasy ayudhyanta sahitaḥ deva-dānavāḥ | avidhyata śarais tottra Śarabhānuḥ Soma-bhāskarau | atha te tomasā grastāḥ viha-nyante sma dānavaiḥ | devāḥ nṛpati-śārdūla sahaiva Balibhis tadā | asurair badhyamānās te kṣhina-prānāḥ divaukasah | apaśyanta tapasyan-tam Atriṁ vipraṁ tapodhanam |* . . . 7297. *Te 'bruvāmś "chandramāḥ bhava | timira-ghnaś cha savitā dasyu-hantā cha no bhava" | evam uktas tadā 'trir vai tamo-nud abhavat śaśi | apaśyat saumya-bhāvūch cha soma-*

*vat-priya-darśanaḥ | drishtvā nātiprabhaṁ somaṁ tathā sūryaṁ cha pār-
thiva | prakāśam akarod Atris tapasā svena saṁyuge | 7300. Jagad
vitimirāṁ chāpi prakāśam akarot tadā | vyajayat śatru-saṁghāṁś cha
devānāṁ svena tejasā | . . . 7303. Dvijenāgni-dvitiyena japatā charma-
rūpasā | phala-bhākṣheṇa rājarshe paśya karmāttrīṇā kṛitam | . . .
7304. . . . brūhi vā tram Atritaḥ kshattriyaṁ varam |*

“The gods and Dānavas fought together in dreadful darkness; when Svarbhānu pierced with his arrows the sun and moon. Enveloped in gloom the gods were slaughtered by the Dānavas, together with the Balis. Being thus slain and exhausted, the celestials beheld the Brāhman Atri employed in austerities;” and invoked his aid in their extremity. He asked what he should do. They reply, verse 2297: “‘Become the moon, and the gloom-dispelling sun, the slayer of the Dasyus.’ Atri then became the gloom-dispelling moon, and in his character as such looked beautiful as Soma. Perceiving the sun and moon to be shorn of their brightness, Atri threw light upon the conflict, (7300) freed the world from darkness, by the power of his austere-fervour, and vanquished the enemies of the gods. . . . 7303. Behold the deed done by Atri, the Brāhman, attended by Agni, the mutterer of prayers, clad in a skin, and living upon fruits. . . . 7304. ‘Tell me of any Kshattriya superior to Atri.’”

This story is founded on some verses of the Rig-veda, v. 40, 5 :

*Yat tvā sūryya Svarbhānuḥ tamasā 'vidhyad āsuraḥ | akshetra-vid yathā
mudgho bhuranāni atidhayaḥ | 6. Svarbhānur adha yad Indra māyāḥ avo
divo varttamānāḥ avāhan | gūḷhaṁ sūryyaṁ tamasā 'pavratena turīyena
brahmaṇā 'vindat Atriḥ | 8. Grāṇo brahmā yujujānaḥ saparyyan kīrīṇā
devān namasopaśikṣan | Atriḥ sūryasya divi chakṣur ādhāt Svarbhānur
apa māyāḥ aghukṣat | 9. Yaṁ vai sūryyaṁ Svarbhānuḥ tamasā 'vidhyad
āsuraḥ | Atrayas tam anv avindan nahi anye asakṇvan |*

“When Svarbhānu of the Asura race pierced thee, o Sun, with darkness, all worlds appeared like a man who is bewildered in a region which he does not know. 6. When, Indra, thou didst sweep away the magical arts of Svarbhānu, which were operating beneath the sky, Atri discovered by the fourth text the Sun, which had been hidden by the hostile darkness. 8. Applying the (soma-crushing) stones, performing worship, serving the gods with reverence and praise, the priest Atri placed the eye of the Sun in the sky, and dispelled the illusions of

Svarbhānu. 9. The Atris discovered the Sun which Svarbhānu had pierced with darkness. No others could."

We have next a curious legend about the sage Chyavana, of the race of Bhṛigu :

7306. *Āśvinoḥ pratisaṁśrutya Chyavanaḥ Pākaśūsanam | provācha sahito devaiḥ "somapāvaśvinau kuru" | Indraḥ uvācha | "asmābhir ninditāv etau bhavetām somapau katham | devair na sammitāv etau tasmād maivam vadasva naḥ | Āśvibhyām saha nechhāmaḥ somam pātum mahāvratu | yad anyad vakshyase vipra tat karishyāma te vacaḥ"* | *Chyavanaḥ uvācha | "pibetām Āśvinau somam bhavadbhiḥ sahitā ubhau | ubhāv etāv api surau sūryyo-puttrau sureśvara | 7310. Kriyatām mad-vacho devāḥ yathā vai samudāhṛitam | etad vaḥ kurvātām śreyo bhaved naitad akurvātām"* | *Indraḥ uvācha | "Āśvibhyām saha somaḥ vai na pāsyāmi dvijottama | pibantv anye yathākāmaḥ nāham pātum ihotsahe"* | *Chyavanaḥ uvācha | "na chet karishyasi vacho mayoktam balu-sūdana | mayā pramathitāḥ sadyaḥ somam pāsyasi vai makhe"* | *tataḥ karma samārabdham hitōya sahasā 'śvinoḥ | Chyavanena tato mantrair abhībhūtāḥ surā 'bhavan | tat tu karma samārabdham dṛishṭrendraḥ krodha-mūrchhitāḥ | udyamya vipulāḥ śailoḥ Chyavanaḥ samupādruvat | 7315. Tuthā vajreṇa bhagavān amarśhākula-lochanaḥ | tam āpatantaḥ dṛishṭvaiva Chyavanas tapasā 'nvitoḥ | abhīḥ siktā 'stumbhayat tāḥ sa-vajraḥ saha-parvatam | athendrasya mahāghoraḥ so 'srijat śūtrum eva hi | Mayā nāmāhuti-nayāḥ vyūditāsyam mahāmuniḥ | 7319. Jihvā-mūlāsthitās tasya sarve devāḥ sa-vāsavāḥ | timer āsyam anupraptāḥ yathā matsyāḥ mahār-nave | te sammantrya tato deva Madasyāsya samāpagāḥ | abruvan sahitāḥ Śakram prañomāsmāi dvijātaye | Āśvibhyām saha somaḥ cha pibāma vigata-jvarāḥ | tataḥ sa pranataḥ Śakraś chakāra Chyavanasya tat | Chyavanaḥ kṛitavān etāv Āśvinau soma-pāyinau | tataḥ pratyāharat karma Madam cha vyabhajad muniḥ |*

"Having given a promise to that effect, Chyavana applied, along with the other gods, to Indra, to allow the Āśvins to partake in the soma juice. Indra answered, 'How can they become drinkers of the soma, seeing they are reviled by us, and are not on an equality with the gods? We do not wish to drink soma in their company; but we shall accede to your wishes in any other respect.' Chyavana repeats his request, and urges that the Āśvins also are gods, and the offspring of the Sun. 7310. He adds that it will be well for the gods if they accede to this

demand, and ill if they do not. Indra rejoins that the other gods may drink with the Āśvins if they please, but he cannot bring himself to do it. Chyavana retorts that if he does not, he shall be chastised by the sage, and made to drink soma (with them) at the sacrifice. A ceremony was then instantly begun by Chyavana for the benefit of the Āśvins; and the gods were vanquished by sacred texts. Indra, seeing this rite commenced, became incensed, uplifted a vast mountain (7315), and rushed with his thunderbolt, and with angry eyes, on Chyavana. The sage, however, sprinkling him with water, arrested him with his mountain and thunderbolt. Chyavana then created a fearful open-mouthed monster, called Mada, formed of the substance of the oblation," who is further described as having teeth and grinders of portentous length, and jaws, one of which enclosed the earth and the other the sky: and the gods, including Indra, are said (7319), "to have been at the root of his tongue [ready to be devoured] like fishes in the mouth of a sea monster. Finding themselves in his predicament, the gods took counsel and said to Indra, 'Make salutation to Chyavana, and let us drink soma along with the Āśvins, and so escape from our sufferings.' Indra then, making obeisance, granted the demand of Chyavana, who was thus the cause of the Āśvins becoming drinkers of the soma. He then performed the ceremony, and clove Mada to pieces."

Does this legend mean that this rishi of the Bhrigu family was the first to introduce the Āśvins within the circle of the Arian worship?

Compare the passages from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa iv. 1, 5, 1 ff., and from the Vanaparvan of the M. Bh. verses 10316 ff. quoted in my "Contributions to a knowledge of the Vedic theogony and mythology," No. II., in the Journ. R. A. S., for 1866, pp 11 ff.; Ind. St. i. 188, and the Āśvamedhikā-parvan of the M. Bh., verses 249 ff., there referred to. The Āśvins are, in different passages of the Rig-veda, as iii. 58, 7, 9; viii. 8, 5; viii. 35, 7-10, invited to drink the soma-juice.

Vāyu relates to Arjuna yet one more instance of the irresistible power of the Brāhmans:

7327. *Madasyāsyam anuprāptāḥ yadā sendrāḥ divaukasaḥ | tadaiva Chyavaneneha hṛitā teshāṃ vasundharā | ubhau lokau hṛitau matvā te devāḥ duḥkṛitāḥ bhṛīṣam | śokārttāś cha mahātmāno Brahmāṇām śaraṇāṃ yayuḥ | devāḥ ūchuḥ | Madāsya-cyatisiktānām asmākāṃ loka-pūjita | Chyavanena hṛitā bhūmih Kapaiś chaiva divam prabho | Brahmā uvācha |*

7330. *Gachhadhvaṁ śaraṇaṁ viprān āsu sendrāḥ divaukasah | prasādya tām ubhau lokāv arāpsyatha yathā purā | te yayuḥ śaraṇaṁ viprān ūchus te “kān jayāmahe” | ity uktās te dvijān prāhur “jayateha Kapān” iti | “bhūgatān hi vijetāro vāyam” ity abruvan “dvijāḥ” | tataḥ karma samārabdham brāhmaṇaiḥ Kapa-nāśanam | tat śrutvā preskrito dūto brāhmaṇebhyo Dhanī Kapaiḥ | bhū-gatān brāhmaṇān āha Dhanī Kapa-vachō yathā | “bhavadbhiḥ sadṛśiḥ sarve Kapāḥ kim iha varttate | sarve vedavidāḥ prājñāḥ sarve cha kratu-yājinaḥ |* 7335. *Sarve satyavratās chaiva sarve tulyōḥ maharshubhiḥ | śrīś chaiva ramataiteshu dhārayanti śriyaṁ cha te | . . .* 7339. *Etaiś chānyaiś cha bahubhir gunair yuktān kathuṁ Kapān |* 7340. *Vijeshyatha nivarttadhvaṁ nirittānām śubhaṁ hi vaḥ” | Brāhmaṇāḥ ūchuḥ | Kapān vāyaṁ vijeshyāmo ye devās te vāyaṁ smṛitāḥ | tasmād badhyāḥ Kapā ’smākam Dhanin yāhi yathāgatam | Dhanī gatvā Kapān āha “na no viprāḥ priyankarāḥ | grīhītvā ’strāṇy atho viprān Kapāḥ sarve samādravan | samudagra-dhvajān drishṭvā Kapān sarve dvijātayah | vya-ṛijan jvalitān agnīm Kapānām prāṇa-nāśanām | brahma-sṛishṭāḥ havyabhujāḥ Kapān hatvā sanātanaḥ | nabhasīva yothā ’bhrāṇi vyarājantu narādhipa | Hatvā vai dānavān devāḥ sarve sambhūya saṁ-yuge | tenābhyajānan hi tadā brāhmaṇair nihatān Kapān | athāyāmya mahātojāḥ Nārado ’kathayaḍ vibho | yothā hatvā mahābhāgais tejusā brāhmaṇaiḥ Kapāḥ | Nāradasya vachāḥ śrutvā prītāḥ sarve divaukasah | praśaśnasuḥ dvijānś chāpi brāhmaṇānś cha yaśasvināḥ |*

“When the gods, including Indra, were enclosed within the mouth of Mada, the earth was taken from them by Chyavana. The gods then considering that they had lost both worlds, in their distress resorted to Brahmā, and said, ‘Since we have been swallowed up in the mouth of Mada, the earth has been taken from us by Chyavana, and the heaven by the Kapas.’ Brahmā answered, ‘Go speedily, ye gods, with Indra, to the Brāhmans for help. After propitiating them ye shall regain both worlds.’ They did so, and the Brāhmans, after ascertaining that the gods would themselves deal with those of their enemies who were on earth, began a ceremony for the destruction of the Kapas. The Kapas upon this sent a messenger to the Brāhmans, to say that they themselves were all, like them, skilled in the Vedas, learned, and offerers of sacrifice, all pure in their observances, and all resembling great rishis, etc., etc. How then should the Brāhmans be able to conquer them? It would be more for their interest to desist from the attempt. The Brāhmans,

however, would not be persuaded; and when, in consequence, the Kapas assailed them, they hurled forth fires by which the Kapas were destroyed. The gods themselves conquered the Dānavas, and learning from Nārada what the illustrious Brāhmins had effected, they sang their praises.”²⁴⁷

Hearing of all these testimonies to the terrible might of the Brāhmins, Arjuna at length gives in, saying :

7350. *Jivāmy aham brāhmaṇārthaṁ sarvathā satatam prabho | brahmanyō brāhmaṇebhyaś cha praṇamāmi cha nityaśaḥ | Dattātreya-prasādāḥ cha mayā prāptam idam balam | loke cha puramā kīrttir dharmas cha charito mahān | aho brāhmaṇa-karmāṇi mayā Mūruta tattvataḥ | trayā proktāni kārtsnyena śrutāni prayatena cha | Vāyur uvācha | brāhmaṇān kṣāṭtra-dharmeṇa pālayasvendraiyāni cha | Bhṛigubhyas te bhayaṁ ghoram tat tu kālād bharishyati |*

“I live altogether and always for the sake of the Brāhmins. I am devoted to the Brāhmins, and do obeisance to them continually. And it is through the favour of Dattātreya (a Brāhman) that I have obtained all this power and high renown, and that I have practised righteousness. Thou hast declared to me truly all the acts of the Brāhmins, and I have listened intently.” Vāyu then says to him : “Protect the Brāhmins, fulfilling a Kshattriya’s function ; and restrain your senses. A dreadful cause of apprehension impends over you from the Bhṛigus, but it will only take effect after some time.” This last remark may have been introduced to bring this story into harmony with the other legend about the destruction of Arjuna and the Kshattriyas.

The narrative, which has just been quoted, is, as I have already stated, preceded by a panegyric of some length pronounced by Bhīṣma on the Brāhmins (verses 7163-7184), of which the following are specimens :

7163. *Brāhmaṇānām paribhavaḥ sādāyed api devatāḥ |* 7164. *Te hi lokān imān sarvān dhārayanti manīṣiṇaḥ |* 7175. *Chandane mala-paṅkcha bhōjane ’bhōjane samāḥ | vāso yeshām dukūlaṁ cha śāna-kṣauṁajināni cha |* 7177. *Adairam daivataṁ kuryur daivataṁ vā ’py adairatam | lokān anyān śṛjeyus te lokapālāṁś cha kopitāḥ |* 7179. *Devānām api ye devāḥ kāraṇāṁ kāraṇasya cha |* 7181. *Avidvān brāhmaṇo devaḥ . . . | vidvān bhūyas tato devaḥ pūrṇa-sāgara-sannibhaḥ |*

“The prowess of the Brāhmins can destroy even the gods. 7164.

²⁴⁷ This translation is a good deal condensed.

Those wise beings uphold all these worlds. 7175. To them it is indifferent whether they are perfumed with sandal wood or deformed with mire, whether they eat or fast, whether they are clad in silk, or in sackcloth or skins. 7177. They can turn what is not divine into what is divine, and the converse; and can in their anger create other worlds with their guardians. 7179. They are the gods of the gods; and the cause of the cause. 7181. An ignorant Brāhman is a god, whilst a learned Brāhman is yet more a god, like the full ocean." (Compare the similar eulogies in p. 130, above.)

In the Anuśāsanaparvan, sections 52 ff., we have the story of Paraśurāma, in connection with that of Viśvāmitra, yet once more handled. Yudhishtira says he is very curious to know something more about these two personages:

2718. *Katham esha samutpanno Rāmaḥ satya-parākramaḥ | katham brahmarshi-vaṁśo 'yaṁ kshattrā-dharmā vyajāyata | tad asya sambhavaṁ rājan nikhilenānukirttaya | Kauśikāch cha katham vaṁśāt kshattrād vai brāhmaṇo 'bhavat | aho prabhūvaḥ sumahān āsīt vai sumahātmanaḥ | Rāmasya cha nara-uyāghra Viśvāmitrasya chaiva hi | katham putirān atikramya teshāṁ napitrishv athābhavat | esha doshaḥ sūtān hitvā tat tvaṁ vyākhyātum arhasi |*

"How was this valiant Rāma, descended from the family of a Brāhman-rishi, born with the qualities of a Kshattriya? Tell me the whole story: and how did a Brāhman spring from the Kshattriya race of Kuśika? Great was the might of Rāma, and of Viśvāmitra. How did it happen that, passing over the sons [of Richika and Kuśika], this defect showed itself in their grandsons?"

Then there follows a long dialogue related by Bhīshma as having taken place between king Kuśika and the sage Chyavana. The latter, it seems, "foreseeing that this disgrace was about to befall his race [from connection with the Kuśikas], and entertaining, in consequence, after he had weighed all the good and evil, and the strength and weakness (on either side), the desire of burning up that whole family" (verse 2723. *Etaṁ dosham purā drishṭvā Bhūrgavaś Chyavanas tadā | āgāminam mahābuddhiḥ sva-vaṁśe muni-sattamaḥ | nīschitya manasā sarvaṁ guṇa-dosham balābalam | dagdhu-kāmaḥ kulāṁ sarvaṁ Kuśikānām tapodhanaḥ |*), came to Kuśika. Chyavana is welcomed and treated with great attention, and receives from Kuśika the offer of all his king-

dom, etc. The saint, however, does not requite this honour with corresponding kindness, but makes the king and his wife perform many menial offices, rub his feet, attend while he sleeps, bring him food, and draw him in a chariot, while he lacerates their backs with a goad. All this is submitted to so patiently, that the sage is propitiated, addresses them in kindly tones, and touches their wounded bodies with his godlike hands. After creating a magical golden palace, with all the accompaniments of pleasure (2826 ff.), in order to give them a conception of heaven, (2892 ff.) the sage offers to bestow any boon the king may choose; and to solve any of his doubts. Kuśika asks the reason of the sage's unaccountable procedure. Chyavana answers that he had heard from Brahmā that there would be "a confusion of families in consequence of the hostility of Brāhmans and Kshattriya's, and that a grandson of great glory and heroism would be born to Kuśika" (verse 2878. *Brahma-kshattra-virodhena bharitā kula-sankarāḥ | pautras te bhavitā rājāns tejo-vīryya-samanvitaḥ* |); that he had intended in consequence to burn up the race of the Kuśikas, but that the king had come so well out of the severe ordeal to which he had been subjected, that the sage had become thoroughly pacified, and would grant the boon which Kuśika desired :

2897. *Bhaviṣhyaty eṣa te kāmas Kauśikāt Kauśiko dvijaḥ | tṛtīyam puruṣaṁ tubhyam brāhmaṇatvaṁ gamiṣhyati | vāṁśas te pāṛthiva-śreṣṭha Bhṛigūnām eva tejasā | pautras te bharitā vipras tapasvī pāvana-dyutiḥ | yaḥ sa-ḍeva-manuṣhyānām bhayaṁ utpādayiṣhyati |*

"This thy desire shall be fulfilled; from a Kauśika a Kauśika Brāhman shall arise: in the third generation thy race shall attain to Brāhmanhood by the might of the Bhṛigus. Thy son's son shall become a Brāhman, a devotee, splendid as fire, who shall alarm both gods and men." Kuśika being anxious to know how all this was to be brought to pass, Chyavana informs him :

2995. *Bhṛigūnām kshattriyaḥ yājyāḥ nityam etj janādhipa | te cha bhedaṁ gamiṣhyanti daiva-yuktena hetunā | kshattriyaś cha Bhṛigūn sarvān badhiṣhyanti narādhipa | āgarbhād anukṛintanto daiva-daṇḍa nipīḍitāḥ | tataḥ utpatsyate 'smākaṁ kula-gotra-vivardhanaḥ | Ūrvo nāma mahāteja jvalanārka-sama-dyutiḥ | sa trailokya-vināśāya kopāgniṁ janayiṣhyati | mahīm sa-parvata-vanām yaḥ karīṣhyati bhasmasāt | kanchit kālān tu ruhniṁ cha sa eva śamayīṣhyati | samudre vadavā-vaktre prak-*

shipya muni-sattamaḥ | 2910. *Puttrañ tasya mahārāja Rīchikam Bhṛigu-nandanam* | *sākshāt kṛtsno dhanur-vedaḥ sanupasthāsyate 'nagha* | *kshattriyānām abhāvāya daiva-yuktena hetunā* | *sa tu tam pratigrihyaiva puttrañ sankrāmayishyati* | *Jamadagnau mahābhāge tapasā-bhāvitātmani* | *sa chāpi Bhṛigu-śārdūlas tañ vedañ dhārayishyati* | *kulāt tu tava dharmātman kanyāñ so 'dhigamishyati* | *udbhāvanārtham bhavato vaṁśasya Bharatarshabha* | *Gādher duhitaram prāpya pauttrīm tava mahātapāḥ* | *brāhmaṇaṁ kshattria-dharmānam puttram utpādayishyati* | 2915. *Kshattriyañ vipra-karmānam Vṛihaspatim ivañjasā* | *Vīśvāmitrañ tava kule Gādheḥ puttrañ sudhārmikam* | *tapasā mahatā yuktam pradāsyati mahādyaute* | *striya tu kāraṇaṁ tatra parivartte bhavishyataḥ* | *Pitāmaha-niyogād vai nānyathaitad bhavishyati* | *tritiye puruṣhe tubhyam brāhmaṇatvam upaishyati* | *bhavitā trañ cha sambandhi Bhṛigūnām bhāvitātmanām* | 2923. *Etat te kathitaṁ sarvaṁ aśeṣeṇa mayā nṛipa* | *Bhṛigūnaṁ Kuśikānām cha abhisumbandha-kāraṇam* | *yathoktam rishinā chāpi tadā tad abhacād nṛipa* | *janma Rāmasya cha muner Vīśvāmित्रasya chaiva hi* |

“The Bhṛigus have always been the priests of the Kshattriyas; but these will become hostile to each other for a fated reason. The Kshattriyas shall slay all the Bhṛigus, even to children in the womb, being oppressed by a divine nemesis. Then shall arise the glorious Ūrva,²⁴⁵ like the sun in splendour, who shall augment the glory of our race. He shall create a fire of wrath for the destruction of the three worlds, which shall reduce the earth with its mountains and forests to ashes. After a time he will extinguish the fire, throwing it into the ocean into the mouth of Vāḍavā (the submarine fire). Into his son Rīchika shall

²⁴⁵ Ūrva is here said (ver-e 2907) to belong to the race of Chyavana, but whether as a near or remote descendant is not stated. In verse 2910 Rīchika is said to be the son of Ūrva. In the *Adiparvan*, verses 2610 ff., the matter is somewhat differently stated. *Ārushi tu Manoh kanyā tasya padmā yāśasvatī* | *Aurvaḥ tasyāñ samabhavad ārum bhūtā mahāyāsāḥ* | *mahātējāḥ mahāvīryyo bāloh iva guṇar yutaḥ* | *Rīchīkas tasya putras tu Jamadagnis tato bhavat* | “Ārushi, the daughter of Manu, was the wife of the sage (Chyavana); of her was the illustrious Aurva born, having split his mother's thigh. He was great in glory and might, and from his childhood endowed with eminent qualities. Rīchika was his son, and Rīchika's was Jamadagni.” Here Aurva is said to derive his name from having divided his mother's thigh (*āru*); and no allusion is made to Ūrva, though the same person appears to be meant. In the passage of the *Anuśāsana-parvan*, however, we have an Ūrva, the father of Rīchika, whose patronymic will thus be Aurva; as it is, in fact, in the *Vishnu Purāṇa*, as quoted above in p. 352.

enter the entire embodied Dhanur-veda (science of archery), for the destined destruction of the Kshattriyas. This science he shall transmit to his great son Jamadagni, whose mind shall be spiritualized by devotion, and who shall possess that Veda. He (Richika) shall obtain [for his wife] a maiden of thy family, to prolong thy race. This great devotee, wedding thy grand-daughter, the daughter of Gādhi, shall beget a Brāhman (*i.e.* Paraśurāma), fulfilling the functions of a Kshattriya; (2915) and shall bestow on thy family a Kshattriya who shall perform the functions of a Brāhman, Viśvāmitra, the son of Gādhi, an austere devotee, and glorious as Vrihaspati. The two wives shall be the cause of this interchange of characters. According to the decree of Brahmā all this shall so happen. Brāhmanhood shall come to thee in the third generation, and thou shalt become connected with the spiritual-minded Bhṛigus.” 2923. “Thus (concludes Bhīṣhma) have I told thee at length the cause of the connection between the Bhṛigus and the Kuśikas. All this was accordingly fulfilled in the births of Paraśurāma and Viśvāmitra.”

Is this legend intended to account for a real fact? Was Paraśurāma of a sacerdotal tribe, and yet by profession a warrior, just as Viśvāmitra was conversely of royal extraction, and yet a priest by profession?

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 11, 3 (Wilson, 4to. ed. pp. 416, 417), Arjuna was of the race of Yadu, and the ninth in descent from Haihaya, the great-grandson of that prince. It is there said of him :

Kṛitavīryyād Arjunah sapta-dvīpapatir bāhu-sahasrī jajñe yo 'sau bhagavad-aṁśam Atri-kula-prasūtam Duttātreyākhyam ārādhya bāhu-sahasram adharma-sevā-nivāraṇam dharmena prithivījayaṁ dharmataś chānupālanaṁ arātibhyo 'parājayaṁ akhila-jagat-prakhyāta-purushāc cha mṛityum ity etān varān abhilashitavān lebhe cha | tena iyaṁ aśeśa-dvīpavatī prithivī samyak paripālītā | daśu-yajna-sahasraṇy asāv ayajat | tasya cha śloko 'dyāpi gīyate “na nūnam kṛttavīryasya gatiṁ yāsyanti pārthivāḥ | yajnair dānair tapobhir vā praśrayeṇa damena cha” | anuṣṭa-dravyatā tasya rājye 'bhavat | 4. Eram panchāṣṭi-sahasraṇy abdān avyāhatārogya-śrī-bala-parākramo rājyam akarot | Māhishmatyām dig-vijayābhīyāgato Narmadā-jalāragāhana-kṛdā-nīpūna-madākulena ayatnenaiva tena aśeśa-deva-daitya-gandharveśa-jayodbhūta-madāralepo 'pi Rāvanah paśur iva baddhah śanagaraikānte sthāpitah | 5. Yaḥ panchāṣṭi-varsha-sahasropalukshana-kūlāvasūne bhagavan-nārāyaṇāmśena Paraśurāmena upasāṁhṛtāḥ |

“From Kṛitavīrya sprang Arjuna, who was lord of the seven dvīpas [circular and concentric continents of which the earth is composed], and had a thousand arms. Having worshipped a portion of the divine Being, called Dattātreya, sprung from the race of Atri, he sought and obtained these boons, viz. a thousand arms, the power of restraining wrong by justice, the conquest of the earth, and the disposition to rule it righteously, invincibility by enemies, and death at the hands of a man renowned over the whole world. By him this earth, with all its dvīpas, was perfectly governed. He offered ten thousand sacrifices. To this day this verse is repeated respecting him: ‘No other king shall ever equal Kārtavīrya in regard to sacrifices, liberality, austerities, courtesy, and self-restraint.’ In his reign no property was ever lost. 4. Thus he ruled for eighty-five thousand years with unbroken health, prosperity, strength, and valour. When he was excited by sporting in the Narmadā and by drinking wine, he had no difficulty in binding like a beast Rāvaṇa, who had arrived in Māhishmatī in his career of conquest, and who was filled with arrogance, arising from the pride of victory over all the gods, daityas, and gandharva chiefs, and imprisoning him in a secret place in his capital. At the end of his reign of eighty-five thousand years Arjuna was destroyed by Paraśurāma, who was a portion of the divine Nārāyaṇa.”

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 23, 20-27, assigns to him the same descent, and relates of him nearly the same particulars. Verse 23 says: *Arjunaḥ Kṛitavīryasya sapta-dvīpeśvaro 'bhavat | Dattātreyaḥ Harer aṁśāt prāpta-yoga-mahāguṇaḥ |* “Arjuna was the son of Kṛitavīrya, and ruler of the seven dvīpas. He obtained the great attribute of *Yoga* (supernatural powers arising from devotion) from Dattātreya, who was a portion of Hari,” etc.

The legend of Paraśurāma, as related, is of course fabulous. Not to speak of the miraculous powers which are ascribed to this hero, and the incredible number of the exterminations which he is said to have executed, we cannot even suppose it probable that the Brāhmins should in general have been sufficiently powerful and warlike to overcome the Kshattriya by force of arms. But the legend may have had some small foundation in fact. Before the provinces of the sacerdotal and military classes were accurately defined, there may have been cases in which ambitious men of the former successfully

aspired to kingly dominion, just as scions of royal races became distinguished as priests and sages. But even without this assumption, the existence of such legends is sufficiently explained by the position which the Brāhmans eventually occupied. With the view of maintaining their own ascendancy over the minds of the chiefs on whose good will they were dependent, and of securing for themselves honour and profit, they would have an interest in working upon the superstitious feelings of their contemporaries by fabricating stories of supernatural punishments inflicted by their own forefathers on their royal oppressors, as well as by painting in lively colours the prosperity of those princes who were submissive to the spiritual order.

CHAPTER V.

RELATION OF THE BRAHMANICAL INDIANS TO THE NEIGHBOURING TRIBES, ACCORDING TO MANU AND THE PURANAS.

I now propose to enquire what account the Indian writers give of the origin of those tribes which were not comprehended in their own polity, but with which, as dwelling within, or adjacent to, the boundaries of Hindustan, their countrymen were, in ancient times, brought into continual and familiar contact.

It appears to have been the opinion of Manu, the great authority in all matters regarding the Hindu religion and institutions in their full development, that there was no original race of men except the four castes of Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras; and that all other nations were derived from these. His own words (x. 4) are these: *Brāhmanah kshattriyo vaiśyas trayo varṇāḥ dvijātayaḥ | chaturthaḥ ekajātis tu śūdro nāsti tu pañchamaḥ* | “Three castes, the Brāhman, the Kshattriya, and the Vaiśya, are twice-born; the fourth, the Sūdra, is once-born; and there is no fifth.” On the last clause of this verse Kullūka Bhaṭṭa annotates thus: *Pañchamaḥ punar varṇo nāsti sankīrṇa-jātīnām tv aśvatora-rad mātā-pitri-jāti-vyatirikta-jāty-untarat-rād na varṇatram | ayaṁ cha jāty-antaropadeśaḥ śāstre saṁnyat aharaṇārthaḥ* | “There is no fifth caste; for caste cannot be predicated of the mixed tribes, from the fact that, like mules, they belong to another species, distinct from that of their father and mother. And this reference, which is made in the Sāstras to castes other than the four, is merely for the sake of convenience and conformity to common usage.”

Accordingly, in the following description which Manu gives in the same chapter of the rise of the inferior castes, they are all, even the

very lowest, such as Nishādas and Chāṇḍālas, derived from the mixture the four so-called original castes. Thus, in verse 8 : *Brāhmaṇād vaiśya-kanyāyām ambashṭha nāma jāyate | nishādaḥ śūdra-kanyāyām yaḥ parāśara uchyate* | “From a Brāhmaṇ father and a Vaiśya mother springs an Ambashṭha : from a Brāhmaṇ father and a Śūdra mother is born a Nishāda, called also Parāśava.”¹ Again, in verse 12 . *Sūdrād āyogavaḥ kshattā chāṇḍalāś chādhamo nṛiṇām | vaiśya - rājanya - viprāsu jāyante varṇa-sankarāḥ* | “From a Śūdra, by women of the Vaiśya, Kshattriya, and Brāhmaṇ castes are born those mixed classes, the Āyogava, the Kshattṛi, and the Chāṇḍāla, lowest of men.” Again, in verse 20 : *Dvijātayaḥ savarṇāsu janayanty avratāṁs tu yān | tān sāvitrī-paribhrashṭān vrātyāḥ iti vinirdīśet* | “Persons whom the twice-born beget on women of their own classes, but who omit the prescribed rites, and have abandoned the gāyatrī, are to be designated as Vrātyas.”² In the next three verses the inferior tribes, which spring from the Brāhmaṇ Vrātya, the Kshattriya Vrātya, and the Vaiśya Vrātya respectively, are enumerated.

In verses 43 and 44 it is stated : *S'anaḥkaiś tu kriyā-lopād imāḥ*

¹ It does not appear how the account of the origin of the Nishāda race from king Veṇa, given above in pp. 301 and 303, can be reconciled with this theory of Manu; unless recourse be had to the explanation that that story relates to the Svāyambhuva Manvantara. But Manu's narrative seems to refer to the same period. See above, p. 39. If the Vedic expressions *pañchajamāḥ* and the other corresponding phrases signifying “the five tribes” be rightly interpreted of the “four castes, and the Nishādas,” we might understand this as intimating that the Nishādas had at one time been regarded as a distinct race. But the phrase is variously understood by the old Vedic commentators; as has been shewn above, p. 177.

² Manu says, ii. 38 f. : *Ā-shodasāṇā brāhmaṇasya sāvitrī nātivarttate | ā-devīṇāṁśat kshattrabhandhor ā-chaturviṁśater viśaḥ | atah ūrdhvaṁ trayo'py ete yathā-kālam asaṁskṛitāḥ | sāvitrī-patitāḥ vrātyāḥ bhavanty āryya-nigarhitāḥ* | “The gāyatrī should not, in the case of a Brāhmaṇ, be deferred beyond the sixteenth year; nor in the case of a Kshattriya beyond the twenty-second; nor in that of a Vaiśya beyond the twenty-fourth. After these periods youths of the three classes, who have not been invested, become fallen from the gāyatrī, Vrātyas, condemned by respectable men (Āryyas).” In the following verse of the Mahābhārata, Anuśāsanaparvan, line 2621, a different origin is ascribed to the Vrātyas : *Chāṇḍālo vrātya-vaidyaḥ cha brāhmaṇyām kshattriyāsu cha | vaiśyāyām chaiva sūdrasya lakshyante 'pasadās trayah* | “The three outcaste classes are the Chāṇḍāla, the Vrātya, and the Vaidya, begotten by a Śūdra on females of the Brāhmaṇ, Kshattriya, and Vaiśya castes respectively.” A Vrātya, therefore, according to this account, is the son of a Śūdra man and a Kshattriya woman. On the Vrātyas, see Weber's Indische Studien, i. 33, 52, 138, 139, 445, 446, etc.

kshattriya-jātayaḥ | vṛishalatvaṁ gatūḥ loke brāhmaṇādarśanena cha | Paundrakās choḍra-draviḍāḥ Kāmbojāḥ Yavanāḥ Śakāḥ | Pāradaḥ Pahlavās Chīnāḥ Kirātāḥ Daradāḥ Khasāḥ | “The following tribes of Kshattriyas have gradually sunk into the state of Vṛishalas (outcasts), from the extinction of sacred rites, and from having no communication with Brāhmans; viz. Paundrakas, Oḍras, Draviḍas, Kāmbojas, Yavanas, Śakas, Pāradas, Pahlavas, Chīnas, Kirātas, Daradas, and Khasās.”

The same thing is affirmed in the Mahābhārata, Anuśāsanaparvan, verses 2103 f.: *Śakāḥ Yavana-kāmbojās tās tāḥ kshattriya-jātayaḥ | vṛishalatvaṁ parigatāḥ brāhmaṇānām adarśanāt | Draviḍās cha Kāḷindās cha Pulindās chāpy Uśīnarāḥ | Kolisarpāḥ Māhishakās tās tāḥ kshattriya-jātayaḥ ityādi |* “These tribes of Kshattriyas, viz. Śakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Draviḍas, Kāḷindas, Pulindas, Uśīnaras, Kolisarpas, and Māhishakas, have become Vṛishalas from seeing no Brāhmans.” This is repeated in verses 2158–9, where the following additional tribes are named: Mekalas, Lāṭas, Konvaśiras, Śaunḍīkas, Darvas, Chauras, Śavaras, Barbaras, and Kirātas, and the cause of degradation is, as in verse 2103, restricted to the absence of Brāhmans. (Then follow the lines (2160 ff.) in glorification of the Brāhmans, already quoted in p. 130.)

The Yavanas are said in the Mahābhārata, Ādiparvan, section 85, verse 3533, “to be descended from Turvasu, the Vaibhojas from Druhyu, and the Mlechha tribes from Anu” (*Yados tu Yādavāḥ jātās Turvasor Yavanāḥ smṛitāḥ | Druhyoḥ sutās tu Vaibhojāḥ Anos tu mlechha-jātayaḥ |*). Is it meant by this that the Yavanas are not to be reckoned among the Mlechhas? Their descent from Turvasu is not however, necessarily in conflict with the assertion of the authorities above quoted, that they are degraded Kshattriyas.

I shall not attempt to determine who the Yavanas, and other tribes mentioned in the text, were.

The verse which succeeds that last quoted from Manu is the following: 45. *Mukha-bāhūru-paj-jānām yāḥ loke jātayo vahiḥ | mlechha-vāchaś chāryya-vāchaḥ sarve te dasyavaḥ smṛitāḥ |* “Those tribes which are outside of the classes produced from the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet, [of Brāhmā, i.e. Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras,] whether they speak the language of the Mlechhas or of the Āryas, are called Dasyus.” The interpretation to be given to this verse turns

upon the sense which we assign to "outside" (*vāhiḥ*). Does it mean that the Dasyus were of a stock originally distinct from that of the four primeval castes, and therefore altogether separate from those tribes which sprang from the intermixture of those four castes, or which, by the neglect of sacred rites, apostatized from their communion? Or does it merely mean that the Dasyus became eventually excluded from the fellowship of the four castes? If the latter sense be adopted, then Dasyu will be little else than a general term embracing all the tribes enumerated in verses 43 and 44. The commentator Kullūka understands the word in the latter sense. His words are: *Brāhmaṇa-kshattriya-vaiśya-śūdrāṇām kṛiyā-lopādīnā yāḥ jātayo vāhyāḥ jātāḥ mlechha-bhāshā-yuktāḥ āryya-bhāshopetāḥ vā te dasyavaḥ sarve smṛitāḥ* | "All the tribes, which by loss of sacred rites, and so forth, have become outcasts from the pale of the four castes, Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras; whether they speak the language of the Mlechhas or of the Āryas, are called Dasyus." His view is confirmed by a short passage in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, quoted above (p. 358), where Viśvāmitra, speaking to his sons, says: "Let your descendants possess the furthest ends (of the country)," and the author of the Brāhmaṇa adds: "These are the numerous border-tribes, the Andhras, Puṇḍras, Śabarās, Pulindas, Mūtibas. Most of the Dasyus are sprung from Viśvāmitra." Here the writer of this ancient Brāhmaṇa connects together certain tribes named either in Manu, or in the Mahābhārata, as degraded Kshattriyas, with the appellation Dasyu, thus intimating that the latter was a general name embracing all the former. This view is further confirmed by the following lines of the Mahābhārata, book ii. verses 1031-2: *Daradān saha Kāmbojair ajayat Pākāśāsaniḥ | prāgut-tarām diśān ye cha vasanty āsṛitya Dasyavaḥ* | "The son of Indra conquered the Daradas with the Kāmbojas, and the Dasyus who dwell in the north-east region;" and still more by the annexed verses from the Droṇaparvan, of the same epic poem, 4747: *Kāmbojānām sahasraiścha Śakānām cha viśūmpate | Śavarānām Kīrātānām Varvarānām tathaiṣa cha | agamya-rūpām pṛithivīm māṃsa-śoṇita-karddamām | kṛitavāms tatra Śaineyaḥ kshapayaṃs tāvakam balam | Dasyūnām sa-śirastrāṇaiḥ śrobhir lūna-mūrdhājaiḥ | dīrgha-kūrchair mahi kīrṇā vivarhair andajair iṣa* | "Śaineya, destroying thy host, converted the beautiful earth into a mass of mud with the flesh and blood of thousands of Kāmbojas,

Sakas, Sabaras, Kirātas, and Varvaras. The ground was covered with the shorn and hairless but long-bearded heads of the Dasyus, and their helmets, as if with birds bereft of their plumes." Here the word Dasyu is evidently a general term for the tribes named just before. Some of these same tribes had previously been called Mlechhas in verses 4716, 4723, and 4745. See also Sabhāp. 1198 f.

There is a passage in the Śāntiparvan, section 65, lines 2429 ff., which is worth quoting, as it shows that the Brāhmins of that age regarded the Dasyus as owing allegiance to Brahmanical institutions. King Māndhātṛi had performed a sacrifice in the hope of obtaining a vision of Viṣṇu; who accordingly appeared to him in the form of Indra (verse 2399). The following is a part of their conversation. Māndhātṛi asks :

2429. *Yavanāḥ Kirātāḥ Gāndhārāś Chīnāḥ Śavara-varvarāḥ | Śakās Tushārāḥ Kankās cha Pahlavās chāndhra-madrakāḥ |* 2430. *Paunḍrāḥ Pulindāḥ Ramaṭhāḥ Kāmbojās chaiva sarvaśaḥ | brahma-kshattrā-prasūtās cha vaiśyāḥ śūdrās cha mānavāḥ | katham dharmānś charishyanti sarve viśaya-vāsināḥ | mad-vidhais cha katham sthāpyāḥ sarve vai dasyu-jīvināḥ | etad ichhāmy ahaṁ śrotum bhagavaṁś tad bravīhi me | tvam bandhu-bhūto hy asmākaṁ kshattriyāṇāṁ sureśvara | Indrāḥ uvācha | mātā-pitror hi śuśrūṣhā karttavyā sarva-dasyubhiḥ | āchāryya-guru-śuśrūṣhā tathāivāśrama-vāsinām | bhūmipānām cha śuśrūṣhā karttavyā sarva-dasyubhiḥ | veda-dharma-kriyās chaiva teshāṁ dharmo vidhīyate |* 2435. *Pitri-yajnas tathā kṛpāḥ prapās cha śayanāni cha | dānāni cha yathā-kālāṁ drījebhyo viśrijet sadā | ahimsā satyam akrodho vṛitti-dāyānupālanaṁ | bharaṇam puttra-dārāṇāṁ śaucham adroha eva cha | dakṣiṇā sarva-yajnanāṁ dātavyā bhūtim ichhatā | pakayajnaḥ mahārhuś cha dātavyāḥ sarva-dasyubhiḥ | etāny examprakārāni vihītāni purā 'nagha | sarvalokasya karmāni karttavyāniha pārthiva | Māndhātā uvācha | drīśyante mānuṣhe loke sarva-varṇeshu Dasyavaḥ | lingāntare varttamānāḥ āśrameshu chaturshv api | Indrāḥ uvācha |* 2440. *Vinashṭāyāṁ daṇḍa-nītyāṁ rāja-dharme nirākṛite | sampramukhyanti bhūtāni rāja-daurātmyato 'nagha | asankhyātāḥ bhaviṣyanti bhikṣavo linginas tathā | āśramāṇāṁ vikalpās cha nirīte 'smin kṛite yuge | aśṛīvantāḥ purāṇānāṁ dharmānām paramāḥ gatīḥ | utpatham pratipatsyante kāma-manyu-samīritāḥ |*

“The Yavanas, Kirātas, Gāndhāras, Chīnas, Śavaras, Varvaras, Śakas, Tushāras, Kaṅkas, Pahlavas, Andhras, Madras, Paunḍras, Pu-

lindas, Ramathas, Kāmbojas, men sprung from Brāhmanas, and from Kshattriyas, persons of the Vaiśya and Sūdra castes—how shall all these people of different countries practise duty, and what rules shall kings like me prescribe for those who are living as Dasyus? Instruct me on these points; for thou art the friend of our Kshattriya race.’ Indra answers: ‘All the Dasyus should obey their parents, their spiritual directors, persons practising the rules of the four orders, and kings. It is also their duty to perform the ceremonies ordained in the Vedas. They should sacrifice to the Pitṛis, construct wells, buildings for the distribution of water, and resting places for travellers, and should on proper occasions bestow gifts on the Brāhmanas. They should practise innocence, veracity, meekness, purity, and inoffensiveness; should maintain their wives and families; and make a just division of their property. Gifts should be distributed at all sacrifices by those who desire to prosper. All the Dasyus should offer costly pāka oblations. Such duties as these, which have been ordained of old, ought to be observed by all people.’ Māndhātṛi observes: ‘In this world of men, Dasyus are to be seen in all castes, living, under other garbs, even among men of the four orders (*āśramas*).’ Indra replies: ‘When criminal justice has perished, and the duties of government are disregarded, mankind become bewildered through the wickedness of their kings. When this Kṛita age has come to a close, innumerable mendicants and hypocrites shall arise, and the four orders become disorganized. Disregarding the excellent paths of ancient duty, and impelled by passion and by anger, men shall fall into wickedness,’ etc. In these last lines it is implied that the Brahmanical polity of castes and orders was fully developed in the Kṛita [or golden] age. This idea, however, is opposed to the representations which we find in some though not in all other passages. See above, the various texts adduced in the first chapter.

In the Vishṇu Purāṇa, Bhāratavarsha (India) is said to “have its eastern border occupied by the Kirātas; and the western by the Yavanas; while the middle is inhabited by Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, engaged in their several fixed occupations of sacrifice, war, trade, etc.” (Vishṇu Purāṇa, ii. 3, 7. *Pūrve Kīrātāḥ yasyānte paśchime Yavanāḥ sthitāḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ madhye sūdrās cha bhāgaśaḥ | iḍyā-yuddha-vaṇijyādyaḥ varttayanto vyavasthithāḥ |*).

Manu's account of the origin of the Yavanas, Sakas, Kāmbojas, etc., corresponds with the tenor of the following story, which we find in the fourth book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, sect. 3. Bāhu, the seventh king in descent from Hariśchandra (see above, p. 379) was overcome by the Haihāyas and Tāla-janghas,³ and compelled to fly with his queens to the forests, where he died. After his death one of his wives gave birth to a son, who received the name of Sagara. When he had grown up, the youth learnt from his mother all that had befallen his father.

Para. 18. *Tataḥ pitṛi-rājya-haraṇāmarshito Haihaya-Tāla-janghādī-badhāya pratijñam akarot prāyaśaścha Haihayān jaghāna | S'aka-Yavana-Kāmboja-Pārada-Pahlavāḥ hanyamānās tat-kula-guruṁ Vaśiṣṭham śaraṇaṁ yayuḥ |* 19. *Atha etān Vaśiṣṭho jīvan-mṛitakān kṛtvā Sagaram āha "vatsa vatsa alam ebhir ati-jīvan-mṛitakair anusritaiḥ |* 20. *Ete cha mayā eva tāt-pratijñā-paripālānāya nija-dharma-dvija-sanga-parityāgam kṛitāḥ" |* 21. *Sa "tathā" iti tad guru-vachanam abhinandya teshāṁ veshāṇyatvam akārayat | Yavanān apamunḍita-śiraśo 'rddhamunḍān Sakān pralamba-keśān Pārādān Pahlavāṁś cha śmaśru-dharān niḥ-svādhyāya-vāśatḥkārān etān anyāṁś cha kṣhattriyaṁ chakāra | te cha nija-dharma-parityāgād brāhmaṇaiś parityaktāḥ mlechhatāṁ yayuḥ |*

"Being vexed at the loss of his paternal kingdom, he vowed to exterminate the Haihāyas and other enemies who had conquered it. Accordingly he destroyed nearly all the Haihāyas. When the Sakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas, and Pahlavas were about to undergo a similar fate, they had recourse to Vaśiṣṭha, the king's family-priest, who interposed in their behalf in these words addressed to Sagara, representing them as virtually dead: 'You have done enough, my son, in the way of pursuing these men, who are as good as dead. In order that your vow might be fulfilled, I have compelled them to abandon the duties of their caste, and all association with the twice-born.' Agreeing to his spiritual guide's proposal, Sagara compelled these tribes to alter their costume. He made the Yavanas shave their heads, the Sakas shave half their heads, the Pāradas wear long hair, and the Pahlavas beards. These and other Kshatriyas he deprived of the

³ See Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, 4to. edit., p. 416 and 418 note. In the note to p. 418 the Āvantyas are mentioned, on the authority of the Vāyu Purāṇa, as being a branch of the Haihāyas. In Manu, x. 21, the Āvantyas are said to be descended from Brāhmaṇa Vrātyas.

study of the Vedas, and the vashaṭkāra. In consequence of their abandonment of their proper duties, and of their desertion by the Brāhmins, they became Mlechhas.”

This story is also related in the Harivaṃśa, from which I extract the concluding part of the narrative :

773. *Aurvas tu jātakarmādi tasya kṛtvā mahātmanah | adhyāpya vedān akhilān tato 'stram pratyapādayat | āgneyaṃ tu mahābāhur amarair api dussaham | sa tenāstra-balenājau balena cha samanvitaḥ | Haihayān nijaghānāsu kruddho Rudraḥ paśūn iva | ājahāra cha lokeshu kirttiṃ kirttimatāṃ varaḥ | tataḥ Sakān sa-yavanān Kāmbojān Pāradāṃs tathā | Pahlavāṃs chaiva niśśeshān karttuṃ vyavasitaḥ kila | te badhyamānāḥ vīreṇa Sagareṇa mahātmanā | Vasiṣṭhaṃ śaraṇaṃ gatvā pranīpetur manī- shiṇam | Vasiṣṭhas tv atha tān dṛiṣṭvā samayena mahādutyaiḥ | Sagaraṃ vārayāmāsa teshāṃ dattvā 'bhyāṃ tadā | Sagaraḥ svām pratijñāṃ cha guror vākyaṃ niśmya cha | dharmāṃ jaghāna teshāṃ vai veśānyatraṃ chakāra ha | arddhaṃ Sakānāṃ śirasā muṇḍayitvā vyasarjayat | Yavan- ānāṃ śiraḥ sarvaṃ Kāmbojānāṃ tathāiva cha | Pāradāḥ mukta-keśāścha Pahlavāḥ śmaśru-dhārīṇaḥ | nissvādhyāya-vashaṭkāraḥ kṛtās tena mahātmanā | Sakāḥ Yavana-kāmbojāḥ Pāradāḥ Pahlavās tathā | Koli- sarpāḥ sa-Mahishāḥ Dāvras Cholāḥ sa-Keralāḥ | sarve te kshattriyaś tāta teshāṃ dharmo nirākṛitaḥ | Vasiṣṭha-vachanād rājan Sagareṇa ma- hātmanā |*

“Aurva having performed Sagara's natal and other rites, and taught him all the Vedas, then provided him with a fiery missile, such as even the gods could not withstand. By the power of this weapon, and accompanied by an army, Sagara, incensed, speedily slew the Haihayas, as Rudra slaughters beasts; and acquired great renown throughout the world. He then set himself to exterminate the Śakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas, and Pahlavas. But they, when on the point of being slaughtered by Sagara, had recourse to the sage Vasiṣṭha, and fell down before him. Vasiṣṭha beholding them, by a sign restrained Sagara, giving them assurance of protection. Sagara, after considering his own vow, and listening to what his teacher had to say, destroyed their caste (*dharmā*), and made them change their costumes. He released the Śakas, after causing the half of their heads to be shaven;—and the Yavanas and Kāmbojas, after having had their heads entirely shaved. The Pāradas were made to wear

long hair, and the Pahlavas to wear beards. They were all excluded from the study of the Vedas, and from the *vashaṭkāra*. The Śakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas, Pahlavas, Kolisarpas, Mahishas, Dārvas, Cholas, and Keralas had all been Kshattriyas; but were deprived of their social and religious position by the great Sagara, according to the advice of Vaśiṣṭha." Other tribes are mentioned in the following line who seem to have undergone the same treatment.

It would appear from this legend, as well as from the quotations which preceded it, that the Epic and Puranic writers believed all the surrounding tribes to belong to the same original stock with themselves; though they, at the same time, erroneously imagined that these tribes had fallen away from the Brahmanical institutions; thus assigning to their own polity an antiquity to which it could in reality lay no claim. Any further explanations on these points, however, must be sought in the second volume of this work.

In the passages quoted above, pp. 391, 393, and 398 from the *Mahābhārata* and *Rāmāyaṇa*, it is stated that Śakas, Yavanas, Pahlavas, etc., were created by Vaśiṣṭha's wonder-working cow, in order to repel the aggression of Viśvāmitra. It does not, however, appear that it is the object of that legend to represent this miraculous creation as the origin of those tribes. The narrators, if they had any distinct meaning, may not have intended anything more than that the cow called into existence large armies, of the same stock with particular tribes previously existing.

It is not very easy to say whether it is only the inhabitants of *Bhāratavarsha* (viz. that portion of *Jambudvīpa* which answers to India) whom the Puranic writers intend to represent as deriving their origin from the four primeval Indian castes. Perhaps the writers themselves had no very clear ideas. At all events the conditions of life are different in the two cases. The accounts which these writers give us of the other divisions of *Jambudvīpa*, and of the other *Dvīpas*, or continents, of which they imagined the earth to be composed, and their respective inhabitants, will be considered in the next chapter.

CHAPTER VI.

PURANIC ACCOUNTS OF THE PARTS OF THE EARTH
EXTERIOR TO BHĀRATAVARSHA, OR INDIA.

It will clearly appear from the contents of the present chapter that the authors or compilers of the Purāṇas in reality knew nothing of any part of the world except that immediately around them. Whenever they wander away beyond their own neighbourhood, they at once lose themselves in a misty region of fiction, and give the most unbridled scope to their fantastic imaginations.

The following is the account given in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa regarding the divisions of the earth, and their inhabitants. Priyavrata, son of Svāyambhuva, or the first Manu (see above, pp. 65 and 72) who is separated from the present time by an enormous interval (see pp. 43 ff. and 298, above), “distributed the seven dvīpas,¹ of which the earth is composed, among seven of his sons” (ii. 1, 7. *Priyavrato dadau teshāṃ saptānāṃ muni-sattama | vibhajya sapta dvīpāni Maitreya sumahāt-manām*).

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa gives us the following account, v. 1. 30. *Tad anabhinandan sama-javena rathena jyotirmayena rajanīm api dīnaṃ kari-shyāmi iti saptakṛitras taranīm anuparyyagrāmad dritīyaḥ iva patan-gaḥ | [evaṃ kurvāṇam Priyavratam āgatya Chaturānanas “taiādhikāro ’yaṃ na bhavati” iti nivārayāmāsa]* (The words in brackets are not in the Bombay edition, but are taken from Burnouf’s.) 31. *Ye vai u ha tad-ratha-charaṇa-nemi-kṛita-parikhātās te sapta sindhavaḥ āsan yataḥ eva kṛitāḥ sapta bhuvō dvīpāḥ* |² “Priyavrata, being dissatisfied that only

¹ The original division of the earth into seven continents is assigned to Nārāyaṇa in the form of Brahmā; see above, pp. 51 and 76.

² In this passage we find the particles *vai*, *u*, *ha*, occurring all together as they do in the Vedic hymns and Brāhmaṇas. This circumstance might seem to suggest the

half the earth was illuminated at one time by the solar rays, "followed the sun seven times round the earth in his own flaming car of equal velocity, like another celestial orb, resolved to turn night into day. [Brahmā, however, came and stopped him, saying this was not his province.] The ruts which were formed by the motion of his chariot wheels were the seven oceans. In this way the seven continents of the earth were made."

The same circumstance is alluded to at the commencement of the 16th section of the same book, where the king says to the rishi: verse 2. *Tattrāpi Priyavrata-ratha-charaṇa-parikkātaiḥ saptabhiḥ sapta sindhavaḥ upakṛiptāḥ | yataḥ etasyāḥ sapta-dvīpa-viśeṣa-vikalpas trayā bhagavan khalu sūchitāḥ |* "The seven oceans were formed by the seven ruts of the wheels of Priyavrata's chariot; hence, as you have indicated, the earth has become divided into seven different continents."

It is clear that this account given by the Bhāgavata Purāṇa of the manner in which the seven oceans and continents were formed does not agree with the description in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, as quoted above in p. 51.

These seven continents are called "Jambu dvīpa, Plaksha dvīpa, Sāl-possibility of the passage, or its substance, being derived from some of the Brāhmaṇas (to which, as we have seen, p. 155 note, the compiler of this Purāṇa was in the habit of resorting for his materials); but the style has otherwise nothing of an archaic caste, and I am not aware that the dvīpas are mentioned in any of the Brāhmaṇas. It is also remarkable that the words sapta sindhavaḥ are here used for "seven oceans." This phrase occurs several times in the Vedas. For instance, it is to be found in the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā (of the Yajur-veda), 38, 26, *yāvati dyāvā-prithivī yāvach cha sapta sindhavo vitasthīre |* "As wide as are the earth and sky, and as far as the seven oceans extend." The commentator Mahīdhara understands the latter in the Puranic sense, as the oceans of milk, etc. (*sapta sindhavaḥ sapta samudrāḥ kṣīrādyaḥ*). The hemistich I have quoted from the Vāj. Sanhitā occurs somewhat modified, and in a different connexion, in the Atharva-veda, iv. 6, 2. The same phrase, sapta sindhavaḥ, is to be found also in several places in the first Book of the Rig-veda. (See Benfey's Glossary to Sāma-veda, sub voce *sapton*.) In Rig-veda i. 32, 12, it is said to Indra *avāṣṛjāḥ savitave sapta sindhūn |* "Thou hast let loose the seven rivers to flow." Sāyana understands this of the Ganges and other rivers, seven in number, mentioned in the Rig Veda, x. 75, 5: *imam me Gange Yamunā Sarasvatī S'utudrī stomaṁ sachatū Parushnī* | "Receive this my hymn with favour, o Gāṅgā, Yamunā, Sarasvatī, S'utudrī, with the Parushnī, etc.;" but in this distich ten rivers in all are mentioned. (See Wilson's note to Rig-veda, i. 32, 12, vol. i. p. 88, of his translation). See also hymns 34, 8; 35, 8; 71, 7; and 102, 2, of the first, and 58, 12, and 85, 1, of the eighth Books of the Rig-veda. The "seven rivers" of the Veda are, according to Professor Muller (Chips from a German Workshop, vol. i. p. 63), "the Indus, the five rivers of the Penjab and the Sarasvatī."

mali dvīpa, Kuśa dvīpa, Krauncha dvīpa, Sāka dvīpa, and Pushkara dvīpa. They are surrounded severally by seven great seas, of salt water, sugarcane juice, wine, clarified butter, curds, milk, and fresh water" (V.P. ii. 2, 4. *Jambū-plakshāhṛayau dvīpau S'ālmaliś chāparo dvīja | Kuśaḥ Kraunchas tathā S'ākaḥ Pushkaraś chaiva saptamaḥ | 5. Ete dvīpāḥ samudrais tu sapta saptabhir āvṛitāḥ | lavanekshu-surā-sarpir-dadhi-dugdha-jalaih samam |*). Jambu dvīpa is in the centre of all these continents (Wilson, vol. ii. p. 110). It fell to the lot of Agnīdhra, son of Priyavrata, who again divided it among his nine sons (Wilson, ii. 101). In the centre of Jambu dvīpa is the golden mountain Meru, 84,000 yojanas high, and crowned by the great city of Brahmā (ibid. p. 118). There are in this continent six cross-ranges of boundary-mountains, those of Himavat (= Himādri, or Himālaya), Hemakūṭa, and Nishadha lying south of Meru; and those of Nīla, Śveta, and Śṛṅgin, situated to the northward. Of these, Nishadha and Nīla are the nearest to Meru, while Himavat and Śṛṅgin are at the south and north extremities. The nine Varshas or divisions of Jambu dvīpa, separated by these and other ranges, are Bhārata (India), south of the Himavat mountains, and the southernmost of all; then (2) Kimpurusha, (3) Harivarsha, (4) Ilāvṛita, (5) Ramyaka, (6) Hiraṇmaya, and (7) Uttara Kuru, each to the north of the last; while (8) Bhadrāsva and (9) Ketumāla lie respectively to the east and west of Ilāvṛita, the central region. Bhārata Varsha, and Uttara Kuru, as well as Bhadrāsva and Ketumāla,³ are situated on the exterior of the mountain ranges. (Wilson, ii. pp. 114–116, and 123.) The eight Varshas to the north of Bhārata Varsha (or India) are thus described :

V.P. ii. 1, 11. *Yāni Kimpurushādīni varshāṇy ashtau mahāmune | teshāṃ svābhāviki siddhiḥ sukha-prāyā hy ayatnataḥ | 12. Viparyyayo*

³ The Mahābhārata tells us, Bhīshmaparvan, verses 227-8, in regard to the Varsha of Ketumāla. *āyur daśa sahasrāṇi varshānūn tatra Bhārata | suvarṇa-varṇas cha narāḥ striyaś' chāpsarasopamāḥ | anāmāyāḥ vīta-sokāḥ nityam mudita-mūnasāḥ | jāyante mānavās tatra nishṭapta-kanaka-prabhāḥ |* "The people there live ten thousand years. The men are of the colour of gold, and the women fair as celestial nymphs. Men are born there of the colour of burnished gold, live free from sickness and sorrow, and enjoy perpetual happiness." The men by the side of the mountain Gandhamādana, west of Meru, are said (v. 231) "to be black, of great strength and vigour, while the women are of the colour of blue lotuses, and very beautiful" (*tatra kṛishnāḥ narāḥ rājās tejo-yuktāḥ mahābalāḥ | striyaś' choṭpala-varṇābhāḥ sarvāḥ supriya-darśanāḥ*).

*na tattrāsti jarā-mṛityu-bhayaṁ na cha | dharmādharmau na teshv āstāṁ
nottamādharma-madhyamāḥ | na teshv asti yugāvasthā kshettreshv asṭasu
sarvādā |*

“In the eight Varshas, called Kimpurusha and the rest (*i.e.* in all except Bhārata Varsha) the inhabitants enjoy a natural perfection attended with complete happiness obtained without exertion. There is there no vicissitude, nor decrepitude, nor death, nor fear; no distinction of virtue and vice, none of the inequalities denoted by the words best, worst, and intermediate, nor any change resulting from the succession of the four yugas.” And again :

ii. 2, 35. *Yāni Kimpurushādyaṇi varshāṇy asṭau mahāmune | na
teshu śoko nāyāso nodvega-kshud-bhayādīkam | susthāḥ prajāḥ nirātankāḥ
sarva-duḥkha-vivarjjitāḥ |* 36. *Duśa-dvādaśa-varshāṇām sahasrāṇi sthīrā-
yushaḥ | na teshu varshate devo bhaumyaṇy ambhāṁsi teshu vai |* 37. *Kṛita-tretādīkā naiva teshu sthāneshu kalpanā |*

“In those eight Varshas there is neither grief, nor weariness, nor anxiety, nor hunger, nor fear. The people live in perfect health, free from every suffering, for ten or twelve thousand years. Indra does not rain on those Varshas, for they have abundance of springs. There is there no division of time into the Kṛita, Tretā, and other ages.”

The Uttara Kurus, it should be remarked, may have been a real people, as they are mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, viii. 14 : ⁴

*Atha enam udīchyām diśi viśve devāḥ shadbhiś chaiva panchaviṁśair
ahobhir abhyashinchann etena cha trichena etena cha yajushā etābhiś cha
vyākṛitibhir vairājyāya | tasmād etasyām udīchyām diśi ye ke cha pareṇa
Himavantaṁ janapadāḥ “Uttara-Kuravaḥ Uttara-Madrāḥ” iti vairā-
jyāya eva te ’bhishichyante |*

“Then in the northern region during six days on which the Panchaviṁśa stoma was recited, the Viśve-devas inaugurated him (Indra) for glorious dominion with these three ṛik-verses, this yajush-verse, and these mystic monosyllables. Wherefore the several nations who dwell in this northern quarter, beyond the Himavat, the Uttara Kurus and the Uttara Madras, are consecrated to glorious dominion (*vairājya*), and people term them the glorious (*virāj*).” See Colebrooke’s Misc. Essays, i. 38-43; Dr. Haug’s translation of the Ait. Brāhmaṇa; and Prof. Weber’s review of this translation in Ind. Studien, ix. pp. 341 f.

⁴ Quoted by Weber in Ind. St. i. 218.

In another passage of the same work,⁵ however, the Uttara Kurus are treated as belonging to the domain of mythology :

Ait. Br. viii. 23. *Etañ ha vai aindram mahābhishekam Vāsishṭhaḥ Sātahavyo'tyarātaye Jānantapaye provācha | tasmād u Atyarātir Jānantapir arājā san vidyayā samantañ sarvataḥ prithivīm jayan pariyāya | sa ha uvācha Vāsishṭhaḥ Sātyahavyaḥ "ajaiśkīr vai samantañ sarvataḥ prithivīm mahad mā gamaya" iti | sa ha uvācha Atyarātir Jānantapir "yadā brāhmaṇa Uttara-kurūn jayeyāñ tvam u ha eva prithivyai rājā syāḥ senāpatir eva te 'hañ syām" iti | sa ha uvācha Vāsishṭhaḥ Sātyahavyo "deva-kshettrañ vai tad na vai tad marttyo jetum arhaty adrukshe me ā'taḥ idañ dade" iti | tato ha Atyarātīm Jānantapim ātta-vīryyam niśśukram amitra-tapanāḥ Sushmināḥ S'aivyo rājā jaghāna | tasmād evaṁ-vidushe brāhmaṇāya evaṁ-chakrushe kshattriyo na druhyed na id rāshṭrād avapadyeyad (?) na id vāma-prāṇo jahad iti |*

"Sātyahavya of the family of Vāsishṭha declared this great inauguration similar to Indra's to Atyarāti, son of Janantapa; and in consequence Atyarāti, though not a king, by his knowledge, went round the earth on every side to its ends, reducing it to subjection. Sātyahavya then said to him, 'Thou hast subdued the earth in all directions to its limits; exalt me now to greatness.' Atyarāti replied, 'When, o Brāhman, I conquer the Uttara Kurus, thou shalt be king of the earth, and I will be only thy general.' Sātyahavya rejoined, 'That is the realm of the gods; no mortal may make the conquest of it: Thou hast wronged me; therefore I take all this away from thee.' In consequence Sushmina, king of the S'ivis, vexer of his foes, slew Atyarāti son of Janantapa who had been bereft of his valour and energy. Wherefore let no Kshattriya wrong a Brāhman who possesses such knowledge and has so acted, lest he should be expelled from his kingdom, be short-lived, and perish."

The Uttara Kurus are also mentioned in the description of the northern region in the Kishkindhā Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, 43, 38, *Uttarāḥ Kuruvas tatra kṛita-punya-pratiśrāyaḥ |* "There are the Uttara Kurus, the abodes of those who have performed works of merit." In v. 57 it is said: *na kathanchana gantavyāñ kurūnām uttareṇa vaḥ | anyeshām api bhūtānām nānukrāmati vai gatiḥ |* "You must not go to the north of the Kurus: other beings also may not proceed further."

⁵ See Colebrooke's Essays, i. 43; Dr. Haug's translation; and Ind. Stud. ix. 346.

In the same way when Arjuna, in his career of conquest, arrives at the country of the Uttara Kurus in Harivarsha, he is thus addressed by the guards at the gate of the city, M. Bh. Sabhāparvan, 10-45 :

Pārtha nedañ trayā śakyam purañ jetuñ kathanchana | upāvarattasva kalyāṇa paryūptam idam Achyuta | idam purañ yaḥ pravīṣed dhruvañ na sa bhaved naraḥ | . . . na chāttra kinchij jetavyam Arjunāttra pra-dṛśyate | Uttarāḥ Kuravo hy ete nāttra yuddham pravarttate | pravīṣṭo 'pi hi Kaunteya neha drakshyasi kinchana | na hi mānusha-dehena śakyam attrābhivikshitum |

"Thou canst not, son of Prithā, subdue this city. Refrain, fortunate man, for it is completely secure. He who shall enter this city must be certainly more than man. . . . Nor is there anything to be seen here which thou canst conquer. Here are the Uttara Kurus, whom no one attempts to assail. And even if thou shouldst enter, thou couldst behold nothing. For no one can perceive anything here with human senses."⁶

In the Anuśāsanaparvan, line 2841, Kuśika says, on seeing a magic palace formed by Chyavana (see above, p. 475):

Aho saha śarīreṇa prāpto 'smi paramāñ gatim | Uttarān vā Kurūn punyān athavā 'py Amarāvatim |

"I have attained, even in my embodied condition, to the heavenly state; or to the holy Northern Kurus, or to Amarāvati [the city of Indra]!"

"The country to the north of the ocean, and to the south of the Himādri (or snowy range), is Bhārata Varsha, where the descendants of Bharata dwell" (V.P. ii. 3, 1. *Uttarañ yad samudrasya Himādrēś chaiva dakṣiṇam | varṣam tad Bhāratañ nāma Bhārati yatra santatiḥ*). It is divided into nine parts (*bhedāḥ*), Indradvīpa, Kaśerumat, Tāmra-varṇa, Gābhāstimāt, Nāgadvīpa, Saumya, Gāndharva, Vāruṇa; and "this ninth dvīpa," which is not named, is said to be "surrounded by the ocean" *ayañ tu navamas teshām dvīpaḥ sāgara-saṁvṛtāḥ*), and to be a thousand yojanas long from north to south. "On the east side of it are the Kirātas, on the west the Yavanas, and in the centre are the Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, following their respective occupations of sacrifice, arms, trade, etc." (The text of this passage, V.P. ii. 3, 7, has been already quoted in p. 485).

⁶ See the second vol. of this work, pp. 332-337, and vol. iv., p. 375.

The Vishṇu Purāṇa contains a very short list of the tribes inhabiting Bhārata Varsha. (See Wilson, vol. ii. pp. 132 f.) It specifies, as the principal, only the Kurus, Pāṇchālas, the people of Kāmarūpa, the Puṇḍras, Kalingas, Magadhas, Saurāshṭras, Sūras, Bhīras, Arbudas, Kārūshas, Mālavas, Sauvīras, Saindhavas, Hūṇas, Sūlvas, Śūkalas, Madras, Rāmas, Ambashṭhas, and Pāraśikas.⁷ These tribes seem to be all confined to India and its vicinity.

The praises of Bhārata Varsha are celebrated as follows :

V.P. ii. 3, 11. *Chatvāri Bhārata varshe yugāny atra mahāmune | kṛitāṁ tretā dvāparaś cha kaliś chānyatra na kvachit | 12. Tapas tapyanti yatayo juhvate chāttra yajvinah | dānāni chāttra dīyante paralokārtham ādarāt | purushair yajna-purusho Jambu-dvīpe sadejyate | yajṇair yajnamayo Vishṇur anyā-dvīpeṣu chānyathā | 13. Attrāpi Bhārataṁ śreshṭhaṁ Jambu-dvīpe mahāmune | yato hi karma-bhūr eṣhā ato 'nyāḥ bhoga-bhūmayah | atra janma-sahasrāṇāṁ sahasrair api sattamam | kadachil labhate jantur mānushyam punya-sanchayam | gāyanti devāḥ kila gītakāni "dhan-yās tu ye Bhārata-bhūmi-bhāge | svargāparvargasya dahe tu bhūte bhavanti bhūyah purushāḥ suratrāt | 14. Karmāny asankalpita-tat-phalāni sanniyasya Vishṇau paramātma-rūpe | avāpya tāṁ karma-mahīm anante tasmīn layaṁ ye tv amalāḥ prayānti | 15. Jānīma naitat kra rayaṁ vītine svarga-prade karmaṇi deha-bandham | prāpsyāma dhanyāḥ khalu te manushyāḥ ye Bhārata nendriya-viprahīnāḥ" |*

"In Bhārata Varsha, and nowhere else, do the four Yugas, Kṛita, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali exist. 12. Here devotees perform austerities, and priests sacrifice; here gifts are bestowed, to testify honour, for the sake of the future world. In Jambudvīpa Vishṇu, the sacrificial Man, whose essence is sacrifice, is continually worshipped by men with sacrifices; and in other ways in the other dvīpas.⁸ 13. In this respect Bhārata is the most excellent division of Jambudvīpa; for this is the land of works, while the others are places of enjoyment. Perhaps in a thousand thousand births, a living being obtains here that most excellent condition, humanity, the receptacle of virtue. The gods sing, 'Happy are those beings, who, when the rewards of their merits have

⁷ The list in the Mahābhārata (Bhishmaparvan, 346 ff.), is much longer. See Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. ii. pp. 132 f., and 156 ff.

⁸ "In other ways, i.e. in the form of Soma, Vāyu, Sūryya, etc." (*Anyathā Soma-vāyu-sūryyādi-rūpaḥ* |). Commentator.

been exhausted in heaven, are, after being gods, again born as men in Bhārata Varsha; (14) who, when born in that land of works, resign to the supreme and eternal Vishṇu their works, without regard to their fruits, and attain by purity to absorption in him. 15. We know not where we shall next attain a corporeal condition, when the merit of our works shall have become exhausted; but happy are those men who exist in Bhārata Varsha with perfect senses.’”

To the same effect the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, v. 17, 11 :

Tattrāpi Bhāratam eva varshaṁ karma-kshettram anyāny ashta-varshāni svarginām punya-śeshopabhoga-sthānāni bhaumāni svarga-padāni vyapadiśanti | 12. *Eshu purushānām ayuta-purushāyur-varshānām deva-kalpānām nāgāyuta-prānānām vajra-saṁhanana-vayo-moda-pramudita-mahāsaurata-mithuna-ryacāyāvavarga-varsha-dhṛitaika-garbha-kalatrānām tretā-yuga-samah kālo varttate* |

“Of these, Bhāratavarsha alone is the land of works: the other eight Varshas are places where the celestials enjoy the remaining rewards of their works; they are called terrestrial paradises. 12. In them men pass an existence equal to that of the Tretā age, living for the space of ten thousand ordinary lives, on an equality with gods, having the vitality of ten thousand elephants, and possessed of wives who bear one child after a year’s conception following upon sexual intercourse attended by all the gratification arising from adamantine bodies and from vigorous youth.”

The commentator remarks on verse 11: *Divya-bhauma-bīla-bhedāt trividhaḥ svargaḥ* | *tattra bhauma-svargasya padāni sthānāni vyapadiśanti* | “Heaven is of three kinds, in the sky, on earth, and in the abyss. Here the other Varshas are called terrestrial heavens.”

It is curious to remark that in the panegyric on Bhārata Varsha it is mentioned as one of the distinguishing advantages of that division of Jambudvīpa that sacrifice is performed there, though, a little further on, it is said to be practised in Sālmali dvīpa also.

It would at first sight appear from the preceding passage (ii. 3, 11) of the Vishṇu Purāṇa (as well as from others which we shall encounter below), to be the intention of the writer to represent the inhabitants of Bhārata Varsha as a different race, or, at least as living under quite different conditions, from the inhabitants of the other dvīpas, and even of the other divisions (*varshas*) of Jambu dvīpa itself. From the use

of the word *mānushya* (humanity) here applied to the inhabitants of Bhārata Varsha, viewed in reference to the context, it would seem to be a natural inference that all the people exterior to it were beings of a different race. Yet in the descriptions of Kuśa dvīpa and Pushkara dvīpa (see below) the words *manujāḥ* and *mānavāḥ* "descendants of Manu," or "men," are applied to the dwellers in those continents. In the passage of the Jātimālā, moreover, translated by Mr. Colebrooke (Misc. Essays, ii. 179), we are told that "a chief of the twice-born tribe was brought by Vishṇu's eagle from Sāka dvīpa; thus have Sāka dvīpa Brāhmans become known in Jambu dvīpa." According to this verse, too, there should be an affinity of race between the people of these two dvīpas. It is also to be noted that the descendants of Priyavrata became kings of all the dvīpas, as well as of all the varshas of Jambu dvīpa (see above, pp. 489, 491). And in the passage quoted above, p. 478, from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 11, 3, it is said of Arjuna, son of Kṛitavīrya, that he was "lord of the seven dvīpas," "that he ruled over the earth with all its dvīpas."⁹ If, however, the kings were of the human race, it is natural to infer the same of the people.

But, in a subject of this sort, where the writers were following the suggestions of imagination only, it is to be expected that we should find inconsistencies.

Jambu dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of salt water (Wilson, V.P. ii. 109); and that sea again is bounded on its outer side by the dvīpa or continent of Plaksha running all round it. (V.P. ii. 4, 1. *Āśhūrodena yathā dvīpo Jambu-sanjño 'bhiveshṭitaḥ | sañveshṭya kshāram udadhīm Plaksha-dvīpas tathā sthitaḥ*). According to this scheme the several continents and seas form concentric circles, Jambu dvīpa being a circular island occupying the centre of the system.

Plaksha dvīpa is of twice the extent of Jambu dvīpa. The character and condition of its inhabitants are described as follows:

V. P. ii. 4, 5. *Nā chaivāsti yugāvasthā teshu sthāneshu saptasu | 6. Tretā-yuga-samāḥ kālāḥ sarvadaiva mahāmate | Plaksha-dvīpādīshu brahman S'ākadvīpāntākesu vai | 7. Pancha-varsha-sahasrāṇi janāḥ jīvanty anāmayaḥ | dharmāḥ panchasv athaiteshu varṇāsrama-vibhāga-jāḥ |*

⁹ Purāṇas is said to have possessed thirteen islands (dvīpas) of the ocean (above p. 307).

*varṇās tattrāpi chatvāras tām nibodha gadāmi te | Aryyakūḥ Kuravaś
chaiva Vīrāśāḥ Bhārīnāś cha ye | vipra-kshattriya-vaiśyās te śūdrās cha
muni-sattama |*

"In those seven provinces [which compose Plaksha dvīpa] the division of time into Yugas does not exist: but the character of existence is always that of the Tretā age. In the [five] dvīpas, beginning with Plaksha and ending with Sāka, the people live 5000 years, free from sickness. In those five dvīpas duties arise from the divisions of castes and orders. There are there also four castes, Āryyakas, Kurus, Vīrāśas, and Bhāvins, who are the Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras," and whose worship is thus described:

9. *Ijyate tatra bhagavāns tair varṇair Aryyakādibhiḥ | soma-rūpī
jagat-sraśtā sarvaḥ sarveśvaro Hariḥ |* "Hari who is All, and the lord of all, and the creator of the world, is adored in the form of Soma by these classes, the Āryyakas, etc."

The inhabitants of this dvīpa receive different names in the Bhāga-vata Purāṇa, being there called (v. 20, 4) "Hansas, Patangas, Ūrdhvāyanas, and Satyāngas, four castes, who, purified from passion and darkness by the touch of the waters of these rivers, live a thousand years, resemble the gods in their appearance and in their manner of procreation, and worship with the triple Veda the divine Soul, the Sun, who is the gate of heaven, and who is co-essential with the Vedas" (*Yāsāṁ jalopasparsāna-vidhūta-rajasa-tamaso Haṁsa-patangordhvāyana-satyānga-sanjñās chatvāro varṇāḥ sahasrāyusho vibudhopama-sandarśana-prajanamāḥ svarga-dīpān trayyā vidyayā bhogavantaṁ trayīmayāṁ sūryam ātmānaṁ yajante*).

In regard to Plaksha and the other four following dvīpas, the Bhāga-vata Purāṇa says, *ibid.* para. 6, that "their men are all alike in respect of natural perfection as shewn in length of life, senses, vigour, force, strength, intelligence, and courage" (*Plakshādishu pañchāsu puruṣhāṇām āyur indriyam ojaḥ saho balam buddhir vikramoḥ iti cha sarveśhām autpattikī siddhir avīśeṣeṇa varttate* |).

Plaksha dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of sugar-cane juice of the same compass as itself. ii. 4, 9, *Plaksha - dvīpa - pramāṇena Plaksha - dvīpāḥ samāvṛitāḥ | tathairēkṣu-rasodena parīveśānnakāriṇā |* Round the outer margin of this sea, and twice as extensive, runs Sālmala dvīpa (verse 11. *Sālmalena sanudro 'sau dvīpenekṣu-rasodakāḥ | vistarā-*

dvigunenātha sarvataḥ saṁvṛtaḥ sthitaḥ |). It is divided into seven Varshas, or divisions. Of their inhabitants it is said :

V. P. ii. 4, 12. *Saptaitāni tu varshāni chāturvarnya-yutāni cha | Sālmale ye tu varṇās cha vasanti te mahāmune | kapilās chārunāḥ pītāḥ kṛṣṇnās chaiva prīthak prīthak | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ śūdrās chaiva yajanti te | bhūgavantaṁ samastasya Viṣṇum ātmānam arjayaṁ | Vāyubhūtam mahā-śreṣṭhāir yajino yajna-saṁsthitam | 13. Devānāṁ atra sānnidhyam atīva sumanoḥaram |*

“These seven Varshas have a system of four castes. The castes which dwell there are severally the Kapilas, Aruṇas, Pītas, and Kṛṣṇas (or the Tawny, the Purple, the Yellow, and the Black). These, the Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras, worship with excellent sacrifices Viṣṇu, the divine and imperishable Soul of all things, in the form of Vāyu, and abiding in sacrifice. Here the vicinity of the gods is very delightful to the soul.”

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa says of this dvīpa, v. 20, 11: *Tad-varsha-purushāḥ Śrutadhara-vīryadhara-vasundhareshundhara-saṁjñāḥ bhāgavantaṁ vedamayaṁ somam ātmānaṁ vedena yajante |* “The men of the different divisions of this dvīpa, called Śrutadharas, Vīryadharas, Vasundharas, and Ishundharas, worship with the Veda the divine Soul Soma, who is co-essential with the Veda.”

This dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of wine of the same compass as itself (v. 13. *Esha dvīpaḥ samudrena surodena saṁvṛtaḥ | vistārāc chhālmalasyaiva samena tu samantataḥ*). The exterior shore of this sea is encompassed by Kuśa dvīpa, which is twice as extensive as Sālmala dvīpa (v. 13. *Surodakaḥ parivṛtaḥ Kuśadvīpena sarvataḥ | Sālmalasya tu vistārād dvigūṇena samantataḥ*). The inhabitants of Kuśa dvīpa are thus described, V.P. ii 4, 14 :

Tasyāṁ vasanti munjāḥ saha Daiteya dānaraiḥ | tathaiva deva-gandharva - yaksha - kimpurushādayaḥ | varṇās tattrūpi chatvāro nījanuṣṭhāna-tatparāḥ | Daminaḥ Śuśkṛināḥ Snehāḥ Mandhās cha mahāmune | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ śūdrās chānukramoditāḥ | 15. Yathokta-karma-karttrivṛt sūdhikāra-kṣayāya te | tattra te tu Kuśa-dvīpe Brahma-rūpaṁ Janārddanam | yajantaḥ kṣhapayanty ugram adhikāram phala-pradam |

“In this set of Varshas (of Kuśa dvīpa) dwell men with Daityas, Dānavas, Devas, Gandharvas, Yakshas, Kimpurushas, and other beings.

There, too, there are four castes, pursuing their proper observances, Damins, Sushmins, Snehas, and Mandehas, who in the order specified are Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras. In order to destroy their right [to reward] derived from the performance of these works, they worship Janārdana in the form of Brahma, and so neutralize this direful merit which brings rewards."

Of Kuśa dvīpa the Mahābhārata tells us, Bhīshmaparvan, verses 455-7: *Eteshu deva-gandharvāḥ prajāścha jagatīśvara | viharante ramante chu na teshu mriyate janāḥ | na teshu dasyavaḥ santi mlechha-jātyo 'pi vā nṛpa | gaura-prāyo janāḥ sarvaḥ sukumāras cha pāṛthiva* | "In these (Varshas of Kuśa dvīpa), gods, Gandharvas, and living creatures, amuse and enjoy themselves. No one dies there. There are no Dasyus or Mlechhas there. The people are fair, and of very delicate forms." The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, v. 20, 16, says, "The people of this dvīpa are called Kuśalas, Kovidas, Abhiyuktas, and Kulakas" (*Kuśa-dvīpaukasah Kuśala-kovidābhiyukta-kulaka-sanjñāḥ* |).

Kuśa dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of clarified butter, of the same circumference as itself.

Around this sea runs Krauncha dvīpa which is twice as large as Kuśa dvīpa. The V. P. says, ii. 4, 19: *Sarveshu eteshu ramyeshu varsha-śaila-vareshu cha | nivasanti nirātankāḥ saha deva-gaṇaiḥ prajāḥ | Pushkarāḥ Pushkalāḥ Dhanyās Tishmās chāttra mahāmune | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ śūdrās chānukramoditāḥ* | "In all these pleasant division-mountains of this dvīpa the people dwell, free from fear, in the society of the gods. [These people are] the Pushkaras, Pushkalas, Dhanyas, and Tishmas, who, as enumerated in order, are the Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras." The inhabitants of this dvīpa are called in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, v. 20, 22, " . . . Purushas, Rishabhas, Draviṇas, and Devakas" (*Purusharshabha-draviṇa-devaka-sanjñāḥ*). This dvīpa is encompassed by the sea of curds, which is of the same circumference as itself. The sea again, on its exterior edge, is surrounded by Sāka dvīpa,¹⁰ a continent twice the size of Krauncha dvīpa.

Of Sāka dvīpa it is said in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, ii. 4, 23 ff. :

Tattra puṇyāḥ janapadās chāturiarṇya-samanvitāḥ | nadyās chāttra mahāpuṇyāḥ sarva-pāpa-bhayāpahāḥ | . . . tāḥ pibanti mudā yuktāḥ Jaladādīshu ye sthitāḥ | varsheshu te janapadāḥ svargād abhyetya me-

¹⁰ In the M. Bh. (Bhīshmap. v. 408 ff.) Sākadvīpa comes next after Jambudvīpa.

dinim | 24. *Dharma-hānir na teshv asti na sangharshaḥ parasparam |*
maryādā-vyutkramo nāpi teshu deśeshu saptasu | 25. *Magās cha Māga-*
dhās chaiva Mānasāḥ Mandagās tathā | *Magāḥ brāhmaṇa-bhūyishṭhāḥ*
Māgadhāḥ kshattriyās tu te | *Vaiśyās tu Mānasāḥ jneyāḥ śūdrās teshāṃ*
tu Mandagāḥ | 26. *Sākadvīpe tu tair Viṣṇuḥ sūrya-rūpa-dharaḥ mune* |
yathoktair ijjate samyak karmabhir niyatātmanibhiḥ |

“There there are holy countries, peopled by persons belonging to the four castes; and holy rivers which remove all sin and fear. . . . The people who dwell in these divisions, Jalada, etc. [of Sāka dvīpa], drink these rivers with pleasure, even when they have come to earth from Svarga. There is among them no defect of virtue; nor any mutual rivalry; nor any transgression of rectitude in those seven countries. [There dwell] Magas, Māgadhas, Mānasas, and Mandagas, of whom the first are principally Brāhmans; the second are Kshattriyas; the third are Vaiśyas, and the fourth are Śūdras. By them Viṣṇu, in the form of the Sun, is worshipped with the prescribed ceremonies, and with intent minds.”

Of this dvīpa the Mahābhārata tells us, Bhīshmaparvan, verse 410, that the “people there are holy, and no one dies” (*tatra puṇyāḥ janapadāḥ na tatra mriyate naraḥ*). One of the mountains there is called Śyāma (black), “whence men have got this black colour” (verse 420. *Tataḥ śyāmatvam āpannāḥ janāḥ janapadeśvara*). Dhṛitarāshṭra then says to his informant Sanjaya that he has great doubts as to “how living creatures have become black.” Sanjaya promises in the following lines, the sense of which is not very clear, to explain the mystery: 422. *Sarveshva eva mahārāja dvīpeṣu Kuru-nandana | gaurāḥ kṛishṇās cha pātango yato varṇāntare dvijāḥ* | *śyāmo yasmāt pravṛitto vai tat te rakshyāmi Bhārata* | But as he proceeds no further, we lose the benefit of his solution of this interesting physiological problem. The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, v. 20, 28, gives the four classes of men in this dvīpa the names of Rītavratas, Satyavratas, Dānavratas, and Anuvratas (*tad-varsha-purushāḥ Rītavrata-Satyavrata-Dānavratānucrata-nāmānaḥ*).

This Sāka dvīpa is surrounded by the ocean of milk as by an armlet. This ocean again is encompassed on its outer side by Pushkara dvīpa, which is twice as extensive as Sāka dvīpa.

Of Pushkara dvīpa it is said, Viṣṇu Purāṇa, ii. 4, 28 ff.:

Daśa-varsha-sahasrāṇi tatra jīvanti mānavāḥ | nirūmayāḥ viśokāścha

rāga-dvesha-vivarijitatāḥ | adhamottamau na teshv āstāṁ na badhya-badhakau dvīja | nershyā 'sūyā bhayaṁ rosho dosho lobhādiko na cha |
 29. *Satyānrite na tattrāstāṁ dvīpe Pushkara-sanjnite |* 30.
Tulya-veśās tu manujāḥ devais tattraika-rūpiṇaḥ | 31. *Varnāśramāchārāhinam dharmōcharaṇa - varjjitam | trayī - vārttā - dāṇḍanīti - śuśrūṣhā - rahitaṁ cha yat |* 32. *Varsha-dvayaṁ tu maittreya bhauma-svargo 'yam uttamaḥ | sarvasya sukha-daḥ kālo jarā-rogaḍi-varjjitaḥ |*

“In this dvīpa men live ten thousand years, free from sickness and sorrow, from affection and hatred. There is no distinction among them of highest and lowest, of killer and slain; there is no envy, nor ill-will, nor fear, nor anger, nor defect, nor covetousness, nor other fault; there is there neither truth nor falsehood. Men there are all of the same appearance, of one form with the gods. The two divisions of this dvīpa have no rules of caste or orders, nor any observances of duty; the three Vedas, the Purāṇas (or, trade), the rules of criminal law and service do not exist. This [dvīpa] is a most excellent terrestrial heaven; where time brings happiness to all, and is exempt from decay, sickness, and all other evils.”¹¹

Of all the dvīpas together, the Mahābhārata says, Bhīṣmaparvan, verses 468 ff. :

Evaṁ dvīpeshu sarveshu prajānām Kuru-nandana | brahmacharyyena satyena prajānām hi damena cha | ārogyāyuhḥpramāṇābhyaṁ dviguṇam dviguṇam tataḥ | eko janapado rājan dvīpeshu eteshu Bhārata | uktāḥ

¹¹ In the same way as Pushkara, the remotest dvīpa, is here described to be the scene of the greatest perfection, we find Homer placing the Elysian plains on the furthest verge of the earth :

ἀλλὰ σ' ἐς 'Ηλύσιον πεδῖον καὶ πείρατα γαίης
 ἀθάνατοι πέμψουσιν, ὅθι ξανθὸς Ῥαδάμανθους,
 τῇ περ ῥήϊστη βιοτῇ πέλει ἀνθρώποισιν.
 οὐ νιφετὸς, οὔτ' ἄρ' χειμὼν πολὺς οὔτε ποτ' ὄμβρος,
 ἀλλ' αἰεὶ Ζεφύροιο λιγὺ πνείοντας ἀήτας
 'Οκεανὸς ἀνίσχιν ἀναψύχειν ἀνθρώπους. *Odyssey Δ. 563-568.*

“Thee, favoured man, to earth's remotest end,
 The Elysian plain, the immortal gods shall send,—
 That realm which fair-haired Rhadamanthys sways,
 Where, free from toil, men pass their tranquil days.
 No tempests vex that land, no rain, nor snow;
 But ceaseless Zephyrs from the ocean blow,
 Which sweetly breathe and gently stir the air,
 And to the dwellers grateful coolness bear.”

*Janapadāḥ yeshu karma chaikam pradṛśyate | īśvaro daṇḍam udyamya
svayam eva Prajāpatiḥ | dvīpānāṃ tu mahārāja rakshaṃs tiśṭhati nī-
yadā | sa rājā sa śīvo rājan sa pitā prapitāmahaiḥ | gopāyati nara-
śreṣṭha prajāḥ sa-jada-paṇḍitāḥ | bhojanaṃ chāttra Kauravya prajāḥ
svayam upasthitam | siddham eva mahābāho tad hi bhunjanti nityadā |*

“Thus in all these dvīpas each country doubly exceeds the former one in the abstinence, veracity, and self-restraint, in the health and the length of life of its inhabitants. In these dvīpas the people is one, and one sort of action is perceivable. Prajāpati, the lord, wielding his sceptre, himself governs these dvīpas. He, the king, the auspicious one (śīva), the father, along with the patriarchs, protects all creatures, ignorant as well as learned.” (So there are differences of intellectual condition in these dvīpas after all!) “All these people eat prepared food, which comes to them of itself.”

Pushkara is surrounded by a sea of fresh water equal to itself in compass. What is beyond is afterwards described :

V.P. ii. 4, 37. *Svādūdakasya parato dṛśyate loka-saṁsthitiḥ | dviguṇā
kāncanā bhūmiḥ sarva-jantu-vivarjita | 38. Lokāloka tataḥ śailo yoja-
nāyuta-vistṛitaḥ | uchchhrāyenāpi tāvanti sahasrāṇy achalo hi saḥ | tatas
tamaḥ samāvṛitya taṃ śailaṃ sarvataḥ sthitam | tamaś chāṇḍa-kaṭāhena
samantāt parisreshṭitam |*

“On the other side of the sea is beheld a golden land of twice its extent, but without inhabitants. Beyond that is the Lokāloka mountain, which is ten thousand yojanas in breadth, and as many thousands in height. It is on all sides invested with darkness. This darkness is encompassed by the shell of the mundane egg.”¹²

In a following chapter, however, (the seventh) of this same book, the

¹² See Manu, i. verses 9 and 12, quoted above, p. 35. The thirteenth verse is as follows : *Tūbhyāṃ sa śakātūbhyāṃ cha divam bhūmim cha nirmame | madhye vyoma
dīśas chūṣṭāv apāṃ sthānaṃ cha sūśvataṃ |* “From these two halves of the shell he fashioned the heaven and the earth, and in the middle (he formed) the sky, and the eight quarters, and the eternal abode of the waters.” In regard to the darkness (tamas) with which the mountain Lokāloka is said to be enveloped, compare Manu iv. 242, where the spirits of the departed are said to pass by their righteousness through the darkness which is hard to be traversed (*dhormena hi saḥāyena tamas tarati dustaram*); and Atharva-veda, ix. 5, 1, “Crossing the darkness, in many directions immense, let the unborn ascend to the third heaven” (*tīrtvā tamāms bahudhā mahānti ajo nākam ā kramatām trūṭīyan*). See Journal Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 298, note 2, and p. 304.

shell of the mundane egg is said to be outside of the seven spheres of which this system is composed :

V.P. ii. 7, 19. *Ete sapta mayā lokāḥ Maitreya kathitās tava | pātālāni cha saptaiva brahmāṇḍasyaiśha vistarāḥ | etad anḍa-kaṭūhena tiryak-chorddhvam adhas tathā | kapitthasya yathā vījaṁ sarvato vai samāvṛitam |*

“These seven spheres have been described by me ; and there are also seven Pātālas : this is the extent of Brahmā’s egg. The whole is surrounded by the shell of the egg at the sides, above, and below, just as the seed of the wood-apple (is covered by the rind).”

This system, however, it appears, is but a very small part of the whole of the universe :

Ibid. verse 24. *Anḍānāṁ tu sahasrāṇāṁ sahasrāṇy ayutāni cha | idṛśānāṁ tathā tattva koṭi-koṭi-śatāni cha |*

“There are thousands and ten thousands of thousands of such mundane eggs ; nay hundreds of millions of millions.”

Indian mythology, when striving after sublimity, and seeking to excite astonishment, often displays an extravagant and puerile facility in the fabrication of large numbers. But, in the sentence last quoted, its conjectures are substantially in unison with the discoveries of modern astronomy ; or rather, they are inadequate representations of the simple truth, as no figures can express the contents of infinite space.

APPENDIX.

Page 6, line 24.

Professor Wilson's analyses of the Agni, Brahma-vaivartta, Vishṇu and Vāyu Purāṇas, were originally published, not in the "Gleanings in Science," but in the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, vol. i.; and are reprinted in the 3rd vol. of Wilson's Collected Works, edited by Dr. R. Rost.

Page 37, line 1.

"Abodes of gods." Böhrtlingk and Roth in their Sanskrit Lexicon, *s.v. nikāya*, shew that in other passages, if not here also, the compound word *deva-nikāya* should be rendered "classes, or assemblages, of gods."

Page 50, line 25.

Compare the passage, quoted below, in the note on p. 115, from the Sāntiparvan of the M. Bh., verses 6130 ff.

Pages 90 ff.

The representations of the Kṛita yuga are not always consistent. In the Dronaparvan, verses 2023 ff. a story is told of King Akampana, who lived in that age, and who was yet so far from enjoying the tranquillity generally predicated of that happy time that he was overcome by his enemies in a battle, in which he lost his son, and suffered in consequence severe affliction.

Page 97, note 190.

It is similarly said in the Dronaparvan, verse 2395 : *Kshatād nas trāyate sarvān ity evaṁ kshattriyo 'bharat* | "He (Prithu) became a Kshattriya by delivering us all from injuries." See also Sāntiparvan, verse 1031.

Page 115, line 13.

The Sāntiparvan of the M. Bh., verses 6130 ff., gives a similar description of the original state of all things, and of the birth of Brahmā. Bhīṣhma is the speaker : *Salilakārṇavaṃ tāta purā sarvaṃ abhūd idam | nishprakampam anākāśam anirdeśya-mahītalām | tamasā vṛitam asparśam api gambhīra-darśanam | niśabdam vā 'prameyaṃ cha tatra jajne Pitā-mahaḥ | so 'srijad vātam agniṃ cha bhāskaraṃ chāpi vīryavān | ākāśam asrijach chorddhvam adho bhūmiṃ cha nairṛitīm | nabhaḥ sa-chandra-tāraṃ cha nakshattrāṇi grahāṃs tathā | samvatsarān ṛitūn māsān pakshūn atha lavān kṣaṇān | tataḥ śarīraṃ loka-sthāṃ sthāpayitvā Pitā-mahaḥ | janayāmāsa bhagavān puttrān uttama-tejasah |* 6135. *Marīchīm ṛishīm Attriṃ cha Pulastyaṃ Pulahaṃ Kratum | Vasiṣṭhāṅgīrasau chobhau Rudraṃ cha prabhūm īśvaram | Prachetasas tathā Dakṣaḥ kanyāḥ shakṣīm ajījanat | tāḥ vai brahmarshayaḥ sarvāḥ prajāṛtham pratipedire | tābhyo viśvāni bhūtāni devāḥ pitṛi-gaṇās tatha | gandharvāp-sarasās chaiva rakṣhāṃsi viriḍhāni cha | . . .* 6149. *Jajne tāta jagat sarvaṃ tathā sthāvara-jangamam |* 6150. *Bhūta-sargam imāṃ kṛtvā sarva-loka-pitāmahaḥ | śāśvataṃ veda-paṭhitaṃ dharmam prayuyuje tataḥ | tasmin dharme sthitāḥ devāḥ sahāchāryya-purohitāḥ | ādityāḥ vasavo rudrāḥ sa-sādhyāḥ marud-āśvinaḥ |* "This entire universe was formerly one expanse of water, motionless, without æther, without any distinguishable earth, enveloped in darkness, imperceptible to touch, with an appearance of (vast) depth, silent, and measureless. There Pitāmaha (Brahmā) was born. That mighty god created wind, fire, and the sun, the æther¹ above, and under it the earth belonging to Nirṛiti, the sky, with the moon, stars, constellations, and planets, the years, seasons, months, half-months, and the minute sub-divisions of time. Having established the frame of the universe, the divine Pitāmaha begot sons of eminent splendour, (6135) Marīchi, the rishi Attri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Vasiṣṭha, Angiras, and the mighty lord Rudra. Daksha, the son of Prachetas, also begot sixty daughters, all of whom were taken by the Brahmarshis² for the purpose of propagating offspring. From these females, all beings, gods, pitṛis, gandharvas, apsarasas, and various kinds of rākshases, . . . (6149) this

¹ And yet it is elsewhere said (Anuśāsanap. 2161, quoted above in p. 130) that the æther (*ākāśa*) cannot be created.

² Here this word must mean "rishis, sons of Brahmā."

entire world, moving and stationary, was produced. 6150. Having formed this creation of living beings, the parent of all worlds established the eternal rule of duty as read in the Veda. To this rule of duty the gods, with their teachers and domestic priests, the Ādityas, Vasus, Rudras, Sādhyas, Maruts, and Aśvins conformed."

Another account of the creation is given in the same book of the M. Bh., verses 7518 ff., where it is ascribed to Vishṇu in the form of Govinda, or Keśava (Kṛishṇa), who is identified with the supreme and universal Purusha. Resting on the waters (7527) he created by his thought Sankarshana, the first-born of all beings. Then (7529) a lotus sprang from his (either Sankarshana's or Vishṇu's) navel, from which again (7530) Brahmā was produced. Brahmā afterwards created his seven mind-born sons, Marīchi, Attri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Daksha (7534).

Compare Bhishmaparvan; verses 3017 ff.

Page 122, note 223.

Compare the passage quoted in the last note from the Sāntiparvan, verse 6135.

Page 128, line 20.

The Sāntiparvan, verses 7548 ff. ascribes the creation of the four castes to Kṛishṇa: *Tataḥ Kṛishṇo mahābhāgaḥ punar eva Yudhishṭhira | brāhmaṇānāṁ śataṁ śreṣṭham mukhād evāsrijat prabhuḥ | bāhubhyāṁ kshattriya-śataṁ vaiśyānāṁ ūrataḥ śataṁ | padbhyāṁ śūdra-śataṁ chaiva Keśavo Bharatarshabha |* "Then again the great Kṛishṇa created a hundred Brāhmanas, the most excellent (class), from his mouth, a hundred Kshattriyas from his arms, a hundred Vaiśyas from his thighs, and a hundred Sūdras from his feet."

Compare Bhishmaparvan, verse 3029.

Page 128, note 238.

In another place also, verses 6208 f., the Anuśāsanaparvan ranks purohitas with Sūdras: *Sūdra-karma tu yaḥ kuryād avahāya sva-karma cha | sa vijneyo yathā śūdro na cha bhojyaḥ kathanchana | chikitsakaḥ kāṇḍapriṣṭhaḥ purādhyaḥ purōhitaḥ | sām̐vatsaro vṛithādhyāyī sarve te śūdra-sammitāḥ |* "He, who, abandoning his own work, does the work of a Sūdra, is to be regarded as a Sūdra, and not to be invited to a feast. A physician, a kāṇḍapriṣṭha (see above, p. 442), a

city governor, a purohita, an astrologer, one who studies to no purpose, —all these are on a level with Sūdras.”

Pages 144 ff.

See above, note on pp. 90 ff.

Page 150, line 4.

Compare Dronaparvan, verse 2397.

Page 220, line 14.

I am indebted to Professor Max Müller for pointing out to me two passages in Indian commentators in which Manu is spoken of as a Kshattriya. The first is from Madhusūdana Sarasvatī's Commentary on the Bhagavad-gītā, iv. 1. The words of the text are these : *S'ri-Bhagavān uvācha | imāṁ Vivasrate yogam proktavān aham arjayaṁ | Vivasrān Manave prāha Manuḥ Ikṣvākave'bravīt | evaṁ paramparā-prāptam imāṁ rājarshayo viduḥ | sa kāleṇa mahatā yogo naśṭhaḥ parantapa | sa evāyaṁ mayā te 'dya yogaḥ proktaḥ purātanaḥ | bhakto 'si me sakhā cheti rahasyaṁ etaḍ uttamam |* “The divine Being (Kṛishṇa) said: I declared to Vivasvat (the Sun) this imperishable Yoga-doctrine. Vivasvat told it to (his son) Manu; and Manu to (his son) Ikṣvāku. Thus do royal rishis know it as handed down by tradition. Through lapse of time however it was lost. I have to day therefore revealed to thee (anew) this ancient system, this most excellent mystery; for thou art devoted to me and my friend.”

On this Madhusūdana remarks: “*Vivasrate*” *sarva-kshattriya-raṁśa-vija-bhūtāya Ādityāya proktavān* | “‘I declared it to Vivasvat’ i.e. to Āditya (the Sun) who was the source of the whole Kshattriya race.”

The second passage is from Someśvara's ṭīkā on Kumārila Bhaṭṭa's Mīmāṃsa-vārttika. I must, however, first adduce a portion of the text of the latter work which forms the subject of Someśvara's annotation. For a copy of this passage, which is otherwise of interest, I am indebted to Professor Goldstücker, who has been kind enough to copy it for me.² The first extract refers to Jaimini's Sūtra, i. 3, 3; where the question under discussion is, in what circumstances authority can be assigned to

² See Professor Müller's Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 79 f. where this passage is partly extracted and translated. See also the same author's Chips from a German Workshop, vol. ii. pp. 338 ff.

the Smṛiti when the Śruti, or Veda, is silent. After some other remarks Kumāṛila proceeds: *S'ākyādi-rachanāni tu katipaya-dama-dā-nādi-rachana-varjjaṃ sarvāṇy eva samasta-chaturdaśa-vidyā-sthāna-viruddhāni trayī-mārga-vyutthita-viruddhācharanaiś cha Buddhādidhiḥ prañī-tāni trayī-bāhyebhyaś chaturtha-varṇa-niravasita-prāyebhyo ryāmūdhe-bhyaḥ samarthitāni iti na veda-mūlatvena sambhāryante | svadharmāti-kramena cha yena kshattriyena satā pravakṛitva-pratigrahaḥ pratipannau sa dharmam aviplutam upadekshyati iti kaḥ samāśvasaḥ | uktāṃ cha "para-loka-viruddhāni kurvāṇāṃ dūratas tyajet | ātmānaṃ yo viśamḍhatte so 'nyasmai syāt kathaṃ hitaḥ" iti | Buddhādeḥ punar ayam evātikramo 'lan-kāra-buddhaḥ sthito yena evam āha "kali-kalusha-kṛitāni yāni loke mayi nipatantu | vimuchyātāṃ tu lokaḥ" iti | sa kila loka-hitārtha-kshattriya-dharmam atikramya brāhmaṇa-vṛttim pravakṛitvam pratipadya prati-shedhātikramāsamarthair brāhmaṇair ananusīṣṭāṃ dharmam bāhya-janān anusāsad dharma-pīḍāṃ apy ātmano 'ngīkṛitya parānugrahaṃ kṛitarān ity evamvidhair eva guṇaiḥ stūyate | tad-anusīṣṭānusārīṇāś cha sarve eva śruti-smṛiti-vihita-dharmātikramena vyavaharanto viruddhāchā-ratvena jñāyante | tena pratyakshayā śrūtyā virodhe grantha-kāriṇāṃ grahitṛācharitṛiṇāṃ grantha-prāmāṇya-bādhanam | na hy eṣhāṃ pūr-roktena nyāyena śruti-pratibaddhānāṃ sva-mūla-śruty-anumāna-sāmar-thyam asti |* "But the precepts of Śākya and others, with the exception of a few enjoining dispassion, liberality, etc., are all contrary to the fourteen classes of scientific treatises, and composed by Buddha and others whose practice was opposed to the law of the three Vedas, as well as calculated for men belonging mostly to the fourth caste who are excluded from the Vedas, debarred from pure observances, and deluded:—consequently they cannot be presumed to be founded on the Veda. And what confidence can we have that one (*i.e.* Buddha) who being a Kshattriya,³ transgressed the obligations of his own order, and assumed the function of teaching and the right to receive presents, would inculcate a pure system of duty? For it has been said: 'Let everyone avoid a man who practises acts destructive to future happiness. How can he who ruins himself be of any benefit to others?' And yet this very transgression of Buddha and his followers is conceived as being a feather in his cap; since he spoke thus, 'Let all the evils resulting from the sin of the Kali age fall upon me; and let the world be redeemed.' Thus, abandoning the

³ Compare Colebrooke's *Misc. Essays*, i. 312.

duties of a Kshattriya, which are beneficial to the world, assuming the function of a teacher which belongs only to the Brāhmans, and instructing men who were out of the pale in duty which was not taught by the Brāhmans who could not transgress the prohibition (to give such instruction), he sought to do a kindness to others, while consenting to violate his own obligations; and for such merits as these he is praised! And all who follow his instructions, acting in contravention of the prescriptions of the Sruti and Smṛiti, are notorious for their erroneous practices. Hence from the opposition in which the authors of these books, as well as those who receive and act according to them, stand to manifest injunctions of the Veda, the authority of these works is destroyed.⁴ For since they are by the above reasoning opposed by the Veda, the inference that they rest upon independent Vedic authority of their own possesses no force."

The next passage is from Kumārila's Vārttika on Jaimini's Sūtra, i. 3, 7: *Vedenai ābhyanyajātū yeshām eva pravakṛitā | nityānām abhidheyānām manvantara-yugādīṣhu | teshām viparivartteshu kurvātām dharmā-saṁhitāḥ | vacanāni pramāṇāni nānyeshām iti nischayaḥ | tathā cha Manur ṛichāḥ sāmīdhenyo bharanti ity asya vīdher vākya-śeṣe śrūyate* "Manur vai yat kīncid aradat tad bhesajam bhesajātāyai"⁵ *iti prāyaścittādy-upadeśa-vachanam pāpa-vyādher bhesajam* | "It is certain that the precepts of those persons only whose right to expound the eternal meanings of scripture in the different manvantaras and yugas has been recognized by the Veda, are to be regarded as authoritative, when in the revolutions (of those great mundane periods) they compose codes of law. Accordingly by way of complement to the Vedic passage containing the precept (*vīdhī*) beginning 'there are these *sāmīdheni* verses of Manu' it is declared, 'whatever Manu said is a healing remedy;' i.e. his prescriptions in regard to expiatory rites, etc., are remedies for the malady of sin."

⁴ The Nyāya-mūla-vistara, i. 3, 4, quotes Kumārila as raising the question whether the practice of innocence, which Śākya (Buddha) inculcated, was, or was not, a duty from its conformity to the Veda, and as solving it in the negative, since cow's milk put into a dog-skin cannot be pure (*Śākyoktāhiṁsanaṁ dharmo na vā dharmāḥ śrutatataḥ | na dharmo na hi pūtaṁ syād go-kṣīraṁ śa-a-dṛitaṁ dṛitam*).

⁵ These words are quoted by Bothlingk and Roth, s v. *bhesajātā*, as taken from the Panchaviṁśa Brāhmaṇa, 23, 16, 7. A similar passage occurs in the Taitt. Saṁh. ii. 2, 10, 2.

From Someśvara's elaborate comment on the former of these two passages I need only extract the following sentences: *Etad abhiyuktavachanena draḍhayati "uktaṁ cha" | Manos tu kshattriyyasyāpi pravakṛitvam "yad vai kinchid Manur aradat tad bheshajam" iti vedānujñātvād aviruddham ity āśayaḥ* | "This he confirms by the words of a learned man which he introduces by the phrase 'for it has been said.' But although Manu was a Kshattriya, his assumption of the office of teacher was not opposed to the Veda, because it is sanctioned by the Vedic text 'whatever Manu said was a remedy: ' Such is the purport."

Page 254, line 12.

Yas tityāja sachi-vidam, etc. This verse is quoted in the Taittiriya Āraṇyaka (pp. 159 f. of Cal. edit.), which, however, reads *sakhi-vidam* instead of *sachi-vidam*. An explanation of the passage is there given by the Commentator.

Page 264, line 14.

Professor Weber considers (Indische Studien, i. 52) that "the yau-dhāḥ and the arhantah were the forerunners of the Rājanyas and the Brāhmanas." See the whole passage below in the note on p. 366.

Page 268, note 51.

Compare Āśvalāyana's Srauta-Sūtras, i. 3, 3 and 4, and commentary (p. 22 of Cal. edit.). Prithī Vainya is, as I find from Böhtlingk and Roth's Lexicon, *s.v.*, referred to also in the Atharva-veda, viii. 10, 24. The words are these: *Sā udakrāmat sā manushyān āgacchat | tām manushyāḥ upāhvayanta "irāvaty ehi" iti | tasyāḥ Manur Vaivasvato vatsaḥ āsit prithivī pātram | tām Prithī Vainyo 'dhok tām kṛishīm cha sasyaṁ cha adhok | te kṛishīm cha sasyaṁ cha manushyāḥ upajīvanti ityādi* | "She (*i.e.* Virāj) ascended: she came to men. Men called her to them, saying, 'Come, Irāvati.' Manu Vaivasvata was her calf, and the earth her vessel. Prithī Vainya milked her; he milked from her agriculture and grain. Men subsist on agriculture and grain."

See Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. i. pp. 183 ff., where Prithu's (this is the Puranic form of the word) reign is described. It is there stated that this king, "taking the lord Manu Svāyambhuva for his calf, milked from the earth into his own hand all kinds of grain from a desire to benefit his subjects" (V.P. i. 13, 54. *Sa kalpayitvā vatsaṁ tu*

Manuṁ Srāyambhuvam prabhum | sve pānau prithivī-nātho dudoha prithivīm Prithuḥ | 55. Sasya-jātāni sarvāni prajānāṁ hita-kāmyayā). See also the passage quoted from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa by the editor Dr. Hall in pp. 189 ff. The original germ of these accounts is evidently to be found in the passage of the Atharva-veda, from which the short text I have cited is taken.

Prithu's reign is also described in the Dronaparvan, 2394 ff., and Sāntiparvan, 1030 ff.

Page 286, line 8 from the foot.

The Sṛinjayas are mentioned in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xii. 9, 3, 1 ff. and 13 (see Weber's Indische Studien, i. 207), as opposing without effect the celebration of a sacrifice which was proposed to be offered for the restoration of Duṣṭarītu Paunsāyana to his ancestral kingdom.

Page 345, line 24.

Professor Aufrecht has pointed out to me a short passage in the Taittirīya Sanhitā, iii. 1, 7, 2, in which Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni are mentioned together as contending with Vasishṭha: *Viśvāmitra-Jamadagnī Vasishṭhena aspaddhetām | sa etaj Jamadagnir vihavayam apaśyat | tena vai sa Vasishṭhasya indriyaṁ vīryam avṛinkta | yad vihavayam śasyate indriyam eva tad vīryam yajamāno bhrātrivasya vṛinkte | yasya bhūyāṁso yajna-kratavaḥ ity āhuḥ sa devatāḥ vṛinkte |* "Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni were contending with Vasishṭha. Jamadagni beheld this vihavaya text, and with it he destroyed the vigour and energy of Vasishṭha. When the vihavaya is recited, then the sacrificer destroys the vigour and energy of his enemy. He whose oblations and all attendant ceremonies are superior destroys the gods (of his opponent)."

Page 366, note 164.

In a notice of Lāṭyāyana's Sūtras, in Indische Studien, i. 50, Professor Weber observes: "At the same time I remark here that the presence of Sūdras at the ceremonies, although on the outside of the sacrificial ground, was permitted—a point which results from the fact that during the dikṣhā they were not to be addressed (iii. 3). Here and there a Sūdra appears as acting, although in a degraded position. Compare iv. 3, 5: *āryo* (i.e. *vaiśyaḥ*, according to the commentator Agnisvāmin) *antarvedi . . . bahirvedi śūdraḥ | āryābhāve yaḥ kaś*

cha āryyo varṇaḥ (*brāhmaṇo vā kṣattriyo vā*, Agnisvāmin). Thus their position, like that of the Nishādas, was not so wretched as it became afterwards. Toleration was still necessary; indeed the strict Brahmanical principle was not yet generally recognized among the nearest Arian races. This is shown by the following fact. Before entering on the Vratya-stomas, Lātyāyana treats, viii. 5, of an imprecatory rite called Syena (the falcon), which is not taught in the Panchaviṁśa, but in the Shadvimśa (iv. 2). The tribes mentioned by Pāṇini, v. 3, 112 ff., are there described: *Vratinānām⁶ yaudhānām puttrān anūchānān ṛitviḥ ṛiṇīta śyenasya* | “*arhatām eva*” *iti S’āṇḍilyaḥ⁷* | (“Let the learned sons of warriors, who live by the profession of Vratas, be chosen as priests for the Syena. ‘The sons of arhats only’ [should be chosen] says S’āṇḍilya”). “Whilst,” proceeds Prof. W., “in the beginning of the Sūtra nine things are required for a ṛitvij (priest), viz. that he should be (1) ārsheyaḥ (*ā dasamāt purushād aryaarachhinnam ārshaṁ yasya*, ‘able to trace his unbroken descent for ten generations in the family of a rishi’); (2) anūchānaḥ (*śishyebhyo vidyā-sampradānām yaḥ kṛitavān*, “one who has imparted knowledge to pupils’); (3) sādhu-charaṇaḥ (*ṣaṭsu brāhmaṇa-karmasv avasthitaḥ prāśasta-karmā*, ‘one who has practised the six duties of a Brāhmaṇ, a man of approved conduct’); (4) vāgmī (eloquent); (5) anyūnāngaḥ (without deficiency in his members); (6) anatiṛiktāngaḥ (without superfluous members); (7) dvesataḥ (equal in length above and below the navel); (8) anati-kṛishṇaḥ; (9) anatisvetataḥ (*na atibālo na atiriddhaḥ*, ‘neither too young nor too old’),—Lātyāyana here contents himself with putting forward one only of these requirements, the second (*i.e.* that the priest should be ‘learned’), as essential. The title Arhat for teacher, which was at a later period used exclusively by the Buddhists, is found in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, (iii. 4, 3, 6) and the Taittirīya Aranyaka,⁸ and

⁶ *Nānā-jātīyāḥ aniyata-ṛitayāḥ utsedha-jīvināḥ sanghāḥ vrātūḥ* | (Patānjali, quoted by Weber) “Viātas are the various classes of people who have no fixed profession, and live by violence.” *Vratena śarīrāyāsena jīvati vrātīnaḥ* (Comm. on Pāṇini, v. 2, 21) “He who lives by bodily labour is a vrātīna.” The word means “he who lives by the labour usual among Vratas,” according to another comment cited by Weber.

⁷ *Arhatām eva varāṇam karttavyam iti S’āṇḍilyaḥ* | “Arhats only are to be chosen, says S’āṇḍilya” (Agnisvāmin, quoted by Weber).

⁸ It also occurs in Ait. Br. i. 15 (see Böhlingk and Roth, *s.v.*). To his translation of this passage Dr. Haug appends the following note. “The term is *arhat*, a word

is known in the Gaṇa Brāhmaṇa (Pāṇini, v. 1, 124). The Yaudhāḥ and Arhantaḥ are the forerunners of the Rājanyas and the Brāhmins.' According to Professor Weber, Ind. St. i. 207, note, a Sthapati "means, according to Kātyāyana's Śrauta Sūtras, xxii. 11, 11, a Vaiśya, or any other person (according to Kātyāyana, i. 1, 12, he may even be a Nishāda) who has celebrated the Gosava sacrifice, after being chosen by his subjects to be their ruler."

Page 378, lines 1-3.

Compare Droṇaparvan, verse 2149 : *nanv eshām niśchitā nishṭhā nishṭhā saptapadī smṛitā* |

Page 400, line 9 from bottom.

If further proof of this sense of *brahmarshi* be wanted, it may be found in the words *viprarshi* and *drījarshi*, which must be regarded as its synonymes, and which can only mean "Brāhman-rishi."

Page 423, line 12, and foot-note.

The same verse with some variations is repeated in the Anuśāsana-parvan, verse 6262 : *Rājā Mitrasahaś chaiva Vaśishṭhāya mahātmane | Madayantīm priyām bhāryyām datvā cha trīdivam gataḥ* | "And king Mitrasaha, having bestowed his dear wife Madayantī on the great Vaśishṭha, went to heaven." Here, it will be observed, the name Madayantī is correctly given.

Page 423, line 17.

This stanza is repeated in Anuśāsana-parvan, verse 6250, with the following variation in the second line : *arghyam pradāya vidhivaḥ lebhe lokān anuttamān* |

Page 436, line 5 from the foot.

I find that two other instances of Brāhmins receiving instruction from Rājanyas are alluded to by Professor Weber, Ind. Stud. x. 117.

well known, chiefly to the students of Buddhism. Sāyaṇa explains it by "a great Brāhman, or a Brāhman (in general)." In reference to another part of the sentence in which this word occurs, Dr. Haug adds "That cows were killed at the time of receiving a most distinguished guest is stated in the Smritis. But as Sāyaṇa observes (which entirely agrees with opinions held now-a-days), this custom belongs to former yugas (periods of the world). Thence the word *goghna*, i.e. 'cowkiller,' means in the more ancient Sanskrit books 'a guest' (see the commentators on Pāṇini, 3, 4, 73) for the reception of a high guest was the death of the cow of the house."

The first is recorded in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, x. 6, 1, 2 ff. ; where it is stated that six Brāhmans, who were at issue with one another regarding Vaiśvānara (Agni), and were aware that king Aśvapati the Kaikeya was well informed on the subject, repaired to him for instruction and requested that he would treat them as his pupils. He first asked them 'if they were not themselves learned in the Veda as well as the sons of learned men, and how they could in that case come to consult him' (" *Yan nu bhagavanto 'nūchānāḥ anūchāna-putrāḥ | kim idam* " *iti*). They, however, persisted in their request, when he asked them severally what they considered Vaiśvānara to be, expressed his concurrence in their replies, though all different, as partial solutions of the question, and ended by giving them some further insight into the subject of their enquiry. The second instance is taken from the Chhāndogya Upanishad, i. 8, 1, which commences thus: *Trayo ha udgīthe kuśalāḥ babhūvaḥ Ś'ilakāḥ Śālāvatyaś Chaikitāyano Dālhbhyaḥ Pravāhaṇo Jaivalir iti | te ha ūchur "udgīthe kathāṁ vadāma" iti | 2. "Tathā" iti ha samupariviśuḥ | sa ha Pravāhaṇo Jaivalir uvācha "bhagavantūr agre vadatām | brāhmaṇayor vadator vāchaṁ śroshyāmi" iti |* "Three men were skilled in the Udgītha, Ś'ilaka Śālāvatya, Chaikitāyana Dālhbhya, and Pravāhaṇa Jaivali. They said, 'We are skilled in the Udgītha; come let us discuss it.' (Saying) 'so be it,' they sat down. Pravāhaṇa Jaivali said, 'Let your reverences speak first; I will listen to the discourse of Brāhmans discussing the question.' " Ś'ilaka Śālāvatya then asked Chaikitāyana Dālhbhya a series of questions; but was dissatisfied with his final reply. Being interrogated in his turn by Chaikitāyana, Ś'ilaka answered; but his answer was disapproved by Pravāhaṇa Jaivali, who finally proceeded to supply the proper solution.

In two other passages the same Upanishad, as quoted above in p. 195, and explained by the commentator, recognizes the fact of sacred science being possessed, and handed down, by K-hattriyas. See also the note on p. 220, above, p. 508. The doctrines held by Rājanyas are not, however, always treated with such respect. In the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, viii. 1, 4, 10, an opinion in regard to breath (*prāṇa*) is attributed to Svarijit Nāgnajita, or Nagnajit the Gāndhāra, of which the writer contemptuously remarks that "he said this like a Rājanya" (*Yat sa tad uvācha rājanyabandhur iva tv eva tad uvācha*); and he then proceeds to refute it (see Weber's Indische Studien, i. 218). It appears that the Smṛiti

recognizes the possibility of a Brāhman becoming in certain circumstances the pupil of a Rājanya or a Vaiśya. Thus Manu says, ii. 241 : *Abrahmanād adhyayanam āpat-kāle vidhīyate | anuvrajyā cha śuśrūṣhā yāvad adhyayanaṁ guroḥ |* 242. *Nābrāhmaṇe gurau śiṣhyo vāsam ātyantikaṁ vaset | brāhmaṇe chānanūchāne kāṅkṣan gatim anuttamām |* 241. "In a time of calamity it is permitted to receive instruction from one who is not a Brāhman; and to wait upon and obey such a teacher during the period of study. 242. But let not a pupil, who aims at the highest future destiny, reside for an excessive period with such a teacher who is not a Brāhman, or with a Brāhman who is not learned in the Veda." Kullūka explains this to mean that when a Brāhman instructor cannot be had a Kshattriya may be resorted to, and in the absence of a Kshattriya, a Vaiśya.

Page 457, note 241.

When I wrote this note, I did not advert to the difficulty presented by the word *didāsithā*, which has at once the form of a desiderative verb, and of the second person of the perfect tense. Böhtlingk and Roth, *s.v. dā*, on a comparison of the two parallel passages, suppose that the present reading of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa is corrupt as regards this word, which, as they quote it, is *didāsithā*. May not the correct reading be *dādāsithā* from the root *dās*?

Page 461, line 14.

The Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, ii. 2, 4, 4 f., says of Prajāpati ; *So 'surān asṛijata | tad asya apriyam āsīt |* 5. *Tad durvarṇaṁ hiraṇyam abhavat | tad durvarṇasya hiraṇyasya janma | . . . sa devān asṛijata tad asya priyam āsīt | tat suvarṇasya hiraṇyasya janma |* "He created Asuras. That was displeasing to him. 5. That became the precious metal with the bad colour (silver). This was the origin of silver. . . . He created gods. That was pleasing to him. That became the precious metal with the good colour (gold). That was the origin of gold."

INDEX OF PRINCIPAL NAMES AND MATTERS.

A

Abhimāna, 201
 Abhishnātas, 353
 Abhiyuktas, 500
 Achala, 400
 Achhāvāka, 155
 Adhipurusha, 111
 Adharma, 124
 Adhvaryu, 41, 155, 251,
 263, 294, 459
 Aditi, 18, 26, 72, 116, 122,
 221
 Ādityas, 19 f, 26, 52, 117,
 126, 157, 270
 Adriśyanti, 417
 Agastya, or Agasti, 309 ff.,
 321, 330, 442, 461
 Aghamarshana, 279
 Aghamarshanas, 353
 Agni, 10, 16, 20 f., 33, 52,
 71, 75, 165, 177 f., 180,
 270
 — one of the triad of
 deities, 75
 Agnidh, 251
 Agnidhra, 155
 Agnidhra (king), 491
 Agnihotra, 21, 428
 Agni Purāṇa, 210
 Agnisvāmin, 512
 Agnivesya, 223
 Agnivesyayana, 223
 Ahalyā, 235, 310, 466
 — the first woman, 121
 Ahankāra, 201
 Abavaniya fire, 428
 Abi, 250, 340
 Ahura Mazda, 293
 Aindra - bārhaspatya obla-
 tion, 22

Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, 5
 quoted—

ii. 33,—180
 — 34,—166
 iii. 31,—177
 — 34,—143
 v. 14,—191
 vii. 15,—48
 — 17,—355
 — 19,—367 f.
 — 27,—436
 viii. 14,—492
 — 21,—325, 456
 — 23,—369, 493
 — 24, 27,—367
 — 33,—107
 Ājagava, 301
 Ajaka, 349
 Ajamīdha, 234, 267, 279,
 360, 413
 Ajātasatru, 431
 Ajigartta, 355 ff., 360
 Ajita, 279
 Akampana, 505
 Ākāśa, 115, 130, 506
 Akriya, 232
 Aksamālā, 336
 Akuli, 189
 Akūti, 65, 73
 Alarka, 232
 Amarāvati, 494
 Amāvasu, 349
 Ambarisha, 224, 266, 279,
 362, 405
 Ambashtha, 481, 495
 Ambhāṁsi, 23, 58, 79, 80
 Āmśa, 27
 Anagha, 335
 Analā, 116
 Ananta, 207
 Anantā, 114
 Anavadyā, 116

Andhras, 358, 483 f.
 Anenas, 226
 Anga, 232, 298, 464
 Angas, 459
 Angiras, 36, 65, 116, 122 f.,
 151, 168, 172, 184, 224 f.,
 226, 279, 286, 330, 341,
 445, 466
 Angirases, 192, 194, 224
 Anila, 234
 Anu, 232, 482
 Anus, 179
 Anugraha-sarga, 58
 Anukramanikā, 228, 266,
 328, 348
 Anūpā, 116
 Anushtubh, 16
 Anuvratas, 500
 Apaśya, 279
 Āpastamba, 2
 Āpava, 453
 Āpayā, 345
 Āpnavāna, 447
 Apratiratha, 234
 Apsarases, 33, 37, 177, 320,
 419, etc.
 Āranyakas, 2, 5, 32
 Arhat, 511, 513
 Arishtanemi, 116, 125
 Arjuna, 449 ff., 497
 Arjuna (the Pāṇdu), 494
 Arka, 241
 Arrian, quoted, 370
 Ārshṭishēṇa, 272, 279
 Artavas, 18
 Arunas, 32, 449
 Arundhatī, 336, 389
 Arurmaghas, 438
 Arushi, 124, 476
 Arvāksrotas, 57, 61, 65,
 157

Ārya, 18
 Āryaman, 27, 158
 Āryyas, 174 ff., 396, 481
 — their language, 141, 482
 Āryakas, 498
 Asat, 46
 Asitamrigas, 438
 Ashtaka, 279, 352, 357
 Āsmaśarin, 275
 Āsramas, 98
 Asurā, 116
 Asuras, 23, 24, 29, 33, 37, 58, 79, 130, 139, 177, 187, 228, 469, etc., etc.
 — their priests, 189 f.
 Āsuri, 430
 Āśvalāyanas's S'rauta Sūtras, 137, 511
 Āśvamedha (proper name), 267
 Āśvataṛa, 336
 Āsvins, 166, 470, etc.
 Atharvan (the sage), 162, 169
 — his cow, 395
 Atharvas, 293
 Atharva-veda, 2
 quoted—
 iii. 19, 1,—283
 — 24, 2,—179
 iv. 6, 1,—21
 — 6, 2,—190
 — 14, 4,—179
 — 29, 3, 5,—330
 v. 8, 5,—289
 — 11, 1-11,—395
 — 17, 1-18,—280
 — 18, 1-15,—284
 — 19, 1-15,—286
 vi. 120, 3,—385
 — 123, 3 f.—137
 vii. 104,—395
 viii. 2, 21,—46
 — 10, 24,—217, 511
 — 108, 1-5,—254
 ix. 5, 1,—503
 — 5, 27,—282, 385
 x. 8, 7,—9
 xi. 10, 2,—32
 xiii. 1, 15,—163
 — 3, 17,—385
 — 5, 4-15,—287
 xiii. 3, 14,—171
 — 4, 29,—9
 xv. 8, 1,—22
 — 9, 1,—22

Atharva-veda *continued*—
 xviii. 3, 15,—330
 — 3, 23,—385
 — 3, 34,—179
 xix. 6, 1 ff.—8, 9
 — 6, 6,—10
 — 9, 12,—288
 — 22, 21,—288
 — 23, 30,—288
 — 43, 8,—289
 — 62, 1,—282
 Atibalā, 116
 Ātmavat, 279
 Atri, 36, 61, 116, 122 f., 171 f., 178, 225, 242, 248, 267, 303, 330, 468
 Atyarāti, 493
 Audumbaras, 353
 Aufrecht, Professor, his Catalogue of Bodleian Sanskrit MSS. referred to, 203
 — information or suggestions from him, 14, 19, 20, 29, 93, 137, 163 f., 210, 247 f., 254 ff., 319, 325 f., 340, 346, 389, 395, 512
 Augha, 217
 Āupamanyava, 177
 Aurva, 279, 445, 447, 448 f., 476
 Āvantyas, 486
 Avyakta, 41
 Āyāśva, 355
 Āyodhyā, 115
 Āyu, 170, 171 f., 174, 180
 Āyus, 170
 Āyus (king), 226, 308, 353

B

Bābhravas, 356
 Bābhrus, 353
 Bādārī, 199
 Bāhu, 486
 Bahuputra, 116
 Bahvasva, 235
 Bala, 279
 Balā, 116
 Balāhaka, 207
 Balākāśva, 353
 Bālakhilyas, 32, 305, 400
 Bāleya, 232
 Bali, 232
 Balis, 469

Banerjea, Rev. Prof., his Dialogues on Hindu Philosophy referred to, 120
 — his edition of the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa referred to, 223
 Banga, 232
 Barbaras, 482
 Baresma, 293
 Bauddhas, 305
 Benfey, Prof., his translation of the Sāma-veda quoted, 164
 — his glossary to ditto, 490
 — his translation of the Rig-veda quoted or referred to, 167, 180, 247, 331, 348
 Bhagavadgītā quoted, 508
 Bhadrā, 389, 467
 Bhadrās'va (a division of Jambudvīpa), 491
 Bhaga, 27
 Bhāgavata Purāṇa—
 i. 3, 15,—213
 — 3, 20,—350
 ii. 1, 37,—156
 — 5, 34,—155
 iii. 6, 29,—156
 — 12, 20,—108
 — 20, 25,—157
 — 22, 2,—156
 iv. 1, 40,—335
 v. 1, 30,—489
 — 16, 2,—490
 — 17, 11,—496
 — 20, 4, 6,—498
 — 20, 11,—499
 — 20, 16, 22,—500
 — 20, 28,—501
 vi. 6, 40,—158
 vii. 11, 24,—366
 viii. 5, 41,—157
 — 24, 7,—208
 ix. 2, 16,—222
 — 2, 17,—223
 — 2, 21,—223
 — 2, 23 ff.—222
 — 6, 2,—224
 — 7,—358
 — 7, 6,—386
 — 13, 3,—316
 — 14, 48,—158
 — 15, 5,—457
 — 16, 17,—458
 — 16, 30,—358

Bhāgavata Purāṇa continued—

- ix. 17, 2,—227
- 17, 10,—232
- 20, 1,—234
- 21, 19,—237
- 21, 21,—235
- 21, 33,—235
- 22, 14,—275
- x. 33, 27,—113

Bhalandana, and Bhālāṇḍa
a Vais'ya mantra-kṛit,
279

Bhayamāna, 266

Bharadvāja, 141, 279, 330

Bharata, 168, 234, 242,

354, 360, 413

Bhārata, 187, 348

Bharatas, 320, 338, 340,
354

Bhāratas, 344

Bhāratavarsha, 491, 494 ff.

Bhārati, 112

Bhārga, or Bhārga, 231

Bhārgabhūmi, 231

Bhārgava, 228

Bharmyaśva, 235

Bhāsi, 116

Bhāvins, 498

Bheda, 319, 323

Bhīma, 133, 142, 308, 349

Bhīmanāda, 207

Bhīmasena, 273

Bhīras, 495

Bhīshma, 127

Bhrigu, 36, 65, 67, 122,
139, 151, 168, 228 f.,
279, 286, 314, 443 ff.

Bhrigu Vārūṇi, 443

Bhrigubhūmi, 231

Bhrigus, 169 f., 228, 442 ff.

Bhṛitakīla, 279

Bhumanyu, 360

Bhūrloka, 51, 209, 211

Bhūtakṛitas, 37, 42, 255

Bhūtānāmpati, 16

Bhūtāpati, 108

Bhūtas, 59

Bhūtavīras, 438

Boar incarnation, 51 ff.,
54, 76

Bohtlingk and Roth's Lexi-
con referred to, 47, 108,
144, 178, 180, 184, 253,
340, 348, 395, 400, 442,
505, 511

Brahma S'vāsyava, 30

Brahmacharin, 289

Brāhmān (*masculine*, a
priest), 155, 242 ff., 459

Brāhmān (*masculine*, the
god), 35, 36, 75, etc.

— his passion for his
daughter, 107

Brāhmān (*neuter*, prayer,
241

Brahman (*neuter*, the uni-
versal soul), 20

Brāhmaṇa, son of a Brāh-
mān, 252, 264

Brāhmaṇācchāmsin, 155

Brāhmaṇas (the theologi-
cal works), 2, 4 f.

Brahmanaspati, 16

Brāhmānī, 110

Brāhmans, 7, and *passim*

— origin of the word,
252, 259, 264

— their intermarriage
with women of other
castes, 282, 481

— their prerogatives
and powers, 128, 130, etc.

Brahmanya, 155

Brahmaputra, 252, 259,
264

Brahmarshi, or Brāhman
rishi, 400, 407, 410

Brahmās, the nine, 65, 445

Brāhmāśva, 279

Brahmaudana, 26, 27

Brahma-yuga, 152

Bréal, M. Michel, his Her-
cule et Cacus, 246

Bride's seven steps, 378,
514

Bṛihaddevatā, 321, 326,
344

Bṛihadishu, 234

Bṛihaduktha, 279

Bṛihaspati, 16, 22, 163,

167, 226, 270, 438

Bṛihat, 16

Bṛihat-sāman, 286

Buddha, 509

Buddhists, 513

Budha, 221, 226, 307, 336

Bunsen, Baron, his Philo-
sophy of Universal His-
tory referred to, 8

Burnouf, M. Eugène, his
Bhāgavata Purāṇa re-
ferred to, 8, 155, 211,

489, etc.

— his views about the
Deluge, 215

C

Chākshusha, 298

Chākshusha Manvantara,
207, 213

Chāṇḍi, 207

Chāṇḍāla, 402, 481

Caste, mythical accounts
of its origin, 7 ff.

— Variety and incon-
sistency of these ac-
counts, 34, 66, 102, 159

Castes. their future abodes,
63, 98

— their respective co-
lours, 140, 151, 153

— no natural distinction
between, 140

— manner of their rise
according to Prof. Roth,
289

— time of their rise ac-
cording to Dr. Haug, 492

Chāturvārnya, 135

Charshans, 158

Chauras, 482

Chārvākas, 305

Chhandas, 4

Chhandogas, 334

Chāṇḍogya Brāhmaṇa. 5

— Upanishad, iii. 11,
4,—195, 514

— iv. 1, 4,—49

— v. 3, 1,—435

— viii. 15, 1,—195

Chīnas, 482, 484

Chīrṇī, a river, 199

Cholas, 488

Chunchulus, 353

Chyavana, 124, 273, 283,
445, 470, 474

Colebrooke's Miscellaneous
Essays quoted or referred

to, 8, 13 f., 25, 52, 325,
378, 385, 492, 497

Cowell's, Professor E. B.,
translation of Kaushī-
takī Brāhmaṇa Upani-
shad, 10, 432

— Preface to, quoted, 32

Creation of man, mythical
accounts of, 7 ff.

— their mutual incon-
sistency, 34, 65, 102

— how explained by
Indian commentators, 66

Creations, similarity of suc-
cessive, 60, 89

D

Dadhīcha, 279
 Dadhyaneh, 162, 169, 172
 Daityas, 41, 139, 499
 Daivavāta, 348
 Daivodāsa, 348
 Daksha, 9, 65, 72, 116, 122, 124 ff., 153, 221, 335
 Dakshāyānī, Aditi, 126
 Dama, 222
 Damayanti, 389
 Damayanti, see Madayanti
 Damins, 500
 Dānavas, 139, 144, 209, 468 f., 499
 Dānavratas, 501
 Danāyū, 123
 Daṇḍakas, 467
 Danu, 116, 123
 Daradas, 459, 482
 Darvas, or Dārvas, 482, 488
 Dāsa, 174, 323, 396
 Dasahotri, 29
 Daśaratha, 362
 Daśārṇa, 222
 Daśyus, 174 ff., 358, 460, 469, 482, 500
 Dattātreyā, 450, 473, 478
 Day of Brahmā, 43, 48, 213
 — gods, 43
 Deities, triad of, produced from the three Guṇas, 75
 Deluge, legend of, 183, 199, 203, 209, 211
 — was the tradition of it indigenous or not, 215
 — comparison of different Indian accounts of, 216
 Devadeva, 351
 Devakas, 500
 Devala, 352
 Devalas, 353
 Devāpi, 269
 Devarāja, 279
 Devarāta, 279, 351 f., 356, 413
 Devarātas, 353
 Devarshi, 400
 Devas, 79, 499
 Devaśarman, 466
 Devaśravas, 344, 352 f.
 Devavat, 322
 Devavāta, 344
 Dhānājapya, 353

Dhananjaya, 279
 Dhanur-veda, 477
 Dhanvantari, 226
 Dhanyas, 500
 Dharma, 20, 122, 124, 385, 400, 412
 Dhārshatakas, 223
 Dhātri, 18, 27, 124
 Dhī, 241
 Dhṛishṇu, 126
 Dhṛishṭa, 221, 223
 Dhṛitarāshṭri, 117
 Dhruva, 234, 298
 Dirghatamas, 226, 232, 247, 268, 279
 Dirghatapas, 233
 Dirghasattra, 300
 Dishta, 222
 Diti, 116, 123
 Divodāsa, 229 f., 235, 268, 279, 322, 348
 Dogs, whether they fast from religious motives, 365
 Draupadī, 381, 389
 Dravida, 209
 Draviḍas, or Drāviḍas, 482
 Draviṇas, 500
 Dṛiḍhancitra, 400
 Driṣṭabālāki Gārgya, 432
 Driśhadvatī, 344
 Droṇa, 207
 Druhyu, 232, 482
 Druhyus, 179
 Duḥśima, 305
 Durga, commentator on the Nirukta, quoted, 344, 417
 Durgaha, 267
 Duritakshaya, 237
 Durvāsas, 387, 389
 Dushyanta, 234, 360
 Dvāpara, 39, 43 ff., 119, 146, 149 f., 447
 Dvipas, 51, 489 ff.
 Dwarf incarnation, 52, 54, 233
 Dyaus (the sky), *feminine*, 108
 — *masculine*, 163, 396, 434

E

Earth, the goddess, 51, 163
 Earth fashioned, 51 ff., 76
 — milked, 96

Egg, the mundane, 35, 74, 156, 503
 Ekadāsinī, 69
 Ekaviṃśa, 16
 Elysian fields, 502
 Emūsha, 53

F

Families, hope of their reunion in a future life, 385
 Fathers, see Pitris
 Fish incarnation, 50, 54, 111, 183, 199, 205, 209, 211
 Flood, see Deluge

G

Gabhastimat, 494
 Gabhīra, 232
 Gādhi, 343, 349, and *passim*
 Gālava, 232, 352, 411
 Gālavas, 353
 Gandhamādāna, 491
 Gāndhāras, 484
 Gāndharva, 494
 Gandharvas, 33, 37, 59, 139, 144, 177, 250, 257, 499
 — their heaven, 63, 98, 307
 Gangā, 130, 199, 206, 461, 490
 Garga, 227, 236, 279, 305
 Gārgya Bālāki, 431
 Gārgyas, 236
 Gārhapatyā-fire, 186
 Gāthīn, 348, 358
 Gāthins, 358, 363
 Gātra, 335
 Gautama, 121, 235, 316, 434, 466
 Gavishthira, 330
 Gaya, 227
 Gāyatri, 16, 110, 114, 137
 Genesis, i. 2, —52
 Gifts to priests, 259
 Gir, 241
 Gods, intercourse of men with, in early ages, 147
 — whether they can practise Vedic rites, 365
 Goldstucker, Professor, aid received from, 508

Gopatha Brāhmaṇa, 5
Gorresio, his edition of the
Rāmāyana referred to,
397, 399, etc.
Gotama, 330
Grāvan, 155
Griffith, Principal, MS. ob-
tained through him, 279
Grihya Sūtras, 5
Gritsa, 279
Gritsamada, 226
Gritsamati, 227
Gubernatis, Signor A. de,
quoted, xii.
Guṇas, 66, 75, 145
Gurudhīra, 279

H

Haihaya, 477
Haibayas, 449, 486
Haimavati, 336
Hala, 121
Hall's, Dr. Fitzedward,
edition of Wilson's
Vishnu Purāṇa, 24,
268, 512 and *passim*
— information given
by, 155
— Preface to his edition
of the Sāṅkhya-prava-
chana-bhāṣya referred
to, 430
Hansa, 158
Hansas, 498
Hanūmat, 143
Hari, 51, 62
Harita, 224
Hārta, 352
Hāritas, 225
Hārītaka, 351
Hārīschandra, 355, 379 ff.,
413, 486
Harivaṁśa quoted—
292,—302
652,—223
659,—221
718,—376
773,—487
789,—230
1425,—351
1456,—351
1520,—227
1596,—231
1682,—233
1732,—227
1752,—231
1766,—352

Harivaṁśa continued—
1781,—236
1819,—273
8811,—307
11355,—154
11802,—153
11808,—152
Harivarsha, 491, 494
Harsha, 124
Haryaśva, 279
Haug's, Dr. Martin, Aita-
reya Brāhmaṇa quoted
or referred to, 4, 5, 48,
107, 127, 177, 180, 192,
246, 250, 256, 263, 355,
369, 438 f., 492 f., 513
— Origin of Brāhman-
ism quoted, 11, 14, 292
Haughton, Sir G. C., his
note on Manu, vii. 41,—
296

Hayagrīva, 207, 212
Havishyanda, 400
Hayaśiras, 449
Hema, 232
Hemakūṭa, 491
Himavat, or Himālaya,
130, 183, 200, 229, 311,
491
Hiranmaya, 491
Hiranyagarbha, 195, 220
Hiranyāksha, 352
Hiranyākshas, 353
Homer's Odyssey quoted,
502
Hostility to Vedic wor-
ship, 259
Hotri, 155, 251, 263, 271,
294, 459
Houses, origin of, 93
Hrishikēśa, 206
Huhu, 336
Human sacrifices, 11 f.
Hūnas, 495
Hymns of the Rig-veda, 4,
318
— whether they allude
to castes as already
existing, 161 ff.

I

Ida, 268, 279, 306
Idā, daughter of Manu,
134 ff., see Ilā
Ikshvāku, 115, 126, 177,
195, 221, 224, 268, 327,
355, 362, 401, 405, 508

Ikshvākus, 401, 418
Ilā, 126, 221, 306, see Idā
Ilāvṛta, 491
Indra, 3, 10, 18, 20, 33,
44, 163, 168, 171, 191,
438
Indra's heaven, 63, 98
— wife, 341
— his adulteries, 121,
310, 466
Indra-dvīpa, 494
Indrāṇi, 310, 389
Indu (Soma), 124
Instrumental cause, 51
Isaiah vi. 9, 10,—255
Īśāna, 20
Ishiratha, 348
Ishundharas, 499
Īśvara, 75, 221
Itihāsas, 3, 5, 215

J

Jābāli, 115
Jahnu, 273, 349, 353, 360,
413
Jahnu, 358
Jaimini's Sūtras, 508
Jainas, 305
Jamadagni, 279, 330, 345,
350, 355, 413, 422, 447,
450 ff.
Jamadagnis, 342
Jambudvīpa, 488, 490 ff.
Jambūnada, 461
Janaka, 130, 334, 426 ff.
Janaloka, 44, 51, 88, 95,
99
Janamejaya, 152, 438
Janantapa, 493
Janārdana, 206
Japa, 442
Jatāyus, 116
Jātimālā, 497
Jātukarṇya, 223
Jaya, 352
Jayakṛta, 351
Jayapīda, 424
Journal of the Royal Asia-
tic Society quoted, 3, 6,
and *passim*
Jyotsnā, 59

K

Ka, 125
Kachhapa, 351 f.

Kadrū, 123
 Kakshivat, 268, 279
 Kāla, 62
 Kālā, 123
 Kālākā, 116
 Kalāpa, 277
 Kali, 39, 43 ff., 120, 146,
 150, 495
 Kalindas, 482
 Kalinga, 232
 Kalingas, 459, 495
 Kalmāshapāda, 414, 423
 Kalpas, 43 ff.
 Kāma, 112, 124
 Kāmarūpa, 495
 Kāmboja, 482 f., 485 ff.
 Kānchana, 319
 Kānchis, 391
 Kāndapriṣṭha, 442, 507
 Kandarpa, 408
 Kāṇḍarshi, 400
 Kāṇina, 223
 Kankas, 484
 Kānyakubja, 390
 Kanva, 166, 170, 172, 234,
 279
 Kānvāyana, 234
 Kapas, 472
 Kapi, 237
 Kapila, 227, 414
 Kapila, 123
 Kapilas, 499
 Kāpileyas, 356
 Kāpiṣṭhala, 314
 Kardama, 116, 123, 400
 Kārishis, 353
 Karmadevas, 46
 Kārtavīrya, 450, 478
 Kārūsha, 221 f.
 Kārūsha, 126
 Kārūshas, 495
 Kāśa, or Kāśaka, 226 f.
 Kāserumat, 494
 Kāśirāja, 226
 Kāśis, 431
 Kāsmiras, 459
 Kāśya, 227, 279
 Kāśyapa, 37, 54, 115 f.,
 123 f., 126, 195, 330,
 400, 451, 455 f., 459
 Kāśyapas, 438
 Kāthaka Brāhmaṇa quot-
 ed, 140, 186, 189, 332 f.,
 358
 Kati, 352
 Kātyāyanas, 352
 Kātyāyana's S'ruta Sū-
 tras, 19, 136, 365 ff.,
 369, 514

Kaumāra-sarga, 58
 Kaushitakī Brāhmaṇa
 quoted, 328
 — Upanishad, 10, 431
 Kausika, 342, 349
 Kausika (epithet of Indra),
 347
 Kausikas, 353, etc.
 Kausikī, 350, 411
 Kavi, 243, 279, 445
 Keralas, 488
 Kesaraprabandhā, 285
 Ketumāla, 491
 Ketus, 32
 Khalins, 468
 Khandapani, 235
 Khāṇḍavāyanas, 451
 Khasas, 482
 Khyāti, 67
 Kikatas, 342
 Kilāta, 189
 Kimpurusha, 491 f.
 Kimpuruhas, 499
 Kināsa, 97
 Kinnaras, 37
 Kinsuka, 229
 Kirātas, 391, 482, 484 f.
 Kohsarpas, 482, 488
 Konvasiras, 482
 Kovidas, 500
 Kratu, 36, 65, 116, 122 f.,
 400
 Krauncha-dvīpa, 491, 500
 Kraunchi, 117
 Kripa, 279
 Kṛishna, 113
 Kṛishnas, 499
 Kṛishṇi, 178
 Kṛita, 39, 43 ff., 88, 90 ff.,
 119, 144, 148 f., 158,
 492, 495, 505
 Kṛitamāla, 209, 212
 Kṛitavīrya, 449 ff., 478
 Krodha, 123
 Krodhavasā, 116
 Kshattraviddha, 226
 Kshattri, 481
 Kshattriyas, 7, and *passim*
 — etymology of the
 word, 97, 504
 — how their race was
 restored, 452
 Kshemaka, 235
 Kshudrakas, 459
 Kuhn, Dr. A., quoted, 179
 Kulakas, 500
 Kullūka quoted, 36, 47,
 129, 279, 480, 483

Kumārila Bhāṭṭa referred
 to or quoted, 122, 509
 Kuntis, 459
 Kūrma avatāra, see Tor-
 toise incarnation
 Kurus, 5, 269, 431, 495
 Kurus, 498
 Kuśa, 227, 349, 351, 397
 Kuśa-dvīpa, 491, 497, 499
 Kuśalas, 500
 Kuśāmba, 349, 351
 Kuśanābha, 351, 397
 Kusika, 338, 340, 346,
 400, 474
 Kusikas, 342 f., 346, 355,
 etc.
 Kusumāyudha (a name of
 Kāma), 112
 Kutsa, 330 f.
 Kuvera, 140, 279, 400

L

Lakshmī, 124
 Lahita-vistara, 32
 Langlois, M., translator of
 the Harivaṁśa, 151
 — of the Rig-veda, 273,
 321
 Lassen's Indian Antiqui-
 ties quoted, 394, 425
 Lātas, 482
 Lātyāyana's Sūtras, 512
 Lecky, Mr., his History of
 Rationalism, 407
 Les'a, 226
 Life of Brāhmā, 49
 Linga Purāṇa quoted, 225
 Lohita, 279
 Lohitas, 353
 Loiseleur Deslongchamps,
 M., his note on Manu,
 vii. 41,—296
 Lokāloka mountain, 503
 Lunar race, 220, 225

M

Mada, 471 f.
 Madayanti, 419, 514
 Madhuchandas, or Ma-
 dhuvanda, 279, 317,
 351 f., 357, 400, 406
 Madhusūdana Sarasvatī,
 his Commentary on the
 Bhagavad Gītā quoted,
 508

Madras, 484, 495

Magadhas, 495

Magadhas, 501

Magas, 501

Mahābhārata, 5 f.

quoted—

Adi-parvan—

272,—447

869,—445

2253,—116

2459,—451

2517,—122

2550, 2574,—123

2606,—445

2610,—476

2620-2635,—117

2914,—410

3128,—124

3143,—306

3151,—308

3533,—482

3727,—360

3730,—273

4719,—418

6638,—388

6695,—342

6699,—415

6802,—448

7351,—389

8455,—389

Sabhā-parvan—

489,—379

1031,—483

1045,—494

Vana-parvan—

10137, 10201,—450

11234,—143

11248,—40

12460,—308

12469,—133

12619,—147

12747,—196

12826,—48

12952,—35

12962,—10

12981,—145

13090,—40

13436,—129

14160,—178

Udyoga-parvan—

373,—310

3721,—412

3970,—336

5054,—276

Bhishma-parvan—

227,—491

316,—495

389,—148

Mahābhārata continued—

Bhishma-parvan—

410,—501

455,—500

468,—502

Drona-parvan—

2149,—414

2395,—505

2443,—459

4747,—483

S'alya-parvan—

2295,—392

2281,—272

2360,—419

S'anti-parvan—

774,—32

1741, 1792,—423, 452

2221,—304

2247,—97

2280,—370

2304,—366

2429,—484

2674,—49, 149

2682 ff.—49

2749,—127

2819,—140

3404, 3406,—150

3408,—49

4499,—388

4507,—209

5330,—376

6130,—506

6640,—429

6930,—138

7523,—125

7548,—507

7569,—122

7573,—125

7882,—430

8550,—60

8591, 8604,—423

10058,—151

10699,—430

10118,—423

10861,—130

11221,—334

11545, 11854,—430

12658,—215

12685,—122

13088,—145

13090,—40

Anuśāsana-parvan—

183,—412

186,—352

201,—354

1867,—440

1944,—229

2103,—482

Mahābhārata continued—

Anuśāsana-parvan—

2158,—482

2160,—130

2262,—466

2718,—474

2841,—494

3732,—374

3960,—460

4104,—443

4527,—128

4579,—128

4745,—314

6208,—507

6262,—514

6250,—514

6570,—132

7187,—162

Asvamedikha-parvan—

1038,—57

Mahābhaya, 124

Mahādeva, 75, 207

— taught by Angiras,

226

Mahākālpa, 213

Mahārloka, 156

Maharshi, 400

Mahat, 41, 75, 114

Mahāvīrya, 237

Mahendra, 451

Mahesvara, 74

Mahūdharma, 490

Mahishas, or Māhishakas,

482, 488

Māhishmatī, 462, 478

Mahodaya, 402

Mahoragas, 139

Maitrāvaruṇa, 155, 244

Maitrāvaruṇi, 186

Maitrāyana, 230

Maitreya, 56, 58

Maitreyas, 230

Mālavas, 459, 495

Malaya, 205

Mallinātha quoted, 395

Mamatā, 247

Māna (Agastya?), 321

Mānava-dharma-śāstra

(or Institutes of Manu)—

Quotations from—

i. 8 ff.—35

— 22, 25,—38

— 30,—60

— 31 ff.—35, 446

— 53 ff.—38, 446

— 66 ff.—43

— 69 ff.—47

— 79 f., 86,—39

Mānava-dharma-s'āstra
continued—

- i. 87, 93, 97,—40
- 88 ff.—364
- 100,—129
- ii. 29,—137
- 38 f.—481
- 170,—138
- 225,—138
- 241,—515
- iii. 171,—275
- iv. 239 ff.—380
- v. 1, 3,—446
- vii. 2,—446
- 3 ff.—300
- 38 ff.—296
- viii. 17,—380
- 110,—329
- ix. 22,—336
- 66 f.—297
- 149 ff.—282
- 301 f.—49
- 303,—300
- x. 4,—480
- 7 ff.—282
- 8,—481
- 12,—481
- 20,—481
- 43 f.—481
- 45,—482
- 105,—358
- 108,—377
- xi. 234 ff.—393
- 32,—398
- xii. 39 ff.—40
- Mānāvī, 186
- Mānāvī, 189
- Mānasas, 501
- Mandagay, 501
- Mandapāla, 336
- Mandehas, 500
- Māndhātṛi, 225, 268, 279, 484
- Mantra, 2, 4 f.
- Manu, progenitor of the Āryan Indians, 161 ff., 183 ff.
- his bull, 188 ff.
- Manu, 119, 122, 297
- Auttami, 38, 111
- Chākshusha, 38, 298
- Raivata, 38
- Sañvarani, 217
- Sāvarni, 217
- Svārochisha, 38, 111
- Svāyambhuva, 25, 38 f., 44, 65, 72, 106, 111, 114, 298, 489, 511

- Manu Tāmasa, 38
- Vaivasvata, 37 ff., 44, 111, 115, 126, 196, 213, 217, 221, 279, 298, 306, 508, 510
- Vivasvat, 217
- Manu (a female), 116
- Manu (= mind), 23
- Manu's Descent, 183, 217
- Manush (= Manu), 165 ff.
- Manvantaras, 43 ff.
- Mārganapriyā, 116
- Marīchi, 36 f., 65, 114 ff., 122 f., 126
- Mārkaṇḍeya, 48, 199, 207
- Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa quoted, 75, 81 ff., 221 ff., 379
- Mārttanda, 126
- Mārttikāvatas, 459
- Maru, 277
- Maruts, 20, 71
- their heaven, 63, 98
- Marutta, 222
- Matanga, 411, 440
- Mātariśvan, 128, 170, 256
- Mati, 241
- Mātrikā, 153
- Matsya-avatāra, see Fish-incarnation
- Mat-yas, 431
- Matsya Purāṇa, 1, 12—203
- 49, 39,—277
- 132, 98,—278
- 3, 32 ff.—108
- Matthew, Gospel of St. xiii. 14 f.—255
- Maudgalya, 235
- Medhātithi on Manu, 47
- Medhātithi, 234
- Medhyātithi, 170
- Mekalas, 482
- Men, Five races of, 163, 176
- their original condition, 62, 117, 145, 147
- Menakā, 407, 410
- Meru, 417, 491
- Metempsychosis, 385
- Mīmāṃsa-vārttika quoted, 508
- Mithilā, 279, 430
- Mitra, 27, 184, 186, 221, etc.
- Mitrasaha, 337, 414, 423, 514
- Mitrayu, 230, 322
- Mlecchas, 41 f., 141, 482, 484

- Mṛikṣhīnī, 271
- Mṛityu, 20, 124, 299, 303
- Muchukunda, 140
- Mudgala, 235, 279, 352
- Mukhya-sarga, 57
- Müller's, Professor Max, Ancient Sanskrit Literature quoted or referred to, 2, 4, 5, 8, 13, 48, 122, 181, 192, 253, 263, 326, 355, 358, 366, 426, 508
- Art. in Journ. Germ. Or. Soc., 365
- Art. in Journ. Roy. As. Soc., 115, 177
- Art. in Oxford Essays, now reprinted in "Chips from a German Workshop," 226, 231
- Chips from a German Workshop, 429, 431, 490
- Preface to Rig-veda, 348, 417
- Results of Turanian Researches, 327
- Mundaka Upanishad, i. 2, 1, quoted, 3, 39
- Muni (a female), 123
- Munis, 153
- Mūtibas, 358, 483

N

- Nābhāga, 224, 268
- Nabhāga, 126, 224
- Nābhāgarīṣṭi, 126, 223
- Nābhānedīṣṭi, 221
- Nābhāganedīṣṭha, 192 ff., 221
- Nāgas, 37, 140
- Nagnajit Gāndhāra, 515
- Nahush, 165, 179, 307
- Nahusha, 133, 226, 232, 297, 307 ff., 393, 410
- Naigeya sakhā of Sāma-Sanhitā, 14
- Naimittika-laya, 45, 209, 219
- Naubandhana, 200
- Nairritas, 124
- Namuchi, 175
- Nara, 35, 76, 353, 400
- Nārada, 36, 119, 126, 400
- Nārāyaṇa, 35, 50, 54, 76, 154, 400
- assumes different colours in different yugas, 145

Nārāyaṇi, 353
 Narishyanta, 126, 221, 223
 Narmadā, 207, 478
 Neshṭri, 155, 251
 Nēve, M., Mythe des Rihavas referred to, 161
 Nīchāsākha, 342
 Nidāna-Sūtras, 136
 Niggards, 259
 Night of Brahmā, 43, 209
 Nīla, a mountain, 491
 Nīla, 235
 Nīlakantha on M.Bh., 201
 Nimi, 297, 316, 337
 Niramitra, 235
 Nirṛiti, 124
 Nirukta, 5
 — quoted or referred to, 3
 i. 8,—256
 — 20,—147
 ii. 10,—269
 — 24,—338
 — 25,—340
 iii. 4,—26
 — 7,—165
 — 8,—177
 — 17,—445
 iv. 19,—154
 v. 11,—253
 — 13,—321
 vi. 30,—322
 — 32,—342
 ix. 6,—253
 — 26,—417
 x. 44,—154
 xi. 19,—442
 — 23,—9
 xii. 10 f.,
 — 34,—162
 xiii. 9,—252
 Nishādas, 177, 481, 153 f.
 Nishāda, birth of, 301,
 303, 403, 481
 Nishāda-sthapati, 366
 Nishadha, 491
 Nītha, 241
 Nīvid, 241
 Nodhas, 330
 Nṛiga, 221
 Nyāya-mālā-vistara quoted, 510

O
 Odras, 482
 Oha-brahman, 255

P

Pādma-kalpa, 44, 50
 Padma Purāṇi, 379
 Pahlavas, 351, 391, 398,
 482, 484, 486
 Pajjavana, 366
 Paka-yajna, 187
 Pakshyā, 342
 Panchachūdā, 413
 Panchadasa, 16
 Panchajanāḥ and other
 parallel terms, 176
 Panchālis or Panchūlas,
 431, 434, 495
 Panchasika, 430
 Panchaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa, 5
 — quoted, 417
 Panchaviṃśa stoma, 492
 Pāṇḍus, 5, 127, 381
 Pāṇuni, 3
 — referred to, 513
 Pāṇins, 353
 Pannagas, 144
 Para, 44
 Pāradas, 482, 486
 Paramarshi, 400
 Parameshthin, 123
 Parārdha, 44
 Parāsara, 56, 58, 130, 322,
 417, 430, 447
 Parāsava, 481
 Pārasikas, 495
 Parasurama, 350, 422, 442,
 447 ff., 474
 Parāvasu, 455
 Parikshit, 438
 Parivetttri, 275
 Parivitti, 275
 Parjanya, 20, 270
 Parsis, 293
 Pāthivas, 353
 Paruehhepa, 172
 Parushni, 490
 Parvata, 400
 Pā-adyumna, 319
 Passion, 51, see Rājās
 Paśupati, 108, 444
 Pātālas, 504
 Patungas, 498
 Pātnivata (Agni), 191
 Paundras, or Paundrakas,
 391, 482, 484
 Paurava, 353
 Paurukutsi, 351
 Phenā, 233
 Pujavana, 268, 297, 322,
 338

Pisāchas, 33, 37, 140
 Pitis, 499
 Pitris, 23, 37, 46, 58, 79,
 88, 434
 Plaksha-dvīpa, 490, 497
 Plants, origin of, 59, 90,
 95
 Plato quoted, 147
 Potri, 155, 251, 263
 Prachetas, 36, 116, 125,
 279
 Prāchetasa, 125
 Prachetases, 72
 Pradhā, 123
 Pradhāna, 51, 74
 Pradyumna, 279
 Prajāpati, 16 ff., 23 f., 29 ff.,
 52 ff., 68 ff., 180, 184,
 444, and *passim*
 — born on a lotus-leaf,
 32
 — his exhaustion, 68
 — his heaven, 63, 98
 Prajāpati Parameshthin, 19
 Prakāsa, 58
 Prākṛita-sarga, 58
 Prakṛiti, 74 f.
 Pralaya, 214, 217
 Pramaganda, 342
 Prāṇisu, 221
 Pranava, 158
 Prasāstri, 251, 263
 Praskaṇva, 330
 Praskaṇvas, 234
 Prastotri, 41, 155
 Prasūti, 65
 Pratardana, 229, 268, 455
 Pratihatri, 41, 155
 Pratīpa, 273
 Pratiprasthātri, 136
 Pratisanchara, 44
 Pratisarga, 49
 Pratishthātri, 155
 Pratyūsha, 400
 Pravāhan, Jaivali, 433, 515
 Prāyasechitti, 294
 Pretas, 141
 Prishadasva, 224, 279
 Pr shadhra, 126, 221
 Prithā, 494
 Prithavāna, 305
 Prithi, or Prithu, 268, 279,
 301, 304, 511
 Prithivī, 434
 Prithūdaka, 272
 Priyamedha, 172, 235, 268
 Priyavata, 65, 72, 106,
 114, 489, 491, 497

Pulaha, 36, 65, 116, 122 f., 400
 Pulastya, 36, 65, 116, 122 f., 400
 Pulindas, 358, 482 ff.
 Pundra, 232
 Pundras, 358, 483, 495
 Purāṇas, 3, 5 f.
 Purāṇasva, 279
 Purohitas, 41, 128, 507
 Pūru, 232, 277, 331, 360
 Pūrus, 179
 Purukutsa, 266, 279, 331
 Purukut-āni, 267
 Purumīḥa, 267
 Purūravas, 126, 128, 158, 172, 221, 226, 279, 306, 349, 497
 Purusha, 9 ff., 25, 32, 34 ff., 75 f., 106, 155
 Purusha-sūkta, translated and dis-cussed, 7 ff., 34, 155 f., 159, 161
 Purushas, 500
 Purushottama, 51
 Pūshan, 19 f., 33, 71, 270
 Pushkalas, 500
 Pushkara, 405
 Pushkara-dvīpa, 491, 501
 Pushkaras, 500
 Pushkarin, 237
 Pushpaka (Rāma's car), 120

R

Rabhasa, 232
 Raibhya, 455
 Rājanya, 10, 258, 264, etc.
 Rājars-hi, 262, 400
 Rajas (the Gun) 41, 58, 62, 66, 75, 79, 89, 92, 141, 154
 Rajas (*masculine*) 335
 Rājāsūya sacrifice, 20, 225
 Rājataranginī quoted, 424
 Rājī, 226
 Rākshasas, 59, 140, 144, etc.
 Rākshases, 33, 37, 59, 136, 177
 Rakshovāhas, 459
 Rāma, 5, 112, 115, 120, 305, 337
 Rāma Mārgaveya, 438

Rāmas, 495
 Ramathas, 485
 Rāmāyana, 5 f.
 — quoted—
 i. 37, 4,—405
 — 51-65,—397
 — 55, 5,—329
 — 70,—337
 — 70, 41,—362
 ii. 110, 1-7,—115
 — 110, 2,—36
 — 110, 3,—54
 — 110, 6,—337, 400
 — 111, 1,—337
 iii. 14, 5-15, 29-31, —115
 iv. 43, 38,—493
 v. 82, 13,—59
 vii. (or Uttara-kāṇḍa) 30, 19 ff.,—120
 74, 8 ff.,—117

Rambhā, 226, 232
 Rambhā, 336, 408, 413
 Ramyaka, 491
 Rantibhāra and Rantināra, 234
 Rantideva, 423
 Rasollāsa, 62
 Raspi, 292
 Rathachutra, 336
 Rathakāra, 336
 Rathasthas, 293
 Rathantara, 16
 Rathavīti, 283
 Rathitara, 224
 Rathwi, 292
 Rati, 106, 114
 Rauhināyana, 72
 Rāvana, 21, 478
 Re-marriage of Indian women in early times, 282
 Renu, 346, 350, 357
 Renukā, 350
 Renumat, 352
 Ribhukshans, 165
 Ribhus, 255
 Richika, 349, 405, 413, 450, 453, 476
 Rig-veda, 2
 Texts of, translated¹—
 First Mandala—
 10, 1,—246
 10, 11,—347
 13, 4,—167

Rig-veda continued—

First Mandala—

14, 11,—167
 15, 5,—253
 31, 4,—172
 32, 12,—490
 33, 9,—246
 36, 10,—167, 170
 — 19,—166, 167
 44, 11,—168
 45, 3,—341
 47, 6,—330
 58, 6,—170
 63, 7,—330
 65, 1,—170
 68, 4,—164
 76, 5,—166
 80, 1,—244
 — 16,—162
 83, 5,—169
 84, 7,—259
 92, 11,—45
 94, 6,—263
 96, 5,—243
 101, 4,—260
 — 5,—246
 102, 2,—322
 106, 5,—167
 108, 7,—246
 — 8,—179
 112, 16,—171
 — 19,—331
 114, 2,—163
 117, 3,—178
 — 21,—171, 174
 122, 9,—260
 124, 2,—45
 125, 7,—260
 130, 5,—173
 — 8,—174
 139, 9,—172
 144, 4,—45
 158, 6,—46, 217
 162, 5-7, 11, 15, 16,
 163, 3,—12 [—12
 164, 15,—362
 — 34, 35,—244
 — 45,—252
 — 50,—11
 167, 7,—173
 175, 3,—174
 177, 5,—183
 182, 3,—260
 185, 9,—331

¹ A large number of texts are referred to in pp. 45, 163, 170, 171, 241, 243, 245, 259, 329, etc., but as they have not been translated they are not included in this list.

Rig-veda continued—
Second Mandala—

- 1, 2, 3,—251
- 4 ff.—270
- 2, 10,—178
- 4, 2,—170
- 7, 1, 5,—348
- 12, 6,—244
- 19, 8,—243
- 20, 4,—243
- 6,—174
- 23, 1, 2,—242
- 4,—260
- 27, 1,—72
- 33, 1,—184
- 13,—163
- 36, 5,—253
- 39, 1,—247
- 43, 2,—252

Third Mandala—

- 1, 21,—345
- 3, 6,—165
- 5, 10,—170
- 18, 4,—346
- 23, 2-4,—345, 348
- 26, 1,—346
- 29, 15,—347, 362
- 30, 20,—347
- 32, 10,—244
- 33, 1-12,—339
- 34, 9,—176, 258
- 42, 9,—347
- 43, 4, 5,—344
- 5,—247
- 49, 1,—176
- 53, 6-16, 21, 24,—340,
- 354, 372
- 9,—362
- 12,—242
- 55, 19,—181

Fourth Mandala—

- 6, 11,—173
- 9, 3, 4,—252
- 16, 9,—242
- 25, 4,—348
- 6, 7,—260
- 26, 7,—175
- 37, 1,—165
- 42, 8, 9,—266
- 44, 6,—268
- 50, 7-9,—247
- 58, 2,—248

Fifth Mandala—

- 2, 12,—173
- 21, 1,—168
- 29, 3,—248
- 31, 4,—248
- 32, 11,—178

Rig-veda continued—

Fifth Mandala—

- 12,—248
- 37, 4,—247
- 40, 5 ff., 6,—242, 469
- 8,—248
- 45, 6,—166
- 53, 2,—331
- 54, 7, 14,—247

Sixth Mandala—

- 11, 4,—177
- 14, 2,—165
- 3,—174
- 16, 1,—167
- 9,—167
- 13, 14,—169
- 19,—349
- 21, 8,—243
- 11,—175
- 44, 11,—261
- 45, 7,—244
- 46, 7,—179
- 48, 8,—165
- 49, 13,—172
- 51, 5,—163
- 61, 12,—176, 178
- 70, 2,—167
- 75, 10,—252, 253
- 19,—242

Seventh Mandala—

- 2, 3,—168
- 5,—339
- 7, 5,—249
- 8, 4,—349
- 15, 2,—178
- 18, 4, 5, 21-24,—321
- 19, 3,—331
- 20, 2,—331
- 22, 9,—243
- 25, 3,—331
- 26, 1, 2,—241
- 28, 2,—243
- 32, 10,—332
- 26,—329
- 33, 1-13,—318
- 3,—242
- 11,—244
- 35, 7,—242
- 42, 1,—249
- 53, 3,—332
- 60, 8,—332
- 64, 3,—332
- 69, 2,—176
- 70, 2,—173
- 3,—184
- 5,—243
- 72, 2,—329
- 83, 1-8,—323

Rig-veda continued—

Seventh Mandala—

- 87, 4,—325
- 88, 3-6,—325
- 91, 1,—172
- 97, 1,—176
- 3,—242
- 100, 4,—172
- 103, 1, 7, 8,—253
- 104, 13,—258
- 12-16,—326

Eighth Mandala—

- 2, 21,—46
- 4, 20,—262
- 7, 20,—249
- 9, 10,—268
- 10, 2,—166
- 15, 5,—171
- 16, 7,—245
- 17, 2,—249
- 18, 22,—173
- 19, 21,—167
- 23, 13,—165
- 27, 7,—168
- 30, 3,—164
- 31, 1,—249
- 32, 16,—249
- 33, 19,—249
- 34, 8,—168
- 36, 7,—263
- 37, 7,—263
- 43, 13, 27,—168
- 45, 39,—249
- 50, 9,—264
- 52, 1,—163
- 7,—176, 178
- 53, 1,—261
- 7,—250
- 64, 6,—341
- 66, 5,—250
- 8,—253
- 81, 30,—250
- 85, 5,—250
- 6,—181
- 87, 5,—175
- 9,—250
- 91, 1,—172
- 92, 2,—348

Ninth Mandala—

- 65, 22, 23,—177
- 66, 20,—178
- 86, 28,—181
- 92, 5,—175
- 96, 6,—250
- 11,—166
- 112, 1, 3,—250
- 113, 6,—251

Rig-veda continued—
Tenth Mandala—

- 14, 1, —217
 16, 6, —253
 17, 1, 2, —217
 21, 5, —169
 26, 5, —167
 28, 11, —251
 33, 4, —262
 45, 6, —178
 46, 2, 9, —170
 49, 7, —175
 52, 2, —252
 53, 4, —177
 54, 3, —181
 60, 4, —177
 61, 7, —242
 62, 5, —341
 — 7, —193
 63, 7, —166
 68, 3, 4, 5, —72
 — 8, 11, —217
 69, 3, —166
 71 and 72, —13
 71, 1-11, —254
 — 11, —245
 72, 2, —46
 — 4, 5, —72
 — 5, —9
 73, 7, —175
 75, 5, —490
 77, 1, —245
 80, 6, —165
 81 and 82, —13
 81, 2, 3, —181
 82, 3, —163, 181
 85, 3, 16, 34, —245
 — 29, —251
 — 39, 40, —257
 88, 19, —256
 89, 16, —243
 — 17, —346
 90, 1, —32
 — 1-16, —9
 91, 9, —173
 92, 10, —169
 95, 7, —306
 97, 1, —46
 97, 17, 19, 22, —256
 98, 1-12, —270
 99, 7, —173
 100, 5, —164
 105, 8, —241, 242
 107, 6, —245
 109, 1-7, —256
 — 4, —244
 117, 7, —246
 121, —13

Rig-veda continued—
Tenth Mandala—

- 125, 5, —246
 129, —13
 — 4, —32
 141, 3, —251
 148, 5, —268
 161, 4, —13
 167, 4, —345
 Rājās'va, 266
 Riksha, 235, 274, 360
 Rikshavat, 456
 Ripu, 293
 Rishabha, 279, 357
 Rishabhas, 500
 Rishi, 243
 Rishis, 36, 44, 88, etc.
 Rishīshena, 269
 Ritabādha, 279
 Ritayu, 234
 Ritavrata, 501
 Rituparna, 322
 Roer, Dr. E., his translations of the Upanishads referred to, 25
 Rohidas'va, 268
 Rohinī, 389
 Rohita, 355
 Rohitās'va, 382 34
 Roth, Dr. R., his Literature and History of the Veda referred to, 289, 318, 324, 331, 339, 342, 360, 364, 372
 — articles in Journ. of Germ. Or. Society, 8, 192, 194, 217, 248, 289
 — article in Indische Studien, 48, 355, 376
 — Dissertation on the Atharva-veda, 395
 — Illustrations of Nirukta, 177, 253, 256, 321, 339
 Rosen, Dr. F., remarks on the story of S'unaśśepa, 359
 Ruchi (*masc.*), 65
 Ruchi (*fem.*), 466
 Rudra, 3, 20, 65, 163, 194, 225
 Rudras, 19 f., 52, 117
 Rūpin, 360

S

- S'abarar, or S'avaras, 391, 393, 483 f.

Sacrifices of no avail to
the depraved, 98

- Sadasyas, 459
 Sādhyas, 10 f., 26 f., 38, 41
 Sagara, 337, 486
 Sahadeva, 266
 Sahajanyā, 336
 Saindhavas, 495
 Saindhavāyanas, 353
 S'aineyā, 483
 S'ainyas, 286
 S'aivyā, wife of Haris'chandra, 380 f.
 S'ākadvīpa, 491, 500
 S'ākalas, 495
 S'ākhā, 401
 S'akas, 391, 398, 482, 484, 486
 S'akti, or S'aktri, 315, 322, 328, 342
 S'akuntalā, 410
 S'akvaris, 255, 320
 S'ākya (Buddha) 509
 Sālankāyana, 279
 Sālankāyanas, 353
 S'alāvati, 352
 S'alāvatyas, 353
 S'alimali-dvīpa, 490, 498
 Salvas, 438
 S'alvas, 495
 S'ama, 124
 Samantapanchaka, 451
 Sāma-veda, 2
 — quoted—
 i. 262, —180
 — 355, —163
 Samprakshālana-kāla, 217
 Saṁśraya, 116
 Saṁvarana, 360
 Saṁvartta, 207
 Sanaka, 51
 Sanandana, 51, 65
 Sanat Kumāra, 114, 307
 S'andilya, 513
 Sanhitā, 2, 4
 Sanjaya, 148
 Sankara on the Brahma-Sūtras, 147
 — Chhāndogya Upanishad, 195
 Sankarshana, 207, 507
 S'ākhāyana Brāhmaṇa, 5
 Sākhya, 126, 210, 334, 436
 — Kārikā, 158
 — Pravachana, 158
 Sankirtti, a Vaisya author of Vedic hymns, 279

Sankṛiti, 237
 Sāṅkṛiti, 352
 Sāṅkṛityas, 353
 S'antanu, 269
 S'apharī (fish), 205, 209
 Saptadaśa, 16
 Sapta sindhavaḥ, 489 ff.
 S'arabhas, 391
 S'aradvat, 279
 S'aradvata, 279
 S'ārangi, 336
 Sarasvatī, 71, 110, 141,
 178, 315, 344, 421, 490
 Sārasvatya, 305
 Sarga, 49
 Sarvakāma, 322
 Sarvakarman, 422, 456
 Sarvasāra Upanishad, 361
 S'aryāta, 221
 S'aryāti, 126, 221
 Sasarpārī, 343
 Sat, 46
 S'atadru, 417
 Satānanda, 235
 S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, 5
 — Kāṇva S'ākhā, i. 6,
 —167, 382
 — Mādhyandina S'ākhā,
 Texts from, translated or
 referred to—
 i. 1, 4, 12,—366
 — 1, 4, 14,—188
 — 3, 2, 21,—136
 — 4, 2, 2,—348
 — 4, 2, 5,—166
 — 5, 1, 7,—168
 — 5, 2, 16,—137
 — 5, 3, 2,—163
 — 7, 4, 1,—35, 107
 — 8, 1, 1,—181
 ii. 1, 4, 11,—17
 — 2, 2, 6,—262
 — 3, 4, 4,—147
 — 4, 2, 1,—96
 — 4, 4, 1,—125
 — 5, 1, 1,—69
 — 5, 2, 20,—136
 iii. 2, 1, 39,—369
 — 2, 1, 40,—136
 — 4, 3, 6,—513
 — 6, 2, 26,—147
 — 9, 1, 1,—68
 iv. 1, 5, 1,—221
 — 3, 4, 4,—262
 — 5, 4, 1,—9
 v. 3, 5, 4,—268
 — 5, 4, 9,—367
 vi. 1, 2, 11,—30

S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa *continued*—

Mādhyandina S'ākhā—
 vi. 6, 1, 19,—188
 — 8, 1, 14,—349
 vii. 4, 1, 19,—125
 — 5, 1, 5,—54
 — 5, 2, 6,—24
 viii. 1, 4, 10,—515
 — 4, 2, 11,—19
 — 4, 3, 1,—19
 x. 4, 1, 10,—138
 — 4, 2, 2,—69
 — 4, 4, 1,—69
 xi. 1, 3, 1,—31
 — 1, 6, 1,—35
 — 1, 6, 7,—30
 — 1, 6, 8,—29
 — 5, 1, 1,—226
 — 6, 1, 1,—413
 — 6, 2, 1,—426
 xii. 1, 6, 38,—333
 xiii. 4, 1, 3,—369
 — 4, 3, 3,—217
 — 5, 4, 14,—168
 — 6, 1, 1,—9
 — 7, 1, 15,—456
 xiv. 1, 2, 11,—53
 — 4, 2, 1,—24, 36
 — 4, 2, 23,—19
 — 5, 1, 1,—432
 — 7, 1, 33,—46
 — 9, 1, 1,—433
 S'atarūpā, 25, 65, 72, 106,
 110, 114
 S'atayātu, 322
 S'atendriyā, 114
 Sattva, 41, 62, 66, 75 f.,
 79, 89, 92
 Sāttvika, 42
 Sāttvāhavya, 493
 Satyaketu, 231
 Satyāṅgas, 498
 Satyavati, 349, 405, 450,
 453
 Satyavriata, 207, 375
 Satyavratas, 501
 S'ātyāyana Brāhmaṇa
 quoted, 320, 328
 Saudāsa, 343, 414
 Saudāsas, 328, 337
 Saumya, 494
 S'aunāka, 226, 279
 S'aundīkas, 483
 Saurāshtras, 495
 Sauvīras, 495
 Sauśrutas, 353
 Savana, 335, 445

Sāvanya and Sāvarni, 217
 Savitṛi, 71, 181
 Sāvitrī, 110
 Sayakāyana, 438
 Sāyana quoted, 2, 164 and
passim
 Sayu, 171
 Schlegel, A. W. von, his
 edition of the Rāmāyana
 referred to, 397, 399,
 etc.
 Semitic source, was the
 Indian legend of the
 deluge derived from a,
 216
 S'esha, 44, 116
 Seven rishis, 200, 400, 404
 Seven seas surrounding the
 continents of the earth,
 491
 Sexes, their primitive re-
 lations, 418
 Shadgurushishya quoted,
 343
 Shadvīṃsa Brāhmaṇa
 quoted or referred to,
 334, 513
 Simhikā, 123
 Sindhudvīpa, 268, 272, 353
 Sindhukshit, 268
 Sinhalas, 391
 S'ini, 326
 S'iva, 389
 S'ivis, 459, 493
 S'lishti, 298
 Smṛiti, 5, 139
 Snahas, 500
 Solar race, 220
 Soma, 10, 19 f., 30, 71 f.,
 124, 153, 166, 175, 181,
 221, 225, 467, 469
 Soma Maitrāyana, 230
 Somaśushma Sātyayajni,
 428
 Someśvara quoted, 511
 Sons, may be begotten by
 third parties, 418
 S'omambu, 207
 S'rāddhadeva, 207
 S'rāddhadeva, 207, 335
 S'rauta-sūtras, 5
 Sravanāśya, 279
 S'ri, 67
 S'rīdhara, Commentator or
 Bhāgavata Purāṇa,
 quoted, 210 f., 317
 S'ringin, 491
 S'rinjayas, 283, 512

S'rotriya, 442
 S'rutadharas, 499
 S'rutarshis, 279, 400
 Sthānu, 116, 122
 Sthānutirtha, 420
 Sthapati, 514
 Stoma, 241
 Streiter, Dr., his Dissertation of Sunahsepho, 48, 355
 Subhagā, 116
 S'uchi, 445
 Sudās, 242, 268, 297, 319, 321 ff., 338, 366, 371 ff.
 Sudāsa,
 Sudeshnā, 233,
 Sūdras, 7 and *passim*
 — etymology of the word, 97
 Sudyumna, 221
 Suhma, 232
 Suhotra, 227, 267, 349, 353, 360
 Suhotri, 227
 Sukanyā, 283
 S'ukī, 117
 S'ukra, 305, 335, 445
 Sūkta, 241
 Sukumāra, 231
 Sulabhā, 430
 Sumantu, 349
 Sumati, 234
 Sumeru, 96
 Sumitra, 167
 Sumukha, 297
 Sunahotra, or S'unahotra, 226, 228
 S'unas'epa, 350, 353
 355 ff., 376, 405, 413
 Sunithā, 299, 303
 S'unabhupchha, 352
 Surādhas, 266
 S'ūras, 495
 Sūrpāraka, 455
 Sūrya, 215, 251
 Sūryavarchas, 336
 S'ushmin-, 500
 Sushmīna, 493
 Sūta, 207
 Sutapas, 232, 235
 Sūtras, 5
 S'utudri, 338, 490
 Sushadman, 438
 Suvarchas, 279
 Suvitta, 279
 Suyavasa, 355
 Svāhā, 389
 Svarbhānu, 249, 469

Svarjit Nāgnajita, 515
 Svayambhū, 33
 Svayambhū, 96, 111, 122
 S'veta, 491
 Svetaketu Aruneya, 428, 434
 S'yāparnas, 438
 S'yāvās'va, 283
 S'yena, 513
 S'yūmaras mi, 171

T

Taittiriya-āranyaka quoted, 31
 Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa, 5
 — quoted—
 i. 1, 2, 6,—68
 — 1, 3, 5,—53
 — 1, 4, 4,—186
 — 1, 9, 10,—26
 — 1, 10, 1,—68
 — 2, 6, 1,—68
 — 2, 6, 7,—21
 — 6, 2, 1,—70
 — 6, 4, 1,—71
 — 8, 8, 1,—26
 — 8, 2, 5,—445
 ii. 2, 1, 1,—72
 — 2, 4, 4,—515
 — 2, 9, 1,—27
 — 3, 6, 1,—68
 — 3, 8, 1,—23
 — 7, 9, 1,—71
 iii. 2, 3, 9,—21
 — 2, 5, 9,—189
 — 3, 3, 1,—25
 — 3, 3, 5,—25
 — 3, 10, 4,—26
 — 4, 1, 16,—49
 — 8, 18, 1,—24
 — 9, 22, 1,—43, 46,
 — 10, 9, 1,—71 [163
 — 12, 9, 2,—41
 Taittiriya Sanhitā, 2
 — quoted—
 i. 5, 4, 1,—29
 — 7, 1, 8,—187
 — 7, 3, 1,—262
 — 8, 16, 1,—20
 — 16, 11, 1,—137
 ii. 2, 10, 2,—188, 510
 — 3, 5, 1,—124,
 — 4, 13, 1,—21
 — 5, 9, 1,—187
 — 6, 7, 1,—186
 iii. 1, 7, 2,—512

Taittiriya Sanhitā *continued*—
 iii. 1, 2, 4,—193
 — 5, 2, 2,—332
 iv. 3, 10, 1,—16
 v. 1, 5, 6,—184
 — 6, 8, 3,—136
 vi. 2, 5, 2,—187
 — 3, 10, 4,—32
 — 5, 6, 1,—26
 — 6, 6, 1,—191
 — 6, 8, 2,—26
 — 6, 10, 3,—26
 vii. 1, 1, 4,—15
 — 1, 5, 1,—52
 — 5, 15, 3,—187
 — p. 47 of MS., 328
 — Commentator on,
 quoted, 3
 Taittiriya Upanishad
 quoted, 443
 Taittiriya Yajurveda, 12
 Takshapa, 279
 Tālajanghas, 467, 486
 Tamas, 41, 57, 58, 62, 66,
 75, 80, 89, 92, 141
 Tāmāsa, 42
 Tāmra, 116
 Tāmraliptakas, 459
 Tāmravarṇa, 494
 Tāṇḍya Brāhmaṇa, 5, 329
 Tansu, 234
 Tapas, 119, 141
 — its great power, 394,
 410
 Tapoloka, 88
 Tārā, 225
 Tārakāyaṇas, 353
 Tiryak-srotas, 57
 Tishmas, 500
 Tishya (= Kali) age, 148
 Tortoise incarnation, 51,
 54
 Trasadasyu, 263, 266, 331
 Trayyaruna, 237, 267
 Tretā, 39, 43 ff., 92 ff.,
 119, 145, 149 f., 158,
 447, 495 f.
 Triad of deities, see Deities
 Trigarttas, 459
 Trisanku, 362, 375, 401,
 413
 Trishtha, 190
 Trishtubh, 16
 Trisiras, 268
 Trivriṣṇa, 267
 Trivrit, 16
 Trisus, 320, 324

Troyer, Captain, his edition
of the Rājataranginī, 424
Tukhāras, 303
Tumburas, 303
Turvasas, 179
Turvasu, 232, 482
Tushāras, 484
Tvāshtra, 438
Tvashtri, 181

U

Uddālaka Āruṇi, 195
— S'vetaketu, 419
Udgātri, 41, 155, 251, 294
Unnetri, 155
Upadrashtri, 4, 459
Upanishads, 2, 5
Upasruti (a goddess), 311
Upastuta, 170
Uru, 298
Ūrddhvaabāhu, 335
Ūrddhvasrotas, 57
Ūrjja, 335
Ūrjja, 335
Urukshaya, 237
Urunjirā, 417
Ūrva, 351, 476
Ursasī, 226, 244, 306, 316,
320, 337
Usanas, 226
Ushas, 108
Uśinara, 268
Uśinaras, 431, 482
Utathya, 279, 467
Uttānapad, 72
Uttānapāda, 65, 72, 106,
114, 298
Uttara Kurus, 491 ff.
Uttara Madras, 492

V

Vāch, 241, 246, 325
Vachas, 241
Vāhlika, 273
Vaiḥhojas, 482
Vaidya, 481
Vaikhānasas, 32
Vaikrita-sarga, 58
Vaina, Vainya, 268, 279
Vairāja, 16, 111
Vairūpa, 16
Vaisampāyana, 122, 153 f.
Vaisanta, 319

Vaisāsa, 97
Vaiśyas, 7, and *passim*
— etymology of the
word, 97
Vaivasvata Manvantara,
112, 214
Vājas, 165
Vājasaneyi Sanhitā quoted
or referred to—
xi. 32,—169
xii. 34,—349
xiv. 28,—16
xxx. 18,—49
xxxi. 1,—9
— 1-16,—8
— 13,—10
xxxviii. 26,—490
Vājaśravas,
Vajrasirsha, 445
Valākāśva, 349
Vālakhilya, iii. 1,—217
— iv. 1,—217
Valmiki, 5
Vāmadeva, 114, 279, 330
Vāmana-avatāra, see
Dwarf incarnation
Vandya, a Vaiśya composer
of Vedic hymns, 279
Vanga, 233, see Banga
Vangas, 459
Vansā, 116
Vapushmat, 222
Varāha-avatāra, 53, see
Boar incarnation
Vārāha-kalpa, 44, 50, 67
Varenya, 445
Varna (colour or caste),
140, 153, 176
Vārshagiras, 266
Varuṇa, 18, 20, 27, 71,
136, 168, etc.
— his adultery, 467
Vārūna, 494
Varuṇa-praghāsa, 136
Varūtri, 190
Varvaras, 484
Vaśas, 391
Vashatkāra, 487
Vashkalas, 353
Vasishtha, or Vasishtha,
36, 65, 110, 115, 122,
211, 244, 316 ff., 468,
486
— begets a son to king
Kalmashapāda, 418
Vasishthas, 242, 319 ff.,
402
Vaśtrya fshuyans 293
Vāsudeva, 206

Vasumanas, 268
Vasundharas, 499
Vasus, 19 f., 52, 117, 124,
184, 186, 221, 444
Vātarasanas, 32
Vatsa, 231
Vatsabhūmi, 231
Vayata, 319
Vāyu, 10, 19, 33, 76, 128,
172, 464
Vāyu Purāna quoted, 225,
227, 232
i. 5, 11 ff.—74
— 6, 1 ff.—75
— 7, 22 ff.—81
— 9, 1 ff.—77
— 9, 100,—446
Vedāngas, 5, 126
Vedānta, 223
Vedas, 63
— antiquity of, 2
— undivided in the
Krita age, 144
Vedaśravas, 279
Vedhas, 65
Vedhas, a sage, 243
Vedhasa, 279
Vena, 126
Vena, 297 ff., 481
Venuhotra, 231
Venya, 268
Vibhu, 445
Videha, 426
Videhas, 431, 459
Vidhātri, 124
Vidūratha, 455
Vidyutpatāka, 207
Vijnāna Bhikshu, 158
Vikrīta, 123
Vinatā, 123
Vipās, or Vipāsā, 338, 417
Vipra, 243
Vipula, 466
Virāj (masc.), 9, 36 f., 106,
111, 195
— (fem.), 217, 333, 511
Viranchi, 112
Viriṇi, 125
Virochana, 233
Virūpa, 224
Virūpas, 341
Viryadharas, 499
Vis, 157
Vishnu, 3, 10, 51, 54, 62,
67, 75, 153, 172, 211,
495, etc.
— assumes different co-
lours in different yugas,
145

Vishnu Purāṇa quoted—

Book i.—

3, 10 ff., and 14 f.,—43

3, 16 ff.,—44

5, 1 ff.,—55

6, 1 ff.,—60

7, 1 ff.,—64

8, 12,—66

9, 15,—389

10, 10,—335

13, 7,—298

13, 54,—511

15, 52,—72

Book ii.—

4, 1, and 5 ff.,—497

4, 9,—498

4, 12 ff.,—499

4, 19 ff.,—500

4, 23 ff.,—500

4, 28 ff.,—501

4, 37 f.,—503

7, 19, 24,—504

10, 8,—336

Book iii.—

1, 3,—44

1, 6, and 9,—335

1, 14,—335

3, 9,—336

6, 21,—400

Book iv.—

1, 4,—220

1, 5,—72

1, 12,—221

1, 13, 14,—222

2, 2,—223

3, 5,—224

3, 13,—375

3, 18,—337

4, 25,—337

6, 2,—225

6, 19,—226

7, 1,—226

7, 4, and 14 ff.,—349

8, 6,—232

10, 12,—232

18, 1,—232

19, 9,—236

19, 10,—234

19, 16,—235

21, 4,—236

24, 44,—277

Book vi.—

1, 4,—43

Viśiṣṭa, 166

Viśvajit, 352

Viśvakarman, 52, 76, 173,

181

— Bhauvana, 456

Viśvakṛit, 352

Viśvāmitra, 128, 232, 242,

247, 265, 272, 279, 329

ff., 337 ff., 474, 483

Viśvāmitras, 342, 345 f.

Viśvantara, 438

Viśvaratha, 352

Viśvasrijah, 37

Viśvedevas, 16, 20, 71,

380

Vitahavya, 228, 268, 279,

285, 297

Vitatha, 227

Vitihoṭras, 459

Vivāśas, 498

Vivasvat, 26 f., 37, 115 f.,

122, 126, 169, 195, 199,

201

Vrajana, 360

Vratya, 22, 481

Vratya-stomas, 513

Vrihaspati, 310, see Bri-

haspati

Vrīshāgir, 266

Vrīshala, 482

Vrīshau, 170

Vritra, 174, 310

Vyāsa, 6

Vyāśva, 268

W

Weber's Indische Literaturgeschichte referred to, 2, 5

— Indische Studien

quoted or referred to,

8, 9, 14, 32, 39, 48, 49,

108, 136, 141, 147, 155,

181, 186, 189, 216, 252,

272 f., 332 ff., 357, 367,

369, 373, 395, 438 f.,

443, 446, 492 f., 511 f.

— articles in Journal

Germ. Or. Soc., 189,

366, 385, 443

— his opinion on the

origin of the Indian tra-

dition of the Deluge, 216

— Vajra-sūchi, 140

Williams's, Prof. Monier,

Indian Epic poetry re-

ferred to, 6, 34

Wilson's, Prof. H. H.,

Analyses of the Vishnu,

Vāyu, and other Pu-

rāṇas, 6, 505

— translation of the

Rig-veda referred to,

360, 372, 490

Wilson's Sankhy. Kārika referred to, 430

— Vishnu Purāṇa referred to, 6, 49, 353,

446, and *passim*

— article on Human

Sacrifices in India in

Journ. R. As. Soc., 355

Women, estimation in

which the ancient In-

dians held them, 26,

136

Y

Yādavas, 112

Yadu, 232, 477

Yadus, 179

Yajna-paribhāṣhā-sūtras,

2, 365, 367

Yajñāpeta, 336

Yājñavalkya, 25, 136, 425

Yājñavalkyas, 353

Yajur-veda, 2

Yakshas, 37, 139, 144, 499

Yama, 20, 122, 126, 129,

171, 217, 320

Yamadūtas, 353

Yamunā, 467

Yāska, 3, 5, see Nirukta

Yātudhānas, 326 f.

Yaudhāh (warriors), 511,

514

Yavanas, 391, 398, 482,

485 ff.

Yayāti, 232, 455

Year of Brahmā, 44

Year of gods, 43

Yoga 210, 334, 466, 478

— philosophy, 430, 508

Yogin, 153

Yudhājīt, 279

Yudhishtira, 127, 133, 309

Yudhyāmadhi, 322

Yugas, 39, 43 ff.

— system of, not men-

tioned in the hymns of

the Rig-veda, 45

— their several charac-

teristics, 39, 90 ff., 144

Yuga of the Kshatriyas,

152

Yuvanāśva, 225, 268, 279

Z

Zendavesta, 293

Zota, 294

Central Archaeological Library,
NEW DELHI

25152

Call No. 251.2032/ Mui

Author— Mui J.

Title— *Original manuscript*
Texts VI.5

"A book that is shut is but a block"

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY
GOVT. OF INDIA
Department of Archaeology
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book
clean and moving.